

PUBLIC

SAP HANA Platform 2.0 SPS 00
Document Version: 1.0 – 2016-11-30

SAP HANA Developer Guide

For SAP HANA Studio



Content

1	Introduction to SAP HANA Development.	9
1.1	SAP HANA Architecture.	10
	SAP HANA In-Memory Database.	11
	SAP HANA Database Architecture.	13
	SAP HANA Extended Application Services.	14
	SAP HANA-Based Applications.	17
1.2	Developer Information Map.	17
	SAP HANA Developer Information by Guide.	20
	SAP HANA Developer Information by Task.	24
	SAP HANA Developer Information by Scenario.	26
1.3	Developer Scenarios.	29
	Developing Native SAP HANA Applications.	31
	Developing Non-Native SAP HANA Applications.	36
2	Getting Started.	40
2.1	Prerequisites.	41
2.2	SAP HANA Studio.	41
	The SAP HANA Development Perspective.	42
2.3	SAP HANA XS Application Descriptors.	46
2.4	SAP HANA Projects.	46
2.5	Tutorials.	47
	Tutorial: My First SAP HANA Application.	48
	Tutorial: Use the SAP HANA OData Interface.	65
3	Setting Up Your Application.	69
3.1	Roles and Permissions for XS Development.	70
3.2	Maintaining Delivery Units.	72
	Maintain the Delivery-Unit Vendor ID.	74
	Create a Delivery Unit.	75
3.3	Using SAP HANA Projects.	77
	Maintain a Repository Workspace.	78
	Create a Project for SAP HANA XS.	80
	Share an SAP HANA XS Project.	83
	Import an SAP HANA XS Project.	84
3.4	Maintaining Repository Packages.	85
	Define the Repository Package Hierarchy.	86
	Assign Repository Package Privileges.	91

Create a Repository Package.	94
Delete a Repository Package.	95
3.5 Creating the Application Descriptors.	96
Create an Application Descriptor File.	98
Enable Access to SAP HANA XS Application Packages.	100
Create an SAP HANA XS Application Privileges File.	116
3.6 Maintaining Application Security.	120
Set up Application Security.	121
Set up Application Authentication.	123
3.7 Maintaining HTTP Destinations.	128
Tutorial: Create an HTTP Destination.	129
Tutorial: Extend an HTTP Destination.	141
Tutorial: Create an OAuth Configuration Package.	145
3.8 Maintaining Application Artifacts.	160
Design-Time Application Artifacts.	160
Studio-Based SAP HANA Development Tools.	164
4 Setting up the Data Persistence Model in SAP HANA.	168
4.1 Creating the Persistence Model in Core Data Services.	170
CDS Editors.	171
Create a CDS Document.	175
Create an Entity in CDS.	200
Migrate an Entity from hdbtable to CDS (hdbdd).	218
Create a User-Defined Structured Type in CDS.	222
Create an Association in CDS.	236
Create a View in CDS.	251
Modifications to CDS Artifacts.	276
Tutorial: Get Started with CDS.	280
Import Data with CDS Table-Import.	284
4.2 Creating the Persistence Model with HDBTable.	296
Create a Schema.	297
Create a Table.	301
Create a Reusable Table Structure.	310
Create a Sequence.	313
Create an SQL View.	322
Create a Synonym.	328
Import Data with hdbtable Table-Import.	333
5 Setting Up the Analytic Model.	346
5.1 Setting Up the Modeling Environment.	346
Set Modeler Preferences.	346
Set Keyboard Shortcuts.	347

5.2	Creating Views.....	348
	Attributes and Measures.....	348
	First Steps to View Creation.....	349
	Create Attribute Views.....	352
	Create Analytic Views.....	357
	Create Graphical Calculation Views.....	364
	Create Script-Based Calculation Views.....	376
	Activating Objects.....	379
	Description Mapping.....	382
	Import BW Objects.....	383
	Group Related Measures.....	385
5.3	Additional Functionality for Information Views.....	386
	Create Level Hierarchies.....	386
	Create Parent-Child Hierarchies.....	388
	Input Parameters.....	392
	Assign Variables.....	393
	Using Currency and Unit of Measure Conversions.....	393
	Manage Information Views with Missing Objects.....	393
5.4	Working with Views.....	394
	Manage Editor Layout.....	394
	Validate Models.....	395
	Maintain Search Attributes.....	395
	Data Preview Editor.....	396
	Using Functions in Expressions.....	397
	Resolving Conflicts in Modeler Objects.....	397
5.5	Create Decision Tables.....	400
	Changing the Layout of a Decision Table.....	402
	Using Parameters in a Decision Table.....	403
	Using Calculated Attributes in Decision Tables.....	405
5.6	Generate Object Documentation.....	405
6	Developing Procedures.....	407
6.1	SQLScript Security Considerations.....	409
6.2	Create and Edit Procedures.....	411
	Define and Use Table Types in Procedures.....	413
	Tutorial: Create an SQLScript Procedure that Uses Imperative Logic.....	415
6.3	Create Scalar and Table User-Defined Functions.....	420
	Tutorial: Create a Scalar User-Defined Function.....	420
	Tutorial: Create a Table User-Defined Function.....	425
6.4	Create Procedure Templates.....	430
	Create Procedure Template Instances.....	431
	Update Procedure Templates and Instances.....	433

Delete Procedure Templates and Instances	433
6.5 Debugging Procedures	434
Setup Debugger Privileges	434
Debug Design-Time and Catalog Procedures	435
Debug an External Session	438
6.6 Developing Procedures in the Modeler Editor	440
6.7 Transforming Data Using SAP HANA Application Function Modeler	441
Converting deprecated AFL Models (AFLPMML objects)	444
Setting up the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler	445
Flowgraphs	447
Modeling a flowgraph	449
Tutorial: Creating a Runtime Procedure using Application Function Modeler (AFM)	486
Node palette flowgraphs	490
7 Defining Web-based Data Access	495
7.1 Data Access with OData in SAP HANA XS	495
OData in SAP HANA XS	496
Define the Data an OData Service Exposes	497
OData Service Definitions	497
Create an OData Service Definition	501
Tutorial: Use the SAP HANA OData Interface	503
OData Service-Definition Examples	506
OData Service Definition Language Syntax (XS Advanced)	528
OData Service Definition: SQL-EDM Type Mapping (XS Advanced)	531
OData Security Considerations	532
OData Batch Requests (XS Advanced)	532
7.2 Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS	535
XML for Analysis (XMLA)	536
XMLA Service Definition	537
XMLA Security Considerations	538
Multidimensional Expressions (MDX)	538
MDX Functions	539
MDX Extensions	541
Define the Data an XMLA Service Exposes	545
Create an XMLA Service Definition	546
Tutorial: Use the SAP HANA XMLA Interface	547
7.3 Using the SAP HANA REST API	549
SAP HANA REST Info API	550
SAP HANA REST File API	551
SAP HANA REST Change-Tracking API	556
SAP HANA REST Metadata API	557
SAP HANA REST Transfer API	558

SAP HANA REST Workspace API.....	560
8 Writing Server-Side JavaScript Code.	562
8.1 Data Access with JavaScript in SAP HANA XS.....	562
8.2 Using Server-Side JavaScript in SAP HANA XS.....	563
Tutorial: Write Server-Side JavaScript Application Code.....	563
8.3 Using Server-Side JavaScript Libraries.....	578
Import Server-Side JavaScript Libraries.....	579
Write Server-Side JavaScript Libraries.....	581
8.4 Using the Server-Side JavaScript APIs.....	582
Tutorial: Use the XSJS Outbound API.....	594
Tutorial: Call an XS Procedure with Table-Value Arguments.....	598
Tutorial: Query a CDS Entity using XS Data Services.....	602
Tutorial: Update a CDS Entity Using XS Data Services.....	607
8.5 Creating Custom XS SQL Connections.....	610
Create an XS SQL Connection Configuration.....	612
8.6 Setting the Connection Language in SAP HANA XS.....	618
8.7 Scheduling XS Jobs.....	620
Tutorial: Schedule an XS Job.....	621
Add or Delete a Job Schedule during Runtime.....	630
8.8 Tracing Server-Side JavaScript.....	631
Trace Server-Side JavaScript Applications.....	632
View XS JavaScript Application Trace Files.....	634
8.9 Debugging Server-Side JavaScript.....	634
Create a Debug Configuration.....	638
Execute XS JavaScript Debugging.....	639
Troubleshoot Server-Side JavaScript Debugging.....	644
8.10 Testing XS JavaScript Applications.....	646
Automated Tests with XSUnit in SAP HANA.....	647
Application Development Testing Roles.....	648
Test an SAP HANA XS Application with XSUnit.....	648
Testing JavaScript with XSUnit.....	662
9 Building UIs.	669
9.1 Building User Interfaces with SAPUI5 for SAP HANA.....	669
9.2 Consuming Data and Services with SAPUI5 for SAP HANA.....	670
9.3 SAPUI5 for SAP HANA Development Tutorials.....	671
Tutorial: Create a Hello-World SAP UI5 Application.....	672
Tutorial: Consume an XSJS Service from SAPUI5.....	676
Tutorial: Consume an OData Service from SAPUI5.....	682
Tutorial: Consume an OData Service with the CREATE Option.....	689
Tutorial: Create and Translate Text Bundles for SAPUI5 Applications.....	696

9.4	Using UI Integration Services.	701
	Creating Content for Application Sites.	702
	SAP Fiori Launchpad Sites.	714
	Creating a Standard Site.	721
	Configuring the SAP HANA Home Page.	722
10	Setting Up Roles and Privileges.	723
10.1	Create a Design-Time Role.	724
	Roles.	730
	Privileges.	740
10.2	Creating Analytic Privileges.	761
	Create Classical XML-based Analytic Privileges.	762
	Create SQL Analytic Privileges.	764
	Analytic Privileges.	766
11	SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.	788
11.1	Preparing to Use SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.	790
	Assign User Roles.	791
	Maintain the Delivery-Unit Vendor ID.	795
11.2	Setting Up the Transport.	796
	Setting Up and Using Native SAP HANA Transport.	798
	Setting Up and Using CTS Transport.	805
11.3	Maintaining Delivery Units.	814
	Create a Delivery Unit.	815
	Assign Packages to a Delivery Unit.	817
	Export a Delivery Unit.	818
	Import a Delivery Unit.	820
11.4	Maintaining Products.	821
	Create a Product.	822
	Assign a Delivery Unit to a Product.	824
11.5	SAP HANA Change Recording.	825
	Enable SAP HANA Change Recording.	826
	Create Changelists.	828
	Assign Objects to Changelists.	829
	Approve Contributions to Changelists.	831
	Release Changelists.	832
	Filter and Search for Changelists.	833
11.6	Assembling Add-On Products and Software Components.	835
11.7	Installing and Updating SAP HANA Products and Software Components.	836
11.8	Using hdbalm.	837
	hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables.	839
	Enable SSL for hdbalm.	843

Proxy Support for hdbalm	844
hdbalm install Command	845
hdbalm assemble Command	850
hdbalm import Command	851
hdbalm transport Command	852
hdbalm log Command	853
hdbalm product Command	853
hdbalm du Command	855
hdbalm dependencies Command	857
hdbalm package Command	858
hdbalm admin Command	859
11.9 SAP HANA Repository Translation Tool	860
SAP HANA Repository Translation Tool (RTT) Parameters	862
Configure the Repository Translation Tool	864
Create Text-Strings Packages for Translation	865
Export Text-Strings Files for Translation	866
Import Translated Text-Strings Files	866
11.10 Maintaining Translation Text Strings	867
Create and Edit Text Translations	868
Export and Import Translated Text	873
12 SAP HANA Database Client Interfaces	875
12.1 Setting Session-Specific Client Information	877
12.2 Connect to SAP HANA via ODBC	880
Use the User Store (hdbuserstore)	882
Test the ODBC Installation	883
12.3 Connect to SAP HANA via JDBC	884
Trace a JDBC Connection	885
Valid Java-to-SQL Conversions	888
JDBC Command-Line Connection Options	889
JDBC Connection Options in Java Code	890
12.4 Connect to SAP HANA via ODBO	891
Connecting with Microsoft Excel	892
Multidimensional Expressions (MDX)	893
MDX Functions	894
MDX Extensions	896

1 Introduction to SAP HANA Development

The SAP HANA developer guides present a developer's view of SAP HANA®.

The SAP HANA developer guides explain not only how to use the SAP HANA development tools to create comprehensive analytical models but also how to build applications with SAP HANA's programmatic interfaces and integrated development environment. The information in this guide focuses on the development of native code that runs inside SAP HANA.

This guide is organized as follows:

- Introduction and overview
 - SAP HANA architecture
Describes the basic capabilities and architecture of SAP HANA
 - SAP HANA developer information map
Information in graphical and textual form that is designed to help you navigate the library of information currently available for SAP HANA developers and find the information you need quickly and easily. The information provided enables access from different perspectives, for example: by SAP HANA guide, by development scenario, or by development task
 - SAP HANA development scenarios
Describes the main developer scenarios for which you can use SAP HANA to develop applications. The information focuses on native development scenarios, for example, applications based on SAP HANA XS JavaScript and XS OData services, but also provides a brief overview of the development of non-native applications (for example, using JDBC, ODBC, or ODBO connections to SAP HANA).
- Getting started
A collection of tutorials which are designed to demonstrate how to build a simple SAP HANA-based application quickly and easily, including how to use the SAP HANA studio tools and work with the SAP HANA repository
- The development process
Most of the remaining chapters use tasks and tutorials to explain how to develop the SAP HANA development objects that you can include in your SAP HANA application. Where appropriate, you can also find background information which explains the context of the task and reference information that provides the detail you need to adapt the task-based information to suit the requirements of your application environment.
Some of the tutorials in this guide refer to models that are included in the demonstration content provided with the SAP HANA Interactive Education (SHINE) delivery unit (DU). The SHINE DU is available for download in the SAP Software Download Center.

Note

Access to the SAP Software Download Center is only available to SAP customers and requires logon credentials.

Audience

This guide is aimed at people performing the following developer roles:

- Database developers

Often a business/data analyst or database expert, the database developer is concerned with the definition of the data model and schemas that will be used in SAP HANA, the specification and definition of tables, views, primary keys, indexes, partitions and other aspects of the layout and inter-relationship of the data in SAP HANA.

The database developer is also concerned with designing and defining authorization and access control, through the specification of privileges, roles and users.

- Application programmers

The programmer is concerned with building SAP HANA applications, which could take many forms but are designed based on the model-view-controller architecture. Programmers develop the code for the following component layers:

- Views

Running inside a browser or on a mobile device

- Controller

Typically running in the context of an application server

- Model

Interacting closely with the data model and performing queries. Using embedded procedures or libraries, the model can be developed to run within the SAP HANA data engine.

- Client UI developers

The user-interface (UI) client developer designs and creates client applications which bind business logic (from the application developer) to controls, events, and views in the client application user interface. In this way, data exposed by the database developer can be viewed in the client application's UI.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Architecture \[page 10\]](#)

[Developer Information Map \[page 17\]](#)

[Developer Scenarios \[page 29\]](#)

1.1 SAP HANA Architecture

SAP HANA is an in-memory data platform that can be deployed on premise or on demand. At its core, it is an innovative in-memory relational database management system.

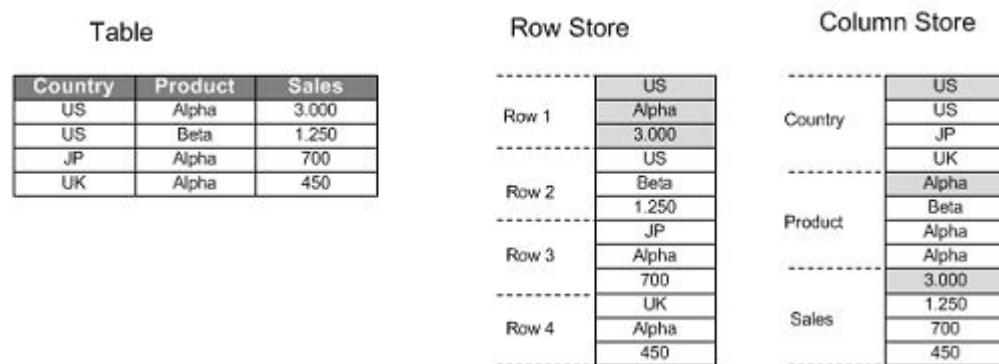
SAP HANA can make full use of the capabilities of current hardware to increase application performance, reduce cost of ownership, and enable new scenarios and applications that were not previously possible. With SAP HANA, you can build applications that integrate the business control logic and the database layer with unprecedented performance. As a developer, one of the key questions is how you can minimize data movements. The more you can do directly on the data in memory next to the CPUs, the better the application will perform. This is the key to development on the SAP HANA data platform.

1.1.1 SAP HANA In-Memory Database

SAP HANA runs on multi-core CPUs with fast communication between processor cores, and containing terabytes of main memory. With SAP HANA, all data is available in main memory, which avoids the performance penalty of disk I/O. Either disk or solid-state drives are still required for permanent persistency in the event of a power failure or some other catastrophe. This does not slow down performance, however, because the required backup operations to disk can take place asynchronously as a background task.

1.1.1.1 Columnar Data Storage

A database table is conceptually a two-dimensional data structure organized in rows and columns. Computer memory, in contrast, is organized as a linear structure. A table can be represented in row-order or column-order. A row-oriented organization stores a table as a sequence of records. Conversely, in column storage the entries of a column are stored in contiguous memory locations. SAP HANA supports both, but is particularly optimized for column-order storage.



Columnar data storage allows highly efficient compression. If a column is sorted, often there are repeated adjacent values. SAP HANA employs highly efficient compression methods, such as run-length encoding, cluster coding and dictionary coding. With dictionary encoding, columns are stored as sequences of bit-coded integers. That means that a check for equality can be executed on the integers; for example, during scans or join operations. This is much faster than comparing, for example, string values.

Columnar storage, in many cases, eliminates the need for additional index structures. Storing data in columns is functionally similar to having a built-in index for each column. The column scanning speed of the in-memory column store and the compression mechanisms – especially dictionary compression – allow read operations with very high performance. In many cases, it is not required to have additional indexes. Eliminating additional indexes reduces complexity and eliminates the effort of defining and maintaining metadata.

1.1.1.2 Parallel Processing

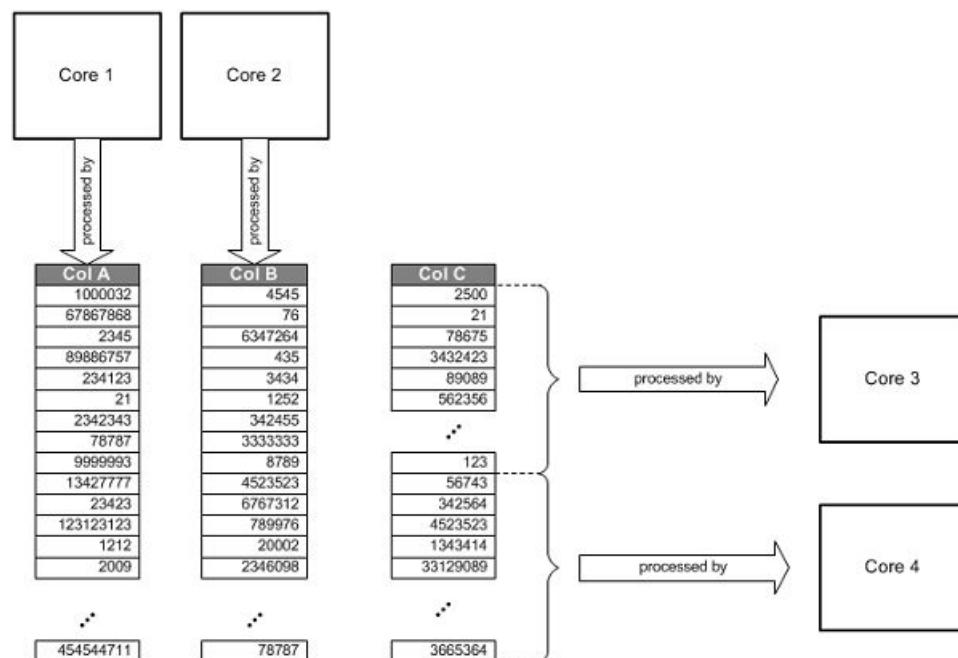
SAP HANA was designed to perform its basic calculations, such as analytic joins, scans and aggregations in parallel. Often it uses hundreds of cores at the same time, fully utilizing the available computing resources of distributed systems.

With columnar data, operations on single columns, such as searching or aggregations, can be implemented as loops over an array stored in contiguous memory locations. Such an operation has high spatial locality and can

efficiently be executed in the CPU cache. With row-oriented storage, the same operation would be much slower because data of the same column is distributed across memory and the CPU is slowed down by cache misses.

Compressed data can be loaded into the CPU cache faster. This is because the limiting factor is the data transport between memory and CPU cache, and so the performance gain exceeds the additional computing time needed for decompression.

Column-based storage also allows execution of operations in parallel using multiple processor cores. In a column store, data is already vertically partitioned. This means that operations on different columns can easily be processed in parallel. If multiple columns need to be searched or aggregated, each of these operations can be assigned to a different processor core. In addition, operations on one column can be parallelized by partitioning the column into multiple sections that can be processed by different processor cores.



1.1.1.3 Simplifying Applications

Traditional business applications often use materialized aggregates to increase performance. These aggregates are computed and stored either after each write operation on the aggregated data, or at scheduled times. Read operations read the materialized aggregates instead of computing them each time they are required.

With a scanning speed of several gigabytes per millisecond, SAP HANA makes it possible to calculate aggregates on large amounts of data on-the-fly with high performance. This eliminates the need for materialized aggregates in many cases, simplifying data models, and correspondingly the application logic. Furthermore, with on-the-fly aggregation, the aggregate values are always up-to-date unlike materialized aggregates that may be updated only at scheduled times.

1.1.2 SAP HANA Database Architecture

A running SAP HANA system consists of multiple communicating processes (services). The following shows the main SAP HANA database services in a classical application context.

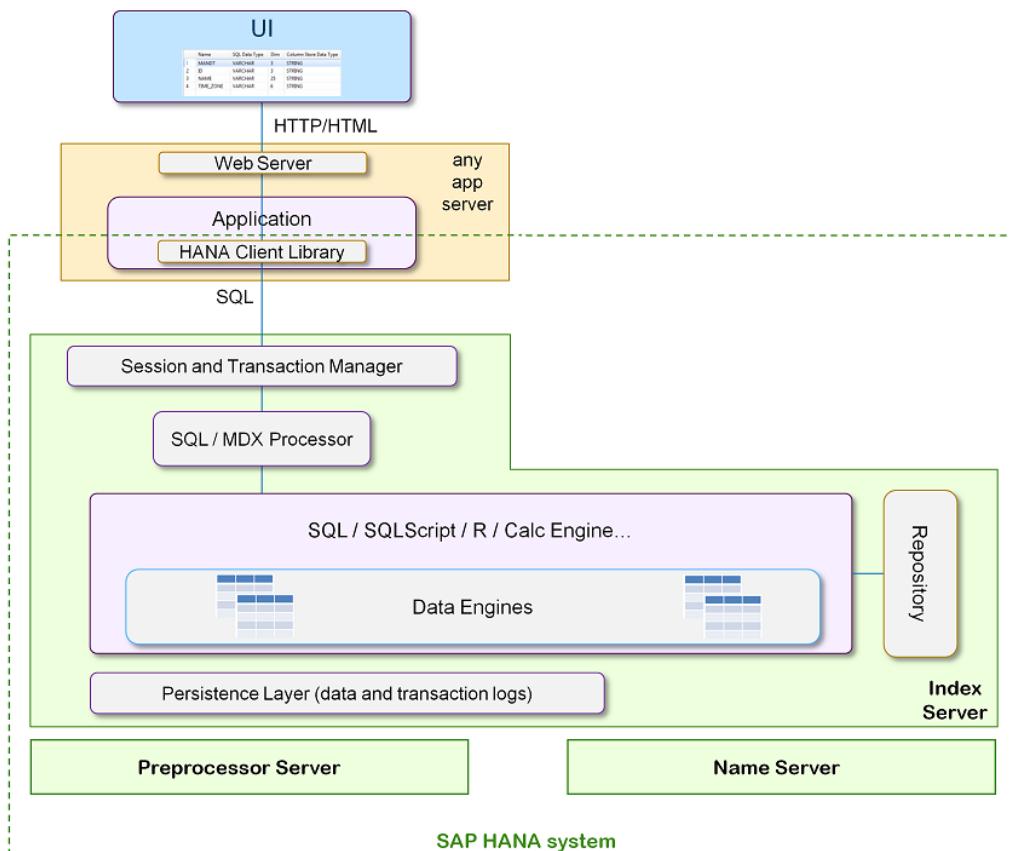


Figure 1: SAP HANA Database High-Level Architecture

Such traditional database applications use well-defined interfaces (for example, ODBC and JDBC) to communicate with the database management system functioning as a data source, usually over a network connection. Often running in the context of an application server, these traditional applications use Structured Query Language (SQL) to manage and query the data stored in the database.

The main SAP HANA database management component is known as the index server, which contains the actual data stores and the engines for processing the data. The index server processes incoming SQL or MDX statements in the context of authenticated sessions and transactions.

The SAP HANA database has its own scripting language named SQLScript. SQLScript embeds data-intensive application logic into the database. Classical applications tend to offload only very limited functionality into the database using SQL. This results in extensive copying of data from and to the database, and in programs that slowly iterate over huge data loops and are hard to optimize and parallelize. SQLScript is based on side-effect free functions that operate on tables using SQL queries for set processing, and is therefore parallelizable over multiple processors.

In addition to SQLScript, SAP HANA supports a framework for the installation of specialized and optimized functional libraries, which are tightly integrated with different data engines of the index server. Two of these

functional libraries are the SAP HANA Business Function Library (BFL) and the SAP HANA Predictive Analytics Library (PAL). BFL and PAL functions can be called directly from within SQLScript.

SAP HANA also supports the development of programs written in the R language.

SQL and SQLScript are implemented using a common infrastructure of built-in data engine functions that have access to various meta definitions, such as definitions of relational tables, columns, views, and indexes, and definitions of SQLScript procedures. This metadata is stored in one common catalog.

The database persistence layer is responsible for durability and atomicity of transactions. It ensures that the database can be restored to the most recent committed state after a restart and that transactions are either completely executed or completely undone.

The index server uses the preprocessor server for analyzing text data and extracting the information on which the text search capabilities are based. The name server owns the information about the topology of SAP HANA system. In a distributed system, the name server knows where the components are running and which data is located on which server.

Related Information

[SAP HANA SQLScript Reference](#)

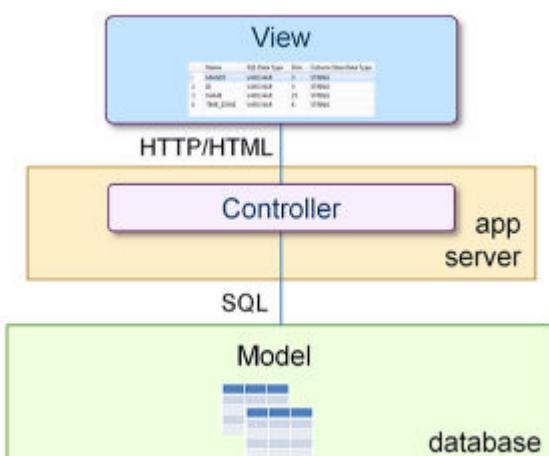
[SAP HANA Business Function Library \(BFL\) Reference](#)

[SAP HANA Predictive Analysis Library \(PAL\) Reference](#)

[SAP HANA R Integration Guide](#)

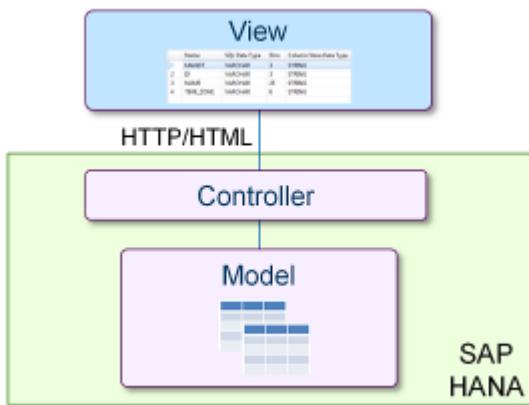
1.1.3 SAP HANA Extended Application Services

Traditional database applications use interfaces such as ODBC and JDBC with SQL to manage and query their data. The following illustrates such applications using the common Model-View-Controller (MVC) development architecture.



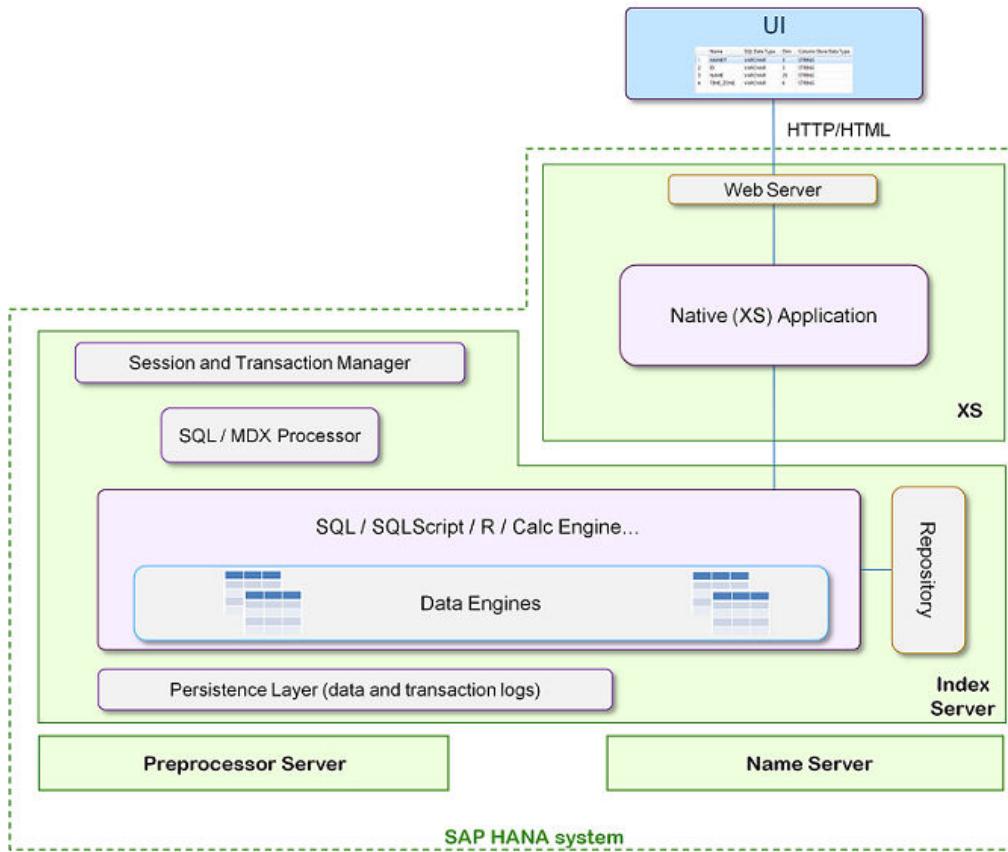
SAP HANA greatly extends the traditional database server role. SAP HANA functions as a comprehensive platform for the development and execution of native data-intensive applications that run efficiently in SAP HANA, taking advantage of its in-memory architecture and parallel execution capabilities.

By restructuring your application in this way, not only do you gain from the increased performance due to the integration with the data source, you can effectively eliminate the overhead of the middle-tier between the user-interface (the view) and the data-intensive control logic, as shown in the following figure.



In support of this data-integrated application paradigm, SAP HANA Extended Application Services provides a comprehensive set of embedded services that provide end-to-end support for Web-based applications. This includes a lightweight web server, configurable OData support, server-side JS execution and, of course, full access to SQL and SQLScript.

These SAP HANA Extended Application Services are provided by the SAP HANA XS server, which provides lightweight application services that are fully integrated into SAP HANA. It allows clients to access the SAP HANA system via HTTP. Controller applications can run completely natively on SAP HANA, without the need for an additional external application server. The following shows the SAP HANA XS server as part of the SAP HANA system.



The application services can be used to expose the database data model, with its tables, views and database procedures, to clients. This can be done in a declarative way using OData services or by writing native application-specific code that runs in the SAP HANA context . Also, you can use SAP HANA XS to build dynamic HTML5 UI applications.

In addition to exposing the data model, SAP HANA XS also hosts system services that are part of the SAP HANA system. The search service is an example of such a system application. No data is stored in the SAP HANA XS server itself. To read tables or views, to modify data or to execute SQLScript database procedures and calculations, it connects to the index server (or servers, in case of a distributed system).

i Note

From SPS 11, SAP HANA includes an additional run-time environment for application development: SAP HANA extended application services (XS), advanced model. SAP HANA XS advanced model represents an evolution of the application server architecture within SAP HANA by building upon the strengths (and expanding the scope) of SAP HANA extended application services (XS), classic model. SAP recommends that customers and partners who want to develop new applications use SAP HANA XS advanced model. If you want to migrate existing XS classic applications to run in the new XS advanced run-time environment, SAP recommends that you first check the features available with the installed version of XS advanced; if the XS advanced features match the requirements of the XS classic application you want to migrate, then you can start the migration process.

Related Information

[SAPUI5 Demo Kit \(version 1.28\)](#)

[SAP Note 1779803](#)

1.1.4 SAP HANA-Based Applications

The possibility to run application-specific code in SAP HANA raises the question: What kind of logic should run where? Clearly, data-intensive and model-based calculations must be close to the data and, therefore, need to be executed in the index server, for instance, using SQLScript or the code of the specialized functional libraries.

The presentation (view) logic runs on the client – for example, as an HTML5 application in a Web browser or on a mobile device.

Native application-specific code, supported by SAP HANA Extended Application Services, can be used to provide a thin layer between the clients on one side, and the views, tables and procedures in the index server on the other side. Typical applications contain, for example, control flow logic based on request parameters, invoke views and stored procedures in the index server, and transform the results to the response format expected by the client.

The communication between the SAP HANA XS server and index server is optimized for high performance. However, performance is not the only reason why the SAP HANA XS server was integrated into SAP HANA. It also leads to simplified administration and a better development experience.

The SAP HANA XS server completes SAP HANA to make it a comprehensive development platform. With the SAP HANA XS server, developers can write SAP HANA-based applications that cover all server-side aspects, such as tables and database views, database procedures, server-side control logic, integration with external systems, and provisioning of HTTP-based services. The integration of the SAP HANA XS server into the SAP HANA system also helps to reduce cost of ownership, as all servers are installed, operated and updated as one system.

1.2 Developer Information Map

The developer information road map is designed to help developers find the information they need in the library of user and reference documentation currently available for SAP HANA development projects.

The development environment for SAP HANA supports a wide variety of application-development scenarios. For example, database developers need to be able to build a persistence model or design an analytic model; professional developers want to build enterprise-ready applications; business experts with a development background might like to build a simple server-side, line-of-business application; and application developers need to be able to design and build a client user interface (UI) that displays the data exposed by the data model and business logic. It is also essential to set up the development environment correctly and securely and ensure the efficient management of the various phases of the development lifecycle.

The following image displays essential information sources for people planning to develop applications in SAP HANA Extended Application Services **classic** model.

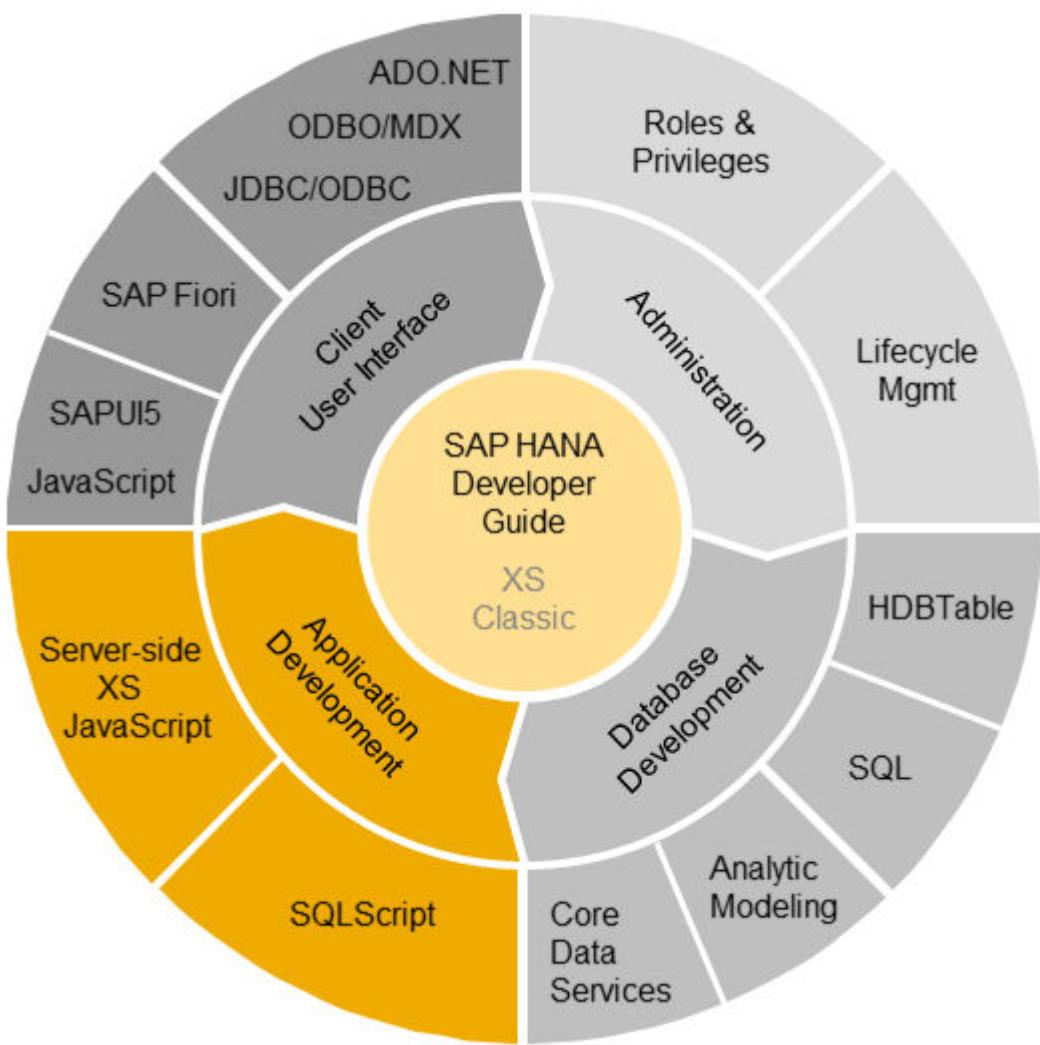


Figure 2: Application Development in SAP HANA XS Classic Model

The following image displays the essential information sources for developing applications in SAP HANA Extended Application Services **advanced** model.

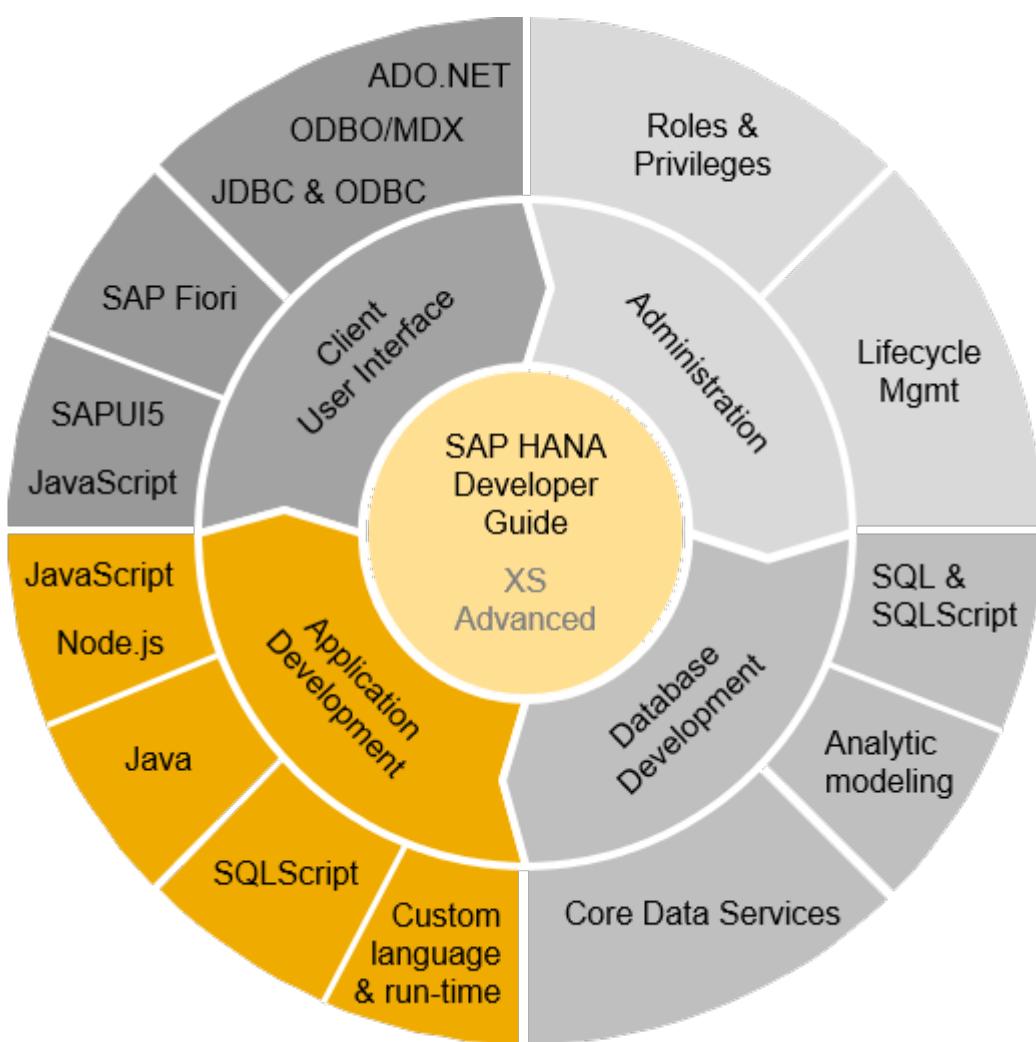


Figure 3: Application Development in SAP HANA XS Advanced Model

With such a wide variety of people needing to find such a broad range of information about so many different tasks, it is sometimes not easy to know what information is available or where to look to find it. This section is designed to help you navigate the documentation landscape by looking at the information available for the SAP HANA developer from the following perspectives:

- Information by developer guide
- Information by developer task
- Information by developer scenario

Related Information

[SAP HANA Developer Information by Guide \[page 20\]](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Information by Task \[page 24\]](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Information by Scenario \[page 26\]](#)

1.2.1 SAP HANA Developer Information by Guide

The design and organization of the SAP HANA developer documentation library makes it easy to use the name of a guide to find the relevant information. For example, the SAP HANA SQLScript Reference describes how to use the SQL extension SAP HANA SQLScript to define a data model.

The SAP HANA developer information set includes a selection of guides that describe the complete application-development process, from defining user roles, privileges, and data models through application setup to UI design and testing; the information available covers background and concepts, task-based tutorials, and detailed reference material. The following tables illustrate which guides are available for the developer who wants to build applications for SAP HANA, what information the guide contains, and which typical high-level tasks the selected guide covers:

Table 1: Core SAP HANA Developer Guides

SAP HANA Guide	Description	Typical Tasks
Developer Quick Start Guide (for XS classic)	Contains a selection of tutorials which teach the basic steps required to build data models and the native applications that run on SAP HANA XS classic model.	Build data-persistence models Write procedures and user-defined functions (UDF) Build applications with SAP HANA XS JavaScript or OData. Build a simple UI with SAPUI5
Developer Guide (for XS classic and SAP HANA studio)	Describes the complete application-development process for SAP HANA Extended Application Services Classic Model using the tools included in SAP HANA studio.	Build a data model Build XS classic applications (XS JavaScript) Build SAPUI5 clients Manage the application lifecycle
Developer Guide (for XS classic and Web Workbench)	Describes the complete application-development process for SAP HANA Extended Application Services Classic Model using the tools included in SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench.	Build a data model Build XS classic applications (XS JavaScript) Build SAPUI5 clients Manage the application lifecycle
Developer Guide (for XS advanced)	Describes the complete application-development process for SAP HANA Extended Application Services Advanced Model .	Build a data model Build XS advanced applications (Node.js, JavaScript, Java, ...) Build SAPUI5 clients Deploy applications to desired run-time environment Manage the application lifecycle

SAP HANA Guide	Description	Typical Tasks
Modeling Guide (for XS classic)	Explains how to use the SAP HANA modeler in to create information models for use by XS classic applications based on data that can be used for analytical purposes.	Create attribute, analytic, and calculation views Create decision tables Import/Export data
Modeling Guide (for XS advanced)	Explains how to use the SAP HANA modeler to create information models for XS advanced applications based on data that can be used for analytical purposes.	Create attribute, analytic, and calculation views Create decision tables Import/Export data
SAPUI5 Demo Kit and Documentation	Describes how to develop SAPUI5 applications based on SAP HANA, a user interface technology for building and adapting client applications	Build client UI models Design UI view (buttons/boxes) Bind UI views to data Bind UI controls to services

The SAP HANA developer information set also includes a selection of reference guides that describe the various languages that you use to define the underlying data model (for example, SQL, CDS, or HDBTable) as well as the application business logic (for example, XS JavaScript with XS classic). The following tables illustrate which reference guides are available for the more experienced developer who needs more detailed information about how to build specific components.

Table 2: SAP HANA Language Reference Guides

SAP HANA Guide	Description	Typical Tasks
SQL System Views	Describes all SQL data types, predicates, operators, expressions, functions, statements, and error codes.	Query state of SAP HANA using SQL commands Alter system configuration/initialization services * Manage extended storage * Manage remote sources, subscriptions, adapters, tasks * Perform data analysis/mining * Manage data streams *
SQLScript Reference	Describes how to use the SQL extension SAP HANA SQLScript to embed data-intensive application logic into SAP HANA.	Build SQL scripts Create UDFs Build SQL procedures

SAP HANA Guide	Description	Typical Tasks
SAP HANA Analytics Catalog (BIMC Views) Reference	Describes how to use the SAP HANA analytics catalog for tables and views with the BIMC prefix. The catalog contains metadata used by analytics clients such as the Business Objects Cloud and for access to SAP HANA via MDX.	Pass and map variables and parameters Use parameters in hierarchies Read values from BIMC tables Build SQL queries Build MDX queries
SQLScript Command Network Protocol	Describes the SQL Command Network Protocol that is used by SAP HANA clients to communicate with SAP HANA.	Define routes for SQL statements Set up authentication (SAML...) Handle large data objects Enable distributed transactions
Spatial Reference(*)	Describes how to store, manipulate, and manage spatial data, for example, geographic locations, routing information, and shape data.	Store and manage spatial data Access and manipulate spatial data Calculate the distance between geometries Determine the union/intersection of multiple objects
XS JavaScript Reference	Describes how to use XS JavaScript to build native SAP HANA applications for XS classic, explains the underlying concepts, and lists the various APIs that are available.	Create XSJS services (for XS classic) Create XSJS libraries Build application logic
XS JavaScript API Reference	Describes the API functions, methods, and classes provided for use with server-side JavaScript code running inside (SAP HANA XS).	Use the XS JavaScript API Search for XSJS API classes Locate XSJS methods
XSUnit JavaScript API Reference	Describes the API functions, methods, and classes provided with the XSUnit test framework to automate the tests that you want to run for SAP HANA XS applications.	Test server-side (XS) JavaScript code Test SQLScript code (stored procedures, views) Test modeled calculation view
XS DB Utilities JavaScript API Reference	Describes the API that provides access to a library of JavaScript utilities, which can be used to enable server-side JavaScript applications to consume data models that are defined using Core Data Services or call stored procedures as if they were JavaScript objects.	Call a stored procedure Query a CDS entity Update a CDS entity

SAP HANA Guide	Description	Typical Tasks
SINA Search JavaScript Reference *	Describes the SAP HANA simple information access (SINA) API, a client-side JavaScript API for developing browser-based search UIs	Create a search query Create a suggestion query Create a bar- or line-chart query Create a SAPUI5 bar chart
Core Data Services (CDS) Reference (for XS classic)	Explains how to use Core Data Services (CDS) to build design-time data-persistence models in SAP HANA Extended Application Services (for XS classic). The data-persistence model defines the data to expose in response to client requests via HTTP, for example, from an SAPUI5-based application.	Create CDS Documents (for XS classic) Define tables, table types, and SQL views Define associations between data objects Import data into a table
HDBTable Syntax Reference	Explains how to use the <code>hdbtable</code> syntax to build design-time data-persistence models in SAP HANA XS (for XS classic). The data-persistence model is used to define the data to expose in response to client requests via HTTP, for example, from an SAPUI5-based application.	Define schemas and sequences (for XS classic) Define tables, SQL views, and table types Import data into a table
SAP HANA REST API (for XS classic)	Describes the REST API for SAP HANA (for XS classic), which enables development tools to access SAP HANA platform components such as the for XS classic repository using REST-based calls.	Maintain repository workspaces Maintain projects and files Interact with the SAP HANA repository Access catalog objects
BFL Reference	Describes the SAP HANA Business Function Library (BFL), which contains pre-built financial functions.	Assign AFL user roles/privileges Create the AFL wrapper procedure Generate and call a PAL procedure
PAL Reference	Describes the SAP HANA Predictive Analysis Library (PAL), which contains functions that can be called from within SAP HANA SQLScript procedures to perform analytic algorithms.	Assign AFL user roles/privileges Create the AFL wrapper procedure Generate and call a BFL procedure Create input/output tables

⚠ Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support

Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

1.2.2 SAP HANA Developer Information by Task

The design and organization of the SAP HANA developer documentation library enables easy access to information according to the particular development task to be performed, for example, creating a view or procedure, or setting up an application project.

The SAP HANA developer can make use of a large number of guides that include information describing the complete application-development process. The following figure shows the information that is available from the perspective of the development tasks that must be performed in a particular development area, for example, setting up the persistence model; creating an XSJS or OData service, or managing the development lifecycle. Each of the tasks described is supported by information covering the underlying concepts and detailed reference material. The figure also indicates where to find information based on the development task you want to perform. The tasks are split according to development area, for example, database development, application development, or UI design.

SAP HANA Development Area	Typical Tasks	SAP HANA Guide								
		Developer	Modeling	XSJS API Ref.	SQLScript Ref.	SQL Reference	Spatial Ref. *	SAPUI5	PAL/BFL	External std.
Database	Set up the persistence model	X								
	Set up the analytic model	X	X							
	Create SQLScript procedures	X			X			X		
	Create user-defined functions	X			X				X	
	Create decision tables		X							
	Set up lifecycle management	X	X							
	Create full-text search	X								
	Build SQL search queries *	X				X				X
	Model spatial data *					X	X			
	Manage extended storage *					X				
	Perform data analysis/mining*					X				
	Manage data streams *					X				
	Manage remote sources *					X				
Applications	Set up an application	X								
	Set up a project	X								
	Create an OData/XMLA service	X							X	
	Create an XSJS service	X		X		X				
	Bind XS service to UI	X								
	Set up lifecycle management	X								
User Interface & Clients	Set up SAPUI5 tools							X		
	Create SAPUI5 apps	X						X		
	Create UI views	X						X		
	Define UI event handlers	X						X		
	Bind data to a view	X						X		
	Create UI widgets	X								
	Define search UIs									X
Repository Access	Logon credentials	X								
	Roles and privileges	X								
	Application artifacts	X	X							
	Life-cycle management	X	X							

Figure 4: SAP HANA Information by Developer Task

⚠ Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the

features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

1.2.3 SAP HANA Developer Information by Scenario

The design and organization of the SAP HANA developer documentation library enables easy access to information according to the underlying development scenario, for example, lifecycle management, or application development.

The SAP HANA developer can make use of a large number of guides that include information describing the complete application-development process from the perspective of the development scenario, for example, database development, application development, or client UI design and testing; the information available covers background and concepts, task-based tutorials, and detailed reference material. The following table indicates where to find information based on the development scenario you choose, for example:

- [Database Development \[page 26\]](#)
- [Application Development \[page 28\]](#)
- [UI Client Design \[page 29\]](#)

The particular scenario you select can be based on the underlying development area you are assigned to, the choice of programming language, the required development objects, or the tools you want to use:

Database Development Scenarios

A database developer uses a variety of languages to develop a data model that can be exposed to a UI client, for example by HTTP (with an application service) or SQL (with a client interface such as ADBC or JDBC). In a database-development scenario, developers typically use languages such as SQLScript, the .hdbtable syntax family (hdbview, hdbsequence,...), or Core Data Services (CDS) to define the data-persistence model to which you add the corresponding analytic model. If you want to develop a data model that can be exposed to client requests, use the following table to help find the information you need to complete the most common development tasks.

Using features available in additional optional components (*), you can develop applications that perform the following tasks:

- Manage data streams, for example, to filter, aggregate or enrich data before it is committed to the database

- Perform real-time operational analytics on data
- Enhance, cleanse, and transform data from local or remote sources to make it more accurate and useful
- Analyze and process geospatial information
- Analyze and mine both structured and unstructured textual data and interlinked structured data

Table 3: Information by Database-Development Scenario

Programming Language	Development Artifacts	Tools	SAP HANA Information Source
SQL	Database elements, services, policies, extended storage/index, adapters and agents, remote sources and subscriptions, search, text mining and analysis, data streams (filters aggregators, and enrichment), information management, geo-spatial data *	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio) SAP HANA Web Workbench SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA	SQL and System Views Reference Text Analysis Developer Guide * Text Mining Developer Guide * Smart Data Streaming Developer Guide *
SQLScript	Tables, SQL Views, Procedures, UDFs, application & business functions...	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio) SAP HANA Web Workbench	SQLScript Reference BFL Reference PAL Reference
SAP HANA DB (.hdb* syntax; hdbtable, hdbview...)	Tables, SQL Views, Procedures, Search index (InA) ...	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio) SAP HANA Web Workbench	Developer Guide (XS classic) SQLScript Reference
SAP HANA DB (CDS syntax)	Entities, data types, contexts, SQL views, geo-spatial *, ...	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio) SAP HANA Web Workbench SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA	Developer Guide (XS classic) Developer Guide (for XS advanced) Spatial Reference
SAP HANA HDI	Tables, indexes, data types, procedures, SQL views, triggers, calculation views, analytic privileges, ...	SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA	Developer Guide (for XS advanced)
SAP HANA DB	Analytic and calculation views, decision tables, ...	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio) SAP HANA Web Workbench SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA	Developer Guide (XS classic) Developer Guide (for XS advanced) Modeling Guide (XS classic) Modeling Guide (XS advanced)
MDX	Analytics, BIMC tables and views	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio) SAP HANA Web Workbench SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA	SAP HANA Analytics Catalog (BIMC Views) Reference

Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

Application Development Scenarios

As an application developer, you use a variety of languages to develop applications that expose a SAP HANA data model to requests from UI clients. In an application-development scenario, developers typically use languages such as server-side JavaScript (XSJS) or an OData service to define the application business model that exposes the data model built by the database developer. You can call the application service from a client interface, for example, a browser or UI client. If you want to develop an application service that exposes an SAP HANA data model to client requests, use the following table to help find the information you need to complete the most common development tasks.

Table 4: Information by Application-Development Scenario

Programming Language	Development Artifacts	Tools	Information Source
SQLScript	SQLScript	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio)	Developer Guide
		SAP HANA Web Workbench	SQLScript Reference
XSJS (server-side JavaScript)	Server-side JavaScript services, libraries, API	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio)	Developer Guide (for XS classic)
		SAP HANA Web Workbench	XS JavaScript API Reference
Node.js	Server-side services, modules, libraries, API	SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA	Developer Guide (for XS advanced)
Java	Server-side services, libraries, API	SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA	Developer Guide (for XS advanced)
OData	OData services, query options, parameters	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio)	Developer Guide
		SAP HANA Web IDE	OData Reference 

UI Client Development Scenarios

As a developer of client applications, you use a variety of languages to develop a user interface (UI) client that displays permitted elements of an SAP HANA data model. In a UI-client development scenario, developers typically use languages such as SAPUI5 (HTML5) or JavaScript to define the UI client application. The UI client binds interface controls to actions that request data and display it in the required format. If you want to develop a UI client application that can be used to display an SAP HANA data model, use the following table to help find the information you need to complete the most common development tasks.

Table 5: Information by UI-Client Development Scenario

Programming Language	Development Artifacts	Tools	Information Source
SAPUI5	JS, UI5 Library, View, Control, ...	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio)	Developer Guide SAPUI5 Demo Kit and Documentation
JavaScript	Search queries, results, suggestions	Eclipse (SAP HANA studio)	Developer Guide SINA Search JavaScript Reference *

⚠ Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

1.3 Developer Scenarios

The possibility to run application specific code in SAP HANA creates several possibilities for developing SAP HANA based applications, representing various integration scenarios, and corresponding development processes.

Application developers can choose between the following scenarios when designing and building applications that access an SAP HANA data model:

- Native Application Development
Native applications are developed and run in SAP HANA, for example, using just SQLScript or the extended application services provided by the SAP HANA XS platform (or both)
- Non-native Application Development
Non-native applications are developed in a separate, external environment (for example, ABAP or Java) and connected to SAP HANA by means of an external application server and a client connection: ADBC, JDBC, ODBC, or ODBO. These more traditional scenarios only use SQL and native SQLScript procedures.

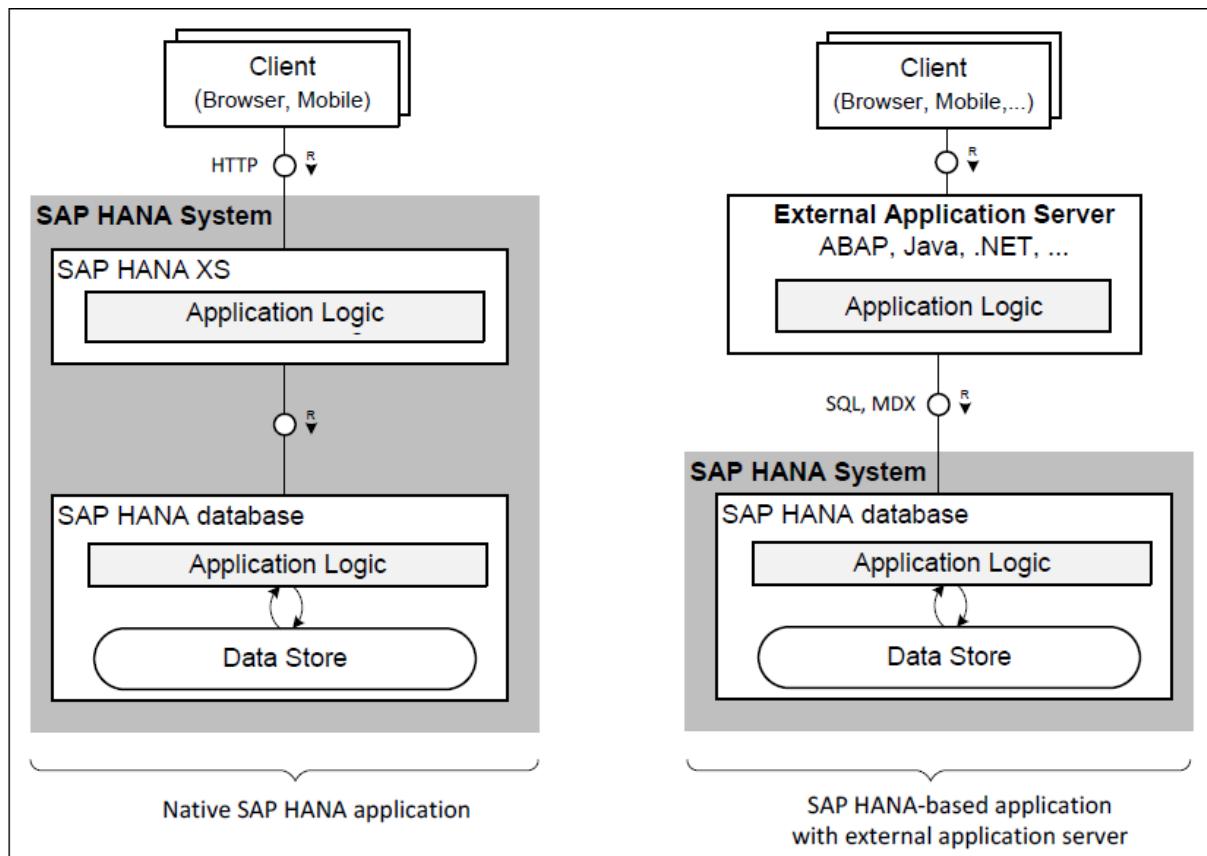


Figure 5: Native and Non-Native SAP HANA Application Architecture

The following diagram shows the scope of the languages and the environment you use in the various phases of the process of developing applications that harness the power of SAP HANA. For example, if you are developing native SAP HANA applications you can use CDS, HDBtable, or SQLScript to create design-time representations of objects that make up your data persistence model; you can use server-side JavaScript (XSJS) or OData services to build the application's business logic; and you can use SAPUI5 to build client user interfaces that are bound to the XSJS or OData services.

If you are developing non-native SAP HANA applications, you can choose between any of the languages that can connect by means of the client interfaces that SAP HANA supports, for example, ABAP (via ADBC) or Java (JDBC).

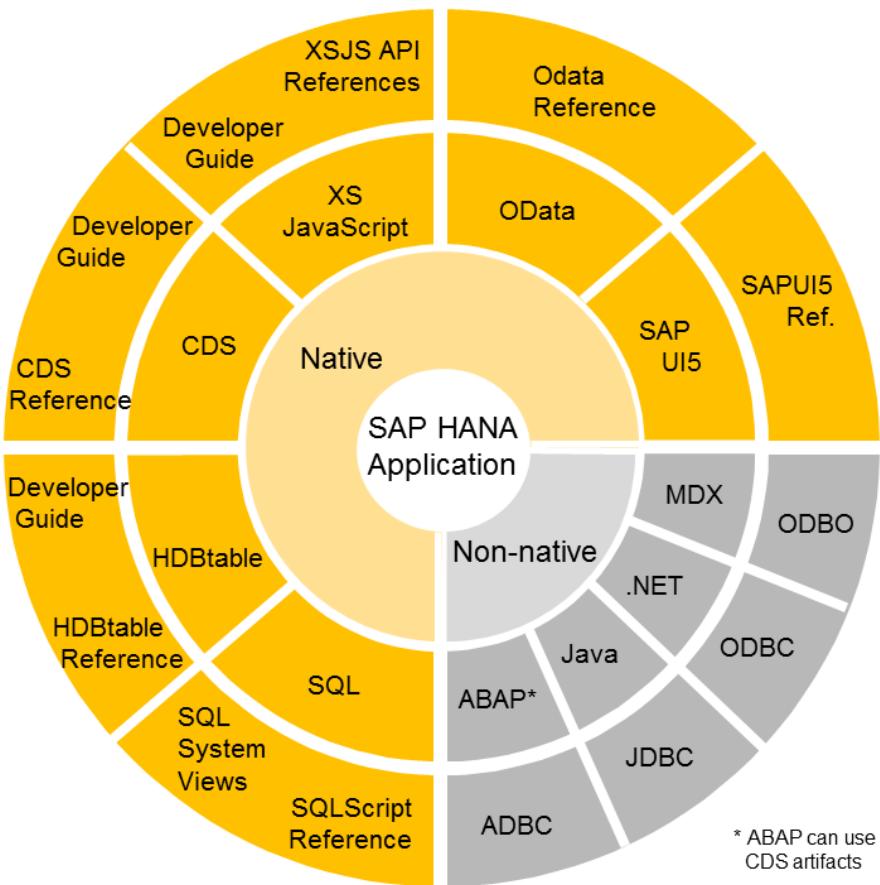


Figure 6: SAP HANA Applications and Development Languages

1.3.1 Developing Native SAP HANA Applications

In SAP HANA, native applications use the technology and services provided by the integrated SAP HANA XS platform.

The term “native application” refers to a scenario where applications are developed in the design-time environment provided by SAP HANA extended application services (SAP HANA XS) and use the integrated SAP HANA XS platform illustrated in the following graphic.

i Note

A program that consists purely of SQLScript is also considered a native SAP HANA application.

The server-centric approach to native application development envisaged for SAP HANA assumes the following high-level scenario:

- All application artifacts are stored in the SAP HANA repository
- Server-side procedural logic is defined in server-side (XS) JavaScript or SQLScript
- UI rendering occurs completely in the client (browser, mobile applications)

Each of the levels illustrated in the graphic is manifested in a particular technology and dedicated languages:

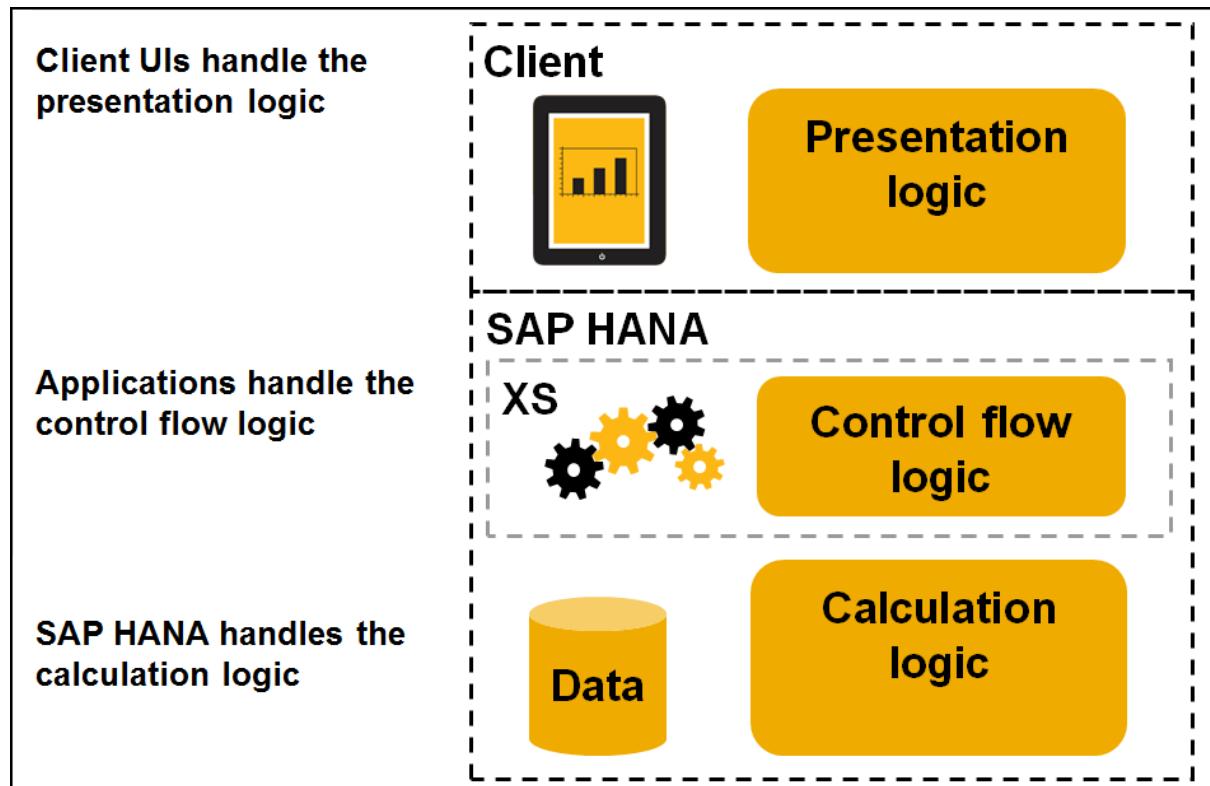


Figure 7: Native SAP HANA Application Development with SAP HANA XS

- Calculation Logic - data-processing technology:
 - Data:
SQL / SQLScript, Core Data Services (CDS), DDL, HDBtable
 - SQL / SQLScript
 - Calculation Engine Functions (CE_*)
- Note
 - SAP recommends you use SQL rather than the Calculation Engine functions.
- Application Function Library (AFL)
- Control-flow logic with SAP HANA XS:
 - OData
Validation models for OData services can be written in XS JavaScript or SQLScript
 - Server-Side JavaScript (XSJS)
HTTP requests are implemented directly in XS JavaScript
 - XMLA
- Client UI/Front-end technology:
 - HTML5 / SAPUI5
 - Client-side JavaScript

The development scenarios for native application development are aimed at the following broadly defined audiences:

Table 6: Target Development Audience for Native SAP HANA Applications

Audience	Language	Tools	Development Artifacts
Database developers	SQLScript, CDS, hdb* SAP	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SAP HANA studio • SAP HANA Web-based Workbench 	Database tables, views, procedures; user-defined functions (UDF) and triggers; analytic objects; data authorization...
Application developers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Professional (XS JS) • Casual/business 	XS JavaScript, OData, SQLScript, ...	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SAP HANA studio • SAP HANA Web-based Workbench 	Control-flow logic, data services, calculation logic...
UI/client developers	SAPUI5, JavaScript, ...	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SAP HANA studio • SAP HANA Web-based Workbench 	UI shell, navigation, themes (look/feel), controls, events, ...

Related Information

[Database Development Scenarios \[page 33\]](#)

[Professional Application Development Scenarios \[page 35\]](#)

[UI Client-Application Development Scenarios \[page 35\]](#)

1.3.1.1 Database Development Scenarios

The focus of the database developer is primarily on the underlying data model which the application services expose to UI clients.

The database developer defines the data-persistence and analytic models that are used to expose data in response to client requests via HTTP. The following table lists some of the tasks typically performed by the database developer and indicates where to find the information that is required to perform the task.

Table 7: Typical Database-Development Tasks

Task	Details	Information Source
Create tables, SQL views, sequences...	Code, syntax, ...	SQLScript Reference http://help.sap.com/hana/SAP_HANA_SQL_and_System_Views_Reference_en.pdf Developer Guide
	Packaging, activation, implementation, ...	Developer Guide

Task	Details	Information Source
Create attribute, analytic, calculation views	Code, syntax, ...	SQLScript Reference Modeling Guide
	Packaging, activation, implementation, ...	Developer Guide
	Examples, background	Modeling Guide
Create/Write SQLScript procedures, UDFs, triggers...	Code, syntax, ...	SQLScript Reference http://help.sap.com/hana/SAP_HANA_SQL_and_System_Views_Reference_en.pdf Developer Guide
	Packaging, activation, implementation, ...	Developer Guide
Create/Use application functions	Code, syntax, ...	SQLScript Reference BFL Reference (*) PAL Reference (*) Developer Guide
	Packaging, activation, implementation, ...	Developer Guide

Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

1.3.1.2 Professional Application Development Scenarios

The primary focus of the professional application developer is to create applications.

The professional application developer creates server-side applications that define the business logic required to serve client requests, for example, for data created and exposed by the database developer. The following table lists some of the tasks typically performed by the professional application developer and indicates where to find the information that is required to perform the task.

Table 8: Typical Application-Development Tasks

Task	Details	Information Source
Create an XSJS service: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Extract data from SAP HANA• Control application response• Bind to a UI control/event	Context, examples, libraries, debugging, implementation, ...	Developer Guide
	Function code, syntax...	XS JavaScript Reference
	SQL code, syntax, ...	SQLScript Reference
	UI controls, events...	SAPUI5 Demo Kit (version 1.28)
Create an OData service (for example, to bind a UI control/event to existing data tables or views)	Context, service syntax, examples, libraries, debugging, implementation, ...	Developer Guide
	Query options, syntax...	OData Reference ↗
	UI controls, events...	SAPUI5 Demo Kit (version 1.28)

1.3.1.3 UI Client-Application Development Scenarios

Developers can build client applications to display a SAP HANA data model exposed by SAP HANA XS services.

The user-interface (UI) developer designs and creates client applications which bind business logic to controls, events, and views in the client application user interface. The UI developer can use SAPUI5 (based on HTML5) or client-side JavaScript to build the client applications. In a UI client development scenario, a developer performs (amongst others) the tasks listed in the following table, which also indicates where to find the information required to perform the task.

Table 9: Typical UI-Client Development Tasks

Task	Details	Information Source
Create an SAPUI5 application to display SAP HANA data exposed by an XSJS/OData service	Context, service code/syntax, packaging, activation ...	Developer Guide
	UI controls, events...	SAPUI5 Demo Kit (version 1.28)
Build the graphical user interface of an SAPUI5 application using UI services (widgets)	Context, tools ...	Developer Guide
	UI controls, events...	SAPUI5 Demo Kit (version 1.28)

1.3.2 Developing Non-Native SAP HANA Applications

In SAP HANA, non-native applications do use the technology and services provided by the integrated SAP HANA XS platform; they run in an external application server.

The term “non-native application” refers to a scenario where you develop applications in an environment outside of SAP HANA, for example, SAP NetWeaver (ABAP or Java). The non-native application logic runs in an external application server which accesses the SAP HANA data model (for example, tables and analytic views) by means of a standard client interface such as JDBC, ODBC, or ODBO using SQL and native SQLScript procedures.

i Note

Technically, it is also possible for non-native front-end applications to connect to the SAP HANA database directly via SQL or MDX, for example when SAP HANA is used as a data source for Microsoft Excel. However, it is not recommended to use such an approach for SAP business applications.

The following figure shows how you use the client interfaces to connect your non-native SAP HANA application to an SAP HANA data model.

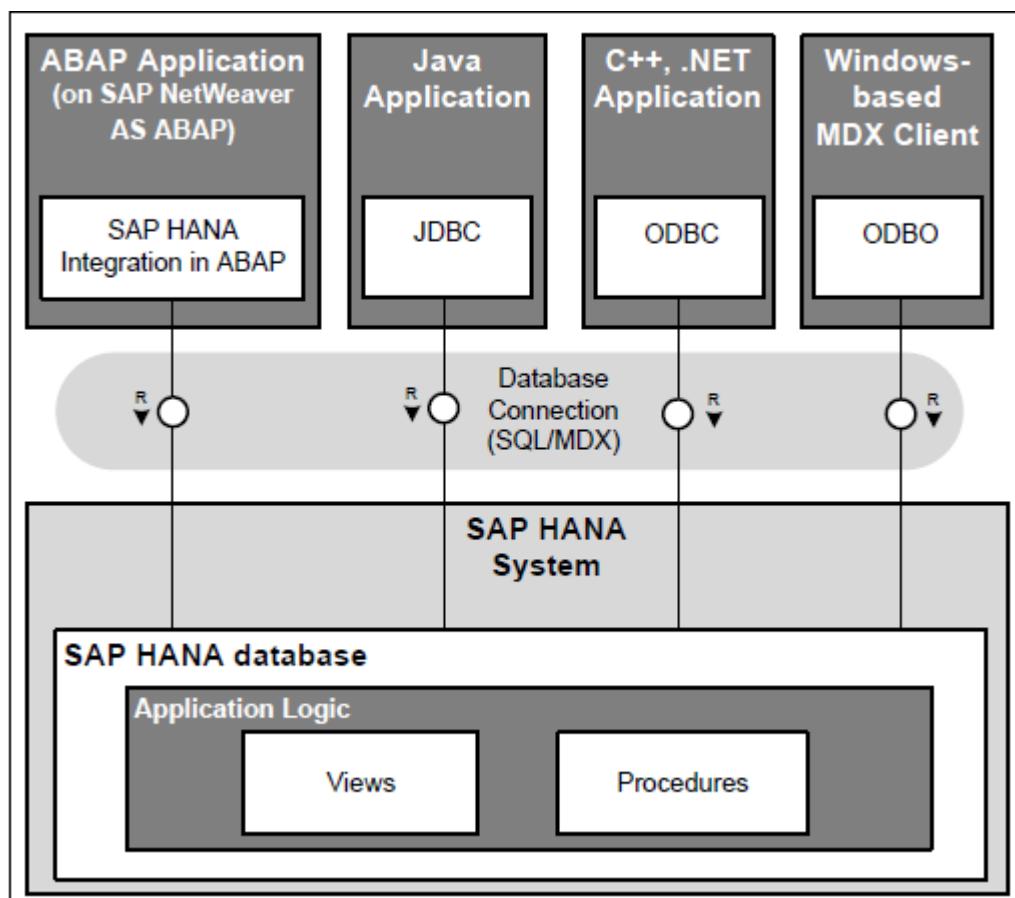


Figure 8: Non-native SAP HANA Application Architecture

Related Information

[ABAP Client Interface \[page 37\]](#)

[The JDBC Client Interface \[page 37\]](#)

[ODBC Client Interface \[page 38\]](#)

[ODBO Client Interface \[page 38\]](#)

1.3.2.1 ABAP Client Interface

ABAP database connectivity (ADBC) provides the benefits of a native SQL connection by means of `EXEC SQL`. ADBC is basically a series of `CL_SQL*` classes, which simplify and abstract the `EXEC SQL` blocks.

You can build a custom ABAP application that runs in an external application environment but connects directly to an SAP HANA data model using the client ADBC interface. Support for external ABAP applications includes dedicated Eclipse-based tools, external views (ABAP Dictionary objects that can be accessed like a normal dictionary view), and ABAP managed database procedures (ABAP dictionary objects that enable you to map procedure parameters to the ABAP parameters).

i Note

It is possible to make use of native data-persistence objects in your ABAP application, for example, design-time data-persistence objects specified using the Core Data Services (CDS) syntax.

To build an ABAP application that accesses an SAP HANA data model, you need to perform the following high-level steps

1. Write an ABAP application in your own development environment, for example using the ABAP tools-integration in Eclipse.
2. Connect the ABAP development environment to SAP HANA using the ADBC interface; the ABAP environment can be either:
 - An ABAP application server
 - Your development machine
3. Run the ABAP application to connect to a SAP HANA data model.

1.3.2.2 The JDBC Client Interface

Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) is a Java-based application programming interface (API) which includes a set of functions that enable Java applications to access a data model in a database. The SAP HANA client includes a dedicated JDBC interface.

You can build a custom Java application that runs in an external application environment but connects directly to an SAP HANA data model using the client JDBC interface. To build a Java application that accesses an SAP HANA data model, you need to perform the following high-level steps:

1. Write a Java application in your own development environment.

2. Connect the Java development environment to SAP HANA using the JDBC client interface; the Java environment can be either:
 - A Java application server
 - Your development machine
3. Run the Java application to connect to an SAP HANA data model.

Related Information

[Connect to SAP HANA via JDBC \[page 884\]](#)

1.3.2.3 ODBC Client Interface

Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) is a standard application programming interface (API) that provides a set of functions that enable applications to access a data model in a database. The SAP HANA client includes a dedicated ODBC interface.

You can build a custom .NET application (using C++, C#, Visual Basic and so on) that runs in an external application environment but connects directly to an SAP HANA data model using the client ODBC interface. To build an .NET application that accesses an SAP HANA data model, you need to perform the following high-level steps:

1. Install the client ODBC interface on your development machine.
2. Write a .NET application in your development environment.
3. Connect the .NET application to SAP HANA using the ODBC interface.
4. Run the .NET application to connect to an SAP HANA data model.

i Note

The SAP HANA data provider for Microsoft ADO.NET is installed as part of the SAP HANA client installation.

Related Information

[Connect to SAP HANA via ODBC \[page 880\]](#)

1.3.2.4 ODBO Client Interface

OLE database for OLAP (ODBO) is a standard application programming interface (API) that enables Windows clients to exchange data with an OLAP server. The SAP HANA client includes an ODBO driver which applications can use to connect to the database and execute MDX statements.

You can build a Windows-based client application that runs in an external application environment but connects directly to an SAP HANA data model, for example, to run queries with multidimensional expressions.

(MDX) using the native SAP HANA MDX interface. To build an MDX application that accesses a SAP HANA data model, you need to perform the following high-level steps:

1. Install the client ODBO interface on your development machine.
2. Write an application that uses multi-dimensional expressions (MDX) in your own development environment.
3. Connect the application to SAP HANA using the ODBO interface.
4. Run the Windows-based MDX application to connect to an SAP HANA data model.

Related Information

[Connect to SAP HANA via ODBO \[page 891\]](#)

1.3.2.5 SAP HANA Data Provider for Microsoft ADO.NET

SAP HANA includes a data provider that enables applications using Microsoft .NET to connect to the SAP HANA database.

You can build a custom .NET application (for example, using C++, C#, or Visual Basic) that runs in an external application environment but connects directly to an SAP HANA data model using the SAP HANA data provider for Microsoft ADO.NET. The SAP HANA data provider for Microsoft ADO.NET is installed as part of the SAP HANA client installation. To build a .NET application that accesses an SAP HANA data model, you need to perform the following high-level steps:

1. Install the SAP HANA data provider for Microsoft ADO.NET on your development machine.
2. Write a .NET application in your development environment, for example, using Visual Studio.
3. Connect the .NET application to SAP HANA using the client interface included with the SAP HANA data provider for Microsoft ADO.NET.
4. Run the .NET application to connect to an SAP HANA data model.

You can use the SAP HANA data provider for Microsoft ADO.NET to develop Microsoft .NET applications with Microsoft Visual Studio by including both a reference to the data provider and a line in your source code referencing the data-provider classes.

2 Getting Started

To understand which tools SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) provides to enable you to start developing native applications, you need to run through the process of building a small application, for example, in the form of a “Hello World” application.

As part of the getting-started process, you go through the following steps:

- Prerequisites

A short list of the tools and permissions required to start working with the SAP HANA application-development tools.

- Workspaces and projects SAP HANA projects

If you are using the SAP HANA studio, you must create a shared project, which you use to group all your application-related artifacts and synchronize any changes with the repository workspace.

i Note

If you are using the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench, you do not need to create a project of a repository workspace.

- Creating application descriptors

Each native SAP HANA application requires descriptor files. The application descriptors are the core files that you use to describe an application's framework within SAP HANA XS, for example: to mark the root point from which content can be served, which content is to be exposed, or who has access to the content.

- Tutorials

A selection of “Hello World” tutorials are used to demonstrate the application-development process in SAP HANA XS and show you how to produce a simple application quickly and easily. Some of the tutorials in this guide refer to models that are included in the demonstration content provided with the SAP HANA Interactive Education (SHINE) delivery unit (DU). The SHINE DU is available for download in the SAP Software Download Center.

i Note

Access to the SAP Software Download Center is only available to SAP customers and requires logon credentials.

Related Information

[Prerequisites \[page 41\]](#)

2.1 Prerequisites

To start working with the tools provided to enable application development on SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), it is necessary to ensure that the developers have the required software and access permissions.

Before you start developing applications using the features and tools provided by the SAP HANA XS, bear in mind the following prerequisites. Developers who want to build applications to run on SAP HANA XS need the following tools, accounts, and privileges:

i Note

The following can only be provided by someone who has the required authorizations in SAP HANA, for example, an SAP HANA administrator.

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to SAP HANA developer tools, for example: SAP HANA studio or the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench.

i Note

To provide access to the SAP HANA repository from the SAP HANA studio, the EXECUTE privilege is required for SYS.REPOSITORY_REST, the database procedure through which the REST API is tunneled.

- Access to the SAP HANA repository
- Access to selected run-time catalog objects
- Some of the tutorials in this guide refer to models that are included in the demonstration content provided with the SAP HANA Interactive Education (SHINE) delivery unit (DU). The SHINE DU is available for download in the SAP Software Download Center.

i Note

Access to the SAP Software Download Center is only available to SAP customers and requires logon credentials.

2.2 SAP HANA Studio

The SAP HANA studio is an Eclipse-based development and administration tool for working with SAP HANA. You use the SAP HANA studio to develop native applications that can take advantage of the benefits provided by SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS).

One of the most important features of the Eclipse-based environment is the *perspective*. SAP HANA provides a number of dedicated perspectives that are aimed at the application developer. As an application developer, you frequently use the following perspectives:

- The *SAP HANA Development* perspective

Provides views and menu options that enable you to perform all the tasks relating to application development on SAP HANA XS, for example: to manage application-development projects, display content of application packages, and browse the SAP HANA repository. You can also define your data-persistence model here by using design-time artifacts to define tables, views, sequences, and schemas.

- The *Debug* perspective
Provides views and menu options that help you test your applications, for example: to view the source code, monitor or modify variables, and set break points.
- The *Modeler* perspective
Provides views and menu options that enable you to define your analytic model, for example, attribute, analytic, and calculation views of SAP HANA data.
- The *Team Synchronizing* perspective
Provides views and menu options that enable you to synchronize artifacts between your local file system and the SAP HANA Repository.
- The *Administration Console* perspective
Provides views that enable you to perform administrative tasks on SAP HANA instances.

2.2.1 The SAP HANA Development Perspective

SAP HANA studio's *SAP HANA Development Perspective* includes a selection of programming tools that developers can use to build applications in SAP HANA. You can customize the perspective to include your own favorite tools, too.

The *SAP HANA Development perspective* is where you will do most of your programming work, for example:

- Creating and sharing projects
- Creating and modifying development objects
- Managing development object versions
- Committing development objects to the SAP HANA repository

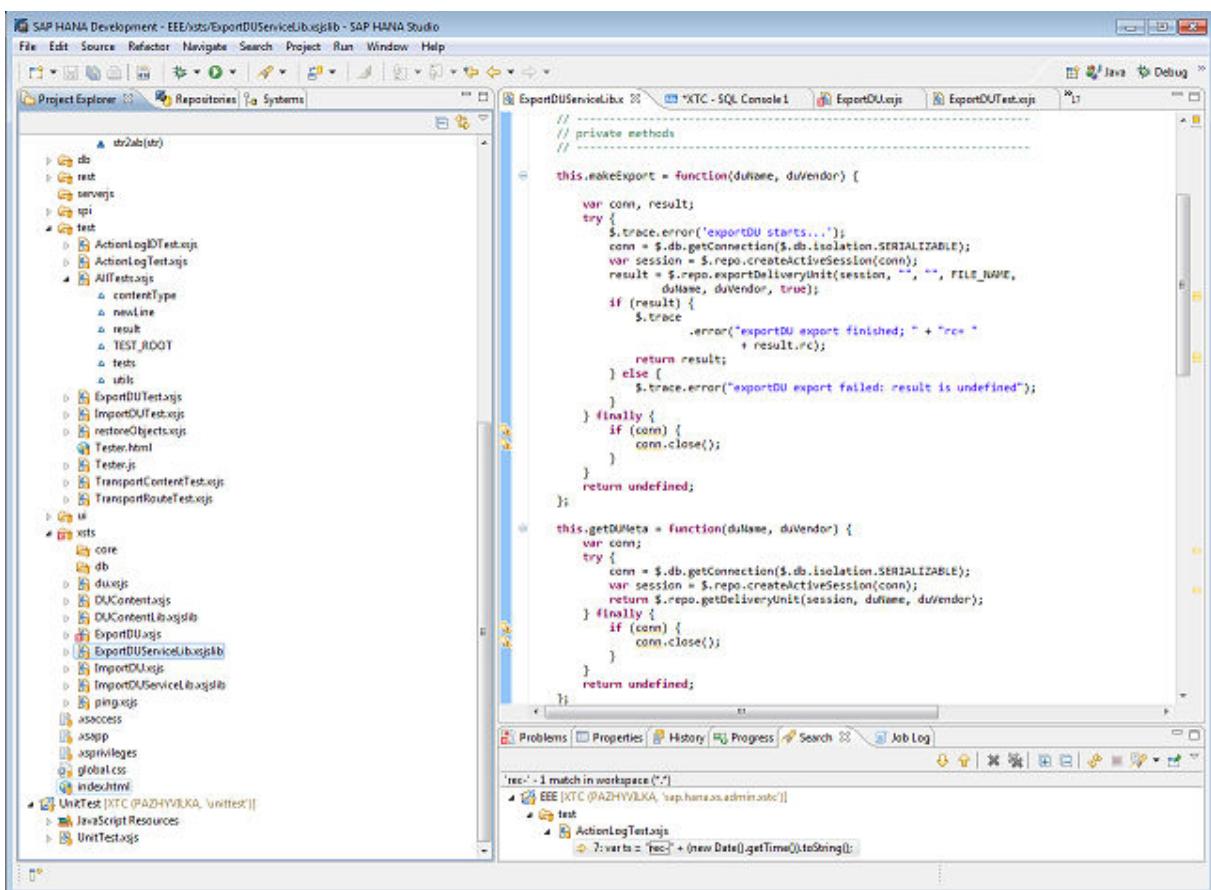
i Note

By default, saving a file automatically commits the saved version of the file to the Repository.

- Activating development objects in the SAP HANA repository

The SAP HANA Development perspective contains the following main work areas:

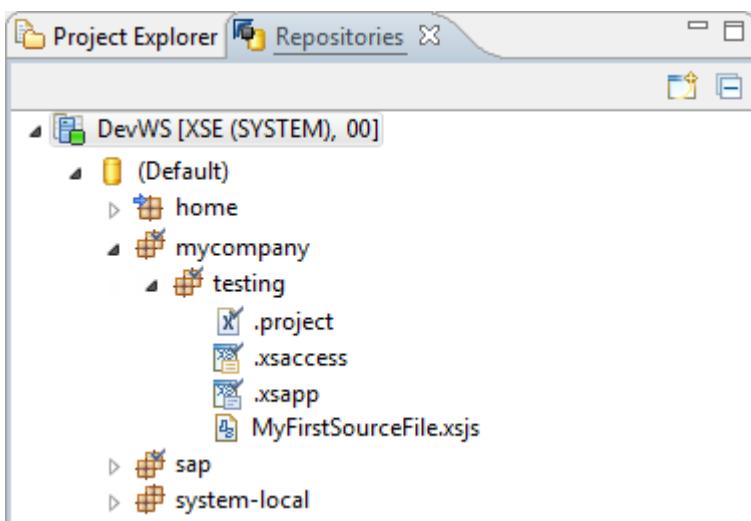
- Explorers/Browsers
Selected views enable you to browse your development artifacts: the objects on your workstation, and the objects in the repository of the SAP HANA system you are working with.
- Editors
Specialized editors enable you to work with different types of development objects, for example, application-configuration files, JavaScript source files, SQLScript files.



2.2.1.1 The Repositories View

You can browse and perform actions on the contents of the SAP HANA Repository on a specific SAP HANA system.

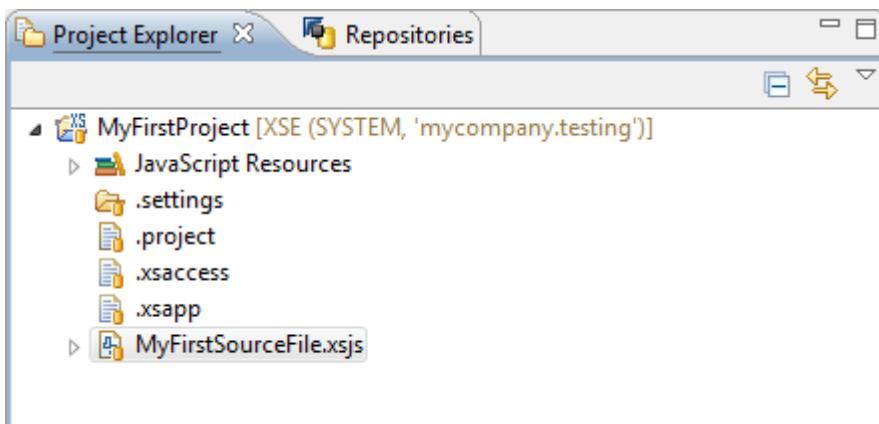
The [Repositories](#) view displays the contents of the repository on a specific SAP HANA system. You can navigate the package hierarchy and check out project files from the SAP HANA Repository; the checked out files are downloaded to the workspace on your local file system, where you can work on them and modify them as required.



The *Repositories* view is a list of repository workspaces that you have created for development purposes on various SAP HANA systems. Generally, you create a workspace, check out files from the repository, and then do most of your development work in the *Project Explorer*. However, with more recent versions of SAP HANA, you can use the *Repositories* view to perform actions directly on repository objects in multiple workspaces, for example: edit objects, activate objects, and manage object versions - all without the need to set up a project. The *Repositories* view also provides direct access to lifecycle-management tools.

2.2.1.2 The Project Explorer View

The *Project Explorer* view is the most commonly used element of the *SAP HANA Development* perspective; it shows you the development files located in the repository workspace you create on your workstation. You use the *Project Explorer* view to create and modify development files. Using context-sensitive menus, you can also commit the development files to the SAP HANA repository and activate them. Bear in mind that saving a file in shared project commits the saved version of the file to the repository automatically.



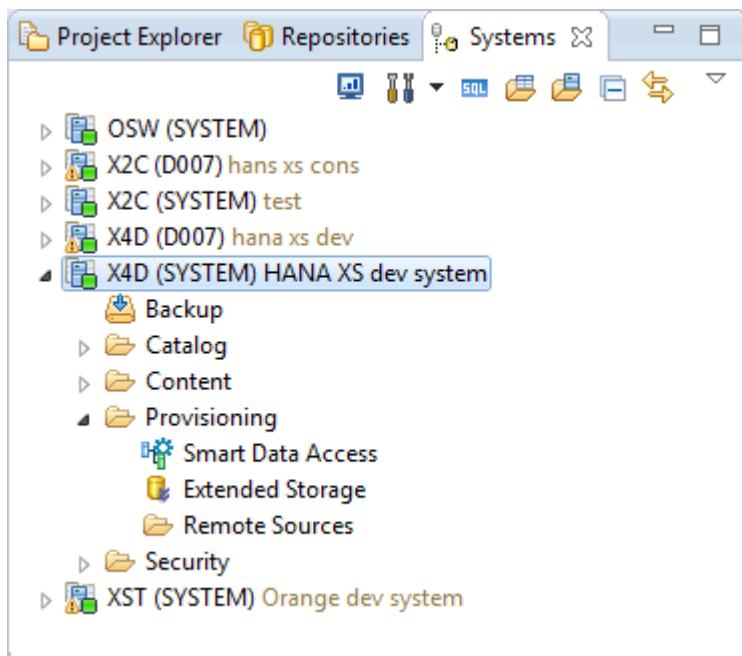
➔ Tip

Files with names that begin with the period (.), for example, .xsapp, are sometimes not visible in the *Project Explorer*. To enable the display of all files in the *Project Explorer* view, use the [▶ Customize View > Available Customization](#) option and clear all check boxes.

2.2.1.3 The Systems View

The *Systems* view is one of the basic organizational elements included with the *Development* perspective.

You can use the *Systems* view to display the contents of the SAP HANA database that is hosting your development project artifacts. The *Systems* view of the SAP HANA database shows both activated objects (objects with a runtime instance) and the design-time objects you create but have not yet activated.



The *Systems* view is divided into the following main sections:

- **Security**
Contains the roles and users defined for this system.
- **Catalog**
Contains the database objects that have been activated, for example, from design-time objects or from SQL DDL statements. The objects are divided into schemas, which is a way to organize activated database objects.
- **Provisioning**
Contains administrator tools for configuring smart data access, data provisioning, and remote data sources
- **Content**
Contains design-time database objects, both those that have been activated and those not activated. If you want to see other development objects, use the *Repositories* view.

For more information on SAP HANA Repositories View, see [SAP HANA Developer Guide](#).

2.3 SAP HANA XS Application Descriptors

Each application that you want to develop and deploy on SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) required so-called “application descriptor” files. The application descriptors describe an application's framework within SAP HANA XS.

The framework defined by the SAP HANA XS application descriptors includes the root point in the package hierarchy where content is to be served to client requests. When defining the application framework, you also have to specify whether the application is permitted to expose data to client requests, what (if any) authentication method is required to access application content, and (optionally) what if any privileges are required to perform actions on the packages and package content that are exposed.

- The application descriptor

The core file that you use to describe an application's framework within SAP HANA XS. The package that contains the application descriptor file becomes the root path of the resources exposed to client requests by the application you develop.

- The application-access file

The configuration file you use to specify who or what is authorized to access the content exposed by an SAP HANA XS application package and what content they are allowed to see. For example, you use the application-access file to specify the following:

- The application content that can be exposed to client requests
- The authentication method used to enable access to package content, for example, form-based, basic, or none at all.

2.4 SAP HANA Projects

In SAP HANA, a project groups together all the artifacts you need for a specific part of the application-development environment.

Before you can start the application-development workflow, you must create a project, which you use to group together all your application-related artifacts. However, a project requires a repository workspace, which enables you to synchronize changes in local files with changes in the SAP HANA repository. You can create the workspace before or during the project-creation step. As part of the project-creation process, you perform the following tasks:

1. Add a development system
2. Create a development workspace.

The place where you work on development objects is called a repository *workspace*. The workspace is the link between the SAP HANA repository and your local file system. When you check out a package from the repository, SAP HANA copies the contents of the package hierarchy to your workspace. To ensure that the changes you make to project-related files are visible to other team members, you must commit the artifacts back into the repository and activate them.

i Note

By default, saving the file automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository.

3. Create a project

You use the project to collect all your application-related artifacts in one convenient place. Shared projects enable multiple people to work on the same files at the same time.

i Note

Files checked out of the repository are not locked; conflicts resulting from concurrent changes to the same file must be resolved manually, using the *Merge* tools provided in the context-sensitive *Team* menu.

4. Share a project

Sharing a project establishes a link between project-specific files in your development workspace and the SAP HANA repository. A shared project ensures that changes you make to project-related files in your development workspace are synchronized with the SAP HANA repository and, as a result, visible to other team members. Shared projects are available for import by other members of the application-development team.

2.5 Tutorials

Tutorials are a good way to understand quickly what is required to write a simple native application for SAP HANA XS.

In this section you can use the following tutorials to help you understand the basic steps you need to perform when developing native SAP HANA XS applications:

- Hello OData

A simple application that enables you to test the SAP HANA OData interface by exposing an OData collection for analysis and display in a client application.

- Hello World in server-side JavaScript (XSJS)

A simple application written in server-side JavaScript which displays the words “Hello World” in a Web browser along with a string extracted from a table in the SAP HANA database.

i Note

The namespace `sap` in the SAP HANA repository is restricted. Place the new packages and application artifacts that you create during the tutorials in your own namespace, for example, `com.acme`, or use the `system.local` area for testing.

Related Information

[Tutorial: Use the SAP HANA OData Interface \[page 65\]](#)

[Tutorial: My First SAP HANA Application \[page 48\]](#)

2.5.1 Tutorial: My First SAP HANA Application

This topic describes the steps required to develop a simple application that runs natively in SAP HANA.

Context

This tutorial shows you how to use the SAP HANA studio to develop a functional SAP HANA application. Although it is simple, the tutorial demonstrates the development process that you can apply to all types of application-development scenarios.

The tutorial shows how to create a simple SAP HANA application. The application uses server-side JavaScript code to retrieve data from SAP HANA by executing SQL statements in the SAP HANA database. The retrieved data is displayed in a Web browser. During the tutorial, you use tools provided in the SAP HANA studio to perform the following tasks:

- Connect to an SAP HANA system
Add (and connect to) an SAP HANA system, which hosts the repository where development objects are stored
- Create a repository workspace
Create a development workspace which enables you to synchronize the development artifacts in your local file system with the repository hosted on the SAP HANA system you connect to.
- Create and share a project
Add a project which you can use to hold the application-development artifacts in a convenient central location.
Sharing the project makes the contents of the new project available to other members of the application-development team by linking the local project to the SAP HANA repository. In this way, you can manage object versions and synchronize changes to development objects.
- Write server-side JavaScript code
Use JavaScript code to extract data from the SAP HANA database in response to a client request; the code will include SQLScript to perform the data extraction.
- Display data
Display data extracted from the SAP HANA database in a Web browser.

Related Information

[Tutorial: Add an SAP HANA System \[page 49\]](#)

[Tutorial: Add a Repository Workspace \[page 52\]](#)

[Tutorial: Add an Application Project \[page 54\]](#)

[Tutorial: Write Server-Side JavaScript \[page 59\]](#)

[Tutorial: Retrieve Data from SAP HANA \[page 63\]](#)

2.5.1.1 Tutorial: Add an SAP HANA System

Application-development artifacts are stored and managed in the SAP HANA repository. To connect to an SAP HANA repository, you must add the system to SAP HANA studio.

Prerequisites

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to SAP HANA studio

Note

To provide access to the SAP HANA repository from the SAP HANA studio, the EXECUTE privilege is required for SYS.REPOSITORY_REST, the database procedure through which the REST API is tunneled.

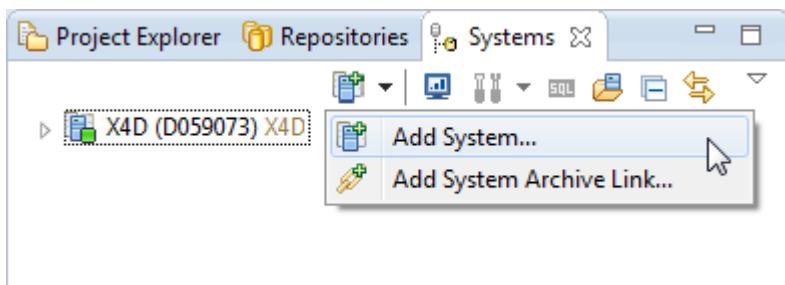
- Access to the SAP HANA Repository

Context

You must add a connection to the SAP HANA system hosting the repository that stores the application-development artifacts you will be working with.

Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. In the *Systems* view, click **[+] Add System...** and choose *Add System...*.



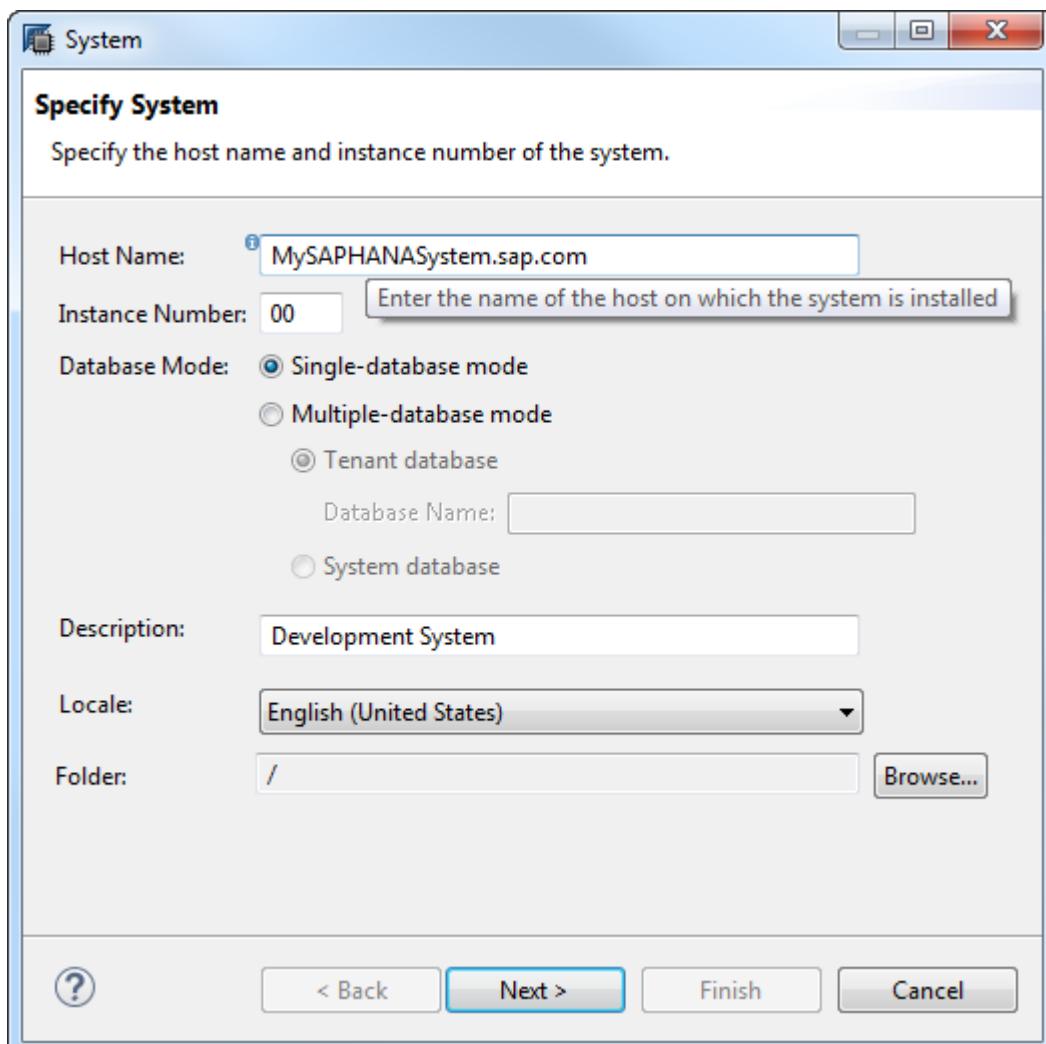
4. Type the details of the SAP HANA system in the following fields:
 - Host Name:
The name of the server hosting the SAP HANA database instance, for example, `dev.host.acme.com`
If you are adding a tenant database in a multi-database system, you can specify either the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the system hosting the tenant database or the virtual host name for

the tenant database. Every tenant database requires a virtual host name so that the system's internal SAP Web Dispatcher can forward HTTP requests to the XS server of the correct database.

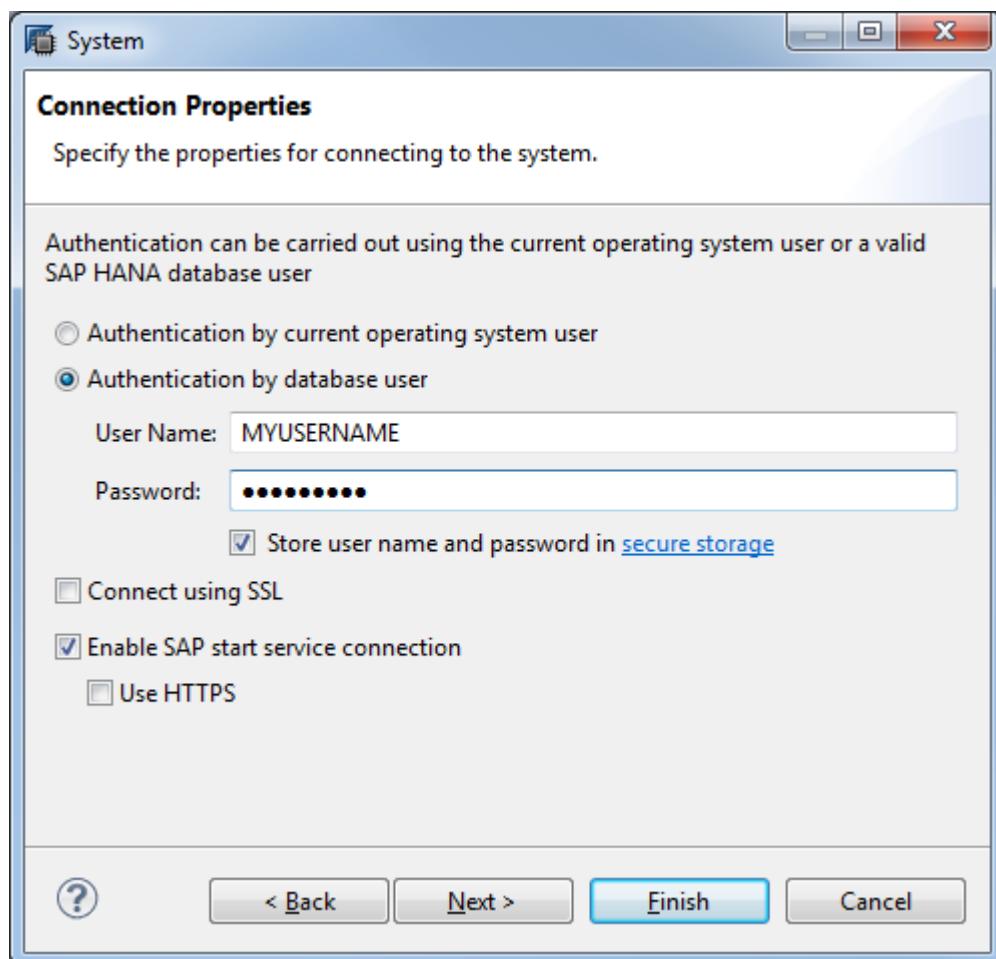
→ Tip

If you do not enter the virtual host name for the tenant database here, you must specify it explicitly as the XS server host in the system properties. You can do this after you have finished adding the system. In the *Systems* view, right-click the system whose properties you want to modify and choose **Properties > XS Properties**.

- Instance Number
SAP HANA instance number on that server, for example, **00**
- Description
A display name for the system you are adding. When you start working with a lot of systems, you will need to label and recognize the systems in the SAP HANA studio. Enter **Development System**.

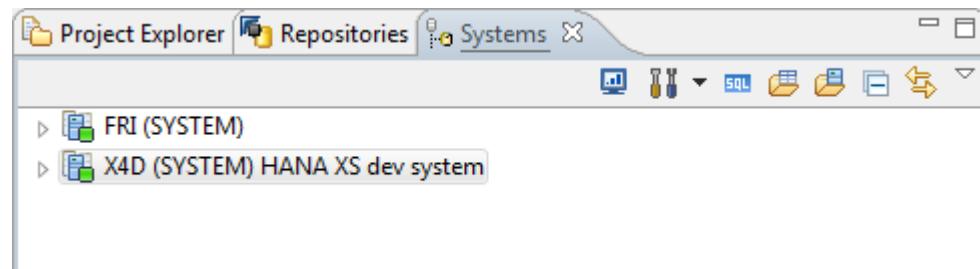


5. Select **Next**.
6. Enter a user name and password for the connection, and select **Finish**.



Results

After adding the system, you will see the system in the *Systems* view.



2.5.1.2 Tutorial: Add a Repository Workspace

The place where you work on development objects is called a repository workspace. The workspace is the link between the SAP HANA repository and your local file system.

Prerequisites

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to SAP HANA studio
- Access to the SAP HANA Repository

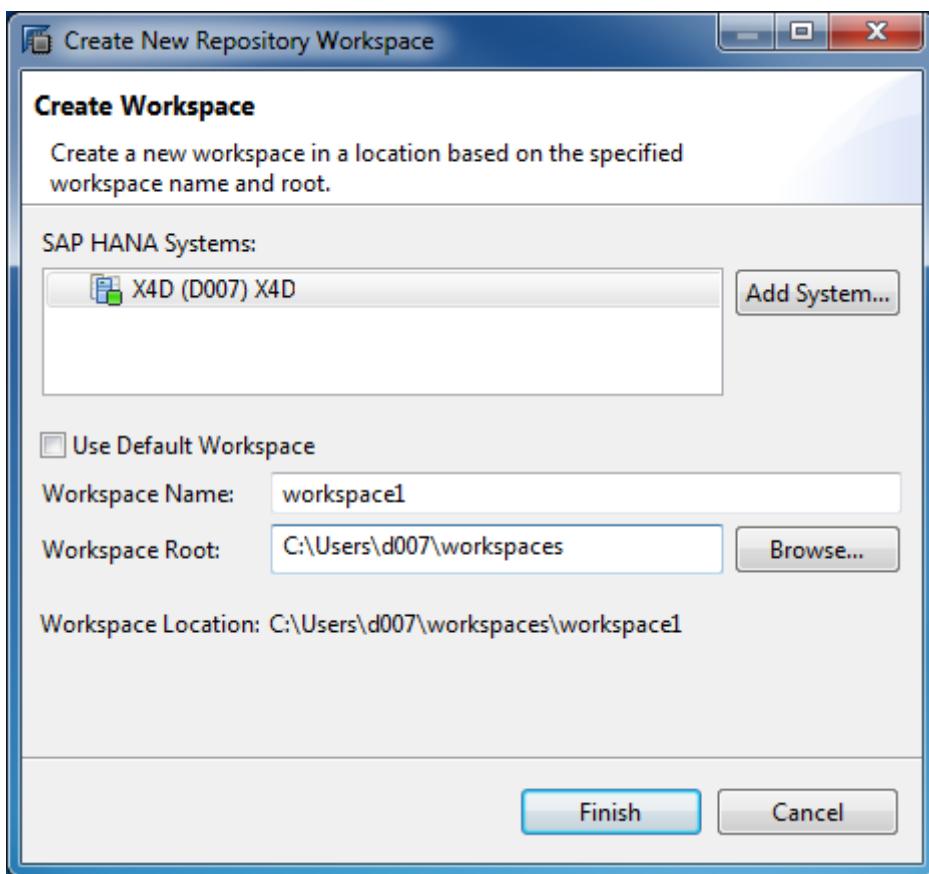
Context

After you add the SAP HANA system hosting the repository that stores your application-development files, you must specify a repository workspace, which is the location in your file system where you save and work on the development files.

To create a repository workspace, perform the following steps:

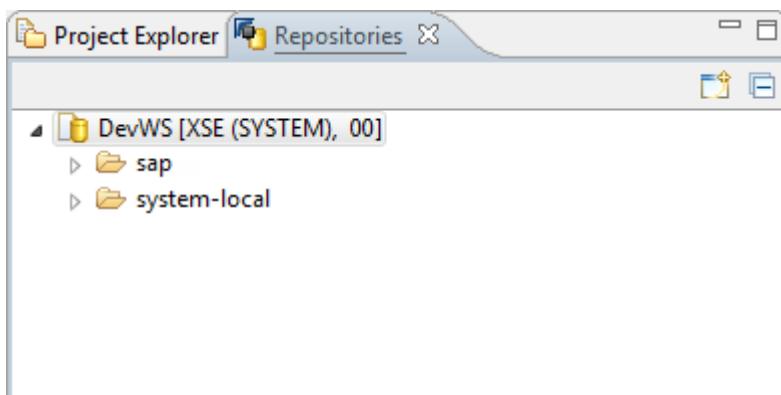
Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA studio.
2. In the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Repositories* view.
3. In the *Repositories* view, choose  *File*  *New*  *Repository Workspace*.
4. You must provide the following information:
 - SAP HANA system
The name of the SAP HANA system hosting the repository that you want to synchronize your workspace with; choose the same system you just added for this tutorial.
 - Workspace Name
If a default repository workspace exists, uncheck the *Default workspace* option and enter a workspace name; the workspace name can be anything you like, for example, **DevWS**.
A folder with the name you type is created below the *Workspace Root*.
 - Workspace root
The *Workspace Root* is a folder that contains the workspace you create in this step. The *Workspace Root* can be anywhere on your local file system. For this tutorial, create a folder at **c:\SAPHANAworkspaces** and make this the *Workspace Root*.

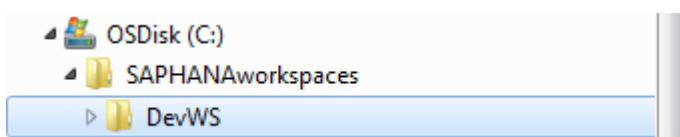


5. Click *Finish*.

In the *Repositories* view, you see your workspace, which enables you to browse the repository of the system tied to this workspace. The repository packages are displayed as folders.



At the same time, a folder will be added to your file system to hold all your development files.



6. Remove a repository workspace.

If it is necessary to remove a workspace, you can choose between multiple deletion options; the option you choose determines what is removed, from where (local file system or remote repository), and what, if anything, is retained.

- a. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
- b. Choose the *Repositories* view and expand the repository node containing the workspace you want to remove.
- c. Right-click the workspace you want to remove.
- d. Choose the workspace-deletion mode.

The following modes apply when you delete a workspace in SAP HANA studio:

Table 10: Workspace Deletion Modes

Workspace Deletion Mode	Description
<i>Delete</i>	Remove workspace; delete all workspace-related local files; delete related changes to remote (repository) data.
<i>Remove from client (keep remote changes)</i>	Remove workspace from local client system; delete all local workspace-related files; retain changes to remote (repository) data.
<i>Disconnect local from remote (keep changes)</i>	Keep the workspace but remove the workspace label from the list of workspaces displayed in the <i>Repositories</i> view. The connection to the disconnected workspace can be reestablished at any time with the option <i>Import Local Repository Workspaces</i> .

2.5.1.3 Tutorial: Add an Application Project

You use the project to collect all the development artifacts relating to a particular part of an application in one convenient place.

Prerequisites

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to SAP HANA studio
- Access to an SAP HANA Repository workspace

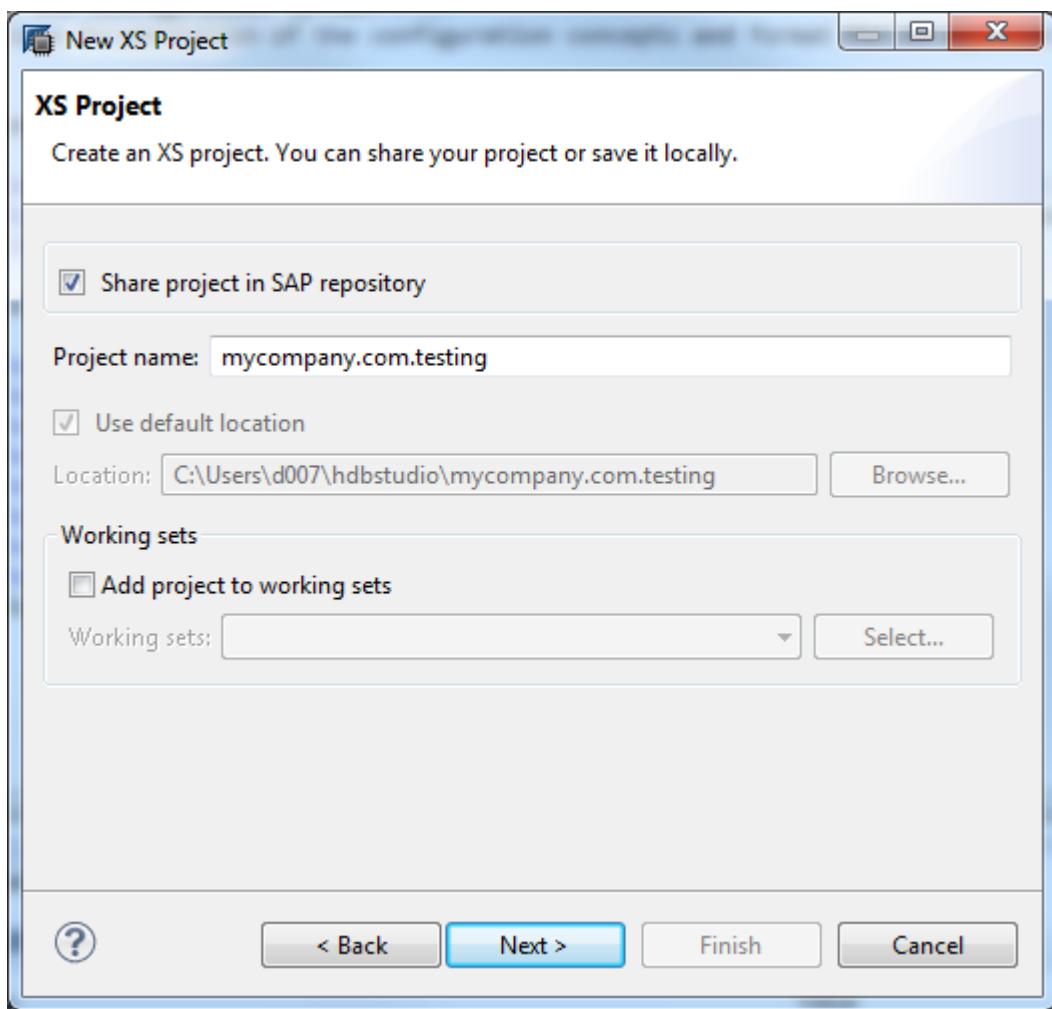
Context

After you set up a development environment for the chosen SAP HANA system, you can add a project to contain all the development objects you want to create as part of the application-development process.

There are a variety of project types for different types of development objects. Generally, a project type ensures that only the necessary libraries are imported to enable you to work with development objects that are specific to a project type. In this tutorial, you create an [XS Project](#).

Procedure

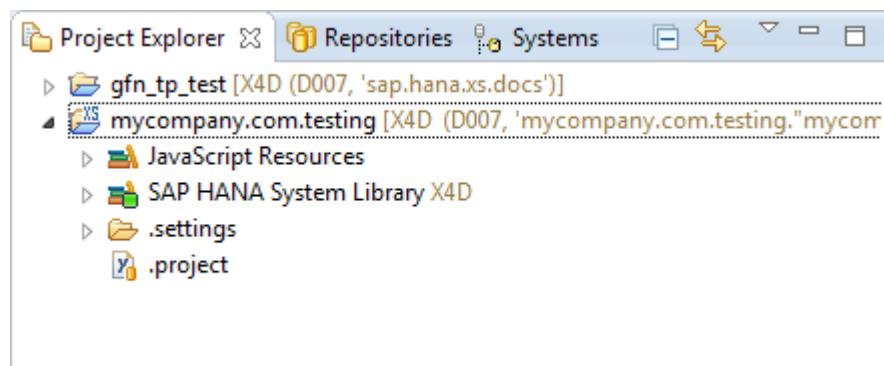
1. Open SAP HANA studio.
2. From the [File](#) menu in SAP HANA studio, choose  [New](#) > [Project](#).
3. In the [New Project](#) dialog, under  [SAP HANA](#) > [Application Development](#), select [XS Project](#), and choose [Next](#).
4. Enter the following details for the new project:
 - Project name
Enter: **mycompany.com.testing**
Since a project name must be unique within the same Eclipse workspace, a good convention is to use the fully qualified package name as the project name.
 - Project location
You can keep this as the default SAP HANA studio (Repository) workspace. To save the project in an alternative location from the recommended default, you must first disable the option [Share project in SAP repository](#). You can share the new project manually later. Sharing a project enables continuous synchronization with the SAP HANA repository.
 - Working sets (optional)
A working set is a concept similar to favorites in a Web browser, which contain the objects you work on most frequently.



5. Choose *Finish*.

Results

The *Project Explorer* view in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective displays the new project. The system information in brackets [X4D (D007)...] to the right of the project node name in the *Project Explorer* view indicates that the project has been shared; shared projects are regularly synchronized with the Repository hosted on the SAP HANA system you are connected to.



i Note

If you disabled the option *Share project in SAP repository* when you created the project, you must share the new project manually.

Related Information

[Tutorial: Share an Application Project \[page 57\]](#)

2.5.1.4 Tutorial: Share an Application Project

Sharing a project establishes a link between project-specific files in your development workspace and the repository hosted by the SAP HANA system you are connected to.

Prerequisites

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to SAP HANA studio
- Access to an SAP HANA Repository workspace
- An existing SAP HANA project

Context

Sharing a project associates the project with your repository workspace and synchronizes the project with the repository hosted on the SAP HANA system you are connected to. By default, a project is automatically shared at the same time as it is created; the option to disable the auto-share operation is available in the project-creation wizard.

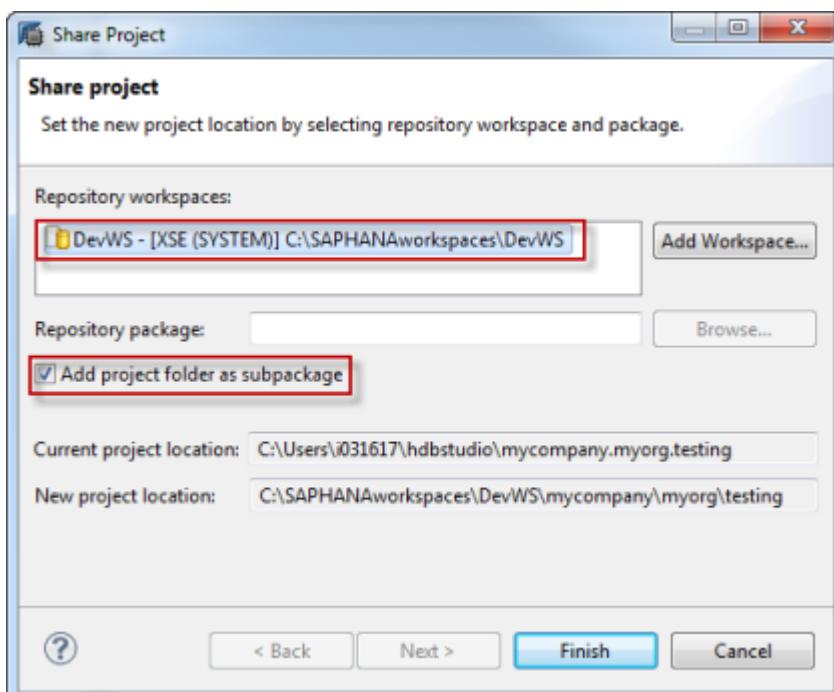
i Note

Manually sharing a project is necessary only if you disabled the option *Share project in SAP repository* when you created the project or chose to explicitly **unshare** the project after you created it.

If you need to manually share a project, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start SAP HANA studio and open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
2. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the project you want to share, and choose **Team > Share Project** in the context-sensitive popup menu to display the *Share Project* dialog.



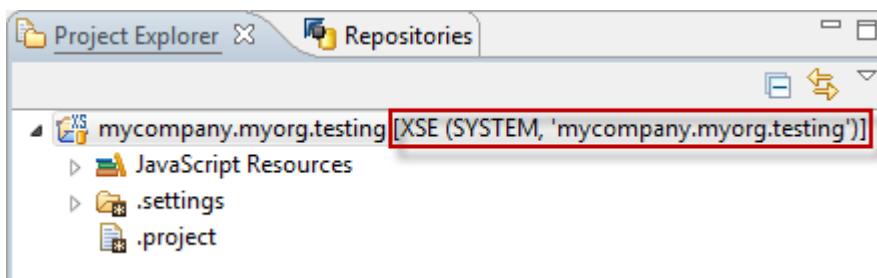
Since you only have one workspace, the wizard selects it for you automatically. If you have more than one workspace, you must choose the workspace to host the shared project.

The dialog also shows the *Current project location* (the current location of your project, in the repository workspace), and the *New project location* (where your project will be copied so it can be associated with the repository workspace).

Also, since *Add project folder as subpackage* is checked, subpackages will be created based on the name of your project.

3. Choose *Finish*.

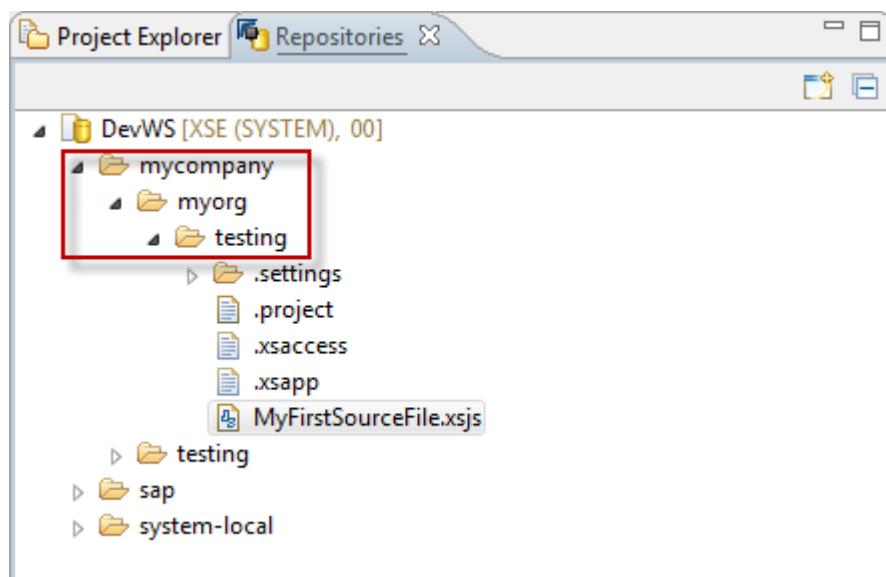
The shared project is displayed in the *Project Explorer* view associated with your workspace.



The `.project` file is shown with an asterisk , which indicates that the file has changed but has yet to be committed to the repository.

4. Right-click the `.project` file, and select   from the context-sensitive popup menu to add your project and its files to the repository. The `.project` file is now displayed with a diamond icon, , indicating that the latest version of the file on your workstation has been committed to the SAP HANA repository.

In addition, the *Repositories* view shows that a new hierarchy of packages has been created based on the name of your project, `mycompany.myorg.testing`.



2.5.1.5 Tutorial: Write Server-Side JavaScript

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) supports server-side application programming in JavaScript. In this step we add some simple JavaScript code that generates a page which displays the words *Hello, world!*.

Prerequisites

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to SAP HANA studio
- Access to a shared project in the SAP HANA Repository where you can create the artifacts required for this tutorial.

Context

As part of this server-side JavaScript tutorial, you create the following files:

- `MyFirstSourceFile.xsjs`
This contains your server-side JavaScript code.
- `.xsapp`
This marks the root point in the application's package hierarchy from which content can be exposed via HTTP. You still need to explicitly expose the content and assign access controls.
- `.xsaccess`
Expose your content, meaning it can be accessed via HTTP, and assign access controls, for example, to manage who can access content and how.

➔ Tip

If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click your XS project, and choose ► *New* ► *Other* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
4. In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose ► *SAP HANA* ► *Application Development* ► *XS JavaScript File*.
5. In the *New XS JavaScript File* dialog, enter `MyFirstSourceFile.xsjs` in *File name* text box.

➔ Tip

If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor. You can also select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you.

6. Choose *Finish*.
7. In the `MyFirstSourceFile.xsjs` file, enter the following code and save the file:

i Note

By default, saving the file automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository.

```
$response.contentType = "text/html";
$response.setBody( "Hello, World !");
```

The example code shows how to use the SAP HANA XS JavaScript API's `response` object to write HTML. By typing `$.` you have access to the API's objects.

8. Check that the application descriptor files are present in the root package of your new XS JavaScript application.

The application descriptors (`.xsapp` and `.xsaccess`) are mandatory and describe the framework in which an SAP HANA XS application runs. The `.xsapp` file indicates the root point in the package hierarchy where content is to be served to client requests; the `.xsaccess` file defines who has access to the exposed content and how.

Note

By default, the project-creation Wizard creates the application descriptors automatically. If they are not present, you will see a 404 error message in the Web Browser when you call the XS JavaScript service.

If you need to create the application descriptors manually, perform the following steps:

- a. Add a blank file called `.xsapp` (no name, just a file extension) to the root package of your XS JavaScript application.

To add an `.xsapp` file, right-click the project to which you want to add the new file, select  **New**  **Other**  **SAP HANA**  **Application Development**  **XS Application Descriptor File**  from the context-sensitive popup menu, and choose *Next*.

Tip

If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically.

- b. Add a file called `.xsaccess` (no name, just a file extension) to the root package of your XS JavaScript application, and copy the following code into the new `.xsaccess` file:

To add a `.xsaccess` manually, right-click the project to which you want to add the file, select  **New**  **Other**  **SAP HANA**  **Application Development**  **XS Application Access File**  from the context-sensitive popup menu, and choose *Next*.

Tip

If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically, provides a working template, and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file.

```
{  
    "exposed" : true,  
    "authentication" :  
        [  
            { "method" : "Form" }  
        ],  
    "prevent_xsrf" : true  
}
```

This code exposes the application content via HTTP, specifies form-based logon as the default authentication method for the corresponding SAP HANA application, and helps protect your application from cross-site request-forgery (XSRF) attacks.

➔ Tip

You define the user-authentication method for a SAP HANA application in the application's runtime configuration, for example, using the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*. For the purposes of this tutorial, you do not need to change the runtime configuration.

9. Activate the new files in the SAP HANA repository.

Activating a file makes the file available to other project members. Right-click the new files (or the folder/package containing the files) and select  *Team*  *Activate*  from the context-sensitive popup menu.

The activate operation publishes your work and creates the corresponding catalog objects; you can now test it.

Results

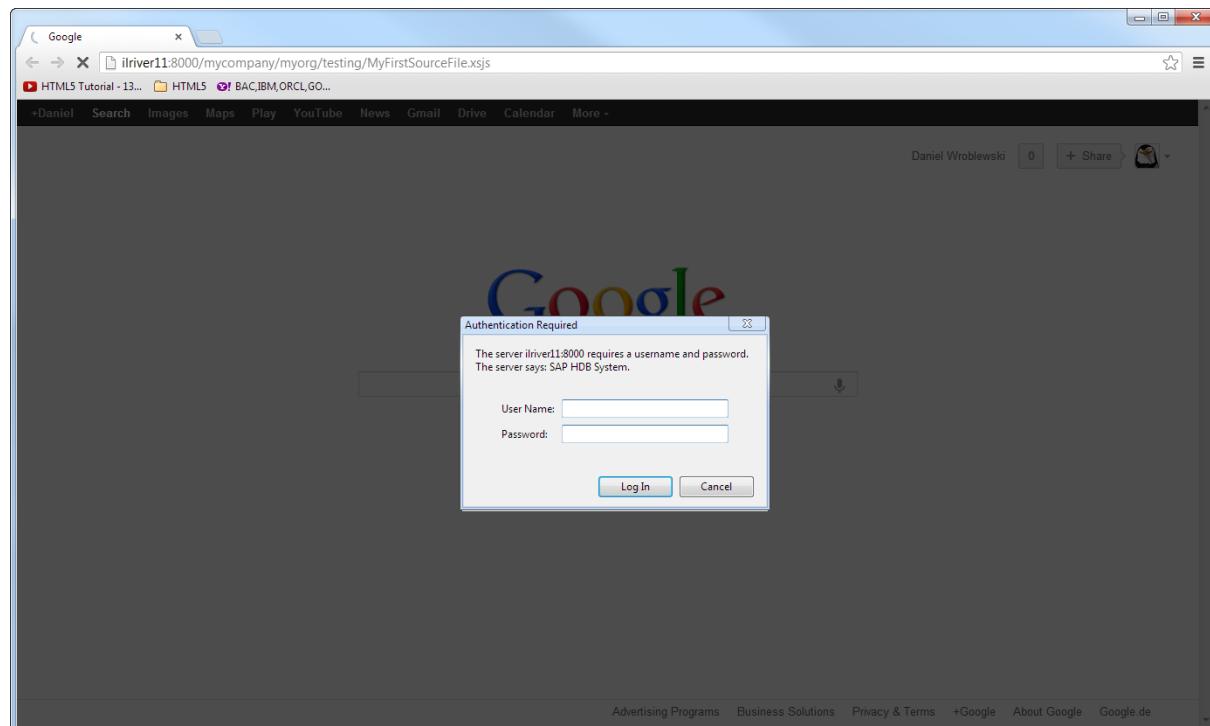
To access your JavaScript application, open a Web browser and enter the following URL, replacing `<myServer>` with the name of the server hosting your SAP HANA instance, and where appropriate the path to the server-side JavaScript source file:

```
http://<myServer>:8000/mycompany/myorg/testing/MyFirstSourceFile.xsjs
```

i Note

For standard HTTP access, the port number is 80`<SAPHANA_ID>`, where `<SAPHANA_ID>` is two digits representing your SAP HANA instance number. For example, if your SAP HANA instance is 00, then the port number to use is 8000.

If everything works as expected, you should see the following result:



After logging in with your SAP HANA user name and password, the following page should be displayed:



2.5.1.6 Tutorial: Retrieve Data from SAP HANA

The final step of the data display tutorial is to extract data from the database and display it in a Web Browser.

Prerequisites

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to SAP HANA studio
- Access to the shared project in the SAP HANA Repository which contains the artifacts used in this tutorial.

Context

To extract data from the database we use our JavaScript code to open a connection to the database and then prepare and run an SQL statement. The results are added to the response which is displayed in the Web browser. You use the following SQL statement to extract data from the database:

```
select * from DUMMY
```

The SQL statement returns one row with one field called *DUMMY*, whose value is *X*.

Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. In the Project Explorer view, located the server-side JavaScript file *MyFirstSourceFile.xsjs* and open it in the embedded JavaScript editor.
4. In *MyFirstSourceFile.xsjs*, replace your existing code with the code in the following example.

```
$response.contentType = "text/html";
var output = "Hello, World !";
var conn = $.db.getConnection();
var pstmt = conn.prepareStatement( "select * from DUMMY" );
var rs = pstmt.executeQuery();
if (!rs.next()) {
    $response.setBody( "Failed to retrieve data" );
    $response.status = $.net.http.INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR;
} else {
    output = output + "This is the response from my SQL: " + rs.getString(1);
}
rs.close();
	pstmt.close();
	conn.close();
$response.setBody(output);
```

5. Save the file *MyFirstSourceFile.xsjs*.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the Repository. To explicitly commit a file to the Repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose  *Team*  *Commit*  from the context-sensitive popup menu.

6. Activate the file *MyFirstSourceFile.xsjs* by right-clicking the file and choosing  *Team*  *Activate* .

Results

In your browser, refresh the page. If everything works as expected, you should see the following page:



2.5.2 Tutorial: Use the SAP HANA OData Interface

The package you put together to test the SAP HANA OData interface includes all the artifacts you need to use SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) to expose an OData collection for analysis and display by client applications.

Prerequisites

Since the artifacts required to get a simple OData application up and running are stored in the repository, it is assumed that you have already performed the following tasks:

- Create a development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- Create a project in the workspace
- Share the new project

Context

To create a simple OData application, perform the following steps:

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

Procedure

1. Create a root package for your OData application, for example, `helloodata` and save and activate it in the repository.
 - a. Click the *Content* directory with the alternate mouse button and choose *New > Package*.
 - b. Enter the required information for the package in the dialog box and choose *OK*.

Note

The namespace `sap` is restricted. Place the new package in your own namespace, which you can create alongside the `sap` namespace.

2. Create a schema, for example, `HELLO_ODATA.hdbschema`.

The schema is required for the table that contains the data to be exposed by your OData service-definition. The schema is defined in a flat file with the file extension `.hdbschema` that you save in the repository and which you must activate.

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

Enter the following code in the `HELLO_ODATA.hdbschema` file:

```
schema_name="HELLO_ODATA";
```

3. Create the database table that contains the data to be exposed by your OData service definition, for example, `otable.hdbtable`.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new OData service definition file and choose      in the context-sensitive popup menu.

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

Enter the following code in the `otable.hdbtable` file:

Note

If the editor underlines the keywords `nullable` and `DefaultValue` in red, you can safely ignore this.

```
table.schemaName = "HELLO_ODATA";
table.tableType = COLUMNSTORE;
table.columns = [
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment =
 = "dummy comment";},
    {name = "Col2"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},
    {name = "Col3"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20;
 defaultValue = "DefaultValue";},
    {name = "Col4"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 12;
 scale = 3;}];
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["Col1", "Col2"];
```

4. Grant SELECT privileges to the owner of the new schema.

After activation in the repository, the schema object is only visible in the catalog to the `_SYS_REPO` user. To enable other users, for example the schema owner, to view the newly created schema in the SAP HANA studio's *Modeler* perspective, you must grant the user the required SELECT privilege.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio *Systems* view, right-click the SAP HANA system hosting the repository where the schema was activated and choose *SQL Console* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. In the *SQL Console*, execute the statement illustrated in the following example, where <SCHEMANAME> is the name of the newly activated schema, and <username> is the database user ID of the schema owner:

```
call
  SYS_REPO.GRANT_SCHEMA_PRIVILEGE_ON_ACTIVATED_CONTENT('select', '<SCHEMANAME>',
  '<username>');
```

5. Create an application descriptor for your new OData application in your root OData package `helloodata`.

The application descriptor (`.xsapp`) is the core file that you use to define an application's availability within SAP HANA application. The `.xsapp` file sets the point in the application-package structure from which content will be served to the requesting clients.

Note

The application-descriptor file has no content and no name; it only has the extension `.xsapp`. File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new application descriptor and choose  *New*  *Other*  *SAP HANA*  *Application Development*  *XS Application Descriptor File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Save and activate the application-descriptor file in the repository.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose  *Team*  *Commit* in the context-sensitive popup menu.

6. Create an application-access file for your new OData application and place it in your root OData package `helloodata`.

The application-access file enables you to specify who or what is authorized to access the content exposed by the application.

Note

The application-access file has no name; it only has the extension `.xsaccess`. File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new application descriptor and choose  *New*  *Other*  *SAP HANA*  *Application Development*  *XS Application Access File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter the following content in the `.xsaccess` file for your new OData application:

```
{
```

```
        "exposed" : true,
        "prevent_xsrf" : true
    }
```

Note

It is highly recommended to always use the `prevent_xsrf` keyword to help protect your application against attacks that use cross-site request forgery.

- c. Save and activate the application-access file in the repository.
7. Create an OData service-definition file and place it in your root OData package `helloodata`.
The Odata service-definition file has the file extension `.xsodata`, for example, `hello.xsodata` and for the purposes of this tutorial should be located in the root package of the OData application:

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new application descriptor and choose      in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter the following content in the `hello.xsodata` OData service-definition file:

```
service {
    "helloodata::otable";
}
```

- c. Save and activate the OData service-definition file in the repository.
8. Test the new OData service.

Open a browser and enter the following URL.

Note

If you are using Internet Explorer, press `F12` and set *compatibility mode = IE10* and *document mode = Standards*.

`http://<hana.server.name>:80<HANA_instance_number>/helloodata/hello.xsodata/otable`

Tip

You can also run the service directly from the *Project Explorer* view where you activated it; right-click the object in the Project Explorer view and chose *Run As...* in the context-sensitive popup menu.

3 Setting Up Your Application

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), the design-time artifacts that make up your application are stored in the repository like files in a file system. You first choose a root folder for your application-development activities, and within this folder you create additional subfolders to organize the applications and the application content according to your own requirements.

Note

For the latest information about the availability of features for SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) and related development tools, see [1779803](#).

As part of the application-development process, you typically need to perform the tasks described in the following list. Each of the tasks in more detail is described in its own section:

Table 11: Application Setup Steps

Step	Action	Notes
1	Check roles and permissions	Before you start developing applications using the features and tools provided by the SAP HANA XS, developers who want to build applications to run on SAP HANA XS need to be granted access to development tools, SAP HANA systems, database accounts, and so on.
2	Set up delivery units	To create and manage delivery units, for example, using the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management , you must set the identity of the vendor with whom the delivery units are associated. To avoid conflicts with applications from SAP or other providers, we recommend that you use the DNS name of your company as the name of your root application-development folder, for example, com.acme.
3	Set up an SAP HANA project	In SAP HANA, projects enable you to group together all the artifacts you need for a specific part of the application-development environment. To create a project, you must first create a repository workspace, a directory structure to store files on your PC.
4	Maintain repository packages	To perform the high-level tasks that typically occur during the process of maintaining repository packages, you need to be familiar with the concepts of packages and package hierarchies, which you use to manage the artifacts in your applications.
5	Maintain application descriptors	The framework defined by the application descriptors includes the root point in the package hierarchy where content is to be served to client requests; it also defines if the application is permitted to expose data to client requests and what kind of access to the data is allowed.
6	Maintain application security	As part of the application-development process, you must decide how to grant access to the applications you develop. For example, you must specify which (if any) authentication method is used to grant access to content exposed by an application, and what content is visible.

Related Information

[Roles and Permissions for XS Development \[page 70\]](#)

[Maintaining Delivery Units \[page 72\]](#)

[Using SAP HANA Projects \[page 77\]](#)

[Maintaining Repository Packages \[page 85\]](#)

[Creating the Application Descriptors \[page 96\]](#)

[Set up Application Security \[page 121\]](#)

3.1 Roles and Permissions for XS Development

An overview of the authorizations required to develop database artifacts for SAP HANA using the CDS syntax.

To enable application-developers to start building native applications that take advantage of the SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), the SAP HANA administrator must ensure that developers have access to the tools and objects that they need to perform the tasks required during the application- and database-development process.

Before you start developing applications using the features and tools provided by the SAP HANA XS, bear in mind the following prerequisites. Developers who want to build applications to run on SAP HANA XS need the following tools, accounts, and privileges:

- [SAP HANA XS Classic Model \[page 70\]](#)
- [SAP HANA XS Advanced Model \[page 72\]](#)

i Note

The required privileges can only be granted by someone who has the necessary authorizations in SAP HANA, for example, an SAP HANA administrator.

SAP HANA XS Classic Model

To develop database artifacts for use by applications running in the SAP HANA XS classic environment, bear in mind the following prerequisites:

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS classic)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to development tools, for example, provided in:
 - SAP HANA studio
 - SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench
- Access to the SAP HANA repository
- Access to selected run-time catalog objects

Note

To provide access to the repository for application developers, you can use a predefined role or create your own custom role to which you assign the privileges that the application developers need to perform the everyday tasks associated with the application-development process.

To provide access to the repository from the SAP HANA studio, the EXECUTE privilege is required for SYS.REPOSITORY_REST, the database procedure through with the REST API is tunneled. To enable the activation and data preview of information views, the technical user _SYS_REPO also requires SELECT privilege on all schemas where source tables reside.

In SAP HANA, you can use roles to assign one or more privileges to a user according to the area in which the user works; the role defines the privileges the user is granted. For example, a role enables you to assign SQL privileges, analytic privileges, system privileges, package privileges, and so on. To create and maintain artifacts in the SAP HANA repository, you can assign application-development users the following roles:

- One of the following:

- MODELING

The predefined MODELING role assigns wide-ranging SQL privileges, for example, on _SYS_BI and _SYS_BIC. It also assigns the analytic privilege _SYS_BI_CP_ALL, and some system privileges. If these permissions are more than your development team requires, you can create your own role with a set of privileges designed to meet the needs of the application-development team.

- Custom DEVELOPMENT role

A user with the appropriate authorization can create a custom DEVELOPMENT role specially for application developers. The new role would specify only those privileges an application-developer needs to perform the everyday tasks associated with application development, for example: maintaining packages in the repository, executing SQL statements, displaying data previews for views, and so on.

- PUBLIC

This is a role that is assigned to all users by default.

Before you start using the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench, the SAP HANA administrator must set up a user account for you in the database and assign the required developer roles to the new user account.

Tip

The role `sap.hana_xs.ide.roles::Developer` grants the privileges required to use **all** the tools included in the *SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench*. However, to enable a developer to use the debugging features of the browser-based IDE, your administrator must also assign the role `sap.hana_xs.debugger::Debugger`. In addition, the section `debugger` with the parameter `enabled` and the value `true` must be added to the file `xsengine.ini`, for example, in the SAP HANA studio *Administration* perspective.

SAP HANA XS Advanced Model

To develop database artifacts for use by applications running in the SAP HANA XS **advanced** environment, bear in mind the following prerequisites:

- Access to a running SAP HANA development system (with SAP HANA XS advanced)
- A valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system
- Access to development tools, for example, provided in:
 - SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA
 - SAP HANA Run-time Tools (included in the SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA)

i Note

To provide access to tools and for application developers in XS advanced, you define a custom role to which you add the privileges required to perform the everyday tasks associated with the application-and database-development process. The role is then assigned to a role collection which is, in turn, assigned to the developer.

- Access to the SAP HANA XS advanced design-time workspace and repository
- Access to selected run-time catalog objects
- Access to the XS command-line interface (CLI); the XS CLI client needs to be downloaded and installed

Related Information

[Create a Design-Time Role \[page 724\]](#)

[Assign Repository Package Privileges \[page 91\]](#)

3.2 Maintaining Delivery Units

A delivery unit (DU) is a collection of packages that are to be transported together. You assign all the packages belonging to your application to the same DU to ensure that they are transported consistently together within your system landscape. Each DU has a unique identity.

Prerequisites

To maintain delivery units with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been assigned the SAP HANA `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- A vendor ID (repository namespace) is already defined.

Context

The identity of a delivery unit consists of two parts: a vendor name and a delivery-unit name. The combined ID ensures that delivery units from different vendors are easy to distinguish and follows a pattern that SAP uses for all kinds of software components.

To create and manage delivery units you first need to maintain the identity of the vendor, with whom the delivery units are associated, and in whose namespace the packages that make up the delivery unit are stored. As part of the vendor ID maintenance process, you must perform the following tasks:

Procedure

1. Understand delivery units.

You must be familiar with the conventions that exist for delivery-unit names and understand the phases of the delivery-unit lifecycle.

2. Maintain details of the vendor ID associated with a delivery unit.

Delivery units are located in the namespace associated with the vendor who creates them and who manages the delivery-unit's lifecycle.

3. Create a delivery unit.

Create a transportable “container” to hold the repository packages in application.

4. Assign packages to a delivery unit.

Add to a delivery unit the repository packages that make up your application.

5. Export a delivery unit.

You can export the contents of a delivery unit from the SAP HANA Repository to a compressed Zip archive, which you can download to a client file system.

6. Import a delivery unit.

You can import the contents of a delivery unit into the SAP HANA Repository, for example, from a compressed Zip archive, which you upload from a client file system.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Maintain the Delivery-Unit Vendor ID \[page 74\]](#)

[Create a Delivery Unit \[page 75\]](#)

[Export a Delivery Unit \[page 818\]](#)

[Import a Delivery Unit \[page 820\]](#)

3.2.1 Maintain the Delivery-Unit Vendor ID

In SAP HANA, the *vendor ID* is used primarily to define the identity of the company developing a software component that it plans to ship for use with SAP HANA, for example, "sap.com". To create a delivery unit, it is a prerequisite to maintain a vendor ID in your system.

Prerequisites

To set the vendor ID, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been assigned the SAP HANA XS `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.

Context

Before creating your own first delivery unit, you must set the identity of the vendor in the development system's configuration. To maintain details of the delivery-unit vendor ID, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

i Note

To start the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must use the logon credentials of an existing database user, who has the appropriate user role assigned.

2. Choose the `SETTINGS` tab.
3. Maintain details of the vendor ID.

In the `SETTINGS` tab, perform the following steps:

- a. Choose `Change Vendor`.
- b. In the `Set Vendor` dialog, enter the name of the new vendor, for example, `mycompany.com`.
- c. Choose `OK` to save the changes.

The new vendor ID appears in the `Vendor` box.

i Note

The vendor ID is required to create a delivery unit.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

3.2.2 Create a Delivery Unit

A delivery unit (DU) is a group of transportable packages that contain objects used for content delivery. You can use the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management to create a DU for your application content or your software component.

Prerequisites

To create a delivery unit with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been granted the SAP HANA `sap.hana_xs_lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- The vendor ID is defined for the DU; the vendor ID defines the repository namespace in which the new DU resides.

Context

You use a DU to transport the design-time objects that are stored in the SAP HANA repository between two systems, for example, from a development system to a consolidation system. To create a new delivery unit using the SAP HANA application lifecycle management, perform the following steps.

Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *PRODUCTS* tab.
3. Choose the *Delivery Units* tab.
4. Choose *Create*.

The *New Delivery Unit* dialog box appears.

5. Enter details for the new DU.

When entering details, note the following points:

- **Name**
The field is mandatory and you must follow strict naming conventions, for example, use capital letters.
- **Vendor**
This field is mandatory. However, you cannot enter a vendor here; the box is populated by the value you enter when defining the vendor in the **SETTINGS** tab.
- **Version**
Version numbers must take the form “#.#.#”, for example, **1.0.5**, where:
 - **1** = the DU version number
 - **0** = the support package version (if required)
 - **5** = the patch version (if required)

i Note

The numbers you enter here refer to the application component that you are developing; the numbers do not refer to the patch or service-pack level deployed on the SAP HANA server.

6. Choose **Create**.

The new delivery unit is added to the SAP HANA repository in the namespace specified by the vendor ID and the application path.

7. Check the status bar at the bottom of the browser window for error messages. Choose the message link to display the message text.

Results

You have created a delivery unit.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management \[page 788\]](#)

[SAP HANA Change Recording \[page 825\]](#)

3.2.2.1 SAP HANA Delivery Unit Naming Conventions

The delivery unit (DU) is the vehicle that SAP HANA application lifecycle management uses to ship software components from SAP (or a partner) to a customer. The DU is also the container you use to transport application content in your system landscape. In SAP HANA, the name of a DU must adhere to conventions and guidelines.

If you create a delivery unit, the name of the new delivery unit must adhere to the following conventions

- A delivery-unit name must contain only capital letters (A-Z), digits (0-9), and underscores (_).

- The name must start with a letter.
- The maximum length of a delivery-unit name must not exceed 30 characters

i Note

The naming conventions for packages in a delivery unit differ from the naming conventions that apply to the delivery unit itself. For example, the maximum length of a package name is not restricted to 30 characters; however, it must be less than 190 characters (including the namespace hierarchy).

3.3 Using SAP HANA Projects

Projects group together all the artifacts you need for a specific part of the application-development environment.

Context

Before you can start the application-development workflow, you must create a project, which you use to group together all your application-related artifacts. However, a project requires a repository workspace, which enables you to synchronize changes in local files with changes in the repository. You can create the workspace before or during the project-creation step. As part of the project-creation process, you perform the following tasks:

Procedure

1. Create a development workspace.

The workspace is the link between the SAP HANA repository and your local filesystem, where you work on project-related objects.

2. Create a project.

Create a new project for a particular application or package; you can use the project to collect in a convenient place all your application-related artifacts.

3. Share a project.

Sharing a project enables you to ensure that changes you make to project-related files are visible to other team members and applications. Shared projects are available for import by other members of the application-development team.

i Note

Files checked out of the repository are not locked; conflicts resulting from concurrent changes to the same file must be resolved manually, using the *Merge* tools provided in the context-sensitive *Team* menu.

4. Import a project.

Import a project (and its associated artifacts) that has been shared by another member of the application-development team.

Related Information

[Maintain a Repository Workspace \[page 78\]](#)

[Create a Project for SAP HANA XS \[page 80\]](#)

[Share an SAP HANA XS Project \[page 83\]](#)

[Import an SAP HANA XS Project \[page 84\]](#)

3.3.1 Maintain a Repository Workspace

A workspace is a local directory that you map to all (or part) of a package hierarchy in the SAP HANA repository. When you check out a package from the repository, SAP HANA copies the contents of the package hierarchy to your workspace, where you can work on the files.

Context

Before you can start work on the development of the application, you need to set up a workspace, where you store checked-out copies of your application's source-code files. To ensure that only the owner of data can access the data stored in a workspace, a workspace must be created in the owner's home directory. In addition, it is recommended that users encrypt the data on their hard drives using an encryption tool.

To create a new workspace in the SAP HANA studio, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Choose the *Repositories* view.
4. Choose *Create Workspace...*

The *Create Workspace...* button is located in the top right-hand corner of the *Repositories* view.

5. Specify the workspace details. In the *Create New Repository Workspace* dialog, enter the following information and choose *Finish*:
 - a. Specify the SAP HANA system, for which you want to create a new workspace.

- b. Enter a workspace name, for example the name of the SAP HANA system where the repository is located. To avoid the potential for confusion, it is recommended to associate one workspace with one repository.
- c. Specify where the workspace root directory should be located on your local file system, for example: C:\users\username\workspaces

The new workspace is displayed in the *Repositories* view.

Note

Although the packages and objects in the chosen repository are visible in the *Repositories* view, you cannot open or work on the objects here. To work on objects, you must create a project and use the *Project Explorer* view.

The *Repositories* view displays the status of a workspace as follows:

Table 12:

UI Icon	Explanation
Yellow database icon	An inactive workspace exists in the SAP HANA repository
Yellow database icon with a blue check mark	An inactive workspace has been imported to your local file system (and the contents checked out from the SAP HANA repository)

6. Remove a repository workspace.

If it is necessary to remove a workspace, you can choose between multiple deletion options; the option you choose determines what is removed, from where (local file system or remote repository), and what, if anything, is retained.

- a. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
- b. Choose the *Repositories* view and expand the repository node containing the workspace you want to remove.
- c. Right-click the workspace you want to remove.
- d. Choose the workspace-deletion mode.

The following modes apply when you delete a workspace in SAP HANA studio:

Table 13: Workspace Deletion Modes

Workspace Deletion Mode	Description
<i>Delete</i>	Remove workspace; delete all workspace-related local files; delete related changes to remote (repository) data.
<i>Remove from client (keep remote changes)</i>	Remove workspace from local client system; delete all local workspace-related files; retain changes to remote (repository) data.
<i>Disconnect local from remote (keep changes)</i>	Keep the workspace but remove the workspace label from the list of workspaces displayed in the <i>Repositories</i> view. The connection to the disconnected workspace can be reestablished at any time with the option <i>Import Local Repository Workspaces</i> .

3.3.1.1 SAP HANA Repository Workspaces

The place where you work on project-related objects is called a repository **workspace**. A workspace is an environment that maps a local directory to all (or part) of a package hierarchy in the SAP HANA repository.

In SAP HANA studio, the repository tools enable you to browse the entire hierarchy of design-time objects stored in the repository. However, when you check a package out of the repository, SAP HANA copies the contents of the package hierarchy to your workspace, where you can work on the files in your local file system.

i Note

Before you can create a workspace you must maintain connection information in the SAP HANA database user store.

To start development work with SAP HANA studio, for example, to checkout the contents of a package, you must create a repository **workspace**. The workspace contains a system folder with metadata and package folders for the repository content. The file-system folders and their subfolders reflect the package hierarchy in the repository; the repository client ensures that changes are synchronized.

In the SAP HANA studio, the *Repositories* view displays the status of a workspace as follows:

- Yellow database icon
An inactive workspace exists in the SAP HANA repository
- Yellow database icon with a blue check mark
An inactive workspace has been imported to your local file system (and the contents checked out from the SAP HANA repository)

3.3.2 Create a Project for SAP HANA XS

Before you can start the application-development workflow, you must create a project, which you use to group all your application-related artifacts.

Context

Projects group together all the artifacts you need for a specific part of your application-development environment. A basic project contains folders and files. More advanced projects are used for builds, version management, sharing, and the organization and maintenance of resources.

To create a new project in the SAP HANA studio, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio.

2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Choose the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Choose    or right-click the white space in the *Project Explorer* view and choose *New > Project...* in the popup menu.

The type of project you create determines the details you have to provide in the *New Project* wizard that appears. Choose   .

- a. Enter the following details for the new XS project:

- Shared project

This is the default setting. Sharing a project enables continuous synchronization between your local-file system workspace and the SAP HANA repository. If you choose not to share the project at this point, you can share the new project manually later.

- Project name

Enter a project name that describes what the project is about, for example: **XS_JavaScript** or **XS_SAPUI5**. Since a project name must be unique within the same Eclipse workspace, it is recommended to use the fully qualified package name as the project name.

- Project location

You can save the project in the default location, which is the SAP HANA studio (Repository) workspace. To save the project in an alternative location from the recommended default, first disable the option *Share project in SAP repository*.

You can share the new project manually later. Sharing a project enables continuous synchronization with the SAP HANA repository.

- Working sets

A working set is a concept similar to favorites in a Web browser, which contain the objects you work on most frequently.

- Repository workspace and package

For a shared project, you can set the project location by selecting a repository workspace and package.

- Common objects

For a shared project, you can include some commonly used objects in your project. Some of these will provide you with a basic template to begin with.

- Access objects

For a shared project, the access objects are checked by default. However, if either an **.xsaccess** file or an **.xsapp** file already exists in the folder you have chosen to create the new project, the corresponding option is automatically unchecked and greyed out.

- b. Click *Finish* to create the new project.

All the objects included are activated automatically when the project is created. The new project is displayed in the *Project Explorer* view.

Note

- If there is an error during activation of one of the project objects, none of the objects will be automatically activated. You can manually correct the error and then manually activate the objects.
- The contents of the project depend on the type of project you create. For example, a general project is empty immediately after creation; a JavaScript project contains all the resource files associated with a JavaScript project, such as libraries and build-environment artifacts.

3.3.2.1 SAP HANA Studio Projects

Before you can start the application-development workflow, you must create a project, which you use to group all your application-related artifacts.

Projects group together all the artifacts you need for a specific part of the application-development environment. A basic project contains folders and files. More advanced projects are used for builds, version management, sharing, and the organization and maintenance of resources.

Projects enable multiple people to work on the same files at the same time. You can use SAP HANA studio to perform the following project-related actions in the repository:

- *Checkout* folders and files from the repository
- *Commit* changes to the repository
- *Activate* the committed changes
- *Revert* inactive changes to the previously saved version

i Note

Files checked out of the repository are not locked; conflicts resulting from concurrent changes to the same file must be resolved manually, using the *Merge* tools provided in the context-sensitive *Team* menu.

By committing project-related files to the repository and activating them, you enable team members to see the latest changes. The commit operation detects all changes in packages that you configure SAP HANA studio tool to track and writes the detected changes back to the repository. The repository client tools also support synchronization with changes on the server, including conflict detection and merging of change. All workspace-related repository actions are available as context-sensitive menu options in SAP HANA studio. For example, if you right click a repository object at the top of the package hierarchy in the *Project Explorer* in SAP HANA studio, you can commit and activate **all** changed objects within the selected hierarchy.

i Note

If you create a new project using SAP HANA studio, you can assign the new project to an existing workspace.

You can share and unshare projects. Sharing a project associates it with a particular package in the repository linked to a particular workspace. The act of sharing the project sets up a link between the workspace and the repository and enables you to track and synchronize local changes with the versions of the objects stored in the repository. When a project is shared, it becomes available to other people with authorization to access to the repository, for example, colleagues in an application-development team. Team members can import a shared project and see and work on the same files as the creator of the project.

i Note

Always unshare a project before deleting it.

In the SAP HANA studio you can create a project at any package level, which enables a fine level of control of the artifacts that may (or may not) be exposed by sharing the project.

3.3.3 Share an SAP HANA XS Project

Before you can start working on files associated with a new project, you must share the project; sharing a project enables you to track and synchronize local changes with the repository.

Context

When you share a project, you set up a connection to the SAP HANA repository associated with a particular SAP HANA instance. Sharing the project enables you to ensure that changes you make to project-related files are visible to other team members and applications. Other developers can import a shared project and work on the same files.

i Note

Use the *Project Explorer* view in the SAP HANA studio to check if a project is shared. In addition to the project name, a shared project displays the SAP HANA system ID of the repository where the shared artifacts are located, an SAP HANA user name, and the path to the repository package to which the shared project is assigned, for example. "XSJS_myproject [SID (dbusername, 'sap.hana.xs.app1')].

To share a project in the SAP HANA studio, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Share the project.

Right-click the project you want to share and choose in the pop-up menu.

5. Select the repository *type*.

The *Share Project* dialog displays a list of all available repository types; choose *SAP HANA Repository* and choose *Next*.

6. Select the repository workspace where the project should be located.
7. Specify the package that you want to associate the shared project with.

The *Share Project* dialog displays the suggested location for the shared project in the *New Project location* screen area. The default location is the name of the workspace with the name of the project you want to share. Choose *Browse...* to locate the package you want to associate the shared project with. The selected package is displayed in the *Path to package* text box.

i Note

The *Keep project folder* option appends the name of the project you are sharing to the name of the workspace in which you are sharing the project and creates a new package with the name of the shared project under the workspace location displayed. Use this option only if you want to create multiple

projects for a selected package, for example, if you are creating a root project in your root application package.

8. Click *Finish* to complete the project-sharing procedure.

9. Add new files as required

At this point you can start adding project-specific files to the shared project. These artifacts can then be committed to the repository, where they reside as inactive objects until they are activated, for example, using the  *Team*  *Activate*  option in the context-sensitive menus available in the *Project Explorer* view.

 **Note**

The *Project Explorer* view decorates the file icons to indicate the current state of the repository files, for example: local (not yet committed), committed (inactive), and active (available for use by others).

10. Make the project available for import, for example, so that others can join it and make changes to project content.

The project-sharing procedure creates some artifacts (for example, the `.project` file) that must be committed to the repository and activated so that other team members can import the project more easily into their workspace. The `.project` file is used in several dialogs to populate the list of available projects.

 **Note**

Use the *Repositories* view to import projects (and checkout project content).

Related Information

[Import an SAP HANA XS Project \[page 84\]](#)

3.3.4 Import an SAP HANA XS Project

Before you can start the application-development workflow, you must either create a new project and share it (with the repository), or import a shared project from the repository into your workspace. Importing a project enables you to track and synchronize local changes with the colleagues working on the objects in the imported project.

Context

To import an existing project from the repository into your workspace, perform the following steps.

Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Choose the *Repositories* view.
4. Right-click the package where the project you want to import is located and choose *Checkout and Import Projects...* in the popup menu.

Projects can be assigned to a package at any level of the package hierarchy. If you know where the project is located, browse to the package first before choosing the *Checkout and Import Projects...* option. This reduces the amount of files to checkout and download to your local file system.

i Note

The existence of a `.project` file in a package identifies the package as being associated with a project.

The SAP HANA studio checks out the content of the selected package and displays any projects it finds in the *Projects* screen area.

5. Select the projects to import.
If multiple projects are available for import, select the projects you want to import.
6. Choose *Finish* to import the selected projects.

You can add the imported project to your *Working Sets*.

i Note

A working set is a concept similar to favorites in a Web browser, which contain the objects you work on most frequently.

3.4 Maintaining Repository Packages

All content delivered as part of the application you develop for SAP HANA is stored in packages in the SAP HANA repository. The packages are arranged in a hierarchy that you define to help make the process of maintaining the packages transparent and logical.

Context

To perform the high-level tasks that typically occur during the process of maintaining repository packages, you need to be familiar with the concepts of packages and package hierarchies. Packages enable you to group together the artifacts you create and maintain for your applications. You must also be aware of the privileges the application developers require to access (and perform operations on) the packages.

i Note

You can also create and delete packages in the *Project Explorer*, for example, by creating or deleting folders in shared projects and committing and activating these changes. However, to maintain advanced package

properties (for example, privileges, component, the package maintainer, and so on) you must use the [Modeling](#) perspective in the SAP HANA studio.

As part of the process of maintaining your application packages, you typically perform the following tasks:

Procedure

1. Define the package hierarchy

The package hierarchy is essential for ease of maintenance as well as the configuration of access to packages and the privileges that are required to perform actions on the packages.

2. Define package privileges

You can set package authorizations for a specific user or for a role. Authorizations that are assigned to a repository package are implicitly assigned to all sub-packages, too.

3. Create a package

Packages are necessary to group logically distinct artifacts together in one object location that is easy to transport.

Related Information

[Creating a Package \[page 94\]](#)

[Defining the Package Hierarchy \[page 86\]](#)

[Defining Package Privileges \[page 91\]](#)

3.4.1 Define the Repository Package Hierarchy

Packages belonging to an application-development delivery unit (DU) should be organized in a clear hierarchical structure under a single *root package* representing the vendor, for example, `com.acme`.

Context

The package hierarchy for a new project might include sub-packages, for example, to isolate the data model from the business logic. Although there are no package interfaces to enforce visibility of objects across packages, this separation of logical layers of development is still a recommended best practice.

i Note

You can only assign one project per package; this is important to remember if you have a mixture of design-time objects that need to be used in multiple projects, for example: server-side JavaScript (XSJS), SAPUI5, and a general project (for procedures).

The following simple example shows a package structure containing tutorials for the use of a new application:

```
com
  \ acme
    \ hana
      \ app1
        \ docs
          \ tutorials
```

- Package hierarchy

Each vendor uses a dedicated namespace, for example, `com.acme`.

i Note

Do not use the namespace `sap` to build your application hierarchy. The namespace `sap` is reserved for use by SAP; packages created in the `sap` namespace are overwritten by system updates.

- Package type

Some packages contain content; other packages contain only other (sub)packages. Packages can also contain both objects and (sub)packages.

- Package naming conventions

There are recommendations and restrictions regarding package names.

To set up a package hierarchy in the SAP HANA repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Create a new root package.

Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, choose the *Systems* view, and perform the following steps:

- a. Select the SAP HANA system where you want to create a new package and expand the *Content* node to display the namespace hierarchy for package content.

- b. Choose  *New > Package*.

2. Maintain the package details.

In the *Create Package* dialog, perform the following steps:

- a. Enter the name of the package (mandatory).

Guidelines and conventions apply to package names.

- b. Enter a package description (optional).

- c. Specify the delivery unit that the package is assigned to.

You can add additional packages to a delivery unit at a later point in time, too.

- d. Specify a language for the package content.

- e. Assign responsibility of the package to a specific user (optional).

By default, the responsible user for a new package is the database user connected to the SAP HANA repository in the current SAP HANA studio session.

- f. Maintain translation details.

If you plan to have the content translated, you need to maintain the translation details; this is covered in another topic.

- g. Choose *OK* to save the changes and create the new package.

3. Create a new subpackage.

In the *Systems* view of the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, perform the following steps:

- a. Right-click the package to which you want to add a new subpackage.
- b. In the pop-up menu, choose  *New > Package...*

4. Maintain the subpackage details.

In the *Create Package* dialog, perform the following steps:

- a. Enter the name of the subpackage (mandatory).
- Guidelines and conventions apply to package names.
- b. Enter a description for the new subpackage (optional).
- c. Specify the delivery unit that the subpackage is assigned to.

You can add additional packages to a delivery unit at a later point in time, too.

- d. Specify a language for the subpackage content.
- e. Assign responsibility of the subpackage to a specific user (optional).

By default, the responsible user for a new package is the database user connected to the SAP HANA repository in the current SAP HANA studio session.

- f. Maintain translation details.

If you plan to have the content translated, you need to maintain the translation details; this is covered in another topic.

- g. Choose *OK* to save the changes and create the new subpackage.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Delivery Unit Naming Conventions \[page 76\]](#)

3.4.1.1 Repository Package Hierarchy

A package hierarchy can include sub-packages, for example, to isolate the data model from the business logic.

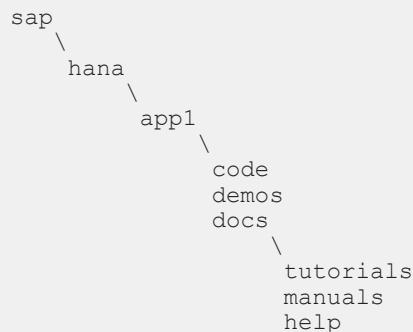
You can create a package hierarchy, for example, by establishing a parent-child type relationship between packages. The assignment of packages to delivery units is independent of the package hierarchy; packages in a parent-child relationship can belong to different delivery units. SAP recommends that you assign to one specific delivery unit all packages that are part of a particular project or project area.

The package hierarchy for a new project typically includes sub-packages, for example, to isolate the data model from the business logic. Although there are no package interfaces to enforce visibility of objects across packages, this separation of logical layers of development is still a recommended best practice.

i Note

You can only assign one project per package; this is important to remember if you have a mixture of design-time objects that need to be used in multiple projects, for example: server-side JavaScript (XSJS), SAPUI5, and a general project (for procedures).

The following simple example shows a package structure containing tutorials for the use of a new application:



All content delivered by SAP should be in a sub-package of "sap". Partners and customers should choose their own root package to reflect their own name (for example, the domain name associated with the company) and must not create packages or objects under the "sap" root structural package. This rule ensures that customer- or partner-created content will not be overwritten by an SAP update or patch.

i Note

SAP reserves the right to deliver without notification changes in packages and models below the "sap" root structural package.

There are no system mechanisms for enforcing the package hierarchy. The "sap" root structural package is not automatically protected. However, by default you cannot change the content of packages that did not originate in the system. In addition, an authorization concept exists, which enables you to control who can change what inside packages.

3.4.1.2 SAP HANA Repository Packages and Namespaces

In SAP HANA, a [package](#) typically consists of a collection of repository objects, which can be transported between systems. Multiple packages can be combined in a delivery unit (DU).

An SAP HANA package specifies a namespace in which the repository objects exist. Every repository object is assigned to a package, and each package must be assigned to a specific delivery unit. In the repository, each object is uniquely identified by a combination of the following information:

- Package name
- Object name
- Object type

i Note

Multiple objects of the same type can have the same object name if they belong to different packages.

Before you start the package development process, consider the following important points:

- Package hierarchy
Each vendor uses a dedicated namespace, and the package hierarchy you create enables you to store the various elements of an application in a logical order that is easy to navigate.
- Package type
Packages can be structural or non-structural; some packages contain content; other packages contain only other (sub)packages.
- Package naming conventions
There are recommendations and restrictions regarding package names, for example, the name's maximum length and which characters must not be used.

Package Naming Conventions

The following rules apply to package names:

- Permitted characters
Lower/upper case letters (aA-zZ), digits (0-9), hyphens (-), underscores (_), and dots (.) are permitted in package names. Dots in a package name define a logical hierarchy. For example, "a.b.c" specifies a package "a" that contains sub-package "b", which in turn contains sub-package "c".
- Forbidden characters
A package name must not start with either a dot (.) or a hyphen (-) and cannot contain two or more consecutive dots (..).
- Package name length
The name of the complete package namespace hierarchy (for example, "aa.bb.cc.zz" including dots) must not be more than 190 characters long. In addition, on object activation, the maximum permitted length of a generated **catalog** name (which includes the package path, the separating dots, and the object base name) is restricted to 127 characters.
 - hdbtable hdbview, hdbsequence, hdbstructure, hdbprocedure objects

```
sap.test.hana.db::myObject
```

- CDS objects

```
sap.test.hana.db::myContext.myEntity
```

3.4.2 Assign Repository Package Privileges

In the SAP HANA repository, you can set package authorizations for a specific user or for a role.

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites are assumed for assigning package privileges:

- Administrator access to the SAP HANA repository
- Permission to modify user privileges (for example, to grant privileges to other SAP HANA users)

Context

Authorizations that are assigned to a repository package are implicitly assigned to all sub-packages, too. You can also specify if the assigned user authorizations can be passed on to other users. To set user (or role) authorizations for repository packages, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Open the *Systems* view in the SAP HANA studio's *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
2. In the *Systems* view, expand the ► *Security* ► *Roles/Users* ▾ node for the system hosting the repository that contains the packages you want to grant access to.
You can also define roles via source files; roles defined in this way can be assigned to a delivery unit and transported to other systems.
3. Double click the user (or role) to whom you want to assign authorizations.
4. Open the *Package Privileges* tab page.
5. Choose **[+]** to add one or more packages. Press and hold the **Ctrl** key to select multiple packages.
6. In the *Select Repository Package* dialog, use all or part of the package name to locate the repository package that you want to authorize access to.
7. Select one or more repository packages that you want to authorize access to; the selected packages appear in the *Package Privileges* tab.
8. Select the packages to which you want authorize access and, in the *Privileges for* tab, check the required privileges, for example:
 - REPO.READ
Read access to the selected package and design-time objects (both native and imported)
 - REPO.EDIT_NATIVE_OBJECTS
Authorization to modify design-time objects in packages originating in the system the user is working in

Related Information

[Package Privilege Options \[page 92\]](#)

[Package Privileges \[page 757\]](#)

3.4.2.1 Package Privilege Options

Package privileges authorize actions on individual packages in the SAP HANA repository. In the context of repository package authorizations, there is a distinction between native packages and imported packages.

i Note

To be able perform operations in all packages in the SAP HANA repository, a user must have privileges on the root package `.REPO_PACKAGE_ROOT`.

Privileges for Native Repository Packages

A native repository package is created in the current SAP HANA system and expected to be edited in the current system. To perform application-development tasks on **native** packages in the SAP HANA repository, developers typically need the privileges listed in the following table:

Table 14:

Package Privilege	Description
REPO.READ	Read access to the selected package and design-time objects (both native and imported)
REPO.EDIT_NATIVE_OBJECTS	Authorization to modify design-time objects in packages originating in the system the user is working in
REPO.ACTIVATE_NATIVE_OBJECTS	Authorization to activate/reactivate design-time objects in packages originating in the system the user is working in
REPO.MAINTAIN_NATIVE_PACKAGES	Authorization to update or delete native packages, or create sub-packages of packages originating in the system in which the user is working

Privileges for Imported Repository Packages

An imported repository package is created in a remote SAP HANA system and imported into the current system. To perform application-development tasks on **imported** packages in the SAP HANA repository, developers need the privileges listed in the following table:

i Note

It is not recommended to work on imported packages. Imported packages should only be modified in exceptional cases, for example, to carry out emergency repairs.

Table 15:

Package Privilege	Description
REPO.READ	Read access to the selected package and design-time objects (both native and imported)
REPO.EDIT_IMPORTED_OBJECTS	Authorization to modify design-time objects in packages originating in a system other than the one in which the user is currently working
REPO.ACTIVATE_IMPORTED_OBJECTS	Authorization to activate (or reactivate) design-time objects in packages originating in a system other than the one in which the user is currently working
REPO.MAINTAIN_IMPORTED_PACKAGES	Authorization to update or delete packages, or create sub-packages of packages, which originated in a system other than the one in which the user is currently working

Related Information

[Package Privileges \[page 757\]](#)

3.4.3 Create a Repository Package

In SAP HANA, a package contains a selection of repository objects. You assemble a collection of packages into a delivery unit, which you can use to transport the repository objects between SAP HANA systems.

Context

You can use repository packages to manage the various elements of your application development project in the SAP HANA repository. To create a package, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. In the SAP HANA studio, start the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
2. In the *Systems* view, select the SAP HANA system where you want to create a new package and expand the *Content* node to display the namespace hierarchy for package content.
3. Right-click the package where you want to add a new package and choose  *New > Package...* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
SAP HANA studio displays the *New Package* dialog.
4. Maintain the package details.

In the *New Package* dialog, enter information in the following fields:

- a. Enter a name for the new package.

The package *Name* is mandatory. Add the new name to the end of the full package path, for example, `acme.com.package1`.

- b. Fill in the other optional information as required:

Use the *Delivery Unit* drop-down list to assign the new package to a delivery unit.

Choose *Translation* if you intend to have the package content localized. You must maintain the translation details.

5. Create the new package.

In the *New Package* dialog, click *OK* to create a new package in the specified location.

6. Activate the new package.

In the *Systems* view, right-click the new package and choose *Activate* from the context-sensitive popup menu.

3.4.3.1 Repository Package Types

SAP HANA enables the use of various types of package, which are intended for use in particular scenarios.

SAP HANA Application Services provide or allow the following package **types**:

- Structural
Package only contains sub-packages; it cannot contain repository objects.
- Non-Structural
Package contains both repository objects and subpackages.

The following packages are delivered by default with the repository:

- `sap`
Transportable package reserved for content delivered by SAP. Partners and customers must not use the `sap` package; they must create and use their own root package to avoid conflicts with software delivered by SAP, for example when SAP updates or overwrites the `sap` package structure during an update or patch process.
- `system-local`
Non-transportable, structural packages (and subpackages). Content in this package (and any subpackages) is considered system local and cannot be transported. This is similar to the concept of the `$tmp` development class in SAP NetWeaver ABAP.
- `system-local.generated`
Non-transportable, structural packages for generated content, that is; content not created by manual user interaction
- `system-local.private`
Non-transportable, structural package reserved for objects that belong to individual users, for example, `system-local.private.<user_name>`. To avoid compatibility issues with future functionality, do not use the `system-local.private` package or any of its sub-packages.

3.4.4 Delete a Repository Package

In SAP HANA development, repository packages are used to manage various elements of your application development project. Sometimes you need to delete a package that contains repository objects from other developers.

Prerequisites

To perform this task, your user must be assigned the `REPO.WORK_IN_FOREIGN_WORKSPACE` system privilege.

Context

You use repository packages to manage the various elements of your application development project in the SAP HANA repository. To delete a package, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. In the SAP HANA studio, start the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
2. Open the *Repositories* view and locate the package that you want to delete.
3. Delete the package.
 1. Click the alternate mouse button on the package that you want to delete and choose *Delete*.
 2. When prompted, choose *OK*.
A message box appears indicating that you are deleting a package with active and inactive objects.
 3. Choose *OK* to delete the package.
Choose *Cancel* to stop the deletion of the package and objects.

Related Information

[System Privileges \(Reference\) \[page 744\]](#)

3.5 Creating the Application Descriptors

The application descriptors describe the framework in which an SAP HANA XS application runs. The framework defined by the application descriptors includes the root point in the package hierarchy where content is to be served to client requests, and who has access to the content.

Prerequisites

- You must be familiar with the concept of the application descriptor file (`.xsapp`), the application-access file (`.xsaccess`), and if required, the application-privileges file (`.xsprivileges`).

Context

When you develop and deploy applications in the context of SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), you must define the application descriptors. Maintaining the application descriptors involves the following tasks:

Procedure

1. Create an application-descriptor file.

The package that contains the application descriptor file becomes the root path of the resources exposed to client requests by the application you develop.

2. Create an application-access file.

The application-access file enables you to specify who or what is authorized to access the content exposed by a SAP HANA XS application package and what content they are allowed to see. You can use keywords in the application-access file to set authentication rules, define package-privilege levels (for example, EXECUTE or ADMIN, specify the connection security level (for example, SSL/HTTPS), and allow (or prevent) the creation of entity tags (Etags). You can also define rewrite rules for URLs exposed by an application, for example, to hide internal details of URL paths from external users, clients, and search engines.

3. Create an application-privileges file. (Optional)

The application-privileges file enables you to define the authorization privileges required for access to an SAP HANA XS application, for example, to start the application (EXECUTE) or to perform administrative actions on an application (ADMIN). The privileges defined here are activated for a particular application in the application-access file. These privileges can be checked by an application at runtime. Privileges defined apply to the package where the privileges file is located as well as any packages further down the package hierarchy unless an additional privileges file is present, for example, in a subpackage.

Related Information

[Create an application descriptor \[page 98\]](#)

[Create an application-access file \[page 100\]](#)

[Create an application-privileges file \[page 116\]](#)

3.5.1 Create an Application Descriptor File

Each application that you want to develop and deploy on SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) must have an application-descriptor file. The application descriptor is the core file that you use to describe an application's framework within SAP HANA XS.

Prerequisites

- A repository workspace with a shared project
- A root package for your application, for example, `MyAppPackage`

i Note

The namespace `sap` is restricted. Place the new package in your own namespace, for example, `com.acme`, which you can create alongside the `sap` namespace.

Context

The application descriptor is the core file that you use to indicate an application's availability within SAP HANA XS. The application descriptor marks the point in the package hierarchy at which an application's content is available to clients. The application-descriptor file has no contents and no name; it only has the file extension `.xsapp`. The package that contains the application-descriptor file becomes the root path of the resources exposed by the application you develop.

i Note

For backward compatibility, content is allowed in the `.xsapp` file but ignored.

To create an application descriptor for your new application, perform the following steps.

Procedure

1. In the SAP HANA studio, open the [SAP HANA Development](#) perspective.
2. In the [Project Explorer](#) view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new `(.xsapp)` file.
3. In the context-sensitive popup menu, choose  [New > Other...](#).
4. In the [Select a Wizard](#) dialog, choose  [SAP HANA > Application Development > XS Application Descriptor File](#).
5. Enter or select the parent folder. Note that the default file name for the XS application descriptor is `.xsapp` and cannot be changed.

6. Select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you get started.
7. Choose *Finish*.

If you are using the SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file creation wizard adds the required file extension `.xsapp` automatically.

➔ **Tip**

Files with names that begin with the period (.), for example, `.xsapp`, are sometimes not visible in the *Project Explorer*. To enable the display of all files in the *Project Explorer* view, use the  *Customize View*  *Available Customization* option and clear all check boxes.

8. Save and activate your changes and additions.
 - In the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Project Explorer* view and right-click the new `(.xsapp)` package.
 - In the context-sensitive popup menu, choose  *Team*  *Activate*.

3.5.1.1 The SAP HANA XS Application Descriptor

Each application that you want to develop and deploy on SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) must have an application descriptor file. The application descriptor is the core file that you use to describe an application's framework within SAP HANA XS.

The package that contains the application descriptor file becomes the root path of the resources exposed to client requests by the application you develop.

 **Note**

The application-descriptor file has no name and no content; it only has the file extension “`xsapp`”, for example, `.xsapp`. For backward compatibility, content is allowed in the `.xsapp` file but ignored.

The application root is determined by the package containing the `.xsapp` file. For example, if the package `sap.test` contains the file `.xsapp`, the application will be available under the URL `http://<host>:<port>/sap.test/`. Application content is available to requests from users.

 **Caution**

Make sure that the folder containing the `.xsapp` application descriptor file also contains an `.xsaccess` file, which controls access to the application.

The contents of the package where the `.xsapp` file resides (and any subfolders) are exposed to user requests and, as a result, potentially reachable by attackers. You can protect this content with the appropriate authentication settings in the corresponding application-access (`.xsaccess`) file, which resides in the same package. Bear in mind that by exposing Web content, you run the risk of leaking information; the leaked information can be used in the following ways:

- Directly
Data files such as `.csv` files used for the initial database load can contain confidential information.

- Indirectly
File descriptors can give details about the internal coding of the application, and files that contain the names of developers are useful; they can be used by an attacker in combination with social-engineering techniques.

To help protect your application from security-related issues, place the application descriptor (`.xsapp`) as deep as possible in the package hierarchy. In addition, include only the index page in this package; all other application data should be placed in sub-folders that are protected with individual application-access files.

➔ **Tip**

Keep the application package hierarchy clean. Do not place in the same package as the `.xsapp` file (or sub-package) any unnecessary content, for example, files which are not required for the application to work.

Related Information

[The Application-Access File \[page 103\]](#)

3.5.2 Enable Access to SAP HANA XS Application Packages

The application-access file enables you to specify who or what is authorized to access the content exposed by the application package and what content they are allowed to see.

Prerequisites

- A repository workspace with a shared project
- A root package for your application, for example, `MyAppPackage`

i Note

The namespace `sap` is restricted. Place the new package in your own namespace, for example, `com.acme`, which you can create alongside the `sap` namespace.

- An application descriptor file (`.xsapp`) for the selected application

Context

The application-access file is a JSON-compliant file with the file suffix `.xsaccess`. You can use a set of keywords in the application-access file `.xsaccess` to specify if authentication is required to enable access to package content, which data is exposed, and if rewrite rules are in place to hide target and source URLs, for

example, from users and search engines. You can also specify what, if any, level of authorization is required for the package and whether SSL is mandatory for client connections.

i Note

The application-access file does not have a name before the dot (.); it only has the suffix .xsaccess.

To create the application access file, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Create a file called .xsaccess and place it in the root package of the application to which you want to enable access.

A basic .xsaccess file must, at the very least, contain a set of curly brackets, for example, {}. Note that the .xsaccess file uses keyword-value pairs to set access rules; if a mandatory keyword-value pair is not set, then the default value is assumed.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio, open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
- b. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new (.xsaccess) file.
- c. In the context-sensitive popup menu, choose ► *New* > *Other...* ▾.
- d. In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose ► *SAP HANA* > *Application Development* > *XS Application Access File* ▾.

- e. ➔ **Tip**

If you are using the SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file creation wizard adds the required file extension .xsaccess automatically and enables direct editing of the file.

Enter or select the parent folder where the .xsaccess file is to be located.

i Note

The default name for the core application-access file is .xsaccess and cannot be changed.

- f. Select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you.
 - g. Choose *Finish*.
2. Enable application access to data.

You use the *expose* keyword to enable or disable access to content at a package or subpackage level.

```
{  
  "exposed" : true,  
  "prevent_xsrf" : true  
}
```

i Note

It is highly recommended to always use the *prevent_xsrf* keyword to help protect your application against attacks that use cross-site request forgery vector.

3. Define the application authentication method.

To ensure that form-based logon works when you enable it using the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*, the *authentication* keyword is required in the `.xsaccess` file, too, and must be set to the value "form", as illustrated in the following example.

```
{  
    "authentication" : { "method" : "Form"}  
}
```

Note

Use the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* to configure applications to use additional authentication methods, for example, basic, logon tickets, or Single Sign On (SSO) providers such as SAML2 and X509. You must also enable the *Form-based authentication* checkbox, if you want your application (or applications) to use form-based logon as the authentication method. Any other keywords in the authentication section of the `.xsaccess` file are ignored.

4. Specify the application privileges if required. (*Optional*)

Use the authorization keyword in the `.xsaccess` file to specify which authorization level is required by a user for access to a particular application package. The *authorization* keyword requires a corresponding entry in the `.xsprivileges` file, for example, `execute` for basic privileges or `admin` for administrative privileges on the specified package.

```
{  
    "authorization":  
        [ "sap.xse.test::Execute",  
          "sap.xse.test::Admin"  
        ]  
}
```

5. Save the `.xsaccess` file in the package with which you want to associate the rules you have defined.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose  *Team*  *Commit* from the context-sensitive popup menu.

6. Activate the `.xsaccess` file to the repository.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right click the object you want to activate and choose  *Team > Activate* from the context-sensitive popup menu.

Related Information

[Create an Application Descriptor File \[page 98\]](#)

[Application-Access File Keyword Options \[page 104\]](#)

3.5.2.1 The Application-Access File

SAP HANA XS enables you to define access to each individual application package that you want to develop and deploy.

The application-access file enables you to specify who or what is authorized to access the content exposed by a SAP HANA XS application package and what content they are allowed to see. For example, you use the application-access file to specify if authentication is to be used to check access to package content and if rewrite rules are in place that hide or expose target and source URLs.

The application-access file does not have a name; it only has the file extension `.xsaccess`. The content of the `.xsaccess` file is formatted according to JSON rules, and the settings specified in an `.xsaccess` file apply not only to the package the `.xsaccess` file belongs to but also any subpackages lower in the package hierarchy. Multiple `.xsaccess` files are allowed, but only at different levels in the package hierarchy. You cannot place two `.xsaccess` files in the same package.

i Note

The settings specified in an `.xsaccess` file in a **subpackage** take precedence over any settings specified in a `.xsaccess` file higher up the package hierarchy; the subpackage settings are also inherited by any packages further down the package hierarchy. Any settings **not** modified by the `.xsaccess` in the subpackage remain unchanged, that is: as defined in the parent package or, where applicable, the default settings.

Using multiple `.xsaccess` files enables you to specify different application-access rules for individual subpackages in the package hierarchy. Following the inheritance rule, any applications below the application package containing the modified access settings inherit the new, modified settings.

The following example shows the composition and structure of the SAP HANA XS application access (`.xsaccess`) file, which comprises a list of key-value pairs that specify how the application service responds to client requests. For example, in this file, "exposed" : `true` indicates that data is available to client requests; "force_ssl" : `true` specifies that standard HTTP requests are not allowed by the Web browser.

i Note

Some elements can also be specified in the application's runtime configuration, for example, using the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#). For example, you can configure applications to refuse insecure HTTP connections, allow the use of e-tags, or enable additional authentication methods such as Single Sign On (SSO) providers SAML2 and X509.

Example

The Application-Access (`.xsaccess`) File

```
{
  "exposed" : true,                                // Expose data via http
  "authentication" :
  {
    "method": "Form"
  },
  "authorization":                                // Privileges for application access
  [
    "sap.xse.test::Execute",
    "sap.xse.test::Admin"
```

```

        ],
  "rewrite_rules" : // URL rewriting rules
    [
      {
        "source": "/entries/(\d+)/(\d+)/(\d+)/",
        "target": "/logic/entries.xsjs?year=$1&month=$2&day=$3"
      }
    ],
  "mime_mapping" : // Map file-suffix to MIME type
    [
      {
        "extension": "jpg", "mimetype": "image/jpeg"
      }
    ],
  "force_ssl" : true, // Accept only HTTPS requests
  "enable_etags" : true, // Allow generation of etags
  "prevent_xsrf" : true, // Prevent cross-site request forgery
  "anonymous_connection" : "sap.hana.sqlcon::AnonConn", // .xssqlcc object
  "default_connection" : "sap.hana.sqlcon::sqlcc", // .xssqlcc object
  "cors" :
    {
      "enabled" : false
    },
  "default_file" : "homepage.html", // Override default access setting
  "cache_control" : "no-cache, no-store", // Manage static Web-content cache
  "headers" :
    {
      "enabled": true,
      "customHeaders":
        [
          {
            "name": "X-Frame-Options", "value": "SAMEORIGIN"
          }
        ]
    }
}

```

Related Information

[Application-Access File Keyword Options \[page 104\]](#)

[Set up Application Security \[page 121\]](#)

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

3.5.2.2 Application-Access File Keyword Options

The application-access (.xsaccess) file enables you to specify whether or not to expose package content, which authentication method is used to grant access, and what content is visible.



The Application Access (.xsaccess) File

i Note

This example of the .xsaccess file is **not** a working model; it is used to illustrate the syntax for all possible options.

```
{
  "exposed" : false,
```

```

    "authentication" :
    {
        "method": "Form"
    },
    "authorization":
    [
        "sap.xse.test::Execute",
        "sap.xse.test::Admin"
    ],
    "anonymous_connection" : "sap.hana.sqlcon::AnonConn",
    "default_connection" : "sap.hana.sqlcon::sqlcc",
    "cache_control" : "no-store",
    "cors" :
    {
        "enabled" : false
    },
    "default_file" : "index_1.html",
    "enable_etags" : false,
    "force_ssl" : true,
    "mime_mapping" :
    [
        {
            "extension":"jpg", "mimetype":"image/jpeg"
        }
    ],
    "prevent_xsrf" : true,
    "rewrite_rules" :
    [
        {
            "source" : "...",
            "target" : "..."
        }
    ]
    "headers" :
    {
        "enabled": true,
        "customHeaders": [ {"name":"X-Frame-Options","value":"<VALUE>"} ]
    }
}

```

exposed

```

{
    "exposed" : false,
}

```

The exposed keyword enables you define if content in a package (and its subpackages) is to be made available by HTTP to client requests. Values are Boolean true or false. If no value is set for exposed, the default setting (false) applies.

Tip

Only expose content that is absolutely necessary to enable the application to run.

Consider whether it is necessary to expose data via HTTP/S. Not exposing data via HTTP enables you to keep your files accessible to other programs but prevent direct access to the data via URL. Since the application's `index.html` page must normally remain reachable, consider storing the `index.html` file separately with a

dedicated `.xsaccess` file that enables access (`"exposed": true`). You can keep all other content hidden, for example, in separate package to which access is denied (`"exposed": false`).

Packages without a dedicated `.xsaccess` file inherit the application-access settings defined in the parent folder. If an `.xsaccess` file exists but the `exposed` keyword is not defined, the default setting `false` applies.

anonymous_connection

```
{  
    "anonymous_connection" : "sap.hana.sqlcon::AnonConn",  
}
```

The `anonymous_connection` keyword enables you to define the name of the `.xssqlcc` file that will be used for SQL access when no user credentials are provided. SAP HANA XS enables you to define the configuration for individual SQL connections. Each connection configuration has a unique name, for example, [Registration](#), [AnonConn](#), or [AdminConn](#), which is generated from the name of the corresponding connection-configuration file (`Registration.xssqlcc`, `AnonConn.xssqlcc`, or `AdminConn.xssqlcc`) on activation in the repository. If no value is set, the default setting is "null".

Tip

It is not recommended to enable anonymous access.

If it is necessary to provide anonymous access to an application, design your application in such a way that all files requiring anonymous access are placed together in the same package, which you can then protect with the permissions defined in a dedicated `.xsaccess` file. Remember that the behavior of the anonymous connection depends on the details specified in the corresponding SQL configuration file (`.xssqlcc`).

default_connection

```
{  
    "default_connection" : "sap.hana.sqlcon::sqlcc",  
}
```

If the `default_connection` is set in the `.xsaccess` file, the specified SQL connection configuration (for example, defined in `sqlcc`) is used for **all** SQL executions in this package, whether or not the requesting user is authenticated in SAP HANA or not. The difference between the `default_connection` and the `anonymous_connection` is that the anonymous SQL connection configuration is only used if the requesting user is not authenticated. Like any other property of the `xsaccess` file, the `default_connection` is inherited down the package hierarchy, for example, from package to subpackage. The `default_connection` can also be overwritten, for example, by locating an `xsaccess` file with a different `default_connection` in one or more subpackages.

Tip

If the requesting user is authenticated, the user name will be available in the connection as the `APPLICATIONUSER` session variable.

The credentials to use for an SQL execution are determined according to the following order of priority:

1. The SQL connection configuration (SQLCC) specified in `$.db.getConnection(sqlcc)`; this applies only in XS JavaScript (not OData, for example)
2. The value specified in `default_connection` (if set)
3. An authenticated user
4. The value specified in `anonymous_connection` (if set)

The `default_connection` is intended for use with anonymous parts of the application that require the **same** privileges for all users. If the anonymous part of an application is designed to behave according to the privileges granted to authenticated users, the `anonymous_connection` should be used. This is particularly important if analytic privileges are involved, for example, to restrict the amount of returned rows (not overall access to the table). In most cases, the `default_connection` should be used.

authentication

```
{  
    "authentication":  
        {  
            "method": "Form"  
        },  
}
```

The `authentication` keyword is required in the `.xsaccess` file and must be set to the value "form", for example `"method" : "Form"`, to ensure that form-based logon works when you enable it using the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#).

i Note

Use the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#) to configure applications to use additional authentication methods, for example, basic, logon tickets, or Single Sign On (SSO) providers such as SAML2 and X509. You must also enable the *Form-based authentication* checkbox, if you want your application (or applications) to use form-based logon as the authentication method. Any other keywords in the authentication section of the `.xsaccess` file are ignored.

- Form-based authentication

Redirect the logon request to a form to fill in, for example, a Web page.

To ensure that, during the authentication process, the password is transmitted in encrypted form, it is strongly recommended to enable SSL/HTTPS for all application connections to the XS engine, for example, using the `force_ssl` keyword. If you set the `force_ssl` option, you must ensure that the SAP Web Dispatcher is configured to accept and manage HTTPS requests.

Form-based authentication requires the `libxsauthenticator` library, which must not only be available but also be specified in the list of trusted applications in the `xsengine` application container. The application list is displayed in the SAP HANA studio's *Administration Console* perspective in the following location: [Administration](#) [Configuration tab](#) [xsengine.ini](#) [application_container](#) [application_list](#). If it is not displayed, ask the SAP HANA administrator to add it.

i Note

If you need to troubleshoot problems with form-based logon, you can configure the generation of useful trace information in the `XSENGINE` section of the database trace component using the following entry:
`xsa:sap.hana.xs.formlogin.`

authorization

```
{  
    "authorization":  
        [  
            "sap.xse.test::Execute",  
            "sap.xse.test::Admin"  
        ],  
}
```

The `authorization` keyword in the `.xsaccess` file enables you to specify which authorization level is required for access to a particular application package, for example, execute or admin on the package `sap.xse.text`.

i Note

The authorization levels you can choose from are defined in the `.xsprivileges` file for the package, for example, "execute" for basic privileges, or "admin" for administrative privileges on the specified package. If you do not define any authorization requirements, any user can launch the application.

If you use the `authorization` keyword in the `.xsaccess` file, for example, to require "execute" privileges for a specific application package, you must create a `.xsprivileges` file for the same application package (or a parent package higher up the hierarchy, in which you define the "execute" privilege level declared in the `.xsaccess` file).

Authorization settings are inherited down the package hierarchy from a package to a subpackage. However, you can specify different authorization levels for different subpackages; this new setting is then inherited by any subpackages further down the hierarchy. To disable authorization for a subpackage (for example, to prevent inheritance of authorizations from the parent package), you can create a (sub)package-specific `.xsaccess` file with the `authorization` keyword explicitly set to `null`, as illustrated in the following example.

```
{  
    "authorization": null  
}
```

Bear in mind that the "`authorization":null` setting applies not only to the package in which the `.xsaccess` with the `null` setting is located but also to any subpackages further down the package hierarchy. You can re-enable authorization in subpackage levels by creating new a `.xsaccess` file.

cache_control

```
{  
    "cache_control": "no-store",  
}
```

The `cache_control` keyword enables you to override the cache-control header for Web content served by the SAP HANA XS Web server. So-called cache-control *directives* (for example, `public`, `private`, `no-store`) enable you to control the behavior of the Web browser and proxy caches, for example, whether or not to store a page, how to store it, or where. For more information about the values you can use to set `cache_control`, see the HTTP standard for cache-control directives. If no value for `cache_control` is set in the `.xsaccess` file, the default setting is “null”.

➔ Tip

For security reason, it is recommended to set the `cache_control` keyword to “`no-cache`, `no-store`”. However, if nothing is cached or stored, there is an obvious impact on application performance.

If application performance allows, the `no-cache`, `no-store` setting is advisable for the following reasons:

- From a client perspective:
If an application is handling sensitive data, it is bad practice to cache the data in the local browser since this could lead to unintended disclosure of information.
- From a server perspective:
Allowing an application to cache data can open up the application to attack. For example, if attackers build a malicious page and host it on a proxy server between your server and the requesting client, it would be possible to steal data from the client or prevent access to the application altogether. Since the risk of such an attack is small, you might want to consider allowing caching, as long as it does not adversely affect performance.

cors

```
{  
    "cors" :  
        {  
            "enabled" : false  
        },  
}
```

The `cors` keyword enables you to provide support for cross-origin requests, for example, by allowing the modification of the request header. Cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) permits Web pages from other domains to make HTTP requests to your application domain, where normally such requests would automatically be refused by the Web browser's security policy.

If CORS support is disabled (`"enabled" : false`), the following settings apply on the Web server:

- The server does not respond to any CORS preflight requests
- The server does not add CORS response headers to any CORS requests
- The server refuses to execute the resource specified in the request

To enable support for CORS, set the `cors` keyword to `{"enabled": true}`, which results in the following default `cors` configuration:

```
{"cors": {"enabled": true, "allowMethods": ["GET", "POST", "HEAD", "OPTIONS"], "allowOrigin": ["*"], "maxAge": "3600"}}
```

The following table describes the options that are supported with the `cors` keyword:

```
{"cors": {"enabled": true, "allowMethods": <ALLOWED_METHODS>, "allowOrigin": <ALLOWED_ORIGIN>, "maxAge": <MAX_AGE>, "allowHeaders": <ALLOWED_HEADERS>, "exposeHeaders": <EXPOSED_HEADERS>} }
```

Table 16: Default Settings for CORS Options

CORS Option	Description
ALLOWED_METHODS	A single permitted method or a comma-separated list of methods that are allowed by the server, for example, "GET", "POST". If <code>allowMethods</code> is defined but no method is specified, the default "GET", "POST", "HEAD", "OPTIONS" (all) applies. Note that matching is case-sensitive.
ALLOWED_ORIGIN	A single host name or a comma-separated list of host names that are allowed by the server, for example: <code>www.sap.com</code> or <code>*.sap.com</code> . If <code>allowOrigin</code> is defined but no host is specified, the default "*" (all) applies. Note that matching is case-sensitive.
ALLOW_HEADERS	A single header or a comma-separated list of request headers that are allowed by the server. If <code>allowHeaders</code> is defined but no header is specified as allowed, no default value is supplied.
MAX_AGE	A single value specifying how long a preflight request should be cached for. If <code>maxAge</code> is defined but no value is specified, the default time of "3600" (seconds) applies.
EXPOSE_HEADERS	A single header or a comma-separated list of response headers that are allowed to be exposed. If <code>exposeHeaders</code> is defined but no response header is specified for exposure, no default value is supplied.

Alternatively, you can isolate the part of the application where CORS must be allowed, for example, in a specific subpackage. By adding a dedicated `.xsaccess` file to this CORS-related subpackage, you can set the `cors` option in the dedicated `.xsaccess` file to true.

default_file

```
{ "default_file" : "new_index.html", }
```

The `default_file` keyword enables you to override the default setting for application access (`index.html`) when the package is accessed without providing a file in the URI. If you use the `default_file` but do not specify a value, the default setting "`index.html`" is assumed.

➔ Tip

It is good practice to specify a default file name manually. Changing the default from `index.html` to something else can help make your application less vulnerable to automated hacker tools.

`rewrite_rules`

```
{  
    "rewrite_rules" :  
        [ {  
            "source": "...",  
            "target": "..."  
        } ],  
}
```

The `rewrite_rules` keyword enables you hide the details of internal URL paths from external users, clients, and search engines. Any rules specified affect the local application where the `.xsaccess` file resides (and any subpackage, assuming the subpackages do not have their own `.xsaccess` files); it is not possible to define global rewrite rules. URL rewrite rules are specified as a source-target pair where the source is written in the JavaScript `regex` syntax and the target is a simple string where references to found groups can be inserted using `$groupnumber`.

➔ Tip

It is not recommended to rely on rewrite rules to make an application secure.

In the following example, the rule illustrated hides the `filename` parameter and, as a result, makes it harder to guess that the parameter provided after `/go/` will be used as a filename value. Note that it is still necessary to validate the received input

```
{  
    "rewrite_rules" :  
        [ {  
            "source": "/go/(\d+)/",  
            "target": "/logic/users.xsjs?filename=$1"  
        } ],  
}
```

`mime_mapping`

```
{  
    "mime_mapping" :  
        [ {  
            "extension": "jpg", "mimetype": "image/jpeg"  
        } ],  
}
```

```
}
```

The `mime_mapping` keyword enables you to define how to map certain file suffixes to required MIME types. For example, you can map files with the `.jpg` file extension to the MIME type `image/jpeg`.

This list you define with the `mime_mapping` keyword supersedes any default mapping defined by the server; the Web browser uses the information to decide how to process the related file types.

⚠ Caution

Make sure you do not instruct the browser to execute files that are not meant to be executed, for example, by mapping `.jpg` image files with the MIME type `application/javascript`.

The default MIME mappings remain valid for any values you do not define with the `mime_mapping` keyword. Consider restricting any explicit mappings to file types where the default behavior does not work as expected or where no default value exists, for example, for file types specific to your application.

force_ssl

```
{
    "force_ssl" : false,
}
```

The `force_ssl` keyword enables you to refuse Web browser requests that do not use secure HTTP (SSL/HTTPS) for client connections. If no value is set for `force_ssl`, the default setting (`false`) applies and non-secured connections (HTTP) are allowed.

➔ Tip

To ensure that, during the authentication process, passwords are transmitted in encrypted form, it is strongly recommended to enable SSL/HTTPS for all application connections to the XS engine. If you set the `force_ssl` option, you must ensure that the SAP Web Dispatcher is configured to accept and manage HTTPS requests. For more information, see the SAP HANA XS section of the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*.

Enabling the `force_ssl` option ensures that your application is reachable only by means of an HTTPS connection. If your application must support standard HTTP (without SSL), make sure that no sensitive data is being sent either `to` or `from` the application. Disabling the `force_ssl` option allows attackers to read whatever is sent over the network. Although it is possible to use message-based encryption for sensitive data while allowing HTTP, it is much better to work with HTTPS.

⚠ Caution

If a runtime configuration exists for your application, the `force_ssl` setting in the runtime configuration supersedes the `force_ssl` in the `.xsaccess`.

enable_etags

```
{  
    "enable_etags" : true,  
}
```

You can allow or prevent the generation of entity tags (etags) for static Web content using the `enable_etags` keyword. If no value is set, the default setting (true) applies, in which case etags are generated. Etags are used to improve caching performance, for example, so that the same data is not resent from the server if no change has occurred since the last time a request for the same data was made.

If etags are enabled, the browser sends with each HTTP request the etag retrieved from its cached page. If the etag from the cached page matches the etag from the server, the server answers with the status code 304 (not modified) and does not send the full requested page. Although enabling etags has the positive side-effect of helping to prevent cache poisoning attacks, there is no direct security risk associated with disabling etags from the developer's perspective.

prevent_xsrf

```
{  
    "prevent_xsrf" : true,  
}
```

You can use the `prevent_xsrf` keyword in the `.xsaccess` file to protect applications from cross-site request-forgery (XSRF) attacks. XSRF attacks attempt to trick a user into clicking a specific hyperlink, which shows a (usually well-known) Web site and performs some actions on the user's behalf, for example, in a hidden iframe. If the targeted end user is logged in and browsing using an administrator account, the XSRF attack can compromise the entire Web application. There is no good reason why you would explicitly set this keyword to false.

i Note

It is recommended to enable the `prevent_xsrf` feature for **all** applications that are not read-only.

The `prevent_xsrf` keyword prevents the XSRF attacks by ensuring that checks are performed to establish that a valid security token is available for a given Browser session. The existence of a valid security token determines if an application responds to the client's request to display content; if no valid security token is available, a 403 Forbidden message is displayed. A security token is considered to be valid if it matches the token that SAP HANA XS generates in the back end for the corresponding session.

i Note

The default setting is false, which means there is no automatic prevention of XSRF attacks. If no value is assigned to the `prevent_xsrf` keyword, the default setting (false) applies.

Setting the `prevent_xsrf` keyword to `true` ensures XSRF protection only on the server side. On the client side, to include the XSRF token in the HTTP headers, you must first fetch the token as part of a GET request, as illustrated in the following example:

```
xmlHttp.setRequestHeader("X-CSRF-Token", "Fetch");
```

You can use the fetched XSRF token in subsequent POST requests, as illustrated in the following code example:

```
xmlHttp.setRequestHeader("X-CSRF-Token", xsrf_token);
```

headers

```
{
  "headers": [
    {
      "enabled": true,
      "customHeaders": [ {"name": "X-Frame-Options", "value": "<VALUE>"} ]
    }
  ]
}
```

Enable support for the X-Frame-Options HTTP header field, which allows the server to instruct the client browser whether or not to display transmitted content in frames that are part of other Web pages. You can also enable this setting in the application's corresponding runtime configuration file, for example, using the [XS Administration Tool](#).

⚠ Caution

Runtime settings override any settings specified in the design-time configuration.

`<VALUE>` can be one of the following:

- DENY
- SAMEORIGIN
- ALLOW-FROM `<URL>`

You can only specify one URL with the ALLOW-FROM option, for example: `"value": "ALLOW-FROM http://www.site.com"`.

ℹ Note

To allow an application to use custom headers, you must enable the `headers` section.

Related Information

[Server-Side JavaScript Security Considerations \[page 566\]](#)

[The SQL Connection Configuration File \[page 616\]](#)

3.5.2.3 Application-Access URL Rewrite Rules

Rewriting URLs enables you to hide internal URL path details from external users, clients, and search engines. You define URL rewrite rules in the application-access file (`.xsaccess`) for each application or for an application hierarchy (an application package and its subpackages).

The rewrite rules you define in the `.xsaccess` file apply only to the local application to which the `.xsaccess` file belongs; it is not possible to define global rules to rewrite URLs. Rules are specified as a source-target pair where the source is written in the JavaScript `regex` syntax, and the target is a simple string where references to found groups can be inserted using `$groupnumber`.

The following examples show how to use a simple set of rewrite rules to hide internal URLs from requesting clients and users.

The first example illustrates the package structure that exists in the repository for a given application; the structure includes the base package `apptest`, the subpackages `subpackage1` and `subpackage2`, and several other subpackages:

```
sap---apptest
    |---logic
    |   |---users.xsjs
    |   |---posts.xsjs
    |---posts
    |   |---2011...
    |---subpackage1
    |   |---image.jpg
    |---subpackage2
    |   |---subsubpackage
    |   |   |---secret.txt
    |   |---script.xsjs
    |---subpackage3
    |   |---internal.file
    |---users
    |   |---123...
    |---.xsapp
    |---.xsaccess
    |---index.html
```

The application-access file for the package `apptest` (and its subpackages) includes the following rules for rewriting URLs used in client requests:

```
{
  "rewrite_rules": [
    {
      "source": "/users/(\d+)/",
      "target": "/logic/users.xsjs?id=$1"
    },
    {
      "source": "/posts/(\d+)/(\d+)/(\d+)/",
      "target": "/logic/posts.xsjs?year=$1&month=$2&day=$3"
    }
  ]
}
```

Assuming we have the package structure and URL rewrite rules illustrated in the previous examples, the following valid URLs would be exposed; bold URLs require authentication:

```
/sap/apptest/
/sap/apptest/index.html
/sap/apptest/logic/users.xsjs
```

```
/sap/apptest/logic/posts.xsjs
```

The rewriting of the following URLs would be allowed:

```
/sap/apptest/users/123/ ==> /sap/appTest/logic/users.xsjs?id=123  
/sap/apptest/posts/2011/10/12/ ==> /sap/appTest/logic/posts.xsjs?  
year=2011&month=10&day=12
```

3.5.3 Create an SAP HANA XS Application Privileges File

The application-privileges (.xsprivileges) file enables you to define the authorization levels required for access to an application, for example, to start the application or perform administrative actions on an application. You can assign the application privileges to the individual users who require them.

Prerequisites

- A repository workspace with a shared project
- A root package for your application, for example, MyAppPackage

i Note

The namespace `sap` is restricted. Place the new package in your own namespace, for example, `com.acme`, which you can create alongside the `sap` namespace.

- An application descriptor file (.xsapp) for the selected application
- An application access file (.xsaccess) for the selected application

Context

The .xsprivileges file must reside in the same application package that you want to define the access privileges for.

i Note

If you use the .xsprivileges file to define application-specific privileges, you must also add a corresponding entry to the same application's .xsaccess file, for example, using the `authorization` keyword.

Procedure

1. Create the application-privileges (.xsprivileges) file and place it in the application package whose access privileges you want to define.

The application-privileges file does not have a name; it only has the file extension .xsprivileges. The contents of the .xsprivileges file must be formatted according to JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) rules.

Note

Multiple .xsprivileges files are allowed, but only at different levels in the package hierarchy; you cannot place two .xsprivileges files in the same application package. The privileges defined in a .xsprivileges file are bound to the package to which the file belongs and can only be applied to this package and its subpackages.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio and open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
- b. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new (.xsprivileges) file.
- c. In the context-sensitive popup menu, choose  *New* > *Other...* 
- d. In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose  *SAP HANA* > *Application Development* > *XS Application Privileges File* 
- e. Enter or select the parent folder, where the application-privileges file is to be located.
- f. Enter a name for the application-privileges file.

Tip

If you are using the SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file creation wizard adds the required file extension .xsprivileges automatically and enables direct editing of the file.

- g. Select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you.
 - h. Choose *Finish*.
 - i. Activate the new (.xsprivileges) file.
2. Define the required application privileges.

In the .xsprivileges file, you define a privilege for an application package by specifying an entry name with an optional description. This entry name is then automatically prefixed with the package name in which the .xsprivileges file is located to form a unique privilege name. For example, com.acme.myapp::Execute would enable *execute* privileges on the package com.acme.myapp. The privilege name is unique to the package to which it belongs and, as a result, can be used in multiple .xsprivileges files in different packages.

Note

The .xsprivileges file lists the authorization levels defined for an application package. A corresponding entry is required in the same application's access file .xsaccess file to define which authorization level is assigned to which application package.

{

```

    "privileges" :
      [
        { "name" : "Execute", "description" : "Basic execution
privilege" },
        { "name" : "Admin", "description" : "Administration
privilege" }
      ]
}

```

- Specify which privileges are required for access to the application or application package.

If you use the `.xsprivileges` file to define application-specific privileges, you must also add a corresponding entry to the same application's `.xsaccess` file, for example, using the `authorization` keyword.

Note

The `.xsprivileges` file lists the authorization levels that are available for access to an application package; the `.xsaccess` file defines which authorization level is assigned to which application package.

- Locate and open the XS application access file (`.xsaccess`) for the application for which you want to define application privileges.
- Specify the privileges required for access to the application or application package.

Use the `authorization` keyword in the `.xsaccess` file to specify which authorization level is required by a user for access to a particular application package.

Note

If you enable the `authorization` keyword in the `.xsaccess` file, you must add a corresponding entry to the `.xsprivileges` file, too.

```

{
  "exposed" : true,
  "authentication" :
  [
    { "method" : "Form" }
  ],
  "authorization":
  [
    "com.acme.myApp::Execute",
    "com.acme.myApp::Admin"
  ]
}

```

- Save and activate your changes and additions.

The activation of the application privileges creates the corresponding objects, which you can use to assign the specified privileges to an author.

- Assign the application privilege to the users who require it.

After activation of the `.xsprivileges` object, the only user who by default has the application privileges specified in the `.xsprivileges` file is the `_SYS_REPO` user. To grant the specified privilege to (or revoke them from) other users, use the `GRANT_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE` or `REVOKE_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE` procedure in the `_SYS_REPO` schema.

To grant the `execute` application privilege to a user, run the following command in the SAP HANA studio's [SQL Console](#):

```
call
"_SYS_REPO"."GRANT_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE"('"com.acme.myApp::Execute"', '<UserName>')
```

To revoke the `execute` application privilege to a user, run the following command in the SAP HANA studio's [SQL Console](#):

```
call
"_SYS_REPO"."REVOKE_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE"('"com.acme.myApp::Execute"', '<UserName>')
```

Related Information

[Create an Application Descriptor File \[page 98\]](#)

[Enable Access to SAP HANA XS Application Packages \[page 100\]](#)

3.5.3.1 The Application-Privileges File

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), the `application-privileges (.xsprivileges)` file can be used to create or define the authorization privileges required for access to an SAP HANA XS application, for example, to start the application or to perform administrative actions on an application. These privileges can be checked by an application at runtime.

The `application-privileges` file has only the file extension `.xsprivileges`; it does not have a name and is formatted according to JSON rules. Multiple `.xsprivileges` files are allowed, but only at different levels in the package hierarchy; you cannot place two `.xsprivileges` files in the same application package. The package privileges defined in a `.xsprivileges` file are bound to the package to which the `.xsprivileges` file belongs and can only be used in this package and its subpackages.

Inside the `.xsprivileges` file, a privilege is defined by specifying an entry name with an optional description. This entry name is then automatically prefixed with the package name to form the unique privilege name, for example, `sap.hana::Execute`.

As an application privilege is created during activation of an `.xsprivileges` file, the only user who has the privilege by default is the `_SYS_REPO` user. To grant or revoke the privilege to (or from) other users you can use the `GRANT_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE` or `REVOKE_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE` procedure in the `_SYS_REPO` schema.

i Note

The `.xsprivileges` file lists the authorization levels that are available for access to an application package; the `.xsaccess` file defines which authorization level is assigned to which application package.

In the following above, if the application-privileges file is located in the application package `sap.hana.xse`, then the following privileges are created:

- `sap.hana.xse::Execute`
- `sap.hana.xse::Admin`

The privileges defined apply to the package where the `.xsprivileges` file is located as well as any packages further down the package hierarchy unless an additional `.xsprivileges` file is present, for example, in a subpackage. The privileges do not apply to packages that are not in the specified package path, for example, `sap.hana.appl`.

Example

The SAP HANA XS Application-Privileges File

The following example shows the composition and structure of a basic SAP HANA XS application-privileges file.

```
{  
    "privileges" :  
        [  
            { "name" : "Execute", "description" : "Basic execution  
privilege" },  
            { "name" : "Admin", "description" : "Administration privilege" }  
        ]  
}
```

If the `.xsprivileges` file shown in the example above is located in the package `sap.hana.xse`, you can assign the `Execute` privilege for the package to a particular user by calling the `GRANT_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE` procedure, as illustrated in the following code:

```
call "_SYS_REPO"."GRANT_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE"('sap.hana.xse::Execute',  
'<user>')
```

3.6 Maintaining Application Security

As part of the application-development process, you must decide how to provide access to the applications you develop. Application access includes security-related matters such as authentication methods and communication protocols

In addition to the features and functions you can enable with keywords in the `.xsaccess` file, SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) provides a dedicated SAP HANA XS administration tool that is designed to help you configure and maintain the authentication mechanism used to control access to the applications you develop. The [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#) enables you to configure the following runtime elements for an application:

- Security
Choose the security level you want to set to provide access to the application. For example, you can expose the application with/without requiring authentication (public/private) and force the application to accept only requests that use SSL/HTTPS.
- Authentication

Select an authentication type to use when checking user credentials before authorizing access to an application, for example: form-based authentication (with user name and password), SAML (SSO with Security Assertion Markup Language), SAP logon tickets...

Related Information

[Set up Application Security \[page 121\]](#)

[Application Security \[page 123\]](#)

[Application Authentication \[page 126\]](#)

3.6.1 Set up Application Security

To restrict access to the applications you develop, you must configure the application to work with particular authentication methods and communication protocols.

Prerequisites

To perform the steps in this task, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system
- You have the privileges granted in the following SAP HANA XS user roles:
 - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator`

Context

You must specify whether or not to expose application content, which authentication method is used to grant access to the exposed content, and what content is visible.

Procedure

1. Start the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

The tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/admin/`.

Note

In the default configuration, the URL redirects the request to a logon screen, which requires the credentials of an authenticated SAP HANA database user to complete the logon process. To ensure

access to all necessary features, the user who logs on should have the SAP HANA XS role `sap.hana_xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator`.

2. Select the security options your applications use.

You can setup the following application-related security options:

i Note

Security settings are automatically inherited by applications further down the application hierarchy. However, you can override the inherited security settings at any application level by modifying the settings for a particular application. Applications below the application with the modified security settings inherit the new, modified settings.

- a. Use the *Public (no authentication required)* option to specify if applications require user authentication to start.
 - Disabled
This is the default setting. In **disabled** mode, *Form-based authentication* and *Basic authentication* options are enabled automatically in the *Authentication* screen area.
 - Enabled
If you **enable** the *Public* option, no authentication is required to start an application; the *Authentication* screen area is hidden, and you cannot select any authentication-method options.
- b. Use the *Force SSL* option to specify if client requests must use secure HTTP (HTTPS).
 - Disabled
This is the default setting. With *Force SSL* disabled, the application returns a response to all requests (both HTTP and HTTPS).
 - Enabled
If you **enable** the *Force SSL* option, requests from browsers using standard HTTP are refused.

i Note

Enabling the *Force SSL* option only ensures that the selected application refuses any request that does not use HTTPS; it does not set up the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol for you. The SAP HANA administrator must configure the SAP Web Dispatcher to accept (and forward) HTTPS requests in addition.

Related Information

[SAP HANA XS Application Security \[page 123\]](#)

[Set up Application Authentication \[page 123\]](#)

[SAP HANA XS Application Authentication \[page 126\]](#)

[The Application-Access File \[page 103\]](#)

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

3.6.1.1 SAP HANA XS Application Security

You can set some basic security options to increase the security of the applications you develop for SAP HANA.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) provides a dedicated tool, the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*, that is designed to help you configure and maintain some of the basic aspects of runtime security relating to the applications you develop. For example, you can use the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* to specify if the applications you develop are publicly available for anyone to start, or if the applications can only be started by an authenticated user.

You can use the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* to set the following security-related options for the application you develop for SAP HANA XS:

- *Public (no authentication required)*

Use the *Public* option to specify if applications require user authentication to start. By default, the *Public* option in the application *Security* screen area is disabled and the *Form-based authentication* and *Basic authentication* options are enabled automatically in the *Authentication* screen area. However, you can disable both form-based and basic authentication and enable other, additional authentication methods (for example, SAP logon tickets or X509 authentication).

Note

If you **enable** the *Public* option in the application *Security* screen area, no authentication is required to start an application; the *Authentication* screen area is hidden, and you cannot select any authentication-method options.

- *Force SSL*

The *force SSL* option enables you to refuse Web browser requests that do not use secure HTTP (SSL/HTTPS) for client connections. If no value is set for `force_ssl`, the default setting (false) applies and non-secured connections (HTTP) are allowed.

Related Information

[SAP HANA XS Application Authentication \[page 126\]](#)

[The Application-Access File \[page 103\]](#)

3.6.2 Set up Application Authentication

To restrict access to the applications you develop, you must configure the application to work with particular authentication methods and communication protocols.

Prerequisites

To perform the steps in this task, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system
- You have the privileges granted in the following SAP HANA XS user roles:
 - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator`

Context

Before you define which authentication methods an application uses to grant access to the application content, you must use the application security tools to define whether or not to expose application content and, if so, which content to expose. SAP HANA XS enables you to define multiple authentication methods to verify the credentials of users who request access to the exposed content; multiple authentication methods are considered according to a specific order of priority. For example, if the first authentication method fails, SAP HANA tries to authenticate the user with the next authentication method specified. To configure the authentication method an application uses to verify user credentials, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

The tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/admin/`.

i Note

In the default configuration, the URL redirects the request to a logon screen, which requires the credentials of an authenticated SAP HANA database user to complete the logon process. To ensure access to all necessary features, the user who logs on should have the SAP HANA XS role `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator`.

2. Select the security options your applications use.

If you have already set the application security level, you can safely skip this step. You can setup the following application-related security options:

i Note

Security settings are automatically inherited by applications further down the application hierarchy. However, you can override the inherited security settings at any application level by modifying the settings for a particular application. Applications below the application with the modified security settings inherit the new, modified settings.

- a. Use the *Public (no authentication required)* option to specify if applications require user authentication to start.
 - **Disabled**
This is the default setting. In **disabled** mode, *Form-based authentication* and *Basic authentication* options are enabled automatically in the *Authentication* screen area.
 - **Enabled**
If you **enable** the *Public* option, no authentication is required to start an application; the *Authentication* screen area is hidden, and you cannot select any authentication-method options.

- b. Use the *Force SSL* option to specify if client requests must use secure HTTP (HTTPS).
- Disabled
This is the default setting. With *Force SSL* disabled, the application returns a response to all requests (both HTTP and HTTPS).
 - Enabled
If you **enable** the *Force SSL* option , requests from browsers using standard HTTP are refused.

i Note

Enabling the *Force SSL* option only ensures that the selected application refuses any request that does not use HTTPS; it does not set up the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol for you. The SAP HANA administrator must configure the SAP Web Dispatcher to accept (and forward) HTTPS requests in addition.

3. Select the authentication method your applications must use.

Authentication settings are automatically inherited by applications further down the application hierarchy. However, you can override the inherited authentication settings at any application level by modifying the settings for a particular application. Applications below the application with the modified authentication settings inherit the new, modified settings.

i Note

Enabling an application-security option (for example, *SAML2* or *X509*) only ensures that the selected application uses the enabled authentication method when required; it does not perform any setup operation for the authentication method itself. The SAP HANA administrator must maintain the selected authentication infrastructure (SAML2, X509, or SAP logon tickets) in an additional step.

You can choose any selection of the following application-related authentication methods; if you enable multiple authentication methods for your application, a priority applies depending on whether the application logon is interactive or non-interactive:

- a. Enable the *SAML2* option.

The SAP HANA administrator must already have configured the authentication infrastructure, for example, to enable the creation of SAML2 assertions to permit SSO in Web browsers.

- b. Enable the *X509 Authentication* option

The SAP HANA administrator must already have configured the appropriate authentication infrastructure, for example, to enable users to be authenticated by client certificates signed by a trusted Certification Authority (CA).

- c. Enable the *SAP logon ticket* option

The SAP HANA administrator must already have configured the appropriate authentication infrastructure, for example, to enable users to be authenticated by a logon ticket that is issued when the same user logs on to an SAP system that is configured to create logon tickets (for example, the SAP Web Application Server or Portal).

- d. Enable the *Form-based authentication* option

If the *Public* security option is **disabled**, the *Form-based authentication* option is enabled by default.

- e. Enable the *Basic authentication* option

If the *Public* security option is **disabled**, the *Basic authentication* option is enabled by default.

Related Information

[Set up Application Authentication \[page 121\]](#)
[SAP HANA XS Application Security \[page 123\]](#)
[SAP HANA XS Application Authentication \[page 126\]](#)
[The Application-Access File \[page 103\]](#)
[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

3.6.2.1 SAP HANA XS Application Authentication

The authentication method determines whether or not authentication is required to access an application, and if required, which authentication methods must be used.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) provides a dedicated tool, the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#), that is designed to help you configure and maintain the authentication mechanism used to control runtime access to the applications you develop. The authentication method you select for access to your application depends on which authentication methods are supported by SAP HANA and whether or not your system administrator has configured the authentication method in the system backend.

You can use the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#) to configure applications running in SAP HANA XS to use the following authentication mechanisms:

- SAML2
Choose this option if you have configured SAML2 assertions to enable SSO in Web browsers. SAML2 is version 2 of the Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML), which enables Web-based authentication including single sign-on across domains.

i Note

The user who connects to the database using an external authentication provider must also have a database user known to the database. SAP HANA maps the external identity to the identity of the internal database user.

- SPNego
Choose this option if you want to SAP HANA XS applications to use Simple and Protected GSSAPI Negotiation Mechanism (SPNego) for authentication by means of Kerberos for Web-based (HTTP) access.
- X509 Authentication
X.509 client certificates For secure HTTP (HTTPS) access to SAP HANA XS applications, users can be authenticated by client certificates signed by a trusted Certification Authority (CA), which can be stored in the SAP HANA XS trust store.
- SAP logon ticket
For HTTPS access to SAP HANA XS applications, a user can be authenticated by a logon ticket that is issued when the same user logs on to an SAP system that is configured to create logon tickets (for example, the SAP Web Application Server or Portal).
To configure the trust relationship between the issuer of the SAP logon ticket and SAP HANA, you must specify the path to the SAP logon ticket trust store, which contains the trust chain for the ticket issuer. You can use the `SapLogonTicketTrustStore` keyword in the `xsengine.ini` file. Default values are:
\$SECUDIR/saplogon.pse or \$HOME/.ssl/saplogon.pem.

Note

SAP HANA XS does not issue SAP logon tickets; it only accepts them. Since the tickets usually reside in a cookie, the issuer and SAP HANA XS need to be in the same domain to make sure that your browser sends the SAP logon ticket cookie with each call to SAP HANA XS.

- Form-based authentication

This option is used if interactive logon is desired. With form-based authentication, the logon request is redirected to a form to fill in, for example, displayed in Web page. The *Form-based authentication* option is enabled by default if the *Public* option is disabled in the application *Security* screen area.

Note

You must also enable the *Form-based authentication* in the `.xsaccess` file, if you want your application (or applications) to use form-based logon as the authentication method. Note that any other keywords in the authentication section of the `.xsaccess` file are ignored.

Form-based authentication requires the `libxsauthenticator` library, which must not only be available but also be specified in the list of trusted applications in the `xsengine` application container. The application list is displayed in the SAP HANA studio's *Administration Console* perspective in the following location:  *Administration*  *Configuration tab*  `xsengine.ini`  *application_container*  *application_list*  If it is not displayed, ask the SAP HANA administrator to add it.

Tip

If you need to troubleshoot problems with form-based authentication, you can configure the generation of useful trace information in the `XSENGINE` section of the database trace component using the following entry: `xsa:sap.hana.xs.formlogon`.

- Basic authentication

Logon with a recognized database user name and password. This option is used if non-interactive logon is desired. The *Basic authentication* option is enabled by default if the *Public* option is disabled in the application *Security* screen area.

The *authentication* configuration enables you to define the authentication methods to use for Browser requests either at the application level or for single packages in an application.

Note

The authentication mechanism set at the root of the application/package hierarchy is inherited by applications further down the application hierarchy.

By default, the *Public* option in the application *Security* screen area is disabled and the *Form-based authentication* and *Basic authentication* options are enabled automatically in the *Authentication* screen area. However, you can disable both form-based and basic authentication and enable other, additional authentication methods (for example, SAP logon tickets or X509 authentication). If multiple authentication methods are enabled, SAP HANA XS enforces the following order of priority:

- For non-interactive logon:
 1. X509 authentication
 2. SPNego
 3. SAP logon ticket

- 4. Basic authentication
- For interactive logon:
 1. SAML
 2. Form-based authentication

If you **enable** the *Public* option in the application *Security* screen area, no authentication is required to start an application; the *Authentication* screen area is hidden, and you cannot select any authentication-method options.

Related Information

[The Application-Access File \[page 103\]](#)

[Application-Access File Keyword Options \[page 104\]](#)

3.7 Maintaining HTTP Destinations

An HTTP destination defines connection details for services running on specific hosts whose details you want to define and distribute. The definition can be referenced by an application.

Context

If you want to configure an SAP HANA XS application to access data on a specific server that offers a specific service, for example, a service that is only available outside your network, it is recommended to configure the HTTP connection parameters in an HTTP destination file that you store locally as a design-time artifact. You can use an HTTP destination to call an external resource directly from a server-side JavaScript application. You can also use an HTTP destination when configuring a transport route, for example, to automate the process of exporting a delivery unit from one system and importing it into another. To create an HTTP destination configuration for an SAP HANA XS application, you must perform the following high-level steps.

Procedure

1. Create a package for the SAP HANA XS application that will use the HTTP destination you define.
2. Define the details of the HTTP destination.

You define the details of an HTTP destination in a configuration file and using a specific syntax. The configuration file containing the details of the HTTP destination must have the file extension `.xshttpdest` and be located in the same package as the application that uses it or one of the application's subpackages.

3. Define any extensions to the HTTP destination configuration.

You can extend a configured HTTP destination, for example, by providing additional details concerning proxy servers and logon details. The details concerning the extensions to the HTTP destination must be specified in a separate configuration file. Like the original HTTP destination that the extension modifies, the configuration-file extension must have the file extension `.xshttpdest` and be located in the same package as the HTTP destination configuration file it extends and the application that uses it.

4. Check the HTTP destination configuration using the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

The *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL:
`http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAIstance>/sap/hana/admin/cockpit`.

i Note

Access to details of HTTP destinations in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* requires the credentials of an authenticated database user and one of the following SAP HANA roles:

- *HTTPDestViewer*
- *HTTPDestAdministrator*

Related Information

[Create an HTTP Destination Configuration \[page 129\]](#)

[Extend an HTTP Destination Configuration \[page 141\]](#)

[HTTP Destination Configuration Syntax \[page 133\]](#)

3.7.1 Tutorial: Create an HTTP Destination

Create an HTTP destination defining connection details for services running on specific hosts. The definition can be referenced by an application.

Prerequisites

Since the artifacts required to create a simple HTTP destination are stored in the repository, it is assumed that you have already performed the following tasks:

- Create a development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- Create a project in the workspace
- Share the new project
- Assigned your user the following SAP HANA roles:
 - *HTTPDestAdministrator*
 - *RuntimeConfAdministrator*

Context

An HTTP destination defines connection details for services running on specific hosts whose details you want to define and distribute. The definition can be referenced by an application. You can also provide more (or modified) connection details in additional files called “extensions”; values specified in extensions overwrite values specified in the original HTTP destination configuration.

i Note

HTTP destinations configurations are defined in a text file; you can use the editing tools provided with SAP HANA studio or your favorite text editor.

Procedure

1. Create a package for the SAP HANA XS application that will use the HTTP destination you define in this tutorial.
For example, create a package called `testApp`. Make sure you can write to the schema where you create the new application.
 - a. Start the SAP HANA studio and open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
 - b. In the *Systems* view, right-click the node in the package hierarchy where you want to create the new package and, in the pop-up menu that displays, choose *Packages...*
 - c. In the *New Package* dialog that displays, enter the details of the new package (`testApp`) that you want to add and click *OK*.
2. Define the details of the HTTP destination.

You define the details of an HTTP destination in a configuration file that requires a specific syntax. The configuration file containing the details of the HTTP destination must have the file extension `.xshttpdest`. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and enables direct editing of the file.

⚠ Caution

You must place the HTTP destination configuration and the XSJS application that uses it in the same application package. An application cannot reference an HTTP destination configuration that is located in another application package.

- a. Create a plain-text file called `yahoo.xshttpdest` and open it in a text editor.
- b. Enter the following code in the new file `yahoo.xshttpdest`.

```
host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";
port = 80;
description = "my stock-price checker";
useSSL = false;
pathPrefix = "/d/quotes.csv?f=a";
authType = none;
useProxy = false;
proxyHost = "";
proxyPort = 0;
```

```
timeout = 0;
```

- c. Save and activate the file.

i Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose ► *Team* ▶ *Commit* ▾ from the context-sensitive popup menu.

3. View the activated HTTP destination.

You can use the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* to check the contents of an HTTP destination configuration.

i Note

To make changes to the HTTP Destination configuration, you must use a text editor, save the changes and reactivate the file.

- a. Start the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

The *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/admin/cockpit`.

➔ Tip

Access to details of HTTP destinations in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* requires the credentials of an authenticated database user and the permissions granted by the following SAP HANA roles:

- *RuntimeConfAdministrator*
- *HTTPDestAdministrator*

- b. In the *XS Artifact Administration* tab, expand the nodes in the *Application Objects* tree to locate the application `testApp`.
- c. Choose `yahoo.xshttpdest` to display details of the HTTP destination.

If you are using the Web-based *XS Administration Tool*, you can only make limited changes to the displayed HTTP destination configuration, as follows:

- **Save**
Commit to the repository any modifications made to the HTTP destination configuration in the current session.
- **Edit**
Display details of the corresponding **extension** to the selected HTTP destination configuration. If no extension exists, the **Edit** option is not available.
- **Extend**
Enables you to create an extension to the selected XS HTTP destination and associate the extension with another (new or existing) package.

i Note

This option is only available if the selected HTTP destination is provided as part of an delivery unit, for example, as a destination template.

Related Information

[Tutorial: Extend an HTTP Destination \[page 141\]](#)

[The HTTP Destination Configuration \[page 132\]](#)

[HTTP Destination Configuration Syntax \[page 133\]](#)

3.7.1.1 The HTTP Destination Configuration

An HTTP destination defines connection details for services running on specific hosts whose details you want to define and distribute. The definition can be referenced by an application.

You use the HTTP destination file to define not only the details of the host you want an application to reach by means of HTTP but also any further details that are necessary to establish the connection, for example, any proxy settings. If necessary, the proxy settings can also be defined in a separate, so-called "extension file". Both the configuration file you use to define an HTTP destination and the file used to specify any extensions to the HTTP destination are text files that must have the suffix `.xshttpdest`, for example, `myHTTPdestination.xshttpdest` or `myHTTPdestExtension.xshttpdest`.

i Note

For security reasons, the HTTP destination configuration and the XSJS application that uses it must be in the same application package or one of the application's subpackages. An application cannot reference an HTTP destination configuration that is located in a different application package structure.

You configure an HTTP destination in a text file that contains the details of the connection to the HTTP destination, using a mandatory syntax comprising a list of `keyword=value` pairs, for example, `host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";`. After creating and saving the HTTP destination, you must activate it in the SAP HANA repository.

i Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose **Team > Commit** from the context-sensitive popup menu.

The following configuration file for the HTTP destination `yahoo.xshttpdest` illustrates how to define an HTTP destination that can be used to access a financial service running on an external host.

```
host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";
port = 80;
description = "my stock-price checker";
useSSL = false;
pathPrefix = "/d/quotes.csv?f=a";
authType = none;
proxyType = none;
proxyHost = "";
proxyPort = 0;
timeout = 0;
```

After activating the configuration in the SAP HANA repository, you can view the details of the new HTTP destination using the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#).

Note

Access to details of HTTP destinations in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* requires the credentials of an authenticated database user and one of the following SAP HANA roles:

- *HTTPDestViewer*
- *HTTPDestAdministrator*

If you are using the Web-based *XS Administration Tool*, you can only make limited changes to the displayed HTTP destination configuration, as follows:

- *Save*: Commit to the repository any modifications made to the HTTP destination configuration in the current session.
- *Edit*: Display details of the corresponding **extension** to the selected HTTP destination configuration. If no extension exists, the *Edit* option is not available.
- *Extend*: Enables you to create an extension to the selected XS HTTP destination and associate the extension with another (new or existing) package.

Note

This option is only available if the selected HTTP destination is provided as part of an delivery unit, for example, as a destination template.

Related Information

[HTTP Destination Configuration Syntax \[page 133\]](#)

[Tutorial: Create an HTTP Destination \[page 129\]](#)

3.7.1.2 HTTP Destination Configuration Syntax

An HTTP destination defines connection details for services running on specific hosts whose details you want to define and distribute. Syntax rules apply to the contents of the HTTP destination configuration are checked when you activate the configuration in the repository.

Example

The `.xshttpdest` Configuration File

The following example shows all possible keyword combinations in the SAP HANA XS application-access (`.xshttpdest`) file.

i Note

In the form shown below, the `.xshttpdest` file is **not** a working model; it is used to illustrate the syntax for all possible options.

```
host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";
port = 80;
//All of the following keywords are optional
description = "";
useSSL = false;
sslAuth = client;
sslHostCheck = true;
pathPrefix = "/d/quotes.csv?f=a";
authType = none;
samlProvider = "";
samlACS = "header";
samlAttributes = "";
samlNameId = ["email"];
proxyType = none;
proxyHost = ""; //in-line comments are allowed
proxyPort = 0;
timeout = 0;
remoteSID = "Q7E";
remoteClient = "007";
oAuthAppConfigPackage = "sap.hana.test";
oAuthAppConfig = "abapTest";
```

When you are defining the HTTP destination, bear in mind the following important syntax rules:

- A semi-colon (;) is required at the end of each line in the HTTP destination configuration, including the last line in the file.
- String values must be wrapped in quotes (""), for example:
`host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";`

i Note

The `host` and `port` keywords are mandatory; all other keywords are optional.

host

```
host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";
```

The `host` keyword is mandatory: it enables you to specify the hostname of the HTTP destination providing the service or data you want your SAP HANA XS application to access.

port

```
port = 80;
```

The `port` keyword is mandatory; it enables you to specify the port number to use for connections to the HTTP destination hosting the service or data you want your SAP HANA XS application to access.

description

```
description = "my short description of the HTTP connection";
```

The optional keyword `description` enables you to provide a short description of the HTTP destination you want to configure. If you do not want to provide a description, include the `description` but leave the entry between the quotes empty, for example, "".

useSSL

```
useSSL = [true | false];
```

The optional keyword `useSSL` is of type Boolean and enables you to specify if the outbound connections between SAP HANA XS and the HTTP destination is secured with the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol (HTTPS).

i Note

Setting this option does not configure SSL; if you want to use SSL to secure connections to the configured destination, you must ensure that SAP HANA is already set up to enable secure outbound connections using SSL.

If `useSSL = true`, you can set the authentication type with the keyword `sslAuth`. You can also use the `sslHostCheck` to enable a check which ensures that the certificate used for authentication is valid (matches the host).

sslAuth

```
sslAuth = [client | anonymous];
```

If `useSSL = true`, you can use the keyword `sslAuth` to set the authentication type. The following values are permitted:

- `client`

(Default setting). You must create a TRUST store entry in the *SAP HANA XS Admin Tool's Trust manager* (or use an existing one that is known to the HTTP destination configuration) and maintain the trust relationship with the SSL server, for example, by adding a certificate to the trust store that is used for the authentication process.

- `anonymous`

A built-in key is used for SSL encryption; no TRUST store is needed.. No authentication via SSL is possible.

sslHostCheck

```
sslHostCheck = [true | false];
```

If `useSSL = true`, you can use the keyword `sslHostCheck` to enable a check which ensures that the certificate used for authentication is valid (matches the host). The following values are permitted:

- `true`
(Default setting). The SSL certificate subject must match the host name. For example, if SSL server certificate `CN=server1.acme.com`, then the host parameter must be `server1.acme.com`. If there is no match, SSL terminates.
- `false`
No host check is performed. Note that if the SSL server certificate is `CN=server1.acme.com`, and you use "localhost" as a connection parameter (because this certificate is installed on its own server), then this works with `sslHostCheck deactivated (sslHostCheck=false)`.

pathPrefix

```
pathPrefix = "";
```

The optional keyword `pathPrefix` enables you to specify a text element to add to the start of the URL used for connections to the service specified in the HTTP destination configuration. For example, `pathPrefix = "/d/quotes.csv?f=a"` inserts the specified path into the URL called by the connection.

authType

```
authType = [none | basic | AssertionTicket | SamlAssertion | SamlAssertionPropagation];
```

The optional keyword `authType` enables you to specify the authentication method that must be used for connection requests for the service located at the HTTP destination specified in the configuration, for example, "basic", which requires users to provide a user name and password as authentication credentials. Permitted values for the `authType` are "none", "basic", and "AssertionTicket". If no authentication type is specified, the default setting "none" applies.

The `AssertionTicket` option is for use with XSJS applications that want to enable access to HTTP services running on remote SAP servers using single sign-on (SSO) with SAP assertion tickets. If the `AssertionTicket` option is enabled, a user with administration privileges in SAP HANA must use the parameter `saplogontickettruststore` to specify the location of the trust store containing the assertion tickets.

➔ Tip

The `saplogontickettruststore` parameter can be set in `[indexserver | xsengine].ini` `> authentication > saplogontickettruststore`.

If `authType = AssertionTicket` is set you also need to set values for the keywords `remoteSID` and `remoteclient`.

For `authType = SamlAssertion;`, you must also set the subproperties `samlProvider`, `samlACS`, `samlAttributes`, and `samlNameId`.

samlProvider

```
samlProvider = "";
```

If you set `authType = SamlAssertion`, you must also set the subproperty `samlProvider`, which enables you to specify the entityID of the remote SAML party.

samlACS

```
samlACS = "header";
```

If you set `authType = SamlAssertion`, you must also set the subproperty `samlACS`, which enables you to specify the way in which SAML assertions or responses are sent. The following values are supported:

- `""` (empty string)
A SAML response (including the SAML assertion) is sent to the HTTP destination end point as a POST parameter.
- `/saml/acs/sso`
If you provide a URL path, the SAML response (including the SAML Assertion) is sent to the specified endpoint in an additional Web connection to establish the authentication context (session). When the outbound communication is being established, there are two connections: first to the specified end point (for example, `/saml/asc/sso`) and then to the destination service end point.
- `header`
The SAML response (including the SAML assertion) is sent in the HTTP header authorization with the following syntax: `Authorization: SAML2.0 <base-64-saml-response>;`
- `parameter:assertion`
The SAML Assertion is sent as a POST parameter. This flavor is needed for JAM integrations.

samlAttributes

```
samlAttributes = "name1=<property>&name2=<property>";
```

If you set `authType = SamlAssertion`, you must also set the subproperty `samlAttributes`, which enables you to specify additional attributes for the SAML Assertion.

samlNameId

```
samlNameId = ["email", "unspecified"];
```

If you set `authType = SamlAssertion`, you must also set the subproperty `samlNameId`, which enables you to define a list of name-ID mappings. The following values are supported:

- `email`
- `unspecified`

For example, if you have an e-mail maintained in SAP HANA User Self Services (USS), the SAML assertion contains your e-mail address; if you do **not** have a e-mail address maintained in SAP HANA USS, the mapping is “`unspecified`”.

proxyType

```
proxytype = none;
```

The optional keyword `proxyType` enables you to specify if a proxy server must be used to resolve the host name specified in the HTTP destination configuration file, and if so, which **type** of proxy. The following values are allowed:

- `none`
- `http`
- `socks`

⚠ Caution

`proxyType` replaces and extends the functionality previously provided with the keyword `useProxy`. For backward compatibility, the `useProxy` is still allowed but should not be used any more.

To define the proxy host and the port to connect on, use the keywords `proxyHost` and `proxyPort` respectively.

If you want to include the proxy-related information in a separate configuration (a so-called **extension** to the original HTTP destination configuration), you must set `proxyType = none` in the original HTTP destination configuration. In the HTTP destination extension that references and modifies the original HTTP destination, you can change the proxy setting to `proxyType = http`. You must then provide the corresponding host name of the proxy server and a port number to use for connections.

proxyHost

```
proxyHost = "";
```

If you use the keyword `useProxy = true` to specify that a proxy server must be used to resolve the target host name specified in the HTTP destination configuration, you must use the `proxyHost` and `proxyPort`

keywords to specify the fully qualified name of the host providing the proxy service (and the port number to use for connections). The name of the proxy host must be wrapped in quotes, as illustrated in the following example,

```
proxyHost = "myproxy.hostname.com"
```

proxyPort

```
proxyPort = 8080;
```

If you use the keyword `useProxy = true` to indicate that a proxy server must be used to resolve the host name specified in the HTTP destination configuration, you must also use the `proxyPort` keyword (in combination with `proxyHost =`) to specify the port on which the proxy server accepts connections.

timeout

```
timeout = -1;
```

The optional keyword `timeout` enables you to specify for how long (in milliseconds) an application tries to connect to the remote host specified in the HTTP destination configuration, for example, `timeout = 5000`; (5 seconds). By default, the timeout interval is set to -1, which means that there is no limit to the time required to connect to the server specified in the HTTP destination configuration. In the default setting, the application keeps trying to connect to the destination server either until the server responds, however long this takes, or the underlying request-session timeout (300 seconds) is reached. The default setting (-1) is intended to help in situations where the destination server is slow to respond, for example, due to high load.

remoteSID

```
remoteSID = "Q7E";
```

The optional keyword `remoteSID` enables you to specify the SID of a remote ABAP system. You use this keyword in combination with the `remoteClient` keyword, for example, to enable an application to log on to an ABAP system that is configured to provide SAP assertion tickets. If the XSJS application service requires access to remote services, you can create an HTTP destination that defines the logon details required by the remote ABAP system and specifies SSO with SAP assertion tickets as the logon authentication method.

i Note

In the [XS Administration Tool](#), the value specified in an HTTP destination configuration file with the `remoteSID` keyword is displayed in the `SAP SID` field in the `AUTHENTICATION` section of the application's runtime configuration. The `SAP SID` option is only available if you select `SAP Assertion Ticket` as the authentication type in the application's runtime configuration.

remoteClient

```
remoteClient = "007";
```

The optional keyword `remoteClient` enables you to specify the client number to use when logging on to a remote ABAP system. You use this keyword in combination with the `remoteSID` keyword, for example, to enable an application to logon to an ABAP system that is configured to provide SAP assertion tickets. If the XSJS application service requires access to remote services, you can create an HTTP destination that defines the logon details required by the remote ABAP system and specifies SSO with SAP assertion tickets as the logon authentication method.

i Note

In the [XS Administration Tool](#), the value specified in an HTTP destination configuration file with the `remoteClient` keyword is displayed in the [SAP Client](#) field in the [AUTHENTICATION](#) section of the application's runtime configuration. The [SAP Client](#) option is only available if you select [SAP Assertion Ticket](#) as the authentication type in the application's runtime configuration.

oAuthAppConfigPackage

```
oAuthAppConfigPackage = "sap.hana.test";
```

Use the optional keyword `oAuthAppConfigPackage` enables you to specify the location of the package that contains the oAuth application configuration to be used by an HTTP destination configuration.

oAuthAppConfig

```
oAuthAppConfig = "abapTest";
```

Use the optional keyword `oAuthAppConfig` enables you to specify the name of the oAuth application configuration to be used by an HTTP destination configuration. The OAuth application configuration is a file describing the application-specific OAuth parameters that are used to enable access to a resource running on a remote HTTP destination. The OAuth application configuration is defined in a design-time artifact with the mandatory file suffix `.xsoauthappconfig`; the configuration file must be specified using the JSON format.

modifies

```
modifies pkg.path.testApp@yahoo.xshttpdest;
```

The keyword `modifies` can only be used in an HTTP **extension** file and enables you to reference an existing HTTP destination (or extension) whose settings you want to further extend or modify. The settings in an HTTP

destination **extension** overwrite any identical settings in the original HTTP destination configuration. The HTTP destination configuration referenced by the *modifies* keyword must already exist.

i Note

The HTTP destination **extension** does not have to be tied to a particular XSJS application; it can be located in any application package or subpackage. For this reason, you must include the full package path to the HTTP destination extension when using the *modifies* keyword.

Related Information

[The HTTP Destination Configuration \[page 132\]](#)

[The HTTP Destination Extension \[page 144\]](#)

3.7.2 Tutorial: Extend an HTTP Destination

Extend an HTTP destination defining connection details for services running on specific hosts, for example, by providing additional details. The definition and the extension details can be referenced by an application.

Prerequisites

Since the artifacts required to create an HTTP destination extension are stored in the repository, it is assumed that you have already performed the following tasks:

- Create a development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- Create a project in the workspace
- Share the new project
- Assigned your user the following SAP HANA roles:
 - *HTTPDestAdministrator*
 - *RuntimeConfAdministrator*

i Note

This tutorial shows you how to modify an HTTP destination by providing details of a proxy server that must be used to resolve host names specified in the connection details; you must supply the name of a working proxy server that is available in your environment.

Context

An HTTP destination defines connection details for services running on specific hosts whose details you want to define and distribute. The definition can be referenced by an application. You can also provide more (or

modified) connection details in additional files called “extensions”; values specified in extensions overwrite values specified in the original HTTP destination configuration.

Note

HTTP destinations configurations and any extensions are defined in a plain-text file; you can use the editing tools provided with SAP HANA studio or your favorite text editor to add entries to the configuration file.

Procedure

1. Create a package for the SAP HANA XS application that will use the HTTP destination (and extension) you define in this tutorial.

For example, create a package called `testApp`. Make sure you can write to the schema where you create the new application.

- a. Start the SAP HANA studio and open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
- b. In the *Systems* view, right-click the node in the package hierarchy where you want to create the new package and, in the pop-up menu that displays, choose *Packages...*
- c. In the *New Package* dialog that displays, enter the details of the new package (`testApp`) that you want to add and click *OK*.

2. Define the details of the new HTTP destination.

You define the details of an HTTP destination in a configuration file that requires a specific syntax. The configuration file containing the details of the HTTP destination must have the file extension `.xshttpdest`.

Caution

You must place the HTTP destination configuration in the application package that uses it. An application cannot reference an HTTP destination configuration that is located in another application package.

- a. Create a plain-text file called `yahoo.xshttpdest` and open it in a text editor.
- b. Enter the following code in the new file `yahoo.xshttpdest`.

```
host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";
port = 80;
description = "my stock-price checker";
useSSL = false;
pathPrefix = "/d/quotes.csv?f=a";
authType = none;
proxyType = none;
proxyHost = "";
proxyPort = 0;
timeout = 0;
```

- c. Save and activate the file.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose  *Team*  *Commit*  from the context-sensitive popup menu.

3. View the activated HTTP destination.

You can use the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* to check the contents of an HTTP destination configuration.

i Note

To make changes to the HTTP Destination configuration, you must use a text editor, save the changes and reactivate the file.

- a. Open a Web browser.
- b. Start the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

The *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/admin/`.

i Note

Access to details of HTTP destinations in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* requires the credentials of an authenticated database user and the permissions granted by the following SAP HANA roles:

- o *RuntimeConfAdministrator*
- o *HTTPDestAdministrator*

- c. In the *XS Artifact Administration* tab, expand the nodes in the *Application Objects* tree to locate the application `testApp`.
- d. Choose `yahoo.xshttpdest` to display details of the HTTP destination .

4. Define the details of the **extension** to the HTTP destination you created in the previous steps.

Like the HTTP destination itself, you define an extension to an HTTP destination in a configuration file that requires a specific syntax. The configuration file containing the details of the HTTP destination must have the file suffix `.xshttpdest`.

⚠ Caution

You must place the HTTP destination configuration (and any extensions to the configuration) in the application package that uses them. An application cannot reference an HTTP destination configuration (or an extension) that is located in another application package.

- a. Create a plain-text file called `yahooProxy.xshttpdest` and open it in a text editor.
- b. Enter the following code in the new file `yahooProxy.xshttpdest`.

```
modifies testApp:yahoo.xshttpdest;
proxyType = http;
proxyHost = "proxy.mycompany.com";
proxyPort = 8080;
```

i Note

Replace the value in `proxyHost` with the name of the host providing the proxy service.

- c. Save and activate the file.
5. View and check the details of the activated HTTP destination **extension** `yahooProxy.xshttpdest`.

You can use the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* to check the contents of an HTTP destination configuration or an extension to the configuration.

i Note

To make changes to the HTTP Destination configuration (or any extension), you must use a text editor, save the changes and reactivate the file.

- a. Open a Web browser.
- b. Start the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

The *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/admin/cockpit`.

i Note

In the default configuration, the URL redirects the request to a logon screen, which requires the credentials of an authenticated SAP HANA database user to complete the logon process.

- c. In the *XS Artifact Administration* tab, expand the nodes in the *Application Objects* tree to locate the application `testApp`.
- d. Choose `yahooProxy.xshttpdest` to display details of the HTTP destination extension.

Related Information

[Tutorial: Create an HTTP Destination \[page 129\]](#)

[The HTTP Destination Configuration \[page 132\]](#)

[HTTP Destination Configuration Syntax \[page 133\]](#)

3.7.2.1 The HTTP Destination Extension

An HTTP destination defines connection details for services running on specific hosts whose details you want to define and distribute. An extension to an HTTP destination provides additional information or modifies values set in the original configuration.

You can use one or more **extension** to an HTTP destination configuration; the extensions include additions to the original settings or modifications to the values set in the original configuration. For example, you could include basic configuration settings in an HTTP destination and provide details of any required proxy settings in a separate, so-called “extension”.

You define an extension to an HTTP destination configuration in a text file that contains the details of the modifications you want to apply to the connection details for the original HTTP destination. The HTTP destination extension uses a mandatory syntax comprising a list of *keyword=value* pairs, for example, `host = "download.finance.myhoo.com";`. The same syntax rules apply for the basic HTTP destination configuration and any extensions. Both files must also have the file suffix `.xshttpdest`, for example, `myHTTPdestination.xshttpdest` or `myHTTPextension.xshttpdest`. After creating and saving the HTTP destination extension, you must activate it in the SAP HANA repository.

i Note

The HTTP destination **extension** does not have to be tied to a particular XSJS application; it can be located in any application package or subpackage. For this reason, you must include the full package path to the HTTP destination extension.

The following configuration file for the HTTP destination `yahooProxy.xshttpdest` illustrates how to modify the proxy settings specified in the HTTP destination `yahoo.xshttpdest`, located in the application package `pkg.path.testApp`.

```
modifies pkg.path.testApp:yahoo.xshttpdest;
proxyType = http;
proxyHost = "proxy.host.name.com";
proxyPort = 8080;
```

i Note

For backward compatibility, the keyword `userProxy` still works; however, it has been replaced with the keyword `proxyType`, which takes the values: [none | http | socks].

After activation, you can view the details of the new HTTP destination extension using the [SAP HANA XS Administration](#) tool.

i Note

Access to details of HTTP destinations in the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#) requires the credentials of an authenticated database user and one of the following SAP HANA roles:

- [*HTTPDestViewer*](#)
- [*HTTPDestAdministrator*](#)

3.7.3 Tutorial: Create an OAuth Configuration Package

Create the files required to enable a service that uses OAuth to authorize access to a resource running on a remote HTTP destination.

Prerequisites

Since the artifacts required to create an XS OAuth configuration package are stored in the SAP HANA repository, it is assumed that you have the following:

- A development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- A shared project in the workspace
- Access to SAP HANA development tools, for example:
 - SAP HANA studio
 - SAP HANA Web-based Workbench

- An HTTP destination configuration (`.xshttpdest`)
- Your SAP HANA database user has the permissions granted by the following roles:
 - *RuntimeConfAdministrator*
 - *HTTPDestAdministrator*
 - *oAuthAdmin*

Context

An OAuth configuration package is a collection of configuration files that define the details of how an application uses OAuth to enable logon to a resource running on a remote HTTP destination.

An HTTP destination defines connection details for services running on specific hosts whose details you want to define and distribute. Additional syntax rules apply to the contents of the HTTP destination configuration are checked when you activate the configuration in the repository.

An OAuth configuration requires the following **dependent** configuration files:

- OAuth application configuration (`<filename>.xsoauthappconfig`)
Describes the configuration of the OAuth application parameters including the name and package location of the associated client configuration and any mandatory or optional scopes.
- OAuth client configuration (`<filename>.xsoauthclientconfig`)
Describes the configuration of the OAuth client including: the client ID, the client authentication type, and the name and package location of the associated client **flavor**.
- OAuth client flavor configuration (`<filename>.xsoauthclientflavor`)
Describes the OAuth client flavor setup used by the XS OAuth client configuration, including: the protocol steps and the parameters to be set. Note that, normally, you do not need to change the OAuth client flavor configuration.

Tip

You connect the OAuth configuration to the HTTP destination configuration in the HTTP destination's runtime configuration. Access to the runtime configuration tools requires the permissions included in an administrator role.

Procedure

1. Create an OAuth application configuration.

You need to create the base configuration for your OAuth application in a design-time file with the mandatory file-extension `.xsoauthappconfig`. The application configuration is stored in the SAP HANA repository and must be activated to create the corresponding catalog objects.

- a. Create the design-time file that contains your OAuth application configuration, for example, `oauthDriveApp.xsoauthappconfig`
- b. Define the details of the new OAuth application configuration, as follows:

```
{
```

```

"clientConfig"      :
"sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel:abap_ac",
"mandatoryScopes" : ["OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE1", "OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE2"],
"description"     : "ABAP Testapplication for OAuth"
}

```

Note

In this example, the OAuth client configuration is located in the package `sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel`; you can change the path to suit your own requirements.

2. Create an OAuth client configuration (optional).

You create the client configuration for your OAuth application in a design-time file with the mandatory file-extension `.xsoauthclientconfig`. You can either use an existing client configuration from the package `sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel` or create your own client configuration. The application configuration is stored in the SAP HANA repository and must be activated to create the corresponding catalog objects.

- Create the design-time file that contains your OAuth client configuration, for example, `ABAPv1.xsoauthclientconfig`
- Define the details of the new OAuth client configuration, as follows:

```

{
  "clientFlavor"      :
  "sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel:abap_ac",
  "clientID"          : "<OAuth ClientId registered at ABAP>",
  "clientAuthType"    : "basic",
  "authorizationEndpointURL": "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/authorize",
  "tokenEndpointURL" : "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/token",
  "revocationEndpointURL": "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/revoke",
  "redirectURL"       : "<External_XS_HOST>:<PORT>/sap/hana/xs/
oAuth/lib/runtime/tokenRequest.xsjs",
  "flow"              : "authCode",
  "scopeReq"          : "maxScopes",
  "description"       : "OAuth Client for SAP Application Server
ABAP - Authorization Code Flow"
}

```

3. Create the OAuth client flavor (optional).

The OAuth client flavor file is a design-time artifact that provides details of the OAuth protocol for a client application which uses the services provided by a corresponding OAuth application. The OAuth client flavor steps are defined in a design-time artifact with the mandatory file suffix `.xsoauthclientflavor`; the configuration file must be specified using the JSON format.

Tip

You do not have to create the OAuth client flavor from scratch; SAP HANA provides some example OAuth client flavors which you can use. The example OAuth client flavors are located in the following package: `sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel`.

The following example shows the required format and syntax for the contents of the `.xsoauthclientflavor` artifact.

Note

The example below is not complete; it is intended for illustration purposes only.

```
{ "parameters": [
{ "flavorStep":"1Aut", "paramLocation":"uri",   "paramName":"client_id",
"paramValue":"client_id",                         "valueType":"eval",
"paramMandatory":"true" },
{ "flavorStep":"2Gra",  "paramLocation":"head",   "paramName":"Authorization",
"paramValue":"Basic Authentication",             "valueType":"sec",
"paramMandatory":"true" },
{ "flavorStep":"3Prc",  "paramLocation":"head",   "paramName":"Bearer",
"paramValue":"access_token",                     "valueType":"sec",
"paramMandatory":"true" },
{ "flavorStep":"4Ref",  "paramLocation":"head",   "paramName":"Authorization",
"paramValue":"Basic Authentication",             "valueType":"sec",
"paramMandatory":"true" },
{ "flavorStep":"5Rev",  "paramLocation":"para",   "paramName":"token",
"paramValue":"access_token",                     "valueType":"sec",
"paramMandatory":"true" },
] }
```

4. Activate all the XS OAuth configuration files.

Activating the configuration files creates the corresponding catalog objects.

5. Add the OAuth configuration to the runtime configuration of the HTTP destination configuration that requires it.

The *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL:

`http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAIstance>/sap/hana/admin/cockpit.`

Note

Access to details of HTTP destinations in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* requires the credentials of an authenticated database user and one of the following SAP HANA roles:

- *RuntimeConfAdministrator*
- *HTTPDestAdministrator*
- *oAuthAdmin*

- a. Start the *XS Artifact Administration* tool.
- b. In the *Application Objects* list, locate and choose the HTTP destination configuration that you want to modify.
- c. Choose the *OAuth Details* tab.
- d. Choose   *Edit*  *Browse OAuth App Configs* 
- e. Select an OAuth application configuration from the list displayed.
The name of the application configuration you choose and the absolute path to the package where it is located are displayed in the appropriate fields, for example.
 - *OAuth App Config Package:* sap.hana.test
 - *OAuth App Config Name:* abapTest

Note

The values displayed here must also be present in the HTTP destination configuration to which the OAuth configuration applies.

For example, the HTTP destination corresponding to the OAuth configuration you are setting up in this task must also contain entries that describe the name and package location of the OAuth application configuration to use.

```
oAuthAppConfigPackage = "sap.hana.test";
oAuthAppConfig = "abapTest";
```

- f. Navigate to the OAuth client configuration and set the client secret.
- g. Choose [Save](#) to update the runtime configuration for the HTTP destination.

Related Information

[Tutorial: Create an HTTP Destination \[page 129\]](#)

[OAuth Application Configuration Syntax \[page 149\]](#)

[OAuth Client Configuration Syntax \[page 151\]](#)

[OAuth Client Flavor Syntax \[page 156\]](#)

3.7.3.1 OAuth Application Configuration Syntax

The format and syntax required in a design-time artifact describing an OAuth application configuration.

The OAuth application configuration is a file describing the application-specific OAuth parameters that are used to enable access to a resource running on a remote HTTP destination. The OAuth application configuration is defined in a design-time artifact with the mandatory file suffix `.xsoauthappconfig`; the configuration file must be specified using the JSON format.

i Note

The following code example is not a working example; it is provided for illustration purposes, only.

```
{
  "clientConfig": "sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel:abap_ac",
  "description": "ABAP test application for OAuth",
  "mandatoryScopes": ["OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE1", "OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE2"],
  "optionalScopes": ["OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE3", "OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE4"],
  "modifies": "sap.hana.test:abapTest"
}
```

An OAuth configuration requires the following **dependent** configuration files:

- OAuth application configuration (`.xsoauthappconfig`)
- OAuth client configuration (`.xsoauthclientconfig`)
- OAuth client flavor configuration (`.xsoauthclientflavor`)

clientConfig

Use the `clientConfig` keyword to specify the fully qualified name of the associated `xsoauthclientconfig` artifact, using the format `<path.to.package>:<XSOauthClientConfigObjectName>`.

```
"clientConfig": "sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel:abap_ac",
```

i Note

It is mandatory to specify the name and location of the package containing the associated OAuth client configuration.

description

Use the `description` keyword to provide an optional short description of the contents of the OAuth application configuration.

```
"description": "ABAP test application for OAuth",
```

mandatoryScopes

Use the `mandatoryScopes` keyword to specify one or more (in an array) of strings describing the mandatory permissions requested by the client.

```
"mandatoryScopes": ["OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE1", "OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE2"],
```

optionalScopes

Use the `optionalScopes` keyword to specify one or more (in an array) of strings describing the optional permissions to be used by the client.

```
"optionalScopes": ["OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE3", "OAUTH2_TEST_SCOPE4"],
```

modifies

Use the `modifies` keyword to indicate that the current XS OAuth application configuration (for example, `abapTest2.xsoauthappconfig`) is based on (and extends) another SAP HANA XS OAuth application configuration (for example, `abapTest.xsoauthappconfig`). You must specify the fully qualified name of the

associated SAP HANA XS OAuth application configuration artifact (`xsoauthappconfig`), using the format `<path.to.package>:<ObjectName>`.

```
"modifies": "sap.hana.test:abapTest.xsoauthappconfig",
```

Related Information

[OAuth Client Configuration Syntax \[page 151\]](#)

[OAuth Client Flavor Syntax \[page 156\]](#)

[Tutorial: Create an OAuth Configuration Package \[page 145\]](#)

3.7.3.2 OAuth Client Configuration Syntax

The format and syntax required in a design-time artifact describing the OAuth client configuration.

The OAuth client configuration is a file describing details of the client parameters for an application which uses the services provided by a corresponding OAuth application that enables access to a resource running on a remote HTTP destination. The OAuth client configuration is defined in a design-time artifact with the mandatory file suffix `.xsoauthclientconfig`; the configuration file must be specified using the JSON format. The following code example shows the contents of a typical OAuth client configuration.

i Note

The following code example is not a working example; it is provided for illustration purposes, only.

```
{
  "clientFlavor": "sap.hana_xs_oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel:abap_ac",
  "clientID": "<The OAuth ClientId you registered at ABAP>",
  "clientAuthType": "basic",
  "authorizationEndpointURL": "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/authorize",
  "tokenEndpointURL": "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/token",
  "revocationEndpointURL": "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/revoke",
  "flow": "authCode",
  "description": "OAuth Client for ABAP server",
  "samlIssuer": "",
  "redirectURL": "<HOST>:<PORT>/sap/hana/xs/oAuth/lib/runtime/tokenRequest.xsjs",
  "scopeReq": "maxScopes",
  "shared": "true",
  "modifies": "sap.hana_xs_oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel:abap_ac"
}
```

In this example, the OAuth client configuration is located in the package `com.acme.oAuth.lib`; change the path specified in `clientFlavor` to suit your own requirements. You will also have to change the value specified for `clientID` and `redirectURL`.

➔ Tip

SAP HANA provides some example OAuth client configurations which you can use; you can find them in the following package: `sap.hana_xs_oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel`

clientFlavor

Use the `clientFlavor` keyword to specify the fully qualified name of the associated XS OAuth client flavor configuration artifact, for example, `ABAPv1.xsoauthclientfavor`; you must use the format `<path.to.package>:<ObjectName>` (no file extension is required).

```
"clientFlavor": "sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel:abap_ac",
```

i Note

It is mandatory to specify the name and location of the package containing the associated OAuth client flavor configuration.

clientID

Use the `clientID` keyword to define a string that specifies the customer's ID, which is used to identify the client with the server. The `clientID` must be changed to suit your requirements. Typically, the `client_ID` is obtained by registering with a specific service provider.

```
"clientID" : "<The OAuth ClientId you registered at ABAP>",
```

i Note

It is mandatory to define the `clientID`.

clientAuthType

Use the `clientAuthType` keyword to define a number that specifies the client authentication type, for example, "cert" or "basic".

```
"clientAuthType" : "basic",
```

i Note

It is mandatory to define the `clientAuthType`.

The following values are permitted:

- `basic` (user and password)
- `cert` (authentication by client certificate)

authorizationEndpointURL

Use the `authorizationEndpointURL` keyword to specify a string that defines the authorization endpoint. The authorization endpoint is the endpoint on the authorization server where the resource owner logs on and grants authorization to the client application.

```
"authorizationEndpointURL" : "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/authorize",
```

i Note

It is mandatory to define the `authorizationEndpointURL`.

tokenEndpointURL

Use the `tokenEndpointURL` keyword to specify a string that defines the token endpoint. The token endpoint is the endpoint on the authorization server where the client application exchanges the authorization code, the client ID, and the client secret for an access token.

```
"tokenEndpointURL" : "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/token",
```

i Note

It is mandatory to define the `tokenEndpointURL`.

revocationEndpointURL

Use the `revocationEndpointURL` keyword to specify a string that defines the token endpoint. The token endpoint is the endpoint on the authorization server where the client application exchanges the authorization code, the client ID, and the client secret for an access token.

```
"revocationEndpointURL" : "/sap/bc/sec/oauth2/revoke",
```

i Note

It is mandatory to define a value for the `revocationEndpointURL`.

flow

Use the `flow` keyword to specify a number that defines the authorization flow used during the authentication exchange, for example, `saml2Bearer` or `authCode`.

```
"flow" :"saml2Bearer",
```

i Note

It is mandatory to define a value for `flow`.

The following values are permitted:

- `saml2Bearer`
- `authCode`

description

Use the optional `description` keyword to provide a short description of the OAuth client configuration.

```
"description": "OAuth Client for SAP App Server ABAP - Authorization Code Flow"
```

samlIssuer

Use the optional `samlIssuer` keyword to specify a string that defines the [SAML issuer ID](#). The SAML issuer ID describes the issuer of the SAML token. The SAML bearer extension enables the validation of SAML tokens as part of granting the OAuth access token.

i Note

You set this parameter only if the parameter `flow` is set to `saml2Bearer`, for example,
`"flow" :"saml2Bearer".`

```
"samlIssuer" : "",
```

redirectURL

Use the `redirectURL` keyword to specify a string that defines the [redirection endpoint](#). The redirection endpoint is the endpoint in the client application where the resource owner is redirected to, after having

granted authorization at the authorization endpoint. The `redirectURL` must be changed to suit your requirements.

```
"redirectURL" : "<HOST>:<PORT>/sap/hana/xs/oAuth/lib/runtime/tokenRequest.xsjs",
```

i Note

If "flow" : "authCode", it is mandatory to define a value for the `redirectURL`.

scopeReq

Use the `scopeReq` keyword to specify whether the maximum available scope from all applications using this client configuration is **always** requested or the scope set is specified iteratively.

```
"scopeReq" : "maxScopes",
```

The following values are permitted:

- `maxScopes`
- `iterativeScopes`

i Note

Currently only `maxScopes` is implemented.

shared

Use the `shared` keyword to specify a number that defines whether the if the XS OAuth client configuration can be shared between applications.

```
"shared" : "false",
```

The following values are permitted:

- `true` (**shared**)
- `false` (**not shared**)

i Note

Currently only `true` is implemented.

modifies

Use the `modifies` keyword to indicate that the current XS OAuth client configuration, for example, `abap_ac1.xsoauthclientconfig`, is based on (and extends) another SAP HANA XS OAuth client

configuration (for example, abap_ac.xsoauthclientconfig). You must specify the fully qualified name of the associated OAuth client configuration artifact (`<fileName>.xsoauthclientconfig`), using the format `<path.to.package>:<ArtifactName>.xsoauthclientconfig`.

```
"modifies":"sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel:abap_ac.xsoauthclientconfig",
```

Related Information

[OAuth Client Flavor Syntax \[page 156\]](#)

[OAuth Application Configuration Syntax \[page 149\]](#)

[Tutorial: Create an OAuth Configuration Package \[page 145\]](#)

3.7.3.3 OAuth Client Flavor Syntax

The format and syntax required in a design-time artifact that describes the OAuth client flavors.

The OAuth client flavor file provides details of the OAuth protocol for a client application that uses the services provided by a corresponding OAuth application. The OAuth client flavor steps are defined in a design-time artifact with the mandatory file suffix `.xsoauthclientflavor`; the configuration file must be specified using the JSON format.

i Note

The following example of an OAuth client flavor configuration is incomplete; it is intended for illustration purposes only.

```
{ "parameters": [
  { "flavorStep": "1Aut", "paramLocation": "uri", "paramName": "client_id",
    "paramValue": "client_id", "valueType": "eval",
    "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "1Aut", "paramLocation": "uri", "paramName": "redirect_uri",
    "paramValue": "redirect_uri", "valueType": "eval",
    "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "1Aut", "paramLocation": "uri", "paramName": "scope",
    "paramValue": "scope", "valueType": "eval",
    "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "1Aut", "paramLocation": "uri", "paramName": "response_type",
    "paramValue": "code", "valueType": "litr",
    "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "1Aut", "paramLocation": "uri", "paramName": "state",
    "paramValue": "state", "valueType": "eval",
    "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "2Gra", "paramLocation": "head", "paramName": "Authorization",
    "paramValue": "Basic Authentication", "valueType": "sec",
    "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "2Gra", "paramLocation": "head", "paramName": "Content-Type",
    "paramValue": "application/x-www-form-urlencoded", "valueType": "litr",
    "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "2Gra", "paramLocation": "para", "paramName": "code",
    "paramValue": "code", "valueType": "eval",
    "paramMandatory": "true" },
]
```

```
{
  "flavorStep": "2Gra", "paramLocation": "para", "paramName": "grant_type",
  "paramValue": "authorization_code", "valueType": "litr",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "2Gra", "paramLocation": "para", "paramName": "client_id",
  "paramValue": "client_id", "valueType": "eval",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "2Gra", "paramLocation": "para", "paramName": "redirect_uri",
  "paramValue": "redirect_uri", "valueType": "eval",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "3Prc", "paramLocation": "head", "paramName": "Bearer ",
  "paramValue": "access_token", "valueType": "sec",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "4Ref", "paramLocation": "head", "paramName": "Authorization",
  "paramValue": "Basic Authentication", "valueType": "sec",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "4Ref", "paramLocation": "head", "paramName": "Content-Type",
  "paramValue": "application/x-www-form-urlencoded", "valueType": "litr",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "4Ref", "paramLocation": "para", "paramName": "grant_type",
  "paramValue": "refresh_token", "valueType": "litr",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "4Ref", "paramLocation": "para", "paramName": "refresh_token",
  "paramValue": "refresh_token", "valueType": "sec",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  { "flavorStep": "5Rev", "paramLocation": "para", "paramName": "token",
  "paramValue": "access_token", "valueType": "sec",
  "paramMandatory": "true" },
  ]
}
```

It is not necessary to create your own OAuth client flavor from scratch; SAP HANA provides some OAuth client flavors for a selection of OAuth server scenarios, which you can use without modification.

➔ Tip

The example OAuth client flavors are located in the package
`sap.hana.xs.oAuth.lib.providerconfig.providermodel`.

However, you **do** need to modify the OAuth client flavor artifact for the following scenarios:

- Modifications are required (or have already been made) to the API of an available OAuth server.
- A connection is required to a new OAuth server not covered by the scenarios included in the SAP HANA configuration templates.

parameters

Use the `parameters` keyword to define a list of parameter-values pairs, for example,
`"paramLocation": "uri"` that support the specification defined in the OAuth client configuration file
`<filename>.oxauthclientconfig`.

flavorStep

Use the `flavorStep` keyword to specify a step in the procedure used by the client flavor, as illustrated in the following example

```
"flavorStep": "saml",
```

The following values are permitted:

- `IAut`
- `2Gra`
- `3Prc`
- `4Ref`
- `5Rev`
- `saml`

paramLocation

Use the `paramLocation` keyword to specify the location of the parameter defined, as shown in the following example:

```
"paramLocation": "uri",
```

The following values are permitted:

- `uri`
Universal resource indicator
- `head`
In the request header
- `para`
In the request body

paramName

Use the `paramName` keyword to specify the name of the parameter defined in “`paramLocation`”, as shown in the following example:

```
"paramName": "token",
```

The parameter name depends on the local setup of your client configuration.

paramValue

Use the `paramValue` keyword to specify a value for the parameter name specified in “`paramName`”.

```
"paramValue": "access_token",
```

The parameter name depends on the local setup of your client configuration.

valueType

Use the `valueType` keyword to specify the type of value expected by the parameter defined in “`paramValue`”.

```
"valueType": "sec",
```

The following values are permitted:

- `litr`
Literal value
- `eval`
The value is evaluated by the OAuth client runtime
- `sec`
The value is evaluated by the OAuth client runtime in a secure way

paramMandatory

Use the `paramMandatory` keyword to specify if a parameter is required or not.

```
"paramMandatory": "true",
```

The following values are permitted:

- `true`
Required
- `false`
Not Required

Related Information

[OAuth Client Configuration Syntax \[page 151\]](#)

[OAuth Application Configuration Syntax \[page 149\]](#)

[Tutorial: Create an OAuth Configuration Package \[page 145\]](#)

3.8 Maintaining Application Artifacts

The design-time building blocks of an SAP HANA applications are called development objects (or artifacts), and many have a mandatory file extension, for example, `.hdbtable` (design-time table definition), `.hdbview` (design-time SQL-view definition), or `.hdbrole` (design-time role definition).

Some of the development objects you encounter when creating an application, such as projects and packages, are designed to help you structure your application. Other objects such as schemas, table definitions, or analytical and attribute views, help you organize your data. Design-time definitions of procedures and server-side JavaScript code are the core objects of an SAP HANA application; these, too, have mandatory file extensions, for example, `.hdbprocedure` or `.xsjs`. Other types of development objects help you control the access to runtime objects.

When you activate an application artifact, the file extension (for example, `.hdbdd`, `.xsjs`, or `.hdbprocedure`, ...) is used to determine which runtime plug-in to call during the activation process. The plug-in reads the repository artifact selected for activation (for example, a table definition, a complete CDS document, or server-side JavaScript code), interprets the object description in the file, and creates the appropriate runtime object in the designated catalog schema.

The file extensions associated with application artifacts are used in other contexts, too. For example, in SAP HANA studio, a context-sensitive menu is displayed when you click an artifact with the alternate mouse button; the options displayed in the menu is determined, amongst other things, according to the file extension.

Related Information

[Design-Time Application Artifacts \[page 160\]](#)

[Studio-Based SAP HANA Development Tools \[page 164\]](#)

3.8.1 Design-Time Application Artifacts

The design-time building blocks of your SAP HANA applications have a mandatory file extension, for example, `.hdbtable` (design-time table definition) or `.hdbview` (design-time SQL-view definition).

In SAP HANA, application artifacts have a mandatory file extension, which is used to determine the Repository tools required to parse the contents of the design-time artifact on activation. The following tables list the most commonly used building blocks of an SAP HANA application; the information provided shows any mandatory file extension and, if appropriate, indicates where to find more information concerning the context in which the object can be used.

Table 17: Design-time Application Building Blocks

File Extension	Object	Description
.af1pmml	Procedure	A file used by the application function modeler to store details of a procedure defined using application functions in the Predictive Analysis Library * (PAL) or Business Function Library * (BFL). Using the AFM also generates a .diagram and a .af1model file.
.analyticview	Analytic view	A file containing a design-time definition of an analytic view; the view can be referenced in an OData service definition.
.attributeview	Attribute view	A file containing a design-time definition of an attribute view; the view can be referenced in an OData service definition.
.calculationview	Calculation view	A file containing a design-time definition of an calculation view; the view can be referenced in an OData service definition.
.hdbdd	CDS document	A file containing a design-time definition of a CDS-compliant data-persistence object (for example, an entity or a data type) using the Data Definition Language (DDL).
.hdbprocedure	Procedure	Replaces .procedure. A design-time definition of a database function for performing complex and data-intensive business logic that cannot be performed with standard SQL.
.hdbrole	Role	A file containing a design-time definition of an SAP HANA user role.
.hdbscalarfunction	Scalar user-defined function	A file containing a design-time definition of a scalar user-defined function (UDF), which is a custom function that can be called in the SELECT and WHERE clauses of an SQL statement.
.hdbschema	Schema	A design-time definition of a database schema, which organizes database objects into groups.
.hdbsequence	Sequence	A design-time definition of a database sequence, which is set of unique numbers, for example, for use as primary keys for a specific table.
.hdbstructure	Table type	A design-time definition of a database table type using the .hdbtable syntax. Used for defining reusable table types, for example, for parameters in procedures.
.hdbsynonym	Database synonym	A design-time definition of a database synonym using the .hdbsynonym syntax.
.hdbtable	Table	A design-time definition of a database table using the .hdbtable syntax.
.hdbtablefunction	Table user-defined function	A file containing a design-time definition of a table user-defined function (UDF), which is a custom function that can be called in the FROM-clause of an SQL statement.
.hdbtextbundle	Resource Bundle	A file for defining translatable UI texts for an application. Used in SAP UI5 applications.
.hdbti	Table Import definition	A table-import configuration that specifies which .csv file is imported into which table in the SAP HANA system.
.hdbview	SQL View	A design-time definition of a database view, which is a virtual table based on an SQL query.

File Extension	Object	Description
.procedure	Procedure	A design-time definition of a database function for performing complex and data-intensive business logic that cannot be performed with standard SQL.
.proceduretemplate	Procedure template	A design-time artifact containing a base script with predefined placeholders for objects such as tables, views and columns.
.project	Project	An Eclipse project for developing your application or part of an application. The .project file is a design-time artifact that is stored in the SAP HANA repository.
.searchruleset	Search Rule Set *	A file that defines a set of rules for use with fuzzy searches. The rules help decide what is a valid match in a search.
.xsaccess	Application Access File	An application-specific configuration file that defines permissions for a native SAP HANA application, for example, to manage access to the application and running objects in the package.
.xsapp	Application Descriptor	An application-specific file in a repository package that defines the root folder of a native SAP HANA application. All files in that package (and any subpackages) are available to be called via URL.
.xsappsite	Application Site	A file that defines an application site
.xshhttpdest	HTTP destination configuration	A file that defines details for connections to a remote destination by HTTP (or HTTPS)
.xsjob	Scheduled XS job	A JSON-compliant file used to define recurring tasks that run in the background (independent of any HTTP request/response process); a scheduled job can either execute a JavaScript function or call a SQLScript procedure.
.xsjs	Server-Side JavaScript Code	A file containing JavaScript code that can run in SAP HANA Extended Application Services and be accessed via URL
.xsjslib	Server-Side JavaScript Library	A file containing JavaScript code that can run in SAP HANA Extended Application Services but cannot be accessed via URL. The code can be imported into an .xsjs code file.
.xsoauthappconfig	OAuth application configuration file	A file describing high-level details of an application that enables logon to a service running on a remote HTTP destination using OAuth
.xsoauthclientconfig	OAuth client configuration file	A file containing detailed information about a client application that uses OAuth as the authentication mechanism for logon to a remote HTTP destination
.xsoauthclientflavor	OAuth client flavor file	The corresponding OAuth flavors file for the OAuth client configuration
.xsodata	OData Descriptor	A design-time object that defines an OData service that exposes SAP HANA data from a specified end point.
.xsprivileges	Application Privilege	A file that defines a privilege that can be assigned to an SAP HANA Extended Application Services application, for example, the right to start or administer the application.

File Extension	Object	Description
.xssecurestore	Application secure store	The design-time file that creates an application-specific secure store; the store is used by the application to store data safely and securely in name-value form.
.xssqlcc	SQL Connection Configuration	A file that enables execution of SQL statements from inside server-side JavaScript code with credentials that are different to those of the requesting user
.xswidget	Widget	A file that defines a standalone SAP HANA application for the purpose of integration into an application site
.xsxmla	XMLA Descriptor	A design time object that defines an XMLA service that exposes SAP HANA data

⚠ Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

Table 18: Additional Application Building Blocks

Object	Description	File Extension
Package	A container in the repository for development objects.	Packages are represented by folders.
Attribute, Analytic and Calculation View	A view created with modeling tools and designed to model a business use case.	Created with the <i>Systems</i> view.
Decision Table	A table used to model business rules, for example, to manage data validation and quality.	
Analytic Privilege	A set of rules that allows users to see a subset of data in a table or view.	

3.8.2 Studio-Based SAP HANA Development Tools

The *SAP HANA Development* perspective in SAP HANA studio provides context-sensitive access to a variety of useful developer tools.

In SAP HANA studio's *SAP HANA Development* perspective, the view you are using determines what tools are available and the action that can be performed on the displayed objects. For example, in the *Project Explorer* view, the application developer can use the alternate mouse button to display a context-sensitive menu that provides access to Repository activation features, debugging configuration tools, and so on.

Project Explorer View

The following table lists a selection of the most frequently used tools and features that are available in the context-sensitive menu for artifacts in the *Project Explorer* view of the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.

Table 19: SAP HANA XS Development Options

Menu Group	Menu Option	Description
Team	Commit	Copy the most recent version of the design-time artifact from the local file system to the Repository. Note that every local saved change is immediately committed to the user's corresponding inactive workspace in the SAP HANA Repository.
	Activate	Use the corresponding design-time definition in the Repository to generate a catalog object for the currently selected inactive artifact.
	Activate All...	Generate a catalog object based on the corresponding design-time definition in the Repository for all currently inactive artifacts in a particular workspace; you can choose to include/exclude individual artifacts from the displayed list. Inactive artifacts are local copies of Repository artifacts saved in your workspace.
	Check	Simulate an activate operation (including a syntax check)
	Regenerate	Force generation of a runtime catalog object without starting the corresponding design-time activation process
	Remove from Client	Undo a check-out operation without the risk of deleting content in the SAP HANA Repository
	Show in	Display details of the selected repository artifact in the <i>Repositories</i> , <i>Synchronize</i> , or <i>History</i> view.
	Synchronize	Synchronize changes made to local file version with the version of the file in the repository
Debug as...	Name/ID	Debug the code in the selected design-time artifact using an existing debug configuration.
	Debug configuration...	Debug the code in the selected design-time artifact using a new debug configuration that you define now, for example: XS JavaScript, SAP HANA stored procedure...

Menu Group	Menu Option	Description
Run as...	HTML/XS Service/...	Test the selected Repository artifact in a Web browser directly from the Project Explorer view using the services provided by the currently connected SAP HANA server; the artifact's file extension is used to determine how to display the content.
	Run configuration...	Run the selected Repository artifact in a Web browser using a new runtime configuration, for example, for SAP HANA XS JavaScript artifacts, on a specific SAP HANA instance, and with defined user logon credentials.
Refresh	Refresh	Triggers a recursive checkout of Repository content, synchronizes differences between the Repository workspace and the local file system by fetching changes from the server

The following table lists **additional** tools and features that are available in the context-sensitive menu for artifacts in the *Repositories* view of the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.

Table 20: Additional SAP HANA XS Development Options

Tool	Description
Inactive testing	<p>Test repository objects that have not yet been activated, for example: XSJS, XSODATA, XSJSlib,</p> <p>i Note</p> <p>The SAP HANA server must be running in <code>developer_mode</code>, and you must set a client-side cookie named <code>sapXsDevWorkspace</code> to the name of your Repository workspace.</p>
Compare with active version	Display the differences between two versions of the same repository artifact or two different artifacts. You can select and compare multiple artifacts (<code>CRTL</code> and click the alternate mouse button). You can also compare an individual repository artifact with the version of the artifact that is currently active in the repository or a version from the artifact's revision-history list .
Get Where-Used List	Look for any references to the currently selected artifact and display the results in the <i>Search</i> view. The search includes both inactive artifacts (in your Repository workspace) and activated artifacts in the Repository. The <i>Get Where-Used List</i> option is available in both the <i>Project Explorer</i> and the <i>Repositories</i> view.
Share Project	Connect the local (client) project folders with SAP HANA repository and synchronizes the contents between client and server. This option is only available with an unshared project artifact.
Unshare Project	Cancel any synchronization between the local file system and the SAP HANA repository; the <i>Unshare</i> action does not delete any files, unless you specifically enable the <i>delete</i> option. The <i>Unshare</i> option is only available with an already shared project artifact.

Tool	Description
Move	Moves selected SAP HANA artifacts or an entire package within or across projects in the same Repository workspace. All SAP HANA artifacts referencing the moved artifacts are updated too. You must manually activate all the moved and referencing artifacts. You can move the following SAP HANA artifacts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attribute View • Analytical View • Calculation View • Analytic Privilege
Paste Special	Clones one or more packages and all their artifacts and copies them to a target package. While copying, this feature detects if the target contains any other artifacts from a previous <i>Paste Special</i> operation. If any other cloned artifacts exist, you can update references to the existing cloned artifacts. You must manually activate the cloned artifacts. You can paste the following artifacts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attribute View • Analytical View • Calculation View • Analytic Privilege

Repositories View

The following table lists the most frequently used tools and features that are available in the context-sensitive menu for artifacts in the *Repositories* view of the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.

i Note

The items displayed in the *Team* popup menu are context-sensitive; the options available in the menu depend on the type of repository object selected.

Table 21:

Tool/Feature	Description
Add package	This option is only available when you select another package.
Activate	Generate a catalog object based on the corresponding design-time definition in the Repository for the selected artifact
Activate All...	Generate a catalog object based on the corresponding design-time definition in the Repository for all currently inactive artifacts; you can choose to include/exclude individual artifacts from the displayed list. Inactive artifacts are local copies of Repository artifacts saved in your workspace.
Check	Simulate an activate operation (including a syntax check)
Check out	Copy package content from the Repository to the local workspace folder. Synchronize the repository with the local workspace (refresh)
Create Repository Workspace	Start the repository workspace wizard.

Tool/Feature	Description
Delivery Unit management	(Package only): Start the lifecycle-management tools and display details of the corresponding delivery unit (DU) if available.
Edit package	(Package only): Display and edit details of the selected package, for example: the delivery unit the package is assigned to, the package type, and the person responsible for the package's creation and maintenance.
Get Where-Used List	Display any references to the currently selected artifact in the Search view. The search includes both inactive artifacts (in your Repository workspace) and activated artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository. The Get Where-Used List option is available in both the Project Explorer and the Repositories view.
Open	Open the selected file in the appropriate editor.
Product management	(Package only): Start the lifecycle-management tools and display details of the corresponding product, if available.
Remove from client	Remove the selected file(s) from the local file system; the repository version remains untouched.
Refresh	Synchronize the contents of the selected repository package with the local workspace (F5)
Reset to	Replace the selected file with the base version or the currently active version <div style="background-color: #ffffcc; padding: 10px;"> ⚠ Caution <p>When you choose base version, you restore the original version of the object you are currently editing. When you choose active version, the version that you are currently editing becomes the new active version.</p> </div>
Show in history view	Display the complete list of revisions available for the selected item; the details displayed include the version number, the date created, and the file owner. Right-click an entry in the history list to display further menu options, for example, to compare two versions of the file.
Moves	Moves selected SAP HANA artifacts or an entire package within or across projects in the same Repository workspace. All SAP HANA artifacts referencing the moved artifacts are updated too. You must manually activate all the moved and referencing artifacts. You can move the following SAP HANA artifacts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attribute View • Analytical View • Calculation View • Analytic Privilege
Paste Special	Clones one or more packages and all their artifacts and copies them to a target package. While copying, this feature detects if the target contains any other artifacts from a previous Paste Special operation. If any other cloned artifacts exist, you can update references to the existing cloned artifacts. You must manually activate the cloned artifacts. You can paste the following artifacts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Attribute View • Analytical View • Calculation View • Analytic Privilege

4 Setting up the Data Persistence Model in SAP HANA

The persistence model defines the schema, tables, sequences, and views that specify what data to make accessible for consumption by XS applications and how.

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), the persistence model is mapped to the consumption model that is exposed to client applications and users so that data can be analyzed and displayed in the appropriate form in the client application interface. The way you design and develop the database objects required for your data model depends on whether you are developing applications that run in the SAP HANA XS classic or XS advanced run-time environment.

- [SAP HANA XS Classic Model \[page 168\]](#)
- [SAP HANA XS Advanced Model \[page 169\]](#)

SAP HANA XS Classic Model

SAP HANA XS classic model enables you to create database schema, tables, views, and sequences as design-time files in the SAP HANA repository. Repository files can be read by applications that you develop. When implementing the data persistence model in XS classic, you can use either the Core Data Services (CDS) syntax or HDBTable syntax (or both). “HDBTable syntax” is a collective term; it includes the different configuration schema for each of the various design-time data artifacts, for example: schema (`.hdbschema`), sequence (`.hdbsequence`), table (`.hdbtable`), and view (`.hdbview`).

All repository files including your view definition can be transported (along with tables, schema, and sequences) to other SAP HANA systems, for example, in a delivery unit. A delivery unit is the medium SAP HANA provides to enable you to assemble all your application-related repository artifacts together into an archive that can be easily exported to other systems.

i Note

You can also set up data-provisioning rules and save them as design-time objects so that they can be included in the delivery unit that you transport between systems.

The rules you define for a data-provisioning scenario enable you to import data from comma-separated values (CSV) files directly into SAP HANA tables using the SAP HANA XS table-import feature. The complete data-import configuration can be included in a delivery unit and transported between SAP HANA systems for reuse.

As part of the process of setting up the basic persistence model for SAP HANA XS, you create the following artifacts in the XS classic repository:

Table 22: XS Classic Data Persistence Artifacts by Language Syntax and File Suffix

XS Classic Artifact Type	CDS	HDBTable
Schema	<code>.hdbschema *</code>	<code>.hdbschema</code>

XS Classic Artifact Type	CDS	HDBTable
Synonym	.hdbsynonym*	.hdbsynonym
Table	.hdbdd	.hdbtable
Table Type	.hdbdd	.hdbstructure
View	.hdbdd	.hdbview
Association	.hdbdd	-
Sequence	.hdbsequence*	.hdbsequence
Structured Types	.hdbdd	-
Data import	.hdbti	.hdbti

i Note

(*) To create a schema, a synonym, or a sequence, you must use the appropriate HDBTable syntax, for example, .hdbschema, .hdbsynonym, or .hdbsequence. In a CDS document, you can include references to both CDS and HDBTable artifacts.

On activation of a repository artifact, the file suffix (for example, .hdbdd or .hdb[table|view]) is used to determine which run-time plug-in to call during the activation process. When you activate a design-time artifact in the SAP HANA Repository, the plug-in corresponding to the artifact's file suffix reads the contents of repository artifact selected for activation (for example, a table, a view, or a complete CDS document that contains multiple artifact definitions), interprets the artifact definitions in the file, and creates the appropriate corresponding run-time objects in the catalog.

SAP HANA XS Advanced Model

For the XS advanced run time, you develop multi-target applications (MTA), which contain modules, for example: a database module, a module for your business logic (Node.js), and a UI module for your client interface (HTML5). The modules enable you to group together in logical subpackages the artifacts that you need for the various elements of your multi-target application. You can deploy the whole package or the individual subpackages.

As part of the process of defining the database persistence model for your XS advanced application, you use the database module to store database design-time artifacts such as tables and views, which you define using Core Data Services (CDS). However, you can also create procedures and functions, for example, using SQLScript, which can be used to insert data into (and remove data from) tables or views.

i Note

In general, CDS works in XS advanced (HDI) in the same way that it does in the SAP HANA XS classic Repository. For XS advanced, however, there are some incompatible changes and additions, for example, in the definition and use of name spaces, the use of annotations, the definition of entities (tables) and structure types. For more information, see *CDS Documents in XS Advanced* in the list of *Related Links* below.

In XS advanced, application development takes place in the context of a project. The project brings together individual applications in a so-called Multi-Target Application (MTA), which includes a module in which you define and store the database objects required by your data model.

1. Define the data model.

Set up the folder structure for the design-time representations of your database objects; this could include CDS documents that define tables, data types, views, and so on. But it could also include other database artifacts, too, for example: your stored procedures, synonyms, sequences, scalar (or table) functions, and any other artifacts your application requires.

➔ **Tip**

You can also define the analytic model, for example, the calculation views and analytic privileges that are to be used to analyze the underlying data model and specify who (or what) is allowed access.

2. Set up the SAP HANA HDI deployment infrastructure.

This includes the following components:

- The HDI configuration

Map the design-time database artifact type (determined by the file extension, for example, .hdbprocedure, or .hdbcds in XS advanced) to the corresponding HDI build plug-in in the HDI configuration file (.hdiconfig).

- Run-time name space configuration (**optional**)

Define rules that determine how the run-time name space of the deployed database object is formed. For example, you can specify a base prefix for the run-time name space and, if desired, specify if the name of the folder containing the design-time artifact is reflected in the run-time name space that the deployed object uses.

Alternatively, you can specify the use of freestyle names, for example, names that do not adhere to any name-space rules.

3. Deploy the data model.

Use the design-time representations of your database artifacts to generate the corresponding active objects in the database catalog.

4. Consume the data model.

Reference the deployed database objects from your application, for example, using OData services bound to UI elements.

Related Information

[Creating the Persistence Model in Core Data Services \[page 170\]](#)

4.1 Creating the Persistence Model in Core Data Services

Core data services (CDS) is an infrastructure that can be used to define and consume semantically rich data models in SAP HANA.

The model described in CDS enables you to use the Data Definition Language to define the artifacts that make up the data-persistence model. You can save the data-persistence object definition as a CDS artifact, that is; a

design-time object that you manage in the SAP HANA repository and activate when necessary. Using a data definition language (DDL), a query language (QL), and an expression language (EL), CDS enables write operations, transaction semantics, and more.

You can use the CDS specification to create a CDS document which defines the following artifacts and elements:

- Entities (tables)
- Views
- User-defined data types (including structured types)
- Contexts
- Associations
- Annotations

i Note

To create a schema, a synonym, or a sequence, you must use the appropriate `.hbtable` artifact, for example, `.hbdschema`, `.hbdsynonym`, or `.hdbsequence`. You can reference these artifacts in a CDS document.

CDS artifacts are design-time definitions that are used to generate the corresponding run-time objects, when the CDS document that contains the artifact definitions is activated in the SAP HANA repository. In CDS, the objects can be referenced using the name of the design-time artifact in the repository; in SQL, only the name of the catalog object can be used. The CDS document containing the design-time definitions that you create using the CDS-compliant syntax must have the file extension `.hdbdd`, for example, `MyCDSTable.hdbdd`.

Related Information

[Create a CDS Document \[page 175\]](#)

[Create an Entity in CDS \[page 200\]](#)

[Create a User-defined Structured Type in CDS \[page 222\]](#)

[Create an Association in CDS \[page 236\]](#)

[Create a View in CDS \[page 251\]](#)

[CDS Annotations \[page 188\]](#)

4.1.1 CDS Editors

The SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA provides editing tools specially designed to help you create and modify CDS documents.

SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA includes dedicated editors that you can use to define data-persistence objects in CDS documents using the DDL-compliant Core Data Services syntax. SAP HANA XS advanced model recognizes the `.hbcds` file extension required for CDS object definitions and, at deployment time, calls the appropriate plug-in to parse the content defined in the CDS document and create the corresponding run-time object in the catalog. If you right-click a file with the `.hbcds` extension in the *Project Explorer* view of your

application project, SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA provides the following choice of editors in the context-sensitive menu.

- [CDS Text Editor \[page 172\]](#)

View and edit DDL source code in a CDS document as text with the syntax elements highlighted for easier visual scanning.

Right-click a CDS document: ► [Open With](#) ➤ [Text Editor](#) ▾

- [CDS Graphical Editor \[page 173\]](#)

View a graphical representation of the contents of a CDS source file, with the option to edit the source code as text with the syntax elements highlighted for easier visual scanning.

Right-click a CDS document: ► [Open With](#) ➤ [Graphical Editor](#) ▾

CDS Text Editor

SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA includes a dedicated editor that you can use to define data-persistence objects using the CDS syntax. SAP HANA recognizes the `.hdbcds` file extension required for CDS object definitions and calls the appropriate repository plug-in. If you double-click a file with the `.hdbcds` extension in the [Project Explorer](#) view, SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA automatically displays the selected file in the CDS text editor.

The CDS editor provides the following features:

- Syntax highlights

The CDS DDL editor supports syntax highlighting, for example, for keywords and any assigned values. To customize the colors and fonts used in the CDS text editor, choose ► [Tools](#) ➤ [Preferences](#) ➤ [Code Editor](#) ➤ [Editor Appearance](#) ▾ and select a theme and font size.

Note

The CDS DDL editor automatically inserts the keyword `namespace` into any new DDL source file that you create using the ► [New](#) ➤ [CDS Artifact](#) ▾ dialog.

The following values are assumed:

- `namespace` = <ProjectName>.<ApplDBModuleName>
- `context` = <NewCDSFileName>

- Keyword completion

The editor displays a list of DDL suggestions that could be used to complete the keyword you start to enter. To change the settings, choose ► [Tools](#) ➤ [Code Completion](#) ▾ in the toolbar menu.

- Code validity

You can check the validity of the syntax in your DDL source file; choose ► [Tools](#) ➤ [Code Check](#) ▾ option in the toolbar.

Note

You can choose to check the code as you type ([On Change](#)) or when you save the changes ([On Save](#)).

- Comments

Text that appears after a double forward slash (`//`) or between a forward slash and an asterisk (`/* ... */`) is interpreted as a comment and highlighted in the CDS editor (for example, `//this is a comment`).

CDS Graphical Editor

The CDS graphical editor provides graphical modeling tools that help you to design and create database models using standard CDS artifacts with minimal or no coding at all. You can use the CDS graphical editor to create CDS artifacts such as entities, contexts, associations, structured types, and so on.

The built-in tools provided with the CDS Graphical Editor enable you to perform the following operations:

- Create CDS files (with the extension `.hdbcds`) using a file-creation wizard.
- Create standard CDS artifacts, for example: entities, contexts, associations (to internal and external entities), structured types, scalar types, ...
- Define technical configuration properties for entities, for example: indexes, partitions, and table groupings.
- Generate the relevant CDS source code in the text editor for the corresponding database model.
- Open in the CDS graphical editor data models that were created using the CDS text editor.

➔ Tip

The built-in tools included with the CDS Graphical Editor are context-sensitive; right-click an element displayed in the CDS Graphical editor to display the tool options that are available.

4.1.1.1 CDS Text Editor

The CDS text editor displays the source code of your CDS documents in a dedicated text-based editor.

SAP HANA studio includes a dedicated editor that you can use to define data-persistence objects using the CDS syntax. SAP HANA studio recognizes the `.hdbdd` file extension required for CDS object definitions and calls the appropriate repository plugin. If you double-click a file with the `.hdbdd` extension in the *Project Explorer* view, SAP HANA studio automatically displays the selected file in the CDS editor.

The CDS editor provides the following features:

- Syntax highlights
The CDS DDL editor supports syntax highlighting, for example, for keywords and any assigned values (`@Schema: 'MySchema'`). You can customize the colors and fonts used in the Eclipse Preferences (▶ *Window* ▶ *Preferences* ▶ *General* ▶ *Appearance* ▶ *Colors and Fonts* ▶ *CDS DDL* ▶).

i Note

The CDS DDL editor automatically inserts the mandatory keyword `namespace` into any new DDL source file that you create using the *New DDL Source File* dialog. The following values are assumed:

- `namespace = <repository package name>`

- Keyword completion
The editor displays a list of DDL suggestions that could be used to complete the keyword you start to enter. You can insert any of the suggestions using the `SPACE` + `TAB` keys.
- Code validity
You can check the validity of the syntax in your DDL source file before activating the changes in the SAP HANA repository. Right-click the file containing the syntax to check and use the ▶ *Team* ▶ *Check* ▶ option in the context menu.

Note

Activating a file automatically commits the file first.

- **Comments**

Text that appears after a double forward slash (//) or between a forward slash and an asterisk /*...*/ is interpreted as a comment and highlighted in the CDS editor (for example, //this is a comment).

Tip

The *Project Explorer* view associates the .hdbdd file extension with the DDL icon. You can use this icon to determine which files contain CDS-compliant DDL code.



```
EmployeeModel.hdbdd X
namespace demo.cds.CoreDataServicesDemo;

@Schema: 'SAPUIA'
context EmployeeModel {

    type Name : String(80);

    type FullName {
        firstName : Name;
        middleName : Name;
        lastName : Name;
    };

    type Street {
        street : String(80);
        number : String(8);
    };

    entity Address {
        key id : Integer;
        street : EmployeeModel.Street;
        city : String(40);
        zip : String(16);
    };

    entity Employee {
        key id : Integer;
        name : FullName;
        salary : Decimal(15,2);
    };
}
```

4.1.2 Create a CDS Document

A CDS document is a design-time source file that contains definitions of the objects you want to create in the SAP HANA catalog.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared a project for the CDS artifacts so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema for the CDS catalog objects created when the CDS document is activated in the repository, for example, MYSHEMA
- The owner of the schema must have SELECT privileges in the schema to be able to see the generated catalog objects.

Context

CDS documents are design-time source files that contain DDL code that describes a persistence model according to rules defined in Core Data Services. CDS documents have the file suffix .hdbdd. Activating the CDS document creates the corresponding catalog objects in the specified schema. To create a CDS document in the repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the CDS document.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new CDS document and perform the following steps:

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the CDS document and choose ► *New* ► *Other...* ► *Database Development* ► *DDL Source File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter the name of the CDS document in the *File Name* box, for example, *MyModel1*.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically (for

example, `MyModel.hdbdd`) and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- c. Choose *Finish* to save the changes and commit the new CDS document to the repository.

The file-creation wizard creates a basic CDS document with the following elements:

- o Namespace

The name of the repository package in which you created the new CDS document, for example, `acme.com.hana.cds.data`

- o Top-level element

The name of the top-level element in a CDS document must match the name of the CDS document itself; this is the name you enter when using the file-creation wizard to create the new CDS document, for example, `MyModel`, `MyContext`, or `MyEntity`. In this example, the top-level element is a context.

```
namespace acme.com.hana.cds.data;
context MyModel {
};
```

5. Define the details of the CDS artifacts.

Open the CDS document you created in the previous step, for example, `MyModel.hdbdd`, and add the CDS-definition code to the file. The CDS code describes the CDS artifacts you want to add, for example: entity definitions, type definitions, view definitions and so on:

i Note

The following code examples are provided for illustration purposes only.

- a. Add a schema name.

The `@Schema` annotation defines the name of the schema to use to store the artifacts that are generated when the CDS document is activated. The schema name must be inserted before the top-level element in the CDS document; in this example, the context `MyModel`.

i Note

If the schema you specify does not exist, you cannot activate the new CDS document.

```
namespace acme.com.hana.cds.data;
@Schema: 'SAP_HANA_CDS'
context MyModel {
};
```

- b. Add structured types, if required.

Use the `type` keyword to define a type artifact in a CDS document. In this example, you add the user-defined types and structured types to the top-level entry in the CDS document, the context `MyModel`.

```
namespace acme.com.hana.cds.data;
@Schema: 'SAP_HANA_CDS'
context MyModel {
    type BusinessKey : String(10);
    type SString : String(40);
    type <[...]>
    <[...]>
```

```
};
```

- Add a new context, if required.

Contexts enable you to group together related artifacts. A CDS document can only contain one top-level context, for example, `MyModel {};`. Any new context must be **nested** within the top-level entry in the CDS document, as illustrated in the following example.

```
namespace acme.com.hana.cds.data;
@Schema: 'SAP_HANA_CDS'
context MyModel {
    type BusinessKey : String(10);
    type SString : String(40);
    type <[...]>
    context MasterData {
        <[...]>
    };
    context Sales {
        <[...]>
    };
    context Purchases {
        <[...]>
    };
}
```

- Add new entities.

You can add the entities either to the top-level entry in the CDS document; in this example, the context `MyModel` or to any other context, for example, `MasterData`, `Sales`, or `Purchases`. In this example, the new entities are column-based tables in the `MasterData` context.

```
namespace acme.com.hana.cds.data;
@Schema: 'SAP_HANA_CDS'
context MyModel {
    type BusinessKey : String(10);
    type SString : String(40);
    type <[...]>
    context MasterData {
        @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
        Entity Addresses {
            key AddressId: BusinessKey;
            City: SString;
            PostalCode: BusinessKey;
            <[...]>
        };
        @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
        Entity BusinessPartner {
            key PartnerId: BusinessKey;
            PartnerRole: String(3);
            <[...]>
        };
        context Sales {
            <[...]>
        };
        context Purchases {
            <[...]>
        };
    };
}
```

- Save the CDS document.

i Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. You do not need to explicitly commit it again.

7. Activate the changes in the repository.
 - a. Locate and right-click the new CDS document in the *Project Explorer* view.
 - b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose  *Team*  *Activate*.

i Note

If you cannot activate the new CDS document, check that the specified schema already exists and that there are no illegal characters in the name space, for example, the hyphen (-).

8. Ensure access to the schema where the new CDS catalog objects are created.

After activation in the repository, a schema object is only visible in the catalog to the _SYS_REPO user. To enable other users, for example the schema owner, to view the newly created schema and the objects it contains, you must grant the user the required SELECT privilege for the schema object.

i Note

If you already have the appropriate SELECT privilege for the schema, you do not need to perform this step.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio *Systems* view, right-click the SAP HANA system hosting the repository where the schema was activated and choose *SQL Console* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. In the *SQL console*, execute the statement illustrated in the following example, where <SCHEMANAME> is the name of the newly activated schema, and <username> is the database user ID of the schema owner:

```
call
  _SYS_REPO.GRANT_SCHEMA_PRIVILEGE_ON_ACTIVATED_CONTENT('select', '<SCHEMANAME>',
  '<username>');
```

9. Check that a catalog objects has been successfully created for each of the artifacts defined in the CDS document.

When a CDS document is activated, the activation process generates a corresponding catalog object where appropriate for the artifacts defined in the document; the location in the catalog is determined by the type of object generated.

i Note

Non-generated catalog objects include: scalar types, structured types, and annotations.

- a. In the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Systems* view.
- b. Navigate to the catalog location where new object has been created, for example:

Table 23:

Catalog Object	Location
Entities	▶ <SID> ▶ Catalog ▶ <MYSCHEMA> ▶ Tables ▶
Types	▶ <SID> ▶ Catalog ▶ <MYSCHEMA> ▶ Procedures ▶ Table Types ▶

- c. Open a data preview for the new object.

Right-click the new object and choose *Open Data Preview* in the pop-up menu.

Related Information

[CDS Namespaces \[page 184\]](#)

[CDS Naming Conventions \[page 183\]](#)

[CDS Contexts \[page 185\]](#)

[CDS Annotations \[page 188\]](#)

[CDS Comment Types \[page 198\]](#)

4.1.2.1 CDS Documents

CDS documents are design-time source files that contain DDL code that describes a persistence model according to rules defined in Core Data Services.

CDS documents have the file suffix `.hdbdd`. Each CDS document must contain the following basic elements:

- A name space declaration

The name space you define must be the first declaration in the CDS document and match the absolute package path to the location of the CDS document in the repository. It is possible to enclose parts of the name space in quotes (""), for example, to solve the problem of illegal characters in name spaces.

i Note

If you use the file-creation wizard to create a new CDS document, the name space is inserted automatically; the inserted name space reflects the repository location you select to create the new CDS document.

- A schema definition

The schema you specify is used to store the catalog objects that are defined in the CDS document, for example: entities, structured types, and views. The objects are generated in the catalog when the CDS document is activated in the SAP HANA repository.

- CDS artifact definitions

The objects that make up your persistence model, for example: contexts, entities, structured types, and views

Each CDS document must contain one top-level artifact, for example: a context, a type, an entity, or a view. The name of the top-level artifact in the CDS document must match the file name of the CDS document,

without the suffix. For example, if the top-level artifact is a context named `MyModel`, the name of the CDS document must be `MyModel.hdbdd`.

i Note

On activation of a repository file in, the file suffix, for example, `.hdbdd`, is used to determine which runtime plug-in to call during the activation process. The plug-in reads the repository file selected for activation, in this case a CDS-compliant document, parses the object descriptions in the file, and creates the appropriate runtime objects in the catalog.

If you want to define multiple CDS artifacts within a single CDS document (for example, multiple types, structured types, and entities), the top-level artifact must be a context. A CDS document can contain multiple contexts and any number and type of artifacts. A context can also contain nested sub-contexts, each of which can also contain any number and type of artifacts.

When a CDS document is activated, the activation process generates a corresponding catalog object for each of the artifacts defined in the document; the location in the catalog is determined by the type of object generated. The following table shows the catalog location for objects generated by the activation of common CDS artifacts.

Table 24: Catalog Location for CDS-generated Artifacts

CDS Artifact	Catalog Location
Entity	▶ <SID> ▶ Catalog ▶ <MYSHEMA> ▶ Tables ▶
View	▶ <SID> ▶ Catalog ▶ <MYSHEMA> ▶ Views ▶
Structured type	▶ <SID> ▶ Catalog ▶ <MYSHEMA> ▶ Procedures ▶ Table Types ▶

The following example shows the basic structure of a single CDS document that resides in the package `acme.com.hana.cds.data` in the SAP HANA repository. The CDS document defines the following CDS artifacts:

- Types:
 - `BusinessKey` and `sString`
- Entities:
 - `Addresses`, `BusinessPartners`, `Header`, and `Item`
- Contexts:
 - `MyModel`, which contains the nested contexts: `MasterData`, `Sales`, and `Purchases`
- External references
 - The `using` keyword enables you to refer to artifacts defined in separate CDS documents, for example, `MyModelB.hdbdd`. You can also assign an alias to the reference, for example, `AS <alias>`.
- Annotations
 - Built-in annotations, for example, `@Catalog`, `@Schema`, and `@nokey`, are important elements of the CDS syntax used to define CDS-compliant catalog objects. You can define your own custom annotations, too.

i Note

The following code snippet is incomplete [. . .]; it is intended for illustration purposes only.

Sample Code

```
namespace acme.com.hana.cds.data;
using acme.com.hana.cds.data::MyModelB.MyContextB1 as ic;
@Schema: 'SAP_HANA_CDS'
context MyModel {
    type BusinessKey : String(10);
    type SString : String(40);
    type <[...]>
    context MasterData {
        @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
        Entity Addresses {
            key AddressId: BusinessKey;
            City: SString;
            PostalCode: BusinessKey;
            <[...]>
        };
        @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
        Entity BusinessPartner {
            key PartnerId: BusinessKey;
            PartnerRole: String(3);
            <[...]>
        };
    };
    context Sales {
        @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
        Entity Header {
            key SalesOrderId: BusinessKey;
            <[...]>
        };
        @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
        @MyAnnotation : 'foo'
        Entity Item {
            key SalesOrderId: BusinessKey;
            key SalesOrderItem: BusinessKey;
            <[...]>
        };
    };
    context Purchases {
        <[...]>
    };
}
```

Related Information

[Create a CDS Document \[page 175\]](#)

[CDS Namespaces \[page 184\]](#)

[CDS Annotations \[page 188\]](#)

[External Artifacts in CDS \[page 182\]](#)

4.1.2.2 External Artifacts in CDS

You can define an artifact in one CDS document by referring to an artifact that is defined in another CDS document.

The CDS syntax enables you to define a CDS artifact in one document by basing it on an “external” artifact - an artifact that is defined in a separate CDS document. Each external artifact must be explicitly declared in the source CDS document with the `using` keyword, which specifies the location of the external artifact, its name, and where appropriate its CDS context.

➔ Tip

The `using` declarations must be located in the header of the CDS document between the `namespace` declaration and the beginning of the top-level artifact, for example, the `context`.

The external artifact can be either a single object (for example, a type, an entity, or a view) or a context. You can also include an optional alias in the `using` declaration, for example, `ContextA.ContextAI as ic`. The alias (`ic`) can then be used in subsequent type definitions in the source CDS document.

```
//Filename = Pack1/Distributed/ContextB.hdbdd
namespace Pack1.Distributed;
using Pack1.Distributed::ContextA.T1;
using Pack1.Distributed::ContextA.ContextAI as ic;
using Pack1.Distributed::ContextA.ContextAI.T3 as ict3;
using Pack1.Distributed::ContextA.ContextAI.T3.a as a; // error, is not an
artifact
context ContextB {
    type T10 {
        a : T1;           // Integer
        b : ic.T2;        // String(20)
        c : ic.T3;        // structured
        d : type of ic.T3.b; // String(88)
        e : ict3;         // structured
        x : Pack1.Distributed::ContextA.T1; // error, direct reference not allowed
    };
    context ContextBI {
        type T1 : String(7); // hides the T1 coming from the first using declaration
        type T2 : T1;        // String(7)
    };
}
```

The CDS document `ContextB.hdbdd` shown above uses external artifacts (data types `T1` and `T3`) that are defined in the “target” CDS document `ContextA.hdbdd` shown below. Two `using` declarations are present in the CDS document `ContextB.hdbdd`: one with no alias and one with an explicitly specified alias (`ic`). The first `using` declaration introduces the scalar type `Pack1.Distributed::ContextA.T1`. The second `using` declaration introduces the context `Pack1.Distributed::ContextA.ContextAI` and makes it accessible by means of the explicitly specified alias `ic`.

i Note

If no explicit alias is specified, the last part of the fully qualified name is assumed as the alias, for example `T1`.

The `using` keyword is the only way to refer to an externally defined artifact in CDS. In the example above, the type `x` would cause an activation error; you cannot refer to an externally defined CDS artifact directly by using its fully qualified name in an artifact definition.

```
//Filename = Pack1/Distributed/ContextA.hdbdd
namespace Pack1.Distributed;
context ContextA {
    type T1 : Integer;
    context ContextAI {
        type T2 : String(20);
        type T3 {
            a : Integer;
            b : String(88);
        };
    };
}
```

Note

Whether you use a single or multiple CDS documents to define your data-persistence model, each CDS document must contain only **one** top-level artifact, and the name of the top-level artifact must correspond to the name of the CDS document. For example, if the top-level artifact in a CDS document is `ContextA`, then the CDS document itself must be named `ContextA.hdbdd`.

4.1.2.3 CDS Naming Conventions

Rules and restrictions apply to the names of CDS documents and the package in which the CDS document resides.

The rules that apply for naming CDS documents are the same as the rules for naming the packages in which the CDS document is located. When specifying the name of a package or a CDS document (or referencing the name of an existing CDS object, for example, within a CDS document), bear in mind the following rules:

- File suffix
 - The file suffix differs according to SAP HANA XS version:
 - XS classic
.hdbdd, for example, `MyModel.hdbdd`.
 - XS advanced
.hdbc, for example, `MyModel.hdbc`.
- Permitted characters
 - CDS object and package names can include the following characters:
 - Lower or upper case letters (aA-zZ) and the underscore character (_)
 - Digits (0-9)
- Forbidden characters
 - The following restrictions apply to the characters you can use (and their position) in the name of a CDS document or a package:
 - You cannot use either the hyphen (-) or the dot (.) in the name of a CDS document.
 - You cannot use a digit (0-9) as the first character of the name of either a CDS document or a package, for example, `2CDSobjectname.hdbdd` (XS classic) or `acme.com.1package.hdbc` (XS advanced).

- The CDS parser does not recognize either CDS document names or package names that consist **exclusively** of digits, for example, 1234.hdbdd (XS classic) or acme.com.999.hdbclds (XS advanced).

⚠ Caution

Although it is possible to use quotation marks ("") to wrap a name that includes forbidden characters, as a general rule, it is recommended to follow the naming conventions for CDS documents specified here in order to avoid problems during activation in the repository.

Related Information

[Create a CDS Document \[page 175\]](#)

[CDS Documents \[page 179\]](#)

[CDS Namespaces \[page 184\]](#)

4.1.2.4 CDS Namespaces

The namespace is the path to the package in the SAP HANA Repository that contains CDS artifacts such as entities, contexts, and views.

In a CDS document, the first statement must declare the namespace that contains the CDS elements which the document defines, for example: a context, a type, an entity, or a view. The namespace must match the package name where the CDS elements specified in the CDS document are located. If the package path specified in a namespace declaration does not already exist in the SAP HANA Repository, the activation process for the elements specified in the CDS document fails.

It is possible to enclose in quotation marks ("") individual parts of the namespace identifier, for example, "Pack1".pack2. Quotes enable the use of characters that are not allowed in regular CDS identifiers; in CDS, a quoted identifier can include all characters except the dot (.) and the double colon (::). If you need to use a reserved keyword as an identifier, you **must** enclose it in quotes, for example, "Entity". However, it is recommended to avoid the use of reserved keywords as identifiers.

i Note

You can also use quotation marks ("") to wrap the names of CDS artifacts (entities, views) and elements (columns...).

The following code snippet applies to artifacts created in the Repository package /Pack1/pack2/ and shows some examples of **valid** namespace declarations, including namespaces that use quotation marks ("").

i Note

A CDS document cannot contain more than one namespace declaration.

```
namespace Pack1.pack2;
```

```
namespace "Pack1".pack2;
namespace Pack1."pack2";
namespace "Pack1"."pack2";
```

The following code snippet applies to artifacts created in the Repository package /Pack1/pack2/ and shows some examples of **invalid** namespace declarations.

```
namespace pack1.pack2;           // wrong spelling
namespace "Pack1.pack2";         // incorrect use of quotes
namespace Pack1.pack2.MyDataModel; // CDS file name not allowed in namespace
namespace Jack.Jill;             // package does not exist
```

The examples of namespace declarations in the code snippet above are invalid for the following reasons:

- `pack1.pack2;`
pack1 is spelled incorrectly; the namespace element requires a capital P to match the corresponding location in the Repository, for example, Pack1.
- `"Pack1.pack2";`
You cannot quote the entire namespace path; only individual elements of the namespace path can be quoted, for example, `"Pack1".pack2;` or `Pack1."pack2";`.
- `Pack1.pack2.MyDataModel;`
The namespace declaration must not include the names of elements specified in the CDS document itself, for example, MyDataModel.
- `Jack.Jill;`
The package path `Jack.Jill;` does not exist in the Repository.

Related Information

[Create a CDS Document \[page 175\]](#)

[CDS Documents \[page 179\]](#)

4.1.2.5 CDS Contexts

You can define multiple CDS-compliant *entities* (tables) in a single file by assigning them to a *context*.

The following example illustrates how to assign two simple entities to a context using the CDS-compliant .hdbdd syntax; you store the context-definition file with a specific name and the file extension .hdbdd, for example, MyContext.hdbdd.

i Note

If you are using a CDS document to define a CDS context, the name of the CDS document must match the name of the context defined in the CDS document, for example, with the “context” keyword.

In the example below, you must save the context definition “Books” in the CDS document Books.hdbdd. In addition, the name space declared in a CDS document must match the repository package in which the object the document defines is located.

The following code example illustrates how to use the CDS syntax to define multiple design-time entities in a context named Books.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema : 'MYSCHHEMA'
context Books {
    @Catalog.tableType: #COLUMN
    @Catalog.index : [ { name : 'MYINDEX1', unique : true, order : #DESC,
elementNames : ['ISBN'] } ]
    entity Book {
        key AuthorID : String(10);
        key BookTitle : String(100);
        ISBN : Integer not null;
        Publisher : String(100);
    };
    @Catalog.tableType: #COLUMN
    @Catalog.index : [ { name: 'MYINDEX2', unique: true, order: #DESC,
elementNames: ['AuthorNationality'] } ]
    entity Author {
        key AuthorName : String(100);
        AuthorNationality : String(20);
        AuthorBirthday : String(100);
        AuthorAddress : String(100);
    };
}
```

Activation of the file `Books.hdbdd` containing the context and entity definitions creates the catalog objects "Book" and "Author".

i Note

The namespace specified at the start of the file, for example, `com.acme.myapp1` corresponds to the location of the entity definition file (`Books.hdbdd`) in the application-package hierarchy.

Nested Contexts

The following code example shows you how to define a nested context called `InnerCtx` in the parent context `MyContext`. The example also shows the syntax required when making a reference to a user-defined data type in the nested context, for example, `(field6 : type of InnerCtx.CtxType.b;)`.

The `type of` keyword is only required if referencing an element in an entity or in a structured type; types in another context can be referenced directly, without the `type of` keyword. The nesting depth for CDS contexts is restricted by the limits imposed on the length of the database identifier for the name of the corresponding SAP HANA database artifact (for example, table, view, or type); this is currently limited to 126 characters (including delimiters).

i Note

The context itself does not have a corresponding artifact in the SAP HANA catalog; the context only influences the names of SAP HANA catalog artifacts that are generated from the artifacts defined in a given CDS context, for example, a table or a structured type.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema: 'MySchema'
```

```

context MyContext {
// Nested contexts
    context InnerCtx {

        Entity MyEntity {
            ...
        };
        Type CtxType {
            a : Integer;
            b : String(59);
        };
    };
    type MyType1 {
        field1 : Integer;
        field2 : String(40);
        field3 : Decimal(22,11);
        field4 : Binary(11);
    };

    type MyType2 {
        field1 : String(50);
        field2 : MyType1;
    };

    type MyType3 {
        field1 : UTCTimestamp;
        field2 : MyType2;
    };

    @Catalog.index : [{ name : 'IndexA', order : #ASC, unique: true,
                      elementNames : ['field1'] }]
    entity MyEntity1 {
        key id : Integer;
        field1 : MyType3 not null;
        field2 : String(24);
        field3 : LocalDate;
        field4 : type of field3;
        field5 : type of MyType1.field2;
        field6 : type of InnerCtx.CtxType.b; // refers to nested context
        field7 : InnerCtx.CtxType;           // more context references
    };
}

```

Name Resolution Rules

The sequence of definitions inside a block of CDS code (for example, `entity` or `context`) does not matter for the scope rules; a binding of an artifact type and name is valid within the confines of the smallest block of code containing the definition, except in inner code blocks where a binding for the same identifier remains valid. This rules means that the definition of `nameX` in an inner block of code hides any definitions of `nameX` in outer code blocks.

i Note

An identifier may be used before its definition without the need for forward declarations.

```

context OuterCtx
{
    type MyType1 : Integer;
    type MyType2 : LocalDate;
}

```

```

context InnerCtx
{
    type Use1 : MyType1;           // is a String(20)
    type Use2 : MyType2;           // is a LocalDate
    type MyType1 : String(20);
};

type invalidUse : Use1;          // invalid: Use1 is not
                                // visible outside of InnerCtx
type validUse   : InnerCtx.Use1; // ok
};

```

No two artifacts (including namespaces) can be defined whose absolute names are the same or are different only in case (for example, `MyArtifact` and `myartifact`), even if their artifact type is different (entity and view). When searching for artifacts, CDS makes no assumptions which artifact kinds can be expected at certain source positions; it simply searches for the artifact with the given name and performs a final check of the artifact type.

The following example demonstrates how name resolution works with multiple nested contexts. Inside context `NameB`, the local definition of `NameA` shadows the definition of the context `NameA` in the surrounding scope. This means that the definition of the identifier `NameA` is resolved to `Integer`, which does not have a sub-component `T1`. The result is an error, and the compiler does not continue the search for a “better” definition of `NameA` in the scope of an outer (parent) context.

```

context OuterCtx
{
    context NameA
    {
        type T1 : Integer;
        type T2 : String(20);
    };
    context NameB
    {
        type NameA : Integer;
        type Use   : NameA.T1; // invalid: NameA is an Integer
        type Use2  : OuterCtx.NameA.T2; // ok
    };
};

```

Related Information

[CDS User-Defined Data Types \[page 225\]](#)

[Create a CDS Document \[page 175\]](#)

4.1.2.6 CDS Annotations

CDS supports built-in annotations, for example, `@Catalog`, `@Schema`, and `@nokey`, which are important elements of the CDS documents used to define CDS-compliant catalog objects. However, you can define your own custom annotations, too.

Example

```
namespace mycompany.myapp1;
```

```

@Schema : 'MYSCHHEMA'
context Books {
    @Catalog.tableType: #COLUMN
    @Catalog.index: [ { name : 'MYINDEX1', unique : true, order : #DESC,
elementNames : ['ISBN'] } ]
    entity BOOK {
        key Author : String(100);
        key BookTitle : String(100);
        ISBN : Integer not null;
        Publisher : String(100);
    };
    @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
    @nokey
    entity MyKeylessEntity
    {
        element1 : Integer;
        element2 : UTCTimestamp;
        @SearchIndex.text: { enabled: true }
        element3 : String(7);
    };
    @GenerateTableType : false
    Type MyType1 {
        field1 : Integer;
        field2 : Integer;
        field3 : Integer;
    };
}

```

Overview

The following list indicates the annotations you can use in a CDS document:

- `@Catalog`
- `@nokey`
- `@Schema`
- `@GenerateTableType`
- `@SearchIndex`
- `@WithStructuredPrivilegeCheck`

@Catalog

The `@Catalog` annotation supports the following parameters, each of which is described in detail in a dedicated section below:

- `@Catalog.index`
Specify the type and scope of index to be created for the CDS entity, for example: name, order, unique/non-unique
- `@Catalog.tableType`
Specify the table type for the CDS entity, for example, column, row, global temporary.

You use the `@Catalog.index` annotation to define an index for a CDS entity. The `@Catalog.index` annotation used in the following code example ensures that an index called `Index1` is created for the entity `MyEntity1`.

along with the index fields `fint` and `futcshrt`. The order for the index is ascending (`#ASC`) and the index is unique.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
@Catalog.index:[ { name:'Index1', unique:true, order:#ASC, elementNames:['fint',
'futcshrt'] } ]
entity MyEntity1 {
    key fint:Integer;
    fstr :String(5000);
    fstr15 :String(51);
    fbin :Binary(4000);
    fbin15 :Binary(51);
    fint32 :Integer64;
    fdec53 :Decimal(5,3);
    fdecf :DecimalFloat;
    fbinf :BinaryFloat;
    futcshrt:UTCDateTime not null;
    flstr :LargeString;
    flbin :LargeBinary;
};
```

You can define the following values for the `@Catalog.index` annotation:

- `elementNames : ['<name1>', '<name2>']`
The names of the fields to use in the index; the elements are specified for the entity definition, for example, `elementNames:['fint', 'futcshrt']`
- `name : '<IndexName>'`
The names of the index to be generated for the specified entity, for example, `name: 'myIndex'`
- `order`
Create a table index sorted in ascending or descending order. The order keywords `#ASC` and `#DESC` can be only used in the **BTREE** index (for the maintenance of sorted data) and can be specified only once for each index.
 - `order : #ASC`
Creates an index for the CDS entity and sorts the index fields in **ascending** logical order, for example:
1, 2, 3...
 - `order : #DESC`
Creates an index for the CDS entity and sorts the index fields in **descending** logical order, for example:
3, 2, 1...
- `unique`
Creates a unique index for the CDS entity. In a unique index, two rows of data in a table cannot have identical key values.
 - `unique : true`
Creates a unique index for the CDS entity. The uniqueness is checked and, if necessary, enforced each time a key is added to (or changed in) the index.
 - `unique : false`
Creates a non-unique index for the CDS entity. A non-unique index is intended primarily to improve query performance, for example, by maintaining a sorted order of values for data that is queried frequently.

You use the `@Catalog.tableType` annotation to define the type of CDS entity you want to create. The `@Catalog.tableType` annotation determines the storage engine in which the underlying table is created.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
```

```

@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
context MyContext1 {
    @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
    entity MyEntity1 {
        key ID : Integer;
        name : String(30);
    };
    @Catalog.tableType : #ROW
    entity MyEntity2 {
        key ID : Integer;
        name : String(30);
    };
    @Catalog.tableType : #GLOBAL_TEMPORARY
    entity MyEntity3 {
        ID : Integer;
        name : String(30);
    };
}

```

You can define the following values for the `@Catalog.tableType` annotation:

- `#COLUMN`
Create a column-based table. If the majority of table access is through a large number of tuples, with only a few selected attributes, use COLUMN-based storage for your table type.
- `#ROW`
Create a row-based table. If the majority of table access involves selecting a few records, with all attributes selected, use ROW-based storage for your table type.
- `#GLOBAL_TEMPORARY`
Set the scope of the created table. Data in a **global** temporary table is session-specific; only the owner session of the global temporary table is allowed to insert/read/truncate the data. A global temporary table exists for the duration of the session, and data from the global temporary table is automatically dropped when the session is terminated. A global temporary table can be dropped only when the table does not have any records in it.

i Note

The SAP HANA database uses a combination of table types to enable storage and interpretation in both ROW and COLUMN forms. If no table type is specified in the CDS entity definition, the default value `#COLUMN` is applied to the table created on activation of the design-time entity definition.

@nokey

An entity usually has one or more key elements, which are flagged in the CDS entity definition with the `key` keyword. The key elements become the primary key of the generated SAP HANA table and are automatically flagged as “not null”. Structured elements can be part of the key, too. In this case, all table fields resulting from the flattening of this structured field are part of the primary key.

i Note

However, you can also define an entity that has no key elements. If you want to define an entity without a key, use the `@nokey` annotation. In the following code example, the `@nokey` annotation ensures that the entity

`MyKeylessEntity` defined in the CDS document creates a column-based table where no key element is defined.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
@Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
@nokey
entity MyKeylessEntity
{
    element1 : Integer;
    element2 : UTCTimestamp;
    element3 : String(7);
};
```

@Schema

The `@Schema` annotation is only allowed as a top-level definition in a CDS document. In the following code example `@Schema` ensures that the schema `MYSCHHEMA` is used to contain the entity `MyEntity1`, a column-based table.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
@Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
entity MyEntity1 {
    key ID : Integer;
    name : String(30);
};
```

i Note

If the schema specified with the `@Schema` annotation does not already exist, an activation error is displayed and the entity-creation process fails.

The schema name must adhere to the SAP HANA rules for database identifiers. In addition, a schema name must not start with the letters `SAP*`; the `SAP*` namespace is reserved for schemas used by SAP products and applications.

@GenerateTableType

For each structured type defined in a CDS document, an SAP HANA table type is generated, whose name is built by concatenating the elements of the CDS document containing the structured-type definition and separating the elements by a dot delimiter (`.`). The new SAP HANA table types are generated in the schema that is specified in the schema annotation of the respective top-level artifact in the CDS document containing the structured types.

i Note

Table types are only generated for **direct** structure definitions; no table types are generated for **derived** types that are based on structured types.

If you want to use the structured types inside a CDS document **without** generating table types in the catalog, use the annotation `@GenerateTableType : false`.

@SearchIndex

The annotation `@SearchIndex` enables you to define which of the columns should be indexed for search capabilities, for example, `{enabled : true}`. To extend the index search definition, you can use the properties `text` or `fuzzy` to specify if the index should support text-based or fuzzy search, as illustrated in the following example:

```
entity MyEntity100
{
    element1 : Integer;
    @SearchIndex.text: { enabled: true }
    element2 : LargeString;
    @SearchIndex.fuzzy: { enabled: true }
    element3 : String(7);
};
```

Tip

For more information about setting up search features and using the search capability, see the *SAP HANA Search Developer Guide*.

@WithStructuredPrivilegeCheck

The annotation `@WithStructuredPrivilegeCheck` enables you to control access to data (for example, in a view) by means of privileges defined with the Data Control Language (DCL), as illustrated in the following example:

```
@WithStructuredPrivilegeCheck
view MyView as select from Foo {
    <select_list>
} <where_groupBy_Having_OrderBy>;
```

Related Information

[Create a CDS Document \[page 175\]](#)

[User-Defined CDS Annotations \[page 194\]](#)

[CDS Structured Type Definition \[page 228\]](#)

[SAP HANA Search Developer Guide](#)

4.1.2.6.1 User-Defined CDS Annotations

In CDS, you can define your own custom annotations.

The built-in **core** annotations that SAP HANA provides, for example, `@Schema`, `@Catalog`, or `@nokey`, are located in the namespace `sap.cds`; the same namespace is used to store all the primitive types, for example, `sap.cds::integer` and `sap.cds::SMALLINT`.

However, the CDS syntax also enables you to define your own annotations, which you can use in addition to the existing “core” annotations. The rules for defining a custom annotation in CDS are very similar way the rules that govern the definition of a user-defined type. In CDS, an annotation can be defined either inside a CDS context or as the single, top-level artifact in a CDS document. The custom annotation you define can then be assigned to other artifacts in a CDS document, in the same way as the core annotations, as illustrated in the following example:

```
@Catalog.tableType : #ROW
@MyAnnotation : 'foo'
entity MyEntity {
    key Author : String(100);
    key BookTitle : String(100);
    ISBN : Integer not null;
    Publisher : String(100);
}
```

CDS supports the following types of user-defined annotations:

- Scalar annotations
- Structured annotations
- Annotation arrays

Scalar Annotations

The following example shows how to define a scalar annotation.

```
annotation MyAnnotation_1 : Integer;
annotation MyAnnotation_2 : String(20);
```

In annotation definitions, you can use both the **enumeration** type and the **Boolean** type, as illustrated in the following example.

```
type Color : String(10) enum { red = 'rot'; green = 'grün'; blue = 'blau'; };
annotation MyAnnotation_3 : Color;
annotation MyAnnotation_4 : Boolean;
```

Structured Annotations

The following example shows how to define a structured annotation.

```
annotation MyAnnotation_5 {
    a : Integer;
```

```
b : String(20);
c : Color;
d : Boolean;
};
```

The following example shows how to nest annotations in an anonymous annotation structure.

```
annotation MyAnnotation_7 {
    a : Integer;
    b : String(20);
    c : Color;
    d : Boolean;
    s {
        a1 : Integer;
        b1 : String(20);
        c1 : Color;
        d1 : Boolean;
    };
}
```

Array Annotations

The following example shows how to define an array-like annotation.

```
annotation MyAnnotation_8 : array of Integer;
annotation MyAnnotation_9 : array of String(12);
annotation MyAnnotation_10 : array of { a: Integer; b: String(10); };
```

4.1.2.6.2 CDS Annotation Usage Examples

Reference examples of the use of user-defined CDS annotations.

When you have defined an annotation, the user-defined annotation can be used to annotate other definitions. It is possible to use the following types of user-defined annotations in a CDS document:

Table 25: User-defined CDS Annotations

CDS Annotation Type	Description
Scalar annotations [page 196]	For use with simple integer or string annotations and enumeration or Boolean types
Structured annotations [page 196]	For use where you need to create a simple annotation structure or nest an annotation in an anonymous annotation structure
Annotation arrays [page 197]	For use where you need to assign the same annotation several times to the same object.

Scalar Annotations

The following examples show how to use a scalar annotation:

```
@MyAnnotation_1 : 18
type MyType1 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_2 : 'sun'
@MyAnnotation_1 : 77
type MyType2 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_2 : 'sun'
@MyAnnotation_2 : 'moon'    // error: assigning the same annotation twice is not
                           allowed.
type MyType3 : Integer;
```

i Note

It is not allowed to assign an annotation to the same object more than once. If several values of the same type are to be annotated to a single object, use an array-like annotation.

For annotations that have enumeration type, the `enum` values can be addressed either by means of their fully qualified name, or by means of the shortcut notation (using the hash (#) sign). It is not allowed to use a literal value, even if it matches a literal of the `enum` definition.

```
@MyAnnotation_3 : #red
type MyType4 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_3 : Color.red
type MyType5 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_3 : 'rot' // error: no literals allowed, use enum symbols
type MyType6 : Integer;
```

For Boolean annotations, only the values “`true`” or “`false`” are allowed, and a shortcut notation is available for the value “`true`”, as illustrated in the following examples:

```
@MyAnnotation_4 : true
type MyType7 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_4 // same as explicitly assigning the value "true"
type MyType8 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_4 : false
type MyType9 : Integer;
```

Structured Annotations

Structured annotations can be assigned either as a complete unit or, alternatively, one element at a time. The following example shows how to assign a **whole** structured annotation:

```
@MyAnnotation_5 : { a : 12, b : 'Jupiter', c : #blue, d : false }
type MyType10 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_5 : { c : #green } // not all elements need to be filled
type MyType11 : Integer;
```

The following example shows how to assign the same structured annotation element by element.

Note

It is not necessary to assign a value for each element.

```
@MyAnnotation_5.a : 12
@MyAnnotation_5.b : 'Jupiter'
@MyAnnotation_5.c : #blue
@MyAnnotation_5.d : false
type MyType12 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_5.c : #green
type MyType13 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_5.c : #blue
@MyAnnotation_5.d      // shortcut notation for Boolean (true)
type MyType14 : Integer;
```

It is not permitted to assign the same annotation element more than once; assigning the same annotation element more than once in a structured annotation causes an activation error.

```
@MyAnnotation_5 : { c : #green, c : #green } // error, assign an element once
only
type MyType15 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_5.c : #green
@MyAnnotation_5.c : #blue // error, assign an element once only
type MyType16 : Integer;
```

Array-like Annotations

Although it is not allowed to assign the same annotation several times to the same object, you can achieve the same effect with an array-like annotation, as illustrated in the following example:

```
@MyAnnotation_8 : [1,3,5,7]
type MyType30 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_9 : ['Earth', 'Moon']
type MyType31 : Integer;
@MyAnnotation_10 : [{ a: 52, b: 'Mercury'}, { a: 53, b: 'Venus'}]
type MyType32 : Integer;
```

Related Information

[CDS Annotations \[page 188\]](#)

[CDS Documents \[page 179\]](#)

[Create a CDS Document \[page 175\]](#)

4.1.2.7 CDS Comment Types

The Core Data Services (CDS) syntax enables you to insert comments into object definitions.

Example

Comment Formats in CDS Object Definitions

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;

/** 
 * multi-line comment,
 * for doxygen-style,
 * comments and annotations
 */
type Type1 {
    element Fstr:      String( 5000 ) ; // end-of-line comment
    Flstr:           LargeString;
    /*inline comment*/ Fbin:      Binary( 4000 );
    element Flbin:    LargeBinary;
    Fint:             Integer;
    element Fint64:   Integer64;
    Ffixdec:         Decimal( 34, 34 /* another inline comment */ );
    element Fdec:    DecimalFloat;
    Fflt:            BinaryFloat;
    //complete line comment element Floctim: LocalTime;
temporarily switched off
    //complete line comment Floctim: LocalTime;
    element Futcdatim: UTCDateTime;
    Futctstmp: UTCTimestamp;
};
```

Overview

You can use the forward slash (/) and the asterisk (*) characters to add comments and general information to CDS object-definition files. The following types of comment are allowed:

- In-line comment
- End-of-line comment
- Complete-line comment
- Multi-line comment

In-line Comments

The in-line comment enables you to insert a comment into the middle of a line of code in a CDS document. To indicate the start of the in-line comment, insert a forward-slash (/) followed by an asterisk (*) before the comment text. To signal the end of the in-line comment, insert an asterisk followed by a forward-slash character (*/) after the comment text, as illustrated by the following example::

```
element Floctim: /*comment text*/ LocalTime;
```

End-of-Line Comment

The end-of-line comment enables you to insert a comment at the end of a line of code in a CDS document. To indicate the start of the end-of-line comment, insert two forward slashes (//) before the comment text, as illustrated by the following example:

```
element Flomdat:      LocalDate; // Comment text
```

Complete-Line Comment

The complete-line comment enables you to tell the parser to ignore the contents of an entire line of CDS code. The comment out a complete line, insert two backslashes (//) at the start of the line, as illustrated in the following example:

```
// element Flomdat:      LocalDate;      Additional comment text
```

Multi-Line Comments

The multi-line comment enables you to insert comment text that extends over multiple lines of a CDS document. To indicate the start of the multi-line comment, insert a forward-slash (/) followed by an asterisk (*) at the start of the group of lines you want to use for an extended comment (for example, /*). To signal the end of the multi-line comment, insert an asterisk followed by a forward-slash character (*/). Each line between the start and end of the multi-line comment must start with an asterisk (*), as illustrated in the following example:

```
/*
 *  multiline,
 *  doxygen-style
 *  comments and annotations
 */
```

Related Information

[Create a CDS Document \[page 175\]](#)

4.1.3 Create an Entity in CDS

The **entity** is the core artifact for persistence-model definition using the CDS syntax. You create a database entity as a design-time file in the SAP HANA repository.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema for the CDS catalog objects, for example, MYSCHHEMA
- The owner of the schema must have SELECT privileges in the schema to be able to see the generated catalog objects.

Context

In the SAP HANA database, as in other relational databases, a CDS entity is a table with a set of data elements that are organized using columns and rows. SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use the CDS syntax to create a database entity as a design-time file in the repository. Activating the CDS entity creates the corresponding table in the specified schema. To create a CDS entity-definition file in the repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the CDS entity-definition file.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new CDS entity-definition file and perform the following steps:

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the entity-definition file and choose ► *New* ► *Other...* ► *Database Development* ► *DDL Source File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter the name of the entity-definition file in the *File Name* box, for example, MyEntity.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically (for

example, `MyEntity.hdbdd`) and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- c. Choose *Finish* to save the changes and commit the new entity-definition file in the repository.
5. Define the structure of the CDS entity.

If the new entity-definition file is not automatically displayed by the file-creation wizard, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the entity-definition file you created in the previous step, for example, `MyEntity.hdbdd`, and add the catalog- and entity-definition code to the file:

Note

The following code example is provided for illustration purposes only. If the schema you specify does not exist, you cannot activate the new CDS entity.

```
namespace acme.com.apps.myapp1;
@Schema : 'MYSCHHEMA'
@Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
@Catalog.index : [ { name : 'MYINDEX1', unique : true, order :#DESC,
elementNames : ['ISBN'] } ]
entity MyEntity {
    key Author      : String(100);
    key BookTitle   : String(100);
    ISBN          : Integer not null;
    Publisher     : String(100);
};
```

6. Save the CDS entity-definition file.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. You do not need to explicitly commit it again.

7. Activate the changes in the repository.
 - a. Locate and right-click the new CDS entity-definition file in the *Project Explorer* view.
 - b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose  *Team*  *Activate* .

Note

If you cannot activate the new CDS artifact, check that the specified schema already exists and that there are no illegal characters in the name space, for example, the hyphen (-).

8. Ensure access to the schema where the new CDS catalog objects are created.

After activation in the repository, a schema object is only visible in the catalog to the _SYS_REPO user. To enable other users, for example the schema owner, to view the newly created schema and the objects it contains, you must grant the user the required SELECT privilege for the appropriate schema object.

Note

If you already have the appropriate SELECT privilege, you do not need to perform this step.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio *Systems* view, right-click the SAP HANA system hosting the repository where the schema was activated and choose *SQL Console* in the context-sensitive popup menu.

- b. In the *SQL console*, execute the statement illustrated in the following example, where <SCHEMANAME> is the name of the newly activated schema, and <username> is the database user ID of the schema owner:

```
call
  _SYS_REPO.GRANT_SCHEMA_PRIVILEGE_ON_ACTIVATED_CONTENT('select', '<SCHEMANAME
>', '<username>');
```

9. Check that the new entity has been successfully created.

CDS entities are created in the *Tables* folder in the catalog.

- In the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Systems* view.
- Navigate to the catalog location where you created the new entity.

► <SID> ► Catalog ► <MYSHEMA> ► Tables ►

- Open a data preview for the new entity MyEntity.

Right-click the new entity <package.path>::MyEntity and choose *Open Data Preview* in the pop-up menu.

► Tip

Alternatively, to open the table-definition view of the SAP HANA catalog tools, press **F3** when the CDS entity is in focus in the CDS editor.

Related Information

[CDS Entities \[page 202\]](#)

[Entity Element Modifiers \[page 204\]](#)

[CDS Entity Syntax Options \[page 209\]](#)

4.1.3.1 CDS Entities

In the SAP HANA database, as in other relational databases, a CDS entity is a table with a set of data elements that are organized using columns and rows.

A CDS entity has a specified number of columns, defined at the time of entity creation, but can have any number of rows. Database entities also typically have meta-data associated with them; the meta-data might include constraints on the entity or on the values within particular columns. SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database entity as a design-time file in the repository. All repository files including your entity definition can be transported to other SAP HANA systems, for example, in a delivery unit. You can define the entity using CDS-compliant DDL.

i Note

A delivery unit is the medium SAP HANA provides to enable you to assemble all your application-related repository artifacts together into an archive that can be easily exported to other systems.

The following code illustrates an example of a single design-time entity definition using CDS-compliant DDL. In the example below, you must save the entity definition "MyTable" in the CDS document `MyTable.hdbdd`. In addition, the name space declared in a CDS document must match the repository package in which the object the document defines is located.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema : 'MYSCHHEMA'
@Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
@Catalog.index : [ { name : 'MYINDEX1', unique : true, order : #DESC,
elementNames : ['ISBN'] } ]
entity MyTable {
    key Author      : String(100);
    key BookTitle   : String(100);
    ISBN          : Integer not null;
    Publisher     : String(100);
};
```

If you want to create a CDS-compliant database entity definition as a repository file, you must create the entity as a flat file and save the file containing the DDL entity dimensions with the suffix `.hdbdd`, for example, `MyTable.hdbdd`. The new file is located in the package hierarchy you establish in the SAP HANA repository. The file location corresponds to the namespace specified at the start of the file, for example, `com.acme.myapp1` or `sap.hana.xs.app2`. You can activate the repository files at any point in time to create the corresponding runtime object for the defined table.

i Note

On activation of a repository file, the file suffix, for example, `.hdbdd`, is used to determine which runtime plug-in to call during the activation process. The plug-in reads the repository file selected for activation, in this case a CDS-compliant entity, parses the object descriptions in the file, and creates the appropriate runtime objects.

When a CDS document is activated, the activation process generates a corresponding catalog object for each of the artifacts defined in the document; the location in the catalog is determined by the type of object generated. For example, the corresponding database table for a CDS entity definition is generated in the following catalog location:

► <`SID`> ► `Catalog` ► <`MYSCHHEMA`> ► `Tables` ▶

Entity Element Definition

You can expand the definition of an entity element beyond the element's name and type by using element **modifiers**. For example, you can specify if an entity element is the primary key or **part** of the primary key. The following entity element modifiers are available:

- `key`

Defines if the specified element is the **primary** key or **part** of the primary key for the specified entity.

i Note

Structured elements can be part of the key, too. In this case, all table fields resulting from the flattening of this structured field are part of the primary key.

- `null`
Defines if an entity element can (`null`) or cannot (`not null`) have the value NULL. If neither `null` nor `not null` is specified for the element, the default value `null` applies (except for the `key` element).
- `default <literal_value>`
Defines the default value for an entity element in the event that no value is provided during an INSERT operation. The syntax for the literals is defined in the primitive data-type specification.

```
entity MyEntity {
    key MyKey : Integer;
    key MyKey2 : Integer null;                                // illegal combination
    key MyKey3 : Integer default 2;
    elem2 : String(20) default 'John Doe';
    elem3 : String(20) default 'John Doe' null;
    elem4 : String default 'Jane Doe' not null;
};
```

Spatial Data

CDS entities support the use of spatial data types such as `hana.ST_POINT` or `hana.ST_GEOMETRY` to store geo-spatial coordinates. Spatial data is data that describes the position, shape, and orientation of objects in a defined space; the data is represented as two-dimensional geometries in the form of points, line strings, and polygons.

Related Information

[CDS Primitive Data Types \[page 233\]](#)

[Entity Element Modifiers \[page 204\]](#)

[CDS Entity Syntax Options \[page 209\]](#)

4.1.3.2 Entity Element Modifiers

Element **modifiers** enable you to expand the definition of an entity element beyond the element's name and type. For example, you can specify if an entity element is the primary key or **part** of the primary key.

Example

```
entity MyEntity {
    key MyKey : Integer;
    elem2 : String(20) default 'John Doe';
    elem3 : String(20) default 'John Doe' null;
    elem4 : String default 'Jane Doe' not null;
};
entity MyEntity1 {
    key id : Integer;
    a : integer;
    b : integer;
    c : integer generated always as a+b;
```

```
};

entity MyEntity2 {
    autoId : Integer generated [always|by default] as identity ( start with 10
increment by 2 );
    name : String(100);
};
```

key

```
key    MyKey   : Integer;
key    MyKey2  : Integer null;           // illegal combination
key    MyKey3  : Integer default 2;
```

You can expand the definition of an entity element beyond the element's name and type by using element **modifiers**. For example, you can specify if an entity element is the primary key or **part** of the primary key. The following entity element modifiers are available:

- **key**
Defines if the element is the **primary** key or **part** of the primary key for the specified entity. You **cannot** use the **key** modifier in the following cases:
 - In combination with a **null** modifier. The **key** element is **non null** by default because NULL cannot be used in the **key** element.

Note

Structured elements can be part of the key, too. In this case, all table fields resulting from the flattening of this structured field are part of the primary key.

null

```
elem3  : String(20) default 'John Doe' null;
elem4  : String default 'Jane Doe' not null;
```

null defines if the entity element can (**null**) or cannot (**not null**) have the value NULL. If neither **null** nor **not null** is specified for the element, the default value **null** applies (except for the **key** element), which means the element **can** have the value NULL. If you use the **null** modifier, note the following points:

Caution

The keywords **nullable** and **not nullable** are no longer valid; they have been replaced for SPS07 with the keywords **null** and **not null**, respectively. The keywords **null** and **not null** must appear at the end of the entity element definition, for example, `field2 : Integer null;`.

- The **not null** modifier can only be added if the following is true:
 - A **default** is also defined
 - no **null** data is already in the table

- Unless the table is empty, bear in mind that when adding a new `not null` element to an existing entity, you must declare a default value because there might already be existing rows that do not accept NULL as a value for the new element.
- `null` elements with default values are permitted
- You cannot combine the element `key` with the element modifier `null`.
- The elements used for a unique index must have the `not null` property.

```
entity WithNullAndNotNull
{
  key id : Integer;
  field1 : Integer;
  field2 : Integer null; // same as field1, null is default
  field3 : Integer not null;
};
```

default

```
default <literal_value>
```

For each scalar element of an entity, a default value can be specified. The `default` element identifier defines the default value for the element in the event that no value is provided during an `INSERT` operation.

i Note

The syntax for the literals is defined in the primitive data-type specification.

```
entity WithDefaults
{
  key id : Integer;
  field1 : Integer      default -42;
  field2 : Integer64    default 9223372036854775807;
  field3 : Decimal(5, 3) default 12.345;
  field4 : BinaryFloat  default 123.456e-1;
  field5 : LocalDate    default date'2013-04-29';
  field6 : LocalTime    default time'17:04:03';
  field7 : UTCDateTime  default timestamp'2013-05-01 01:02:03';
  field8 : UTCTimestamp default timestamp'2013-05-01 01:02:03';
  field9 : Binary(32)   default x'0102030405060708090a0b0c0d0e0[...]';
  field10 : String(10)  default 'foo';
};
```

generated always as <expression>

```
entity MyEntity1 {
  key id : Integer;
  a : integer;
  b : integer;
  c : integer generated always as a+b;
};
```

The SAP HANA SQL clause `generated always as <expression>` is available for use in CDS entity definitions; it specifies the expression to use to generate the column value at run time. An element that is defined with `generated always as <expression>` corresponds to a field in the database table that is present in the persistence and has a value that is computed as specified in the expression, for example, “`a+b`”.

“Generated” fields and “calculated” field differ in the following way. **Generated** fields are physically present in the database table; values are computed on `INSERT` and need not be computed on `SELECT`. **Calculated** fields are not actually stored in the database table; they are computed when the element is “selected”. Since the value of the **generated** field is computed on `INSERT`, the expression used to generate the value must not contain any non-deterministic functions, for example: `current_timestamp`, `current_user`, `current_schema`, and so on.

Restriction

The `generated always as <expression>` clause is only supported for column tables.

generated [always | by default] as identity

```
entity MyEntity2 {  
    autoId : Integer generated always as identity ( start with 10 increment by  
2 );  
    name : String(100);  
};
```

The SAP HANA SQL clause `generated as identity` is available for use in CDS entity definitions; it enables you to specify an identity column. An element that is defined with `generated as identity` corresponds to a field in the database table that is present in the persistence and has a value that is computed as specified in the sequence options defined in the `identity` expression, for example, `(start with 10 increment by 2)`.

In the example illustrated here, the name of the generated column is `autoID`, the first value in the column is “10”; the `identity` expression `(start with 10 increment by 2)` ensures that subsequent values in the column are incremented by 2, for example: 12, 14, and so on.

Restriction

The `generated as identity` clause is only supported for column tables.

You can use either `always` or `by default` in the clause `generated as identity`, as illustrated in the examples in this section. If `always` is specified, then values are **always** generated; if `by default` is specified, then values are generated **by default**.

```
entity MyEntity2 {  
    autoId : Integer generated by default as identity ( start with 10 increment  
by 2 );  
    name : String(100);  
};
```

Restriction

CDS does not support the use of reset queries, for example, `RESET BY <subquery>`.

Column Migration Behavior

The following table shows the migration strategy that is used for modifications to any given column; the information shows which actions are performed and what strategy is used to preserve content. During the migration, a comparison is performed on the column **type**, the generation **kind**, and the expression, if available. From an end-user perspective, the result of a column modification is either a preserved or new value. The aim of any modification to an entity (table) is to cause as little loss as possible.

- Change to the column **type**
In case of a column type change, the content is converted into the new type. HANA conversion rules apply.
- Change to the expression clause
The expression is re-evaluated in the following way:
 - “early”
As part of the column change
 - “late”
As part of a query
- Change to a calculated column
A calculated column is transformed into a plain column; the new column is initialized with NULL.

Technically, columns are either dropped and added or a completely new “shadow” table is created into which the existing content is copied. The shadow table will then replace the original table.

Table 26:

Before column/ Af- ter row	Plain	As <expr>	generated always as <expr>	generated always as identity <expr>	generated by de- fault as identity <expr>
Plain	Migrate Keep content	Drop/add Evaluate on select	Drop/add Evaluate on add	Migrate Keep content	Migrate Keep content
generated by default as identity <expr>	Migrate Keep content	Drop/add Evaluate on select	Drop/add Evaluate on add	Migrate Keep content	Migrate Keep content
generated always as identity <expr>	Migrate Keep content	Drop/add Evaluate on select	Drop/add Evaluate on add	Migrate Keep content	Migrate Keep content
generated always as <expr>	Drop/add NULL	Drop/add Evaluate on select	Drop/add Evaluate on add	Drop/add Keep content	Migrate Keep content
as <expr>	Drop/add NULL	Drop/add Evaluate on select	Drop/add Evaluate on add	Drop/add Keep content	Migrate Keep content

Related Information

[Create an Entity in CDS \[page 200\]](#)

[CDS Entity Syntax Options \[page 209\]](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference \(CREATE TABLE\)](#)

4.1.3.3 CDS Entity Syntax Options

The **entity** is the core design-time artifact for persistence model definition using the CDS syntax.

Example

Note

This example is not a working example; it is intended for illustration purposes only.

```
namespace Pack1."pack-age2";
@Schema: 'MySchema'
context MyContext {
    entity MyEntity1
    {
        key id : Integer;
        name   : String(80);
    };
    @Catalog:
    { tableType : #COLUMN,
      index : [
        { name:'Index1', order:#DESC, unique:true, elementNames:['x', 'y'] },
        { name:'Index2', order:#DESC, unique:false, elementNames:['x', 'a'] }
      ]
    }
    entity MyEntity2 {
        key id : Integer;
        x     : Integer;
        y     : Integer;
        a     : Integer;
        field7 : Decimal(20,10) = power(ln(x)*sin(y), a);
    };
    entity MyEntity {
        key id : Integer;
        a : Integer;
        b : Integer;
        c : Integer;
        s {
            m : Integer;
            n : Integer;
        };
        } technical configuration {
            row store;
            index MyIndex1 on (a, b) asc;
            unique index MyIndex2 on (c, s) desc;
        };
    context MySpatialContext {
        entity Address {
            key id          : Integer;
            street_number : Integer;
            street_name   : String(100);
            zip           : String(10);
        }
    }
}
```

```

        city      : String(100);
        loc       : hana.ST_POINT(4326);
    };
}
context MySeriesContext {
    entity MySeriesEntity {
        key setId : Integer;
        t : UTCTimestamp;
        value : Decimal(10,4);
        series (
            series key (setId)
            period for series (t)
            equidistant increment by interval 0.1 second
            equidistant piecewise //increment or piecewise; not both
        )
    };
}

```

i Note

For series data, you can use either `equidistant` or `equidistant piecewise`, but not both at the same time. The example above is for illustration purposes only.

Overview

Entity definitions resemble the definition of structured types, but with the following additional features:

- [Key definition \[page 210\]](#)
- [Index definition \[page 211\]](#)
- [Table type specification \[page 212\]](#)
- [Calculated Fields \[page 213\]](#)
- [Technical Configuration \[page 214\]](#)
- [Spatial data * \[page 216\]](#)
- [Series Data * \[page 216\]](#)

On activation in the SAP HANA repository, each entity definition in CDS generates a database table. The name of the generated table is built according to the same rules as for table types, for example,

`Pack1.Pack2::MyModel.MyContext.MyTable`.

i Note

The CDS name is restricted by the limits imposed on the length of the database identifier for the name of the corresponding SAP HANA database artifact (for example, table, view, or type); this is currently limited to 126 characters (including delimiters).

Key Definition

```
type MyStruc2
```

```
{
    field1 : Integer;
    field2 : String(20);
};

entity MyEntity2
{
    key id : Integer;
    name   : String(80);
    key str : MyStruc2;
};
```

Usually an entity must have a key; you use the keyword `key` to mark the respective elements. The key elements become the primary key of the generated SAP HANA table and are automatically flagged as `not null`. Key elements are also used for managed associations. Structured elements can be part of the key, too. In this case, all table fields resulting from the flattening of this structured element are part of the primary key.

Note

To define an entity without a key, use the `@nokey` annotation.

Index Definition

```
@Catalog:
  { tableType : #COLUMN,
    index : [
      { name:'Index1', order:#DESC, unique:true, elementNames:['field1',
'field2'] },
      { name:'Index2', order:#ASC,  unique:false, elementNames:['field1',
'field7'] }
    ]
  }
```

You use the `@Catalog.index` or `@Catalog: { index: [...]}` annotation to define an index for a CDS entity. You can define the following values for the `@Catalog.index` annotation:

- `name : '<IndexName>'`
The name of the index to be generated for the specified entity, for example, `name: 'myIndex'`
- `order`
Create a table index sorted in ascending or descending order. The order keywords `#ASC` and `#DESC` can be only used in the **BTREE** index (for the maintenance of sorted data) and can be specified only once for each index.
 - `order : #ASC`
Creates an index for the CDS entity and sorts the index fields in **ascending** logical order, for example:
1, 2, 3...
 - `order : #DESC`
Creates an index for the CDS entity and sorts the index fields in **descending** logical order, for example:
3, 2, 1...
- `unique`
Creates a unique index for the CDS entity. In a unique index, two rows of data in a table cannot have identical key values.
 - `unique : true`

- Creates a unique index for the CDS entity. The uniqueness is checked and, if necessary, enforced each time a key is added to (or changed in) the index and, in addition, each time a row is added to the table.
- `unique : false`
Creates a non-unique index for the CDS entity. A non-unique index is intended primarily to improve query performance, for example, by maintaining a sorted order of values for data that is queried frequently.
 - `elementNames : ['<name1>', '<name2>']`
The names of the fields to use in the index; the elements are specified for the entity definition, for example,
`elementNames: ['field1', 'field2']`

Table-Type Definition

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
context MyContext1 {
    @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
    entity MyEntity1 {
        key ID : Integer;
        name : String(30);
    };
    @Catalog.tableType : #ROW
    entity MyEntity2 {
        key ID : Integer;
        name : String(30);
    };
    @Catalog.tableType : #GLOBAL_TEMPORARY
    entity MyEntity3 {
        ID : Integer;
        name : String(30);
    };
    @Catalog.tableType : #GLOBAL_TEMPORARY_COLUMN
    entity MyTempEntity {
        a : Integer;
        b : String(20);
    };
}
```

You use the `@Catalog.tableType` or `@Catalog: { tableType: #<TYPE> }` annotation to define the type of CDS entity you want to create, for example: column- or row-based or global temporary. The `@Catalog.tableType` annotation determines the storage engine in which the underlying table is created. The following table lists and explains the permitted values for the `@Catalog.tableType` annotation:

Table 27: Table-Type Syntax Options

Table-Type Option	Description
<code>#COLUMN</code>	<code>@Catalog</code> : Create a column-based table. If the majority of table access is through a large number of tuples, with only a few selected attributes, use COLUMN-based storage for your table type.
<code>#ROW</code>	Create a row-based table. If the majority of table access involves selecting a few records, with all attributes selected, use ROW-based storage for your table type.

Table-Type Option	Description
#GLOBAL_TEMPORARY	Set the scope of the created table. Data in a global temporary table is session-specific; only the owner session of the global temporary table is allowed to insert/read/truncate the data. A global temporary table exists for the duration of the session, and data from the global temporary table is automatically dropped when the session is terminated. Note that a temporary table cannot be changed when the table is in use by an open session, and a global temporary table can only be dropped if the table does not have any records.
#GLOBAL_TEMPORARY_COLUMN	Set the scope of the table column. Global temporary column tables cannot have either a key or an index.

i Note

The SAP HANA database uses a combination of table types to enable storage and interpretation in both ROW and COLUMN forms. If no table type is specified in the CDS entity definition, the default value **#COLUMN** is applied to the table created on activation of the design-time entity definition.

Calculated Fields

The definition of an entity can contain calculated fields, as illustrated in type “z” the following example:

Sample Code

```
entity MyCalcField {
  a : Integer;
  b : Integer;
  c : Integer = a + b;
  s : String(10);
  t : String(10) = upper(s);
  x : Decimal(20,10);
  y : Decimal(20,10);
  z : Decimal(20,10) = power(ln(x)*sin(y), a);
};
```

The calculation expression can contain arbitrary expressions and SQL functions. The following restrictions apply to the expression you include in a calculated field:

- The definition of a calculated field must not contain other calculated fields, associations, aggregations, or subqueries.
- A calculated field cannot be key.
- No index can be defined on a calculated field.
- A calculated field cannot be used as foreign key for a managed association.

In a query, calculated fields can be used like ordinary elements.

i Note

In SAP HANA tables, you can define columns with the additional configuration “GENERATED ALWAYS AS”. These columns are physically present in the table, and all the values are stored. Although these columns behave for the most part like ordinary columns, their value is computed upon insertion rather than specified

in the `INSERT` statement. This is in contrast to calculated field, for which no values are actually stored; the values are computed upon `SELECT`.

technical configuration

The definition of an entity can contain a section called `technical configuration`, which you use to define the elements listed in the following table:

- [Storage type](#)
- [Indexes](#)
- [Full text indexes](#)

i Note

The syntax in the technical configuration section is as close as possible to the corresponding clauses in the SAP HANA SQL `Create Table` statement. Each clause in the technical configuration must end with a semicolon.

Storage type

In the technical configuration for an entity, you can use the `store` keyword to specify the storage type ("row" or "column") for the generated table, as illustrated in the following example. If no store type is specified, a "column" store table is generated by default.

Sample Code

```
entity MyEntity {  
    key id : Integer;  
    a : Integer;  
    b : Integer;  
    t : String(100);  
    s {  
        u : String(100);  
    };  
} technical configuration {  
    row store;  
};
```

⚠ Restriction

It is not possible to use both the `@Catalog.tableType` annotation and the technical configuration (for example, `row store`) at the same time to define the storage type for an entity.

Indexes

In the technical configuration for an entity, you can use the `index` and `unique index` keywords to specify the index type for the generated table. For example: "asc" (ascending) or "desc" (descending) describes the index order, and `unique` specifies that the index is unique, where no two rows of data in the indexed entity can have identical key values.

Sample Code

```
entity MyEntity {  
    key id : Integer;  
    a : Integer;  
    b : Integer;  
    t : String(100);  
    s {  
        u : String(100);  
    };  
} technical configuration {  
    index MyIndex1 on (a, b) asc;  
    unique index MyIndex2 on (c, s) desc;  
};
```

Restriction

It is not possible to use both the `@Catalog.index` annotation **and** the technical configuration (for example, `index`) at the same time to define the index type for an entity.

Full text indexes

In the technical configuration for an entity, you can use the `fulltext index` keyword to specify the full-text index type for the generated table, as illustrated in the following example.

Sample Code

```
entity MyEntity {  
    key id : Integer;  
    a : Integer;  
    b : Integer;  
    t : String(100);  
    s {  
        u : String(100);  
    };  
} technical configuration {  
    row store;  
    index MyIndex1 on (a, b) asc;  
    unique index MyIndex2 on (a, b) asc;  
    fulltext index MYFTI1 on (t)  
        LANGUAGE COLUMN t  
        LANGUAGE DETECTION ('de', 'en')  
        MIME TYPE COLUMN s.u  
        FUZZY SEARCH INDEX off  
        PHRASE INDEX RATIO 0.721  
        SEARCH ONLY off  
        FAST PREPROCESS off  
        TEXT ANALYSIS off;  
    fuzzy search index on (s.u);  
};
```

The `<fulltext_parameter_list>` is identical to the standard SAP HANA SQL syntax for `CREATE FULLTEXT INDEX`. A fuzzy search index in the technical configuration section of an entity definition corresponds to the `@SearchIndex` annotation in XS classic and the statement "FUZZY SEARCH INDEX ON" for a table column in SAP HANA SQL. It is not possible to specify both a full-text index and a fuzzy search index for the same element.

Restriction

It is not possible to use both the `@SearchIndex` annotation **and** the technical configuration (for example, `fulltext index`) at the same time. In addition, the full-text parameters `CONFIGURATION` and `TEXT MINING CONFIGURATION` are not supported.

Spatial Types *

The following example shows how to use the spatial type `ST_POINT` in a CDS entity definition. In the example entity `Person`, each person has a home address and a business address, each of which is accessible via the corresponding associations. In the `Address` entity, the geo-spatial coordinates for each person are stored in element `loc` using the spatial type `ST_POINT`(*).

Sample Code

```
context SpatialData {
    entity Person {
        key id : Integer;
        name : String(100);
        homeAddress : Association[1] to Address;
        officeAddress : Association[1] to Address;
    };
    entity Address {
        key id : Integer;
        street_number : Integer;
        street_name : String(100);
        zip : String(10);
        city : String(100);
        loc : hana.ST_POINT(4326);
    };
    view CommuteDistance as select from Person {
        name,
        homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(officeAddress.loc) as distance
    };
}
```

Series Data *

CDS enables you to create a table to store series data by defining an entity that includes a `series()` clause as an table option and then defining the appropriate paremeters and options.

Note

The `period` for `series` must be unique and should not be affected by any shift in timestamps.

Sample Code

```
context SeriesData {
    entity MySeriesEntity1 {
```

```

key setId : Integer;
t : UTCTimestamp;
value : Decimal(10,4);
series (
    series key (setId)
    period for series (t)
    equidistant increment by interval 0.1 second
);
entity MySeriesEntity2 {
    key setId : Integer;
    t : UTCTimestamp;
    value : Decimal(10,4);
    series (
        series key (setId)
        period for series (t)
        equidistant piecewise
    );
};

```

CDS also supports the creation of a series table called `equidistant piecewise` using Formula-Encoded Timestamps (FET). This enables support for data that is not loaded in an order that ensures good compression. There is no a-priori restriction on the timestamps that are stored, but the data is expected to be well approximated as piecewise linear with some jitter. The timestamps do not have a single slope/offset throughout the table; rather, they can change within and among series in the table.

Restriction

The `equidistant piecewise` specification can only be used in CDS; it cannot be used to create a table with the SQL command `CREATE TABLE`.

When a series table is defined as `equidistant piecewise`, the following restrictions apply:

1. The `period` includes one column (instant); there is no support for interval periods.
2. There is no support for `missing elements`. These could logically be defined if the period includes an interval start and end. Missing elements then occur when we have adjacent rows where the end of the interval **does not** equal the start of the interval.
3. The type of the period column must map to the one of the following types: `DATE`, `SECONDDATE`, or `TIMESTAMP`.

Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the

corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

Related Information

[Create an Entity in CDS \[page 200\]](#)

[CDS Annotations \[page 188\]](#)

[CDS Primitive Data Types \[page 233\]](#)

4.1.4 Migrate an Entity from `hdbtable` to CDS (`hdbdd`)

Migrate a design-time representation of a table from the `.hdbtable` syntax to the CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax while retaining the underlying catalog table and its content.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema for the CDS catalog objects, for example, `MYSCHHEMA`
- The owner of the schema must have `SELECT` privileges in the schema to be able to see the generated catalog objects.
- You must have a design-time definition of the `hdbtable` entity you want to migrate to CDS.

Context

In this procedure you replace a design-time representation of a database table that was defined using the `hdbtable` syntax with a CDS document that describes the same table (entity) with the CDS-compliant `hdbdd` syntax. To migrate an `hdbtable` artifact to CDS, you must delete the inactive version of the `hdbtable` object and create a new `hdbdd` artifact with the same name and structure.

You must define the target CDS entity manually. The name of the entity and the names of the elements can be reused from the `hdbtable` definition. The same applies for the element modifiers, for example, `NULL/NOT NULL`, and the default values.

Note

In CDS, there is no way to reproduce the column-comments defined in an `hdbtable` artifact. You can use source code comments, for example, `'/* */'` or `'//'`, however, the comments do not appear in the catalog table after activation of the new CDS artifact.

Procedure

1. Use CDS syntax to create a duplicate of the table you originally defined using the `hdbtable` syntax.

Note

The new CDS document must have the same name as the original `hdbtable` artifact, for example, `Employee.hdbdd` and `Employee.hdbtable`.

The following code shows a simple table `Employee.hdbtable` that is defined using the `hdbtable` syntax. This is the “source” table for the migration. When you have recreated this table in CDS using the `.hdbdd` syntax, you can delete the artifact `Employee.hdbtable`.

```
table.schemaName = "MYSCHHEMA";
table.tableType = COLUMNSTORE;
table.columns = [
    {name = "firstname"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20;},
    {name = "lastname"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20;
defaultValue = "doe";},
    {name = "age"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},
    {name = "salary"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 7;
scale = 2; }
];
```

The following code shows the same simple table recreated with the CDS-compliant `hdbdd` syntax. The new design-time artifact is called `Employee.hdbdd` and is the “target” for the migration operation. Note that all column names remain the same.

```
namespace sample.cds.tutorial;
@Schema:'MYSCHHEMA'
@Catalog.tableType:#COLUMN
@nokey
entity Employee {
    firstname : String(20) not null;
    lastname : String(20) default 'doe';
    age : Integer not null;
    salary : Decimal(7,2) not null;
};
```

2. Activate the source (`hdbtable`) and target (CDS) artifacts of the migration operation.

To replace the old `hdbtable` artifact with the new `hdbdd` (CDS) artifact, you must activate both artifacts (the deleted `hdbtable` artifact and the new new CDS document) together in a single activation operation, for example, by performing the activation operation on the folder that contains the two objects. If you do not activate both artifacts together in one single activation operation, data stored in the table will be lost since the table is deleted and recreated during the migration process.

➔ Tip

In SAP HANA studio, choose the **Team** **Activate all...** option to list all inactive objects and select the objects you want to activate. In the SAP HANA Web-based Workbench, the default setting is **Activate on save**, however you can change this behavior to **Save only**.

3. Check that the table is in the catalog in the specified schema.

To ensure that the new CDS-defined table is identical to the old (HDBtable-defined) table, check the contents of the table in the catalog.

Related Information

[Migration Guidelines: hdbtable to CDS Entity \[page 220\]](#)

[SAP HANA to CDS Data-Type Mapping \[page 221\]](#)

4.1.4.1 Migration Guidelines: hdbtable to CDS Entity

Replace an existing `hdbtable` definition with the equivalent CDS document.

It is possible to migrate your SAP HANA `hdbtable` definition to a Core Data Services (CDS) entity that has equally named but differently typed elements. When recreating the new CDS document, you cannot choose an arbitrary data type; you must follow the guidelines for valid data-type mappings in the SAP HANA SQL data-type conversion documentation. Since the SAP HANA SQL documentation does not cover CDS data types you must map the target type names to CDS types manually.

i Note

Remember that most of the data-type conversions depend on the data that is present in the catalog table on the target system.

If you are planning to migrate SAP HANA (`hdbtable`) tables to CDS entities, bear in mind the following important points:

- CDS document structure

The new entity (that replaces the old `hdbtable` definition) must be defined at the top-level of the new CDS document; it cannot be defined deeper in the CDS document, for example, nested inside a CDS context. If the table (entity) is not defined as the top-level element in the CDS document, the resulting catalog name of the entity (on activation) will not match the name of the runtime table that should be taken over by the new CDS object. Instead, the name of the new table would also include the name of the CDS context in which it was defined, which could lead to unintended consequences after the migration. If the top-level element of the target CDS entity is not an entity (for example, a context or a type), the activation of the CDS document creates the specified artifact (a context or a type) and does not take over the catalog table defined by the source (`hdbtable`) definition.

- Structural compatibility

The new CDS document (defined in the `hbdd` artifact) must be structurally compatible with the table definition in the old `hdbtable` artifact (that is, with the runtime table).

- Data types
All elements of the new CDS entity that have equally named counterparts in the old `hdbtable` definition must be convertible with respect to their data type. The implicit conversion rules described in the SAP HANA SQL documentation apply.
- Elements/Columns
Elements/columns that exist in the runtime table but are **not** defined in the CDS entity will be dropped.
Elements/columns that do **not** exist in the runtime table but are defined in the CDS entity are added to the runtime table.

Related Information

[SAP HANA to CDS Data-Type Mapping \[page 221\]](#)

[SAP HANA SQL Data Type Conversion](#)

4.1.4.2 SAP HANA to CDS Data-Type Mapping

Mapping table for SAP HANA (`hdbtable`) and Core Data Services (CDS) types.

Although CDS defines its own system of data types, the list of types is roughly equivalent to the data types available in SAP HANA (`hdbtable`); the difference between CDS data types and SAP HANA data types is mostly in the type names. The following table lists the SAP HANA (`hdbtable`) data types and indicates what the equivalent type is in CDS.

Table 28: Mapping SAP HANA and CDS Types

SAP HANA Type (<code>hdbtable</code>)	CDS Type (<code>hdbdd</code>)
NVARCHAR	String
SHORTTEXT	String
NCLOB	LargeString
TEXT	LargeString
VARBINARY	Binary
BLOB	LargeBinary
INTEGER	Integer
INT	Integer
BIGINT	Integer64
DECIMAL(p,s)	Decimal(p,s)
DECIMAL	DecimalFloat
DOUBLE	BinaryFloat
DAYDATE	LocalDate

SAP HANA Type (hdbtable)	CDS Type (hdbdd)
DATE	LocalDate
SECONDTIME	LocalTime
TIME	LocalTime
SECONDDATE	UTCDateTime
LONGDATE	UTCTimestamp
TIMESTAMP	UTCTimestamp
ALPHANUM	hana.ALPHANUM
SMALLINT	hana.SMALLINT
TINYINT	hana.TINYINT
SMALLDECIMAL	hana.SMALLDECIMAL
REAL	hana.REAL
VARCHAR	hana.VARCHAR
CLOB	hana.CLOB
BINARY	hana.BINARY
ST_POINT	hana.ST_POINT
ST_GeOMETRY	hana.ST_GeOMETRY

Related Information

[Migrate an Entity from hdbtable to CDS \(hdbdd\) \[page 218\]](#)

[CDS Entity Syntax Options \[page 209\]](#)

[SAP HANA SQL Data Type Conversion](#)

4.1.5 Create a User-Defined Structured Type in CDS

A structured type is a data type comprising a list of attributes, each of which has its own data type. You create a user-defined structured type as a design-time file in the SAP HANA repository.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.

- You must have created a schema for the CDS catalog objects, for example, MYSCHHEMA
- The owner of the schema must have SELECT privileges in the schema to be able to see the generated catalog objects.

Context

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use the CDS syntax to create a user-defined structured type as a design-time file in the repository. Repository files are transportable. Activating the CDS document creates the corresponding types in the specified schema. To create a CDS document that defines one or more structured types and save the document in the repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the CDS definition file for the user-defined structured type.
Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the CDS definition file for the new user-defined structured type and perform the following steps:
 - a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the definition file for the user-defined structured type and choose ► *New* ► *Other...* ► *Database Development* ► *DDL Source File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
 - b. Enter the name of the user-defined structured type in the *File Name* box, for example, `MyStructuredType`.

→ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically (for example, `MyCDSFile.hdbdd`) and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- c. Choose *Finish* to save the changes and commit the new the user-defined structured type in the repository.
5. Define the user-defined structured type in CDS.
If the new user-defined structured type is not automatically displayed by the file-creation wizard, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the user-defined structured type you created in the previous step, for example, `MyStructuredType.hdbdd`, and add the definition code for the user-defined structured type to the file:

Note

The following code example is provided for illustration purposes only. If the schema you specify does not exist, you cannot activate the new CDS document and the structured types are not created.

```
namespace Package1.Package2;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
type MyStructuredType
{
    aNumber : Integer;
    someText : String(80);
    otherText : String(80);
};
```

6. Save the definition file for the CDS user-defined structured type.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. You do not need to explicitly commit the file again.

7. Activate the changes in the repository.

- a. Locate and right-click the new CDS definition file in the *Project Explorer* view.
- b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose  *Activate*.

If you cannot activate the new CDS artifact, check that the specified schema already exists and that there are no illegal characters in the name space, for example, the hyphen (-).

On activation, the data types appear in the *Systems* view of the *SAP HANA Development* perspective under  *Catalog* > *SchemaName* > *Procedures* > *Table Types*.

8. Ensure access to the schema where the new CDS catalog objects are created.

After activation in the repository, a schema object is only visible in the catalog to the _SYS_REPO user. To enable other users, for example the schema owner, to view the newly created schema and the objects it contains, you must grant the user the required SELECT privilege for the schema object.

Note

If you already have the appropriate SELECT privilege, you do not need to perform this step.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio *Systems* view, right-click the SAP HANA system hosting the repository where the schema was activated and choose *SQL Console* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. In the *SQL console*, execute the statement illustrated in the following example, where *<SCHEMANAME>* is the name of the newly activated schema, and *<username>* is the database user ID of the schema owner:

```
call
    _SYS_REPO.GRANT_SCHEMA_PRIVILEGE_ON_ACTIVATED_CONTENT('select', '<SCHEMANAME>',
    '<username>');
```

Related Information

[CDS User-Defined Data Types \[page 225\]](#)

[CDS Structured Type Definition \[page 228\]](#)

[CDS Structured Types \[page 231\]](#)

4.1.5.1 CDS User-Defined Data Types

User-defined data types reference existing structured types (for example, user-defined) or the individual types (for example, field, type, or context) used in another data-type definition.

You can use the `type` keyword to define a new data type in CDS-compliant DDL syntax. You can define the data type in the following ways:

- Using allowed structured types (for example, user-defined)
- Referencing another data type

In the following example, the element definition `field2 : MyType1;` specifies a new element `field2` that is based on the specification in the user-defined data type `MyType1`.

i Note

If you are using a CDS document to define a single CDS-compliant user-defined data type, the name of the CDS document must match the name of the top-level data type defined in the CDS document, for example, with the `type` keyword.

In the following example, you must save the data-type definition “`MyType1`” in the CDS document `MyType1.hdbdd`. In addition, the name space declared in a CDS document must match the repository package in which the object the document defines is located.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA' // user-defined structured data types
type MyType1 {
    field1 : Integer;
    field2 : String(40);
    field3 : Decimal(22,11);
    field4 : Binary(11);
};
```

In the following example, you must save the data-type definition “`MyType2`” in the CDS document `MyType2.hdbdd`; the document contains a using directive pointing to the data-type “`MyType1`” defined in CDS document `MyType1.hdbdd`.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
using com.acme.myapp1::MyType1;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA' // user-defined structured data types
type MyType2 {
    field1 : String(50);
    field2 : MyType1;
};
```

In the following example, you must save the data-type definition “MyType3” in the CDS document MyType3.hdbdd; the document contains a using directive pointing to the data-type “MyType2” defined in CDS document MyType2.hdbdd.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
using com.acme.myapp1::MyType2;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA' // user-defined structured data types
type MyType3 {
    field1 : UTCTimestamp;
    field2 : MyType2;
};
```

The following code example shows how to use the `type of` keyword to define an element using the definition specified in another user-defined data-type field. For example, `field4 : type of field3;` indicates that, like `field3`, `field4` is a `LocalDate` data type.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
using com.acme.myapp1::MyType1;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA' // Simple user-defined data types
entity MyEntity1 {
    key id : Integer;
    field1 : MyType3;
    field2 : String(24);
    field3 : LocalDate;
    field4 : type of field3;
    field5 : type of MyType1.field2;
    field6 : type of InnerCtx.CtxType.b; // context reference
};
```

You can use the `type of` keyword in the following ways:

- Define a new element (`field4`) using the definition specified in another user-defined element `field3`:
`field4 : type of field3;`
- Define a new element `field5` using the definition specified in a **field** (`field2`) that belongs to another user-defined data type (`MyType1`):
`field5 : type of MyType1.field2;`
- Define a new element (`field6`) using an existing field (`b`) that belongs to a data type (`CtxType`) in another **context** (`InnerCtx`):
`field6 : type of InnerCtx.CtxType.b;`

The following code example shows you how to define nested contexts (`MyContext.InnerCtx`) and refer to data types defined by a user in the specified context.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
context MyContext {
// Nested contexts
    context InnerCtx {

        Entity MyEntity {
            ...
        };
        Type CtxType {
            a : Integer;
            b : String(59);
        };
    };
    type MyType1 {
        field1 : Integer;
        field2 : String(40);
```

```

        field3 : Decimal(22,11);
        field4 : Binary(11);
    };
    type MyType2 {
        field1 : String(50);
        field2 : MyType1;
    };
    type MyType3 {
        field1 : UTCTimestamp;
        field2 : MyType2;
    };
    @Catalog.index : [{ name : 'IndexA', order : #ASC, unique: true,
                        elementNames : ['field1'] }];
entity MyEntity1 {
    key id : Integer;
    field1 : MyType3 not null;
    field2 : String(24);
    field3 : LocalDate;
    field4 : type of field3;
    field5 : type of MyType1.field2;
    field6 : type of InnerCtx.CtxType.b; // refers to nested context
    field7 : InnerCtx.CtxType;           // more context references
};

```

Restrictions

CDS name resolution does not distinguish between CDS elements and CDS types. If you define a CDS element based on a CDS data type that has the same name as the new CDS element, CDS displays an error message and the activation of the CDS document fails.

Caution

In an CDS document, you cannot define a CDS element using a CDS type of the same name; you must specify the **context** where the target type is defined, for example, `MyContext.doobidoo`.

The following example defines an association between a CDS element and a CDS data type both of which are named `doobidoo`. The result is an error when resolving the names in the CDS document; CDS expects a type named `doobidoo` but finds an CDS entity element with the same name that is **not** a type.

```

context MyContext2 {
    type doobidoo : Integer;
    entity MyEntity {
        key id : Integer;
        doobidoo : doobidoo; // error: type expected; doobidoo is not a type
    };
}

```

The following example works, since the explicit reference to the context where the type definition is located (`MyContext.doobidoo`) enables CDS to resolve the definition target.

```

context MyContext {
    type doobidoo : Integer;
    entity MyEntity {
        key id : Integer;
        doobidoo : MyContext.doobidoo; // OK
    };
}

```

```
};
```

Note

To prevent name clashes between artifacts that **are** types and those that **have** a type assigned to them, make sure you keep to strict naming conventions. For example, use an **uppercase** first letter for `MyEntity`, `MyView` and `MyType`; use a lowercase first letter for elements `myElement`.

Related Information

[Create a User-Defined Structured Type in CDS \[page 222\]](#)

[CDS Structured Type Definition \[page 228\]](#)

[CDS Primitive Data Types \[page 233\]](#)

4.1.5.2 CDS Structured Type Definition

A structured type is a data type comprising a list of attributes, each of which has its own data type. The attributes of the structured type can be defined manually in the structured type itself and reused either by another structured type or an entity.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database structured type as a design-time file in the repository. All repository files including your structured-type definition can be transported to other SAP HANA systems, for example, in a delivery unit. You can define the structured type using CDS-compliant DDL.

Note

A delivery unit is the medium SAP HANA provides to enable you to assemble all your application-related repository artifacts together into an archive that can be easily exported to other systems.

When a CDS document is activated, the activation process generates a corresponding catalog object for each of the artifacts defined in the document; the location in the catalog is determined by the type of object generated. For example, the corresponding table type for a CDS type definition is generated in the following catalog location:

► `<SID>` ► `Catalog` ► `<MYSHEMA>` ► `Procedures` ► `Table Types` ▶

Structured User-Defined Types

In a structured user-defined type, you can define original types (`aNumber` in the following example) or reference existing types defined elsewhere in the same type definition or another, separate type definition (`MyString80`). If you define multiple types in a single CDS document, for example, in a parent context, each structure-type definition must be separated by a semi-colon (:).

The type `MyString80` is defined in the following CDS document:

```
namespace Package1.Package2;
@Schema: 'MySchema'
type MyString80: String(80);
```

A `using` directive is required to resolve the reference to the data type specified in `otherText` : `MyString80`; , as illustrated in the following example:

```
namespace Package1.Package2;
using Package1.Package2::MyString80; //contains definition of MyString80
@Schema: 'MySchema'
type MyStruct
{
    aNumber      : Integer;
    someText     : String(80);
    otherText   : MyString80; // defined in a separate type
};
```

Note

If you are using a CDS document to specify a single CDS-compliant data type, the name of the CDS document (`MyStruct.hdbdd`) must match the name of the top-level data type defined in the CDS document, for example, with the `type` keyword.

Nested Structured Types

Since user-defined types can make use of other user-defined types, you can build nested structured types, as illustrated in the following example:

```
namespace Package1.Package2;
using Package1.Package2::MyString80;
using Package1.Package2::MyStruct;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
context NestedStructs {
    type MyNestedStruct
    {
        name : MyString80;
        nested : MyStruct; // defined in a separate type
    };
    type MyDeepNestedStruct
    {
        text : LargeString;
        nested : MyNestedStruct;
    };
    type MyOtherInt      : type of MyStruct.aNumber; // => Integer
    type MyOtherStruct   : type of MyDeepNestedStruct.nested.nested; // => MyStruct
};
```

You can also define a type based on an existing type that is already defined in another user-defined structured type, for example, by using the `type of` keyword, as illustrated in the following example:

```
type MyOtherInt      : type of MyStruct.aNumber; // => Integer
type MyOtherStruct   : type of MyDeepNestedStruct.nested.nested; // => MyStruct
```

Generated Table Types

For each structured type, a SAP HANA table type is generated, whose name is built by concatenating the following elements of the CDS document containing the structured-type definition and separating the elements by a dot delimiter (.):

- the name space (for example, Pack1.Pack2)
- the names of all artifacts that enclose the type (for example, MyModel)
- the name of the type itself (for example, MyNestedStruct)

```
create type "Pack1.Pack2::MyModel.MyNestedStruct" as table (
    name          nvarchar(80),
    nested.aNumber integer,
    nested.someText nvarchar(80),
    nested.otherText nvarchar(80)
);
```

The new SAP HANA table types are generated in the schema that is specified in the schema annotation of the respective top-level artifact in the CDS document containing the structured types.

i Note

To view the newly created objects, you must have the required SELECT privilege for the schema object in which the objects are generated.

The columns of the table type are built by flattening the elements of the type. Elements with structured types are mapped to one column per nested element, with the column names built by concatenating the element names and separating the names by dots ".".

➔ Tip

If you want to use the structured types inside a CDS document without generating table types in the catalog, use the annotation `@GenerateTableType : false`.

Table types are only generated for direct structure definitions; in the following example, this would include: `MyStruct`, `MyNestedStruct`, and `MyDeepNestedStruct`. No table types are generated for **derived** types that are based on structured types; in the following example, the derived types include: `MyS`, `MyOtherInt`, `MyOtherStruct`.

Example

```
namespace Pack1."pack-age2";
@Schema: 'MySchema'
context MyModel
{
    type MyInteger : Integer;
    type MyString80 : String(80);
    type MyDecimal : Decimal(10,2);
    type MyStruct
    {
        aNumber : Integer;
        someText : String(80);
        otherText : MyString80; // defined in example above
    };
    type MyS           : MyStruct;
    type MyOtherInt   : type of MyStruct.aNumber;
```

```

type MyOtherStruct : type of MyDeepNestedStruct.nested.nested;
type MyNestedStruct
{
  name    : MyString80;
  nested  : MyS;
};
type MyDeepNestedStruct
{
  text    : LargeString;
  nested  : MyNestedStruct;
};
;

```

Related Information

[Create a User-Defined Structured Type in CDS \[page 222\]](#)

[CDS User-Defined Data Types \[page 225\]](#)

[CDS Structured Types \[page 231\]](#)

[CDS Primitive Data Types \[page 233\]](#)

4.1.5.3 CDS Structured Types

A structured type is a data type comprising a list of attributes, each of which has its own data type. The attributes of the structured type can be defined manually in the structured type itself and reused either by another structured type or an entity.

Example

```

namespace examples;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
context StructuredTypes {
  type MyOtherInt : type of MyStruct.aNumber; // => Integer
  type MyOtherStruct : type of MyDeepNestedStruct.nested.nested; // =>
MyStruct
  @GenerateTableType: false
  type EmptyStruct { };
  type MyStruct
  {
    aNumber : Integer;
    aText : String(80);
    anotherText : MyString80; // defined in a separate type
  };
  entity E {
    a : Integer;
    s : EmptyStruct;
  };
  type MyString80 : String(80);
  type MyS : MyStruct;
  type MyNestedStruct
  {
    name : MyString80;
    nested : MyS;
  };
  type MyDeepNestedStruct

```

```
    {
        text : LargeString;
        nested : MyNestedStruct;
    };
};
```

type

In a structured user-defined type, you can define original types (`aNumber` in the following example) or reference existing types defined elsewhere in the same type definition or another, separate type definition, for example, `MyString80` in the following code snippet. If you define multiple types in a single CDS document, each structure definition must be separated by a semi-colon (`;`).

```
type MyStruct
{
    aNumber      : Integer;
    aText        : String(80);
    anotherText  : MyString80; // defined in a separate type
};
```

You can define structured types that do not contain any elements, for example, using the keywords `type EmptyStruct { };`. In the example, below the generated table for entity "E" contains only one column: "a".

Tip

It is not possible to generate an SAP HANA table type for an empty structured type. This means you must disable the generation of the table type in the Repository, for example, with the `@GenerateTableType` annotation.

```
@GenerateTableType : false
type EmptyStruct { };
entity E {
    a : Integer;
    s : EmptyStruct;
};
```

type of

You can define a type based on an existing type that is already defined in another user-defined structured type, for example, by using the `type of` keyword, as illustrated in the following example:

```
Context StructuredTypes
{
    type MyOtherInt      : type of MyStruct.aNumber;           // => Integer
    type MyOtherStruct   : type of MyDeepNestedStruct.nested.nested; // => MyStruct
};
```

Related Information

[Create a User-Defined Structured Type in CDS \[page 222\]](#)

[CDS Primitive Data Types \[page 233\]](#)

[CDS User-Defined Data Types \[page 225\]](#)

[CDS Structured Type Definition \[page 228\]](#)

4.1.5.4 CDS Primitive Data Types

In the Data Definition Language (DDL), primitive (or core) data types are the basic building blocks that you use to define *entities* or *structure types* with DDL.

When you are specifying a design-time table (entity) or a view definition using the CDS syntax, you use data types such as *String*, *Binary*, or *Integer* to specify the type of content in the entity columns. CDS supports the use of the following primitive data types:

- [DDL data types \[page 233\]](#)
- [Native SAP HANA data types \[page 235\]](#)

The following table lists all currently supported simple DDL primitive data types. Additional information provided in this table includes the SQL syntax required as well as the equivalent SQL and EDM names for the listed types.

Table 29: Supported SAP HANA DDL Primitive Types

Name	Description	SQL Literal Syntax	SQL Name	EDM Name
String (n)	Variable-length Unicode string with a specified maximum length of n=1-1333 characters (5000 for SAP HANA specific objects). Default = maximum length. String length (n) is mandatory.	'text with "quote"'	NVARCHAR	String
LargeString	Variable length string of up to 2 GB (no comparison)	'text with "quote"'	NCLOB	String
Binary(n)	Variable length byte string with user-defined length limit of up to 4000 bytes. Binary length (n) is mandatory.	x'01Cafe', X'01Cafe'	VARBINARY	Binary
LargeBinary	Variable length byte string of up to 2 GB (no comparison)	x'01Cafe', X'01Cafe'	BLOB	Binary
Integer	Respective container's standard signed integer. Signed 32 bit integers in 2's complement, -2**31 .. 2**31-1. Default=NULL	13, -1234567	INTEGER	Int64
Integer64	Signed 64-bit integer with a value range of -2^63 to 2^63-1. Default=NULL.	13, -1234567	BIGINT	Int64

Name	Description	SQL Literal Syntax	SQL Name	EDM Name
Decimal(p, s)	Decimal number with fixed precision (p) in range of 1 to 34 and fixed scale (s) in range of 0 to p. Values for precision and scale are mandatory.	12.345, -9.876	DECIMAL(p, s)	Decimal
DecimalFloat	Decimal floating-point number (IEEE 754-2008) with 34 mantissa digits; range is roughly ±1e-6143 through ±9.99e+6144	12.345, -9.876	DECIMAL	Decimal
BinaryFloat	Binary floating-point number (IEEE 754), 8 bytes (roughly 16 decimal digits precision); range is roughly ±2.2207e-308 through ±1.7977e+308	1.2, -3.4, 5.6e+7	DOUBLE	Double
LocalDate	Local date with values ranging from 0001-01-01 through 9999-12-31	date'1234-12-31'	DATE	DateTimeOffset Combines date and time; with time zone must be converted to offset
LocalTime	Time values (with seconds precision) and values ranging from 00:00:00 through 24:00:00	time'23:59:59', time'12:15'	TIME	Time For duration/ period of time (==xsd:duration). Use DateTimeOffset if there is a date, too.
UTCDateTime	UTC date and time (with seconds precision) and values ranging from 0001-01-01 00:00:00 through 9999-12-31 23:59:59	timestamp'2011-12-31 23:59:59'	SECONDDATE	DateTimeOffset Values ending with "Z" for UTC. Values before 1753-01-01T00:00:00 are not supported; transmitted as NULL.
UTCTimestamp	UTC date and time (with a precision of 0.1 microseconds) and values ranging from 0001-01-01 00:00:00 through 9999-12-31 23:59:59.9999999, and a special initial value	timestamp'2011-12-31 23:59:59.7654321'	TIMESTAMP	DateTimeOffset With Precision = "7"

Name	Description	SQL Literal Syntax	SQL Name	EDM Name
Boolean	Represents the concept of binary-valued logic	true, false, unknown (null)	BOOLEAN	Boolean

The following table lists all the **native** SAP HANA primitive data types that CDS supports. The information provided in this table also includes the SQL syntax required (where appropriate) as well as the equivalent SQL and EDM names for the listed types.

i Note

* In CDS, the name of SAP HANA data types are prefixed with the word “hana”, for example, hana.ALPHANUM, or hana.SMALLINT, or hana.TINYINT.

Table 30: Supported Native SAP HANA Data Types

Data Type *	Description	SQL Literal Syntax	SQL Name	EDM Name
ALPHANUM	Variable-length character string with special comparison	-	ALPHANUMERIC	-
SMALLINT	Signed 16-bit integer	-32768, 32767	SMALLINT	Int16
TINYINT	Unsigned 8-bit integer	0, 255	TINYINT	Byte
REAL	32-bit binary floating-point number	-	REAL	Single
SMALLDECIMAL	64-bit decimal floating-point number	-	SMALLDECIMAL	Decimal
VARCHAR	Variable-length ASCII character string with user-definable length limit n	-	VARCHAR	String
CLOB	Large variable-length ASCII character string, no comparison	-	CLOB	String
BINARY	Byte string of fixed length n	-	BINARY	Blob
ST_POINT	0-dimensional geometry representing a single location	-	-	-
ST_GEOGRAPHY	Maximal supertype of the geometry type hierarchy; includes ST_POINT	-	-	-

The following example shows the **native** SAP HANA data types that CDS supports; the code example also illustrates the mandatory syntax.

Note

Support for the geo-spatial types ST_POINT and ST_GEOMETRY is limited: these types can only be used for the definition of elements in types and entities. It is not possible to define a CDS view that selects an element based on a geo-spatial type from a CDS entity.

```
@nokey
entity SomeTypes {
    a : hana.ALPHANUM(10);
    b : hana.SMALLINT;
    c : hana.TINYINT;
    d : hana.SMALLDECIMAL;
    e : hana.REAL;
    h : hana.VARCHAR(10);
    i : hana.CLOB;
    j : hana.BINARY(10);
    k : hana.ST_POINT;
    l : hana.ST_GEOMETRY;
};
```

Related Information

[Create a User-Defined Structures Type in CDS \[page 222\]](#)

4.1.6 Create an Association in CDS

Associations define relationships between entities. You create associations in a CDS entity definition, which is a design-time file in the SAP HANA repository.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema for the CDS catalog objects, for example, MYSCHHEMA
- The owner of the schema must have SELECT privileges in the schema to be able to see the generated catalog objects.

Context

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use the CDS syntax to create associations between entities. The associations are defined as part of the entity definition, which are design-time files in the repository. Repository files are transportable. Activating the CDS entity creates the corresponding catalog objects in the specified schema. To create an association between CDS entities, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the CDS entity-definition file which will contain the associations you define.
Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new CDS entity-definition file and perform the following steps:
 - a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the entity-definition file and choose ► *New* ► *Other...* ► *Database Development* ► *DDL Source File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
 - b. Enter the name of the CDS document in the *File Name* box, for example, *MyModel11*.

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically (for example, *MyEntity1.hdbdd*) and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- c. Choose *Finish* to save the changes and commit the new CDS file in the repository.
5. Define the underlying CDS entities and structured types.

If the new CDS file is not automatically displayed by the file-creation wizard, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the CDS file you created in the previous step, for example, *MyModel11.hdbdd*, and add the code for the entity definitions and structured types to the file:

Note

The following code example is provided for illustration purposes only. If the schema you specify does not exist, you cannot activate the new CDS entity.

```
context MyEntity1 {
    type StreetAddress {
        name : String(80);
        number : Integer;
    };
    type CountryAddress {
        name : String(80);
        code : String(3);
    };
    entity Address {
```

```

        key id : Integer;
        street : StreetAddress;
        zipCode : Integer;
        city : String(80);
        country : CountryAddress;
        type : String(10); // home, office
    };
};


```

- Define a one-to-one association between CDS entities.

In the same entity-definition file you edited in the previous step, for example, `MyEntity.hdbdd`, add the code for the one-to-one association between the entity `Person` and the entity `Address`:

Note

This example does not specify cardinality or foreign keys, so the cardinality is set to the default 0..1, and the target entity's primary key (the element `id`) is used as foreign key.

```

entity Person
{
    key id : Integer;
    address1 : Association to Address;
    addressId : Integer;
};

```

- Define an unmanaged association with cardinality one-to-many between CDS entities.

In the same entity-definition file you edited in the previous step, for example, `MyEntity.hdbdd`, add the code for the one-to-many association between the entity `Address` and the entity `Person`. The code should look something like the following example:

```

entity Address {
    key id : Integer;
    street : StreetAddress;
    zipCode : Integer;
    city : String(80);
    country : CountryAddress;
    type : String(10); // home, office
    inhabitants : Association[*] to Person on inhabitants.addressId = id;
};

```

- Save the CDS entity-definition file containing the new associations.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose   from the context-sensitive popup menu.

- Activate the changes in the repository.

- Locate and right-click the new CDS entity-definition file in the `Project Explorer` view.
- In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose  .

Note

If you cannot activate the new CDS artifact, check that the specified schema already exists and that there are no illegal characters in the name space, for example, the hyphen (-).

Related Information

[CDS Associations \[page 239\]](#)

[CDS Association Syntax Options \[page 245\]](#)

4.1.6.1 CDS Associations

Associations define relationships between entities.

Associations are specified by adding an element to a source entity with an association **type** that points to a target entity, complemented by optional information defining cardinality and which keys to use.

i Note

CDS supports both managed and unmanaged associations.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use associations in CDS entities or CDS views. The syntax for **simple** associations in a CDS document is illustrated in the following example:

```
namespace samples;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'           // XS classic *only*
context SimpleAssociations {
    type StreetAddress {
        name : String(80);
        number : Integer;
    };
    type CountryAddress {
        name : String(80);
        code : String(3);
    };
    entity Address {
        key id : Integer;
        street : StreetAddress;
        zipCode : Integer;
        city : String(80);
        country : CountryAddress;
        type : String(10); // home, office
    };
    entity Person
    {
        key id : Integer;
        // address1,2,3 are to-one associations
        address1 : Association to Address;
        address2 : Association to Address { id };
        address3 : Association[1] to Address { zipCode, street, country };
        // address4,5,6 are to-many associations
        address4 : Association[0..*] to Address { zipCode };
        address5 : Association[*] to Address { street.name };
        address6 : Association[*] to Address { street.name AS streetName,
                                                country.name AS countryName };
    };
}
```

Cardinality in Associations

When using an association to define a relationship between entities in a CDS document, you use the **cardinality** to specify the type of relation, for example, one-to-one (to-one) or one-to-many (to-n); the relationship is with respect to both the source and the target of the association.

The target cardinality is stated in the form of [min .. max], where max=* denotes infinity. If no cardinality is specified, the default cardinality setting [0..1] is assumed. It is possible to specify the maximum cardinality of the source of the association in the form [maxs, min .. max], too, where maxs = * denotes infinity.

Tip

The information concerning the maximum cardinality is only used as a hint for optimizing the execution of the resulting JOIN.

The following examples illustrate how to express cardinality in an association definition:

```
namespace samples;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'           // XS classic *only*
context AssociationCardinality {
    entity Associations {
        // To-one associations
        assoc1 : Association[0..1]      to target; // has no or one target instance
        assoc2 : Association           to target; // as assoc1, uses the default
[min is 0]
        assoc3 : Association[1]        to target; // as assoc1; the default for
instance
        assoc4 : Association[1..1]      to target; // association has one target
        // To-many associations
        assoc5 : Association[0..*]     to target{id1};
        assoc6 : Association[]         to target{id1}; // as assoc4, [] is short
[for 0..*]
        assoc7 : Association[2..7]     to target{id1}; // any numbers are
possible; user provides
        assoc8 : Association[1, 0..*]   to target{id1}; // additional info. about
source cardinality
    };
    // Required to make the example above work
    entity target {
        key id1 : Integer;
        key id2 : Integer;
    };
}
```

Target Entities in Associations

You use the `to` keyword in a CDS view definition to specify the target entity in an association, for example, the name of an entity defined in a CDS document. A qualified entity name is expected that refers to an existing entity. A target entity specification is mandatory; a default value is **not** assumed if no target entity is specified in an association relationship.

The entity `Address` specified as the target entity of an association could be expressed in any of the ways illustrated the following examples:

```
address1 : Association to Address;
address2 : Association to Address { id };
address3 : Association[1] to Address { zipCode, street, country };
```

Filter Conditions and Prefix Notation

When following an association (for example, in a view), it is now possible to apply a filter condition; the filter is merged into the `ON`-condition of the resulting `JOIN`. The following example shows how to get a list of customers and then filter the list according to the sales orders that are currently “open” for each customer. In the example, the infix filter is inserted after the association orders to get only those orders that satisfy the condition `[status='open']`.

Sample Code

```
view C1 as select from Customer {
    name,
    orders[status='open'].id as orderId
};
```

The association `orders` is defined in the entity definition illustrated in the following code example:

Sample Code

```
entity Customer {
    key id : Integer;
    orders : Association[*] to SalesOrder on orders.cust_id = id;
    name : String(80);
};

entity SalesOrder {
    key id : Integer;
    cust_id : Integer;
    customer: Association[1] to Customer on customer.id = cust_id;
    items : Association[*] to Item on items.order_id = id;
    status: String(20);
    date : LocalDate;
};

entity Item {
    key id : Integer;
    order_id : Integer;
    salesOrder : Association[1] to SalesOrder on salesOrder.id = order_id;
    descr : String(100);
    price : Decimal(8,2);
};
```

Tip

For more information about filter conditions and prefixes in CDS views, see *CDS Views and CDS View Syntax Options*.

Foreign Keys in Associations

For **managed** associations, the relationship between source and target entity is defined by specifying a set of elements of the target entity that are used as a foreign key. If no foreign keys are specified explicitly, the elements of the target entity's designated primary key are used. Elements of the target entity that reside inside substructures can be addressed via the respective path. If the chosen elements do not form a unique key of the target entity, the association has cardinality to-many. The following examples show how to express foreign keys in an association.

```
namespace samples;
using samples::SimpleAssociations.StreetAddress;
using samples::SimpleAssociations.CountryAddress;
using samples::SimpleAssociations.Address;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'           // XS classic *only*
context ForeignKeys {
    entity Person {
        key id : Integer;
        // address1,2,3 are to-one associations
        address1 : Association to Address;
        address2 : Association to Address { id };
        address3 : Association[1] to Address { zipCode, street, country };
        // address4,5,6 are to-many associations
        address4 : Association[0..*] to Address { zipCode };
        address5 : Association[*] to Address { street.name };
        address6 : Association[*] to Address { street.name AS streetName,
                                                country.name AS countryName };
    };
    entity Header {
        key id : Integer;
        toItems : Association[*] to Item on toItems.head.id = id;
    };
    entity Item {
        key id : Integer;
        head : Association[1] to Header { id };
        // <...>
    };
}
```

- **address1**
No foreign keys are specified: the target entity's primary key (the element `id`) is used as foreign key.
- **address2**
Explicitly specifies the foreign key (the element `id`); this definition is similar to `address1`.
- **address3**
The foreign key elements to be used for the association are explicitly specified, namely: `zipcode` and the structured elements `street` and `country`.
- **address4**
Uses only `zipcode` as the foreign key. Since `zipcode` is not a unique key for entity `Address`, this association has cardinality "to-many".
- **address5**
Uses the subelement `name` of the structured element `street` as a foreign key. This is not a unique key and, as a result, `address4` has cardinality "to-many".
- **address6**
Uses the subelement `name` of both the structured elements `street` and `country` as foreign key fields. The names of the foreign key fields must be unique, so an alias is required here. The foreign key is not unique, so `address6` is a "to-many" association.

You can use foreign keys of managed associations in the definition of other associations. In the following example, the appearance of association head in the ON condition is allowed; the compiler recognizes that the field head.id is actually part of the entity Item and, as a result, can be obtained without following the association head.

Sample Code

```
entity Header {
    key id : Integer;
    toItems : Association[*] to Item on toItems.head.id = id;
};

entity Item {
    key id : Integer;
    head : Association[1] to Header { id };
    ...
};
```

Restrictions

CDS name resolution does not distinguish between CDS associations and CDS entities. If you define a CDS association with a CDS entity that has the same name as the new CDS association, CDS displays an error message and the activation of the CDS document fails.

Caution

In an CDS document, to define an association with a CDS entity of the same name, you must specify the **context** where the target entity is defined, for example, MyContext.Address3.

The following code shows some examples of associations with a CDS entity that has the same (or a similar) name. Case sensitivity ("a", "A") is important; in CDS documents, address is not the same as Address. In the case of Address2, where the association name and the entity name are identical, the result is an error; when resolving the element names, CDS expects an entity named Address2 but finds a CDS association with the same name instead. MyContext.Address3 is allowed, since the target entity can be resolved due to the absolute path to its location in the CDS document.

```
context MyContext {
    entity Address {...}
    entity Address1 {...}
    entity Address2 {...}
    entity Address3 {...}
    entity Person
    {
        key id : Integer;
        address : Association to Address;           // OK: "address" ≠ "Address"
        address1 : Association to Address1;          // OK: "address1" ≠ "Address1"
        Address2 : Association to Address2;          // Error: association name =
    entity name
        Address3 : Association to MyContext.Address3; //OK: full path to Address3
    };
};
```

 Example**Complex (One-to-Many) Association**

The following example shows a more complex association (to-many) between the entity "Header" and the entity "Item".

```
namespace samples;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'          // XS classic *only*
context ComplexAssociation {
    Entity Header {
        key PurchaseOrderId: BusinessKey;
        Items: Association [0..*] to Item on
        Items.PurchaseOrderId=PurchaseOrderId;
        "History": HistoryT;
        NoteId: BusinessKey null;
        PartnerId: BusinessKey;
        Currency: CurrencyT;
        GrossAmount: AmountT;
        NetAmount: AmountT;
        TaxAmount: AmountT;
        LifecycleStatus: StatusT;
        ApprovalStatus: StatusT;
        ConfirmStatus: StatusT;
        OrderingStatus: StatusT;
        InvoicingStatus: StatusT;
    } technical configuration {
        column store;
    };
    Entity Item {
        key PurchaseOrderId: BusinessKey;
        key PurchaseOrderItem: BusinessKey;
        ToHeader: Association [1] to Header on
        ToHeader.PurchaseOrderId=PurchaseOrderId;
        ProductId: BusinessKey;
        NoteId: BusinessKey null;
        Currency: CurrencyT;
        GrossAmount: AmountT;
        NetAmount: AmountT;
        TaxAmount: AmountT;
        Quantity: QuantityT;
        QuantityUnit: UnitT;
        DeliveryDate: SDate;
    } technical configuration {
        column store;
    };
    define view POView as SELECT from Header {
        Items.PurchaseOrderId as poId,
        Items.PurchaseOrderItem as poItem,
        PartnerId,
        Items.ProductId
    };
    // Missing types from the example above
    type BusinessKey: String(50);
    type HistoryT: LargeString;
    type CurrencyT: String(3);
    type AmountT: Decimal(15, 2);
    type StatusT: String(1);
    type QuantityT: Integer;
    type UnitT: String(5);
    type SDate: LocalDate;
};
```

Related Information

[Create an Association in CDS \[page 236\]](#)

4.1.6.2 CDS Association Syntax Options

Associations define relationships between entities.

Example

Managed Associations

```
Association [ <cardinality> ] to <targetEntity> [ <forwardLink> ]
```

Example

Unmanaged Associations

```
Association [ <cardinality> ] to <targetEntity> <unmanagedJoin>
```

Overview

Associations are specified by adding an element to a source entity with an association **type** that points to a target entity, complemented by optional information defining cardinality and which keys to use.

Note

CDS supports both managed and unmanaged associations.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use associations in the definition of a CDS entity or a CDS view. When defining an association, bear in mind the following points:

- [`<Cardinality>` \[page 246\]](#)
The relationship between the source and target in the association, for example, one-to-one, one-to-many, many-to-one
- [`<targetEntity>` \[page 247\]](#)
The target entity for the association
- [`<forwardLink>` \[page 248\]](#)
The foreign keys to use in a managed association, for example, element names in the target entity
- [`<unmanagedJoin>` \[page 249\]](#)
Unmanaged associations only; the `ON` condition specifies the elements of the source and target elements and entities to use in the association

Association Cardinality

When using an association to define a relationship between entities in a CDS view; you use the **cardinality** to specify the type of relation, for example:

- one-to-one (to-one)
- one-to-many (to-n)

The relationship is with respect to both the source and the target of the association. The following code example illustrates the syntax required to define the cardinality of an association in a CDS view:

```
[ [ ( maxs | * ) , ]           // source cardinality
  [ min .. ] ( max | * )       // target cardinality
]
```

In the most simple form, only the target cardinality is stated using the syntax `[min .. max]`, where `max=*` denotes infinity. Note that `[]` is short for `[0..*]`. If no cardinality is specified, the default cardinality setting `[0..1]` is assumed. It is possible to specify the maximum cardinality of the source of the association in the form `[maxs, min .. max]`, where `maxs = *` denotes infinity.

The following examples illustrate how to express cardinality in an association definition:

```
namespace samples;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'           // XS classic *only*
context AssociationCardinality {
    entity Associations {
        // To-one associations
        assoc1 : Association[0..1]      to target;
        assoc2 : Association          to target;
        assoc3 : Association[1]        to target;
        assoc4 : Association[1..1]     to target; // association has one target
    }
    instance
        // To-many associations
        assoc5 : Association[0..*]    to target{id1};
        assoc6 : Association[]       to target{id1}; // as assoc4, [] is short
    for [0..*]
        assoc7 : Association[2..7]    to target{id1}; // any numbers are
    possible; user provides
        assoc8 : Association[1, 0..*] to target{id1}; // additional info. about
    source cardinality
    };
    // Required to make the example above work
    entity target {
        key id1 : Integer;
        key id2 : Integer;
    };
}
```

The following table describes the various cardinality expressions illustrated in the example above:

Table 31: Association Cardinality Syntax Examples

Association	Cardinality	Explanation
assoc1	[0..1]	The association has no or one target instance
assoc2		Like assoc1, this association has no or one target instance and uses the default [0..1]
assoc3	[1]	Like assoc1, this association has no or one target instance; the default for min is 0

Association	Cardinality	Explanation
assoc4	[1..1]	The association has one target instance
assoc5	[0..*]	The association has no, one, or multiple target instances
assoc6	[]	Like assoc4, [] is short for [0..*] (the association has no, one, or multiple target instances)
assoc7	[2..7]	Any numbers are possible; the user provides
assoc8	[1, 0..*]	The association has no, one, or multiple target instances and includes additional information about the source cardinality

When an infix filter effectively reduces the cardinality of a “to-N” association to “to-1”, this can be expressed explicitly in the filter, for example:

```
assoc[1: <cond> ]
```

Specifying the cardinality in the filter in this way enables you to use the association in the `WHERE` clause, where “to-N” associations are not normally allowed.

Sample Code

```
namespace samples;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA' // XS classic *only*
context CardinalityByInfixFilter {
    entity Person {
        key id : Integer;
        name : String(100);
        address : Association[*] to Address on address.personId = id;
    };
    entity Address {
        key id : Integer;
        personId : Integer;
        type : String(20); // home, business, vacation, ...
        street : String(100);
        city : String(100);
    };
    view V as select from Person {
        name
    } where address[1: type='home'].city = 'Accra';
};
```

Association Target

You use the `to` keyword in a CDS view definition to specify the target entity in an association, for example, the name of an entity defined in a CDS document. A qualified entity name is expected that refers to an existing entity. A target entity specification is mandatory; a default value is **not** assumed if no target entity is specified in an association relationship.

```
Association[ <cardinality> ] to <targetEntity> [ <forwardLink> ]
```

The target entity `Address` specified as the target entity of an association could be expressed as illustrated the following examples:

```
address1 : Association to Address;
address2 : Association to Address { id };
address3 : Association[1] to Address { zipCode, street, country };
```

Association Keys

In the relational model, associations are mapped to foreign-key relationships. For **managed** associations, the relation between source and target entity is defined by specifying a set of elements of the target entity that are used as a foreign key, as expressed in the `forwardLink` element of the following code example:

```
Association[ <cardinality> ] to <targetEntity> [ <forwardLink> ]
```

The `forwardLink` element of the association could be expressed as follows:

```
<forwardLink> = { <foreignKeys> }
<foreignKeys> = <targetKeyElement> [ AS <alias> ] [ , <foreignKeys> ]
<targetKeyElement> = <elementName> ( . <elementName> )*
```

If no foreign keys are specified explicitly, the elements of the target entity's designated primary key are used. Elements of the target entity that reside inside substructures can be addressed by means of the respective path. If the chosen elements do not form a unique key of the target entity, the association has cardinality to-many. The following examples show how to express foreign keys in an association.

```
entity Person
{
  key id : Integer;
  // address1,2,3 are to-one associations
  address1 : Association to Address;
  address2 : Association to Address { id };
  address3 : Association[1] to Address { zipCode, street, country };
  // address4,5,6 are to-many associations
  address4 : Association[0..*] to Address { zipCode };
  address5 : Association[*] to Address { street.name };
  address6 : Association[*] to Address { street.name AS streetName,
                                         country.name AS countryName };
}
```

Table 32: Association Syntax Options

Association	Keys	Explanation
address1		No foreign keys are specified: the target entity's primary key (the element <code>id</code>) is used as foreign key.
address2	{ <code>id</code> }	Explicitly specifies the foreign key (the element <code>id</code>); this definition is identical to <code>address1</code> .
address3	{ <code>zipCode</code> , <code>street</code> , <code>country</code> }	The foreign key elements to be used for the association are explicitly specified, namely: <code>zipcode</code> and the structured elements <code>street</code> and <code>country</code> .

Association	Keys	Explanation
address4	{ zipcode }	Uses only zipcode as the foreign key. Since zipcode is not a unique key for entity Address, this association has cardinality "to-many".
address5	{ street.name }	Uses the sub-element name of the structured element street as a foreign key. This is not a unique key and, as a result, address4 has cardinality "to-many".
address6	{ street.name AS streetName, country.name AS countryName }	Uses the sub-element name of both the structured elements street and country as foreign key fields. The names of the foreign key fields must be unique, so an alias is required here. The foreign key is not unique, so address6 is a "to-many" association.

You can now use foreign keys of managed associations in the definition of other associations. In the following example, the compiler recognizes that the field toCountry.cid is part of the foreign key of the association toLocation and, as a result, physically present in the entity Company.

Sample Code

```
namespace samples;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'           // XS classic *only*
context AssociationKeys {
    entity Country {
        key c_id : String(3);
        // <...>
    };
    entity Region {
        key r_id : Integer;
        key toCountry : Association[1] to Country { c_id };
        // <...>
    };
    entity Company {
        key id : Integer;
        toLocation : Association[1] to Region { r_id, toCountry.c_id };
        // <...>
    };
}
```

Unmanaged Associations

Unmanaged associations are based on existing elements of the source and target entity; no fields are generated. In the ON condition, only elements of the source or the target entity can be used; it is not possible to use other associations. The ON condition may contain any kind of expression - all expressions supported in views can also be used in the ON condition of an unmanaged association.

i Note

The names in the ON condition are resolved in the scope of the source entity; elements of the target entity are accessed through the association itself .

In the following example, the association `inhabitants` relates the element `id` of the source entity `Room` with the element `officeId` in the target entity `Employee`. The target element `officeId` is accessed through the name of the association itself.

```
namespace samples;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA' // XS classic *only*
context UnmanagedAssociations {
    entity Employee {
        key id : Integer;
        officeId : Integer;
        // <...>
    };
    entity Room {
        key id : Integer;
        inhabitants : Association[*] to Employee on inhabitants.officeId = id;
        // <...>
    };
    entity Thing {
        key id : Integer;
        parentId : Integer;
        parent : Association[1] to Thing on parent.id = parentId;
        children : Association[*] to Thing on children.parentId = id;
        // <...>
    };
}
```

The following example defines two related **unmanaged** associations:

- `parent`
The unmanaged association `parent` uses a cardinality of `[1]` to create a relation between the element `parentId` and the target element `id`. The target element `id` is accessed through the name of the association itself.
- `children`
The unmanaged association `children` creates a relation between the element `id` and the target element `parentId`. The target element `parentId` is accessed through the name of the association itself.

```
entity Thing {
    key id : Integer;
    parentId : Integer;
    parent : Association[1] to Thing on parent.id = parentId;
    children : Association[*] to Thing on children.parentId = id;
    ...
};
```

Constants in Associations

The usage of constants is no longer restricted to annotation assignments and default values for entity elements. With SPS 11, you can use constants in the “on”-condition of unmanaged associations, as illustrated in the following example:

Sample Code

```
context MyContext {
    const MyIntConst : Integer = 7;
    const MyStringConst : String(10) = 'bright';
    const MyDecConst : Decimal(4,2) = 3.14;
    const MyDateTimeConst : UTCDateTime = '2015-09-30 14:33';
    entity MyEntity {
        key id : Integer;
        a : Integer;
        b : String(100);
```

```
c : Decimal(20,10);
d : UTCDateTime;
your : Association[1] to YourEntity on your.a - a < MyIntConst;
};
entity YourEntity {
    key id : Integer;
    a : Integer;
};
entity HerEntity {
    key id : Integer;
    t : String(20);
};
view MyView as select from MyEntity
    inner join HerEntity on locate (b, :MyStringConst) > 0
{
    a + :MyIntConst as x,
    b || ' is ' || :MyStringConst as y,
    c * sin(:MyDecConst) as z
} where d < :MyContext.MyDateTimeConst;
};
```

Related Information

[Create an Association in CDS \[page 236\]](#)

[CDS Associations \[page 239\]](#)

4.1.7 Create a View in CDS

A view is a virtual table based on the dynamic results returned in response to an SQL statement. SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use CDS syntax to create a database view as a design-time file in the repository.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema for the CDS catalog objects, for example, MYSCHHEMA
- The owner of the schema must have SELECT privileges in the schema to be able to see the generated catalog objects.

Context

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use the CDS syntax to create a database view as a design-time file in the repository. Repository files are transportable. Activating the CDS view definition creates the corresponding catalog object in the specified schema. To create a CDS view-definition file in the repository, perform the following steps:

Note

The following code examples are provided for illustration purposes only.

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the CDS-definition file which will contain the view you define in the following steps.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new CDS-definition file and perform the following steps:

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the view-definition file and choose     in the context-sensitive pop-up menu.
- b. Enter the name of the view-definition file in the *File Name* box, for example, *MyModel12*.

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically (for example, *MyModel12.hdbdd*) and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- c. Choose *Finish* to save the changes and commit the new CDS definition file in the repository.
5. Define the underlying CDS entities and structured types.

If the new entity-definition file is not automatically displayed by the file-creation wizard, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the entity-definition file you created in the previous step, for example, *MyModel12.hdbdd*, and add the code for the entity definitions and structured types to the file.

```
namespace com.acme.myapp1;
@Schema : 'MYSCHHEMA'
context MyModel12 {
    type StreetAddress {
        name : String(80);
        number : Integer;
    };
    type CountryAddress {
        name : String(80);
        code : String(3);
    };
    @Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
```

```
entity Address {
    key id : Integer;
    street : StreetAddress;
    zipCode : Integer;
    city : String(80);
    country : CountryAddress;
    type : String(10); // home, office
};
```

6. Define a view as a projection of a CDS entity.

In the same entity-definition file you edited in the previous step, for example, `MyModel12.hdbdd`, add the code for the view `AddressView` below the entity `Address` in the CDS document.

Note

In CDS, a view is an entity without its own persistence; it is defined as a projection of other entities.

```
view AddressView as select from Address
{
    id,
    street.name,
    street.number
};
```

7. Save the CDS-definition file containing the new view.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository; you do not need to explicitly commit the file again.

8. Activate the changes in the repository.

a. Locate and right-click the new CDS-definition file in the *Project Explorer* view.

b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose  *Team*  *Activate*.

Note

If you cannot activate the new CDS artifact, check that the specified schema already exists and that there are no illegal characters in the name space, for example, the hyphen (-).

9. Ensure access to the schema where the new CDS catalog objects are created.

After activation in the repository, a schema object is only visible in the catalog to the `_SYS_REPO` user. To enable other users, for example the schema owner, to view the newly created schema and the objects it contains, you must grant the user the required `SELECT` privilege.

Note

If you already have the appropriate `SELECT` privilege, you do not need to perform this step.

a. In the SAP HANA studio *Systems* view, right-click the SAP HANA system hosting the repository where the schema was activated and choose *SQL Console* in the context-sensitive popup menu.

- b. In the *SQL console*, execute the statement illustrated in the following example, where <SCHEMANAME> is the name of the newly activated schema, and <username> is the database user ID of the schema owner:

```
call
  SYS_REPO.GRANT_SCHEMA_PRIVILEGE_ON_ACTIVATED_CONTENT('select', '<SCHEMANAME
>', '<username>');
```

10. Check that the new view has been successfully created.

Views are created in the `Views` folder in the catalog.

- In the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Systems* view.
- Navigate to the catalog location where you created the new view.

▶ <SID> ▶ Catalog ▶ <MYSHEMA> ▶ Views ▶

- Open a data preview for the new view `AddressView`.

Right-click the new view `<package.path>::MyModel2.AddressView` and choose *Open Data Preview* in the pop-up menu.

Related Information

[CDS Views \[page 254\]](#)

[CDS View Syntax Options \[page 262\]](#)

[Spatial Types and Functions \[page 275\]](#)

4.1.7.1 CDS Views

A view is an entity that is not persistent; it is defined as the projection of other entities. SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a CDS view as a design-time file in the repository.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to define a view in a CDS document, which you store as design-time file in the repository. Repository files can be read by applications that you develop. In addition, all repository files including your view definition can be transported to other SAP HANA systems, for example, in a delivery unit.

If your application refers to the design-time version of a view from the repository rather than the runtime version in the catalog, for example, by using the explicit path to the repository file (with suffix), any changes to the repository version of the file are visible as soon as they are committed to the repository. There is no need to wait for the repository to activate a runtime version of the view.

To define a transportable view using the CDS-compliant view specifications, use something like the code illustrated in the following example:

```
context Views {
  VIEW AddressView AS SELECT FROM Address {
    id,
    street.name,
    street.number
  };
<...>
```

```
}
```

When a CDS document is activated, the activation process generates a corresponding catalog object for each of the artifacts defined in the document; the location in the catalog is determined by the type of object generated. For example, in SAP HANA XS classic the corresponding catalog object for a CDS view definition is generated in the following location:

► <SID> ► Catalog ► <MYSHEMA> ► Views ▾

Views defined in a CDS document can make use of the following SQL features:

- [CDS Type definition \[page 255\]](#)
- [Expressions \[page 256\]](#)
- [A selection of functions \[page 256\]](#)
- [Aggregates \[page 256\]](#)
- [Group by \[page 256\]](#)
- [Having \[page 256\]](#)
- [Associations \[page 257\]](#) (including filters and prefixes)
- [Order by \[page 259\]](#)
- [Case \[page 260\]](#)
- [Union \[page 260\]](#)
- [Join \[page 260\]](#)
- [Select Distinct \[page 261\]](#)
- [Spatial Data \[page 261\]](#)

Type Definition

In a CDS view definition, you can explicitly specify the `type` of a select item, as illustrated in the following example:

Sample Code

```
type MyInteger : Integer;
entity E {
    a : MyInteger;
    b : MyInteger;
};
view V as select from E {
    a,
    a+b as s1,
    a+b as s2 : MyInteger
};
```

In the example of different `type` definitions, the following is true:

- `a,`
Has type "MyInteger"
- `a+b as s1,`
Has type "Integer" and any information about the user-defined `type` is lost
- `a+b as s2 : MyInteger`

Has type “MyInteger”, which is explicitly specified

i Note

If necessary, a CAST function is added to the generated view in SAP HANA; this ensures that the select item's type in the SAP HANA view is the SAP HANA “type” corresponding to the explicitly specified CDS type.

Expressions and Functions

CDS support the use of functions and expressions in a view. For example, you can specify a value calculated as the sum of multiple values, as illustrated in the following example:

```
VIEW MyView AS SELECT FROM UnknownEntity
{
    a + b  AS theSum
};
```

i Note

When expressions are used in a view element, an alias must be specified.

Aggregates, Group by, and Having

The following example shows how to use aggregates (count, sum) in a CDS view definition. In this example, the view to is used to collect information about headcount and salary per organizational unit for all employees hired from 2011 up till now.

```
VIEW MyView2 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    orgUnit,
    count(id)    AS headCount,
    sum(salary)  AS totalSalary,
    max(salary)  AS maxSalary
}
WHERE joinDate > date'2011-01-01'
GROUP BY orgUnit;
```

i Note

Expressions are not allowed in the GROUP BY clause.

Associations in Views

In a CDS view definition, associations can be used to gather information from the specified target entities. In SQL, associations are mapped to joins.

In the context of a CDS view definition, you can use associations in the following places:

- The SELECT list
- The WHERE clause
- The FROM clause
- The GROUP BY clause
- With filters
- With the prefix notation

In the following example of an association in a SELECT list, a view is used to compile a list of all employees; the list includes the employee's name, the capacity of the employee's office, and the color of the carpet in the office. The association follows the to-one association `office` from entity `Employee` to entity `Room` to assemble the information about the office.

i Note

To-n (many) associations are not supported in the WHERE clause.

```
VIEW MyView3 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    name.last,
    office.capacity,
    office.carpetColor
};
```

The following example shows how associations can also be used in the WHERE clause to restrict the result set returned by the view to information located in the association's target.

```
VIEW EmployeesInRoom_ABC_3_4 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    name.last
} WHERE office.building = 'ABC'
    AND office.floor    = 3
    AND office.number   = 4;
```

The following example shows how to use an association in the FROM clause to list the license plates of all company cars.

```
VIEW CompanyCarLicensePlates AS SELECT FROM Employee.companyCar
{
    licensePlate
};
```

The following example shows how to use an association in the GROUP BY clause to compile a list of all offices that are less than 50% occupied.

```
VIEW V11 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    officeId.building,
    officeId.floor,
    officeId.roomNumber,
    office.capacity,
```

```

        count(id)          AS seatsTaken,
        count(id)/office.capacity AS occupancyRate
    } GROUP BY officeId.building,
            officeId.floor,
            officeId.roomNumber,
            office.capacity,
            office.type
    HAVING office.type = 'office' AND count(id)/capacity < 0.5;

```

When following an association in a view, it is now possible to apply a filter condition; the filter is merged into the ON-condition of the resulting JOIN. The following example shows how to get a list of customers and then filter the list according to the sales orders that are currently “open” for each customer. In the example, the filter is inserted after the association `orders`; this ensures that the list displayed by the view only contains those orders that satisfy the condition `[status='open']`.

Sample Code

```

view C1 as select from Customer {
    name,
    orders[status='open'].id as orderId
};

```

If an additional element `date` is included in the filter, a corresponding (and separate) JOIN is created. Associations with multiple **separate** filters are never combined, so in this case two JOINS are created.

Sample Code

```

view C2 as select from Customer {
    name,
    orders[status='open'].id   as orderId,
    orders[status='open'].date as orderDate
};

```

To ensure that the compiler understands that there is only one association (`orders`) to resolve but with multiple elements (`id` and `date`), use the prefix notation illustrated in the following example:

Sample Code

```

view C3 as select from Customer {
    name,
    orders[status='open'].{ id   as orderId,
                           date as orderDate
    }
};

```

Tip

Filter conditions and prefixes can be nested.

The following example shows how to use the associations `orders` and `items` in a view that displays a list of customers with open sales orders for items with a price greater than 200.

Sample Code

```
view C4 as select from Customer {
    name,
    orders[status='open'].{ id      as orderId,
                           date   as orderDate,
                           items[price>200].{ descr,
                                               price
                                         }
                         }
};

}
```

You can define an association as a view element, for example, by defining an ad-hoc association in the `mixin` clause and then adding the association to the `SELECT` list, as illustrated in the following example:

Sample Code

Associations as View Elements

```
entity E {
    a : Integer;
    b : Integer;
};
entity F {
    x : Integer;
    y : Integer;
};
view VE as select from E mixin {
    f : Association[1] to VF on f.vy = $projection.vb;
} into {
    a as va,
    b as vb,
    f as vf
};
view VF as select from F {
    x as vx,
    y as vy
};
```

In the `ON` condition of this type of association in a view, it is necessary to use the pseudo-identifier `$projection` to specify that the following element name must be resolved in the `select` list of the view ("VE") rather than in the entity ("E") in the `FROM` clause

Order by

The `ORDER BY` operator enables you to list results according to an expression or position, for example `salary`. In the same way as with plain SQL, the `ASC` and `DESC` operators enable you to specify if the results list is sorted in ascending or descending order, respectively.

```
VIEW MyView4 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    orgUnit,
    salary
} ORDER BY salary DESC;
```

Case

In the same way as in plain SQL, you can use the `case` expression in a CDS view definition to introduce IF-THEN-ELSE conditions without the need to use procedures.

```
entity MyEntity {
    key id : Integer;
        a : Integer;
        color : String(1);
};

VIEW MyView5 AS SELECT FROM MyEntity {
    id,
    CASE color      // defined in MyEntity
        WHEN 'R' THEN 'red'
        WHEN 'G' THEN 'green'
        WHEN 'B' THEN 'blue'
        ELSE 'black'
    END AS color,
    CASE
        WHEN a < 10 then 'small'
        WHEN 10 <= a AND a < 100 THEN 'medium'
        ELSE 'large'
    END AS size
};
```

Union

Enables multiple select statements to be combined but return only one result set. `UNION` selects all unique records from all select statements by removing duplicates found from different select statements.

i Note

`UNION` has the same function as `UNION DISTINCT`.

Join

You can include a `JOIN` clause in a CDS view definition; the following `JOIN` types are supported:

- [INNER] JOIN
- LEFT [OUTER] JOIN
- RIGHT [OUTER] JOIN
- FULL [OUTER] JOIN
- CROSS JOIN

Sample Code

```
entity E {
    key id : Integer;
    a : Integer;
```

```
};

entity F {
    key id : Integer;
    b : Integer;
};

entity G {
    key id : Integer;
    c : Integer;
};

view V_join as select from E join (F as X full outer join G on X.id = G.id) on
E.id = c {
    a, b, c
};
```

Select Distinct

CDS now supports the `SELECT DISTINCT` semantic. Note the position of the `DISTINCT` keyword directly in front of the curly brace:

Sample Code

```
view V_dist as select from E distinct { a };
```

Spatial Data

Spatial data is data that describes the position, shape, and orientation of objects in a defined space; the data is represented as two-dimensional geometries in the form of points, line strings, and polygons. The following examples shows how to use the spatial function `ST_Distance` in a CDS view. The spatial function populates the CDS view with information (stored using the spatial data type `ST_POINT`) indicating the distance between each person's home and business address (`distanceHomeToWork`) as well as the distance between the designated home address and the building SAP03 (`distFromSAP03`).

Sample Code

```
view GeoView1 as select from Person {
    name,
    homeAddress.street_name || ', ' || homeAddress.city as home,
    officeAddress.street_name || ', ' || officeAddress.city as office,
    round( homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(officeAddress.loc, 'meter')/1000, 1) as
distanceHomeToWork,
    round( homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(NEW ST_POINT(8.644072, 49.292910),
'meter')/1000, 1) as distFromSAP03
};
```

Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the

available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

Related Information

[Create a View in CDS \[page 251\]](#)

[CDS Associations \[page 239\]](#)

[CDS View Syntax Options \[page 262\]](#)

4.1.7.2 CDS View Syntax Options

SAP HANA XS includes a dedicated, CDS-compliant syntax, which you must adhere to when using a CDS document to define a view as a design-time artifact.

Example

i Note

The following example is intended for illustration purposes only and might contain syntactical errors. For further details about the keywords illustrated, click the links provided.

```
context views {
  const x : Integer = 4;
  const y : Integer = 5;
  const z : Integer = 6;
  VIEW MyView1 AS SELECT FROM Employee
  {
    a + b AS theSum
  };
  VIEW MyView2 AS SELECT FROM Employee
  { officeId.building,
    officeId.floor,
    officeId.roomNumber,
    office.capacity,
    count(id) AS seatsTaken,
    count(id)/office.capacity as occupancyRate
  }
}
```

```

} WHERE officeId.building = 1
      GROUP BY officeId.building,
               officeId.floor,
               officeId.roomNumber,
               office.capacity,
               office.type
      HAVING office.type = 'office' AND count(id)/office.capacity < 0.5;
VIEW MyView3 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{ orgUnit,
  salary
} ORDER BY salary DESC;
VIEW MyView4 AS SELECT FROM Employee {
CASE
    WHEN a < 10 then 'small'
    WHEN 10 <= a AND a < 100 THEN 'medium'
    ELSE 'large'
END AS size
};
VIEW MyView5 AS
  SELECT FROM E1 { a, b, c}
UNION
  SELECT FROM E2 { z, x, y};
VIEW MyView6 AS SELECT FROM Customer {
  name,
  orders[status='open'].{ id   as orderId,
                         date as orderDate,
                         items[price>200].{ descr,
                                              price }   }
};
VIEW MyView7 as
  select from E { a, b, c}
  order by a limit 10 offset 30;
VIEW V_join as select from E join (F as X full outer join G on X.id = G.id) on
E.id = c {
  a, b, c
};
VIEW V_dist as select from E distinct { a };
VIEW V_type as select from E {
  a,
  a+b as s1,
  a+b as s2 : MyInteger
};
view VE as select from E mixin {
  f : Association[1] to VF on f.vy = $projection.vb;
} into {
  a as va,
  b as vb,
  f as vf
};
VIEW SpatialView1 as select from Person {
  name,
  homeAddress.street_name || ', ' || homeAddress.city as home,
  officeAddress.street_name || ', ' || officeAddress.city as office,
  round( homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(officeAddress.loc, 'meter')/1000, 1) as
distanceHomeToWork,
  round( homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(NEW ST_POINT(8.644072, 49.292910),
'meter')/1000, 1) as distFromSAP03
};
}

```

Expressions and Functions

In a CDS view definition you can use any of the functions and expressions listed in the following example:

```
View MyView9 AS SELECT FROM SampleEntity
{
  a + b  AS theSum,
  a - b  AS theDifference,
  a * b  AS theProduct,
  a / b  AS theQuotient,
  -a      AS theUnaryMinus,
  c || d AS theConcatenation
};
```

i Note

When expressions are used in a view element, an alias must be specified, for example, AS theSum.

Aggregates

In a CDS view definition, you can use the following aggregates:

- AVG
- COUNT
- MIN
- MAX
- SUM
- STDDEV
- VAR

The following example shows how to use aggregates and expressions to collect information about headcount and salary per organizational unit for all employees hired from 2011 to now.

```
VIEW MyView10 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
  orgUnit,
  count(id)    AS headCount,
  sum(salary)  AS totalSalary,
  max(salary)  AS maxSalary
}
  WHERE joinDate > date'2011-01-01'
  GROUP BY orgUnit;
```

i Note

Expressions are not allowed in the GROUP BY clause.

Constants in Views

With SPS 11, you can use constants in the views, as illustrated in "MyView" at the end of the following example:

Sample Code

```
context MyContext {  
    const MyIntConst      : Integer      = 7;  
    const MyStringConst   : String(10)   = 'bright';  
    const MyDecConst     : Decimal(4,2)  = 3.14;  
    const MyDateTimeConst : UTCDateTime  = '2015-09-30 14:33';  
    entity MyEntity {  
        key id : Integer;  
        a : Integer;  
        b : String(100);  
        c : Decimal(20,10);  
        d : UTCDateTime;  
        your : Association[1] to YourEntity on your.a - a < MyIntConst;  
    };  
    entity YourEntity {  
        key id : Integer;  
        a : Integer;  
    };  
    entity HerEntity {  
        key id : Integer;  
        t : String(20);  
    };  
    view MyView as select from MyEntity  
        inner join HerEntity on locate (b, :MyStringConst) > 0  
    {  
        a + :MyIntConst as x,  
        b || ' is ' || :MyStringConst as y,  
        c * sin(:MyDecConst) as z  
    } where d < :MyContext.MyDateTimeConst;  
};
```

When constants are used in a view definition, their name must be prefixed with the scope operator ":". Usually names that appear in a query are resolved as alias or element names. The scope operator instructs the compiler to resolve the name outside of the query.

Sample Code

```
context NameResolution {  
    const a : Integer = 4;  
    const b : Integer = 5;  
    const c : Integer = 6;  
    entity E {  
        key id : Integer;  
        a : Integer;  
        c : Integer;  
    };  
    view V as select from E {  
        a as a1,  
        b,  
        :a as a2,  
        E.a as a3,  
        :E,  
        :E.a as a4,  
        :c  
    };  
}
```

The following table explains how the constants used in view "V" are resolved.

Table 33: Constant Declaration and Result

Constant Expression	Result	Comments
a as a1,	Success	"a" is resolved in the space of alias and element names, for example, element "a" of entity "E".
b,	Error	There is no alias and no element with name "b" in entity "E"
:a as a2,	Success	Scope operator ":" instructs the compiler to search for element "a" outside of the query (finds the constant "a").
E.a as a3,	Success	"E" is resolved in the space of alias and element names, so this matches element "a" of entity "Entity".
:E,	Success	Error: no access to "E" via ":"
:E.a as a4,	Error	Error: no access to "E" (or any of its elements) via ":"
:c	Error	Error: there is no alias for "c".

SELECT

In the following example of an association in a `SELECT` list, a view compiles a list of all employees; the list includes the employee's name, the capacity of the employee's office, and the color of the carpet in the office. The association follows the to-one association office from entity `Employee` to entity `Room` to collect the relevant information about the office.

```
VIEW MyView11 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    name.last,
    office.capacity,
    office.carpetColor
};
```

Subqueries

You can define subqueries in a CDS view, as illustrated in the following example:

Code Syntax

```
select from (select from F {a as x, b as y}) as Q {
    x+y as xy,
    (select from E {a} where b=Q.y) as a
} where x < all (select from E{b})
```

⚠ Restriction

In a **correlated** subquery, elements of outer queries must always be addressed by means of a table alias.

WHERE

The following example shows how the syntax required in the WHERE clause used in a CDS view definition. In this example, the WHERE clause is used in an association to restrict the result set according to information located in the association's target. Further filtering of the result set can be defined with the AND modifier.

```
VIEW EmployeesInRoom_ABC_3_4 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    name.last
} WHERE officeId.building = 'ABC'
    AND officeId.floor     = 3
    AND officeId.number    = 4;
```

FROM

The following example shows the syntax required when using the FROM clause in a CDS view definition. This example shows an association that lists the license plates of all company cars.

```
VIEW CompanyCarLicensePlates AS SELECT FROM Employee.companyCar
{
    licensePlate
};
```

In the FROM clause, you can use the following elements:

- an entity or a view defined in the same CDS source file
- a native SAP HANA table or view that is available in the schema specified in the schema annotation (@Schema in the corresponding CDS document)

If a CDS view references a native SAP HANA table, the table and column names must be specified using their effective SAP HANA names.

```
create table foo (
    bar    : Integer,
    "gloo" : Integer
)
```

This means that if a table (foo) or its columns (bar and "gloo" were created **without** using quotation marks (""), the corresponding uppercase names for the table or columns must be used in the CDS document, as illustrated in the following example.

```
VIEW MyViewOnNative as SELECT FROM FOO
{
    BAR,
    gloo
};
```

GROUP BY

The following example shows the syntax required when using the `GROUP BY` clause in a CDS view definition. This example shows an association in a view that compiles a list of all offices that are less than 50% occupied.

```
VIEW V11 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    officeId.building,
    officeId.floor,
    officeId.roomNumber,
    office.capacity,
    count(id) as seatsTaken,
    count(id)/office.capacity as occupancyRate
} GROUP BY officeId.building,
        officeId.floor,
        officeId.roomNumber,
        office.capacity,
        office.type
HAVING office.type = 'office' AND count(id)/capacity < 0.5;
```

HAVING

The following example shows the syntax required when using the `HAVING` clause in a CDS view definition. This example shows a view with an association that compiles a list of all offices that are less than 50% occupied.

```
VIEW V11 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    officeId.building,
    officeId.floor,
    officeId.roomNumber,
    office.capacity,
    count(id)           as seatsTaken,
    count(id)/office.capacity as occupancyRate
} GROUP BY officeId.building,
        officeId.floor,
        officeId.roomNumber,
        office.capacity,
        office.type
HAVING office.type = 'office' AND count(id)/capacity < 0.5;
```

ORDER BY

The `ORDER BY` operator enables you to list results according to an expression or position, for example `salary`.

```
VIEW MyView3 AS SELECT FROM Employee
{
    orgUnit,
    salary
} ORDER BY salary DESC;
```

In the same way as with plain SQL, the `ASC` and `DESC` operators enable you to sort the list order as follows.

- ASC
Display the result set in **ascending** order
- DESC
Display the result set in **descending** order

LIMIT/OFFSET

You can use the SQL clauses `LIMIT` and `OFFSET` in a CDS query. The `LIMIT <INTEGER> [OFFSET <INTEGER>]` operator enables you to restrict the number of output records to display to a specified “limit”; the `OFFSET <INTEGER>` specifies the number of records to skip before displaying the records according to the defined `LIMIT`.

```
VIEW MyViewV AS SELECT FROM E
  { a, b, c}
  order by a limit 10 offset 30;
```

CASE

In the same way as in plain SQL, you can use the `case` expression in a CDS view definition to introduce `IF-THEN-ELSE` conditions without the need to use procedures.

```
entity MyEntity12 {
key id : Integer;
  a : Integer;
  color : String(1);
};

VIEW MyView12 AS SELECT FROM MyEntity12 {
  id,
  CASE color      // defined in MyEntity12
    WHEN 'R' THEN 'red'
    WHEN 'G' THEN 'green'
    WHEN 'B' THEN 'blue'
    ELSE 'black'
  END AS color,
  CASE
    WHEN a < 10 then 'small'
    WHEN 10 <= a AND a < 100 THEN 'medium'
    ELSE 'large'
  END AS size
};
```

In the first example of usage of the `CASE` operator, `CASE color` shows a “switched” `CASE` (one table column and multiple values). The second example of `CASE` usage shows a “conditional” `CASE` with multiple arbitrary conditions, possibly referring to different table columns.

UNION

Enables multiple select statements to be combined but return only one result set. UNION works in the same way as the SAP HANA SQL command of the same name; it selects all unique records from all select statements by removing duplicates found from different select statements. The signature of the result view is equal to the signature of the first SELECT in the union.

i Note

View MyView5 has elements a, b, and c.

```
entity E1 {  
    key a : Integer;  
    b : String(20);  
    c : LocalDate;  
};  
entity E2 {  
    key x : String(20);  
    y : LocalDate;  
    z : Integer;  
};  
VIEW MyView5 AS  
    SELECT FROM E1 { a, b, c}  
    UNION  
    SELECT FROM E2 { z, x, y};
```

JOIN

You can include a JOIN clause in a CDS view definition; the following JOIN types are supported:

- [INNER] JOIN
- LEFT [OUTER] JOIN
- RIGHT [OUTER] JOIN
- FULL [OUTER] JOIN
- CROSS JOIN

The following example shows a simple join.

Sample Code

```
entity E {  
    key id : Integer;  
    a : Integer;  
};  
entity F {  
    key id : Integer;  
    b : Integer;  
};  
entity G {  
    key id : Integer;  
    c : Integer;  
};  
view V_join as select from E join (F as X full outer join G on X.id = G.id) on  
E.id = c {  
    a, b, c
```

```
};
```

SELECT DISTINCT

CDS now supports the `SELECT DISTINCT` semantic. The position of the `DISTINCT` keyword is important; it must appear directly in front of the curly brace, as illustrated in the following example:

Sample Code

```
entity E {
    key id : Integer;
    a : Integer;
};
entity F {
    key id : Integer;
    b : Integer;
};
entity G {
    key id : Integer;
    c : Integer;
};
view V_dist as select from E distinct { a };
```

Associations, Filters, and Prefixes

You can define an association as a view element, for example, by defining an ad-hoc association in the `mixin` clause and then adding the association to the `SELECT` list, as illustrated in the following example:

Sample Code

Associations as View Elements

```
entity E {
    a : Integer;
    b : Integer;
};
entity F {
    x : Integer;
    y : Integer;
};
view VE as select from E mixin {
    f : Association[1] to VF on f.vy = $projection.vb;
} into {
    a as va,
    b as vb,
    f as vf
};
view VF as select from F {
    x as vx,
    y as vy
};
```

In the `ON` condition of this type of association in a view, it is necessary to use the pseudo-identifier `$projection` to specify that the following element name must be resolved in the `select` list of the view ("`VE`") rather than in the entity ("`E`") in the `FROM` clause

Filter Conditions

It is possible to apply a filter condition when resolving associations between entities; the filter is merged into the `ON`-condition of the resulting `JOIN`. The following example shows how to get a list of customers and then filter the list according to the sales orders that are currently "open" for each customer. In the example, the filter is inserted after the association `orders`; this ensures that the list displayed by the view only contains those orders that satisfy the condition `[status='open']`.

Sample Code

```
view C1 as select from Customer {  
    name,  
    orders[status='open'].id as orderId  
};
```

The following example shows how to use the prefix notation to ensure that the compiler understands that there is only one association (`orders`) to resolve but with multiple elements (`id` and `date`):

Sample Code

```
view C1 as select from Customer {  
    name,  
    orders[status='open'].{ id as orderId,  
                           date as orderDate  
                     }  
};
```

Tip

Filter conditions and prefixes can be nested.

The following example shows how to use the associations `orders` and `items` in a view that displays a list of customers with open sales orders for items with a price greater than 200.

Sample Code

```
view C2 as select from Customer {  
    name,  
    orders[status='open'].{ id as orderId,  
                           date as orderDate,  
                           items[price>200].{ descr,  
                                    price  
                          }  
                     }  
};
```

Prefix Notation

The prefix notation can also be used without filters. The following example shows how to get a list of all customers with details of their sales orders. In this example, all uses of the association `orders` are combined

so that there is only one JOIN to the table SalesOrder. Similarly, both uses of the association items are combined, and there is only one JOIN to the table Item.

Sample Code

```
view C3 as select from Customer {  
    name,  
    orders.id      as orderId,  
    orders.date    as orderDate,  
    orders.items.descr as itemDescr,  
    orders.items.price as itemPrice  
};
```

The example above can be expressed more elegantly by combining the associations orders and items using the following prefix notation:

Sample Code

```
view C1 as select from Customer {  
    name,  
    orders.{ id   as orderId,  
             date as orderDate,  
             items. { descr as itemDescr,  
                      price as itemPrice  
             }  
    }  
};
```

Type Definition

In a CDS view definition, you can explicitly specify the type of a select item, as illustrated in the following example:

Sample Code

```
type MyInteger : Integer;  
entity E {  
    a : MyInteger;  
    b : MyInteger;  
};  
view V as select from E {  
    a,  
    a+b as s1,  
    a+b as s2 : MyInteger  
};
```

In the example of different type definitions, the following is true:

- a,
Has type "MyInteger"
- a+b as s1,
Has type "Integer" and any information about the user-defined type is lost

- `a+b as s2 : MyInteger`
Has type “`MyInteger`”, which is explicitly specified

Note

If necessary, a `CAST` function is added to the generated view in SAP HANA; this ensures that the `select` item's type in the SAP HANA view is the SAP HANA “type” corresponding to the explicitly specified CDS type.

Spatial Functions

The following view (`SpatialView1`) displays a list of all persons selected from the entity `Person` and uses the spatial function `ST_Distance` (*) to include information such as the distance between each person's home and business address (`distanceHomeToWork`), and the distance between their home address and the building SAP03 (`distFromSAP03`). The value for both distances is measured in kilometers, which is rounded up and displayed to one decimal point.

Sample Code

```
view SpatialView1 as select from Person {  
    name,  
    homeAddress.street_name || ', ' || homeAddress.city as home,  
    officeAddress.street_name || ', ' || officeAddress.city as office,  
    round( homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(officeAddress.loc, 'meter')/1000, 1) as  
    distanceHomeToWork,  
    round( homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(NEW ST_POINT(8.644072, 49.292910),  
    'meter')/1000, 1) as distFromSAP03  
};
```

Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

Related Information

[Create a View in CDS \[page 251\]](#)

[Spatial Types and Functions \[page 275\]](#)

4.1.7.3 Spatial Types and Functions

CDS supports the use of Geographic Information Systems (GIS) functions and element types in CDS-compliant entities and views.

Spatial data is data that describes the position, shape, and orientation of objects in a defined space; the data is represented as two-dimensional geometries in the form of points, line strings, and polygons. The following examples shows how to use the spatial function `ST_Distance` in a CDS view. The underlying spatial data used in the view is defined in a CDS entity using the type `ST_POINT`.

The following example, the CDS entity `Address` is used to store geo-spatial coordinates in element `loc` of type `ST_POINT`:

Sample Code

```
namespace samples;
@Schema: 'MYSHEMA'
context Spatial {
    entity Person {
        key id : Integer;
        name : String(100);
        homeAddress : Association[1] to Address;
        officeAddress : Association[1] to Address;
    };
    entity Address {
        key id : Integer;
        street_number : Integer;
        street_name : String(100);
        zip : String(10);
        city : String(100);
        loc : hana.ST_POINT(4326);
    };
    view GeoView1 as select from Person {
        name,
        homeAddress.street_name || ', ' || homeAddress.city as home,
        officeAddress.street_name || ', ' || officeAddress.city as office,
        round( homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(officeAddress.loc, 'meter')/1000,
        1) as distanceHomeToWork,
        round( homeAddress.loc.ST_Distance(NEW ST_POINT(8.644072, 49.292910),
        'meter')/1000, 1) as distFromSAP03
    };
}
```

The view `GeoView1` is used to display a list of all persons using the spatial function `ST_Distance` to include information such as the distance between each person's home and business address (`distanceHomeToWork`), and the distance between their home address and the building SAP03 (`distFromSAP03`). The value for both distances is measured in kilometers.

Caution

(*) SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at http://help.sap.com/hana_options. If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

Related Information

[Create a View in CDS \[page 251\]](#)

[CDS View Syntax Options \[page 262\]](#)

[CDS Entity Syntax Options \[page 209\]](#)

[CDS Primitive Data Types \[page 233\]](#)

[SAP HANA Spatial Reference *](#)

4.1.8 Modifications to CDS Artifacts

Changes to the definition of a CDS artifact result in changes to the corresponding catalog object. The resultant changes to the catalog object are made according to strict rules.

Reactivating a CDS document which contains changes to the original artifacts results in changes to the corresponding objects in the catalog. Before making change to the design-time definition of a CDS artifact, it is very important to understand what the consequences of the planned changes will be in the generated catalog objects.

- [Removing an artifact from a CDS document \[page 277\]](#)
- [Changing the definition of an artifact in a CDS document \[page 277\]](#)
- [Modifying a catalog object generated by CDS \[page 279\]](#)
- [Transporting a DU that contains modified CDS documents \[page 279\]](#)

Removing an Artifact from a CDS Document

If a CDS design-time artifact (for example, a table or a view) defined in an old version of a CDS document is no longer present in the new version, the corresponding runtime object is dropped from the catalog.

i Note

Renaming a CDS artifact results in the deletion of the artifact with the old name (with all the corresponding consequences) and the creation of a new CDS artifact with the new name.

Changing the Definition of an Artifact in a CDS Document

If a CDS design-time artifact is present in both the old and the new version of a CDS document, a check is performed to establish what, if any, changes have occurred. This applies to changes made either directly to a CDS artifact or indirectly, for example, as a result of a change to a dependent artifact. If changes have been made to the CDS document, changes are implemented in the corresponding catalog objects according to the following rules:

- Views
Views in the SAP HANA catalog are dropped and recreated according to the new design-time specification for the artifact in the CDS document.
- Element types
Changing the type of an element according to the implicit conversion rules described in the SAP HANA SQL documentation (*SAP HANA SQL Data Type Conversion*). Note: For some type conversions the activation will succeed only if the data in the corresponding DB table is valid for the target type (for example the conversion of String to Integer will succeed only if the corresponding DB table column contains only numbers that match the Integer type)
- Element modifier: `Null`/`NOT NULL`
Adding, removing or changing element modifiers “`Null`” and “`not null`” to make an element nullable or not nullable respectively can lead to problems when activating the resulting artifact; the activation will succeed only if the data in the database table corresponding to the CDS entity matches the new modifier. For example, you cannot make an element not nullable, if in the corresponding column in the database table some null values exist for which there is no default value defined.
- Element modifier: Default Value
If the default value modifier is removed, this has no effect on the existing data in the corresponding database table, and no default value will be used for any subsequently inserted record. If the default value is modified or newly added, the change will be applicable to all subsequent inserts in the corresponding database table. In addition, if the element is not nullable (irrespective of whether it was defined previously as such or within the same activation), the existing null values in the corresponding table will be replaced with the new default value.
- Element modifier: Primary Key
You can add an element to (or remove it from) the primary key by adding or removing the “`key`” modifier.

i Note

Adding the “`key`” modifier to an element will also make the column in the corresponding table `not nullable`. If column in the corresponding database table contains `null` values and there is no default value defined for the element, the activation of the modified CDS document will fail.

- Column or row store (@Catalog.tableType)

It is possible to change the `Catalog.tableType` annotation that defines the table type, for example, to transform a table from the column store (#COLUMN) to row store (#ROW), and vice versa.

- Index types (@Catalog.index)

It is possible to change the “`Catalog.index`” annotation, as long as the modified index is valid for the corresponding CDS entity.

For changes to individual elements of a CDS entity, for example, column definitions, the same logic applies as for complete artifacts in a CDS document.

- Since the elements of a CDS entity are identified by their name, changing the order of the elements in the entity definition will have no effect; the order of the columns in the generated catalog table object remains unchanged.
- Renaming an element in a CDS entity definition is not recognized; the rename operation results in the deletion of the renamed element and the creation of a new one.
- If a new element is added to a CDS entity definition, the order of the columns in the table generated in the catalog after the change cannot be guaranteed.

i Note

If an existing CDS entity definition is changed, the order of the columns in the generated database tables may be different from the order of the corresponding elements in the CDS entity definition.

In the following example of a simple CDS document, the context `OuterCtx` contains a CDS entity `Entity1` and the nested context `InnerCtx`, which contains the CDS entity definition `Entity2`.

```
namespace pack;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
context OuterCtx
{
  entity Entity1
  {
    key a : Integer;
    b : String(20);
  };
  context InnerCtx
  {
    entity Entity2
    {
      key x : Integer;
      y : String(10);
      z : LocalDate;
    };
  };
}
```

To understand the effect of the changes made to this simple CDS document in the following example, it is necessary to see the changes not only from the perspective of the developer who makes the changes but also the compiler which needs to interpret them.

From the developer's perspective, the CDS entity `Entity1` has been moved from context `OuterCtx` to `InnerCtx`. From the compiler's perspective, however, the entity `pack::OuterCtx.Entity1` has disappeared and, as a result, will be deleted (and the corresponding generated table with all its content dropped), and a new entity named `pack::OuterCtx.InnerCtx.Entity1` has been defined.

```
namespace pack;
@Schema: 'MYSCHHEMA'
```

```

context OuterCtx
{
  context InnerCtx
  {
    entity Entity1
    {
      key a : Integer;
      b : String(20);
    };
    entity Entity2
    {
      key x : Integer;
      q : String(10);
      z : LocalDate;
    };
  };
}

```

Similarly, renaming the element `y: String;` to `q: String;` in `Entity2` results in the deletion of column `y` and the creation of a new column `q` in the generated catalog object. As a consequence, the content of column `y` is lost.

Modifying a Catalog Object Generated from CDS

CDS does not support modifications to catalog objects generated from CDS documents. You must never modify an SAP HANA catalog object (in particular a table) that has been generated from a CDS document. The next time you activate the CDS document that contains the original CDS object definition and the corresponding catalog objects are generated, all modifications made to the catalog object are lost or activation might even fail due to inconsistencies.

Transporting a DU that Contains Modified CDS Documents

If the definition of a CDS entity has already been transported to another system, do not enforce activation of any illegal changes to this entity, for example, by means of an intermediate deletion.

Restrictions apply to changes that can be made to a CDS entity if the entity has been activated and a corresponding catalog object exists. If changes to a CDS entity on the source system produce an error during activation of the CDS document, for example, because you changed an element type in a CDS entity from `Binary` to `LocalDate`, you could theoretically delete the original CDS entity and then create a new CDS entity with the same name as the original entity but with the changed data type. However, if this change is transported to another system, where the old version of the entity already exists, the import will fail, because the information that the entity has been deleted and recreated is not available either on the target system or in the delivery unit.

Related Information

[SAP HANA to CDS Data-Type Mapping \[page 221\]](#)

[SAP HANA SQL Data Type Conversion](#)

4.1.9 Tutorial: Get Started with CDS

You can use the Data Definition Language (DDL) to define a table, which is also referred to as an “entity” in SAP HANA Core Data Services (CDS). The finished artifact is saved in the repository with the extension (suffix) .hdbdd, for example, MyTable.hdbdd.

Prerequisites

This task describes how to create a file containing a CDS entity (table definition) using DDL. Before you start this task, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema definition MYSHEMA.hdbschema.

Context

The SAP HANA studio provides a dedicated DDL editor to help you define data-related artifacts, for example, entities, or views. To create a simple database table with the name "MyTable", perform the following steps:

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the CDS document that defines the entity you want to create.
Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new CDS document (for example, in a project you have already created and shared) and perform the following tasks:
 - a. Right-click the folder where you want to create the CDS document and choose  *New*  *DDL Source* *File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.

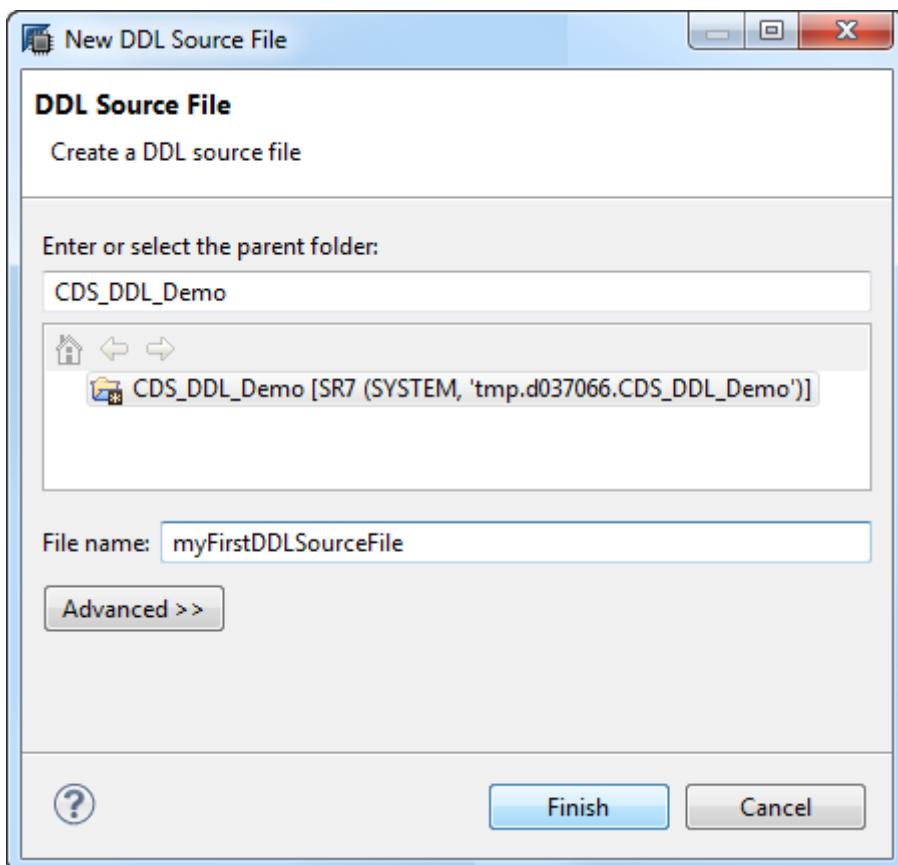
i Note

This menu option is only available from shared projects; projects that are linked to the SAP HANA repository.

- b. Enter the name of the entity in the *File Name* box, for example, `MyFirstCDSSourceFile`.

i Note

The file extension `.hdbdd` is added automatically to the new DDL file name. The repository uses the file extension to make assumptions about the contents of repository artifacts, for example, that `.hdbdd` files contain DDL statements.



- c. Choose *Finish* to save the new empty CDS document.

i Note

If you are using a CDS document to define a single CDS-compliant entity, the name of the CDS document must match the name of the entity defined in the CDS document, for example, with the `entity` keyword. In the example in this tutorial, you would save the entity definition "BOOK" in the CDS document `BOOK.hdbdd`.

5. Define the table entity.

To edit the CDS document, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the file you created in the previous step, for example, `BOOK.hdbdd`, and add the entity-definition code:

Note

The CDS DDL editor automatically inserts the mandatory keywords `namespace` and `context` into any new DDL source file that you create using the [New DDL Source File](#) dialog. The following values are assumed:

- `namespace = <Current Project Name>`
- `context = <New DDL File Name>`

The name space declared in a CDS document must match the repository package in which the object the document defines is located.

In this example, the CDS document `BOOK.hdbdd` that defines the CDS entity “BOOK” must reside in the package `mycompany.myapp1`.

```
namespace mycompany.myapp1;
@Schema : 'MYSCHHEMA'
@Catalog.tableType: #COLUMN
@Catalog.index: [ { name : 'MYINDEX1', unique : true, order : #DESC,
elementNames : ['ISBN'] } ]
entity BOOK {
    key Author      : String(100);
    key BookTitle   : String(100);
    ISBN          : Integer not null;
    Publisher     : String(100);
};
```

6. Save the CDS document `BOOK.hdbdd`.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose  [Team](#)  from the context-sensitive popup menu.

7. Activate the new CDS document in the repository.
 - a. In the [Project Explorer](#) view, locate the newly created artifact `BOOK.hdbdd`.
 - b. Right-click `BOOK.hdbdd` and choose  [Team](#) >  in the context-sensitive popup menu.
The CDS/DDL editor checks the syntax of the source file code, highlights the lines where an error occurs, and provides details of the error in the [Problems](#) view.

```

myFirstDDLSourceFile.hdbdd
namespace tmp.d037066.CDS_DDL_Demo;

@Schema : 'SYSTEM'
context myFirstDDLSourceFile {

entity myFirstEntity {
    id : String(10);
}
}

```

Problems: 1 error, 0 warnings, 0 others

Description

Entity "tmp.d037066.CDS_DDL_Demo::myFirstDDLSourceFile.myFirstEntity" requires a key definition

The activation creates the following table in the schema MYSHEMA, both of which are visible using the SAP HANA studio:

```
"MYSHEMA"."mycompany.myapp1::BOOK"
```

The following public synonym is also created, which can be referenced using the standard SQL query notation:

```
"mycompany.myapp1::BOOK"
```

8. Add an entry to the BOOK entity using SQL.

```
INSERT INTO "mycompany.myapp1::BOOK" VALUES ( 'Shakespeare', 'Hamlet', '1234567', 'Books Incorporated' );
```

9. Save and activate the modifications to the entity.

10. Check the new entry by running a simply SQL query.

```
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM "mycompany.myapp1::BOOK" WHERE Author = 'Shakespeare'
```

Related Information

[Create a Schema \[page 297\]](#)

4.1.10 Import Data with CDS Table-Import

The table-import function is a data-provisioning tool that enables you to import data from comma-separated values (CSV) files into SAP HANA tables.

Prerequisites

Before you start this task, make sure that the following prerequisites are met:

- An SAP HANA database instance is available.
- The SAP HANA database client is installed and configured.
- You have a database user account set up with the roles containing sufficient privileges to perform actions in the repository, for example, add packages, add objects, and so on.
- The SAP HANA studio is installed and connected to the SAP HANA repository.
- You have a development environment including a repository workspace, a package structure for your application, and a shared project to enable you to synchronize changes to the project files in the local file system with the repository.

i Note

The names used in the following task are for illustration purposes only; where necessary, replace the names of schema, tables, files, and so on shown in the following examples with your own names.

Context

In this tutorial, you import data from a CSV file into a table generated from a design-time definition that uses the .hdbdd syntax, which complies with the Core Data Services (CDS) specifications.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

Procedure

1. Create a root package for your table-import application.

In SAP HANA studio, open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective and perform the following steps:

- a. In the package hierarchy displayed in the *Systems* view, right-click the package where you want to create the new package for your table-import configuration and choose *New > Package...*.
- b. Enter a name for your package, for example **TiTest**. You must create the new **TiTest** package in your own namespace, for example `mycompany.tests.TiTest`

Note

Naming conventions exist for package names, for example, a package name must not start with either a dot (.) or a hyphen (-) and cannot contain two or more consecutive dots (..). In addition, the name must not exceed 190 characters.

- a. Choose **OK** to create the new package.
2. Create a set of table-import files.

For the purposes of this tutorial, the following files must all be created in the same package, for example, a package called `TiTest`. However, the table-import feature also allows you to use files distributed in different packages

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- The table-import configuration file, for example, `TiConfiguration.hdbti`
Specifies the source file containing the data values to import and the target table in SAP HANA into which the data must be inserted
- A CSV file, for example, `myTiData.csv`
Contains the data to be imported into the SAP HANA table during the table-import operation; values in the `.csv` file can be separated either by a comma (,) or a semi-colon (;).
- A target table.
The target table can be either a runtime table in the catalog or a table definition, for example, a table defined using the `.hdbtable` syntax (`TiTable.hdbtable`) or the CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax (`TiTable.hdbdd`).

Note

In this tutorial, the target table for the table-import operation is `TiTable.hdbdd`, a design-time table defined using the CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax.

- The schema named `AMT`
Specifies the name of the schema in which the target import table resides

When all the necessary files are available, you can import data from a source file, such as a CSV file, into the desired target table.

3. If it does not already exist, create a schema named `AMT` in the catalog; the `AMT` schema is where the target table for the table-import operation resides.
4. Create or open the table-definition file for the target import table (`inhabitants.hdbdd`) and enter the following lines of text; this example uses the `.hdbdd` syntax.

Note

In the CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax, the `namespace` keyword denotes the path to the package containing the table-definition file.

```
namespace mycompany.tests.TiTest;
```

```

@Schema : 'AMT'
@Catalog.tableType : #COLUMN
entity inhabitants {
    key ID : Integer;
    surname : String(30);
    name : String(30);
    city : String(30);
};

```

5. Open the CSV file containing the data to import, for example, `inhabitants.csv` in a text editor and enter the values shown in the following example.

```

0,Annan,Kwesi,Accra
1,Essuman,Wiredu,Tema
2,Tetteh,Kwame,Kumasi
3,Nterful,Akye,Tarkwa
4,Acheampong,Kojo,Tamale
5,Assamoah,Adjoa,Takoradi
6,Mensah,Afua,Cape Coast

```

Note

You can import data from multiple `.csv` files in a single, table-import operation. However, each `.csv` file must be specified in a separate code block (`{table= ...}`) in the table-import configuration file.

6. Create or open the table-import configuration file (`inhabitants.hdbti`) and enter the following lines of text.

```

import = [
    {
        table = "mycompany.tests.TiTest::inhabitants";
        schema = "AMT";
        file = "mycompany.tests.TiTest:inhabitants.csv";
        header = false;
    }
];

```

7. Deploy the table import.
 - Select the package that you created in the first step, for example, `mycompany.tests.TiTest`.
 - Click the alternate mouse button and choose *Commit*.
 - Click the alternate mouse button and choose *Activate*.

This activates all the repository objects. The data specified in the CSV file `inhabitants.csv` is imported into the SAP HANA table `inhabitants` using the data-import configuration defined in the `inhabitants.hdbti` table-import configuration file.

8. Check the contents of the runtime table `inhabitants` in the catalog.

To ensure that the import operation completed as expected, use the SAP HANA studio to view the contents of the runtime table `inhabitants` in the catalog. You need to confirm that the correct data was imported into the correct columns.

- In the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Systems* view.
- Navigate to the catalog location where the `inhabitants` object resides, for example:



- Open a data preview for the updated object.

Right-click the updated object and choose *Open Data Preview* in the context-sensitive menu.

4.1.10.1 Data Provisioning Using Table Import

You can import data from comma-separated values (CSV) into the SAP HANA tables using the SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) table-import feature.

In SAP HANA XS, you create a table-import scenario by setting up an table-import configuration file and one or more comma-separated value (CSV) files containing the content you want to import into the specified SAP HANA table. The import-configuration file links the import operation to one or more target tables. The table definition (for example, in the form of a `.hdbdd` or `.hdbtable` file) can either be created separately or be included in the table-import scenario itself.

To use the SAP HANA XS table-import feature to import data into an SAP HANA table, you need to understand the following table-import concepts:

- Table-import configuration

You define the table-import model in a configuration file that specifies the data fields to import and the target tables for each data field.

Note

The table-import file must have the `.hdbt` extension, for example, `myTableImport.hdbti`.

CSV Data File Constraints

The following constraints apply to the CSV file used as a source for the table-import feature in SAP HANA XS:

- The number of table columns must match the number of CSV columns.
- There must not be any incompatibilities between the data types of the table columns and the data types of the CSV columns.
- Overlapping data in data files is not supported.
- The target table of the import must not be modified (or appended to) outside of the data-import operation. If the table is used for storage of application data, this data may be lost during any operation to re-import or update the data.

Related Information

[Table-Import Configuration \[page 288\]](#)

[Table-Import Configuration-File Syntax \[page 290\]](#)

4.1.10.2 Table-Import Configuration

You can define the elements of a table-import operation in a design-time file; the configuration includes information about source data and the target table in SAP HANA.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to perform data-provisioning operations that you define in a design-time configuration file. The configuration file is transportable, which means you can transfer the data-provisioning between SAP HANA systems quickly and easily.

The table-import configuration enables you to specify how data from a comma-separated-value (.csv) file is imported into a target table in SAP HANA. The configuration specifies the source file containing the data values to import and the target table in SAP HANA into which the data must be inserted. As further options, you can specify which field delimiter to use when interpreting data in the source .csv file and if keys must be used to determine which columns in the target table to insert the imported data into.

i Note

If you use **multiple** table import configurations to import data into a **single** target table, the **keys** keyword is mandatory. This is to avoid problems relating to the overwriting or accidental deletion of existing data.

The following example of a table-import configuration shows how to define a simple import operation which inserts data from the source files `myData.csv` and `myData2.csv` into the table `myTable` in the schema `mySchema`.

```
import = [
    {
        table = "myTable";
        schema = "mySchema";
        file = "sap.ti2.demo:myData.csv";
        header = false;
        delimField = ",";
        keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_CUBE" ];
    },
    {
        table = "sap.ti2.demo::myTable";
        file = "sap.ti2.demo:myData2.csv";
        header = false;
        delimField = ",";
        keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_CUBE" ];
    }
];
```

In the table import configuration, you can specify the target table using either of the following methods:

- Public synonym ("sap.ti2.demo::myTable")
If you use the public synonym to reference a target table for the import operation, you must use either the `hdbtable` or `cdstable` keyword, for example, `hdbtable = "sap.ti2.demo::myTable";`
- Schema-qualified catalog name ("mySchema"."MyTable")
If you use the schema-qualified catalog name to reference a target table for the import operation, you must use the `table` keyword in combination with the `schema` keyword, for example, `table = "myTable"; schema = "mySchema";`

i Note

Both the schema and the target table specified in the table-import operation must already exist. If either the specified table or the schema does not exist, SAP HANA XS displays an error message during the activation

of the configuration file, for example: Table import target table cannot be found. or Schema could not be resolved.

You can also use one table-import configuration file to import data from multiple .csv source files. However, you must specify each import operation in a new code block introduced by the [*hdb | cds*]table keyword, as illustrated in the example above.

By default, the table-import operation assumes that data values in the .csv source file are separated by a comma (,). However, the table-import operation can also interpret files containing data values separated by a semi-colon (;).

- Comma (,) separated values

```
,, ,BW_CUBE,,40000000,2,40000000,all
```

- Semi-colon (:) separated values

```
; ; ;BW_CUBE;;40000000;3;40000000;all
```

i Note

If the activated .hdbti configuration used to import data is subsequently deleted, only the data that was imported by the deleted .hdbti configuration is dropped from the target table. All other data including any data imported by other .hdbti configurations remains in the table. If the target CDS entity has no key (annotated with @nokey) all data that is not part of the CSV file is dropped from the table during each table-import activation.

You can use the optional keyword **keys** to specify the key range taken from the source .csv file for import into the target table. If keys are specified for an import in a table import configuration, multiple imports into same target table are checked for potential data collisions.

i Note

The configuration-file syntax does not support wildcards in the key definition; the full value of a selectable column value has to be specified.

Security Considerations

In SAP HANA XS, design-time artifacts such as tables (.hdbtable or .hdbdd) and table-import configurations (.hdbti) are not normally exposed to clients via HTTP. However, design-time artifacts containing comma-separated values (.csv) could be considered as potential artifacts to expose to users through HTTP. For this reason, it is essential to protect these exposed .csv artifacts by setting the appropriate application privileges; the application privileges prevents data leakage, for example, by denying access to data by users, who are not normally allowed to see all the records in such tables.

➔ Tip

Place all the .csv files used to import content to into tables together in a single package and set the appropriate (restrictive) application-access permissions for that package, for example, with a dedicated .xsaccess file.

Related Information

[Table-Import Configuration-File Syntax \[page 290\]](#)

4.1.10.3 Table-Import Configuration-File Syntax

The design-time configuration file used to define a table-import operation requires the use of a specific syntax. The syntax comprises a series of keyword=value pairs.

If you use the table-import configuration syntax to define the details of the table-import operation, you can use the keywords illustrated in the following code example. The resulting design-time file must have the .hdbti file extension, for example, myTableImportCfg.hdbti.

```
import = [
    {
        table = "myTable";
        schema = "mySchema";
        file = "sap.ti2.demo:myData.csv";
        header = false;
        useHeaderNames = false;
        delimField = ",";
        delimEnclosing="\"";
        distinguishEmptyFromNull = true;
        keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_CUBE", "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_DSO", "GROUP_TYPE" :
"BW_PSA"];
    }
];
```

table

In the table-import configuration, the `table`, `cdstable`, and `hdbtable` keywords enable you to specify the name of the target table into which the table-import operation must insert data. The target table you specify in the table-import configuration can be a runtime table in the **catalog** or a **design-time** table definition, for example, a table defined using either the `.hdbtable` or the `.hdbdd` (Core Data Services) syntax.

i Note

The target table specified in the table-import configuration must already exist. If the specified table does not exist, SAP HANA XS displays an error message during the activation of the configuration file, for example: Table import target table cannot be found.

Use the `table` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify the name of the target table using the qualified name for a **catalog** table.

```
table = "target_table";
schema = "mySchema";
```

Note

You must also specify the name of the schema in which the target catalog table resides, for example, using the `schema` keyword.

The `hdbtable` keyword in the table-import configuration enables you to specify the name of a target table using the public synonym for a **design-time** table defined with the `.hdbtable` syntax.

```
hdbtable = "sap.ti2.demo::target_table";
```

The `cdstable` keyword in the table-import configuration enables you to specify the name of a target table using the public synonym for a **design-time** table defined with the CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax.

```
cdstable = "sap.ti2.demo::target_table";
```

Caution

There is no explicit check if the addressed table is created using the `.hdbtable` or CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax.

If the table specified with the `cdstable` or `hdbtable` keyword is not defined with the corresponding syntax, SAP HANA displays an error when you try to activate the artifact, for example, `Invalid combination of table declarations found, you may only use [cdstable | hdbtable | table]`.

schema

The following code example shows the syntax required to specify a schema in a table-import configuration.

```
schema = "TI2_TESTS";
```

Note

The schema specified in the table-import configuration file must already exist.

If the schema specified in a table-import configuration file does not exist, SAP HANA XS displays an error message during the activation of the configuration file, for example:

- Schema could not be resolved.
- If you import into a catalog table, please provide schema.

The `schema` is only required if you use a table's schema-qualified catalog name to reference the target table for an import operation, for example, `table = "myTable"; schema = "mySchema";`. The schema is **not** required if you use a public synonym to reference a table in a table-import configuration, for example, `hdbtable = "sap.ti2.demo::target_table";`.

file

Use the `file` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify the source file containing the data that the table-import operation imports into the target table. The source file must be a `.csv` file with the data values separated either by a comma (,) or a semi-colon (;). The file definition must also include the full package path in the SAP HANA repository.

```
file = "sap.ti2.demo:myData.csv";
```

header

Use the `header` keyword in the table-import configuration to indicate if the data contained in the specified `.csv` file includes a header line. The `header` keyword is optional, and the possible values are `true` or `false`.

```
header = false;
```

useHeaderNames

Use the `useHeaderNames` keyword in the table-import configuration to indicate if the data contained in the first line of the specified `.csv` file must be interpreted. The `useHeaderNames` keyword is optional; it is used in combination with the `header` keyword. The `useHeaderNames` keyword is boolean: possible values are `true` or `false`.

i Note

The `useHeaderNames` keyword only works if `header` is **also** set to “`true`”.

```
useHeaderNames = false;
```

The table-import process considers the order of the columns; if the column order specified in the `.csv` file does not match the order used for the columns in the target table, an error occurs on activation.

delimField

Use the `delimField` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify which character is used to separate the values in the data to be imported. Currently, the table-import operation supports either the comma (,) or the semi-colon (;). The following example shows how to specify that values in the `.csv` source file are separated by a semi-colon (;).

```
delimField = ";";
```

Note

By default, the table-import operation assumes that data values in the .csv source file are separated by a comma (.). If no delimiter field is specified in the .hdbt_i table-import configuration file, the default setting is assumed.

delimEnclosing

Use the `delimEnclosing` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify a single character that indicates both the start and end of a set of characters to be interpreted as a single value in the .csv file, for example "This is all one, single value". This feature enables you to include in data values in a .csv file even the character defined as the field delimiter (in `delimField`), for example, a comma (,) or a semi-colon (;).

Tip

If the value used to separate the data fields in your .csv file (for example, the comma (,)) is also used inside the data values themselves ("This, is, a, value"), you **must** declare and use a delimiter enclosing character and use it to enclose all data values to be imported.

The following example shows how to use the `delimEnclosing` keyword to specify the quote (") as the delimiting character that indicates both the start and the end of a value in the .csv file. Everything enclosed between the `delimEnclosing` characters (in this example, "") is interpreted by the import process as one, single value.

```
delimEnclosing="\"";
```

Note

Since the `hdbti` syntax requires us to use the quotes (") to specify the delimiting character, and the delimiting character in this example is, itself, also a quote ("), we need to use the backslash character (\) to escape the second quote (").

In the following example of values in a .csv file, we assume that `delimEnclosing=""`, and `delimField=","`. This means that imported values in the .csv file are enclosed in the quote character ("value") and multiple values are separated by the comma ("value1", "value 2"). Any commas **inside** the quotes are interpreted as a comma and not as a field delimiter.

```
"Value 1, has a comma","Value 2 has, two, commas","Value3"
```

You can use other characters as the enclosing delimiter, too, for example, the hash (#). In the following example, we assume that `delimEnclosing="#"` and `delimField=";"`. Any semi-colons included **inside** the hash characters are interpreted as a semi-colon and not as a field delimiter.

```
#Value 1; has a semi-colon#;#Value 2 has; two; semi-colons#;#Value3#
```

distinguishEmptyFromNull

Use the `distinguishEmptyFromNull` keyword in combination with `delimEnclosing` to ensure that the table-import process correctly interprets any **empty** value in the `.csv` file, which is enclosed with the value defined in the `delimEnclosing` keyword, for example, as an empty space. This ensures that an empty space is imported “as is” into the target table. If the empty space is incorrectly interpreted, it is imported as `NULL`.

```
distinguishEmptyFromNull = true;
```

i Note

The default setting for `distinguishEmptyFromNull` is `false`.

If `distinguishEmptyFromNull=false` is used in combination with `delimEnclosing`, then an empty value in the `.csv` (with or without quotes "") is interpreted as `NULL`.

```
"Value1","","",Value2
```

The table-import process would add the values shown in the example `.csv` above into the target table as follows:

```
Value1 | NULL | NULL | Value2
```

keys

Use the `keys` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify the key range to be considered when importing the data from the `.csv` source file into the target table.

```
keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_CUBE", "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_DSO", "GROUP_TYPE" :  
"BW_PSA"];
```

In the example above, all the lines in the `.csv` source file where the `GROUP_TYPE` column value matches one of the given values (`BW_CUBE`, `BW_DSO`, or `BW_PSA`) are imported into the target table specified in the table-import configuration.

```
; ; ;BW_CUBE;;40000000;3;40000000;slave  
; ; ;BW_DSO;;40000000;3;40000000;slave  
; ; ;BW_PSA;;2000000000;1;2000000000;slave
```

In the following example, the `GROUP_TYPE` column is specified as empty("")).

```
keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : ""];
```

All the lines in the `.csv` source file where the `GROUP_TYPE` column is empty are imported into the target table specified in the table-import configuration.

```
; ; ; ;40000000;2;40000000;all
```

4.1.10.4 Table-Import Configuration Error Messages

During the course of the activation of the table-import configuration and the table-import operation itself, SAP HANA checks for errors and displays the following information in a brief message.

Table 34: Table-Import Error Messages

Message Number	Message Text	Message Reason
40200	Invalid combination of table declarations found, you may only use [cdstable hdbtable table]	<ol style="list-style-type: none">The <code>table</code> keyword is specified in a table-import configuration that references a table defined using the <code>.hdbtable</code> (or <code>.hdbdd</code>) syntax.The <code>hdbtable</code> keyword is specified in a table-import configuration that references a table defined using another table-definition syntax, for example, the <code>.hdbdd</code> syntax.The <code>cdstable</code> keyword is specified in a table-import configuration that references a table defined using another table-definition syntax, for example, the <code>.hdbtable</code> syntax.
40201	If you import into a catalog table, please provide schema	<ol style="list-style-type: none">You specified a target table with the <code>table</code> keyword but did not specify a schema with the <code>schema</code> keyword.
40202	Schema could not be resolved	<ol style="list-style-type: none">The schema specified with the <code>schema</code> keyword does not exist or could not be found (wrong name).The public synonym for an <code>.hdbtable</code> or <code>.hdbdd</code> (CDS) table definition cannot be resolved to a catalog table.
40203	Schema resolution error	<ol style="list-style-type: none">The schema specified with the <code>schema</code> keyword does not exist or could not be found (wrong name).The database could not complete the schema-resolution process for some reason - perhaps unrelated to the table-import configuration (<code>.hdbt.i</code>), for example, an inconsistent database status.
40204	Table import target table cannot be found	<ol style="list-style-type: none">The table specified with the <code>table</code> keyword does not exist or could not be found (wrong name or wrong schema name).
40210	Table import syntax error	<ol style="list-style-type: none">The table-import configuration file (<code>.hdbt.i</code>) contains one or more syntax errors.

Message Number	Message Text	Message Reason
40211	Table import constraint checks failed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> The same key is specified in multiple table-import configurations (.hdbsi files), which leads to overlaps in the range of data to import. If keys are specified for an import in a table-import configuration, multiple imports into the same target table are checked for potential data collisions

4.2 Creating the Persistence Model with HDBTable

HDBTable is a language syntax that can be used to define a design-time representation of the artifacts that comprise the persistent data models in SAP HANA.

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), the persistence model defines the schema, tables, and views that specify what data to make accessible and how. The persistence model is mapped to the consumption model that is exposed to client applications and users, so that data can be analyzed and displayed.

SAP HANA XS enables you to create database schema, tables, views, and sequences as design-time files in the repository. Repository files can be read by applications that you develop.

i Note

All repository files including your view definition can be transported (along with tables, schema, and sequences) to other SAP HANA systems, for example, in a delivery unit. A delivery unit is the medium SAP HANA provides to enable you to assemble all your application-related repository artifacts together into an archive that can be easily exported to other systems.

You can also set up data-provisioning rules and save them as design-time objects so that they can be included in the delivery unit that you transport between systems.

As part of the process of setting up the basic persistence model for SAP HANA XS, you perform the following tasks:

Table 35:

Task	Description
Create a schema	Define a design-time schema and maintain the schema definition in the repository; the transportable schema has the file extension .hdbschema, for example, MYSCHHEMA.hdbschema.
Create a synonym	Define a design-time synonym and maintain the synonym definition in the repository; the transportable synonym has the file extension .hdbsynonym, for example, MySynonym.hdbsynonym.
Create a table	Define a design-time table and maintain the table definition in the repository; the transportable table has the file extension .hdbtable, for example, MYTABLE.hdbtable
Create a reusable table structure	Define the structure of a database table in a design-time file in the repository; you can reuse the table-structure definition to specify the table type when creating a new table.

Task	Description
Create a view	Define a design-time view and maintain the view definition in the repository; the transportable view has the file extension .hdbview, for example, MYVIEW.hdbview
Create a sequence	Define a design-time sequence and maintain the sequence definition in the repository; the transportable sequence has the file extension .hdbsequence, for example, MYSEQUENCE.hdbsequence
Import table content	Define data-provisioning rules that enable you to import data from comma-separated values (CSV) files into SAP HANA tables using the SAP HANA XS table-import feature; the complete configuration can be included in a delivery unit and transported between SAP HANA systems.

i Note

On activation of a repository file, the file suffix, for example, .hdbview, .hdbschema, or .hdbtable, is used to determine which runtime plug-in to call during the activation process. The plug-in reads the repository file selected for activation, for example, a table, sees the object descriptions in the file, and creates the appropriate runtime object.

Related Information

[Create a Schema \[page 297\]](#)

[Create a Table \[page 301\]](#)

[Create an SQL View \[page 322\]](#)

[Create a Synonym \[page 328\]](#)

4.2.1 Create a Schema

A schema defines the container that holds database objects such as tables, views, and stored procedures.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.

Context

This task describes how to create a file containing a schema definition using the `hdbschema` syntax. Schema definition files are stored in the SAP HANA repository.

Note

A schema generated from an `.hdbschema` artifact can also be used in the context of Core Data Services (CDS).

To create a schema definition file in the repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the schema definition file.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new schema-definition file and perform the following tasks:

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the schema-definition file and choose *New>Schema* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter or select the parent folder.
- c. Enter the name of the schema in the *File Name* field.

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- d. Select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you.
 - e. Choose *Finish* to save the new schema in the repository.
5. Define the schema name.

To edit the schema file, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the schema file you created in the previous step, for example, `MYSCHHEMA.hdbschema`, and add the schema-definition code to the file:

Note

The following code example is provided for illustration purposes only.

```
schema_name="MYSCHHEMA";
```

6. Save the schema file.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose  *Team*  from the context-sensitive popup menu.

7. Activate the schema.
 - a. Locate and right-click the new schema file in the *Project Explorer* view.
 - b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose  *Team* .
8. Grant SELECT privileges to the owner of the new schema.

After activation in the repository, the schema object is only visible in the catalog to the _SYS_REPO user. To enable other users, for example the schema owner, to view the newly created schema in the SAP HANA studio's *Modeler* perspective, you must grant the user the required SELECT privilege.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio *Systems* view, right-click the SAP HANA system hosting the repository where the schema was activated and choose *SQL Console* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. In the *SQL console*, execute the statement illustrated in the following example, where <SCHEMANAME> is the name of the newly activated schema, and <username> is the database user ID of the schema owner:

```
call
  _SYS_REPO.GRANT_SCHEMA_PRIVILEGE_ON_ACTIVATED_CONTENT('select', '<SCHEMANAME>',
  '<username>');
```

Related Information

[Schema \[page 299\]](#)

4.2.1.1 Schema

Relational databases contain a catalog that describes the various elements in the system. The catalog divides the database into sub-databases known as schema. A database schema enables you to logically group together objects such as tables, views, and stored procedures. Without a defined schema, you cannot write to the catalog.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database schema as a transportable design-time file in the repository. Repository files can be read by applications that you develop.

If your application refers to the repository (design-time) version of a schema rather than the runtime version in the catalog, for example, by using the explicit path to the repository file (with suffix), any changes to the repository version of the file are visible as soon as they are committed to the repository. There is no need to wait for the repository to activate a runtime version of the schema.

If you want to define a transportable schema using the design-time `hdbschema` specifications, use the configuration schema illustrated in the following example:

```
string schema_name
```

The following example shows the contents of a valid transportable schema-definition file for a schema called MYSHEMA:

```
schema_name="MYSHEMA";
```

The schema is stored in the repository with the schema name MYSHEMA as the file name and the suffix .hdbschema, for example, MYSHEMA.hdbschema.

i Note

A schema generated from an .hdbschema artifact can also be used in the context of Core Data Services (CDS).

Schema Activation

If you want to create a schema definition as a design-time object, you must create the schema as a flat file. You save the file containing the schema definition with the suffix .hdbschema in the appropriate package for your application in the SAP HANA repository. You can activate the design-time objects at any point in time.

i Note

On activation of a repository file, the file suffix, for example, .hdbschema, is used to determine which runtime plugin to call during the activation process. The plug-in reads the repository file selected for activation, parses the object descriptions in the file, and creates the appropriate runtime objects.

If you activate a schema-definition object in SAP HANA, the activation process checks if a schema with the same name already exists in the SAP HANA repository. If a schema with the specified name does not exist, the repository creates a schema with the specified name and makes _SYS_REPO the owner of the new schema.

i Note

The schema cannot be dropped even if the deletion of a schema object is activated.

If you define a schema in SAP HANA XS, note the following important points regarding the schema name:

- Name mapping
The schema name must be identical to the name of the corresponding repository object.
- Naming conventions
The schema name must adhere to the SAP HANA rules for database identifiers. In addition, a schema name must not start with the letters SAP*; the SAP* namespace is reserved for schemas used by SAP products and applications.
- Name usage
The Data Definition Language (DDL) rendered by the repository contains the schema name as a delimited identifier.

Related Information

[Create a Schema \[page 297\]](#)

4.2.2 Create a Table

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database table as a design-time file in the repository.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema definition `MYSCHHEMA.hdbschema`

Context

This task describes how to create a file containing a table definition using the `hdbtable` syntax. Table definition files are stored in the SAP HANA repository. To create a table file in the repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the table definition file.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new table file and perform the following steps:

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the table file and choose *New >Database Table* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter or select the parent folder.
- c. Enter the name of the table in the *File Name* box.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- d. Select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you.
 - e. Choose *Finish* to save the new table definition file.
5. Define the table.

To edit the table definition, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the table-definition file you created in the previous step, for example, MYTABLE.hdbtable, and add the table-definition code to the file:

ℹ Note

The following code example is provided for illustration purposes only.

```
table.schemaName = "MYSCHHEMA";
table.tableType = COLUMNSTORE;
table.columns = [
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment =
 = "dummy comment";},
    {name = "Col2"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},
    {name = "Col3"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20;
 defaultValue = "Defaultvalue";},
    {name = "Col4"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 2; scale
 = 3;}];
table.indexes = [
    {name = "MYINDEX1"; unique = true; indexColumns = ["Col2"];},
    {name = "MYINDEX2"; unique = true; indexColumns = ["Col1", "Col4"]}];
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["Col1", "Col2"];
```

6. Save the table-definition file.

ℹ Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose **► Team > Commit** from the context-sensitive popup menu.

7. Activate the changes in the repository.
- a. Locate and right-click the new table file in the *Project Explorer* view.
 - b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose **► Team > Activate**.

Related Information

[Tables \[page 303\]](#)

[Table Configuration Syntax \[page 304\]](#)

[Create a Schema \[page 297\]](#)

4.2.2.1 Tables

In the SAP HANA database, as in other relational databases, a table is a set of data elements that are organized using columns and rows. A database table has a specified number of columns, defined at the time of table creation, but can have any number of rows. Database tables also typically have meta-data associated with them; the meta-data might include constraints on the table or on the values within particular columns.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database table as a design-time file in the repository. All repository files including your table definition can be transported to other SAP HANA systems, for example, in a delivery unit.

i Note

A delivery unit is the medium SAP HANA provides to enable you to assemble all your application-related repository artifacts together into an archive that can be easily exported to other systems.

If your application is configured to use the design-time version of a database table in the repository rather than the runtime version in the catalog, any changes to the repository version of the table are visible as soon as they are committed to the repository. There is no need to wait for the repository to activate a runtime version of the table.

If you want to define a transportable table using the design-time .hdbtable specifications, use the configuration schema illustrated in the following example:

```
struct TableDefinition {
    string SchemaName;
    optional bool temporary;
    optional TableType tableType;
    optional bool public;
    optional TableLoggingType loggingType;
    list<ColumnDefinition> columns;
    optional list<IndexDefinition> indexes;
    optional PrimaryKeyDefinition primaryKey;
    optional string description
};
```

The following code illustrates a simple example of a design-time table definition:

```
table.schemaName = "MYSCHHEMA";
table.tableType = COLUMNSTORE;
table.columns = [
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment =
    "dummy comment";},
    {name = "Col2"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},
    {name = "Col3"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20;
    defaultValue = "Defaultvalue";},
    {name = "Col4"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 2; scale =
    3;}];
table.indexes = [
    {name = "MYINDEX1"; unique = true; order = DSC; indexColumns = ["Col2"]},
    {name = "MYINDEX2"; unique = true; order = DSC; indexColumns = ["Col1",
    "Col4"]}];
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["Col1", "Col2"];
```

If you want to create a database table as a repository file, you must create the table as a flat file and save the file containing the table dimensions with the suffix .hdbtable, for example, MYTABLE.hdbtable. The new file is located in the package hierarchy you establish in the SAP HANA repository. You can activate the repository files at any point in time.

i Note

On activation of a repository file, the file suffix, for example, `.hdbtable`, is used to determine which runtime plug-in to call during the activation process. The plug-in reads the repository file selected for activation, in this case a table, parses the object descriptions in the file, and creates the appropriate runtime objects.

Security Considerations

It is important to bear in mind that an incorrectly defined table can lead to security-related problems. If the content of the table you create is used to determine the behavior of the application, for example, whether data is displayed depends on the content of a certain cell, any modification of the table content could help an attacker to obtain elevated privileges. Although you can use authorization settings to restrict the disclosure of information, data-modification issues need to be handled as follows:

- Make sure you specify the field type and define a maximum length for the field
- Avoid using generic types such as `VARCHAR` or `BLOB`.
- Keep the field length as short as possible; it is much more difficult to inject shell-code into a string that is 5 characters long than one that can contain up to 255 characters.

Related Information

[Table Configuration Syntax \[page 304\]](#)

[Create a Table \[page 301\]](#)

4.2.2.2 Table Configuration Syntax

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use the `hdbtable` syntax to create a database table as a design-time file in the repository. The design-time artifact that contains the table definition must adhere to the `.hdbtable` syntax specified below.

Table Definition

The following code illustrates a simple example of a design-time table definition using the `.hdbtable` syntax.

i Note

Keywords are case-sensitive, for example, `tableType` and `loggingType`, and the schema referenced in the table definition, for example, `MYSHEMA`, must already exist.

```
table.schemaName = "MYSHEMA";
table.temporary = true;
table.tableType = COLUMNSTORE;
table.loggingType = NOLOGGING;
table.columns = [
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment =
    "dummy comment";},
    {name = "Col2"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},
    {name = "Col3"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20;
defaultValue = "Defaultvalue";},
    {name = "Col4"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 2; scale =
3;}];
table.indexes = [
    {name = "MYINDEX1"; unique = true; order = DSC; indexColumns = ["Col2"]},
    {name = "MYINDEX2"; unique = true; order = DSC; indexType = B_TREE;
indexColumns = ["Col1", "Col4"]}],
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["Col1", "Col2"];
```

Table-Definition Configuration Schema

The following example shows the configuration schema for tables defined using the `.hdbtable` syntax. Each of the entries in the table-definition configuration schema is explained in more detail in a dedicated section below:

```
struct TableDefinition {
    string SchemaName;
    optional bool temporary;
    optional TableType tableType;
    optional bool public;
    optional TableLoggingType loggingType;
    list<ColumnDefinition> columns;
    optional list<IndexDefinition> indexes;
    optional PrimaryKeyDefinition primaryKey;
    optional string description
};
```

Schema Name

To use the `.hdbtable` syntax to specify the name of the schema that contains the table you are defining, use the `schemaName` keyword. In the table definition, the `schemaName` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
table.schemaName = "MYSHEMA";
```

Temporary

To use the `.hdbtable` syntax to specify that the table you define is temporary, use the boolean `temporary` keyword. Since data in a temporary table is session-specific, only the owner session of the temporary table is allowed to INSERT/READ/TRUNCATE the data. Temporary tables exist for the duration of the session, and data from the local temporary table is automatically dropped when the session is terminated. In the table definition, the `temporary` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
table.temporary = true;
```

Table Type

To specify the table type using the `.hdbtable` syntax, use the `tableType` keyword. In the table definition, the `TableType` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
table.tableType = [COLUMNSTORE | ROWSTORE];
```

The following configuration schema illustrates the parameters you can specify with the `tableType` keyword:

- `COLUMNSTORE`
Column-oriented storage, where entries of a column are stored in contiguous memory locations. SAP HANA is particularly optimized for column-order storage.
- `ROWSTORE`
Row-oriented storage, where data is stored in a table as a sequence of records

Table Logging Type

To enable logging in a table definition using the `.hdbtable` syntax, use the `tableLoggingType` keyword. In the table definition, the `tableLoggingType` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
table.tableLoggingType = [LOGGING | NOLOGGING];
```

Table Column Definition

To define the column structure and type in a table definition using the `.hdbtable` syntax, use the `columns` keyword. In the table definition, the `columns` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
table.columns = [  
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment =  
     "dummy comment"},  
    {name = "Col2"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false; },  
    {name = "Col3"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20;  
     defaultValue = "Defaultvalue"},  
];
```

```
    {name = "Col4"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 2; scale = 3;}];
```

The following configuration schema illustrates the parameters you can specify with the `columns` keyword:

```
struct ColumnDefinition {
    string name;
    SqlDataType sqlType;
    optional bool nullable;
    optional bool unique;
    optional int32 length;
    optional int32 scale;
    optional int32 precision;
    optional string defaultValue;
    optional string comment;
};
```

SQL Data Type

To define the SQL data type for a column in a table using the `.hdbtable` syntax, use the `sqlType` keyword. In the table definition, the `sqlType` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
table.columns = [
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment = "dummy comment";},
    ...
];
```

The following configuration schema illustrates the data types you can specify with the `sqlType` keyword:

```
enum SqlDataType {
    DATE; TIME; TIMESTAMP; SECONDDATE; INTEGER; TINYINT;
    SMALLINT; BIGINT; REAL; DOUBLE; FLOAT; SMALLDECIMAL;
    DECIMAL; VARCHAR; NVARCHAR; CLOB; NCLOB;
    ALPHANUM; TEXT; SHORTTEXT; BLOB; VARBINARY;
};
```

Primary Key Definition

To define the primary key for the specified table using the `.hdbtable` syntax, use the `primaryKey` and `pkcolumns` keywords. In the table definition, the `primaryKey` and `pkcolumns` keywords must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["Col1", "Col2"];
```

The following configuration schema illustrates the parameters you can specify with the `primaryKey` keyword:

```
struct PrimaryKeyDefinition {
    list<string> pkcolumns;
    optional IndexType indexType;
};
```

Table Index Definition

To define the index for the specified table using the `.hdbtable` syntax, use the `indexes` keyword. In the table definition, the `indexes` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
table.indexes = [
    {name = "MYINDEX1"; unique = true; order = DSC; indexColumns = ["Col2"];},
    {name = "MYINDEX2"; unique = true; order = DSC; indexColumns = ["Col1",
    "Col4"]};];
```

You can also use the optional parameter `indexType` to define the type of index, for example, `B_TREE` or `CPB_TREE`, as described in [Table Index Type \[page 308\]](#).

Table Index Type

To define the index type for the specified table using the `.hdbtable` syntax, use the `indexType` keyword. In the table definition, the `indexType` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
indexType = [B_TREE | CPB_TREE];
```

`B_TREE` specifies an index tree of type `B+`, which maintains sorted data that performs the insertion, deletion, and search of records. `CPB_TREE` stands for “Compressed Prefix `B_TREE`” and specifies an index tree of type `CPB+`, which is based on pkB-tree. `CPB_TREE` is a very small index that uses a “partial key”, that is; a key that is only part of a full key in index nodes.

i Note

If neither the `B_TREE` nor the `CPB_TREE` type is specified in the table-definition file, SAP HANA chooses the appropriate index type based on the column data type, as follows:

- `CPB_TREE`
Character string types, binary string types, decimal types, when the constraint is a composite key or a non-unique constraint
- `B_TREE`
All column data types other than those specified for `CPB_TREE`

Table Index Order

To define the order of the table index using the `.hdbtable` syntax, use the `order` keyword. Insert the `order` with the desired value (for example, ascending or descending) in the index type definition; the `order` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
order = [ASC | DSC];
```

You can choose to filter the contents of the table index either in ascending (ASC) or descending (DSC) order.

Complete Table-Definition Configuration Schema

The following example shows the complete configuration schema for tables defined using the .hdbtable syntax.

```
enum TableType {
    COLUMNSTORE; ROWSTORE;
};

enum TableLoggingType {
    LOGGING; NOLOGGING;
};

enum IndexType {
    B_TREE; CPB_TREE;
};

enum Order {
    ASC; DSC;
};

enum SqlDataType {
    DATE; TIME; TIMESTAMP; SECONDDATE;
    INTEGER; TINYINT; SMALLINT; BIGINT;
    REAL; DOUBLE; FLOAT; SMALLDECIMAL; DECIMAL;
    VARCHAR; NVARCHAR; CLOB; NCLOB;
    ALPHANUM; TEXT; SHORTTEXT; BLOB; VARBINARY;
};

struct PrimaryKeyDefinition {
    list<string> pkcolumns;
    optional IndexType indexType;
};

struct IndexDefinition {
    string name;
    bool unique;
    optional Order order;
    optional IndexType indexType;
    list<string> indexColumns;
};

struct ColumnDefinition {
    string name;
    SqlDataType sqlType;
    optional bool nullable;
    optional bool unique;
    optional int32 length;
    optional int32 scale;
    optional int32 precision;
    optional string defaultValue;
    optional string comment;
};

struct TableDefinition {
    string schemaName;
    optional bool temporary;
    optional TableType tableType;
    optional bool public;
    optional TableLoggingType loggingType;
    list<ColumnDefinition> columns;
    optional list<IndexDefinition> indexes;
    optional PrimaryKeyDefinition primaryKey;
    optional string description;
};

TableDefinition table;
```

Related Information

[Tables \[page 303\]](#)

[Create a Table \[page 301\]](#)

4.2.3 Create a Reusable Table Structure

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to define the structure of a database table in a design-time file in the repository. You can reuse the table-structure definition to specify the table **type** when creating a new table.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema definition `MYSCHHEMA.hdbschema`

Context

This task describes how to create a file containing a table-structure definition using the `hdbstructure` syntax. Table-structure definition files are stored in the SAP HANA repository with the `.hdbstructure` file extension, for example, `TableStructure.hdbstructure`. The primary use case for a design-time representation of a table structure is creating reusable type definitions for procedure interfaces. To create a table-structure file in the repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create a folder (package) to hold the table-structure definition files.

Browse to the folder (package) in your project workspace where you want to create the new folder (package), and perform the following steps:

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create a new folder called `Structures`, and choose  in the context-sensitive popup menu.

- b. Enter a name for the new folder in the *Folder Name* box, for example, **Structures**.
- c. Choose *Finish* to create the new **Structures** folder.

5. Create the table-structure definition file.

Browse to the **Structures** folder (package) in your project workspace and perform the following steps:

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the **Structures** folder you created in the previous step and choose **► New > File** in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter a name for the new table-structure in the *File Name* box and add the **.hdbstructure** file extension, for example, **TableStructure.hdbstructure**.

 **Tip**

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- c. Choose *Finish* to save the new table-structure definition file.
6. Define the table structure.

To edit the table-structure definition file, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the table file you created in the previous step, for example, **TableStructure.hdbstructure**, and add the table-structure code to the file:

 **Note**

The following code example is provided for illustration purposes only.

```
table.schemaName = "MYSCHHEMA";
table.columns = [
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment = "dummy comment";},
    {name = "Col2"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},
    {name = "Col3"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20; defaultValue = "Defaultvalue";},
    {name = "Col4"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 12; scale = 3;}];
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["Col1", "Col2"];
```

7. Save the table-structure definition file.

 **Note**

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose **► Team > Commit** from the context-sensitive popup menu.

8. Activate the changes in the repository.

You can activate the changes to the folder structure and the folder contents in one step.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, locate and right-click the new folder (**Structures**) that contains the new table-structure definition file **TableStructure.hdbstructure**.
- b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose **► Team > Activate**.

Activating a table-definition called `TableStructure.hdbstructure` in the package `Structures` creates a new table type in SAP HANA, in the same way as the following SQL statement:

```
CREATE TABLE "MySchema"."MyTypeTable" like  
"MySchema"."Structures::TableStructure"
```

9. Check that the new table-type object `Structures::TableStructure` is added to the catalog.

You can find the new table type in the `Systems` view under ► `Catalog` ► `MYSCHHEMA` ► `Procedures` ► `Table Types`.

- In the `SAP HANA Development` perspective, open the `Systems` view.
- Select the SAP HANA System where the new is located and navigate to the following node: ► `Catalog` ► `MYSCHHEMA` ► `Procedures` ► `Table Types`.
- Right-click the new table-structure object and choose `Open Definition` to display the specifications for the reusable table-structure in the details panel.
- Check that the entry in the `Type` box is `Table Type`.

Related Information

[Reusable Table Structures \[page 312\]](#)

[Create a Table \[page 301\]](#)

4.2.3.1 Reusable Table Structures

A table-structure definition is a template that you can reuse as a basis for creating new tables of the same type and structure. You can reference the table structure in an SQL statement (`CREATE TABLE [...] like [...]`) or an SQLScript procedure.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database table structure (or type) as a design-time file in the repository. All repository files including your table-structure definition can be transported to other SAP HANA systems, for example, in a delivery unit. The primary use case for a design-time representation of a table structure is creating reusable table-type definitions for procedure interfaces. However, you can also use table-type definitions in table user-defined functions (UDF).

If you want to define a design-time representation of a table structure with the `.hdbstructure` specifications, use the configuration schema illustrated in the following example:

```
struct TableDefinition {  
    string SchemaName;  
    optional bool public;  
    list<ColumnDefinition> columns;  
    optional PrimaryKeyDefinition primaryKey;  
};
```

i Note

The `.hdbstructure` syntax is a subset of the syntax used in `.hdbtable`. In a table **structure** definition, you cannot specify the table type (for example, COLUMN/ROW), define the index, or enable logging.

The following code illustrates a simple example of a design-time table-structure definition:

```
table.schemaName = "MYSCHHEMA";
table.columns = [
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment =
"dummy comment";},
    {name = "Col2"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},
    {name = "Col3"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20;
defaultValue = "Defaultvalue";},
    {name = "Col4"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 2; scale =
3;}];
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["Col1", "Col2"];
```

If you want to create a database table structure as a repository file, you must create the table structure as a flat file and save the file containing the structure definition with the .hdbstructure file extension, for example, TableStructure.hdbstructure. The new file is located in the package hierarchy you establish in the SAP HANA repository. You can activate the repository files at any point in time.

i Note

On activation of a repository file, the file suffix is used to determine which runtime plug-in to call during the activation process. The plug-in reads the repository file selected for activation, in this case a table structure element with the file extension .hdbstructure, parses the object descriptions in the file, and creates the appropriate runtime objects.

You can use the SQL command CREATE TABLE to create a new table based on the table structure, for example, with the like operator, as illustrated in the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE "MySchema"."MyTypeTable" like
"MySchema"."Structures::TableStructure"
```

Related Information

[Create a Table Structure \[page 310\]](#)

[Table Configuration Syntax \[page 304\]](#)

4.2.4 Create a Sequence

A database sequence generates a serial list of unique numbers that you can use while transforming and moving data to between systems.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.

- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema definition, for example, MYSHEMA.hdbsequence

Context

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database sequence as a design-time file in the repository. This task describes how to create a file containing a sequence definition using the `hdbsequence` syntax.

i Note

A schema generated from an `.hdbsequence` artifact can also be used in the context of Core Data Services (CDS).

To create a sequence-definition file in the repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the sequence definition file.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new sequence definition file and perform the following tasks:

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the sequence definition file and choose *New > Sequence Definition* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter or select the parent folder.
- c. Enter the name of the sequence in the *File Name* box.

In SAP HANA, sequence-definition files require the file extension `.hdbsequence`, for example, `MySequence.hdbsequence`.

→ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- d. Select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you.
 - e. Choose *Finish* to save the new sequence in the repository.
5. Define the sequence properties.

To edit the sequence file, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the sequence file you created in the previous step, for example, MYSEQUENCE.hdbsequence, and add the sequence code to the file:

```
schema= "MYSCHHEMA";
start_with= 10;
maxvalue= 30;
nomaxvalue=false;
minvalue= 1;
nominvalue=true;
cycles= false;
reset_by= "SELECT T1.\"Column2\" FROM \"MYSCHHEMA\".
\"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE1\" AS T1 LEFT JOIN \"MYSCHHEMA\".
\"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE2\" AS T2 ON T1.\"Column1\" = T2.\"Column1\"";
depends_on=[ "com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE1",
"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE2"];
```

6. Save the sequence-definition file.

 **Note**

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose  *Team*  from the context-sensitive popup menu.

7. Activate the changes in the repository.
 - a. Locate and right-click the new sequence file in the *Project Explorer* view.
 - b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose  *Team* .

Related Information

[Sequences \[page 315\]](#)

[Sequence Configuration Syntax \[page 317\]](#)

4.2.4.1 Sequences

A sequence is a database object that generates an automatically incremented list of numeric values according to the rules defined in the sequence specification. The sequence of numeric values is generated in an ascending or descending order at a defined increment interval, and the numbers generated by a sequence can be used by applications, for example, to identify the rows and columns of a table.

Sequences are not associated with tables; they are used by applications, which can use CURRVAL in a SQL statement to get the current value generated by a sequence and NEXTVAL to generate the next value in the defined sequence. Sequences provide an easy way to generate the unique values that applications use, for example, to identify a table row or a field. In the sequence specification, you can set options that control the start and end point of the sequence, the size of the increment size, or the minimum and maximum allowed value. You can also specify if the sequence should recycle when it reaches the maximum value specified. The relationship between sequences and tables is controlled by the application. Applications can reference a sequence object and coordinate the values across multiple rows and tables.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database sequence as a transportable design-time file in the repository. Repository files can be read by applications that you develop.

You can use database sequences to perform the following operations:

- Generate unique, primary key values, for example, to identify the rows and columns of a table
- Coordinate keys across multiple rows or tables

The following example shows the contents of a valid sequence-definition file for a sequence called MYSEQUENCE. Note that, in this example, no increment value is defined, so the default value of 1 (ascend by 1) is assumed. To set a descending sequence of 1, set the *increment_by* value to -1.

```
schema= "TEST_DUMMY";
start_with= 10;
maxvalue= 30;
nomaxvalue=false;
minvalue= 1;
nominvalue=true;
cycles= false;
reset_by= "SELECT T1.\"Column2\" FROM \"MYSHEMA\".
\"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE1\" AS T1 LEFT JOIN \"MYSHEMA\".
\"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE2\" AS T2 ON T1.\"Column1\" = T2.\"Column1\"";
depends_on=["com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE1",
"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE2"];
```

The sequence definition is stored in the repository with the suffix `.hdbsequence`, for example, `MYSEQUENCE.hdbsequence`.

i Note

A schema generated from an `.hdbsequence` artifact can also be used in the context of Core Data Services (CDS).

If you activate a sequence-definition object in SAP HANA XS, the activation process checks if a sequence with the same name already exists in the SAP HANA repository. If a sequence with the specified name does not exist, the repository creates a sequence with the specified name and makes `_SYS_REPO` the owner of the new sequence.

In a sequence defined using the `.hdbsequence` syntax, the `reset_by` keyword enables you to reset the sequence using a query on any view, table or even table function. However, any dependency must be declared explicitly, for example, with the `depends_on` keyword. The target table or view specified in the `depends_on` keyword **must** be mentioned in the `SELECT` query that defines the reset condition. If the table or view specified in the dependency does not exist, the activation of the object in the repository fails.

i Note

On initial activation of the sequence definition, no check is performed to establish the existence of the target view (or table) in the dependency; such a check is only made on **reactivation** of the sequence definition.

Security Considerations

It is important to bear in mind that an incorrectly defined sequences can lead to security-related problems. For example, if the sequencing process becomes corrupted, it can result in data overwrite. This can happen if the

index has a maximum value which rolls-over, or if a defined reset condition is triggered unexpectedly. A roll-over can be achieved by an attacker forcing data to be inserted by flooding the system with requests. Overwriting log tables is a known practice for deleting traces. To prevent unexpected data overwrite, use the following settings:

- `cycles= false`
- Avoid using the `reset_by` feature

Related Information

[Create a Sequence \[page 313\]](#)

[Sequence Configuration Syntax \[page 317\]](#)

4.2.4.2 Sequence Configuration Syntax

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use the `hdbsequence` syntax to create a database sequence as a design-time file in the repository. The design-time artifact that contains the sequence definition must adhere to the `.hdbsequence` syntax specified below.

Sequence Definition

The following code illustrates a simple example of a design-time sequence definition using the `.hdbsequence` syntax.

i Note

Keywords are case-sensitive, for example, `maxvalue` and `start_with`, and the schema referenced in the table definition, for example, `MYSHEMA`, must already exist.

```
schema= "MYSHEMA";
start_with= 10;
maxvalue= 30;
nomaxvalue= false;
minvalue= 1;
nominvalue= true;
cycles= false;
reset_by= "SELECT T1.\"Column2\" FROM \"MYSHEMA\".
\"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE1\" AS T1 LEFT JOIN \"MYSHEMA\".
\"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE2\" AS T2 ON T1.\"Column1\" = T2.\"Column1\"";
depends_on= ["com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE1",
"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE2"];
```

Sequence-Definition Configuration Schema

The following example shows the configuration schema for sequences defined using the `.hdbsequence` syntax. Each of the entries in the sequence-definition configuration schema is explained in more detail in a dedicated section below:

```
string schema;
int32 increment_by(default=1);
int32 start_with(default=-1);
optional int32 maxvalue;
bool nomaxvalue(default=false);
optional int32 minvalue;
bool nominvalue(default=false);
optional bool cycles;
optional string reset_by;
bool public(default=false);
optional string depends_on_table;
optional string depends_on_view;
optional list<string> depends_on;
```

Schema Name

To use the `.hdbsequence` syntax to specify the name of the schema that contains the sequence you are defining, use the `schema` keyword. In the sequence definition, the `schema` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
schema= "MYSCHHEMA";
```

Increment Value

To use the `.hdbsequence` syntax to specify that the sequence increments by a defined value, use the `increment_by` keyword. `increment_by` specifies the amount by which the next sequence value is incremented from the last value assigned. The default increment is 1. In the sequence definition, the `increment_by` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
increment_by= 2;
```

To generate a descending sequence, specify a negative value.

i Note

An error is returned if the `increment_by` value is 0.

Start Value

To use the `.hdbsequence` syntax to specify that the sequence starts with a specific value, use the `start_with` keyword. If you do not specify a value for the `start_with` keyword, the value defined in `minvalue` is used for ascending sequences, and value defined in `maxvalue` is used for descending sequences. In the sequence definition, the `start_with` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
start_with= 10;
```

Maximum Value

To use the `.hdbsequence` syntax to specify that the sequence stops at a specific **maximum** value, for example, 30, use the optional keyword `maxvalue`. In the sequence definition, the `maxvalue` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
maxvalue= 30;
```

i Note

The maximum value (`maxvalue`) a sequence can generate must be between -4611686018427387903 and 4611686018427387902.

No Maximum Value

To use the `.hdbsequence` syntax to specify that the sequence does not stop at any specific **maximum** value, use the boolean keyword `nomaxvalue`. When the `nomaxvalue` keyword is used, the maximum value for an **ascending** sequence is 4611686018427387903 and the maximum value for a **descending** sequence is -1. In the sequence definition, the `nomaxvalue` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
nomaxvalue= true;
```

i Note

Note that the default setting for `nomaxvalue` is `false`.

Minimum Value

To use the `.hdbsequence` syntax to specify that the sequence stops at a specific **minimum** value, for example, 1, use the `minvalue` keyword. In the sequence definition, the `minvalue` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
minvalue= 1;
```

i Note

The minimum value (`minvalue`) a sequence can generate must be between -4611686018427387903 and 4611686018427387902.

No Minimum Value

To use the `.hdbsequence` syntax to specify that the sequence does not stop at any specific **minimum** value, use the boolean keyword `nominvalue`. When the `nominvalue` keyword is used, the minimum value for an **ascending** sequence is 1 and the minimum value for a **descending** sequence is -4611686018427387903. In the sequence definition, the `nominvalue` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
nominvalue= true;
```

i Note

Note that the default setting `nominvalue` is `false`.

Cycles

In a sequence defined using the `.hdbsequence` syntax, the optional boolean keyword `cycles` enables you to specify whether the sequence number will be restarted after it reaches its maximum or minimum value. For example, the sequence restarts with `minvalue` after having reached `maxvalue` (where `increment_by` is greater than zero (0)) or restarts with `maxvalue` after having reached `minvalue` (where `increment_by` is less than zero (0)). In the `.hdbsequence` definition, the `cycles` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
cycles= false;
```

Reset by Query

In a sequence defined using the `.hdbsequence` syntax, the `reset_by` keyword enables you to reset the sequence using a query on any view, table or even table function. However, any dependency must be declared

explicitly, for example, with the `depends_on_view` or `depends_on_table` keyword. If the table or view specified in the dependency does not exist, the activation of the sequence object in the repository fails.

In the `.hdbsequence` definition, the `reset_by` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
reset_by= "SELECT \"Col2\" FROM \"MYSCHHEMA\".\"acme.com.test.tables::MY_TABLE\" WHERE \"Col2\"='12'";
```

During a restart of the database, the system automatically executes the `reset_by` statement and the sequence value is restarted with the value determined from the `reset_by` subquery

i Note

If `reset_by` is not specified, the sequence value is stored persistently in the database. During the restart of the database, the next value of the sequence is generated from the saved sequence value.

Depends on

In a sequence defined using the `.hdbsequence` syntax, the optional keyword `depends_on` enables you to define a dependency to one or more specific tables or views, for example when using the `reset_by` option to specify the query to use when resetting the sequence. In the `.hdbsequence` definition, the `depends_on` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
depends_on=
["<repository.package.path>::<MY_TABLE_NAME1>","<repository.package.path>::<MY_VIEW_NAME1>"];
```

i Note

The `depends_on` keyword replaces and extends the keywords `depends_on_table` and `depends_on_view`.

For example, to specify multiple tables and views with the `depends_on` keyword, use a comma-separated list enclosed in square brackets [].

```
depends_on= ["com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE1",
"com.acme.test.tables::MY_TABLE2", "com.acme.test.views::MY_VIEW1"];
```

The target table or view specified in the `depends_on` keyword **must** be mentioned in the `SELECT` query that defines the reset condition. On initial activation of the sequence definition, no check is performed to establish the existence of the target table or view specified in the dependency; such a check is only made during **reactivation** of the sequence definition. If one or more of the target tables or views specified in the dependency does not exist, the re-activation of the sequence object in the repository fails.

Related Information

[Create a Sequence \[page 313\]](#)

4.2.5 Create an SQL View

A view is a virtual table based on the dynamic results returned in response to an SQL statement. SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database view as a design-time file in the repository.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.
- You must have created a schema definition, for example, `MYSHEMA.hdbschema`

Context

This task describes how to create a file containing an SQL view definition using the `hdbview` syntax. SQL view-definition files are stored in the SAP HANA repository. To create an SQL view-definition file in the repository, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
3. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
4. Create the view definition file.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new view-definition file and perform the following tasks:

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the view-definition file and choose *New* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter the name of the view-definition file in the *File Name* box, for example, `MYVIEW.hdbview`.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- c. Select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you.
- d. Choose *Finish* to save the new view-definition file in the repository.
5. Define the view.

If the new view-definition file is not automatically displayed by the file-creation wizard, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the view-definition file you created in the previous step, for example, MYVIEW.hdbview, and add the view definition code to the file replacing object names and paths to suit your requirements.:

ℹ Note

The following code example is provided for illustration purposes only.

```
schema="MYSCHHEMA";
query="SELECT T1.\"Column2\" FROM \"MYSCHHEMA\".
\"acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW1\" AS T1 LEFT JOIN \"MYSCHHEMA\".
\"acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW2\" AS T2 ON T1.\"Column1\" = T2.\"Column1\"";
depends_on=["acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW1", "acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW2"];
```

6. Save the SQL view-definition file.

ℹ Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose *Team* *Commit* from the context-sensitive popup menu.

7. Activate the changes in the repository.
 - a. Locate and right-click the new view-definition file in the *Project Explorer* view.
 - b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose *Team* *Activate*.

Related Information

[SQL Views \[page 324\]](#)

[SQL View Configuration Syntax \[page 325\]](#)

4.2.5.1 SQL Views

In SQL, a view is a virtual table based on the dynamic results returned in response to an SQL statement. Every time a user queries an SQL view, the database uses the view's SQL statement to recreate the data specified in the SQL view. The data displayed in an SQL view can be extracted from one or more database tables.

An SQL view contains rows and columns, just like a real database table; the fields in an SQL view are fields from one or more real tables in the database. You can add SQL functions, for example, WHERE or JOIN statements, to a view and present the resulting data as if it were coming from one, single table.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a database view as a design-time file in the repository. Repository files can be read by applications that you develop. In addition, all repository files including your view definition can be transported to other SAP HANA systems, for example, in a delivery unit.

If your application refers to the design-time version of a view from the repository rather than the runtime version in the catalog, for example, by using the explicit path to the repository file (with suffix), any changes to the repository version of the file are visible as soon as they are committed to the repository. There is no need to wait for the repository to activate a runtime version of the view.

The following example shows the contents of a valid transportable view-definition file for a view called MYVIEW:

```
schema="MYSCHHEMA";
query="SELECT T1.\"Column2\" FROM \"MYSCHHEMA\".\"acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW1\"
AS T1 LEFT JOIN \"MYSCHHEMA\".\"acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW2\"
AS T2 ON
T1.\"Column1\" = T2.\"Column1\"";
depends_on=["acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW1", "acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW2"];
```

If you want to create a view definition as a design-time object, you must create the view as a flat file and save the file containing the view definition with the suffix .hdbview, for example, MYVIEW.hdbview in the appropriate package in the package hierarchy established for your application in the SAP HANA repository. You can activate the design-time object at any point in time.

Tip

On activation of a repository file, the file suffix (for example, .hdbview) is used to determine which runtime plugin to call during the activation process. The plug-in reads the repository file selected for activation, parses the object descriptions in the file, and creates the appropriate runtime objects.

In an SQL view defined using the .hdbview syntax, any dependency to another table or view must be declared explicitly, for example, with the depends_on keyword. The target view or table specified in the depends_on keyword **must** also be mentioned in the SELECT query that defines the SQL view. If one of more of the tables or views specified in the dependency does not exist, the activation of the object in the repository fails.

Note

On initial activation of the SQL view, no check is performed to establish the existence of the target view (or table) in the depends_on dependency; such a check is only made on **reactivation** of the SQL view.

Column Names in a View

If you want to assign names to the columns in a view, use the SQL query in the .hdbview file. In this example of design-time view definition, the following names are specified for columns defined in the view:

- idea_id
- identity_id
- role_id

```
schema = "MYSCHHEMA";
query = "SELECT role_join.idea_id AS idea_id, ident.member_id AS identity_id,
role_join.role_id AS role_id
    FROM \"acme.com.odin.db.iam::t_identity_group_member_transitive\" AS
ident
    INNER JOIN \"acme.com.odin.db.idea::t_idea_identity_role\" AS
role_join
        ON role_join.identity_id = ident.group_id UNION DISTINCT
SELECT idea_id, identity_id, role_id
FROM \"acme.com.odin.db.idea::t_idea_identity_role\""
WITH read only";
```

Related Information

[Create an SQL View \[page 322\]](#)

4.2.5.2 SQL View Configuration Syntax

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use the `hdbview` syntax to create an SQL view as a design-time file in the repository. The design-time artifact that contains the SQL view definition must adhere to the `.hdbview` syntax specified below.

SQL View Definition

The following code illustrates a simple example of a design-time definition of an SQL view using the `.hdbview` syntax.

i Note

Keywords are case-sensitive, for example, `schema` and `query`, and the schema referenced in the table definition, for example, `MYSCHHEMA`, must already exist.

```
schema="MYSCHHEMA";
public=false
query="SELECT T1.\"Column2\" FROM \"MYSCHHEMA\".
\"acme.com.test.tables::MY_TABLE1\" AS T1 LEFT JOIN \"MYSCHHEMA\".
\"acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW1\" AS T2 ON T1.\"Column1\" = T2.\"Column1\"";
```

```
depends_on= "acme.com.test.tables::MY_TABLE1", "acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW1";
```

SQL View Configuration Schema

The following example shows the configuration schema for an SQL view that you define using the .hbdbview syntax. Each of the entries in the view-definition configuration schema is explained in more detail in a dedicated section below:

```
string schema;
string query;
bool public(default=true);
optional list<string> depends_on_table;
optional list<string> depends_on_view;
```

Schema Name

To use the .hbdbview syntax to specify the name of the schema that contains the SQL view you are defining, use the `schema` keyword. In the SQL view definition, the `schema` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
schema= "MYSCHHEMA";
```

query

To use the .hbdbview syntax to specify the query that creates the SQL view you are defining, use the `query` keyword. In the SQL view definition, the `query` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
query="SELECT * FROM \"<MY_SCHEMA_NAME>\".
\"<repository.package.path>::<MY_TABLE_NAME>\"";
```

For example:

```
query="SELECT * FROM \"MY_SCHEMA\".\\"com.test.tables::02_HDB_DEPARTMENT_VIEW\"";
```

public

To use the .hbdbview syntax to specify whether or not the SQL view you are defining is publicly available, use the boolean keyword `public`. In the SQL view definition, the `public` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
public=[false|true];
```

For example:

```
public=false
```

i Note

The default value for the `public` keyword is `true`.

Depends on

In an SQL view defined using the `.hdbview` syntax, the optional keyword `depends_on` enables you to define a dependency to one or more tables or views. In the `.hdbview` definition, the `depends_on` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

```
depends_on=
["<repository.package.path>::<MY_TABLE_NAME1>","<repository.package.path>::<MY_VIEW_NAME1>"];
```

i Note

The `depends_on` keyword replaces and extends the keywords `depends_on_table` and `depends_on_view`.

For example, to specify multiple tables and views with the `depends_on` keyword, use a comma-separated list enclosed in square brackets `[]`.

```
depends_on= ["acme.com.test.tables::MY_TABLE1","acme.com.test.views::MY_VIEW1"];
```

The target table or view specified in the `depends_on` keyword **must** be mentioned in the `SELECT` query that defines the SQL view. On initial activation of the SQL view, no check is performed to establish the existence of the target tables or views specified in the dependency; such a check is only made during **reactivation** of the SQL view. If one or more of the target tables or views specified in the dependency does not exist, the reactivation of the SQL view object in the repository fails.

Related Information

[Create an SQL View \[page 322\]](#)

4.2.6 Create a Synonym

Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a local database synonym as a design-time file in the repository.

Prerequisites

To complete this task successfully, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You must have already created a development workspace and a project.
- (SAP HANA studio only) You must have shared the project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.

Context

In SAP HANA, a design-time synonym artifact has the suffix `.hdbsynonym` and defines the target object by specifying an authoring schema and an object name; its activation evaluates a system's schema mapping to determine the physical schema in which the target table is expected, and creates a local synonym that points to this object.

⚠ Restriction

A design-time synonym cannot refer to another synonym, and you cannot define multiple synonyms in a single design-time synonym artifact. In addition, the target object specified in a design-time synonym must only exist in the catalog; it is not possible to use `.hdbsynonym` to define a synonym for a catalog object that originates from a design-time artifact.

Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
 - a. Open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective.
 - b. Open the *Project Explorer* view.
2. Create the synonym definition file.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new synonym-definition file and perform the following steps:

To generate a synonym called "acme.com.app1::MySynonym1", you must create a design-time synonym artifact called `MySynonym1.hdbsynonym` in the repository package `acme.com.app1`; the first line of the design-time synonym artifact must be specified as illustrated in the following example.

Sample Code

```
{ "acme.com.app1::MySynonym1" : { . . . } }
```

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to create the synonym-definition file and choose  *New*  *General*  *File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
 - b. Enter the name of the new synonym-definition file in the *File Name* box and add the appropriate extension, for example, `MySynonym1.hdbsynonym`.
 - c. Choose *Finish* to save the new synonym definition file.
3. Define the synonym.

To edit the synonym definition, in the *Project Explorer* view double-click the synonym-definition file you created in the previous step, for example, `MySynonym.hdbsynonym`, and add the synonym-definition code to the new file, as illustrated in the following example.

Note

The following code example is provided for illustration purposes only.

Sample Code

```
{ "acme.com.app1::MySynonym1" : {  
    "target" : {  
        "schema": "DEFAULT_SCHEMA",  
        "object": "MY_ERP_TABLE_1"  
    },  
    "schema": "SCHEMA_2"  
}
```

4. Save and activate the changes in the repository.
 - a. Locate and right-click the new synonym-definition file in the *Project Explorer* view.
 - b. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose  *Team*  *Activate*.

Related Information

[Synonyms \[page 330\]](#)

[Synonym Configuration Syntax \[page 331\]](#)

[Schema \[page 299\]](#)

4.2.6.1 Synonyms

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to create a design-time representation of a **local** database synonym. The synonym enables you to refer to a table (for example, from a view) that only exists as a catalog object.

In SAP HANA XS, a design-time representation of a local synonym has the suffix `.hdbsynonym` that you can store in the SAP HANA repository. The syntax of the design-time synonym artifact requires you to define the target object by specifying an authoring schema and an object name. You also need to specify the schema in which to create the new synonym. On activation of a design-time synonym artifact, SAP HANA XS evaluates a system's schema mapping to determine the physical schema in which the target table is expected, and creates a local synonym in the specified schema which points to this object. You can use this type of synonym if you need to define a CDS view that refers to a table which only exists in the catalog; that is, the catalog table has no design-time representation.

Restriction

A synonym cannot refer to another synonym, and you cannot define multiple synonyms in a single design-time synonym artifact. In addition, the target object specified in a design-time synonym must only exist in the catalog; it is not possible to define a design-time synonym for a catalog object that originates from a design-time artifact.

In the following example of a design-time synonym artifact, the table `MY_ERP_TABLE_1` resides in the schema `DEFAULT_SCHEMA`. The activation of the design-time synonym artifact illustrated in the example would generate a local synonym ("`acme.com.app1::MySynonym1`") in the schema `SCHEMA_2`. Assuming that a schema-mapping table exists that maps `DEFAULT_SCHEMA` to the schema `SAP_SCHEMA`, the newly generated synonym "`SCHEMA_2"."acme.com.app1::MySynonym1`" points to the run-time object "`SAP_SCHEMA"."MY_ERP_TABLE_1`".

Sample Code

`MySynonym1.hdbsynonym`

```
{ "acme.com.app1::MySynonym1" : {
    "target" : {
        "schema": "DEFAULT_SCHEMA",
        "object": "MY_ERP_TABLE_1"
    },
    "schema": "SCHEMA_2"
}}
```

Tip

To generate a synonym called "`acme.com.app1::MySynonym1`", a design-time artifact called `MySynonym1.hdbsynonym` must exist in the repository package `acme.com.app1`; the first line of the design-time synonym artifact must be specified as illustrated in the example above.

Related Information

[Schema \[page 299\]](#)

[Create a Synonym \[page 328\]](#)

4.2.6.2 Synonym Configuration Syntax

A specific syntax is required to create a design-time representation of a **local** database synonym in SAP HANA Extended Application Services.

Synonym Definition

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to use the `hdbsynonym` syntax to create a database synonym as a design-time file in the repository. On activation, a **local** synonym is generated in the catalog in the specified schema. The design-time artifact that contains the synonym definition must adhere to the `.hdbsynonym` syntax specified below.

Note

The activation of the design-time synonym artifact illustrated in the following example generates a local synonym ("acme.com.app1::MySynonym1") in the schema SCHEMA_2.

Sample Code

MySynonym1.hdbsynonym

```
{ "acme.com.app1::MySynonym1" : {
    "target" : {
        "schema": "DEFAULT_SCHEMA",
        "object": "MY_ERP_TABLE_1"
    },
    "schema [page 332]": "SCHEMA_2"
}}
```

Synonym Location

In the first line of the synonym-definition file, you must specify the absolute repository path to the package containing the synonym artifact (and the name of the synonym artifact) itself using the syntax illustrated in the following example.

Code Syntax

```
{ "<full.path.to.package>::<MySynonym1>" : { ... } }
```

For example, to generate a synonym called "acme.com.app1::MySynonym1", you must create a design-time artifact called `MySynonym1.hdbsynonym` in the repository package `acme.com.app1`; the first line of the design-time synonym artifact must be specified as illustrated in the following example.

Sample Code

```
{ "acme.com.app1::MySynonym1" : { ... } }
```

target

To specify the name and location of the object for which you are defining a synonym, use the `target` keyword together with the keywords `schema` and `object`. In the synonym definition, the `target` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

Code Syntax

```
"target" : {
    "schema": "<Name_of_schema_containing_<object>>",
    "object": "<Name_of_target_object>"
},
```

In the context of the `target` keyword, the following additional keywords are required:

- `schema` defines the name of the schema where the target object (defined in `object`) is located.
- `object` specifies the name of the catalog object to which the synonym applies.

Restriction

The target object specified in a design-time synonym must only exist in the catalog; it is not possible to define a design-time synonym for a catalog object that originates from a design-time artifact.

schema

To specify the catalog location of the generated synonym, use the `schema` keyword. In the synonym definition, the `schema` keyword must adhere to the syntax shown in the following example.

Code Syntax

```
"schema": "<Schema_location_of_generated_synonym>"
```

Related Information

[Synonyms \[page 330\]](#)

[Create a Synonym \[page 328\]](#)

4.2.7 Import Data with hdbtable Table-Import

The table-import function is a data-provisioning tool that enables you to import data from comma-separated values (CSV) files into SAP HANA database tables.

Prerequisites

Before you start this task, make sure that the following prerequisites are met:

- An SAP HANA database instance is available.
- The SAP HANA database client is installed and configured.
- You have a database user account set up with the roles containing sufficient privileges to perform actions in the repository, for example, add packages, add objects, and so on.
- The SAP HANA studio is installed and connected to the SAP HANA repository.
- You have a development environment including a repository workspace, a package structure for your application, and a shared project to enable you to synchronize changes to the project files in the local file system with the repository.

Context

In this tutorial, you import data from a CSV file into a table generated from a design-time definition that uses the `.hdbtable` syntax. The names used in the following task are for illustration purposes only; where necessary, replace the names of schema, tables, files, and so on shown in the following examples with your own names.

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

Procedure

1. Create a root package for your table-import application.

In SAP HANA studio, open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective and perform the following steps:

- a. In the package hierarchy displayed in the *Systems* view, right-click the package where you want to create the new package for your table-import configuration and choose  *New > Package...*.
- b. Enter a name for your package, for example **TiTest**. You must create the new **TiTest** package in your own namespace, for example `mycompany.tests.TiTest`

Note

Naming conventions exist for package names, for example, a package name must not start with either a dot (.) or a hyphen (-) and cannot contain two or more consecutive dots (..). In addition, the name must not exceed 190 characters.

- a. Choose *OK* to create the new package.
2. Create a set of table-import files.

The following files are required for a table import scenario.

Note

For the purposes of this tutorial, the following files must all be created in the same package, for example, a package called **TiTest**. However, the table-import feature also allows you to use files distributed in different packages.

- The table-import configuration file, for example, `TiConfiguration.hdbti`
Specifies the source file containing the data values to import and the target table in SAP HANA into which the data must be inserted
- A CSV file, for example, `myTiData.csv`
Contains the data to be imported into the SAP HANA table during the table-import operation; values in the `.csv` file can be separated either by a comma (,) or a semi-colon (;).
- A target table.
The target table can be either a runtime table in the catalog or a table definition, for example, a table defined using the `.hdbtable` syntax (`TiTable.hdbtable`) or the CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax (`TiTable.hdbdd`).

Note

In this tutorial, the target table for the table-import operation is `TiTable.hdbtable`, a design-time table defined using the `.hdbtable` syntax.

- The schema definition, for example, `TISCHEMA.hdbschema`
Specifies the name of the schema in which the target import table is created

When all the necessary files are available, you can import data from a source file, such as a CSV file, into the desired target table.

3. Using any code editor, create or open the schema definition (`AMT.hdbschema`) file and enter the name of the schema you want to use to contain the target table.

```
schema_name="AMT";
```

4. Create or open the table definition file for the target import table (`inhabitants.hdbtable`) and enter the following lines of text; this example uses the `.hdbtable` syntax.

```
table.schemaName = "AMT";
```

```

table.tableType = COLUMNSTORE;
table.columns =
[
    {name = "ID"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment =
"";},
    {name = "surname"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 30;
comment = "";},
    {name = "name"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 30; comment =
"";},
    {name = "city"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 30; comment =
"";},
];
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["ID"];

```

5. Open the CSV file containing the data to import, for example, `inhabitants.csv` in a text editor and enter the values shown in the following example.

```

0,Annan,Kwesi,Accra
1,Essuman,Wiredu,Tema
2,Tetteh,Kwame,Kumasi
3,Nterful,Akye,Tarkwa
4,Acheampong,Kojo,Tamale
5,Assamoah,Adjoa,Takoradi
6,Mensah,Afua,Cape Coast

```

i Note

You can import data from multiple `.csv` files in a single, table-import operation. However, each `.csv` file must be specified in a separate code block (`{table= ...}`) in the table-import configuration file.

6. Create a table import configuration file.

To create a table import configuration file, perform the following steps:

i Note

You can also open and use an existing table-import configuration file (for example, `inhabitants.hdbti`).

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the table file and choose [New >Table Import Configuration](#) in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter or select the parent folder, where the table-import configuration file will reside.
- c. Using the wizard, enter the name of the table-import configuration in the [File Name](#) field, for example, `MyTableConfiguration`.

This creates the file `MyTableConfiguration.hdbti`.

→ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- d. Edit the details of the new table-import configuration in the new (or existing) table-import configuration file.

Enter the following lines of text in the table-import configuration file.

```
import = [
    {
        table = "mycompany.tests.TiTest::inhabitants";
        schema = "AMT";
        file = "mycompany.tests.TiTest:inhabitants.csv";
        header = false;
    }
];
```

- e. Choose *Finish* to save the table-import configuration.
7. Deploy the table import.
 - a. Select the package that you created in the first step, for example, `mycompany.tests.TiTest`.
 - b. Click the alternate mouse button and choose *Commit*.
 - c. Click the alternate mouse button and choose *Activate*.

This activates all the repository objects. The result is that the data specified in the CSV file `inhabitants.csv` is imported into the SAP HANA table `inhabitants` using the data-import configuration defined in the `inhabitants.hdbti` table-import configuration file.

8. Check the contents of the runtime table `inhabitants` in the catalog.

To ensure that the import operation completed as expected, use the SAP HANA studio to view the contents of the runtime table `inhabitants` in the catalog. You need to confirm that the correct data was imported into the correct columns.

- a. In the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Systems* view.
- b. Navigate to the catalog location where the `inhabitants` object resides, for example:

- c. Open a data preview for the updated object.

Right-click the updated object and choose *Open Data Preview* in the context-sensitive menu.

4.2.7.1 Data Provisioning Using Table Import

You can import data from comma-separated values (CSV) into the SAP HANA tables using the SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) table-import feature.

In SAP HANA XS, you create a table-import scenario by setting up an table-import configuration file and one or more comma-separated value (CSV) files containing the content you want to import into the specified SAP HANA table. The import-configuration file links the import operation to one or more target tables. The table definition (for example, in the form of a `.hdbdd` or `.hdbtable` file) can either be created separately or be included in the table-import scenario itself.

To use the SAP HANA XS table-import feature to import data into an SAP HANA table, you need to understand the following table-import concepts:

- Table-import configuration

You define the table-import model in a configuration file that specifies the data fields to import and the target tables for each data field.

Note

The table-import file must have the `.hdbti` extension, for example, `myTableImport.hdbti`.

CSV Data File Constraints

The following constraints apply to the CSV file used as a source for the table-import feature in SAP HANA XS:

- The number of table columns must match the number of CSV columns.
- There must not be any incompatibilities between the data types of the table columns and the data types of the CSV columns.
- Overlapping data in data files is not supported.
- The target table of the import must not be modified (or appended to) outside of the data-import operation. If the table is used for storage of application data, this data may be lost during any operation to re-import or update the data.

Related Information

[Table-Import Configuration \[page 288\]](#)

[Table-Import Configuration-File Syntax \[page 290\]](#)

4.2.7.2 Table-Import Configuration

You can define the elements of a table-import operation in a design-time file; the configuration includes information about source data and the target table in SAP HANA.

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) enables you to perform data-provisioning operations that you define in a design-time configuration file. The configuration file is transportable, which means you can transfer the data-provisioning between SAP HANA systems quickly and easily.

The table-import configuration enables you to specify how data from a comma-separated-value (.csv) file is imported into a target table in SAP HANA. The configuration specifies the source file containing the data values to import and the target table in SAP HANA into which the data must be inserted. As further options, you can specify which field delimiter to use when interpreting data in the source .csv file and if keys must be used to determine which columns in the target table to insert the imported data into.

i Note

If you use **multiple** table import configurations to import data into a **single** target table, the **keys** keyword is mandatory. This is to avoid problems relating to the overwriting or accidental deletion of existing data.

The following example of a table-import configuration shows how to define a simple import operation which inserts data from the source files `myData.csv` and `myData2.csv` into the table `myTable` in the schema `mySchema`.

```
import = [
    {
        table = "myTable";
        schema = "mySchema";
        file = "sap.ti2.demo:myData.csv";
        header = false;
        delimField = ";";
```

```

        keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_CUBE"];
    },
{
    table = "sap.ti2.demo::myTable";
    file = "sap.ti2.demo:myData2.csv";
    header = false;
    delimField = ";";
    keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_CUBE"];
}
];

```

In the table import configuration, you can specify the target table using either of the following methods:

- Public synonym ("sap.ti2.demo::myTable")
If you use the public synonym to reference a target table for the import operation, you must use either the `hdbtable` or `cdstable` keyword, for example, `hdbtable = "sap.ti2.demo::myTable";`
- Schema-qualified catalog name ("mySchema"."MyTable")
If you use the schema-qualified catalog name to reference a target table for the import operation, you must use the `table` keyword in combination with the `schema` keyword, for example, `table = "myTable"; schema = "mySchema";`

i Note

Both the schema and the target table specified in the table-import operation must already exist. If either the specified table or the schema does not exist, SAP HANA XS displays an error message during the activation of the configuration file, for example: Table import target table cannot be found. or Schema could not be resolved.

You can also use one table-import configuration file to import data from multiple .csv source files. However, you must specify each import operation in a new code block introduced by the `[hdb | cds]table` keyword, as illustrated in the example above.

By default, the table-import operation assumes that data values in the .csv source file are separated by a comma (,). However, the table-import operation can also interpret files containing data values separated by a semi-colon (;).

- Comma (,) separated values

```
,, ,BW_CUBE,,40000000,2,40000000,all
```

- Semi-colon (;) separated values

```
; ; ;BW_CUBE;;40000000;3;40000000;all
```

i Note

If the activated .hbtdi configuration used to import data is subsequently deleted, only the data that was imported by the deleted .hbtdi configuration is dropped from the target table. All other data including any data imported by other .hbtdi configurations remains in the table. If the target CDS entity has no key (annotated with `@nokey`) all data that is not part of the CSV file is dropped from the table during each table-import activation.

You can use the optional keyword `keys` to specify the key range taken from the source .csv file for import into the target table. If keys are specified for an import in a table import configuration, multiple imports into same target table are checked for potential data collisions.

Note

The configuration-file syntax does not support wildcards in the key definition; the full value of a selectable column value has to be specified.

Security Considerations

In SAP HANA XS, design-time artifacts such as tables (.hdbtable or .hdbdd) and table-import configurations (.hdbti) are not normally exposed to clients via HTTP. However, design-time artifacts containing comma-separated values (.csv) could be considered as potential artifacts to expose to users through HTTP. For this reason, it is essential to protect these exposed .csv artifacts by setting the appropriate application privileges; the application privileges prevents data leakage, for example, by denying access to data by users, who are not normally allowed to see all the records in such tables.

Tip

Place all the .csv files used to import content to into tables together in a single package and set the appropriate (restrictive) application-access permissions for that package, for example, with a dedicated .xsaccess file.

Related Information

[Table-Import Configuration-File Syntax \[page 290\]](#)

4.2.7.3 Table-Import Configuration-File Syntax

The design-time configuration file used to define a table-import operation requires the use of a specific syntax. The syntax comprises a series of keyword=value pairs.

If you use the table-import configuration syntax to define the details of the table-import operation, you can use the keywords illustrated in the following code example. The resulting design-time file must have the .hdbti file extension, for example, myTableImportCfg.hdbti.

```
import = [
  {
    table = "myTable";
    schema = "mySchema";
    file = "sap.ti2.demo:myData.csv";
    header = false;
    useHeaderNames = false;
    delimField = ";";
    delimEnclosing = "\"";
    distinguishEmptyFromNull = true;
    keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_CUBE", "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_DSO", "GROUP_TYPE" :
    "BW_PSA" ];
  }
]
```

```
    }  
];
```

table

In the table-import configuration, the `table`, `cdstable`, and `hdbtable` keywords enable you to specify the name of the target table into which the table-import operation must insert data. The target table you specify in the table-import configuration can be a runtime table in the **catalog** or a **design-time** table definition, for example, a table defined using either the `.hdbtable` or the `.hdbdd` (Core Data Services) syntax.

i Note

The target table specified in the table-import configuration must already exist. If the specified table does not exist, SAP HANA XS displays an error message during the activation of the configuration file, for example: Table import target table cannot be found.

Use the `table` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify the name of the target table using the qualified name for a **catalog** table.

```
table = "target_table";  
schema = "mySchema";
```

i Note

You must also specify the name of the schema in which the target catalog table resides, for example, using the `schema` keyword.

The `hdbtable` keyword in the table-import configuration enables you to specify the name of a target table using the public synonym for a **design-time** table defined with the `.hdbtable` syntax.

```
hdbtable = "sap.ti2.demo::target_table";
```

The `cdstable` keyword in the table-import configuration enables you to specify the name of a target table using the public synonym for a **design-time** table defined with the CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax.

```
cdstable = "sap.ti2.demo::target_table";
```

⚠ Caution

There is no explicit check if the addressed table is created using the `.hdbtable` or CDS-compliant `.hdbdd` syntax.

If the table specified with the `cdstable` or `hdbtable` keyword is not defined with the corresponding syntax, SAP HANA displays an error when you try to activate the artifact, for example, Invalid combination of table declarations found, you may only use [cdstable | hdbtable | table].

schema

The following code example shows the syntax required to specify a schema in a table-import configuration.

```
schema = "TI2_TESTS";
```

i Note

The schema specified in the table-import configuration file must already exist.

If the schema specified in a table-import configuration file does not exist, SAP HANA XS displays an error message during the activation of the configuration file, for example:

- Schema could not be resolved.
- If you import into a catalog table, please provide schema.

The **schema** is only required if you use a table's schema-qualified catalog name to reference the target table for an import operation, for example, `table = "myTable"; schema = "mySchema";`. The schema is **not** required if you use a public synonym to reference a table in a table-import configuration, for example, `hdbtable = "sap.ti2.demo::target_table";`.

file

Use the **file** keyword in the table-import configuration to specify the source file containing the data that the table-import operation imports into the target table. The source file must be a `.csv` file with the data values separated either by a comma (,) or a semi-colon (;). The file definition must also include the full package path in the SAP HANA repository.

```
file = "sap.ti2.demo:myData.csv";
```

header

Use the **header** keyword in the table-import configuration to indicate if the data contained in the specified `.csv` file includes a header line. The **header** keyword is optional, and the possible values are `true` or `false`.

```
header = false;
```

useHeaderNames

Use the **useHeaderNames** keyword in the table-import configuration to indicate if the data contained in the first line of the specified `.csv` file must be interpreted. The **useHeaderNames** keyword is optional; it is used in

combination with the `header` keyword. The `useHeaderNames` keyword is boolean: possible values are `true` or `false`.

i Note

The `useHeaderNames` keyword only works if `header` is **also** set to “`true`”.

```
useHeaderNames = false;
```

The table-import process considers the order of the columns; if the column order specified in the `.csv` file does not match the order used for the columns in the target table, an error occurs on activation.

delimField

Use the `delimField` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify which character is used to separate the values in the data to be imported. Currently, the table-import operation supports either the comma (,) or the semi-colon (;). The following example shows how to specify that values in the `.csv` source file are separated by a semi-colon (;).

```
delimField = ";"
```

i Note

By default, the table-import operation assumes that data values in the `.csv` source file are separated by a comma (,). If no delimiter field is specified in the `.hdbti` table-import configuration file, the default setting is assumed.

delimEnclosing

Use the `delimEnclosing` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify a single character that indicates both the start and end of a set of characters to be interpreted as a single value in the `.csv` file, for example “This is all one, single value”. This feature enables you to include in data values in a `.csv` file even the character defined as the field delimiter (in `delimField`), for example, a comma (,) or a semi-colon (;).

➔ Tip

If the value used to separate the data fields in your `.csv` file (for example, the comma (,)) is also used inside the data values themselves (“This, is, a, value”), you **must** declare and use a delimiter enclosing character and use it to enclose all data values to be imported.

The following example shows how to use the `delimEnclosing` keyword to specify the quote (") as the delimiting character that indicates both the start and the end of a value in the `.csv` file. Everything enclosed

between the `delimEnclosing` characters (in this example, "") is interpreted by the import process as one, single value.

```
delimEnclosing="\"";
```

i Note

Since the `hdbti` syntax requires us to use the quotes ("") to specify the delimiting character, and the delimiting character in this example is, itself, also a quote (""), we need to use the backslash character (\) to escape the second quote ("").

In the following example of values in a .csv file, we assume that `delimEnclosing="\"";` and `delimField=","`. This means that imported values in the .csv file are enclosed in the quote character ("value") and multiple values are separated by the comma ("value1", "value 2"). Any commas **inside** the quotes are interpreted as a comma and not as a field delimiter.

```
"Value 1, has a comma","Value 2 has, two, commas","Value3"
```

You can use other characters as the enclosing delimiter, too, for example, the hash (#). In the following example, we assume that `delimEnclosing="#"` and `delimField=";";`. Any semi-colons included **inside** the hash characters are interpreted as a semi-colon and not as a field delimiter.

```
#Value 1; has a semi-colon#;#Value 2 has; two; semi-colons#;#Value3#
```

distinguishEmptyFromNull

Use the `distinguishEmptyFromNull` keyword in combination with `delimEnclosing` to ensure that the table-import process correctly interprets any **empty** value in the .csv file, which is enclosed with the value defined in the `delimEnclosing` keyword, for example, as an empty space. This ensures that an empty space is imported "as is" into the target table. If the empty space is incorrectly interpreted, it is imported as `NULL`.

```
distinguishEmptyFromNull = true;
```

i Note

The default setting for `distinguishEmptyFromNull` is `false`.

If `distinguishEmptyFromNull=false` is used in combination with `delimEnclosing`, then an empty value in the .csv (with or without quotes "") is interpreted as `NULL`.

```
"Value1","","Value2
```

The table-import process would add the values shown in the example .csv above into the target table as follows:

```
Value1 | NULL | NULL | Value2
```

keys

Use the `keys` keyword in the table-import configuration to specify the key range to be considered when importing the data from the `.csv` source file into the target table.

```
keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_CUBE", "GROUP_TYPE" : "BW_DSO", "GROUP_TYPE" :  
"BW_PSA"];
```

In the example above, all the lines in the `.csv` source file where the `GROUP_TYPE` column value matches one of the given values (`BW_CUBE`, `BW_DSO`, or `BW_PSA`) are imported into the target table specified in the table-import configuration.

```
; ; ;BW_CUBE;;40000000;3;40000000;slave  
; ; ;BW_DSO;;40000000;3;40000000;slave  
; ; ;BW_PSA;;2000000000;1;2000000000;slave
```

In the following example, the `GROUP_TYPE` column is specified as empty("")).

```
keys = [ "GROUP_TYPE" : ""];
```

All the lines in the `.csv` source file where the `GROUP_TYPE` column is empty are imported into the target table specified in the table-import configuration.

```
; ; ; ;40000000;2;40000000;all
```

4.2.7.4 Table-Import Configuration Error Messages

During the course of the activation of the table-import configuration and the table-import operation itself, SAP HANA checks for errors and displays the following information in a brief message.

Table 36: Table-Import Error Messages

Message Number	Message Text	Message Reason
40200	Invalid combination of table declarations found, you may only use [cdstable hdbtable table]	<ol style="list-style-type: none">The <code>table</code> keyword is specified in a table-import configuration that references a table defined using the <code>.hdbtable</code> (or <code>.hdbdd</code>) syntax.The <code>hdbtable</code> keyword is specified in a table-import configuration that references a table defined using another table-definition syntax, for example, the <code>.hdbdd</code> syntax.The <code>cdstable</code> keyword is specified in a table-import configuration that references a table defined using another table-definition syntax, for example, the <code>.hdbtable</code> syntax.

Message Number	Message Text	Message Reason
40201	If you import into a catalog table, please provide schema	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. You specified a target table with the <i>table</i> keyword but did not specify a schema with the <i>schema</i> keyword.
40202	Schema could not be resolved	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The schema specified with the <i>schema</i> keyword does not exist or could not be found (wrong name). 2. The public synonym for an .hdbtable or .hdbdd (CDS) table definition cannot be resolved to a catalog table.
40203	Schema resolution error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The schema specified with the <i>schema</i> keyword does not exist or could not be found (wrong name). 2. The database could not complete the schema-resolution process for some reason - perhaps unrelated to the table-import configuration (.hdbti), for example, an inconsistent database status.
40204	Table import target table cannot be found	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The table specified with the <i>table</i> keyword does not exist or could not be found (wrong name or wrong schema name).
40210	Table import syntax error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The table-import configuration file (.hdbti) contains one or more syntax errors.
40211	Table import constraint checks failed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The same key is specified in multiple table-import configurations (.hdbti files), which leads to overlaps in the range of data to import. 2. If keys are specified for an import in a table-import configuration, multiple imports into the same target table are checked for potential data collisions

5 Setting Up the Analytic Model

Modeling refers to an activity of refining or slicing data in database tables by creating views to depict a business scenario. The views can be used for reporting and decision-making.

The modeling process involves the simulation of entities, such as CUSTOMER, PRODUCT, and SALES, and relationships between them. These related entities can be used in analytics applications such as SAP BusinessObjects Explorer and Microsoft Office. In SAP HANA, these views are known as information views.

Information views use various combinations of content data (that is, non-metadata) to model a business use case. Content data can be classified as follows:

- Attribute: Descriptive data, such as customer ID, city, and country.
- Measure: Quantifiable data, such as revenue, quantity sold and counters.

You can model entities in SAP HANA using the *Modeler* perspective, which includes graphical data modeling tools that allow you to create and edit data models (content models) and stored procedures. With these tools, you can also create analytic privileges that govern the access to the models, and decision tables to model related business rules in a tabular format for decision automation.

You can create the following types of information views:

- Attribute Views
- Analytic Views
- Calculation Views

5.1 Setting Up the Modeling Environment

5.1.1 Set Modeler Preferences

Launch the modeler preferences screen to view and manage the default settings that the system must use each time you logon to the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective.

Procedure

1. Choose *Window* *Preferences* *SAP HANA* *Modeler*.
2. Choose the type of preference you want to specify.
3. Choose *Apply* and *OK*.

Note

Choose *Restore Defaults* to restore your earlier preferences.

5.1.2 Set Keyboard Shortcuts

You can enable keyboard shortcuts for modeling actions such as, activate and validate.

The supported commands with the default keyboard shortcuts are as follows:

Table 37:

Command	Binding	When	Category
Activate	Ctrl+Shift+A	Navigator	Modeler Keys
Activate	Ctrl+Shift+A	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Add Table/Model	Ctrl+Shift+=	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Auto Arrange	Ctrl+L	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Data Preview	Ctrl+Shift+P	Navigator	Modeler Keys
Data Preview	Ctrl+Shift+P	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Display XML	Alt+D	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Find	Ctrl+F	Navigator	Modeler Navigator
Fit to Window	Ctrl+O	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Move Element in Output Pane (Direction: Down)	Ctrl+]	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Move Element in Output Pane (Direction: Up)	Ctrl+[In Windows	Modeler Keys
Open	Ctrl+O	Navigator	Modeler Keys
Show View (View: History)	Alt+Shift+Q, R	In Windows	Views
Show View (View: Job Log)	Alt+Shift+Q, G	In Windows	Views
Show View (View: Where-Used List)	Alt+Shift+Q, U	In Windows	Views
Validate	Ctrl+Shift+V	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Validate	Ctrl+Shift+V	Navigator	Modeler Keys
Zoom (Type: In)	Ctrl+=	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Zoom (Type: Out)	Ctrl+-	In Windows	Modeler Keys
Zoom (Type: Reset)	Alt+Shift+O	In Windows	Modeler Keys

i Note

By default all the modeler key board shortcuts are available in the default scheme. You cannot add new commands, but you can customize the commands as follows:

- Copy Command - to provide a different keyboard shortcut for an existing command.
- Unbind Command - to clear the key bindings with the command and provide a new keyboard shortcut for an existing command.
- Restore Command - to restore the default key bindings provided by the Modeler for an existing command.

5.2 Creating Views

5.2.1 Attributes and Measures

Attributes and measures form content data that you use for data modeling. The attributes represent the descriptive data such as city and country and the measures represent quantifiable data such as revenue and quantity sold.

Attributes

Attributes are the individual non-measurable analytical elements.

Table 38:

Attributes	Description	Example
Simple Attributes	Simple attributes are individual non-measurable analytical elements that are derived from the data foundation.	For example, PRODUCT_ID and PRODUCT_NAME are attributes of a PRODUCT subject area.
Calculated Attributes	Calculated attributes are derived from one or more existing attributes or constants.	For example, deriving the full name of a customer (first and last name), assigning a constant value to an attribute that can be used for arithmetic calculations.
Local Attributes	Local attributes that you use in an analytic view allow you to customize the behavior of an attribute for only that view.	For example, if an analytic view or a calculation view includes an attribute view as an underlying data source, then the analytic view inherits the behavior of the attributes from the attribute view.

i Note

Local attributes convey the table fields available in the default node of analytic views.

Measures

Measures are measurable analytical elements. Measures are derived from the analytic and calculation views.

Table 39:

Measures	Description	Example
Simple Measures	A simple measure is a measurable analytical element that is derived from the data foundation.	For example, PROFIT.

Measures	Description	Example
Calculated Measures	Calculated measures are defined based on a combination of data from OLAP cubes, arithmetic operators, constants, and functions.	For example, you can use calculated measures to calculate the total sales of a product across five regions, or to assign a constant value to a measure for a calculation.
Restricted Measures	Restricted measures or restricted columns are used to filter attribute values based on the user-defined rules.	For example, you can choose to restrict the value for the REVENUE column only for REGION = APJ, and YEAR = 2012.
Counters	Counters add a new measure to the calculation view definition to count the distinct occurrences of an attribute.	For example, to count how many times product appears.

5.2.2 First Steps to View Creation

You create views to model various slices of the data stored in an SAP HANA database. In SAP HANA terminology they are known as Information Views.

Context

Information views use various combinations of content data (that is, non-metadata) to model a business use case.

Content data can be classified as follows:

Attribute - Represents the descriptive data like customer ID, city, country, and so on.

Measure - Represents the quantifiable data such as revenue, quantity sold, counters, and so on.

Information views are often used for analytical use cases such as operational data mart scenarios or multidimensional reporting on revenue, profitability, and so on. There are three types of information views: attribute view, analytic view, and calculation view. All three types of information views are non-materialized views. This creates agility through the rapid deployment of changes.

Before you start modeling your data as information views, you perform the following subtasks:

Procedure

1. Create a development workspace.

The workspace is the link between the SAP HANA repository and your local filesystem, where you work on project-related objects.

2. Create a project.

Create a new project for a particular application or package; you can use the project to collect in a convenient place all your application-related artifacts. For information views, create a General project.

- Share a project.

Sharing a project enables you to ensure that changes you make to project-related files are visible to other team members and applications. Shared projects are available for import by other members of the application-development team.

- Select a project and in the context menu, choose ► **New** ► **Other...**.

- In the pop-up wizard, select **SAP HANA Modeler**.

- Select the required view **Attribute View**, **Analytic View**, **Calculation View** or **Analytic Privilege** as required.
- Choose **Next**.

- In the **New Information View** dialog, enter a name and description.

i Note

If the project is shared, the **Package** field specifies the package that is associated with the project.

- In case of an attribute view, select the required option in the **Subtype** as follows:

Table 40:

Scenario	Substeps
Create a view with table attributes.	In the Sub Type dropdown list, choose Standard .
Create a view with time characteristics.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Sub Type dropdown list, choose Time. Select the required calendar type as follows: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the calendar type is Fiscal, select a variant schema, and a fiscal variant. If the calendar type is Gregorian, select the granularity for the data. To use the system-generated time attribute view, select Auto Create.
Derive a view from an existing view – in this case, you cannot modify the derived view that acts as a reference to the base attribute view.	<p>i Note</p> <p>The system creates a time attribute view based on the default time tables, and defines the appropriate columns/attributes based on the granularity. It also creates the required filters.</p> <p>i Note</p> <p>The tables used for time attribute creation with calendar type Gregorian are, M_TIME_DIMENSION, M_TIME_DIMENSION_YEAR, M_TIME_DIMENSION_MONTH, M_TIME_DIMENSION_WEEK and for calendar type Fiscal is M_FISCAL_CALENDAR. If you want to do a data preview for the created attribute view, you need to generate time data into the mentioned tables from the Quick Launch tab page.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Sub Type dropdown, choose Derived. Select the required attribute view.

Scenario	Substeps
----------	----------

i Note

If the project is not shared, the auto-creation of time attribute view and creation of derived attribute view is not possible.

3. In case of a calculation view, perform the following:
 1. Select the required *Subtype* as described below:
 - Graphical - to use the graphical modeling features for creation of calculation view
 - SQL Script - to write SQL statements for calculation view script
 2. If the subtype is *SQL Script*, set the *Parameter case sensitive* to true or false as you want the calculation view output parameter naming convention.
 3. If the subtype is *Graphical*, select *Enable Multidimensional Reporting* option if you want to make the view available for reporting purposes.

i Note

If you do not enable multidimensional reporting, you can create a calculation view without any measure. In this case it works like an attribute view and is not available for reporting. Also, when this property is disabled, the input to the Semantics node is via projection view. If the property is enabled, the input to the Semantics node is via aggregation view. You can also change the value of this property in the *Properties* panel.

4. Choose *Finish*.

→ Tip

For more information about projects, repository workspaces, and sharing of projects, see [Using SAP HANA Projects \[page 77\]](#).

The view editor opens. Based on the view the *Scenario* panel of the editor consists of the following nodes:

- In case of an attribute view - two nodes, *Data Foundation* and *Semantics*. The *Data Foundation* node represents the tables used for defining the output structure of the view. The *Semantics* node represents the output structure of the view, that is, the dimension. In the *Details* panel you define the relationship between data sources and output elements.
- In case of an analytic view - three nodes
 - *Data Foundation* - represents the tables used for defining the fact table of the view.
 - *Logical Join* - represents the relationship between the selected table fields (fact table) and attribute views that is, used to create the star schema.
 - *Semantics* - represents the output structure of the view.
- In case of a graphical calculation view - *Semantics* node with a default *Aggregation* or *Projection* node, based on the selection of *Enable Multi Dimensional Reporting* checkbox.
- In case of a Script based calculation view - *Semantics* node with the default *SQL Script* node.

5.2.3 Create Attribute Views

You can create a view that is used to model descriptive attribute data by using attributes, that is data that does not contain measures. Attribute views are used to define joins between tables and to select a subset or all of the table's columns and rows.

Prerequisites

You have imported SAP system tables T009 and T009B tables of type *Time* to create time attribute views.

Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. In *SAP HANA System* view, expand the content node.
3. In the navigator, select a package where you want to create the new calculation view.
4. In the context menu of the package, select ► *New* ► *Attribute View* ▾
5. Provide name and description.
6. In the *Subtype* dropdown list, select the type of the attribute view.
7. Choose *Finish*.
8. Add data sources.
 - a. Select the data foundation node.
 - b. In the context menu, choose *Add Objects*.
 - c. In *Find Data Sources* dialog, enter the name of the data source and select it from the list.

i Note

You cannot add column views to the *Data Foundation*.

- d. Choose *OK*.

i Note

You can to add the same table again in *Data Foundation* using table aliases in the editor.

9. Define output columns.
 - a. Select the data foundation node.
 - a. In the *Details* pane, select the columns that you want to add to the output of the data foundation node.
 - b. In the context menu, choose *Add To Output*.

i Note

If you want to add all columns from the data source to the output, in the context menu of the data source, choose *Add All To Output*.

10. Hide attributes in reporting tools.

If you want to hide the attributes from the client tools or reporting tools when you execute the attribute view, then

- a. Select the *Semantics* node.
- b. Choose the *Columns* tab.
- c. Select an attribute.
- d. Select the *Hidden* checkbox.

11. Define key attributes.

You need to define at least one attribute as a key attribute. If there are more than one key attribute, all the key attributes must point to the same table, also referred to as the central table, in the data foundation.

- a. Select the *Semantics* node.
- b. Choose the *Columns* tab.
- c. Select an attribute.
- d. Select the *Key* checkbox.
- e. In the *Attributes* tab page of the *Column* pane, select the required attribute and select the *Type* as *Key Attribute*.

i Note

For auto generated time attribute views, the attributes and key attributes are automatically assigned.

12. Activate the attribute view.

- o If you are in the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective:
 - o *Save and Activate* - to activate the current view and redeploy the affected objects if an active version of the affected object exists. Otherwise only current view gets activated.
 - o *Save and Activate All* - to activate the current view along with the required and affected objects.

i Note

You can also activate the current view by selecting the view in the *SAP HANA Systems* view and choosing *Activate* in the context menu. The activation triggers validation check for both the client side and the server side rules. If the object does not meet any validation check, the object activation fails.

- o If you are in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective:
 1. In the *Project Explorer* view, select the required object.
 2. In the context menu, select  *Team > Activate*.

i Note

The activation triggers the validation check only for the server side rules. Hence, if there are any errors on the client side, they are skipped and the object activation goes through if no error found at the server side.

13. Assign Changes

- a. In the *Select Change* dialog, either create a new ID or select an existing change ID that you want to use to assign your changes.

- b. Choose *Finish*.
- For more information on assigning changes, see chapter **SAP HANA Change Recording** of the *SAP HANA Developer Guide*.
14. Choose *Finish*.

Results

Restriction

The behavior of attribute views with the new editor is as follows:

- Consider that you have added an object to the editor and the object was modified after it was added. In such cases, it is recommended to close and open the editor. This helps reflect the latest changes of the modified object in the editor. For more information, see SAP Note [1783668](#).

Next Steps

After creating an attribute view, you can perform certain additional tasks to obtain the desired output. The table below lists the additional tasks that you can perform to enrich the attribute view.

Table 41:

Requirement	Task to Perform
If you want to filter the output of data foundation node.	Filter Output of Data Foundation Node.

Table 42: Working With Attributes

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to create new output columns and calculate its values at runtime using an expression.	Create Calculated Columns
If you want to assign semantic types to provide more meaning to attributes in the attribute views.	Assign Semantics
If you want to create level hierarchies to organize data in reporting tools.	Create Level Hierarchies
If you want to create parent-child hierarchies to organize data in reporting tools.	Create Parent-Child Hierarchies

Table 43: Working With Attribute View Properties

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to filter the view data either using a fixed client value or using a session client set for the user.	Filter Data for Specific Clients
If you want to execute time travel queries on attribute views.	Enable Information Views for Time Travel Queries
If you want to invalidate or remove data from the cache after specific time intervals.	Invalidate Cached Content

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to maintain object label texts in different languages.	Maintain Modeler Objects in Multiple Languages
If you do not recommend using an attribute view.	Deprecate Information Views

Related Information

[Create Calculated Columns \[page 369\]](#)

[Create Level Hierarchies \[page 386\]](#)

[Create Parent-Child Hierarchies \[page 388\]](#)

5.2.3.1 Attribute Views

Attribute views are used to model an entity based on the relationships between attribute data contained in multiple source tables.

For example, customer ID is the attribute data that describes measures (that is, who purchased a product). However, customer ID has much more depth to it when joined with other attribute data that further describes the customer (customer address, customer relationship, customer status, customer hierarchy, and so on).

You create an attribute view to locate the attribute data and to define the relationships between the various tables to model how customer attribute data, for example, will be used to address business needs.

You can model the following elements within an attribute view:

- Columns
- Calculated Columns

i Note

In the Semantics node, you can classify the columns as attributes and build calculated columns of attribute type.

- Hierarchies

i Note

For more information about the attributes and hierarchies mentioned above, see sections Attributes and Measures, and Hierarchies.

You can choose to further fine-tune the behavior of the attributes of an attribute view by setting the properties as follows:

- Filters to restrict values that are selected when using the attribute view.
- Attributes can be defined as *Hidden* so that they can be used in processes but are not visible to end users.
- Attributes can be marked as key attribute which will be used to identify a central table.

- The *Drill Down Enabled* property can be used to indicate if an attribute is available for further drill down when consumed.

Attribute views can later be joined to tables that contain measures within the definition of an analytic view or a calculation view to create virtual star schema on the SAP HANA data.

5.2.3.2 Generate Time Data

Generate time data into default time-related tables present in the _SYS_BI schema and use these tables in information views to add a time dimension.

Context

For modeling business scenarios that require time dimension, you generate time data in default time related tables available in the _SYS_BI schema. You can select the calendar type and granularity and generate the time data for a specific time span.

Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. In the *Quick View* pane, choose *Generate Time Data*.
3. Select a system where you want to perform this operation.
4. Choose *Next*.
5. In the *Calendar Type* dropdown list, select a calendar type.
6. In the *From Year* and *To Year* textboxes, enter the time range for which you want to generate time data into time-related tables.
7. If you have selected the *Gregorian* calendar type, in the *Granularity* dropdown list select the required granularity.

i Note

For the granularity level *Week*, you need to specify the first day of the week.

8. If you have selected the *Fiscal* calendar type,
 - a. In *Variant Schema* dropdown list, select a variant schema that contains tables having variant data.

i Note

Tables T009 and T009B contain variant data.

- b. Select the required variant.

The variant specifies the number of periods along with the start and end dates.

9. Choose *Finish*.

i Note

For the *Gregorian* calendar type, modeler generates time dimension data into M_TIME_DIMENSION_YEAR, M_TIME_DIMENSION_MONTH, M_TIME_DIMENSION_WEEK, M_TIME_DIMENSION tables and for the *Fiscal* calendar type, the modeler populates the generated time dimension data into the M_FISCAL CALENDAR table. These tables are present in _SYS_BI schema.

5.2.4 Create Analytic Views

Analytic views are used to model data that includes measures. For example, transactional fact table representing sales order history would include measures for quantity, price, and so on.

Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. In *SAP HANA System* view, expand the content node.
3. In the navigator, select a package where you want to create the new calculation view.
4. In the context menu of the package, select ► *New* ► *Analytic View* ▾.
5. Provide name and description.
6. Choose *Finish*.

Modeler launches a new analytic view editor with the semantics node, star join node and the data foundation.

7. Add data sources.
 - a. Select the star join node.
 - b. In the context menu, choose *Add Objects*.
 - c. In *Find Data Sources* dialog, enter the name of the data source.

i Note

You can only dimensions (attribute views) as a data source in star join node of analytic views.

- d. Select the required attribute view from the list.
- e. Choose *OK*.
8. Define the central fact table in the data foundation node.

Continue modeling the analytic view with a cube structure, which includes attributes and measures. The input to the star join node must provide the central fact table.

- a. Select the data foundation node.
- b. In the context menu, choose *Add Objects*.
- c. In *Find Data Sources* dialog, enter the name of the data source and select it from the list.

Note

You cannot add column views to the *Data Foundation*.

- d. Choose *OK*.

Note

You can to add the same table again in *Data Foundation* using table aliases in the editor.

- e. If there are more than one table in the data foundation node, specify the central table (fact table) from which the modeler must derive the measures. Selec the *Data foundation* node and define the property, *Central Entity* in the *Properties* pane.
9. Define output columns.
 - a. Select the data foundation node or star join node.
 - a. In the *Details* pane, select the columns that you want to add to the output of the node.
 - b. In the context menu, choose *Add To Output*.

Note

If you want to add all columns from the data source to the output, in the context menu of the data source, choose *Add All To Output*.

10. In the *Star Join* node, create joins to join the attribute views with the fact table (star schema).

You can also create a temporal joins between date fields of the fact table to an interval (to and from) field of the attribute view.

Restriction

Self-joins are not supported. While creating joins, ensure that a table does not appear twice in any join path. A join path is the set of joins that links the fact table to other tables.

While creating joins between analytic view and attribute view:

- The same table cannot be used in the join path of analytic view and attribute view
- The table of the attribute view which is linked to the fact table should not have an alias table

11. Define attributes and measures

- a. Select the *Semantics* node.
- b. Choose the *Columns* tab.
- c. In the *Local* section, select a output column.
- d. In the *Type* dropdown list, select a measure or attribute.
- e. If you want to hide the measure of attribute in the reporting tool, select the *Hidden* checkbox.

Note

The *Shared* tab page shows attributes from the attribute views that are used in the analytic view.

12. Activate the analytic view:

- If you are in the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective:

- [Save and Activate](#) - to activate the current view and redeploy the affected objects if an active version of the affected object exists. Otherwise only current view gets activated.
- [Save and Activate All](#) - to activate the current view along with the required and affected objects.

i Note

You can also activate the current view by selecting the view in the *SAP HANA Systems* view and choosing [Activate](#) in the context menu. The activation triggers validation check for both the client side and the server side rules. If the object does not meet any validation check, the object activation fails.

- If you are in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective:
 1. In the *Project Explorer* view, select the required object.
 2. In the context menu, select [Activate](#).

i Note

The activation triggers the validation check only for the server side rules. Hence, if there are any errors on the client side, they are skipped and the object activation goes through if no error found at the server side.

i Note

If an active version of the affected objects exist, activating the current view redeploys the affected objects. In the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective, even if the affected object redeployment fails, the current view activation might go through. However, in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, if any of the affected objects redeployment fails, the current view activation also fails.

i Note

While modeling an analytic view, if you have also opened and edited an attribute view that is used in the analytic view, then close and reopen the analytic view editor to see any changes that you have made to the attribute view. For more information, see SAP Note [1783668](#).

13. Assign Changes

- a. In the [Select Change](#) dialog, either create a new ID or select an existing change ID that you want to use to assign your changes.
- b. Choose [Finish](#).

For more information on assigning changes, see chapter **SAP HANA Change Recording** of the *SAP HANA Developer Guide*.

14. Choose [Finish](#).

Next Steps

After creating an analytic view, you can perform certain additional tasks to obtain the desired output. The table below lists the additional tasks that you can perform to enrich the analytic view.

Table 44: Working With View Nodes

Requirement	Task to Perform
If you want to filter the output of the data foundation node.	Filter Output of Data Foundation Node.

Table 45: Working With Attributes and Measures

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to count the number of distinct values for a set of attribute columns.	Create Counters
If you want to create new output columns and calculate its values at runtime using an expression.	Create Calculated Columns
If you want to restrict measure values based on attribute restrictions.	Create Restricted Columns
If you want to assign semantic types to provide more meaning to attributes and measures in analytic views.	Assign Semantics
If you want to parameterize attribute views and execute them based on the values users provide at query runtime.	Create Input Parameters
If you want to, for example, filter the results based on the values that users provide to attributes at runtime.	Assign Variables
If you want associate measures with currency codes and perform currency conversions.	Associate Measures with Currency
If you want associate measures with unit of measures and perform unit conversions.	Associate Measures with Unit of Measure
If you want to group related measures together in a folder.	Group Related Measures.

Table 46: Working With Ananlytic View Properties

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to filter the view data either using a fixed client value or using a session client set for the user.	Filter Data for Specific Clients
If you want to execute time travel queries on analytic views.	Enable Information Views for Time Travel Queries
If you want to invalidate or remove data from the cache after specific time intervals.	Invalidate Cached Content
If you want to maintain object label texts in different languages.	Maintain Modeler Objects in Multiple Languages
If you do not recommend using an anlytic view.	Deprecate Information Views

Related Information

[Create Temporal Joins \[page 363\]](#)

5.2.4.1 Analytic Views

Analytic views are used to model data that includes measures.

For example, an operational data mart representing sales order history would include measures for quantity, price, and so on.

The data foundation of an analytic view can contain multiple tables. However, measures that are selected for inclusion in an analytic view must originate from only one of these tables (for business requirements that include measure sourced from multiple source tables, see calculation view).

Analytic views can be simply a combination of tables that contain both attribute data and measure data. For example, a report requiring the following:

```
<Customer_ID Order_Number Product_ID Quantity_Ordered Quantity_Shipped>
```

Optionally, attribute views can also be included in the analytic view definition. In this way, you can achieve additional depth of attribute data. The analytic view inherits the definitions of any attribute views that are included in the definition. For example:

```
<Customer_ID/Customer_Name Order_Number Product_ID/Product_Name/Product_Hierarchy  
Quantity_Ordered Quantity_Shipped>
```

You can model the following elements within an analytic view:

- Columns
- Calculated Columns
- Restricted Columns

➔ Remember

In the Semantics node, you can classify columns and calculated columns as type attributes and measures. The attributes you define in an analytic view are Local to that view. However, attributes coming from attribute views in an analytic view are Shared attributes. For more information about the attributes and measures mentioned above, see section Attributes and Measures.

- Variables
- Input parameters

ℹ Note

For more information about the variables and input parameters mentioned above, see sections Assigning Variables and Creating Input Parameters.

You can choose to further fine-tune the behavior of the attributes and measures of an analytic view by setting the properties as follows:

- Filters to restrict values that are selected when using the analytic view.
- Attributes can be defined as *Hidden* so that they are able to be used in processes but are not viewable to end users.
- The *Drill Down Enabled* property can be used to indicate if an attribute is available for further drill down when consumed.
- Aggregation type on measures

- Currency and *Unit of Measure* parameters (you can set the *Measure Type* property of a measure, and also in *Calculated Column* creation dialog, associate a measure with currency and unit of measure)

➔ Tip

If there is a name conflict that is, more than one element having the same name among the local and shared attributes, calculated columns, restricted columns, and measures of an analytic view, the activation of the view does not go through. You can resolve such conflict using the aliases. Aliases must also have unique names. You can assign an alias to the required element in the *Column* view of the *Semantics* node by editing its name inline. Hereinafter, the element is referred by its alias.

If two or more shared columns have a name conflict, during save the aliases for the conflicting name columns are proposed. You can choose to overwrite the proposed names.

In case of old models, if you find any error while opening the object due to aliasing that was caused due to swapping of column names with the alias names, use the *Quick Fix*. To use the *Quick Fix*, select the error message that is, the problem in the *Problems* view, and choose *Quick Fix* in the context menu. This resolves the swapping issue by assigning right names to the column and alias.

You can choose to hide the attributes and measures that are not required for client consumption by assigning value **true** to the property *Hidden* in the *Properties* pane, or selecting the *Hidden* checkbox in the *Column* view. The attributes or measures marked as hidden are not available for input parameters, variables, consumers or higher level views that are build on top of the analytic view. For old models (before SPS06), if the hidden attribute is already used, you can either unhide the element or remove the references.

For an analytic view, you can set the property *MultiDimensional Reporting* to true or false. If the *MultiDimensional Reporting* property of the analytic view is set to false, the view will not be available for multidimensional reporting purposes. If the value is set to true, an additional column *Aggregation* is available to specify the aggregation type for measures.

You can enable relational optimization for your analytic view such as, Optimize stacked SQL for example, convert

```
SELECT a, SUM(X) FROM ( SELECT * FROM AV) GROUP BY A
```

to

```
SELECT A, SUM(X) FROM AV GROUP BY A
```

by setting the property *Allow Relational Optimization*.

Setting this property would be effective only for analytic views having complex calculations such that deployment of analytic view generates catalog calculation view on top of the generated catalog OLAP view.

⚠ Caution

In this case, if this flag is set counters and *SELECT COUNT* may deliver wrong results

5.2.4.2 Create Temporal Joins

Temporal joins allow you to join the master data with the transaction data (fact table) based on the temporal column values from the transaction data and the time validity from the master data.

Procedure

1. Open the analytic view or calculation view with star join node in the view editor.
2. Select the *Star Join* node.

The star join node must contain the master data as a data source. The input to the star join node (the data foundation node) provides the central fact table.

3. Create a join
Create a join by selecting a column from one data source (master table), holding the mouse button down and dragging to a column in the other data source (fact table).
4. Select the join.
5. In the context menu, choose *Edit*.
6. Define join properties.

In the *Properties* section, define the join properties.

i Note

For temporal joins in analytic views, you can use *Inner* or *Referential* join types only and for temporal joins in calculation views, you can use *Inner* join type only.

7. Define temporal column and temporal conditions

In the *Temporal Properties* section, provide values to create temporal join.

- a. In the *Temporal Column* dropdown list, select a time column in the analytic view.
 - b. In the *From Column* and *To Column* dropdown lists specify the start and end time values from the attribute view to fetch the records.
 - c. In the *Temporal Condition* dropdown list, select a condition.
8. Choose *OK*.

5.2.5 Create Graphical Calculation Views

Create graphical calculation views using a graphical editor to depict a complex business scenario with ease. You can create graphical calculation views to include layers of calculation logic and with measures from multiple data sources.

Context

Creating graphical calculation views is useful in bringing together normalized data that are generally dispersed. You can combine multiple transaction tables and analytic views, while creating a graphical calculation view.

i Note

If you want to execute calculation views in SQL engine, see SAP NOTE [1857202](#).

Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. In *SAP HANA System* view, expand the content node.
3. In the navigator, select a package where you want to create the new calculation view.
4. In the context menu of the package, select *New* > *Calculation View*.
5. Provide name and description.
6. Select calculation view type.
In the *Type* dropdown list, select *Graphical*.
7. Select a *Data Category* type.
8. Choose *Finish*.

Modeler launches a new graphical calculation view editor with the semantics node and default aggregation or projection node depending on the data category of the calculation view.

9. Continue modeling the graphical calculation view by dragging and dropping the necessary view nodes from the tools palette.
10. Add data sources.

If you want to add data sources to your view node, then

- a. Select a view node.
- b. In the context menu, choose *Add Objects*.
- c. In the *Find* dialog, enter the name of the data source and select it from the list.

You can add one or more data sources depending on the selected view node.

- d. Choose *OK*.

11. Define output columns.

- a. Select a view node.
- b. In the *Details* pane, select the columns that you want to add to the output of the node.
- c. In the context menu, choose *Add To Output*.
- d. If you want to add all columns from the data source to the output, in the context menu of the data source, choose *Add All To Output*.

i Note

Using keep flag column property. The keep flag property helps retrieve columns from the view node to the result set even if you do not request it in your query. In other words, if you want to include those columns into the SQL group by clause even if you do not select them in the query, then:

1. Select the view node.
2. In the *Output* pane, select an output column.
3. In the *Properties* pane, set the value of *Keep Flag* property to *True*.

12. Define attributes and measures.

If you are creating a calculation view with data category as cube, then to successfully activate the information view, you have to specify at least one column as a measure.

- a. Select the *Semantics* node.
- b. Choose the *Columns* tab.
- c. In the *Local* section, select an output column.
- d. In the *Type* dropdown list, select *Measure* or *Attribute*.

If the value is set to *Cube*, an additional *Aggregation* column is available to specify the aggregation type for measures.

i Note

If the default node of the calculation view is aggregation, you can always aggregate the measures even if no aggregation function is specified in the SQL.

1. Select the default aggregation node.
 2. In the *Properties* tab, set the value of the property *Always Aggregate Results* to *True*
- e. If you want to hide the measure of attribute in the reporting tool, select the *Hidden* checkbox.
 - f. If you want to force the query to retrieve selected attribute columns from the database even when not requested in the query, set the *Keep Flag* property to *True* for those attributes.

This means that you are including those columns into the group by clause even if you do not select them in the query. To set the *Keep Flag* property of attributes to *True*, select an attribute in the *Output* pane, and in the *Properties* pane set the *Keep Flag* property to *True*.

i Note

If you are using any attribute view as a data source to model the calculation view, the *Shared* section displays attributes from the attribute views that are used in the calculation view.

13. Activate the calculation view.

- o If you are in the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective,

- [Save and Activate](#) - to activate the current view and redeploy the affected objects if an active version of the affected object exists. Otherwise, only the current view is activated.
- [Save and Activate All](#) - to activate the current view along with the required and affected objects.

i Note

You can also activate the current view by selecting the view in the *SAP HANA Systems* view and choosing [Activate](#) in the context menu. The activation triggers validation check for both the client side and the server side rules. If the object does not meet any validation check, the object activation fails.

- If you are in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective,
 1. In the *Project Explorer* view, select the required object.
 2. In the context menu, select [Team > Activate](#).

i Note

The activation only triggers the validation check for the server side rules. If there are any errors on the client side, they are skipped, and the object activation goes through if no error is found on the server side.

i Note

1. For an active calculation view, you can preview output data of an intermediate node. This helps to debug each level of a complex calculation scenarios (having join, union, aggregation, projection, and output nodes). Choose the [Data Preview](#) option from the context menu of a node.
When you preview the data of an intermediate now, SAP HANA studio activates the intermediate calculation model with the current user instead of the user _SYS_REPO. The data you preview for a node is for the active version of the calculation view. If no active version for the object exists then you need to activate the object first.

14. Assign Changes

- a. In the [Select Change](#) dialog, either create a new ID or select an existing change ID that you want to use to assign your changes.
- b. Choose [Finish](#).

For more information on assigning changes, see chapter **SAP HANA Change Recording** of the *SAP HANA Developer Guide*.

15. Choose [Finish](#).

Next Steps

After creating a graphical calculation view, you can perform certain additional tasks to obtain the desired output. The table below lists the additional tasks that you can perform to enrich the calculation view.

Table 47: Working With View Nodes

Requirement	Task to Perform
If you want to query data from two data sources and combine records from both the data sources based on a join condition or to obtain language specific data.	Create Joins
If you want to query data from database tables that contains spatial data.	Create Spatial Joins
If you want to validate joins and identify whether you have maintained the referential integrity.	Validate Joins
If you want to combine the results of two more data sources.	Create Unions
If you want to partition the data for a set of partition columns, and perform an order by SQL operation on the partitioned data.	Create Rank Nodes
If you want to filter the output of projection or aggregation view nodes.	Filter Output of Aggregation or Projection View Nodes.

Table 48: Working With Attributes and Measures

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to count the number of distinct values for a set of attribute columns.	Create Counters
If you want to create new output columns and calculate its values at runtime using an expression.	Create Calculated Columns
If you want to restrict measure values based on attribute restrictions.	Create Restricted Columns
If you want to assign semantic types to provide more meaning to attributes and measures in calculation views.	Assign Semantics
If you want to parameterize calculation views and execute them based on the values users provide at query runtime.	Create Input Parameters
If you want to, for example, filter the results based on the values that users provide to attributes at runtime.	Assign Variables
If you want associate measures with currency codes and perform currency conversions.	Associate Measures with Currency
If you want associate measures with unit of measures and perform unit conversions.	Associate Measures with Unit of Measure
If you want to create level hierarchies to organize data in reporting tools.	Create Level Hierarchies
If you want to create parent-child hierarchies to organize data in reporting tools.	Create Parent-Child Hierarchies
If you want to group related measures together in a folder.	Group Related Measures.

Table 49: Working With Calculation View Properties

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to filter the view data either using a fixed client value or using a session client set for the user.	Filter Data for Specific Clients
If you want to execute time travel queries on calculation views.	Enable Information Views for Time Travel Queries
If you want to invalidate or remove data from the cache after specific time intervals.	Invalidate Cached Content
If you want to maintain object label texts in different languages.	Maintain Modeler Objects in Multiple Languages

Requirement	Task to perform
If you do not recommend using a calculation view.	Deprecate Information Views

Related Information

[Additional Functionality for Information Views \[page 386\]](#)

5.2.5.1 Calculation Views

A calculation view is used to define more advanced slices on the data in SAP HANA database. Calculation views can be simple and mirror the functionality found in both attribute views and analytic views. However, they are typically used when the business use case requires advanced logic that is not covered in the previous types of information views.

For example, calculation views can have layers of calculation logic, can include measures sourced from multiple source tables, can include advanced SQL logic, and so on. The data foundation of the calculation view can include any combination of tables, column views, attribute views and analytic views. You can create joins, unions, projections, and aggregation levels on the sources.

You can model the following elements within a calculation view:

- Attributes
- Measures
- Calculated measures
- Counters
- Hierarchies (created outside of the attribute view)

Note

For more information about the attributes, measures, counters, and hierarchies mentioned above, see sections [Attributes](#) and [Measures](#), and [Hierarchies](#).

- Variables
- Input parameters

Note

For more information about the variables and input parameters mentioned above, see sections [Assigning Variables](#) and [Creating Input Parameters](#).

Calculation views can include measures and be used for multi-dimensional reporting or can contain no measures and used for list-type of reporting. Calculation views can either be created using a graphical editor or using a SQL Console . These various options provide maximum flexibility for the most complex and comprehensive business requirements.

5.2.5.2 Create Calculated Columns

Create new output columns and calculate its values at runtime based on the result of an expression. You can use other column values, functions, input parameters or constants in the expression.

Context

For example, you can create a calculated column DISCOUNT using the expression if("PRODUCT" = 'NOTEBOOK', "DISCOUNT" * 0.10, "DISCOUNT"). In this sample expression, you use the function if(), the column PRODUCT and operator * to obtain values for the calculated column DISCOUNT.

Procedure

1. Open the required graphical calculation view in the view editor.
2. Select the view node in which you want to create the calculated column.
3. In the *Output* pane, choose the icon  dropdown.
4. Choose the *New Calculated Column* menu option.
5. In the *Calculated Column*, enter a name and description for the new calculated column.
6. In the *Data Type* dropdown list, select the data type of the calculated column.
7. Enter length and scale based on the data type you select.
8. Select a column type.

You can create calculated attributes or calculated measures using attributes or measures respectively.

- a. In the *Column Type* dropdown list, select a value.

i Note

If you want to create a calculated measure and enable client side aggregation for the calculated measure, select the *Enable client side aggregation* checkbox.

This allows you to propose the aggregation that client needs to perform on calculated measures.

9. If you want to hide the calculated column in reporting tools, select the *Hidden* checkbox.
10. Choose *OK*.
11. Provide an expression.

You can create an expression using the SQL language or the column engine language.

- a. In the *Language* dropdown list, select the expression language.
- a. In the *Expression Editor*, enter a valid expression.

Modeler computes this expression at runtime to obtain values of calculated columns.

For example, the expression in column engine language, if("PRODUCT" = 'NOTEBOOK', "DISCOUNT" * 0.10, "DISCOUNT") which is equivalent to, if attribute PRODUCT equals the string 'NOTEBOOK' then

DISCOUNT equals to DISCOUNT multiplied by 0.10 should be returned. Else use the original value of the attribute DISCOUNT.

i Note

You can also create an expression by dragging and dropping the expression elements, operators and functions from the menus to the expression editor. For expression in SQL language, modeler supports only a limited list of SQL functions.

- b. Choose *Validate Syntax* to validate your expression.
12. Assign semantics to the calculated column.
 - a. Choose the *Semantics* tab.
 - b. In the *Semantic Type* dropdown list, select a semantic value.

Related Information

[Using Functions in Expressions \[page 397\]](#)

5.2.5.3 Map Input Parameters

You can map the input parameters in the underlying data sources (attribute views, analytic views and calculation views) of the calculation view to the calculation view parameters. You can also map many data source parameters to one calculation view input parameter and perform a one-to-one mapping of the data source parameters to the calculation view parameters.

Context

i Note

You can map attribute view input parameters to calculation view input parameters with the same name only. The calculation view input parameter provides runtime value selection to filter attribute data based on the filter defined in the attribute view. For example, you can define an attribute view GEO with filter set on Country column such that, the filter value is an input parameter having syntax \$\$IP\$\$. When you use this attribute view in a calculation view, you need to define a same name input parameter IP and map it with the attribute view parameter. When you perform data preview on the calculation view, the runtime help for the calculation view input parameter is shown. The value selected for calculation view parameter serves as input for the attribute view parameter to filter the data.

Procedure

1. To invoke the dialog from the default aggregation or projection node:
 - a. Select the default aggregation or projection node.
 - b. Right-click *Input Parameter* in the *Output* view.
 - c. In the context menu, choose *Manage Mappings*.
2. To invoke the dialog from the *Semantics* node:
 - a. Select the *Semantics* node.



- b. In the *Variables/Input Parameters* view, choose .
- c. Choose *Data sources* or *Views for value help*

i Note

The system displays the option *Views for value help* only if your calculation view consists of external views as value help references in variables and input parameters. If you choose *Views for value help*, you can map the parameters/ variable of external views for value help with the parameters/ variables of a calculation view of any name.

3. In the *Map Input Parameters* dialog, map the data source input parameters (or parameters of external views for value help) with the calculation view parameters.

i Note

You can choose the *Auto Map by Name* option to automatically create the input parameters corresponding to the source and perform a 1:1 mapping. You can also select a source input parameter and use the following context menu options:

- o *Copy and Map 1:1* - to create the same input parameter for the calculation view as for the source, and create a 1:1 mapping between them.
- o *Map By Name* - to map the source input parameter with the calculation view input parameter having the same name.
- o *Remove Mapping* - to delete the mapping between the source and calculation view input parameter.

4. Select *Create Constant* to create a constant at the target calculation view.

i Note

You can change the constant name by double clicking it.

5.2.5.4 Create Unions

Use union nodes in graphical calculation views to combine the results of two or more data sources.

Context

A union node combines multiple data sources, which can have multiple columns. You can manage the output of a union node by mapping the source columns to the output columns or by creating a target output column with constant values.

For a source column that does not have a mapping with any of the output columns, you can create a target output column and map it to the unmapped source columns. You can also create a target column with constant values.

Procedure

1. Open the required graphical calculation view in view editor.
2. From the editor's tools palette, drag and drop a union node to the editor.
3. Add data sources.
 - a. Select the union node.
 - b. In the context menu, choose *Add Objects*.
 - c. In *Find Data Sources* dialog, enter the name of the data source and select it from the list.
 - d. Choose *OK*.
4. Define output columns.
 - a. In the *Details* pane, select the columns you want to add to the output of the union node.
 - b. In the context menu, choose *Add To Output*.

i Note

If you want to add all columns from the data source to the output, in the context menu of the data source, choose *Add All To Output*.

5. Assign constant value.

This helps to denote the underlying data of the source columns with constant values in the output.

If you want to assign a constant value to any of the target columns, then

- a. In the *Target* section, select an output column.
- b. In the context menu, choose *Manage Mappings*.
- c. In the *Manage Mappings* dialog, set the *Source Column* value as blank.
- d. In the *Contant Value* field, enter a constant value.
- e. Choose *OK*.

6. Create a constant output column.

If you want to create a new output column and assign a constant value to it, then

- a. In the *Target* section, choose .
- b. In the *Create Target* dialog, provide name and data type for the new output column.
- c. Choose *OK*.

i Note

By default, the value of the constant output column is null.

Related Information

[Constant Column \[page 373\]](#)

5.2.5.5 Constant Column

In a union view, a *Constant Column* is created if there are any target or output attributes for which there are no mappings to the source attributes. The default value for the constant column is NULL.

i Note

The target attribute is mapped to all the sources.

For example, you have two tables with similar structures, Actual Sales and Planned Sales, corresponding to the sales of products. You want to see the combined data in a single view, but differentiate between the data from the two tables for comparison. To do so, you can create a union view between the two tables and have a constant column indicating constant values like A & P, as shown below:

Actual Sales

Sales	Product
5000	A1
2000	B1

Planned Sales

Sales	Product
3000	A1
6000	B1

The result of this query can be as follows:

Actual Planned Indicator	Sales	Product
A	5000	A1
P	3000	A1

Actual Planned Indicator	Sales	Product
A	2000	B1
P	6000	B1

5.2.5.6 Dynamic Joins

After creating a join between two data sources, you can define the join property as dynamic. Dynamic joins improves the join execution process and help reduce the number of records that join node process at run time.

If you define a join as dynamic, engine dynamically defines the join columns based on the columns requested by the client query.

i Note

You can set the *Dynamic Join* property only if the two data sources are joined on multiple columns.

The behavior of dynamic joins depends on the client query. This means that, you can improve the join execution process using the dynamic join property if at least one of the join elements is requested by the client query.

Static Join Versus Dynamic Joins

- In static joins, the join condition isn't changed, irrespective of the client query.
- In a dynamic join, if the client query to the join doesn't request a join column, a query run time error occurs. This behavior of dynamic join is different from the static joins.
- Dynamic joins enforces aggregation before executing the join, but for static joins the aggregation happens after the join. This means that, for dynamic joins, if a join column is not requested by the client query, its value is first aggregated, and later the join condition is executed based on columns requested in the client query.

5.2.5.7 Filter Output of Aggregation or Projection View Nodes

Apply filters on columns in the projection or the aggregation view nodes (except the default aggregation or projection node) to filter the output of these nodes.

Context

You apply filters, for example, to retrieve the sales of a product where (revenue >= 100 AND region = India) OR (revenue >=50 AND region = Germany). You can also define filters using nested or complex expressions.

Filters on columns are equivalent to the HAVING clause of SQL. At runtime, the modeler executes the filters after performing all the operations that you have defined in the aggregation or projection. You can also use input parameters to provide values to filters at runtime.

Procedure

1. Applying filters on columns of calculation views.

- If you want to define filters on columns of projection or aggregation view nodes in calculation views:
- a. Open the calculation view in the view editor.
 - b. Select a projection or aggregation view node.
 - c. In the *Details* pane, select a column.
 - d. In the context menu, choose *Apply Filter*.
 - e. In the *Apply Filter* dialog, select an operator.
 - f. In the *Value* field, select a fixed value or an input parameter from the value help.

i Note

In the selected view node, if you are using other information views as data sources (and not tables), then you can use only input parameters to apply filters on columns.

- g. Choose *OK*.
2. Choose *OK*.
 3. If you want to apply filters on columns or at the node level using expressions.

You can create expression in SQL language or the column engine language to apply filters. For example, `match("ABC","*abc*")` is an expression in the column engine language.

- a. Select the aggregation or projection node.
- b. In the *Output* pane, expand *Filters*.
- c. In the context menu of *Expression*, choose *Open*.
- d. Enter the expression by selecting the required elements, operators, input parameters, calculated columns and functions.
- e. Choose *OK*.

i Note

For expression in SQL language, modeler supports only a limited list of SQL functions.

5.2.6 Create Script-Based Calculation Views

Create script-based calculation views to depict complex calculation scenarios by writing SQL script statements. It is a viable alternative to depict complex business scenarios, which you cannot achieve by creating other information views (Attribute, Analytical, and Graphical Calculation views).

Context

For example, if you want to create information views that require certain SQL functions (i.e. window), or predictive functions (i.e. R-Lang), then you use script-based calculation views. Sufficient knowledge of SQL scripting including the behavior and optimization characteristics of the different data models is a prerequisite for creating script-based calculation views.

Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. In *SAP HANA System* view, expand the content node.
3. In the navigator, select a package where you want to create the new calculation view.
4. In the context menu of the package, select  *New* .
5. Provide name and description.
6. Select calculation view type.
In the *Type* dropdown list, select *SQL Script*.
7. Set *Parameter Case Sensitive* to *True* or *False* based on how you require the naming convention for the output parameters of the calculation view.
8. Choose *Finish*.
9. Select default schema
 - a. Select the *Semantics* node.
 - b. Choose the *View Properties* tab.
 - c. In the *Default Schema* dropdown list, select the default schema.

i Note

If you do not select a default schema while scripting, then you need to provide fully qualified names of the objects used.

10. Choose *SQL Script* node in the *Semantics* node.

i Note

The `IN` function does not work in SQL script to filter a dynamic list of values. You have to use `APPLY_FILTER` functions instead.

11. Define the output structure.

- In the *Output* pane, choose *Create Target*.
- Add the required output parameters and specify its length and type.

12. If you want to add multiple columns that are part of existing information views or catalog tables or table functions to the output structure of script-based calculation views, then:

- In the *Output* pane, choose ► *New* ► *Add Columns From* ▶.
- Enter the name of the object that contains the columns you want to add to the output.
- Select one or more objects from the dropdown list.
- Choose *Next*.
- In the *Source* pane, choose the columns that you want to add to the output.
- If you want to add selective columns to the output, then select those columns and choose *Add*.
- If you want to add all columns of an object to the output, then select the object and choose *Add*.

i Note

For all duplicate column names in the *Target* pane, the modeler displays an error. You cannot add two columns with the same name to your output. If you want to retain both the columns, then change the name of columns in the *Target* pane before you add them to the output.

- If you want to override the existing output structure, select *Replace existing output columns in the Output*.
- Choose *Finish*.

i Note

The defined order and data types of columns and parameters must match with the order and data types of the columns and parameters in the select query, which is assigned to the output function `var_out`.

13. Write the SQL Script statements to fill the output columns.

You can drag information views from the navigator pane to the SQL editor to obtain an equivalent SQL statement that represents the deployed schema name for the information view.

i Note

For information on providing input parameters in script-based calculation views, see SAP Note [2035113](#)

14. Activate the script-based calculation view.

- If you are in the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective:
 - *Save and Activate* - to activate the current view and redeploy the affected objects if an active version of the affected object exists. Otherwise, only the current view is activated.

- [Save and Activate All](#) - to activate the current view along with the required and affected objects.

i Note

You can also activate the current view by selecting the view in the **SAP HANA Systems** view and choosing [Activate](#) in the context menu. The activation triggers validation check for both the client side and the server side rules. If the object does not meet any validation check, the object activation fails.

- If you are in the **SAP HANA Development** perspective:
 1. In the [Project Explorer](#) view, select the required object.
 2. In the context menu, select [Team](#) > [Activate](#).

i Note

The activation only triggers the validation check for the server side rules. If there are any errors on the client side, they are skipped, and the object activation goes through if no error is found on the server side.

You can find the details of the functions available on content assist that is, by pressing Ctrl + Space in the SQL Console while writing procedures in the [SAP HANA SQLScript Reference](#)

15. Assign Changes

- a. In the [Select Change](#) dialog, either create a new ID or select an existing change ID that you want to use to assign your changes.
- b. Choose [Finish](#).

For more information on assigning changes, see chapter **SAP HANA Change Recording** of the **SAP HANA Developer Guide**.

16. Choose [Finish](#).

Next Steps

After creating a script-based calculation view, you can perform certain additional tasks to obtain the desired output. The table below lists the additional tasks that you can perform to enrich the calculation view.

Table 50: Working With Attributes and Measures

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to assign semantic types to provide more meaning to attributes and measures in calculation views.	Assign Semantics
If you want to parameterize calculation views and execute them based on the values users provide at query runtime.	Create Input Parameters
If you want to, for example, filter the results based on the values that users provide to attributes at runtime.	Assign Variables
If you want associate measures with currency codes and perform currency conversions.	Associate Measures with Currency
If you want associate measures with unit of measures and perform unit conversions.	Associate Measures with Unit of Measure

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to create level hierarchies to organize data in reporting tools.	Create Level Hierarchies
If you want to create parent-child hierarchies to organize data in reporting tools.	Create Parent-Child Hierarchies
If you want to group related measures together in a folder.	Group Related Measures.

Table 51: Working With Calculation View Properties

Requirement	Task to perform
If you want to filter the view data either using a fixed client value or using a session client set for the user.	Filter Data for Specific Clients
If you want to execute time travel queries on script-based calculation views.	Enable Information Views for Time Travel Queries
If you want to invalidate or remove data from the cache after specific time intervals.	Invalidate Cached Content
If you want to maintain object label texts in different languages.	Maintain Modeler Objects in Multiple Languages
If you do not recommend using a script-based calculation view.	Deprecate Information Views

5.2.7 Activating Objects

You activate objects available in your workspace to expose the objects for reporting and analysis.

Based on your requirements, you can do the following:

- **Activate** - Deploys the inactive objects.
- **Redeploy** - Deploys the active objects in one of the following scenarios:
 - If your runtime object gets corrupted or deleted, and you want to create it again.
 - In case of runtime problems during object activation, and the object status is still active.

The following activation modes are supported:

- **Activate and ignore the inconsistencies in affected objects** - To activate the selected objects even if it results in inconsistent affected objects. For example, if you choose to activate an object A that is used by B and C, and it causes inconsistencies in B and C but you can choose to go ahead with the activation of A. This is the default activation mode.
- **Stop activation in case of inconsistencies in affected objects** - To activate the selected objects only if there are no inconsistent affected objects.

i Note

If even one of the selected objects fails (either during validation or during activation), the complete activation job fails and none of the selected objects is activated.

Depending on where you invoke the activation, redeployment or cascade activation, the behavior is as follows:

Context	Activate	Redeploy
Quick Launch tab page	A dialog box appears with a preselected list of all your inactive objects.	A dialog box appears with a list of active objects in your workspace.
Package context menu	A dialog box appears with a preselected list of all your inactive objects.	A dialog box appears with a list of active objects in your workspace.
Content context menu	A dialog box appears with a preselected list of all your inactive objects.	Not applicable
Editor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you select <i>Save and Activate</i>, current object is activated and the affected objects are redeployed if an active version for the affected objects exist. If you select <i>Save and Activate All</i>, a dialog box appears with a preselected list of the selected object along with all the required and affected objects. 	Not applicable
Object context menu	A dialog box appears with a preselected list of the selected object along with all the required objects.	A redeployment job is submitted for the selected object.

i Note

- If an object is the only inactive object in the workspace, the activation dialog box is skipped and the activation job is submitted.
- If an object is inactive and you want to revert back to the active version, from the editor or object context menu, choose *Revert To Active*.
- In the *Activate* dialog, you can select the *Bypass validation* checkbox in order to skip validation before activation to improve the activation time. For example, if you have imported a number of objects and want to activate them without spending time on validation.

i Note

During delivery unit import, full server side activation is enabled, activation of objects after import is done. In this case all the imported objects are activated (moved to active table), even if there are errors in activated or affected objects. But the objects for which activation results in error are considered as broken or inconsistent objects which means that the current runtime representation of these objects is not in sync with the active design time version. The broken objects are shown in the *Navigator* view with an 'x' along side.

i Note

The behavior of the activation job is as follows:

- The status (completed, completed with warnings, and completed with errors) of the activation job indicates whether the activation of the objects is successful or failed.

- In case of failure that is when the status is completed with errors, the process is rolled back. This means, even if there are individual objects successfully activated, since the activation job is rolled back, none of the objects are activated.
- When you open the job log, the summary list shows only those objects that are submitted for activation. It does not list all the affected objects. They are listed only in detail section.

Activation behavior in the view editor

The following table describes the availability and behavior of take over and activate options for an object from the view editor in the [SAP HANA Modeler](#) perspective.

Table 52:

Sce-nario	Object	in Team Provider		in SAP HANA Systems view	SAP HANA Sys-tems view		Description
		User: U1,Work-space: WS1	User: U2,Work-space: WS2	User: U, Work-space: "" (default/other workspace)	Take Over	Acti-vate	
1	OBJ1	Inactive	Inactive	Inactive	Not Appli-cable	Al-lowed	If an object has multiple inactive ver-sions, and the object version in Modeler is also inactive, for example, through delivery unit import or an-other workspace in Project Explorer, user can activate his own inactive ob-ject. After activation, the object is the scenario 2 as in the next row.
		<p>i Note</p> <p>If the logged-in user and the user to whom the object belongs are differ-ent, the activation is not allowed. For example, if the object is inac-tive in SYSTEM user's workspace and MB user opens the object, the object opens in read-only mode, and the activation is not allowed.</p>					
2	OBJ1	Inactive	Inactive	Active	Not Al-lowed	Not Al-lowed	If an object has multiple inactive ver-sions in the Project Explorer and the object version in Modeler is active, neither activation nor take over option is enabled.

Scenario	Object	in Team Provider		in SAP HANA Systems view	SAP HANA Systems view		Description
3	OBJ1	Inactive	Active	Active	Al-lowed	Not Al-lowed	If an object has single inactive version in the Project Explorer, and the object version in Modeler is active, only take over option is enabled.
4	OBJ1	Inactive	Active	Inactive	Not Appli-cable	Al-lowed	If an object has inactive versions in the Project Explorer and Modeler, only activation option is enabled.
5	OBJ1	Active	Inactive	Active	Al-lowed	Not Al-lowed	If an object has multiple active versions such as, one in the Project Explorer and one in the Modeler, only take over option is enabled.
6	OBJ1	Active	Active	Inactive	Not Appli-cable	Al-lowed	If an object has single inactive version, and the object version in Modeler is inactive, only activation option is enabled.
7	OBJ1	Active	Inactive	Inactive	Not Al-lowed	Al-lowed	If an object has single active version, and the object version in Modeler is inactive, only activation option is enabled.
8	OBJ1	Active	Active	Active	Not Appli-cable	(Rede-ploy)	If an object has multiple active versions, and the object version in Modeler is active, only take over activation (redeploy) option is enabled.

5.2.8 Description Mapping

Description mapping helps you to associate an attribute with another attribute, which describes it in detail. For example, when reporting via a Label Column, you can associate Region_ID with Region_Text.

For an attribute you can now maintain description mapping by selecting another attribute from the same model as *Label Column* in the *Semantics* node. The result is attribute description displaying as the label column in the data preview. The related columns appear side by side during data preview.

You can rename a label column attribute as <attribute>.description but not as <label column attribute>.description>. For example, if product_text is the Label Column for product then, you can rename product_text to product.description but not as product_text.description.

i Note

- On renaming a column as <attribute.description>, it is marked as *Hidden* and cannot be used in other places such as calculated columns, input parameters and so on.
- If you have created an object using the old editor (which supported the old style of description mapping) and try to open it using the new editor you will see a new column <attribute>.description (as an attribute) which is hidden and disabled. You can rename it maintain its properties and use it like other attributes.

5.2.9 Import BW Objects

You can import SAP Business Warehouse (SAP BW) models that are SAP HANA-optimized InfoCubes, Standard DataStore Objects, Query Snapshot InfoProviders, and InfoObjects of type Characteristics to the SAP HANA modeling environment.

Prerequisites

- You have implemented SAP Notes [1703061](#), [1759172](#), [1752384](#), [1733519](#), [1769374](#), [1790333](#), [1870119](#), [1994754](#), and [1994755](#).
- You have installed SAP HANA 1.0 SPS 05 Revision 50 or above.
- You have added BW schema in the SQL privileges for the Modeler user to import BW models.
- _SYS_REPO user has SELECT with GRANT privileges on the schema that contains the BW tables.

Context

You need to import SAP BW objects to expose it as SAP HANA models to the reporting tools.

i Note

- You can only import those Standard DataStore objects that have *SID Generation* set to *During Activation*.
- For an InfoObject you can import Characteristics having key figures as attributes.

Procedure

1. Open the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective.
2. In the main menu, choose *File* *Import* .
3. Expand the *SAP HANA Content* node.
4. Choose *SAP BW Models*, and choose *Next*.
5. Establish connection with your SAP BW system (underlying BW Application Server). In the *Provide Source System Details* page, enter the SAP BW system credentials and choose *Next*.

i Note

To add new connection details, select *New Connection* option from the *Connection* dropdown list. The connection details are saved and are available as dropdown options on subsequent logons.

6. Optional Step: Provide SAProuter String

You can use SAProuter string to connect to the SAP BW System over the internet. You can obtain the SAProuter string information of your SAP BW system from your SAP Logon. In your SAP Logon screen, choose your ► *SAP BW system* ► *Edit* ► *Connection* ▶

7. Optional Step: Activate Secure Network Connections (SNC)

Select *Activate Secure Network Connections* and provide the *SNC Name* of your communication partner. You can use SNC to encrypt the data communication paths that exist between an SAP HANA Studio and your SAP BW system. You can obtain the SNC name of your SAP BW system from SAP Logon. In your SAP Logon screen, choose your ► *SAP BW system* ► *Edit* ► *Network* ▶

8. Select the target system (an SAP BW on SAP HANA) to, which you want to import the models, and choose *Next*.

9. Select the BW InfoProviders that you want to import and expose as SAP HANA information models.

► Remember

In order to import the QuerySnapshot InfoProvider, make sure that the BW Query is unlocked in transaction RSDBB, and an index is created via the same transaction before it can be used as InfoProviders.

10. Select the target package where you want to place the generated models, and analytic privileges.

i Note

Your package selection is saved during the subsequent import. Hence, the next time you visit the same wizard you get to view the package that was selected previous time. You can though change the package where you want to import objects.

11. If you want import the selected models along with the display attributes for IMO Cube and Standard DSO, select *Include display attributes*.

For InfoObjects all the attributes are added to the output and joined to their text tables if exists.

12. If you want to replace previously imported models in the target system with a new version, select *Overwrite existing objects*.

13. If you do not want to import the analysis authorizations associated with the selected InfoProviders, deselect *Generate InfoProvider based analytic privileges*.

14. If you want to import the role based analysis authorizations as analytic privileges, select *Generate Role based analytic privileges*, and choose *Next*.

If you have selected both the InfoProviders and InfoObjects, only authorizations set on InfoProviders can be imported after selecting the checkbox.

15. Select the roles to import the related analysis authorizations.

16. Choose *Finish*.

i Note

While importing your SAP BW models, the SAP HANA system imports the column labels of these models in the language that you specify in its properties. However, in your SAP BW system, for any of the columns, if you do not maintain column labels in the language that you specify in your SAP HANA system properties, then those column labels appears as blank after import. If you want to check the default language for your SAP HANA system, then:

1. In the *Systems View*, select the SAP HANA system in which you are importing the models.

2. In the context menu, choose *Properties*.
3. In the *Additional Properties* tab, the dropdown list *Locale* specifies the language of objects, which you create in SAP HANA repository.

Results

The generated information models and analytic privileges are placed in the package selected above. In order to view the data of generated models, you need to assign the associated analytic privileges that are generated as part of the model import to the user. If these privileges are not assigned, user is not authorized to view the data.

Related Information

[Secure Network Communications \(SNC\)](#)

5.2.10 Group Related Measures

If your analytic view and calculation view has multiple measures and you want to organize them, for, example, segregate the planned measures with the actual measures, you can group the related measures in folders. These folders are called the display folders.

You can organize display folders in a hierarchical manner that is, by creating one display folder under the other.

To create display folders, select the *Display Folder* toolbar option in the *Column* panel of the *Semantics* node. In the *Display Folder* dialog create a new folder using the context menu option or using the toolbar option. Drag the required measures to the relevant folder. Note that one measure can be part of multiple display folders. Alternatively, you can associate a measure with a new or existing display folder by entering the value in the *Display Folder* property of the measure. If you enter a new value for this property a new display folder with the specified name is created.

Each measure is associated with the *Display Folder* property. The value for this property contains the fully qualified name of the display folder in which it appears. The fully qualified name of a display folder consists of the names of the display folders that represent the path to a given object. If the property contains the name of more than one display folder, indicating a hierarchy, each name is separated by a backslash character (\). If this property contains an empty string (""), the object is not associated with a display folder. The same measure can be part of multiple display folders. In such cases each folders should be separated by a semi colon (:). For example, if for the measure "Invoiced_amount" the value for Display Folder property is Reported\Amount, it means, Reported\Amount is a hierarchical display folder of "Invoiced_amount".

5.3 Additional Functionality for Information Views

After modeling information views or at design time you can perform certain additional functions, which helps improve the efficiency of modeling information views.

This section describes the different additional functions that SAP HANA modeler offers and how you can use these functions to efficiently model views.

5.3.1 Create Level Hierarchies

In level hierarchies each level represents a position in the hierarchy. For example, a time dimension can have a hierarchy that represents data at the month, quarter, and year levels.

Context

Level hierarchies consist of one or more levels of aggregation. Attributes roll up to the next higher level in a many-to-one relationship and members at this higher level roll up into the next higher level, and so on, until they reach the highest level. A hierarchy typically comprises of several levels, and you can include a single level in more than one hierarchy. A level hierarchy is rigid in nature, and you can access the root and child node in a defined order only.

Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the required attribute view or graphical calculation view in the view editor.
3. Select the *Semantics* node.
4. Choose the *Hierarchies* tab.
5. Choose the icon .
6. Provide a name and description to the new hierarchy.
7. In *Hierarchy Type* dropdown list, select *Level Hierarchy*.
8. Define node style

The node style determines the node ID for the level hierarchy.

- a. In the *Node* section, choose *Add*.
 - b. In the *Node Style* dropdown list, select a value.
9. Create levels.
 - a. In the *Nodes* tab, choose *Add* to create a level.
 - b. In the *Element* dropdown list, select a column value for each level.

- c. In *Level Type* dropdown list, select a required level type.

The level type specifies the semantics for the level attributes. For example, level type *TIMEMONTHS* indicates that the attributes are months such as, "January", February, and similarly level type *REGULAR* indicates that the level does not require any special formatting.

- d. In the *Order BY* dropdown list, select a column value that modeler must use to order the hierarchy members.

i Note

MDX client tools use attribute values to sort hierarchy members.

- a. In the *Sort Direction* dropdown list, select a value that modeler must use to sort and display the hierarchy members.

10. Define level hierarchy properties.

In the *Advanced* tab, you can define certain additional properties for your hierarchy.

- a. If you want to include the values of intermediate nodes of the hierarchy to the total value of the hierarchy's root node, in the *Aggregate All Nodes* dropdown list select True. If you set the *Aggregate All Nodes* value to False, modeler does not roll-up the values of intermediate nodes to the root node.

i Note

The value of *Aggregate All Nodes* property is interpreted only by the SAP HANA MDX engine. In the BW OLAP engine, the modeler always counts the node values. Whether you want to select this property depends on the business requirement. If you are sure that there is no data posted on aggregate nodes, you should set the option to false. The engine then executes the hierarchy faster.

- b. In the *Default Member* textbox, enter a value for the default member.

This value helps modeler identify the default member of the hierarchy. If you do not provide any value, all members of hierarchy are default members.

- c. In the *Orphan Nodes* dropdown list, select a value.

This value helps modeler know how to handle orphan nodes in the hierarchy.

i Note

If you select *Stepparent* option to handle orphan nodes, in the *Stepparent* text field, enter a value (node ID) for the step parent node. The step parent node must already exist in the hierarchy at the root level and you must enter the node ID according to the node style that you select for the hierarchy. For example if you select node style *Level Name*, the stepparent node ID can be [Level2]. [B2]. The modeler assigns all orphan nodes under this node.

- d. In the *Root Node Visibility* dropdown list, select a value.

The value helps modeler know if it needs to add an additional root node to the hierarchy.

- e. If you want the level hierarchy to support multiple parents for its elements, select the *Multiple Parent* checkbox.

11. Create a Not Assigned Member, if required.

In attribute view or calculation views of type dimensions, you can create a new *Not Assigned Member* that captures all values in fact table, which do not have corresponding values in the master table. In level hierarchies, the not assigned member appears at each level of the hierarchy.

- a. Select the *Not Assigned Member* tab.
- b. If you want to capture values in the fact tables that do not have corresponding values in the master table, then in the *Not Assigned Members* dropdown list, select *Enable*.

By default, modeler does not provide a hierarchy member to capture such values. This means that, *Not Assigned Members* are disabled. You can either enable or choose *Auto Assign* to handle not assigned members.

i Note

Selecting, *Auto Assign* to handle not assigned members impacts the performance of your calculation views. Select Auto Assign with caution.

- c. Provide a name and label to the hierarchy member.

This label value appears in reporting tools to capture not assigned members.

- d. If you want to drilldown this member in reporting tool, select the *Enable Drilldown* checkbox.
- e. If you want to use null convert values to process NULL values in the fact table, which do not have any corresponding records in the master table, select the *Null Value Processing* checkbox.

By default, modeler uses the string `_#_` as the null convert value. You can change this value in the *Name* field under the *Null Value Member Properties* section.

- f. Provide a label for the null value member.

This value appears in the reporting tools to capture null values.

5.3.2 Create Parent-Child Hierarchies

In parent-child hierarchies, you use a parent attribute that determines the relationship among the view attributes. Parent-child hierarchies have elements of the same type and do not contain named levels.

Context

Parent-child hierarchies are value-based hierarchies, and you create a parent-child hierarchy from a single parent attribute. You can also define multiple parent-child pairs to support the compound node IDs. For example, you can create a compound parent-child hierarchy that uniquely identifies cost centers with the following two parent-child pairs:

- CostCenter and ParentCostCenter and
- ControllingArea and ParentControllingArea,

A parent-child hierarchy is always based on two table columns and these columns define the hierarchical relationships amongst its elements. Others examples of parent-child hierarchies are bill of materials hierarchy (parent and child) or employee master (employee and manager) hierarchy.

Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. Open the required attribute view or graphical calculation view in the view editor.
3. Select the *Semantics* node.
4. Choose the *Hierarchies* tab.
5. Choose the icon  .
6. Provide a name and description to the new hierarchy.
7. In *Hierarchy Type* dropdown list, select *Parent-Child Hierarchy*.
8. Create parent-child elements
 - a. In the *Node* section, choose *Add*.
 - b. In the *Child column* dropdown list, select a column value as the child attribute.
 - c. In the *Parent column* dropdown list, select a column value as a parent attribute for the child column that you have selected.
 - d. If you want to place orphan nodes in the hierarchy under a step parent node, then in the *Stepparent* column dropdown list, enter a value (node ID) for the step parent node.
 - e. If you want to place the parent-child hierarchies under a root node, in the *Root Node* value help, select a value.
9. If you want to add additional attributes to execute the hierarchy, then
 - a. In *Additional Attributes* section, choose *Add*.
 - b. In the *Attributes* dropdown list, select an attribute value.
10. Define parent-child hierarchy properties.

In the *Advanced* tab, you can define certain additional properties for your hierarchy.

- a. If you want to include the values of intermediate nodes of the hierarchy to the total value of the hierarchy's root node, in the *Aggregate All Nodes* dropdown list select True. If you set the *Aggregate All Nodes* value to False, modeler does not roll-up the values of intermediate nodes to the root node.

Note

The value of *Aggregate All Nodes* property is interpreted only by the SAP HANA MDX engine. In the BW OLAP engine, the modeler always counts the node values. Whether you want to select this property depends on the business requirement. If you are sure that there is no data posted on aggregate nodes, you should set the option to false. The engine then executes the hierarchy faster.

- b. In the *Default Member* textbox, enter a value for the default member.

This value helps modeler identify the default member of the hierarchy. If you do not provide any value, all members of hierarchy are default members.

- c. In the *Orphan Nodes* dropdown list, select a value.

This value helps modeler know how to handle orphan nodes in the hierarchy.

Note

If you select *Stepparent* option to handle orphan nodes, then in the *Node* tab, enter a value (node ID) for the stepparent. The stepparent node must already exist in the hierarchy at the root level.

- d. In the *Root Node Visibility* dropdown list, select a value.

The value helps modeler know if it needs to add an additional root node to the hierarchy.

- e. Handling cycles in hierarchy

A parent-child hierarchy is said to contain cycles if the parent-child relationships in the hierarchy have a circular reference. You can use any of the following options to define the behavior of such hierarchies at load time.

Table 53:

Options	Description
Break up at load time	The nodes are traversed until a cycle is encountered. The cycles are broken-up at load time.
Traverse completely, then breakup	The nodes in the parent-child hierarchy are traversed once completely and then the cycles broken up.
Error	Displays error when a cycle is encountered.

- f. If you want the parent-child hierarchy to support multiple parents for its elements, select the *Multiple Parent* checkbox.

11. Order and sort hierarchy elements.

If you want to order and sort elements of a parent child hierarchy based on a column value,

- In the *Order By* section, choose *Add*.
- In the *Order By Column* dropdown list, select a column value that modeler must use to order the hierarchy members.
- In *Sort Direction* dropdown list, select a value that modeler must use to sort and display the hierarchy members.

i Note

MDX client tools use attribute values to sort hierarchy members.

12. Enable hierarchy for time dependency

If elements in your hierarchy are changing elements (time dependent elements), you can enable the parent-child hierarchy as a time dependent hierarchy. In other words, if you are creating hierarchies that are relevant for specific time period, then enable time dependency for such hierarchies. This helps you display different versions on the hierarchy at runtime.

i Note

Not all reporting tools support time dependent hierarchies. For example, time dependent hierarchies does not work with BI clients such as MDX or Design Studio.

- In the *Time Dependency* tab, select the *Enable Time Dependency* checkbox.
- In the *Valid From Column* dropdown list, select a column value.
- In the *Valid To Column* dropdown list, select a column value.

SAP HANA modeler uses *Valid From Column* and *Valid To Column* values as the validity time for the time dependent hierarchies.

13. If you want to use an input parameter to specify the validity of the time dependent hierarchy at runtime,
 - a. In the *Validity Period* section, select *Interval*.
 - b. In the *From Date Parameter* dropdown list, select an input parameter that you want to use to provide the valid from date at runtime.
 - c. In the *To Date Parameter* dropdown list, select an input parameter that you want to use to provide the valid to date at run time.
14. If you want to use an input parameter to specify the key date at run time,
 - a. In the *Validity Period* section, select *Key Date*.
 - b. In the *Key Date Parameter* dropdown list, select an input parameter value that you want to use to provide key date value at runtime.
15. Create a Not Assigned Member, if required.

In attribute views or calculation views of type dimensions, you can create a new *Not Assigned Member* that captures all values in fact table, which do not have corresponding values in the master table.

- a. Select the *Not Assigned Member* tab.
- b. If you want to capture values in the fact tables that do not have corresponding values in the master table, then in the *Not Assigned Members* dropdown list, select *Enable*.

By default, modeler does not provide a hierarchy member to capture such values. This means that, *Not Assigned Members* are disabled. You can either enable or choose *Auto Assign* to handle not assigned members.

Note

Selecting, *Auto Assign* to handle not assigned members impacts the performance of your calculation views. Select Auto Assign with caution.

- c. Provide a name and label to the hierarchy member.

This label value appears in reporting tools to capture not assigned members.
- d. If you want to drilldown this member in reporting tool, select the *Enable Drilldown* checkbox.
- e. If you want to use null convert values to process NULL values in the fact table, which do not have any corresponding records in the master table, select the *Null Value Processing* checkbox.

By default, modeler uses the string `_#_` as the null convert value. You can change this value in the *Name* field under the *Null Value Member Properties* section.

- f. Provide a label for the null value member.

This value appears in the reporting tools to capture null values.

Related Information

[Create Parent-Child Hierarchies \[page 388\]](#)

5.3.3 Input Parameters

You use input parameters to define internal parameterization of the view to obtain a desired functionality when you run the view.

This means that the engine needs to know and use the parameter value, for example, calculate a formula for a calculated measure. The parameter value is passed to the engine through the PLACEHOLDER clause of the SQL statement. Normally, a parameter can only have a single value, for example, for currency conversion. However, when working with the **in() function** in filter expressions of the calculation views, you can pass several values as an **IN List**. The quoting must be followed as shown here:

For numerical type parameters

The filter expression of a calculation view CV1 is defined as follows:

```
in("attr", $$param$$)
```

Then you need to pass several values as:

```
select ... from CV1( 'PLACEHOLDER' = ('$$var$$' = 'VAL1,VAL2,VAL3')
```

For string type parameters

The filter expression of a calculation view CV1 is defined as:

```
in("attr", $$param$$)
```

Then you need to pass several values (with double quotes) as:

```
select ... from CV1( 'PLACEHOLDER' = ('$$var$$' = '''VAL1'', ''VAL2'', ''VAL3''''))
```

You use input parameters as placeholders during currency conversion, unit of measure conversion, or in calculated column expressions. When used in formulas, the calculation of the formula is based on the input that you provide at run time during data preview.

The expected behavior of the input parameter when a value at run time is not provided is as follows:

Table 54:

Default Value	Expected Behavior
Yes	Calculates the formula based on the default value
No	Results in error

The table implies that it is mandatory to provide a value for the input parameter at run time, or assign a default value while creating the view, to avoid errors.

5.3.4 Assign Variables

You can assign variables to a filter at design time for obtaining data based on the values you provide for the variable. At runtime, you can provide different values to the variable to view the corresponding set of attribute data.

5.3.5 Using Currency and Unit of Measure Conversions

If measures in your calculation views or analytic views represent currency or unit values, associate them with currency codes or unit of measures. This helps you display the measure values along with currency codes or unit of measures at data preview or in reporting tools.

Associating measures with currency code or unit of measure is also necessary for currency conversion or unit conversions respectively.

Modeler performs currency conversions based on the source currency value, target currency value, exchange rate, and date of conversion. Similarly, it performs unit conversions based on the source unit and target unit.

Use input parameters in currency conversion and unit conversion to provide the target currency value, the exchange rate, the date of conversion or the target unit value at runtime.

Currency converion or unit conversion are not supported for script-based graphical calculation views.

5.3.6 Manage Information Views with Missing Objects

If objects within an information view are missing, for example, if the objects or its references are deleted, then the information view is referred to as broken models. By using proxies, SAP HANA modeler helps you work with broken models and fix inconsistencies.

When you open broken models, the system displays red decorators for all missing objects, which are essential to activate the information view.

Example

If you have defined an attribute view ATV1 on table T1 (C1, C2, C3) such that Attributes A1, A2, A3 is defined on columns C1, C2, C3 respectively. Now, if you remove column C2 and C3 from the table T1, then the attribute A3 becomes inconsistent. In such cases, the system injects proxies for C3, and when you open the attribute view in the editor, the system displays a red decorator for C2, C3 and an error marker for A3 to

Columns	
■	C1: TEST_PROXY.C1
✗	C2: TEST_PROXY.C2
✗	C3: TEST_PROXY.C3
■	C4: TEST_PROXY.C4
■■■	C4_1: TEST_PROXY.C4_1

indicate that it is inconsistent.

Note

If the connection to SAP HANA system is not available, and if you try to open a view, then the system uses proxies for all required objects and opens the view in read-only mode. But, since the model is not broken, the red decorators and the error markers are not shown..

You can resolve inconsistencies in analytic views or attribute views or calculation views by performing one of the following:

- Deleting the missing objects, which the information view requires. This clears all references of missing object.
- Adjusting the mappings of inconsistent objects.
- Deleting inconsistent objects.

Note

The system logs inconsistencies within information view in the *Problems* view of *SAP HANA Development* perspective.

5.4 Working with Views

5.4.1 Manage Editor Layout

You use this procedure to adjust the data foundation and logical view layout comprising user interface controls like, tables and attribute views in a more readable manner. This functionality is supported for attribute views and analytic views.

The options available are as follows:

Option	Purpose	Substeps
Auto Arrange	Use this option to arrange the user interface elements automatically.	In the editor tool bar, choose  .
Show outline	Use this option to view an outline of the elements arranged so that , you do not have to navigate in the editor using horizontal and vertical scrollbars.	In the editor tool bar, choose  .
Highlight related tables in <i>Data Foundation</i>	Use this option if you want to view only those tables that are related to a table selected in the editor.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In the editor, right-click the selected table.2. From the context menu, choose <i>Highlight related tables</i>.
Display	Use this option if you have a table with a large number of columns in the editor, and you want to view them in a way that meets your needs: for example, only the table name, or only	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. In the editor, right-click the relevant table.2. From the context menu, choose <i>Display</i>.

Option	Purpose	Substeps
	joined columns, or the expanded form with all the columns.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. If you want to view only the table name, choose <i>Collapsed</i>. 4. If you want to view all the columns of the table, choose <i>Expanded</i>. 5. If you want to view only the joined columns of the table, choose <i>Joins only</i>.
Show Complete Name	Use this option to view the complete name of a truncated column.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the <i>Scenario</i> pane, choose a view node. 2. In the <i>Details</i> pane, choose the required input. 3. In the context menu, choose <i>Show Complete Name</i>.
Show Description	Use this option to view the column description.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the <i>Scenario</i> pane, choose a view node. 2. In the <i>Details</i> pane, choose the required input. 3. In the context menu, choose <i>Show Description</i>.

5.4.2 Validate Models

You can check if there are any errors in an information object and if the object is based on the rules that you specified as part of preferences.

For example, the "Check join: SQL" rule checks that the join is correctly formed.

Procedure

1. On the *Quick View* page, choose *Validate*.
2. Select a system where you want to perform this operation.
3. From the *Available* list, select the required models that system must validate, and choose *Add*.
4. Choose *Validate*.

5.4.3 Maintain Search Attributes

You use this procedure to enable an attribute search for an attribute used in a view. Various properties related to attribute search are as follows:

- **Freestyle Search:** Set to *True* if you want to enable the freestyle search for an attribute. You can exclude attributes from freestyle search by setting the property to *False*.

- **Weights for Ranking:** To influence the relevancy of items in the search results list, you can vary the weighting of the attribute. You can assign a higher or lower weighting (range 0.0 to 1.0). The higher the weighting of the attribute, the more influence it has in the calculation of the relevance of an item. Items with a higher relevance are located higher up the search results list. Default value: 0.5.

i Note

To use this setting the property *Freestyle Search* must be set to *True*.

- **Fuzzy Search:** This parameter enables the fault-tolerant search. Default: *False*.
- **Fuzziness Threshold:** If you have set the parameter Fuzzy Search to *True* you can fine-tune the threshold for the fault-tolerant search between **0** and **1**. Default: **0.8**

i Note

We recommend using the default values for *Weights for Ranking* and *Fuzziness Threshold* to start with. Later on, you can fine-tune the search settings based on your experiences with the search. You can also fine-tune the search using feedback collected from your users.

5.4.4 Data Preview Editor

Use data preview editor to preview raw data output or to view all attributes and measures in graphical formal.

In data preview editor, includes the following tab pages:

- Raw Data
- Distinct Values
- Analysis

Tab Page	Information Displayed	User Options
Raw Data	All attributes along with data in a table format.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Filter data. For example, define filters on columns and filter the data based on company names. • Export data to different file formats to analyze them in other reporting tools.
Distinct values	All attributes along with data in a graphical format.	Basic data profiling
Analysis	All attributes and measures in a graphical format.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Perform advance analysis using labels and value axis. For example, analyze sales based on country by adding Country to the labels axis and Sales to the value axis. • Use different charts to support analysis. You can view the data in the Chart, Table, Grid and HTML formats and save the analysis as favorites. • Filter data. For example, define filters and filter the data based on company names.

i Note

If you refresh data in the *Analysis* tab page, modeler clears the data in the *Raw Data* tab page. You need to refresh the *Raw Data* tab to fetch the latest results.

5.4.5 Using Functions in Expressions

This section describes the functions, which you can use while creating expressions for calculated attributes and calculated measures.

You can create expressions, for example in calculated columns using the column engine (CS) language or the SQL language.

i Note

Related SAP Notes. The SAP Note [2252224](#) describes the differences between the CS and SQL string expression with respect to Unicode or multi-byte encoding. The SAP Note [1857202](#) describes the SQL execution of calculation views.

Related Information

[Using Functions in Expressions \[page 397\]](#)

5.4.6 Resolving Conflicts in Modeler Objects

You can resolve the conflicts between three different versions of a model by merging them with the help of 3-way merge feature. You can also compare two files for finding their differences with this feature. The common scenarios and the available options for the use of this feature are:

Table 55:

S.No.	Requirement	Option
1.	To compare two models in the Project Explorer to view their differences.	Compare With > Each Other
2.	To compare the inactive version of a model with the active version.	Compare With > Active Version

S.No.	Requirement	Option
3.	<p>To resolve conflicts between the model versions encountered during activation in the following scenarios:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You modify a model in two SAP HANA studio instances and you commit and activate the model (one or several times) in the first instance. In the second instance when you try to activate the model you get an error message. • You modify a model in one of the SAP HANA studio instance, and commit and activate the model. If you modify the model in the other SAP HANA studio instance without updating it, you get an error while activating the model. • In a SAP HANA studio instance if you have an inactive model in the Project Explorer and an inactive version in the Modeler perspective. If you activate the model in the Modeler perspective, you get an error while activating the model from Project Explorer. 	<p>Team > Merge Tool Or Team > Resolve With</p>

Two-way compare of 'Mini/ SALES_ONLY_COPY.analyticview' with 'Mini/SALES_ONLY.analyticview'

- 5 differences in resource %20SALES_ONLY_COPY.analyticview
 - 5 change(s) in model
 - 5 change(s) in View SALES_ONLY
 - Attribute name : Identifier in View SALES_ONLY_COPY has changed from 'SALES_ONLY' to 'SALES_ONLY_COPY'
 - 2 change(s) in Join Node Data Foundation
 - Column YEAR has been added
 - 1 change(s) in Input "MINI".SALES
 - 2 change(s) in Join Node Logical Join
 - Column YEAR has been added
 - 1 change(s) in Input Data Foundation
 - Mapping YEAR->YEAR has been added

Visualization of Structural Differences

The screenshot displays the SAP HANA Studio interface for comparing two analytic views. The top navigation bar includes tabs like 'Compare', 'SQL Console 1', and various system-related icons. The main area is divided into two panes: the left pane shows the structural differences between the two views, and the right pane provides a visual representation of these differences.

Left Pane (Structural Differences):

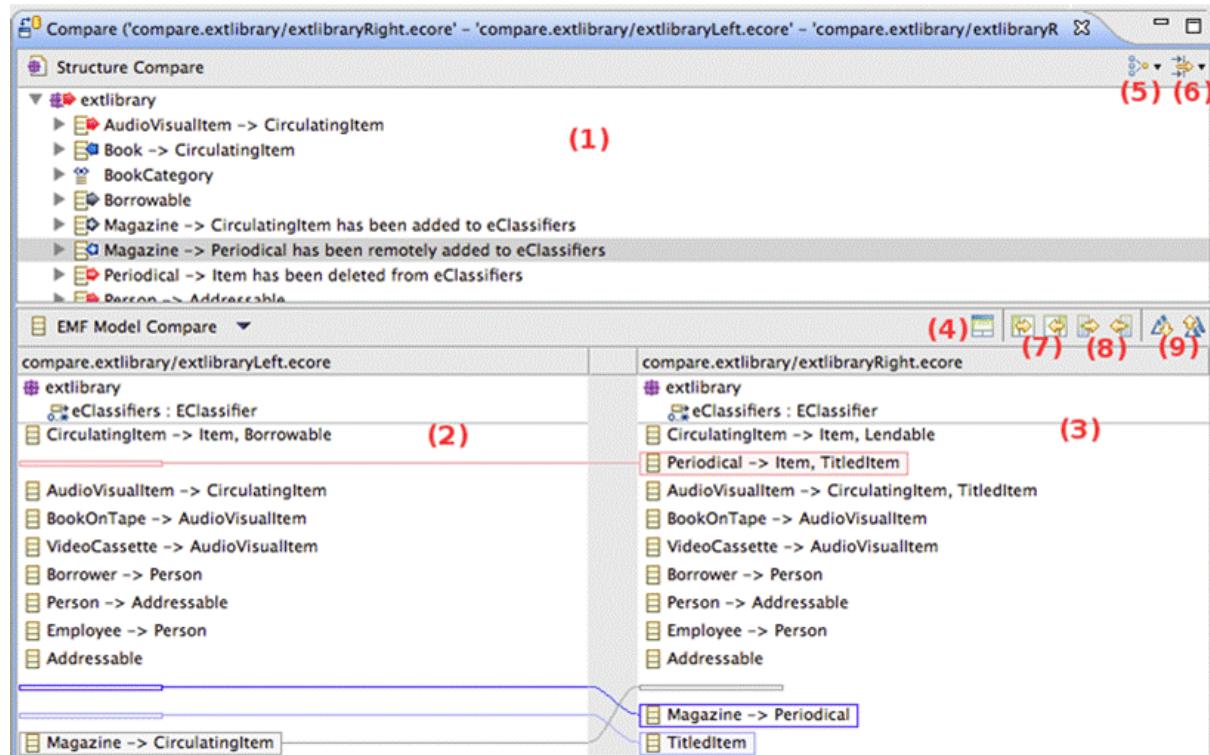
- Mini/ SALES_ONLY_COPY.analyticview:**
 - platform/resource/Mini/%20SALES_ONLY_COPY.analyticview
 - View SALES_ONLY_COPY
 - Column CUSTOMER_ID
 - Column YEAR
 - Column REVENUE
 - Join Node Data Foundation
 - Column CUSTOMER_ID
 - Column YEAR
 - Join Node Logical Join
 - Column CUSTOMER_ID
 - Column YEAR
 - Input Data Foundation
 - Mapping CUSTOMER_ID->CUSTOMER_ID
 - Mapping YEAR->YEAR
 - Mapping REVENUE->REVENUE

Right Pane (Visualization of Structural Differences):

- Mini/SALES_ONLY.analyticview:**
 - platform/resource/Mini/SALES_ONLY.analyticview
 - View SALES_ONLY
 - Column CUSTOMER_ID
 - Column REVENUE
 - Simple Type
 - Currency Conversion true
 - Join Node Data Foundation
 - Column CUSTOMER_ID
 - Column REVENUE
 - Input "MINI".SALES
 - Join Node Logical Join
 - Column CUSTOMER_ID
 - Column REVENUE
 - Input Data Foundation

The visualization shows the mapping of columns and joins between the two views. Green arrows indicate the flow of data from the input nodes to the join and data foundation nodes. The 'Mapping YEAR->YEAR' and 'Mapping REVENUE->REVENUE' in the left pane are also highlighted in green, corresponding to the arrows in the right pane.

The merge editor components are depicted below:



1. Overview of the differences detected between the given two (or three) models.
2. First version of the compared models.
3. Second version of the compared models.
4. This button will only be visible in the case of three-way comparisons (for example, comparing with a remote repository). It will make a third version of the compared model (the common ancestor of the two others) visible in the interface.
5. This button will allow you to group differences together in the structural view. For example, grouping all "Additions" or "Deletions" together.
6. This button will allow you to filter some differences out of the view according to a set predicate. For example, filtering out all "Additions" or "Moves".
7. Allows you to merge all non-conflicting differences (left to right, or right to left) at once.
8. Allows you to merge the single, currently selected difference in a given direction (left to right, or right to left).
9. Allows you to navigate through the detected differences.

5.5 Create Decision Tables

You use this procedure to create a decision table to model related business rules in a tabular format for decision automation. You can use decision tables to manage business rules, data validation, and data quality rules.

You use this procedure to create a decision table to model related business rules in a tabular format for decision automation. You can use decision tables to manage business rules, data validation, and data quality

rules, without needing any knowledge of technical languages such as SQL Script or MDX. A data architect or a developer creates the decision table and activates it. The active version of the decision table can be used in applications.

Prerequisites

This task describes how to create a decision table. Before you start this task, note the following prerequisites:

- You must have access to an SAP HANA system.
- To activate and validate the decision table, the _SYS_REPO user requires the SELECT, EXECUTE, and UPDATE privileges on your schema.
- If you are using the SAP HANA Development perspective, you must ensure the following prerequisites are also met:
 - You must have already created a development workspace.
 - You must have checked out a package.
 - You must have created and shared a project so that the newly created files can be committed to (and synchronized with) the repository.

i Note

For more information about projects, repository workspaces, and sharing of projects, see Using SAP HANA Projects in [SAP HANA Developer Guide](#).

Create a Decision Table

You can create a decision table by using one of the following options:

- If you are in the [SAP HANA Modeler](#) perspective, perform the following steps:
 1. In the [SAP HANA Modeler](#) perspective, expand ► <System Name> ► Content ► <Package Name> ▾.
 2. In the context menu of the package, choose ► New ► [Decision Table](#) ▾.
 3. In the [New Decision Table](#) dialog box, enter a name and description for the decision table.
 4. To create a decision table from scratch or from an existing decision table, perform the following substeps:

Table 56:

Scenario	Substeps
Create a decision table from scratch	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Choose Create New.2. Choose Finish.
Create a decision table from an existing decision table	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Choose Copy From.2. Browse the required decision table.3. Choose Finish.

- If you are in the [SAP HANA Development](#) perspective, perform the following steps:

1. Go to the *Project Explorer* view in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, and select the project.
2. In the context menu of the selected project, choose ► *New* ► *Other...* ▶

i Note

You can also create a decision table from the *File* menu. Choose ► *New* ► *Other...* ▶

3. In the popup wizard, open *SAP HANA* and expand ► *Database Development* ► *Modeler* ▶.
1. Select *Decision Table*.

i Note

You can also search for the decision table directly by using the search box in the wizard.

2. Choose *Next*.
1. In the *New Decision Table* dialog, choose *Browse* to choose the project under which you want to create your decision table. Enter a name and description.

i Note

If the project is shared, the *Package* field specifies the package that is associated with the project.

2. Choose *Finish*.

The decision table editor opens. It consists of three panes: Scenario, Details, and Output.

- The *Scenario* pane of the editor consists of the *Decision Table* and *Data Foundation* nodes. Selecting any of these nodes shows the specific node information in the *Details* pane.
- The *Details* pane of the *Data Foundation* node displays the tables or information models used for defining the decision table. The *Details* pane of the *Decision Table* node displays the modeled rules in tabular format.
- The *Output* pane displays the vocabulary, conditions, and actions, and allows you to perform edit operations. Expand the vocabulary node to display the parameters, attributes, and calculated attributes sub-nodes. In the *Output* pane, you can also view properties of the selected objects within the editor.

5.5.1 Changing the Layout of a Decision Table

You use this procedure to change the decision table layout by arranging the condition and action columns. By default, all the conditions appear as vertical columns in the decision table. You can choose to mark a condition as a horizontal condition, and view the corresponding values in a row. The evaluation order of the conditions is such that the horizontal condition is evaluated first, and then the vertical ones.

i Note

You can only change the layout of a decision table if it has more than one condition. You can mark only one condition as a horizontal condition.

Procedure

Mark as Horizontal Condition

1. Select the *Decision Table* node.
2. In the context menu of the *Details* pane, choose *Change Layout*.
3. If you want to view a condition as a horizontal condition, in the *Change Decision Table Layout* dialog, select the *Table Has Horizontal Condition (HC)* checkbox.

i Note

The first condition in the list of conditions is marked as horizontal by default.

4. Choose *OK*.
5. Save the changes.

i Note

You can also set a condition as horizontal from the context menu of the condition in the *Output* pane. You can also arrange the conditions and actions in the desired sequence in the *Output* pane by using the navigation buttons in the toolbar.

Rearranging Conditions and Actions

1. Select the *Decision Table* node.
2. In the context menu of the *Details* pane, choose *Change Layout*.
3. In the *Conditions and Actions* section, choose the options on the right-hand side of the dialog box to arrange the conditions and actions in the desired sequence.

The following options are available for arranging the conditions in a sequence:

- *Move Condition to Top*
- *Move Condition Up*
- *Move Condition Down*
- *Move Condition to Bottom*

i Note

You can also arrange the sequence by using the navigation buttons at the top of the *Output* pane.

5.5.2 Using Parameters in a Decision Table

You use this procedure to create a parameter that can be used to simulate a business scenario. You can use parameters as conditions and actions in the decision table at design time. Parameters used as conditions determine the set of physical table rows to be updated based on the parameter value that you provide at runtime during the procedure call. Parameters used as actions simulate the physical table without updating it.

The following parameter types are supported:

Type	Description
Static List	Use this if the value of a parameter comes from a user-defined list of values.
Empty	Use this if the value of a parameter could be any of the selected data types.

Example

Consider a sales order physical table with column headers as follows:

ID	Name	Supplier	Model	Price	Quantity
----	------	----------	-------	-------	----------

If you want to evaluate *Discount* based on the *Quantity* and *Order Amount*, you can create two parameters: *Order Amount* and *Discount*. Use *Quantity* and *Order Amount* as the condition, and *Discount* as the action. The sample decision table could look like this:

Quantity	Order Amount	Discount
>5	50000	10
>=10	100000	15

Procedure

1. Create a Parameter

1. In the *Output* panel, select the *Parameters* node.
2. From the context menu, choose *New* and do the following:
 1. Enter a name and description.
 2. Select the required data type from the dropdown list.
 3. Enter the length and scale as required.
 4. Choose the required *Type* from the dropdown list.

Note

If you have selected *Static List* for *Type*, choose *Add* in the *List of Values* section to add values. You can also provide an alias for the enumeration value.

5. Choose *OK*.

2. Use Parameter as Condition or Action

1. In the *Output* panel, select the *Parameters* node.

-
- From the context menu of the parameter, choose *Add as Conditions/ Add as Actions*.

5.5.3 Using Calculated Attributes in Decision Tables

Context

You use this procedure to create calculated attributes that can be used as conditions in a decision table.

You can create a calculated attribute to perform a calculation using the existing attributes, parameters, and SQL functions.

Procedure

- In the *Output* panel, select the *Calculated Attributes* node.
- From the context menu, choose *New* and do the following:
 - Enter a name and description.
 - Select the required data type, length, and scale.
 - In the expression editor, enter the expression. For example, you can write a formula such as ("NAME" = "FIRST_NAME" + "LAST_NAME"). This expression is an example of the string concatenation function, which is used to derive the name of a person by using the first name and last name values from the table fields.

 Note

You can also create the expression by dragging and dropping the expression elements from the options at the bottom of the editor. Only arithmetic operators and SQL functions are supported for expression creation.

- Choose *OK*.
- Add the required calculated attribute as a condition.

5.6 Generate Object Documentation

Use this procedure to capture the details of an information model or a package in a single document. This helps you view the necessary details from the document, instead of referring to multiple tables. The following table specifies the details that you can view from the document.

Type	Description
Attribute View	General object properties, attributes, calculated attributes (that is, calculated columns of type attribute), data foundation joins, cross references, and where-used
Analytic View	General object properties, private attributes, calculated attributes (that is, calculated columns of type attribute), attribute views, measures, calculated measures (that is, calculated columns of type measure), restricted measures (that is, restricted columns), variables, input parameters, data foundation joins, logical view joins, cross references, and where-used
Calculation View	General object properties, attributes, calculated attributes, measures, calculated measures, counters, variables, input parameters, calculation view SQL script, cross references, and where-used
Package	Sub-packages, general package properties, and list of content objects

Procedure

- From the *Quick View* pane, choose *Auto Documentation*.
- Select a system where you want to perform this operation.
- In the *Select Content Type* field, select one of the following options as required:

Option	Description
Model Details	To generate documentation for models such as attribute, analytic, and calculation views.
Model List	To generate documentation for packages.

- Add the required objects to the *Target* list.
- Browse the location where you want to save the file.
- Choose *Finish*.

6 Developing Procedures

SQL in SAP HANA includes extensions for creating procedures, which enables you to embed data-intensive application logic into the database, where it can be optimized for performance (since there are no large data transfers to the application and features such as parallel execution is possible). Procedures are used when other modeling objects, such as calculation views, are not sufficient; procedures are also often used to support the database services of applications that need to write data into the database.

Some of the reasons to use procedures instead of standard SQL:

- SQL is not designed for complex calculations, such as for financials.
- SQL does not provide for imperative logic.
- Complex SQL statements can be hard to understand and maintain.
- SQL queries return one result set. Procedures can return multiple result sets.
- Procedures can have local variables, eliminating the need to explicitly create temporary tables for intermediate results.

Procedures can be written in the following languages:

- SQLScript: The language that SAP HANA provides for writing procedures.
- R: An open-source programming language for statistical computing and graphics, which can be installed and integrated with SAP HANA.

There are additional libraries of procedures, called Business Function Library and Predictive Analysis Library, that can be called via SQL or from within another procedure.

Tools for Developing Procedures

The following describes the tools integrated with SAP HANA studio that allow you to evaluate, revise, and optimize stored procedures:

SQLScript Editor

The SQLScript editor studio allows you to create, edit, and debug stored procedures. Within the SQLScript editor you can use the Semantic Code Completion feature. The semantic code completion feature is a context based search tool that lists suggested catalog object and local variables that assist you with developing accurate stored procedures in a faster and more efficient matter. You can quickly identify valid objects reducing errors during activation. Code completion proposals take into consideration SQLScript grammar, context specific schemas, and textual input.

The suggested objects are derived from the following origins:

- Catalog Objects: such as schemas, views, table functions, procedures, scalar functions, synonyms
- Local Variables: such as input and output parameters, declared scalar variables

- Database Artifacts

Suggested objects are listed alphabetically, according to the following format:

[icon] artifact_name - artifact_type (artifact_context), for example DUMMY - Table (<Schema name>)

The list of proposals contain syntactic and semantic proposals listed in the following order:

1. Local Variables
2. Catalog Objects (maximum of 50 suggestions)
3. Keywords

i Note

Objects selected from the proposed list might be automatically inserted as quoted identifier based on the SQLScript language guidelines. For example, if the object contains special characters, or lower and upper case characters.

Debugger

In addition to the creating and editing procedures, the SQLScript editor includes debugging capabilities.

You can also use the *Navigator* view in the *Modeler* perspective to build procedures, but there are no debugging capabilities. You should only use this method:

- If you need to develop a procedure using a local table type as an input or output parameter. A local table type is created within the *SAP HANA Systems* procedure tool and for only the current procedure. If you can use a global table type, then use the SQLScript Editor.
- If you need to edit a procedure previously created in the *Navigator* view that contains table type parameters.

SQL Extensions for Procedures

SQL includes the following statements for enabling procedures:

- **CREATE TYPE:** Creates a table types, which are used to define parameters for a procedure that represent tabular results. For example:

```
CREATE TYPE tt_publishers AS TABLE (
    publisher INTEGER,
    name VARCHAR(50),
    price DECIMAL,
    cnt INTEGER);
```

- **CREATE PROCEDURE:** Creates a procedure. The LANGUAGE clause specifies the language you are using to code the procedure. For example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE ProcWithResultView(IN id INT, OUT o1 CUSTOMER)
    LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT READS SQL DATA WITH RESULT VIEW ProcView AS
    BEGIN
```

```
o1 = SELECT * FROM CUSTOMER WHERE CUST_ID = :id;
END;
```

- CALL: Calls a procedure. For example:

```
CALL getOutput (1000, 'EUR', NULL, NULL);
```

Related Information

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

[SAP HANA SQLScript Reference](#)

[SAP HANA R Integration Guide](#)

[SAP HANA Business Function Library \(BFL\) Reference](#)

[SAP HANA Predictive Analysis Library \(PAL\) Reference](#)

[Create and Edit Procedures \[page 411\]](#)

6.1 SQLScript Security Considerations

You can develop secure procedures using SQLScript in SAP HANA by observing the following recommendations.

Using SQLScript, you can read and modify information in the database. In some cases, depending on the commands and parameters you choose, you can create a situation in which data leakage or data tampering can occur. To prevent this, SAP recommends using the following practices in all procedures.

- Mark each parameter using the keywords `IN` or `OUT`. Avoid using the `INOUT` keyword.
- Use the `INVOKER` keyword when you want the user to have the assigned privileges to start a procedure. The default keyword, `DEFINER`, allows only the owner of the procedure to start it.
- Mark read-only procedures using `READS SQL DATA` whenever it is possible. This ensures that the data and the structure of the database are not altered.

Tip

Another advantage to using `READS SQL DATA` is that it optimizes performance.

- Ensure that the types of parameters and variables are as specific as possible. Avoid using `VARCHAR`, for example. By reducing the length of variables you can reduce the risk of injection attacks.
- Perform validation on input parameters within the procedure.

Dynamic SQL

In SQLScript you can create dynamic SQL using one of the following commands: `EXEC` and `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE`. Although these commands allow the use of variables in SQLScript where they might not be

supported. In these situations you risk injection attacks unless you perform input validation within the procedure. In some cases injection attacks can occur by way of data from another database table.

To avoid potential vulnerability from injection attacks, consider using the following methods instead of dynamic SQL:

- Use static SQL statements. For example, use the static statement, `SELECT` instead of `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` and passing the values in the `WHERE` clause.
- Use server-side JavaScript to write this procedure instead of using SQLScript.
- Perform validation on input parameters within the procedure using either SQLScript or server-side JavaScript.
- Use `APPLY_FILTER` if you need a dynamic `WHERE` condition
- Use the SQL Injection Prevention Function

Escape Code

You might need to use some SQL statements that are not supported in SQLScript, for example, the `GRANT` statement. In other cases you might want to use the Data Definition Language (DDL) in which some `<name>` elements, but not `<value>` elements, come from user input or another data source. The `CREATE TABLE` statement is an example of where this situation can occur. In these cases you can use dynamic SQL to create an escape from the procedure in the code.

To avoid potential vulnerability from injection attacks, consider using the folowing methods instead of escape code:

- Use server-side JavaScript to write this procedure instead of using SQLScript.
- Perform validation on input parameters within the procedure using either SQLScript or server-side JavaScript.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

6.2 Create and Edit Procedures

The SAP HANA SQLScript editor allows you to create, edit, and activate procedures.

Prerequisites

- You have created a development workspace. For more information, see *Create a Repository Workspace*.
- You have checked out a package.

Note

After checking out a package that contains active procedures, you can modify and debug the procedures.

- You have created and shared a project. For more information, see *Using SAP HANA Projects*.

Note

You can also share your project after you create your procedure.

- To enable semantic code completion, you must have the following user role permissions:
 - sap.hana.xs.dt.base::restapi
 - sap.hana.xs.ide.roles::Developer

Procedure

1. Open the *New Stored Procedure* wizard.
 - a. Go to the *Project Explorer* view in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, right-click on the file name, choose      Click *Next*. The *New Stored Procedure* wizard appears.
 - b. Enter or select the parent folder, enter the file name, select *Text (.hdbprocedure)* for the file format, select the target schema, and click *Finish*. The  icon shows that your procedure is created locally.

Note

The *XML (.procedure)* file format is compatible with the Modeler Procedure editor, but may not support new SQLScript features. You should also use this format if you want to create a procedure template instance.

The editor opens containing a default template for the procedure. The design-time procedure name is generated in a shared project containing the full path. In an unshared project, the full function name must be added manually. In the *Properties* view, you see the properties of your procedure, such as *Access Mode*, *Name*, and *Language*.

2. Confirm the project is shared.

If you have not yet shared your project, right-click the project name, choose **Team** **Share Project**.

The **Share Project** wizard appears. Click **Finish**. The icon shows that your procedure is not committed and not activated.

3. Write a new procedure or make changes to an existing one.

Begin writing your code inside your new procedure and save it locally. The syntax is checked simultaneously and is highlighted. Auto-completion of the syntax appears as you type or by using the Semantic Code Completion feature.

Note

You can only write one stored procedure per file. The file name and the procedure name must be the same. Only SQLScript language is supported for **Text (.hdbprocedure)** procedures.

To enable Semantic Code Completion:

- a. Position the cursor where you want to insert an object.
- b. Press **CTRL** + **Space Bar**.

A suggested list of valid objects appear.

Note

Text based searches display the object names that begin with and contain the entered text. Searches are asynchronous, the suggested list is updated in parallel to the user's refined textual input.

- c. Use the arrow keys to scroll through the list, click **Enter** to select the object, or **Esc** to close the code completion window without selecting an object.
4. Confirm the procedure is Committed.

Confirm the procedure is synchronized to the repository as a design time object and the icon shows that your procedure is committed. If not, click **Save**, right-click and select **Team** **Commit**.

5. Activate the procedure.

When you have finished writing your procedure and you are ready to activate it, right-click the procedure, choose **Team** **Activate**. Your procedure is created in the catalog as a runtime object and the icon shows that your procedure is activated. This allows you and other users to call the procedure and debug it.

If an error is detected during activation, an error message appears in the **Problems** view.

Tip

You can also activate your procedure at the project and folder levels.

Related Information

[Maintain a Repository Workspace \[page 78\]](#)

[Using SAP HANA Projects \[page 77\]](#)

[SAP HANA Repository Packages and Namespaces \[page 89\]](#)

[The SAP HANA Development Perspective \[page 42\]](#)

[SQLScript Security Considerations \[page 409\]](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

6.2.1 Define and Use Table Types in Procedures

You can use a table type to define parameters for a procedure; the table type represents tabular results.

Prerequisites

- Access to the SAP HANA repository

Context

If you define a procedure that uses data provided by input and output parameters, you can use table types to store the parameterized data. These parameters have a type and are either based on a global table (for example, a catalog table), a global **table type**, or a local (inline) table type. This task shows you two ways to use the `.hdbprocedure` syntax to define a text-based design-time procedure artifact; the parameterized data for your procedure can be stored in either of the following ways:

- Global
In an externally defined (and globally available) table type, for example, using the Core Data Service (CDS) syntax
- Local:
In a table type that is defined inline, for example, in the procedure itself

Procedure

1. Create a procedure that uses data provided by a local (inline) table type.

To define a text-based design-time procedure, use the `.hdbprocedure` syntax. The procedure in this example stores data in a local table type defined **inline**, that is; in the procedure itself.

i Note

If you plan to define a **global** table type (for example, using CDS) you can skip this step.

- a. Create a design-time artifact called `get_product_sale_price.hdbprocedure` and save it in the repository.
- b. Add the following code to the new repository artifact `get_product_sale_price.hdbprocedure`.

➔ Tip

The table used to store the parameterized data is defined inline, in the procedure's OUT parameter.

```
PROCEDURE
SAP_HANA_EPM_NEXT."sap.hana.democontent.epmNext.procedures::get_product_sale_price"
(
    IN im_productid NVARCHAR(10),
    OUT ex_product_sale_price table (
        "PRODUCTID" nvarchar(10),
        "CATEGORY" nvarchar(40),
        "PRICE" decimal(15,2),
        "SALEPRICE" decimal(15,2) )
)
LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT
SQL SECURITY INVOKER
DEFAULT SCHEMA SAP_HANA_EPM_NEXT
READS SQL DATA AS
BEGIN
```

- c. Save and activate the new (hdb)procedure artifact.
2. Define a global table type using Core Data Services (CDS).

If you want to define a **global** table type to store data for your use by your procedure, you can use the CDS syntax to define the global table type, as illustrated in the following example:

ℹ Note

This is only required if you want to use a global table type. If you plan to define a table type inline, you can skip this step.

- a. Create a design-time artifact called `GlobalTypes.hdbdd` and save it in the repository.
- b. Add the following code to the new repository artifact `GlobalTypes.hdbdd`.

```
namespace sap.hana.democontent.epmNext.data;
@Schema: 'SAP_HANA_EPM_NEXT'
context GlobalTypes {
    type tt_product_sale_price {
        PRODUCTID: String(10);
        CATEGORY: String(40);
        PRICE: Decimal(15,2);
        SALEPRICE: Decimal(15,2);
    };
}
```

- c. Save and activate the new CDS table type.

This generates a table type called `GlobalTypes.tt_product_sale_price` in the package `sap.hana.democontent.epmNext.data`. You use this path to reference the table type in your procedure.

3. Create the procedure that uses data provided by a global table type.

To define a text-based design-time procedure, use the `.hdbprocedure` syntax. The procedure in this example stores data in a table with the structure defined in the CDS global data type `tt_product_sale_price`.

ℹ Note

This is only required if you want to use a global table type. If you plan to define a table type inline, you can skip this step.

- a. Create a design-time artifact called `get_product_sale_price.hdbprocedure` and save it in the repository.
- b. Add the following code to the new repository artifact `get_product_sale_price.hdbprocedure`.

 Tip

The `OUT` parameter refers to the CDS type `tt_product_sale_price` defined in the CDS document `GlobalTypes.hbddd`.

```
PROCEDURE
SAP_HANA_EPM_NEXT."sap.hana.democontent.epmNext.procedures::get_product_sale_price"
(
    IN im_productid NVARCHAR(10),
    OUT ex_product_sale_price SAP_HANA_EPM_NEXT."
sap.hana.democontent.epmNext.data::GlobalTypes.tt_product_sale_price")
LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT
SQL SECURITY INVOKER
DEFAULT SCHEMA SAP_HANA_EPM_NEXT
READS SQL DATA AS
BEGIN
```

- c. Save and activate the new (hdb)procedure artifact.

6.2.2 Tutorial: Create an SQLScript Procedure that Uses Imperative Logic

SQLScript procedures can make use of standard SQL statements to build a query that requests data and returns a specified result set.

Prerequisites

To complete this exercise successfully, bear in mind the following prerequisites:

- You have the user credentials required to log on to SAP HANA
- You have installed the SAP HANA studio
- You have a shared SAP HANA project available (preferably of type *XS Project*).
- The shared project contains a folder called `Procedures`.
- You have installed the SAP HANA Interactive Education (*SHINE*) HCODEMOCONTENT delivery unit (DU); this DU contains the tables and views that you want to consume with the procedure you build in this tutorial.
- You have generated data to populate the tables and views provided by the *SHINE* delivery unit and used in this tutorial. You can generate the data with tools included in the *SHINE* delivery unit.

 Note

You might have to adjust the paths in the code examples provided to suit the package hierarchy in your SAP HANA repository, for example, to point to the underlying content (demonstration tables and services) referenced in the tutorial.

Context

The stored procedure you create in this tutorial uses standard SQL statements (for example, SELECT statements) and some imperative logic constructs to determine the sale price of a product based on the product category.

Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio.

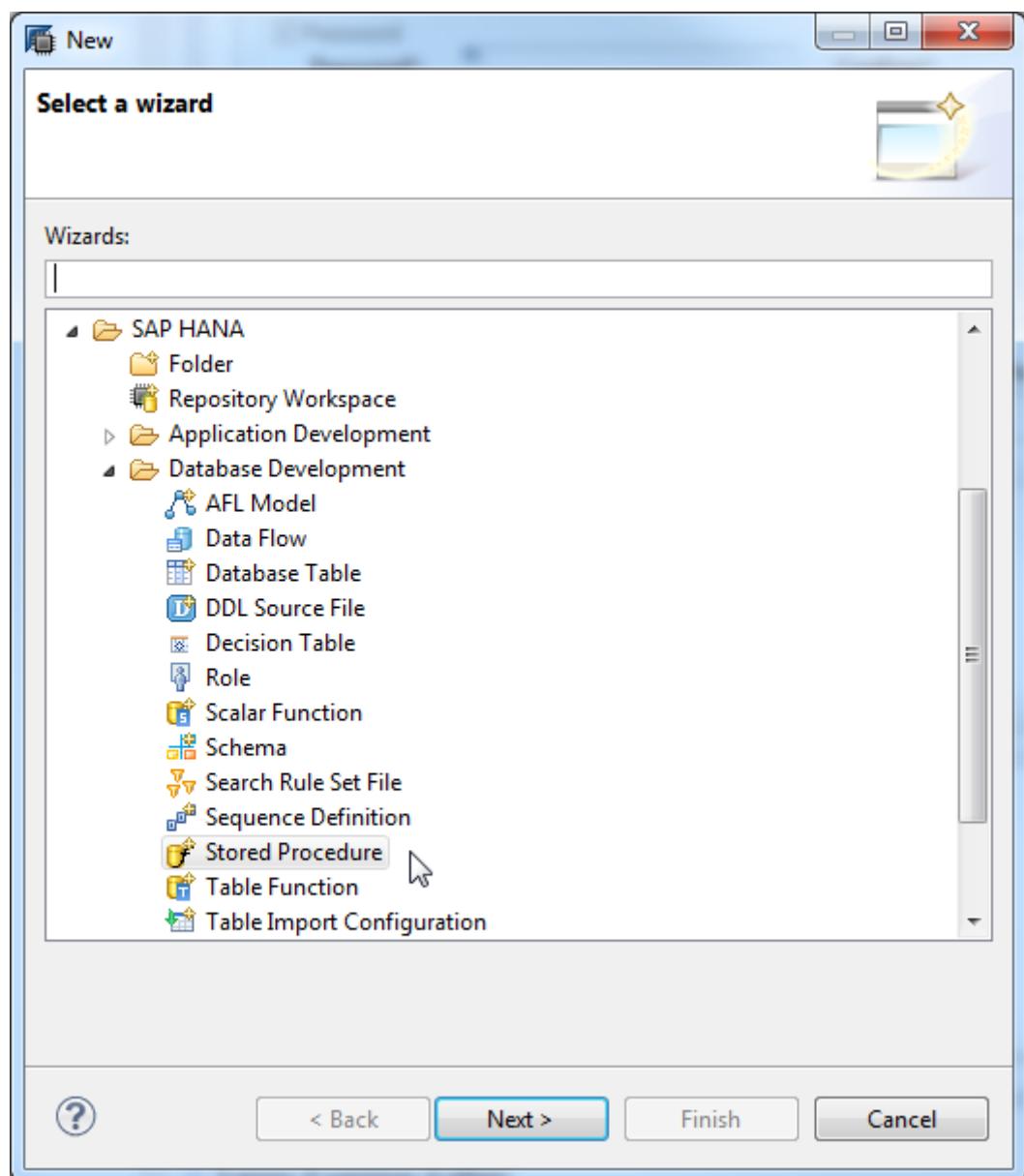
Switch to the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Project Explorer* view, and navigate to the shared project in which you want to create the new stored procedure.

2. Create the file that will contain the stored procedure.

If not already available, create a new folder (package) called `procedures` in the selected project.

- a. Start the *Create New Procedure* wizard.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the `procedures` folder and choose from the context-sensitive pop-up menu. In the *Select a wizard* dialog, choose .

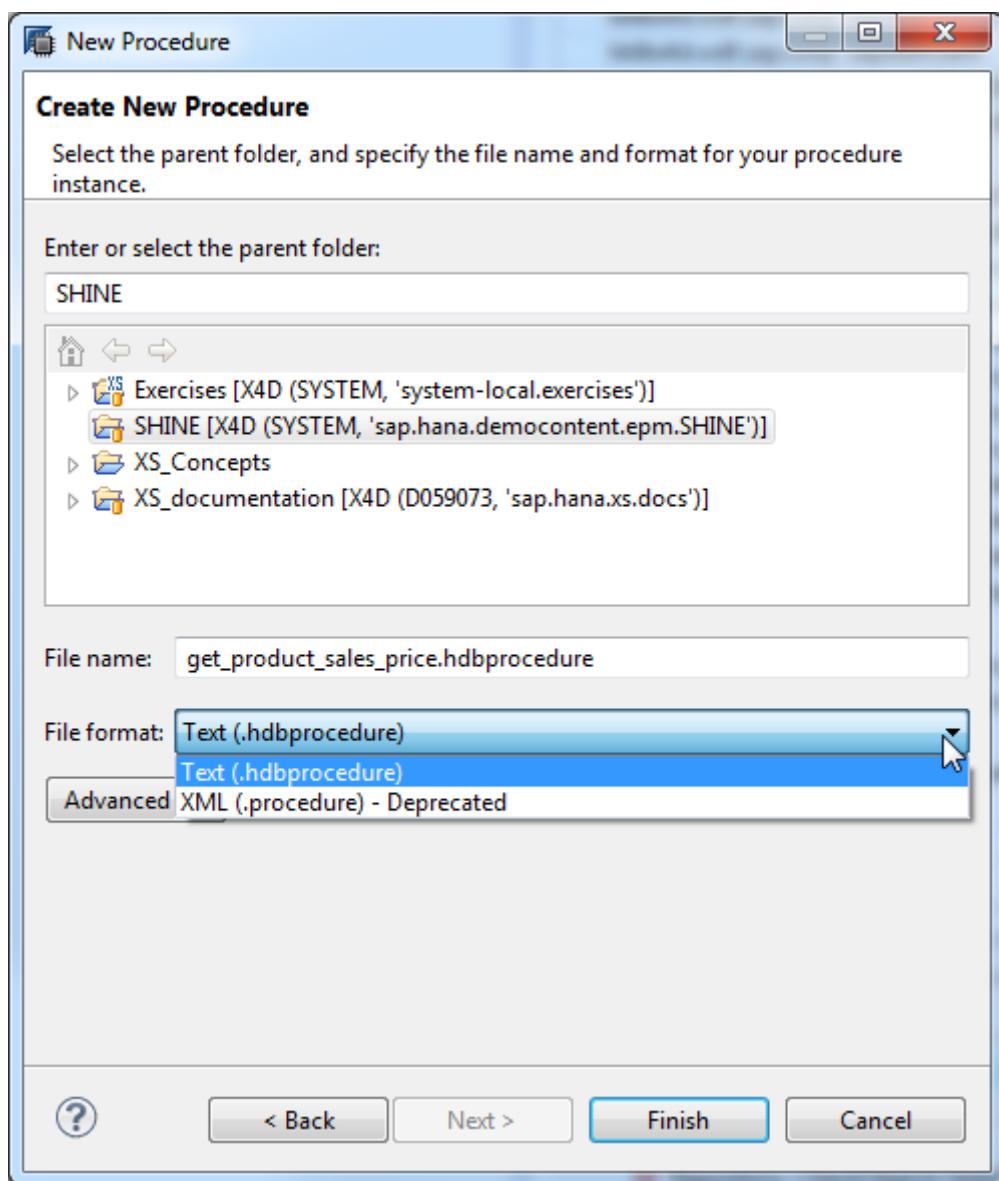


- b. Type the name of the new stored procedure.

Type `get_product_sales_price` in the *File name* box and choose *Text (.hdbprocedure)* in the *File format* drop-down menu.

→ Tip

The file-creation wizard adds the suffix (`.hdbprocedure`) automatically.



- c. Choose *Finish* to create the stored procedure and open it in the SAP HANA studio's embedded SQLScript Editor.
3. Define the new stored procedure.

This procedure uses standard SQL statements and some imperative logic constructs to determine the sale price of a product based on the product category.

- a. In the *SQLScript Editor*, define details of the stored procedure.

Use the following code to define the stored procedure.

```
PROCEDURE SAP_HANA_DEMO.get_product_sales_price (
    IN productid NVARCHAR(10),
    OUT product_sale_price
SAP_HANA_DEMO."sap.hana.democontent.epm.data::EPM Procedures.tt_product_sales_price")
LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT
SQL SECURITY INVOKER
READS SQL DATA AS
BEGIN
/*****
```

```

Write your procedure logic
*****
declare lv_category nvarchar(40) := null;
declare lv_discount decimal(15,2) := 0;
lt_product = select PRODUCTID, CATEGORY, PRICE
    from "sap.hana.democontent.epm.data::EPM.MasterData.Products"
    where PRODUCTID = :productid;
select CATEGORY into lv_category from :lt_product;
if      :lv_category = 'Notebooks' then
    lv_discount := .20;
elseif :lv_category = 'Handhelds' then
    lv_discount := .25;
elseif :lv_category = 'Flat screens' then
    lv_discount := .30;
elseif :lv_category like '%printers%' then
    lv_discount := .30;
else
    lv_discount := 0.00; -- No discount
end if;
product_sale_price =
    select PRODUCTID, CATEGORY, PRICE,
        PRICE - cast((PRICE * :lv_discount) as decimal(15,2))
        as "SALEPRICE" from :lt_product;
END;

```

- Save the changes you have made to the new stored procedure.
- Activate the new stored procedure in the SAP HANA Repository.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new `get_product_sales_price` procedure and choose `Team` `Activate...` from the context-sensitive menu.

- Test the new stored procedure using SAP HANA studio's embedded SQL console.

- Start the *SQL Console*.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the *SAP HANA System Library* node and choose `SQL Console` from the context-sensitive menu.

- Call the new stored procedure.

Enter the following SQL statement (adjusting the path `sap.hana...` to the new procedure if necessary) and choose *Execute*.

```

call
SAP_HANA_DEMO."sap.hana.democontent.epm.Procedures::get_product_sales_price"
"(
productid => 'HT-1000',  product_sale_price => ? );

```

	PRODUCTID	CATEGORY	PRICE	SALEPRICE
1	HT-1000	Notebooks	956	764,8

6.3 Create Scalar and Table User-Defined Functions

You can create, edit, and activate design-time scalar and table user-defined functions (UDF). These functions are added to a SELECT statement in the body of a stored procedure.

Procedure

1. Open a *New Scalar Function* or *New Table Function* wizard.

Go to the *Project Explorer* view in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, right-click on the file name, choose **New > Other > SAP HANA > Database Development > Scalar Function** or **Table Function**. The *New Scalar Function* or *New Table Function* wizard appears.

2. Define the function parameters.

Enter or select the parent folder, enter the file name, and choose *Finish*.

The editor opens containing a default template for the function. In a shared project, the design-time function name is generated containing the full path. In an unshared project, the full function name must be added manually.

3. Commit and activate your function.

Related Information

[Create and Edit Procedures \[page 411\]](#)

6.3.1 Tutorial: Create a Scalar User-Defined Function

In SQL, a user-defined function (UDF) enables you to build complex logic into a single database object. A scalar UDF is a custom function that can be called in the SELECT and WHERE clauses of an SQL statement.

Prerequisites

To complete this exercise successfully, you must bear in mind the following prerequisites:

- You have the user credentials required to log on to SAP HANA
- You have installed the SAP HANA studio
- You have a shared SAP HANA project available (preferably of type *XS Project*)
- The shared project contains a folder called `functions`
- You have installed the SAP HANA Interactive Education ([SHINE](#)) HCODEMOCONTENT delivery unit (DU); this DU contains the demonstration content (tables and views) that you want to consume with the procedure you build in this tutorial.

- You have generated data to populate the tables and views provided by the *SHINE* delivery unit and used in this tutorial. You can generate the data with tools included in the *SHINE* delivery unit.

i Note

You might have to adjust the paths in the code examples provided to suit the/package hierarchy in your SAP HANA repository, for example, to point to the underlying content (demonstration tables and services) referenced in the tutorial.

Context

A scalar user-defined function has a list of input parameters and returns the scalar values specified in the RETURNS `<return parameter list>` option defined in the SQL function, for example, `decimal(15,2)`. The **scalar** UDF named `apply_discount` that you create in this tutorial performs the following actions:

- Applies a discount to the stored product price
- Calculates the sale price of a product including the suggested discount

To create the scalar UDF `apply_discount`, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio.

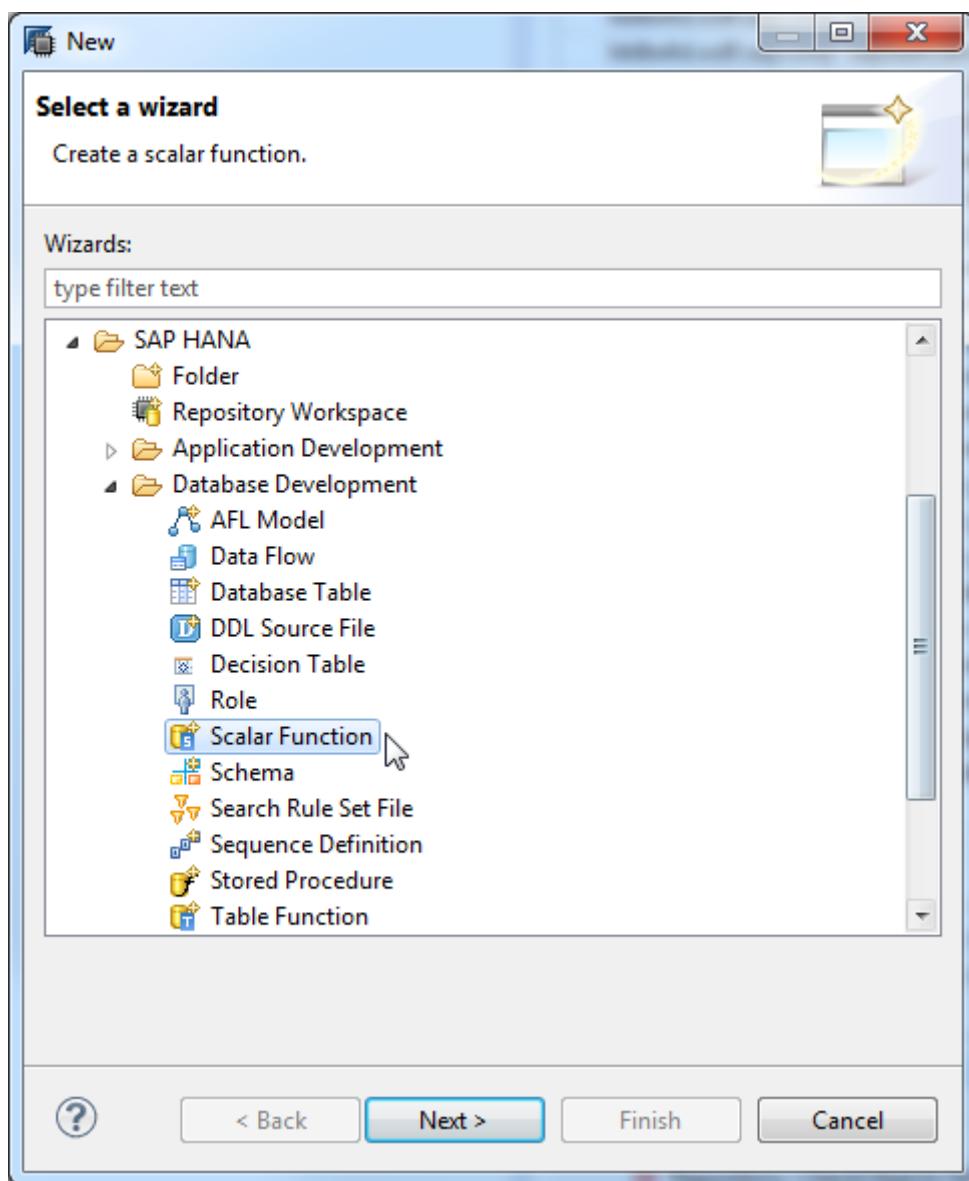
Start the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Project Explorer* view, and navigate to the shared project in which you want to create the new scalar UDF.

2. Create the file that will contain the scalar UDF.

If not already available, create a new folder (package) called `functions` in the selected project.

- a. Start the *Create New UDF* wizard.

In the *Project Explorer* view, choose and choose *Next*.

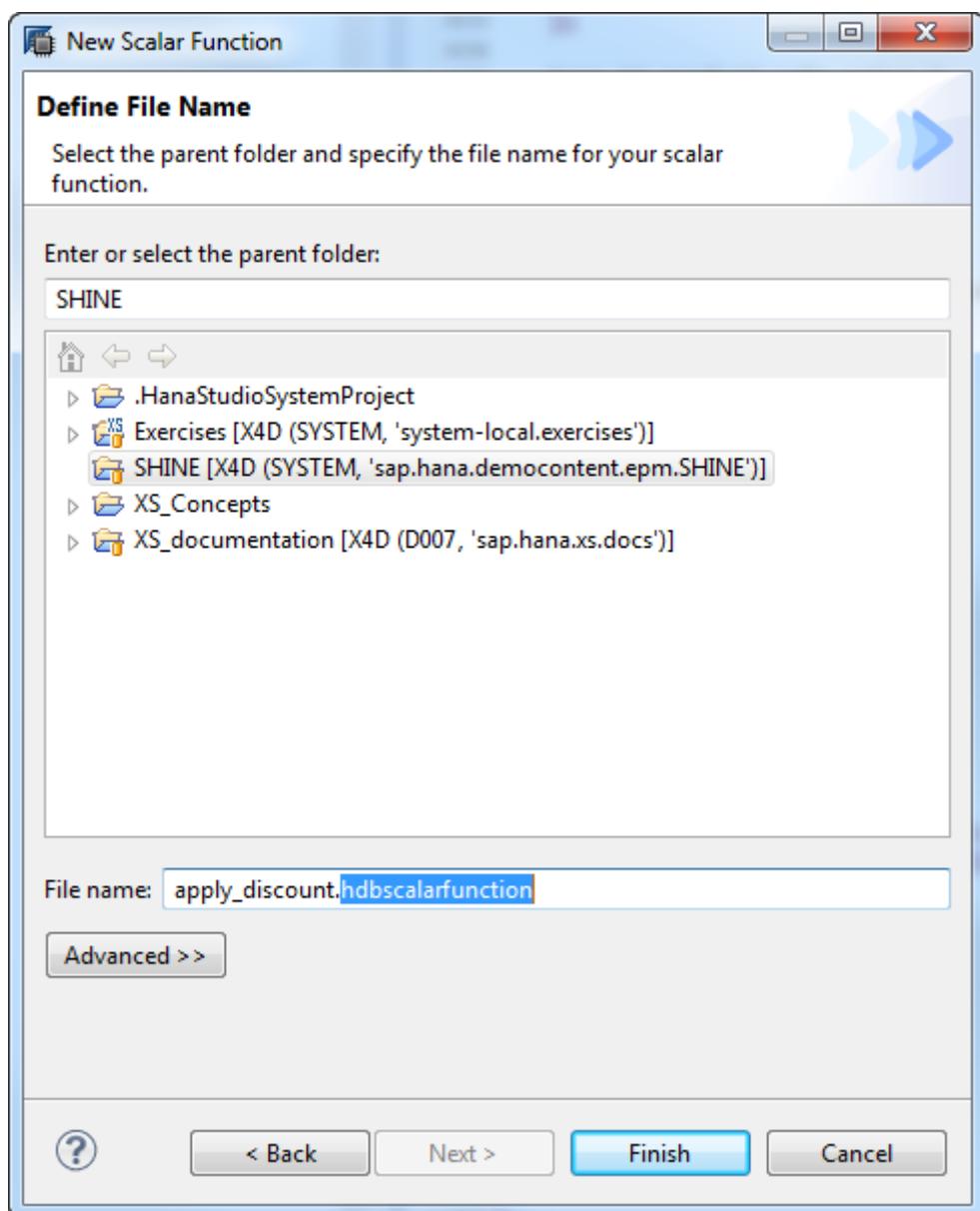


- b. Type the name of the new scalar UDF.

Type **apply_discount** in the *File name* box.

→ Tip

The file-creation wizard adds the suffix (.hbscalarfunction) automatically.



- c. Choose [Finish](#) to create the scalar UDF and open it in SAP HANA studio's embedded SQL editor.
3. Create the user-defined function.

The user-defined function (UDF) you create in this step applies a discount to the stored product price and calculates the sale price of a product including the suggested discount.

- a. In the [SQL Editor](#), type the code that defines the new user-defined function.

You can use the following code example, but make sure the paths point to the correct locations in your environment, for example, the schema name, the package location for the new UDF, and the location of the demo tables referenced in the code.

```

FUNCTION
"SAP_HANA_DEMO"."sap.hana.democontent.epm.functions::apply_discount"
(im_price decimal(15,2),
 im_discount decimal(15,2) )
RETURNS result decimal(15,2)
LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT
SQL SECURITY INVOKER AS

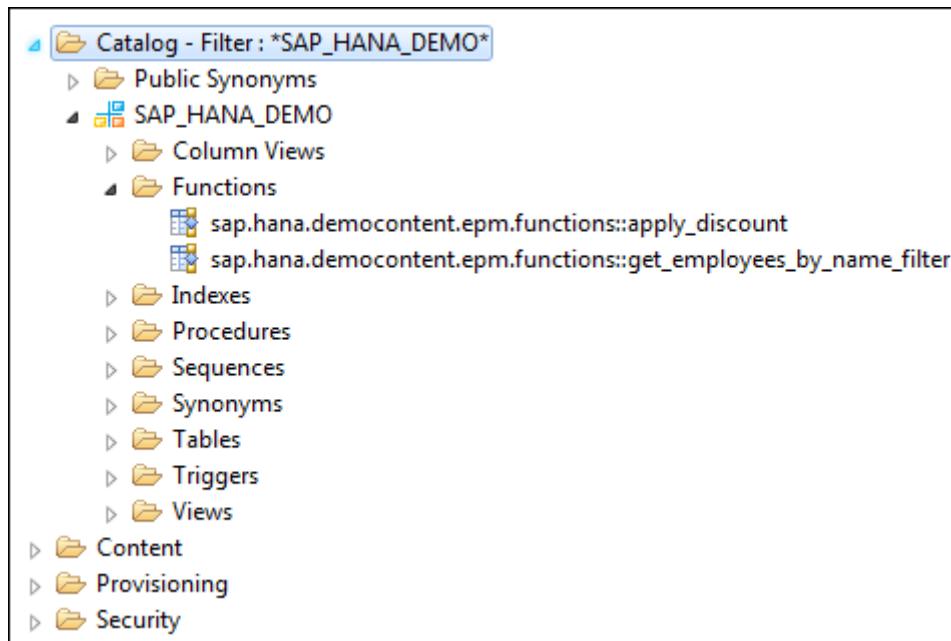
```

```
BEGIN  
result := :im_price - ( :im_price * :im_discount );  
END;
```

- b. Save the changes you have made to the new scalar UDF.
- c. Activate the new scalar UDF in the SAP HANA Repository.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new `apply_discount.hdbscalarfunction` UDF artifact and choose **Team > Activate..** in the context-sensitive menu.

- d. Check the catalog to ensure the new UDF was successfully created in the correct location.



4. Use the new UDF in an SQL select statement.

You can use the following example statement, but make sure you modify the paths to point to the correct locations in your environment, for example, the schema name, the package location for the new UDF, and the location of the demo tables referenced in the code.

```
select PRODUCTID, CATEGORY, PRICE,  
    "SAP_HANA_DEMO"."sap.hana.democontent.epm.functions::apply_discount"(PRICE,  
0.33 )  
        as "SalePrice" from  
    "sap.hana.democontent.epm.data::EPM.MasterData.Products";
```

5. Check the results in the *Results* tab of the *SQL Console*.

```

SQL Result
select PRODUCTID, CATEGORY, PRICE,
      "SAP_HANA_DEMO"."sap.hana.democontent.epm.functions::apply_discount"(PRICE, 0.33 )
      as "SalePrice" from
      "sap.hana.democontent.epm.data::EPM.MasterData.Products"

```

	PRODUCTID	CATEGORY	PRICE	SalePrice
1	HT-1000	Notebooks	956	640.52
2	HT-1001	Notebooks	1,249	836.83
3	HT-1002	Notebooks	1,570	1,051.9
4	HT-1003	Notebooks	1,650	1,105.5
5	HT-1007	Handhelds	499	334.33
6	HT-1010	Notebooks	1,999	1,339.33
7	HT-1011	Notebooks	2,299	1,540.33
8	HT-1020	Handhelds	129	86.43
9	HT-1021	Handhelds	149	99.83
10	HT-1022	Handhelds	205	137.35

6.3.2 Tutorial: Create a Table User-Defined Function

In SQL, a user-defined function (UDF) enables you to build complex logic into a single database object that you can call from a SELECT statement. You can use a table user-defined function (UDF) to create a parameterized, fixed view of the data in the underlying tables.

Prerequisites

To complete this exercise successfully, bear in mind the following prerequisites:

- You have the user credentials required to log on to SAP HANA
- You have installed the SAP HANA studio
- You have a shared SAP HANA project available (preferably of type *XS Project*)
- The shared project contains a folder called `functions`
- You have installed the *SHINE* (democontent) delivery unit (DU); this DU contains the tables and views that you want to consume with the procedure you build in this tutorial.
- You have generated data to populate the tables and views provided by the *SHINE* delivery unit and used in this tutorial. You can generate the data with tools included in the *SHINE* delivery unit.

i Note

You might have to adjust the paths in the code examples provided to suit the package hierarchy in your SAP HANA repository, for example, to point to the underlying content (demonstration tables and services) referenced in the tutorial.

Context

A table UDF has a list of input parameters and must return a table of the type specified in `RETURNS <return-type>`. The **table** UDF named `get_employees_by_name_filter` that you create in this tutorial performs the following actions:

- Executes a `SELECT (INNER JOIN)` statement against the employee and address tables
- Filters the results by performing a fuzzy search on the last name

To create a table user-defined function called `get_employees_by_name_filter`, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio.

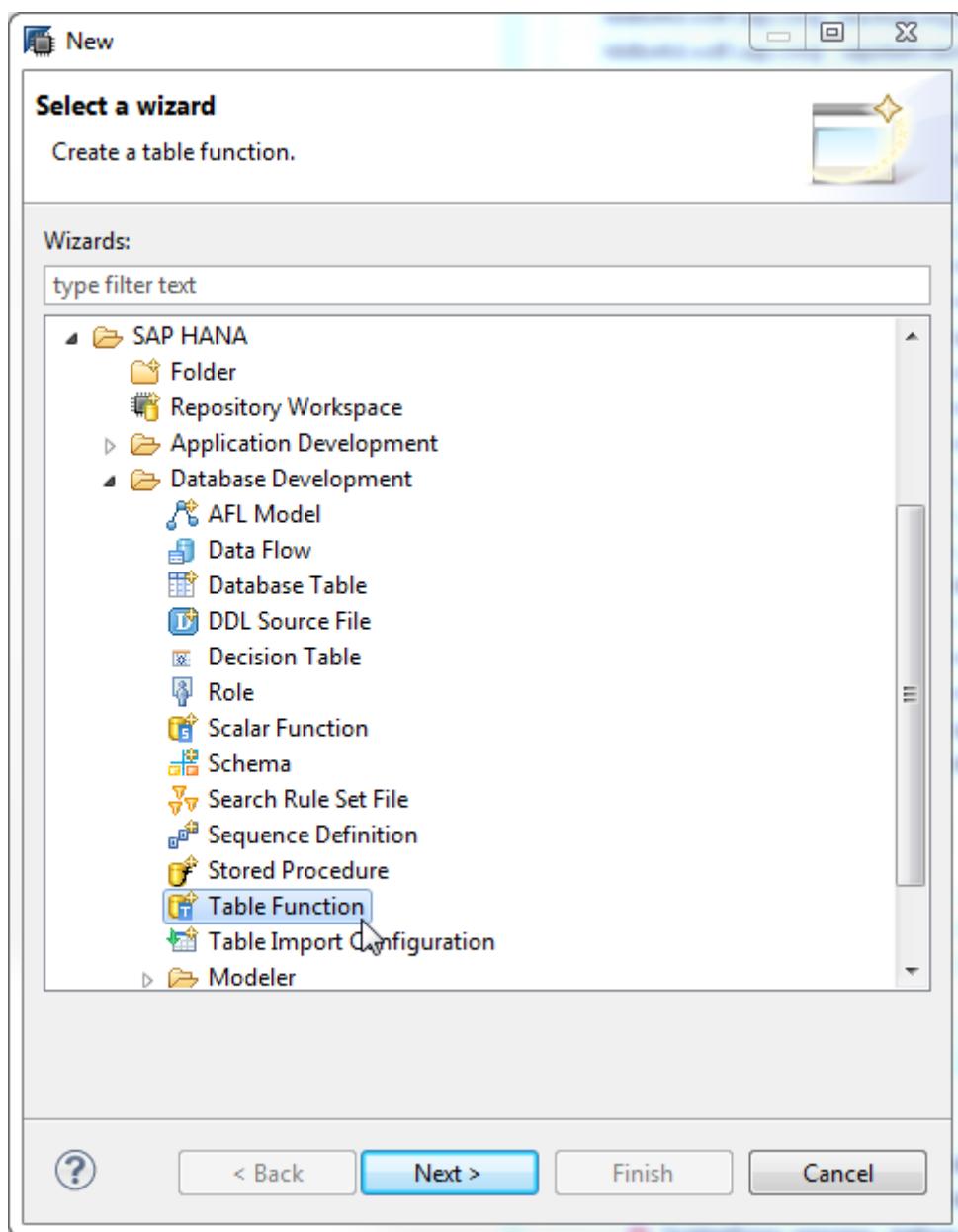
Start the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Project Explorer* view, and navigate to the shared project in which you want to create the new table UDF.

2. Create the file that will contain the table UDF.

If not already available, create a new folder (package) called `functions` in the selected project.

- a. Start the *Create New UDF* wizard.

In the *Project Explorer* view, choose *New* *Other...* *SAP HANA* *Database Development* *Table Function* and choose *Next*.

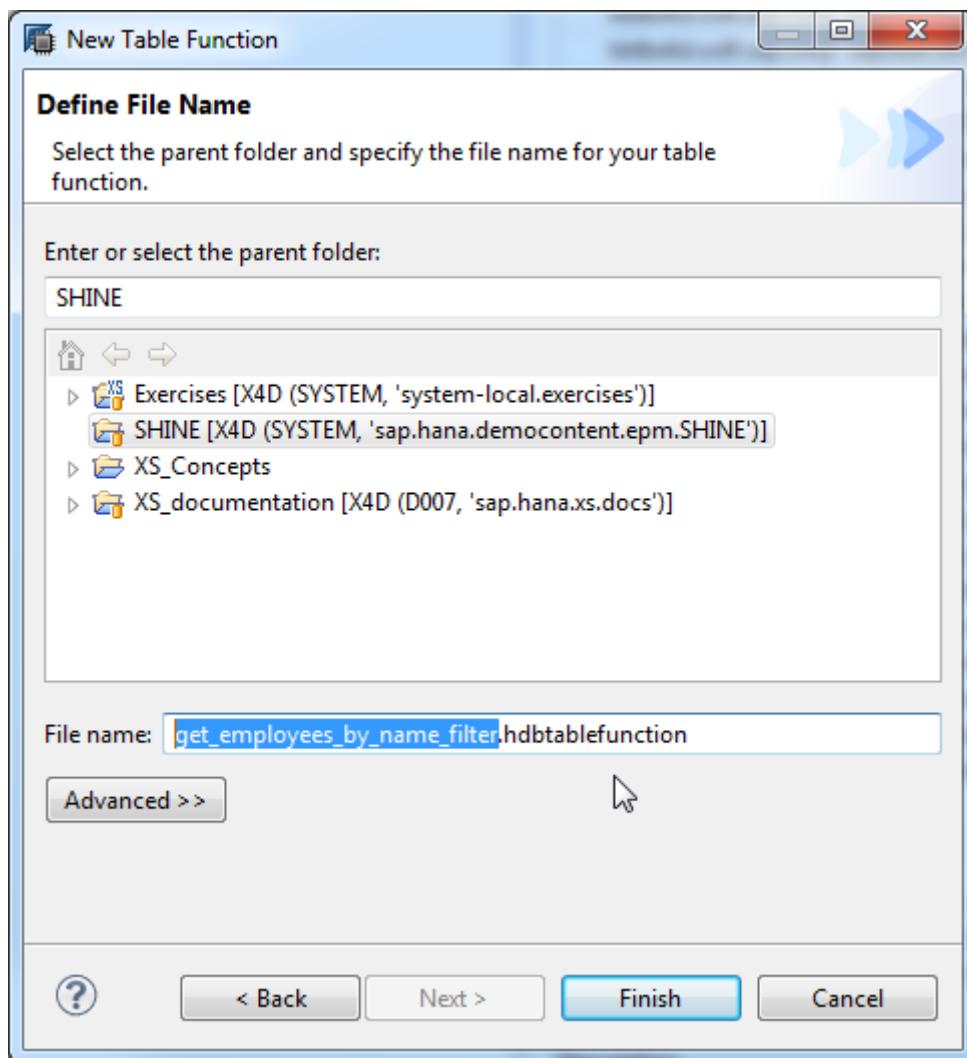


- b. Type the name of the new table UDF.

Type `get_employees_by_name_filter` in the *File name* box.

→ Tip

If the file-creation wizard does not automatically add the suffix (`.hdbtablefunction`), select the parent folder where you want to create the new function.



- c. Choose *Finish* to create the table UDF and open it in SAP HANA studio's embedded SQL editor.
3. Define details of the user-defined function.

The user-defined function you create in this step first executes a `SELECT (INNER JOIN)` statement against the employee and address tables and then filters the results by performing a fuzzy search on the last name.

- In the *SQL Editor*, type the code that defines the new user-defined function.

You can use the following code example, but make sure the paths point to the correct locations in your environment, for example, the schema name, the package location for the new UDF, and the location of the demo tables referenced in the code.

```

FUNCTION
  "SAP_HANA_DEMO"."sap.hana.democontent.epm.functions::get_employees_by_name_
filter"
  (lastNameFilter nvarchar(40))
RETURNS table ( EMPLOYEEID NVARCHAR(10),
                 "Name.FIRST" NVARCHAR(40),
                 "Name.LAST" NVARCHAR(40),
                 EMAILADDRESS NVARCHAR(255),
                 ADDRESSID NVARCHAR(10), CITY NVARCHAR(40),
                 POSTALCODE NVARCHAR(10), STREET NVARCHAR(60))
LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT

```

```

SQL SECURITY INVOKER AS

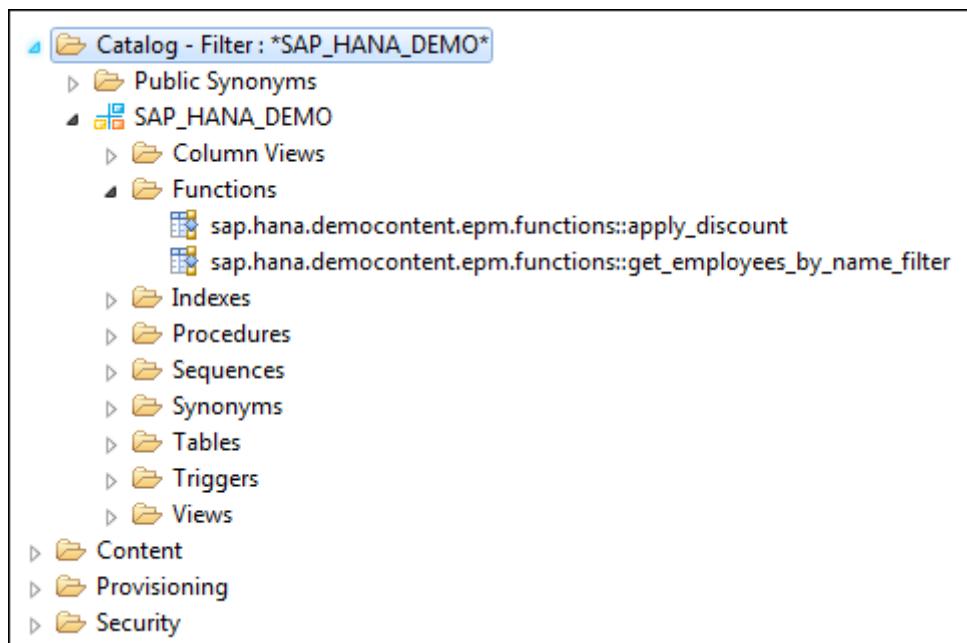
BEGIN
RETURN
    select a.EMPLOYEEID, a."Name.FIRST",
           a."Name.LAST", a.EMAILADDRESS,
           a.ADDRESSID, b.CITY, b.POSTALCODE, b.STREET
      from "sap.hana.democontent.epm.data::EPM.MasterData.Employees"
           as a
     inner join
           "sap.hana.democontent.epm.data::EPM.MasterData.Addresses"
           as b
        on a.ADDRESSID = b.ADDRESSID
           where contains("Name.LAST", :lastNameFilter, FUZZY(0.9));
END;

```

- Save the changes you have made to the new table UDF.
- Activate the new table UDF in the SAP HANA Repository.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new *get_employees_by_name_filter* UDF artifact and choose **Team > Activate..** in the context-sensitive menu.

- Check the catalog to ensure the new UDF was successfully created in the correct location.



- Use the new UDF in an SQL select statement.

You can use the following example statement, but make sure you modify the paths to point to the correct locations in your environment, for example, the schema name, the package location for the new UDF, and the location of the demo tables referenced in the code.

```

select * from
"SAP_HANA_DEMO"."sap.hana.democontent.epm.functions::get_employees_by_name_filter"('*ll*')

```

- Check the results in the *Results* tab of the *SQL Console*.

	EMPLOYEEID	Name.FIRST	Name.LAST	EMAILADDRESS	ADDRESSID	CITY	POSTALCODE	STREET
1	0000000003	Franco	Fall	franco.fall@itelo.info	1000000004	San Francisco	94101	Risel Avenue
2	0000000010	Michael	Miller	michael.miller@itelo.info	1000000011	London	EC1Y8SY	Castle Lane
3	0000000018	Al	Wallace	al.wallace@itelo.info	1000000019	San Francisco	94101	Silver Aven...
4	0000000027	Barbara	Ingalls	barbara.ingalls@itelo.in...	1000000028	San Francisco	94101	Fernwood ...

6.4 Create Procedure Templates

A procedure template is an artifact containing a base script with predefined placeholders for objects such as tables, views and columns. The procedure template enables you to create procedures that contain the same script, but with different values.

Prerequisites

- You have created a development workspace. For more information, see *Create a Repository Workspace*.
- You have checked out a package. For more information, see *SAP HANA Repositories View*.

i Note

After checking out a package that contains active procedures, you can modify and debug the procedures.

- You have created and shared a project. For more information, see *Using SAP HANA Projects*.

i Note

You can also share your project after you create your procedure template.

Procedure

1. Open the *New File* wizard.

After you have created your workspace and your project, go to the *Project Explorer* view in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, right-click on the file name, choose **New > File**. The *New File* wizard appears.

2. Enter or select the parent folder and enter the file name using the following naming convention `<filename>.proceduretemplate`.
3. Choose *Finish*.

The *Template Script* editor opens.

4. Define the template parameters.

Click the  icon from the toolbar in the *Template Parameters* table to add a parameter to the table. You can rename the parameter and give it a meaningful name. Add the parameters to the table and to the script where they are used as a placeholder for the following objects:

- Schema name
- Table name and table column name
- View name and view column name
- Procedure name

The parameters can only be used in the procedure body, between the BEGIN and END, and not as part of the procedure header. The parameters must follow the SQL identifier semantics. Each parameter should be wrapped using the less than (<) and greater than (>) symbols. For example:

```
SELECT <My_Column> FROM <My_Table>;
```

 **Caution**

You cannot add a parameter as a placeholder for other objects or syntactic statements.

5. Commit and activate your procedure template.

 **Caution**

To avoid errors during activation, you must make sure your procedure template is consistent. For example:

- A parameter that is a placeholder for a table must be in a valid position that is syntactically correct.
- A parameter name must be identical in the *Template Parameters* table and the *Template Script*.

Related Information

[Maintain a Repository Workspace \[page 78\]](#)

[The Repositories View \[page 43\]](#)

[Using SAP HANA Projects \[page 77\]](#)

[Create and Edit Procedures \[page 411\]](#)

6.4.1 Create Procedure Template Instances

A procedure template instance is an artifact that is created from a procedure template. It contains the same procedure script and uses specific values for the predefined placeholders in the script. Procedure template instances are coupled with the procedure template, which means any changes that are made to the template are also applied to the template instances. During activation, a template instance is generated as a procedure in the catalog.

Prerequisites

You have created a procedure template or checked out an existing one. For more information, see [Create Procedure Templates](#).

Procedure

1. Open a [New Procedure](#) wizard.
 - a. Go to the [Project Explorer](#) view in the [SAP HANA Development](#) perspective, right-click the file name, choose [New](#) > [Other](#). The [New](#) wizard appears.

Note

The latest version of the procedure template must be checked out to your local workstation before you can select it.

- b. Expand the [Database Development](#) folder and select [Stored Procedure](#). The [New Procedure](#) wizard appears.
2. Define the new procedure attributes.
Enter or select the parent folder, enter the file name, select [XML \(.procedure\) - Deprecated](#) for the file format. Choose [Advanced](#), select the [Create from procedure template](#) checkbox, and choose [Browse](#). Select the relevant template, choose [OK](#), and choose [Finish](#).
3. In the [Procedure Template Instance](#) editor, add a value in the [Value](#) column for each parameter, and choose [Save](#).

Note

The value is the string that replaces the parameter in the template script.

4. Commit and activate your procedure template instance.

Note

During activation:

- The procedure is created in the catalog using the values specified in the instance with the active template in the repository.
- A reference between the instance and its template is created to link them together.

Related Information

[Create Procedure Templates \[page 430\]](#)

[Create and Edit Procedures \[page 411\]](#)

[Update Procedure Templates and Instances \[page 433\]](#)

[Delete Procedure Templates and Instances \[page 433\]](#)

6.4.2 Update Procedure Templates and Instances

The procedure template script and its parameters can be modified, which also modifies the template instances that refer to it. Only the template parameter values can be changed in the procedure template instances.

Procedure

1. To update a procedure template and its instances, double-click the relevant file in the *Project Explorer* view. The file appears in the *Template Script* editor.
2. You can change the list of template parameters or the template script. Choose *Save*.

 Note

If you change the list of template parameters, you should also update the instances by choosing the  *Refresh* button to update the list of parameters and enter the values.

3. Commit and activate your procedure template and its instances.

 Note

During activation, the corresponding instances are reactivated and the changes are applied accordingly.

Related Information

[Create and Edit Procedures \[page 411\]](#)

6.4.3 Delete Procedure Templates and Instances

A procedure template can be deleted if there are no instances linked to it. If there are instances linked to the procedure template, they must be deleted before you can delete the procedure template.

Procedure

1. To delete a procedure template or a procedure instance, right-click the relevant file in the *Project Explorer* view, choose *Delete*, and choose *OK*.
2. Commit and activate the package.

Note

If an error occurs during activation because there are instances linked to the procedure template that you are trying to delete, then right-click the project name and choose .

Related Information

[Create and Edit Procedures \[page 411\]](#)

6.5 Debugging Procedures

The SAP HANA SQLScript debugger allows you to debug and analyze procedures. In a debug session, your procedures are executed in serial mode, not in parallel (not optimized). The stored procedure call stack appears in the debug view allowing you to view the nested calls. This allows you to test the correctness of the procedure logic and is not intended for evaluating the performance.

The following debug session types are available:

- Design-Time - Enables you to debug a design-time procedure artifact (.procedure/.hdbprocedure)
- Catalog - Enables you to debug a runtime procedure object
- External - Enables you to debug procedures that are executed by an external session
- Unified - Enables you to debug targets of both XS JavaScript and SQLScript in the debug view

Related Information

[Debug Design-Time and Catalog Procedures \[page 435\]](#)

[Debug an External Session \[page 438\]](#)

[The Debug Perspective \[page 641\]](#)

6.5.1 Setup Debugger Privileges

Grant debugger privileges to your user.

Procedure

1. Go to the *Systems* view in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective and open .

Note

You can also grant authorization from the *SQL Console*.

2. Double-click your user ID. Your system privileges information appears.
3. Choose the *Object Privileges* tab to grant debug privileges to a schema or to procedures. Choose the  *Add* button, select the relevant schema or procedure, and choose *OK*. Select the schema or procedure in the table and select *DEBUG*.

Note

If you want to allow other users to debug your schema or procedures, select *Yes* under *Grantable to others*.

4. Choose the  *Deploy* button ().

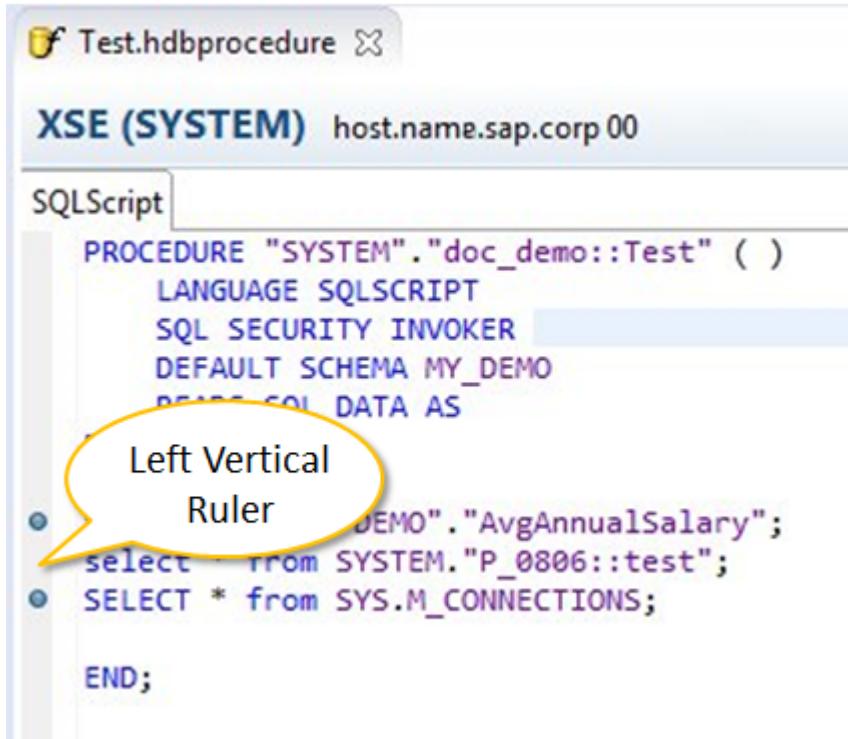
6.5.2 Debug Design-Time and Catalog Procedures

You can debug and analyze active SQLScript procedures that are in a local shared project (.hdbprocedure or .procedure).

Procedure

1. Open a procedure.
 - For catalog procedures go to the *Project Explorer* view in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective or to the *Systems* view, choose *Catalog*, select the schema, and double-click the procedure to open it in the *SAP HANA Stored Procedure* viewer.
 - For design-time procedures open the *Debug* perspective in the SAP HANA studio and select the procedure you want to debug by choosing the relevant tab in the *Editor* view.
2. Add breakpoints.

To add breakpoints double-click the left vertical ruler to add breakpoints to your procedure. You can see a list of all of the breakpoints in the *Breakpoints* view.



```

f Test.hdbprocedure X
XSE (SYSTEM) host.name.sap.corp 00
SQLScript
PROCEDURE "SYSTEM"."doc_demo::Test" ( )
  LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT
  SQL SECURITY INVOKER
  DEFAULT SCHEMA MY_DEMO
  REVOKE SQL DATA AS
  Left Vertical Ruler
    "DEMO"."AvgAnnualSalary";
  select * from SYSTEM."P_0806::test";
  ● SELECT * from SYS.M_CONNECTIONS;
  END;

```

From the *Breakpoints* view, you can:

- Deselect specific breakpoints or skip all of them.
 - Delete a specific breakpoint or delete all of them.
 - Double-click a breakpoint to see which line it belongs to in the *Editor* view.
 - See the status of the breakpoint:
 - Pending
 - Valid
 - Invalid
3. Start a debug session.

To start a new debug session, you must first create a debug configuration. Choose and *Debug Configurations....* The *Debug Configurations* wizard appears.

Note

You can also go to the *Project Explorer* view, right-click your procedure, choose *Debug As* *SAP HANA Stored Procedure*.

4. In the *General* tab, do the following:
 - a. Select the *Procedure to Debug* radio button and choose *Local projects* from the drop-down menu.
 - b. Choose *Browse...* and select a procedure from a schema in the relevant system to debug. Choose *OK*.
5. In the *Input Parameters* tab, a list of the parameters and types is displayed for your procedure. You must add values for each parameter in the *Value* column.

Note

For scalar types, insert a value. For table types, enter the name of a catalog table (`schema.tablename`) that contains the relevant input. For example, `SYS.USERS`.

Note

To debug a procedure that does not require you to define values for input parameters, double-click [SQLScript Procedure](#), enter a name, choose [Apply](#), and choose [Debug](#).

6. If you want to control the way your procedures are compiled in debug mode, go to the [Advanced](#) tab, and select one of the following radio buttons:
 - [All procedures in the call stack](#) to compile all of the nested procedures that are referenced from the procedure stack in debug mode
 - [Procedures with breakpoints](#) to compile procedures with breakpoints in debug mode

Caution

Selecting [Procedures with breakpoints](#) will make the compilation and the procedure execution faster. However, it may prevent you from breaking in a procedure that was compiled in an optimized way.

7. Choose [Apply](#) and [Debug](#).
8. To start your debug session, choose [Debug](#).

The debug session begins and the status of the session appears in the [Debug](#) view. The debugger will stop at the first breakpoint and the session will be suspended until you resume it. After the server validates your breakpoints, the status and position of them may change. The position of the breakpoints is the next valid line where the debugger can stop. If your breakpoint is successfully set, the  valid status appears next to it in the [Breakpoints](#) view.

Caution

Selecting [Procedures with breakpoints](#) makes the compilation and the procedure execution faster. However, it may prevent you from breaking in a procedure that was compiled in an optimized way.

Note

You must set breakpoints in the lines you want to break at and resume the session again.

You can evaluate your local scalar and table variables in the [Variable](#) view. The view shows the values of the scalar variables and the number of rows in each table.

9. View the content of the listed tables in the [Variable](#) view.
Right-click the table name and choose [Open Data Preview](#). The results will appear in the [Preview](#) view. This view will automatically close when you resume your debug session.

Results

The debug session is terminated when the procedure run has finished.

6.5.3 Debug an External Session

You can debug and analyze procedures that are executed by an external application.

Prerequisites

- You know the connection ID, the HANA user, or the HANA user and the application user that your external application uses to connect to the SAP HANA database and to call procedures.
- You have activated your stored procedures.
- You have granted debugger privileges to your user:
 1. Go to the *Systems* view in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective and open ► *Security* ▶ *Users* ▶.
 2. Double-click your user ID. Your system privileges' information will appear.
 3. Choose the *Object Privileges* tab to grant debug privileges to a schema or to procedures. Choose the  *Add* button, select the relevant schema or procedure, and choose *OK*. Select the schema or procedure in the table and select *DEBUG*.

Note

If you want to allow other users to debug your schema or procedures, select *Yes* under *Grantable to others*.

4. Choose the *Privileges on Users* tab to allow other users to debug procedures in your connection.

Choose the  *Add* button, select the relevant user, and select *ATTACH DEBUGGER*.

5. Choose the  *Deploy* button (`F8`).

Caution

Granting debugger privileges to your user enables you to connect to other user's sessions, and therefore debug procedures that you are not allowed to run and view data that you are not allowed to examine.

Procedure

1. Start a debug session.

To start a new debug session, you must first create a debug configuration. Choose  and *Debug Configurations....* The *Debug Configurations* wizard appears.

2. In the *General* tab, select the *Debug an external session* radio button, and choose *SAP HANA System*.
 - a. Select the *Set filter attributes* radio button if you know the connection attributes that your external application uses to connect to the SAP HANA database. Enter *HANA User*, which is the SAP HANA database user, and optionally enter *Application User* if your external application sets this attribute for the connection.

Note

It is not mandatory for the connection to be established before you start the debug session.

- b. Select the *Select a connection after initiating the debugger* radio button if you know the connection ID that your external application uses to connect to the SAP HANA database. This option enables you to choose a specific connection after the debugger session has started.

If you want to save the debug configuration you created and debug your procedure later, choose *Apply* and *Close*. To start your debug session, choose *Debug* and trigger the call to the SAP HANA procedure from your external application.. The *Select Connection* wizard appears. Choose a connection ID and choose *OK*.

Note

It is mandatory for the connection to be established before you start the debug session.

Results

The debug session will begin and you will see the status of the session in the *Debug* view. The debugger will wait until your procedure is executed on the connection ID that your external application uses. Once your procedure is executed, the debugger will stop at the first breakpoint, and the session will be suspended until you resume it. You will also see the your procedure name in the third and fourth level of the *Debug* view.

After the server has validated your breakpoints, the status and position of them may change. The position of the breakpoints will be the next valid line where the debugger can stop. If your breakpoint is successfully set, the  valid status appears next to it in the *Breakpoints* view.

Caution

If more than one user tries to debug a procedure in the same connection that was either selected or identified by a user name, only the first user that chooses *Debug* will be able to stop at a breakpoint and debug the procedure.

Note

You must set breakpoints in the lines you want to break at and resume the session again.

You can evaluate your local scalar and table variables in the *Variable* view. The view shows the values of the scalar variables and the number of rows in each table.

6.6 Developing Procedures in the Modeler Editor

Context

To create procedures, use the SQLScript Editor, as described in [Create and Edit Procedures \[page 411\]](#).

If you need to create procedures with local table types, that is, table types created only for the procedure, perform the steps described in this section.

Procedure

1. On the *Quick Launch* tab page, choose *Procedure*.

If the *Quick Launch* page is not open, go to .

2. Enter a name and description for the procedure.
3. For unqualified access in SQL, select the required schema from the *Default Schema* dropdown list.

Note

- If you do not select a default schema, while scripting you need to provide fully qualified names of the catalog objects that include the schema.
- If you specify a default schema, and write SQL such as `select * from myTable`, the specified default schema is used at runtime to refer to the table.

4. Select the package in which you want to save the procedure.
5. Select the required option from the *Run With* dropdown list to select which privileges are to be considered while executing the procedure.

Note

There are two types of rights, as follows:

Definer's right: If you want the system to use the rights of the definer while executing the procedure for any user.

Invoker's right: If you want the system to use the rights of the current user while executing the procedure.

6. Select the required access mode as follows:

Access Mode	Purpose
Read Only	Use this mode to create procedures for fetching table data.

Access Mode	Purpose
Read Write	Use this mode to create procedures for fetching and updating table data.

- Select the language in which you are writing the procedure.

i Note

You can choose to create procedures in Read Write mode and make use of L- Lang and R-lang languages only if you have done the repository configuration for the field `sqlscript_mode`. Two values for `sqlscript_mode` field exist, DEFAULT, and UNSECURE. By default DEFAULT is assigned which means Read Only mode with non-modifiable access mode and SQLScript as language. To change the configuration, go to administration console -> Configuration tab -> indexserver.ini -> repository -> `sqlscript_mode`, and assign the required value.

- Choose *Finish*.
- In the function editor pane, write a script for the function using the following data types:
 - Table or scalar data types for input parameters.
 - Table data types for output parameters.

i Note

You can only write one function in the function body. However, you can refer to other functions.

- Choose .
- Activate the procedure using one of the following options in the toolbar:
 - Save and Activate:** Activate the current procedure and redeploy the affected objects if an active version of the affected object exists. Otherwise only the current procedure gets activated.
 - Save and Activate All:** Activate the current procedure along with the required and affected objects.

i Note

You can also activate the current procedure by selecting the procedure in the *Navigator* view and choosing *Activate* in the context menu. For more information about activation, see [Activating Objects \[page 379\]](#).

6.7 Transforming Data Using SAP HANA Application Function Modeler

Overview of SAP HANA application function modeler.

A flowgraph is a development object. It is stored in a project and has extension `.hdbflowgraph`. By default, the activation of a flowgraph generates a procedure in the catalog.

i Note

If the optional additional cost SAP HANA smart data integration and SAP HANA smart data quality component is available, a flowgraph can be configured to generate a task plan run-time object instead of a procedure.

i Note

Columns that you do not map as inputs to a flowgraph will not be sent over the network to be processed by SAP HANA. Excluding columns as inputs can improve performance, for example if they contain large object types. You can also choose to enhance security by excluding columns that, for example, include sensitive data such as passwords.

A flowgraph models a data flow that can contain:

- tables, views, and procedures from the catalog
- relational operators such as projection, filter, union, and join
- functions from Application Function Libraries (AFL) installed on your system
- attribute view and calculation view development objects

In addition, the application function modeler provides support for some optional, additional cost components of the SAP HANA Platform such as:

- the Business Function Library
- the Predictive Analysis Library
- R Scripts
- Data Provisioning operators
- the generation of task plans

The application function modeler is part of the [SAP HANA Development](#) perspective and utilizes the following components.

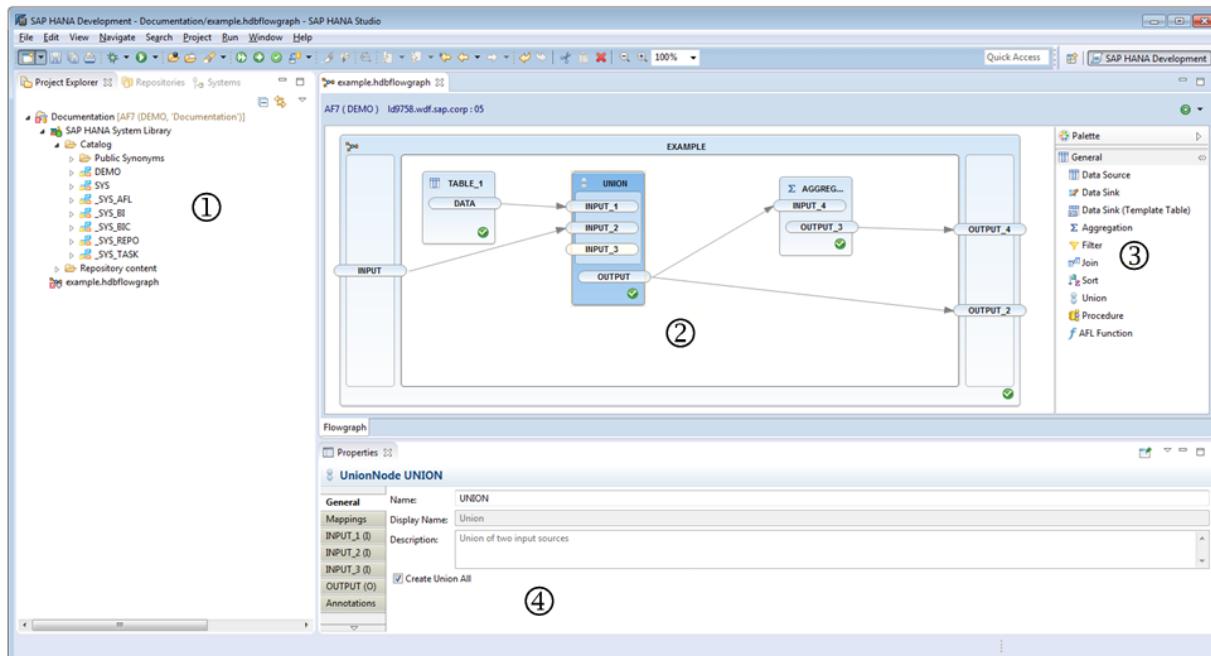


Table 57: Components used by the SAP HANA application function modeler

	Area	Description
1	<i>Project Explorer</i> view	The <i>Project Explorer</i> is used as a source of objects that can be added to the <i>Editing Area</i> .
2	<i>Editing Area</i>	In the <i>Editing Area</i> , the flowgraph is modeled. Elements are added to the flowgraph by dragging objects from the <i>Project Explorer</i> or node templates from the <i>Node Palette</i> to the <i>Editing Area</i> . There, they can be selected and edited via the context button pad and the context menu. The <i>Editing Area</i> supports standard editing operations like copy, paste, and delete, as well as moving elements by drag and drop. The properties of selected flowgraph elements can be edited in the <i>Properties</i> view.
3	<i>Node Palette</i>	The <i>Node Palette</i> lists the node templates available to the application function modeler. These node templates can be added to the flowgraph by dragging them to the <i>Editing Area</i> . In case an optional, additional cost component of the SAP HANA Platform is detected by the application function modeler, an additional compartment with node templates for its functions is automatically added to the <i>Node Palette</i> .
4	<i>Properties</i> view	The <i>Properties</i> view shows the property details of the selected flowgraph element.

➔ Tip

You can open the *SAP HANA Development* perspective by choosing *Window* ➤ *Open Perspective* ➤ *SAP HANA Development* , the *Properties* view by choosing *Window* ➤ *Show View* ➤ *Properties* , and the *Project Explorer* views by choosing *Window* ➤ *Show View* ➤ *Project Explorer* .

Related Information

[The SAP HANA Development Perspective \[page 42\]](#)

[The Project Explorer View \[page 44\]](#)

[SAP HANA Projects \[page 46\]](#)

[Attribute Views \[page 355\]](#)

[Calculation Views \[page 368\]](#)

[SAP HANA Business Function Library \(BFL\)](#)

[SAP HANA Predictive Analysis Library \(PAL\)](#)

[SAP HANA R Integration Guide](#)

6.7.1 Converting deprecated AFL Models (AFLPMML objects)

Convert a deprecated AFL Model development object that was created by a previous version of the SAP HANA application function modeler into a flowgraph.

Context

AFL Models are development objects with the extension `.aflpmml` that were created with a previous version of the SAP HANA application function modeler. They are deprecated in SAP HANA SPS09.

Compared to the complex data flows with various operators modeled by a flowgraph, an AFL Model object is restricted to model a single function from the Application Function Library together with the data sources and data sinks that are connected to this function.

An AFL Model can still be activated. However, since AFL Models are deprecated, it can no longer be directly edited with the application function modeler. Instead, the AFL Model first has to be converted to a flowgraph. Then this flowgraph can be edited with the application function modeler. For backward compatibility, the edited flowgraph can be re-converted to an AFL Model. This requires all changes to the flowgraph to be compatible with the restrictions of AFL Models.

Procedure

1. In the *Project Explorer* view right-click on the AFL Model that you want to convert to a flowgraph, and then choose *Convert to Flowgraph* in the context-sensitive menu.

The application function modeler creates a new flowgraph with the same prefix and the `.hdbflowgraph` extension. A dialog appears that lets you delete the AFL Model and its corresponding generated procedure. Afterward, you can edit the new flowgraph with the application function modeler.

i Note

If you choose not to delete the converted application function modeler Model and try to activate a flowgraph, you get an error stating that there already exists an active catalog object with the same name (the new object tries to generate the same runtime object). You need to either delete or rename one of the two objects and activate the modification as well.

i Note

A flowgraph cannot be activated on a SAP HANA SPS08 system.

2. (Optional) Convert a flowgraph to a AFL Model. In the *Project Explorer* view right-click on the flowgraph that you want to convert to an AFL Model, and then choose *Convert to AFLPMML* in the context-sensitive menu.

The application function modeler creates a new AFL Model with the same prefix and the `.af1pmml` extension.

i Note

AFL Model objects are deprecated. This conversion is available for backward compatibility. Most features of a flowgraph are not supported by the AFLPMML format.

6.7.2 Setting up the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler

Configure your system to use the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler.

Before modeling flowgraphs with the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler (AFM), make sure that the following system requirements are satisfied and that the following database access rights are granted to the respective database users.

System Requirements

The AFM has the following system requirements.

- You have installed the current version of SAP HANA.

- You have installed the Application Function Libraries (AFLs) that you want to use. For more information, see the section *Installing or Updating SAP HANA Components* in the *SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide*.
- You have enabled the Script Server in your SAP HANA instance. See SAP Note 1650957 for more information.

Privileges for the database user _SYS_REPO

The database user _SYS_REPO has to be granted the following object privileges:

- SELECT object privileges for objects that are used as data sources,
- INSERT object privileges for objects that are used as data sinks,
- INSERT and DELETE object privileges for objects that are used as data sinks with truncation.

i Note

Granting access rights to the user _SYS_REPO may constitute a security risk. Make sure that you understand the privileges you grant to database users. Also see the *SAP HANA Security Guide*.

Privileges for the database user of the AFM

You have to be granted the MODELING role.

You have to be granted the EXECUTE privilege for the object SYS.REPOSITORY_REST.

You have to be granted the following package privileges:

- `repo.read` package privileges on your repository package
- `repo.activate_native_objects` package privileges on your repository package
- `repo.edit_native_objects` package privileges on your repository package
- `repo.maintain_native_packages` package privileges on your repository package

In addition, you have to be granted the following object privileges to the target schema of the flowgraph activation (default: _SYS_BIC):

- CREATE ANY
- ALTER
- DROP
- EXECUTE
- SELECT
- INSERT
- UPDATE

i Note

Granting access rights to the user _SYS_REPO may constitute a security risk. Make sure that you understand the privileges you grant to database users. Also see the *SAP HANA Security Guide*.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide](#)

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

6.7.3 Flowgraphs

This is an overview of all flowgraph elements.

A flowgraph consists of several flowgraph elements that are depicted in the *Editing Area*. Every flowgraph element has a collection of properties that are displayed in the *Properties* view.

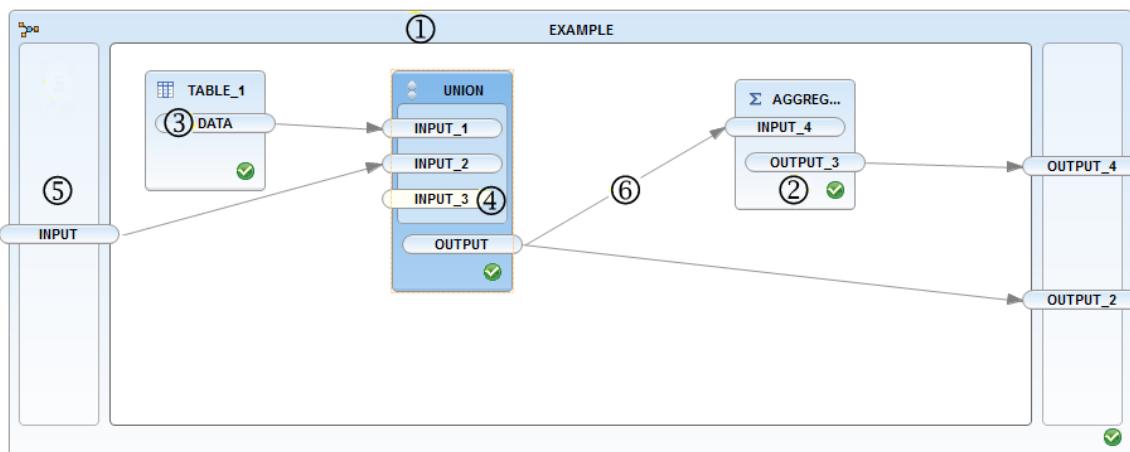


Table 58: Flowgraph Elements

	Element	Description
1	Flowgraph container	The flowgraph container represents the operator defined by the flowgraph. Every flowgraph has exactly one flowgraph container. This flowgraph container has a name which has to differ from all other elements of the flowgraph. The flowgraph container can have several anchors. They represent the inputs and outputs of the operator defined by the flowgraph. The central free area of the flowgraph container is its canvas. All nodes of the flowgraph are contained in this canvas. The validation decorator in the right bottom corner of the flowgraph container indicates whether the flowgraph is configured correctly.
2	Node	Nodes are the functional elements in a flowgraph. There are several different types of nodes which represent data sources, data sinks, and operators. A node has a name which has to be unique in the flowgraph. Like the flowgraph container, a node can have several anchors. They represent the inputs and outputs of the node. The validation decorator in the right bottom corner of a node indicates whether the node is configured correctly.
3	Anchor	An anchor represents an input or an output of the flowgraph container or of a node. Every anchor has a kind and a signature which define the input or output it represents. For input anchors, the supported kinds are Table, Column, and Scalar. For output anchors, the only supported kind is Table. Anchors of the Column kind are considered to be tables with a single column. Anchors of the Scalar kind are considered to be tables with a single column and a single row. This way, every anchor defines the table type of the input or output it represents.
4	Fixed content anchor	A fixed content anchor is an input anchor for which the fixed content flag is set in the properties. It is displayed in white color (in contrast to the light-blue colored standard anchors). A fixed content anchor cannot be the target of a connection. Instead, there is a table embedded in the flowgraph that is associated to the fixed content anchor. The table is displayed in the <i>Fixed Content</i> tab of the <i>Properties</i> view of the anchor.
5	Anchor region	The flowgraph container and some nodes (for example, the Join node and the Union node) can have a variable number of input and output anchors. This is represented by an anchor region for the corresponding set of anchors. Anchors can be added to or removed from the anchor region. They can also be reordered in the anchor region.
6	Connection	Connections represent the directed flow of data from a source to a target. The source and the target of a connection are anchors. The connection defines a table mapping between the table types defined by its source and target. The source of a connection is either an input anchor of the flowgraph container or an output anchor of a node. The target of a connection is either an output anchor of the flowgraph container or an input anchor of a node. An anchor can be the source of several connections. It can be the target of only one connection. A fixed content anchor cannot be the target of a connection.

Validation

There is a validation decorator in the right bottom corner of the flowgraph container and of each node. This decorator indicates if the complete flowgraph or the respective node is configured correctly. The details of a validation error are displayed by mouse-over on the validation decorator and in the *Problems* view.

➔ Tip

You can open the Problems view by choosing **Window** ➤ **Show View** ➤ **Problems** in the main menu of the HANA Studio.

⚠ Caution

A flowgraph with validation errors will fail to activate.

Annotations

Annotations are nested key-value pairs that can be added to the flowgraph container and to nodes. The AFM uses annotations to store certain properties of the flowgraph such as custom palette information. An AFM user can store arbitrary meta data in the annotations. When the flowgraph is activated, all annotations are exposed in a table with the name extension `.META` in the flowgraph target schema. This way, they can be consumed at runtime.

There are two main reasons for the user of the AFM to create annotations. The first reason is to add comments and documentation to the flowgraph. The second reason is to pass meta data about the flowgraph and its nodes to an application consuming the runtime procedure generated by the activation. In this case the application has to be specifically designed to process the meta data. Although this is a rather specific and uncommon use-case, it is a very versatile approach that utilizes flowgraphs to configure the analytic functionality of an application.

Related Information

[Using the Mapping Editor \[page 483\]](#)

[Using the Annotation Editor \[page 485\]](#)

[Customizing the Node Palette \[page 491\]](#)

6.7.4 Modeling a flowgraph

Model a flowgraph starting with its creation and concluding with the execution of the generated procedure.

Context

The SAP HANA Application Modeler (AFM) supports standard graphical editing operations like move, copy, paste, and delete on the elements of a flowgraph. Detailed properties of these elements are edited in the *Properties* view. After editing and saving a flowgraph, it can be activated by the AFM and the generated procedure can then be executed via the AFM.

If the flowgraph container has input anchors, the procedure has corresponding free inputs. It then cannot be executed directly. In this case, data sources have to be bound to the free inputs in order to execute the runtime object. The AFM provides a wizard for this.

Procedure

1. Create a new flowgraph or open an existing flowgraph in the *Project Explorer* view.
The flowgraph is opened in the *Editing Area* of the AFM.
2. Edit the flowgraph container.
3. Add and edit nodes.
4. Add and edit anchors.
5. Add and edit connections.
The validation decorators in the bottom right corners of the flowgraph container and the nodes indicate whether the flowgraph is valid.

Note

A flowgraph must be valid to be activated.

6. Save the flowgraph. Select  *File*  in the HANA Studio main menu.
7. Activate the flowgraph. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the flowgraph object and choose  *Activate...*  from the context-sensitive menu.

A new procedure is generated in the target schema which is specified in the properties of the flowgraph container.

Note

The generated procedure has inputs that correspond to the input anchors of the flowgraph container. To activate this procedure, these inputs have to be specified.

8. Select the black downward triangle next to the *Execute* button  in the top right corner of the AFM. A context menu appears. It shows the options *Execute in SQL Editor* and *Open in SQL Editor* as well as the option *Execute and Explore* for every output of the flowgraph. In addition, the context menu shows the option *Edit Input Bindings*.
9. (Optional) If the flowgraph has input anchors, choose the option *Edit Input Bindings*.
A wizard appears that allows you to bind all inputs of the flowgraph to data sources in the catalog.
10. Choose one of the options *Execute in SQL Editor*, *Open in SQL Editor*, or *Execute and Explore* for one of the outputs of the flowgraph.
The behavior of the AFM depends on the execution mode.

Table 59:

Execution mode	Behavior
<i>Open in SQL Editor</i>	Opens a SQL console containing the SQL code to execute the runtime object.

Execution mode	Behavior
<i>Execute in SQL Editor</i>	Opens a SQL console containing the SQL code to execute the runtime object and runs this SQL code.
<i>Execute and Explore</i>	Executes the runtime object and opens the <i>Data Explorer</i> view for the chosen output of the flowgraph.

11. Close the flowgraph. Select *File* *Close* in the HANA Studio main menu.

6.7.4.1 Creating a flowgraph

Create a flowgraph development object with the *New Flowgraph Model Wizard*.

Prerequisites

You have created and shared a project.

Procedure

1. In the *Project Explorer* view of the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open an existing project.
2. If the project is not shared, right-click on the project and choose *Team* *Share* *Project* in the context-sensitive menu. In the *Share Project* wizard, choose SAP HANA Repository on the first page and an existing workspace on the second page.
3. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click on the project and choose *New* *Other* in the context-sensitive menu.
The *New* wizard appears.
4. Choose *SAP HANA* *Database Development* *Flowgraph Model* , and then click *Next*.
The *New Flowgraph Model* wizard appears.
5. In the text field *File Name* enter the base name of the new flowgraph.

Note

The system automatically adds the file extension `.hdbflowgraph`.

Note

The remaining steps explain advanced configuration options. In the standard use-case select *Finish* at this point to skip these steps.

6. (Optional) Choose the activation mode of the flowgraph in the *Usage* area.
This choice determines which runtime object is generated on activation of the flowgraph.

i Note

The checkbox *Flowgraph for Activation as Task Plan* is only relevant when the flowgraph uses the additional cost SAP HANA smart data integration and SAP HANA smart data quality optional component.

7. (Optional) Select the *Advanced* button.

The *New Flowgraph Model* wizard expands and reveals the advanced options. This adds the option *Operator Palette Template* to the *Usage* area. It also shows the *Predefined Content* and *Node Palette* areas.

8. (Optional) Select the option *Operator Palette Template* in the *Usage* area.

If you choose this option the *New Flowgraph Model* wizard creates a node template flowgraph. A node template flowgraph has the file extension `.hdbflowgraphtemplate` and models a custom palette. It does not create any runtime object on activation.

9. (Optional) Select the checkbox *Use Flowgraph Template* in the *Predefined Content* area and specify a flowgraph in the text field below.

Instead of creating an empty flowgraph, the new flowgraph will be a copy of the specified flowgraph.

10. (Optional) Select a checkbox in the *Node Palette* area. If you select *Custom*, specify a node palette flowgraph in the text field below.

This specifies the node palette of the new flowgraph.

- *AFM*: the default AFM node palette,
- *Empty*: a custom node palette that contains only the compartments specified in *Additional compartments for Node Palette*,
- *Custom*: a custom *Node Palette* based on the selected node template flowgraph.

i Note

Node palette flowgraphs are nested structures that represent the hierarchy of a node palette. The nesting depth of the node palette flowgraph that represents a node palette is at least two and at most three.

11. (Optional) Select a list of node palette flowgraphs as additional node palette compartments of the new flowgraph.

The selected node palette flowgraphs are added to the end of the node palette of the new flowgraph.

i Note

If a node palette flowgraph represents a node palette compartment, then its nesting depth is at most two.

12. Select *Finish*.

The new flowgraph appears in the *Project Explorer* view and has the extension `.hdbflowgraph` (or `.hdbflowgraphtemplate` if you created a node palette flowgraph). The AFM is opened for editing the new flowgraph.

Related Information

[Node palette flowgraphs \[page 490\]](#)

6.7.4.2 Editing the flowgraph container

Edit the properties of the flowgraph in the *Properties* view of the flowgraph container.

Context

Table 60: Tabs in the Properties view of the flowgraph container.

Tab name	Description	Optional
General	This tab contains the following entries: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Name</i>: name of the flowgraph container,• <i>Display Name</i>; not used,• <i>Description</i>: not used,• <i>Target Schema</i>: schema in which the runtime object is generated during activation (default: _SYS_BIC),• <i>Generator</i>: the type of runtime object to be generated during activation. The option <i>Task</i> is only relevant if the flowgraph uses the additional cost SAP HANA smart data integration and SAP HANA smart data quality optional component,• <i>Realtime Behavior</i>: This option is only relevant when the flowgraph uses the additional cost SAP HANA smart data integration and SAP HANA smart data quality optional component and the chosen <i>Generator</i> option is <i>Task</i>	No
Variables	This tab is relevant only when the flowgraph uses the SAP HANA smart data integration and SAP HANA smart data quality optional component. For more information see the "Adding a Variable to the Container Node" topic in the <i>Configuration Guide for SAP HANA smart data integration and SAP HANA smart data quality</i> .	Yes
Mappings	The <i>Mapping Editor</i> in this tab is used to remove or re-order input and output anchors and their attributes.	Yes
INPUT (I) / OUTPUT (O)	These tabs correspond to the input and output anchors of the flowgraph container. They have the same names as the respective anchors and the same contents as the <i>All</i> tabs in the <i>Properties</i> views of the anchors.	Yes
Annotations	This tab contains the annotations of the flowgraph container.	No
All	This tab is a summary of all tabs in this view except for the input and output anchor tabs.	No

Procedure

1. Select the flowgraph container and open the *Properties* view.
2. In the *General* tab, specify the name of the flowgraph container, as well as the target schema, and the generator of the flowgraph.

i Note

The name of the flowgraph container is initially auto-generated from the name of the flowgraph object in the *Project Explorer* view. This name has to be changed if it does not adhere to the naming rules for the flowgraph elements. Names of flowgraph elements may contain only upper-case letters, underscores, and digits and must be unique in the flowgraph.

i Note

You need to be granted the CREATE ANY, ALTER, DROP, EXECUTE, SELECT, INSERT, and UPDATE privileges to the target schema of the flowgraph.

3. In the *Mappings* tab, use the *Mapping Editor* to remove or reorder input and output anchors and their attributes.
4. In the *Annotations* tab, use the *Annotations Editor* to edit the annotations of the flowgraph container.

Results

The settings made on the flowgraph container determine the type of runtime object generated during activation and the number and signatures of its inputs and outputs.

Related Information

[Flowgraphs \[page 447\]](#)

[Using the Mapping Editor \[page 483\]](#)

[Using the Annotation Editor \[page 485\]](#)

[Customizing the Node Palette \[page 491\]](#)

6.7.4.3 Adding an object from the Project Explorer

Drag and drop an object from the *Project Explorer* view to the *Editing Area*.

Prerequisites

You have opened a flowgraph in a project that has been shared with a HANA system.

Context

Nodes are the functional elements in a flowgraph. There are several types of nodes which represent data sources, data sinks, and operators in the flowgraph.

The following database objects are represented by nodes in a flowgraph.

- Development objects in the project:
 - Flowgraphs with no inputs and one output as Data Source nodes
 - Attribute Views as Data Source nodes
 - Calculation Views as Data Source nodes

Note

Flowgraphs that represent procedures with inputs or with more than one output cannot be directly inserted in other flowgraphs. However, it is possible to add the procedure generated by activating one flowgraph to another flowgraph. This is done via drag and drop from the catalog (see below) or by adding a Procedure node from the [Node Palette](#).

- Runtime objects in the catalog:
 - Tables as Data Source nodes, and as Data Sink nodes
 - Views as Data Source nodes
 - Procedures without scalar parameters and INOUT parameters as Procedure nodes
 - Table Types and Tables as anchors

Tip

You can also drag a Table Type or a Table to an anchor region to create a new anchor.

Procedure

- In the Project Explorer, select an object and drag it to the canvas of the flowgraph container.

If the dragged object is a table, a pop-up dialog lets you choose if this table is used as a data source or a data sink in the flowgraph.

A new node is added to the flowgraph. The type of the node matches the selected object in the Project Explorer. The flowgraph container is re-sized so that the new node is contained in the canvas of the flowgraph container.

Note

You need to be granted SELECT access rights on the schema that contains the object.

Note

In order to activate the flowgraph, database user _SYS_REPO needs to be granted SELECT object privileges for objects that are used as data sources and INSERT object privileges for objects that are used as data sinks.

Caution

The validation of the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler does not recognize when the signature of an input or output of a table or view has changed. In this case the signature of the respective input or output of the added node is inconsistent with that of the object. Consequently, the flowgraph activation fails.

- In the Project Explorer, select a table type or a table and drag it to an anchor region.

A new anchor with the same signature as the table type or the table is added to the anchor region at the position where the object was dropped.

Note

You need to be granted SELECT access rights on the object.

Note

Dragging a table to the anchor region only transfers the signature of the table to the anchor. No reference to the table or its content is stored in the flowgraph. Accordingly, no additional object privileges have to be granted to the database user _SYS_REPO.

Related Information

[Setting up the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler \[page 445\]](#)

[Attribute Views \[page 355\]](#)

[Calculation Views \[page 368\]](#)

6.7.4.4 Adding a node from the Node Palette

Drag a node template from the [Node Palette](#) to the canvas of the flowgraph container in the [Editing Area](#).

Prerequisites

You have opened a flowgraph in a project that has been shared with a HANA system.

Note

The [Node Palette](#) is generated according to the functionality provided by the system. If you work in a project that is not shared with a system or the system is offline, the content of the [Node Palette](#) is restricted to a few basic relational operators. For example, the Data Source node and Data Sink node will be missing the [General](#) tab.

Context

Nodes are the functional elements in a flowgraph. There are several different types of nodes which represent data sources, data sinks, and operators in the flowgraph.

Procedure

In the Node Palette, select the entry you want to add and drag it to the canvas area of the flowgraph container.

Results

A new node is added to the flowgraph. The type of the node matches the selected node template in the [Node Palette](#). The flowgraph container is resized such that the new node is contained in its canvas.

Related Information

[Setting up the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler \[page 445\]](#)

6.7.4.5 Editing a node

Edit the properties of a node.

Context

The nodes in a flowgraph usually need to be configured. Relational nodes need configurations such as join conditions, filter predicates, and attribute sets for projection. Edit the configuration of a node by selecting the node and navigating to its [Properties](#) view. The selection of tabs and the configuration options in the [Properties](#) view depend on the type of node.

Table 61: Tabs in the Properties view of a node

Tab name	Description	Optional
<i>General</i>	<p>This tab always contains the following elements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Name</i>: name of the node (editable), • <i>Display Name</i>: name of the node template entry (read-only), • <i>Description</i>: description of the node template entry (read-only). <p>In addition, this tab contains most configuration options that are specific to the particular node type.</p>	No
<i>Script</i>	This tab is only relevant if an optional additional cost component offers Script node functionality (for example, R Integration).	Yes
<i>Mappings</i>	If the node defines a mapping of its inputs to its outputs or contains an anchor region, this mapping is displayed and can be edited in the <i>Mapping Editor</i> .	Yes
<i>INPUT (I) / OUTPUT (O)</i>	These tabs correspond to the input and output anchors of the node. They have the same names as the respective anchors and the same contents as the <i>All</i> tabs in the <i>Properties</i> views of the anchors.	Yes
<i>Annotations</i>	This tab contains the annotations of the node.	No
<i>All</i>	This tab is a summary of all tabs in this view except for the input and output anchor tabs.	No

Procedure

1. Select a node or add a new node.
2. Select the name of the node.
The name field becomes active for editing.

i Note

The name of a node may contain only upper-case letters, underscores, and digits. It must be unique within the flowgraph.

3. In the *Annotations* tab of the *Properties* view, use the *Annotations Editor* to edit the annotations of the node.
4. Edit the remaining properties of the node in the *Properties* view. In particular, specify the type-specific properties of the node in the *General* tab.

Related Information

[Using the Mapping Editor \[page 483\]](#)

[Using the Annotation Editor \[page 485\]](#)

6.7.4.5.1 Data Source [Application Function Modeler]

Edit nodes that represent data sources.

Prerequisites

You added a Data Source node to the flowgraph.

Procedure

1. Drag the Data Source node onto the canvas.

You can click the magnifying glass icon to preview the existing data in the table or view.

2. In the *Select an Object* dialog, type the name of the object to add, or browse the object tree to select one or more objects, and click *OK*.
3. In the *General* tab of the *Properties* view, use the drop-down menus *Authoring Schema* and *Catalog Object* to specify the data source.

Note

The check-box *Realtime Behavior* is only relevant if the flowgraph uses the additional cost SAP HANA smart data integration and SAP HANA smart data quality optional component and if a task plan is generated.

Tip

You can configure the authoring schema by choosing *Schema Mapping* in the *Quick* view of the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective.

Results

The signature of the output anchor is set automatically.

Note

To activate the flowgraph, the database user _SYS_REPO needs SELECT object privileges for the chosen data source.

Next Steps

If a catalog object specified in a Data Source node changes, you can reconcile the differences between the structure of the catalog object and the structure in the node.

In the flowgraph editor, click the diff button to compare the catalog object with the structure in the Data Source node. Click [Reconcile](#) to update the node with the structure from the catalog object.

i Note

Reconciling the Data Source node updates the flowgraph, but you must still save the flowgraph to make the changes permanent.

Related Information

[Setting up the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler \[page 445\]](#)

6.7.4.5.1.1 Data Source Options [Application Function Modeler]

Description of the options in the Data Source node.

Table 62:

Option	Description
Name	The name for the node.
Display Name	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>The name shown in the Palette pane.</p> <p>i Note This option can only be changed when creating a template. It cannot be changed when using the node outside of a template.</p>
Description	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>(Optional.) Provides a comment about the source. For example, "West Region Sales Q1."</p>
Type	Lists whether the data source is a view or table.

Option	Description
Authoring Schema	Lists the system or folder where the view or table is located.
Catalog Object	Lists the repository where the table or view is located
Realtime Behavior	Select to run in batch or real-time mode.
Partition Type	<p>i Note Web-based Development Workbench only.</p> <p>Choose one of the following:</p> <p>None: does not partition the table</p> <p>Range: divides the table data into sets based on a range of data in a row.</p> <p>List: divides the table into sets based on a list of values in a row.</p>
Attribute	<p>i Note Web-based Development Workbench only.</p> <p>The column name used for the partition.</p>
Partition name	<p>i Note Web-based Development Workbench only.</p> <p>The name for the partition such as "region".</p>
Value	<p>i Note Web-based Development Workbench only.</p> <p>The range or list.</p>

6.7.4.5.2 Data Sink [Application Function Modeler]

Edit nodes that represent data sinks.

Procedure

1. Drag the Data Sink node onto the canvas.
2. In the *Select an Object* dialog, type the name of the object to add, or browse the object tree to select one or more objects, and click *OK*.
3. (Optional) You can click the magnifying glass icon to preview the existing data (if any) in the table. The data will change after the flowgraph runs.

- In the *General* tab of the *Properties* view use the drop-down menus *Authoring Schema* and *Catalog Object* to specify the data sink.

➔ **Tip**

You can configure the authoring schema by choosing *Schema Mapping* in the *Quick* view of the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective.

- Select *Truncate Table* to clear the table before inserting data. Otherwise, all inserted data is appended to the table.
- Optionally, if the node is a Data Sink (Template Table) node, specify in the same tab in the drop-down menu *Data Layout* whether a table with row or column layout is created.
- To optionally create a separate target table that tracks the history of changes, set the *History Table Settings* options.

Results

The signature of the input anchor is set automatically.

i **Note**

To activate the flowgraph, the database user _SYS_REPO needs INSERT and in case of truncation also DELETE object privileges for the chosen data sink.

Related Information

[Setting up the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler \[page 445\]](#)

6.7.4.5.2.1 Data Sink Options [Application Function Modeler]

Description of options for the Data Sink node.

Table 63:

Option	Description
Enter table or view name	<p>i Note</p> <p>AFM only.</p> <p>Enter the name of the table or view.</p>

Option	Description
Matching items	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>Shows matching tables or views are as you begin typing in the previous option.</p>

Table 64:

Option	Description
Name	The name for the output target.
Display Name	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>The name shown in the Palette pane.</p> <p>i Note This option can only be changed when creating a template. It cannot be changed when using the node outside of a template.</p>
Description	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>(Optional.) Provides a comment about the target. For example, "West Region Sales Q1."</p>
Type	Lists whether it is a view or table.
Authoring Schema	Lists the system or folder where the view or table is located.
Catalog Object	Lists the table or view.
Truncate Behavior	<p>Limits the amount of data written to the Data Sink.</p> <p>In the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench, for the <i>Truncate</i> option, select it to clear the table before inserting data. Otherwise, all inserted data is appended to the table.</p>
Writer Type	<p>Choose from the following options:</p> <p>insert: adds new records to a table.</p> <p>upsert: if a record doesn't currently exist, it is inserted into a table. If the record exists, then it is updated.</p> <p>update: includes additional or more current information in an existing record.</p>
Key Generation Attribute	Generates new keys for target data starting from a value based on existing keys in the column you specify.

Option	Description
Sequence Schema	When generating keys, select the schema where the externally created sequence file is located.
Sequence Name	When generating keys, select the externally created sequence to generate the new key values.
Change time column name	Select the target column that will be set to the time that the row was committed. The data type must be TIMESTAMP.
Change type column name	Select the target column that will be set to the row change type. The data type is VARCHAR(1).

6.7.4.5.3 Aggregation

An *Aggregation* node represents a relational group-by and aggregation operation.

Prerequisites

You have added an Aggregation node to the flowgraph.

i Note

The Aggregation node is available for realtime processing.

Procedure

1. Select the Aggregation node.
2. Map the input columns and output columns by dragging them to the output pane. You can add, delete, rename, and reorder the output columns, as needed. To multi-select and delete multiple columns use CTRL/Shift keys, and then click *Delete*.
3. In the *Aggregations* tab, specify the columns that you want to have the aggregate or group-by actions taken upon. Drag the input fields and then select the action from the drop-down list.
4. (Optional) Select the *Having* tab to run a filter on an aggregation function. Enter the expression. To view the options in the expression editor, click *Load Elements & Functions*. You can drag and drop the input and output columns from the *Elements* pane, then drag an aggregation function from the *Functions* pane. Click or type the appropriate operators. For example, if you want to find the transactions that are over \$75,000 based on the average sales in the 1st quarter, your expression might look like this:
`AVG ("Aggregation1_Input"."SALES") > 75000.`

Option	Description
Avg	Calculates the average of a given set of column values.

Option	Description
Count	Returns the number of values in a table column.
Group-by	Use for specifying a list of columns for which you want to combine output. For example, you might want to group sales orders by date to find the total sales ordered on a particular date.
Max	Returns the maximum value from a list.
Min	Returns the minimum value from a list.
Sum	Calculates the sum of a given set of values.

5. (Optional) Select the *Filter Node* tab to compare the column name against a constant value. Click *Load Elements & Functions* to populate the Expression Editor. Enter the expression by dragging the column names, the function, and entering the operators from the pane at the bottom of the node. For example, if you want to the number of sales that are greater than 10000, your expression might look like this:
"Aggregation1_input"."SALES" > 10000. See the "SQL Functions" topic in the *SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference* for more information about each function.
6. Click *Save* to return to the Flowgraph Editor.

Related Information

[Using the Mapping Editor \[page 483\]](#)

6.7.4.5.3.1 Aggregation Options

Description of options for the Aggregation node.

Table 65:

Option	Description
Name	The name of the node.
Display Name	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>The name shown in the Palette pane.</p> <p>i Note This option can only be changed when creating a template. It cannot be changed when using the node outside of a template.</p>

Option	Description
Description	<p>i Note</p> <p>AFM only.</p> <p>(Optional.) Provides a comment about the operation. For example, "Calculate total sales in May."</p>
Column/Attribute	The input column name that you want to use in an Aggregation operation.
Aggregation/Action	<p>Choose one of the following:</p> <p>Avg: calculates the average of a given set of column values.</p> <p>Count: returns the number of values in a table column.</p> <p>Group-by: use for specifying a list of columns for which you want to combine output. For example, you might want to group sales orders by date to find the total sales ordered on a particular date.</p> <p>Max: returns the maximum value from a list.</p> <p>Min: returns the minimum value from a list.</p> <p>Sum: calculates the sum of a given set of values.</p>

6.7.4.5.4 Filter [Application Function Modeler]

A *Filter* node represents a relational selection combined with a projection operation. It also allows calculated attributes to be added to the output.

Prerequisites

You have added a Filter node to the flowgraph.

i Note

The Filter node is available for real-time processing.

Context

Web-based Development Workbench

1. Drag the Filter node onto the canvas, and connect the source data or the previous node to the Filter node.
2. Double-click the Filter node.

3. (Optional) Enter a name for this Filter node in the *Node Name* option.
4. (Optional) Select *Distinct* to output only unique records.
5. (Optional) To copy any columns that are not already mapped to the output target, drag them from the Input pane to the Output pane. You may also remove any output columns by clicking the pencil icon or the trash icon, respectively. You can multi-select the columns that you do not want output by using the CTRL or Shift key, and then Delete.
6. (Optional) Click *Load Elements & Functions* to populate the Expression Editor. Drag input columns into the *Mapping* tab to define the output mapping and perform some sort of calculation. Choose the functions and the operators. For example, you might want to calculate the workdays in a quarter, so you would use the *Workdays_Between* function in an expression like this: `WORKDAYS_BETWEEN(<factory_calendar_id>, <start_date>, <end_date> [, <source_schema>])`. Click *Validate Syntax* to ensure that the expression is valid.
7. Click the *Filter node* tab and then click *Load Elements & Functions* to populate the Expression Editor. You can use the Expression Editor or type an expression to filter the data from the input to the output. Drag the input columns, select a function and the operators. For example, if you want to move all the records that are in Canada, your filter might look like this: `"Filter1_input"."COUNTRY" = "Canada"`. See the "SQL Functions" topic in the *SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference* for more information about each function.
8. Click *Save* to return to the flowgraph.

Application Function Modeler

1. Select the Filter node.
2. Select the *General* tab of the *Properties* view.
3. Select the *Value Help* and use the *Expression Editor* to configure the *Filter Expression*.
4. Add additional attributes for calculated outputs in the *Output* tab.
5. Select the *Mappings* tab. In the *Mapping Editor*, define the output mapping of the node. In addition you can define the calculated attributes by first selecting the attribute in the *Target* list and then selecting *Edit Expression*.

The *Expression Editor* opens to edit the expression that calculates the attribute.

Note

You need to manually set the type of the calculated attribute.

6.

Example

Let's say that you have a single input source, and connected it to a Match node. You selected Most Recent as your survivor rule, so that the output from Match has a *Group_Master* column. Those duplicate records with the most recent *Last_Updated* date are marked with a value of "M". After connecting the Match node to the Filter node, you can use the following expression to output only the master and unique records:

Sample Code

```
("Filter1_Input"."GROUP_ID" is null) OR ("Filter1_Input"."GROUP_ID" is not null and "Filter1_Input"."GROUP_MASTER" = 'M')
```

Prior to the Filter node, some example data might look like the following.

Table 66: Data input to the Filter node

GROUP_ID	RE-VIEW_GROUP	CONFLICT_GROUP	LAST_UP-DATED	ADDRESS	ADDRESS2	GROUP_MASTER
<null>	<null>	<null>	<null>	1411 Broadway	New York 10018	<null>
<null>	<null>	<null>	<null>	3 Fleetwood Dr	Newberg NY 12550	<null>
<null>	<null>	<null>	<null>	300 Cliffside Dr	Atlanta GA 30350	<null>
1	N	C	01/01/16	332 Front St	La Crosse WI 54601	M
1	N	C	03/10/11	332 Front St	La Crosse WI 54601	<null>
1	N	C	07/04/15	332 Front St	La Crosse WI 54601	<null>
<null>	<null>	<null>	<null>	3738 North Fraser Way	Burnaby BC V3N 1E4	<null>

After the Filter node, you can see that two duplicate entries were removed, and only the master record and the other four unique records are output.

Table 67: Data output from the Filter node

GROUP_ID	RE-VIEW_GROUP	CONFLICT_GROUP	LAST_UP-DATED	ADDRESS	LASTLINE	GROUP_MASTER
<null>	<null>	<null>	<null>	1411 broadway	new york 10018	<null>
<null>	<null>	<null>	<null>	3 Fleetwood Dr	Newberg NY 12550	<null>
<null>	<null>	<null>	<null>	300 the cliffsup	atlanta 30350	<null>
1	N	C	01/01/16	332 Front st	La Crosse 54601	M
<null>	<null>	<null>	<null>	3738 NORTH FRASER WAY TH 6203	BURNABY BC	<null>

Related Information

[Using the Mapping Editor \[page 483\]](#)

[Using the Expression Editor \[page 484\]](#)

6.7.4.5.4.1 Filter Options [Application Function Modeler]

Description of options for the Filter node.

Table 68:

Option	Description
Name	The name for the node.
Display Name	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>The name shown in the Palette pane.</p> <p>i Note This option can only be changed when creating a template. It cannot be changed when using the node outside of a template.</p>
Description	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>(Optional.) Provides a comment about the node. For example, "Only European Data."</p>
Distinct	<p>i Note Web-based Development Workbench only.</p> <p>(Optional). Select to output only unique records. The records must match exactly. If you know that you have duplicates, but have a ROW_ID column, or another column that has a unique identifier for each record, then you will want to suppress that column in the Filter node. The Distinct option is not available for CLOB, NCLOB, BLOB, TEXT datatypes</p>
Filter Node	<p>Enter an expression so that only the valid records are output based on the expression criteria. You can enter some SQL statements to set the value of the target column. Any of the SAP HANA SQL functions can be used. See the <i>SAP Hana SQL and System Views Reference</i>.</p> <p>i Note In AFM, you can use the Expression Editor to assist in creating the expression.</p>

6.7.4.5.5 Join [Application Function Modeler]

A Join node represents a relational multi-way join operation.

Prerequisites

You have added a Join node to the flowgraph.

i Note

The Join node is not available for real-time processing.

Context

The Join node can perform multiple step joins on two or more inputs.

Procedure

1. Select the Join node.
2. (Optional) Add additional input anchors.
3. (Optional) Remove any output columns by clicking the pencil icon or the trash icon, respectively. You can multi-select the columns that you do not want output by using the CTRL or Shift key, and then Delete. The Mapping column shows how the column has been mapped with the input source.
4. In the *Properties* view, select the *General* tab to configure the type of the join (inner join, left outer join, or right outer join).
5. In the table defined in the *General* tab, use the *Table Editor* to define the *Left* join partner, the *Join Type*, the *Right* join partner and the *Join Condition* of each join step. In this, only the first entry in the join condition consists of a *Left* join partner and a *Right* join partner. Every subsequent join condition has the previous join tree as *Left* join partner.
The *Expression Editor* opens and lets you specify the *Join Condition*.
6. In the *Mappings* tab, use the *Mapping Editor* to edit the output attributes of the join.

Related Information

[Using the Table Editor \[page 482\]](#)

[Using the Mapping Editor \[page 483\]](#)

[Using the Expression Editor \[page 484\]](#)

6.7.4.5.5.1 Join Options [Application Function Modeler]

Description of options for the Join node.

Table 69:

Option	Description
Name	The name for the node.
Display Name	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>The name shown in the Palette pane.</p> <p>i Note This option can only be changed when creating a template. It cannot be changed when using the node outside of a template.</p>
Description	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>(Optional.) Provides a comment about the node. For example, "Employee_v8 and Employee_v12."</p>
Left	The left source of a join.
Join Type	Choose from one of these options: Inner: use when each record in the two tables has matching records. Left_Outer: output all records in the left table, even when the join condition does not match any records in the right table. Right_Outer: output all records in the right table, even when the join condition does not match any records in the left table.
Right	The right source of a join.
Join Condition	The expression that specifies the criteria of the join condition. <p>i Note In AFM, you can use the Expression Editor to assist in creating the expression.</p>
Add	A join condition is created.
Remove	The highlighted join condition is deleted.

6.7.4.5.6 Sort [Application Function Modeler]

A Sort node represents a relational sort operation.

Prerequisites

You have added a Sort node to the flowgraph.

Context

The Sort node performs a sort by one or more attributes of the input.

i Note

The Sort node is available for real-time processing.

Procedure

1. Select the Sort node.
2. In the *Properties* View, select the *General* tab to configure the sort order.
3. In the *General* tab, use the *Table Editor* to define the *Attributes* and the *Sort Order* by which the input is sorted. It is possible to specify several *Attributes* with descending priority.

Related Information

[Using the Table Editor \[page 482\]](#)

6.7.4.5.6.1 Sort Options [Application Function Modeler]

Description of options for the Sort node.

Table 70:

Option	Description
Name	The name for the node.

Option	Description
Display Name	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>The name shown in the Palette pane.</p>
Description	<p>i Note This option can only be changed when creating a template. It cannot be changed when using the node outside of a template.</p>
Column/Attribute	The column used for sorting.
Sort Type/Sort Order	<p>How to sort the data.</p> <p>Ascending: When sorting numerical data, put the smallest number first. When sorting alphabetically, start with the first letter.</p> <p>Descending: When sorting numerical data, put the largest number first. When sorting alphabetically, start with the last letter.</p>
Add	A row is configured to be used for sorting.
Remove	The highlighted entry is deleted, so that it will not be used in sorting.
Up	The entry is moved up so that it is sorted before any entries below it.
Down	The entry is moved down so that it is sorted after any entries above it.

6.7.4.5.7 Union [Application Function Modeler]

A Union node represents a relational union operation.

Prerequisites

You have created a Union node in the flowgraph.

Context

The union operator forms the union from two or more inputs with the same signature. This operator can either select all values including duplicates (UNION ALL) or only distinct values (UNION).

i Note

The Union node is available for real-time processing.

Procedure

1. Select the Union node.
2. (Optional) Add additional input anchors.
3. In the *General* tab of the *Properties* view define whether the operator is a UNION ALL or a UNION operator by selecting or unselecting the checkbox *Create Union All*.

Related Information

[Adding an anchor \[page 478\]](#)

6.7.4.5.7.1 Union Options [Application Function Modeler]

Description of options for the Union node.

Table 71:

Option	Description
Name	The name for the node.
Display Name	<p>i Note</p> <p>AFM only.</p> <p>The name shown in the Palette pane.</p> <p>i Note</p> <p>This option can only be changed when creating a template. It cannot be changed when using the node outside of a template.</p>

Option	Description
Description	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>(Optional.) Provides a comment about the node. For example, "Combine HR2015 and HR2010."</p>
Create Union All	The option to merge all of the input data (including duplicate entries) into one output, when selected.

6.7.4.5.8 Procedure [Application Function Modeler]

Use procedures from the catalog in the flowgraph.

Context

i Note

The Procedure node is not available for real-time processing.

Procedure

1. Drag the Procedure node onto the canvas.
2. In the *Select an Object* dialog, type the name of the object to add, or browse the object tree to select one or more objects, and click *OK*.
3. Select the Procedure node.
4. The following step applies only if you added the Procedure node from the *Node Palette*.
 - o In SAP HANA studio, in the *General* tab of the *Properties* view, select the drop-down menus for the *Schema* and the *Procedure* that is represented by the node.
 - o In SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench, open the node and select a *Schema Name* and the *Procedure Name* for the node.
5. To activate the flowgraph, the database user _SYS_REPO needs EXECUTE object privileges for all procedures represented by Procedure nodes.

6.7.4.5.8.1 Procedure options [Application Function Modeler]

Description of options for the Procedure node.

Table 72:

Option	Description
Name	The name for the node.
Display Name	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>The name shown in the Palette pane.</p> <p>i Note This option can only be changed when creating a template. It cannot be changed when using the node outside of a template.</p>
Description	<p>i Note AFM only.</p> <p>(Optional.) Provides a comment about the node. For example, "Run schedule."</p>
Schema	The location and definition of the procedure.
Procedure	The stored procedure that you want to run in the flowgraph.

6.7.4.5.9 AFL Function [Application Function Modeler]

Access functions of the Application Function Library.

Prerequisites

You have added an AFL Function node to the flowgraph.

Context

Use this node to model functions of the Application Function Library (AFL) that are registered with the system. AFL functions are grouped by function areas.

i Note

You can retrieve the list of all AFL areas and functions registered in a HANA system by viewing the content of the views “SYS”.”AFL_AREAS” and “SYS”.”AFL_FUNCTIONS”.

Many AFL areas are optional components for HANA. For some of these optional components the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler (AFM) provides preconfigured node templates. In this case, the AFM automatically displays a separate compartment for this area in the *Node Palette*.

i Note

You can refresh the *Node Palette* by choosing *Refresh* in its context-sensitive menu.

i Note

The AFL Function node is not available for real-time processing.

Procedure

1. Select the AFL Function node.
2. In the *General* tab in the *Properties* view, select the drop-down menus for *Area* and the *Function*.
The AFM changes the inputs and outputs of the node according to the existing meta-data for the function on the server.

i Note

For some AFL areas there exists a preconfigured *Node Palette* compartment. You cannot change the *Area* or the *Function* of a node added from one of these compartments.

3. If applicable, change the *Category* of the function.
4. Specify the inputs and the outputs of the function by editing the signature and the fixed content of its anchors.

i Note

For some AFL areas there exists a preconfigured node template for this function. In this case, the fixed content of the inputs that define parameters is preconfigured.

Related Information

[Using the Table Editor \[page 482\]](#)

[SAP HANA Business Function Library \(BFL\)](#)

[SAP HANA Predictive Analysis Library \(PAL\)](#)

6.7.4.6 Adding an anchor

Add an anchor to an anchor region of the flowgraph container or a node.

Context

The flowgraph container and some nodes (for example, the Join node and the Union node) can have a variable number of input or output anchors. In the flowgraph, this is represented by the existence of an anchor region for the corresponding set of anchors. New anchors can be added to the anchor region.

Procedure

1. Right-click on the anchor region at the position you want to add the new anchor.
2. In the context-sensitive menu, choose *Add Input* or *Add Output* (depending on whether you selected an anchor region for inputs or outputs).

Results

A new anchor with an empty signature is added to the anchor region at the mouse pointer position where the context menu is opened.

i Note

Instead of adding an anchor via the context-sensitive menu, you can also copy an existing anchor to an anchor region. This has the advantage that the new anchor has a fully defined signature.

i Note

Alternatively, you can add a new anchor while creating a connection. In this case the new anchor inherits the signature from the source anchor of the connection.

i Note

A third option to add an anchor with a predefined signature is by dragging a table or a table type from the catalog to the anchor region.

i Note

You can also delete an anchor that you added to an anchor region. Some anchor regions have a minimum number of anchors (for example, the anchor regions for the inputs of the Join node and the Union node each have to contain at least two anchors). In this case, if the anchor region contains the minimum number of anchors, then no anchor in the anchor can be deleted.

Related Information

[Adding an object from the Project Explorer \[page 454\]](#)

[Editing the flowgraph container \[page 453\]](#)

[Join \[Application Function Modeler\] \[page 470\]](#)

[Union \[Application Function Modeler\] \[page 473\]](#)

6.7.4.7 Editing an anchor

Change and define input and output table types.

Context

Anchors define inputs and outputs to the flowgraph container and to nodes.

Table 73: Tabs in the Properties view of an anchor.

Tab name	Description	Optional
General	This tab contains the following entries: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Name</i>: name of the anchor• <i>Kind</i>: kind of the anchor (Table, Column, Scalar).	No
Signature	In this tab, you can use the <i>Table Editor</i> to change the signature of the anchor. Anchors of the kind Scalar or Column are considered to be tables with one column.	No
Fixed Content	This tab exists only for input anchors. While the checkbox <i>Fixed Content</i> is selected, the anchor cannot be the target of a connection. Instead, a table providing the input is stored in the flowgraph with the anchor. The table can be edited using the Table Editor in this tab.	Yes
All	This tab is a summary the other tabs.	No

i Note

Most anchors have a fixed kind that cannot be changed. Currently, the anchor kinds "Column" and "Scalar" are only supported for input anchors of AFL Function nodes.

i Note

Many anchors either have a fixed signature or obtain their signature via an automatic table mapping.

Procedure

1. Select the anchor.
2. Select the name of the anchor and edit it in the direct editing area.
The name field becomes active for editing.

i Note

The name of an anchor must consist of upper-case letters, underscores, and digits. It must be unique in the flowgraph.

3. Use the *Table Editor* to edit the signature of the anchor in the *Signature* tab of the *Properties* view.
4. Select the *Fixed Content* tab in the *Properties* view.
5. If you want to embed the content of the anchor with the flowgraph, select the checkbox *Fixed Content*.
If the checkbox *Fixed Content* is selected, the embedded table is shown in the *Fixed Content* tab. Use the *Table Editor* to edit the table.

i Note

For some areas of the Application Function Library the SAP HANA application function modeler provides template AFL Function nodes in separate compartments of the *Node Palette*. These template nodes are preconfigured with fixed signature tables if the respective input is a design-time parameter of the node.

Related Information

[Flowgraphs \[page 447\]](#)

[Using the Table Editor \[page 482\]](#)

[Using the Mapping Editor \[page 483\]](#)

6.7.4.8 Creating a connection

Create a new connection between two nodes or a node and the flowgraph container.

Context

A connection represents the directed flow of data from a source to a target. The source and the target of a connection are anchors. The connection defines a table mapping between these table types defined by its source and target. The source of a connection is either an input anchor of the flowgraph container or an output anchor of a node. The target of a connection is either an output anchor of the flowgraph container or an input anchor of a node. An anchor can be the source of several connections. It can only be the target of one connection. A fixed content anchor cannot be the target of any connection.

Procedure

1. Select without releasing the *Connect* button  in the context button pad of the source anchor of the connection.
2. Drag a connection to the target anchor.

Note

Depending on the node of the target anchor, the *Create Input Table Mapping* wizard may open. This wizard helps you to choose the right mapping for the connection. You can still change this mapping in the *Mapping Editor* after completing the wizard. To open the wizard again, you have to remove the connection and create it again.

Results

A new connection between the source anchor and the target anchor is created. If possible, the signature of the source anchor is copied to the target anchor and propagated forward through the flowgraph.

Note

You can also add a new anchor to an anchor region and create a connection to this anchor in a single action. Instead of dragging the connection to an anchor, drag it to a free position in an anchor region. A new target anchor with the same signature as the source anchor is added before the connection is created.

Related Information

[Adding an anchor \[page 478\]](#)

6.7.4.9 Editing a connection

Edit the mapping represented by a connection.

Prerequisites

You have created a connection.

Context

A connection represents a mapping between the table types defined by the source anchor and the target anchor. The SAP HANA application function modeler tries to auto-generate a suitable mapping depending on the types of nodes connected by the mapping. The mapping can also be configured manually using the [Mapping Editor](#).

Table 74: Tabs in the Properties view of a connection.

Tab name	Description	Optional
Mappings	This tab displays the mapping represented by the connection in the Mapping Editor .	No

Procedure

Select the connection and use the [Mapping Editor](#) in the [Mappings](#) tab of the [Properties](#) view to edit the mapping defined by the connection.

Related Information

[Flowgraphs \[page 447\]](#)

[Using the Mapping Editor \[page 483\]](#)

[Editing an anchor \[page 479\]](#)

6.7.4.10 Using the Table Editor

Edit embedded tables like anchor signatures and fixed content tables.

Context

Embedded tables appear in various flowgraph elements. For example, anchors have signature tables and may have fixed content tables. Specialized nodes may have tables in the [General](#) tab of the [Properties](#) view. The SAP HANA Application Function Modeler provides a [Table Editor](#) to edit these tables.

Procedure

- Add, remove, and re-order rows of the embedded table by selecting the respective operations on the right side of the [Table Editor](#).

- Edit an entry in the table by double-clicking the respective cell.

Related Information

[Flowgraphs \[page 447\]](#)

[Editing an anchor \[page 479\]](#)

6.7.4.11 Using the Mapping Editor

Edit the mappings between table types in the *Mappings* tab of the *Properties* view of a flowgraph element.

Prerequisites

You have selected the *Mappings* tab of the *Properties* view of a flowgraph element.

Context

A mapping is a projection between table types. The *Mapping Editor* allows you to edit mappings between a number of source and target table types. The left side of the editor shows the source table types, the right side shows the target table types. A binding of two attributes is indicated by a line between them.

i Note

The mapping editor is used to define the mappings of connections and possible projections within nodes (for example, the Filter node, the Join Node, and the Union Node). It is also used to edit the inputs and outputs of the flowgraph container and of nodes which do not define a projection. In this case, no lines are drawn between the attributes.

i Note

Not all flowgraph elements allow free editing of all their mappings and table types. In this case the functionality of the *Mapping Editor* is restricted to the permitted editing operations.

Procedure

- (Optional) To remove a table type, select it and press the minus sign on the right side of the *Mapping Editor*.

- To re-order the source or target table types, click on a table type and use the up/down arrows on the right side of the *Mapping Editor*.
- (Optional) To remove an attribute, select it and press the minus sign on the right side of the *Mapping Editor*.
- (Optional) To re-order the source or target attributes, click on an attribute and use the up/down arrows on the right side of the *Mapping Editor*.
- (Optional) To add an attribute from the source type to the target type, drag the source attribute and drop it on the root of the target tree.
The attribute is appended at the end of the target attribute list. If the *Mapping Editor* defines a mapping, it is connected by a line with the source attribute indicating an attribute binding.
- (Optional, only available if the *Mapping Editor* defines a mapping) To re-assign a source attribute to a target attribute that is already assigned, drag the source attribute to the target attribute.
The old binding is replaced by the new one.

Related Information

[Flowgraphs \[page 447\]](#)

[Editing the flowgraph container \[page 453\]](#)

[Editing a node \[page 457\]](#)

[Editing a connection \[page 481\]](#)

6.7.4.12 Using the Expression Editor

Compose expressions for filters, join conditions, and calculated attributes.

Context

The *Expression Editor* allows you to compose SQL expressions based on table type attributes and functions. It consists of an *Function Palette* on the top, an *Attribute Palette* on the left and a *Text Field* on the right.

i Note

The expression validation is disabled in the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler.

Procedure

- Type the expression in the *Text Field*.

i Note

Press CTRL + Space bar for auto-completion.

- Select operators and functions in the [Function Palette](#) to add them to the [Text Field](#).
- Drag attributes from the [Attribute Palette](#) to the [Text Field](#).

Related Information

[Aggregation \[page 464\]](#)

[Filter \[Application Function Modeler\] \[page 466\]](#)

[Join \[Application Function Modeler\] \[page 470\]](#)

6.7.4.13 Using the Annotation Editor

Add arbitrary annotations to the flowgraph container or a node.

Context

The flowgraph container and all nodes have an [Annotation](#) tab in their [Properties](#) view. Annotations are nested key-value pairs. The SAP HANA Application Function Modeler (AFM) provides an [Annotation Editor](#) to edit existing annotations like the `sap.afm.palette` annotation or to add your own annotations.

i Note

When the flowgraph is activated, all annotations are exposed in a table with the name extension `.META` in the flowgraph target schema. This way, they can be consumed at runtime.

i Note

For some nodes, the annotations `sap.afm.displayName` and `sap.afm.description` are visible in the [Annotation Editor](#). These annotations are for internal use of the AFM and not supposed to be modified.

Procedure

- Add, remove, and re-order annotations by selecting the respective operations on the right side of the [Annotation Editor](#).
- Edit the Key and the Value of an annotation by double-clicking the respective cell.
- Add nested annotations by first selecting an annotation row and then the [Add Child](#) operation on the right side of the [Annotation Editor](#).

- A nested annotation appears below the selected annotation.
- Collapse and expand nested annotations by selecting the triangle to the left of an annotation key.

Related Information

[Flowgraphs \[page 447\]](#)

[Customizing the Node Palette \[page 491\]](#)

6.7.5 Tutorial: Creating a Runtime Procedure using Application Function Modeler (AFM)

At the end of this tutorial, you will have created and tested a runtime procedure with the AFM

Prerequisites

- You have access to a running SAP HANA development system.
- You have a valid user account in the SAP HANA database on that system.
- Your user has been granted the MODELING role.
- Your user has been granted the EXECUTE privilege for the object SYS.REPOSITORY_REST.
- Your user has been granted the following repository package privileges:
 - repo.read
 - repo.activate_native_objects
 - repo.edit_native_objects
 - repo.maintain_native_packages
- The system user _SYS_REPO has SELECT and ALTER privileges on the schema of your user.
- You have access to SAP HANA Studio and opened the [SAP HANA Development](#) perspective.
- You have created a system in the [System](#) view in the and logged on to this system with your user.
- You have created a repository workspace for the system.
- You have created a project in the [Project Explorer](#) view and shared it with the system via the workspace.

➔ Tip

To share a project, right-click on the project and choose  [Team](#) > [Share](#) > [Project](#) in the context-sensitive menu. In the [Share Project](#) wizard, choose [SAP HANA Repository](#) on the first page and choose your repository workspace on the second page.

Context

This tutorial leads you through the most common steps of using the SAP HANA Application Function Modeler (AFM). At the end of this tutorial, you will have created and tested a runtime procedure with the AFM.

Procedure

1. Open the SQL console of the system and create the table type WEATHER and the two tables NORTH and SOUTH in your user's schema by executing the following script.

```
CREATE TYPE "WEATHER" AS TABLE ("REGION" VARCHAR(50), "SEASON" VARCHAR(50),
"TEMPERATURE" INTEGER);
CREATE COLUMN TABLE "NORTH" LIKE "WEATHER";
INSERT INTO "NORTH" VALUES ('North', 'Spring', 10);
INSERT INTO "NORTH" VALUES ('North', 'Summer', 23);
INSERT INTO "NORTH" VALUES ('North', 'Autumn', 12);
INSERT INTO "NORTH" VALUES ('North', 'Winter', 2);
CREATE COLUMN TABLE "SOUTH" LIKE "WEATHER";
INSERT INTO "SOUTH" VALUES ('South', 'Spring', 18);
INSERT INTO "SOUTH" VALUES ('South', 'Summer', 34);
INSERT INTO "SOUTH" VALUES ('South', 'Autumn', 23);
INSERT INTO "SOUTH" VALUES ('South', 'Winter', 12);
```

After refreshing the catalog, the table type WEATHER with the three attributes REGION, SEASON, and TEMPERATURE appears in the directory of your user's schema. The two tables NORTH and SOUTH with the same signature appear in the directory your user's schema.

Table 75: NORTH

REGION	SEASON	TEMPERATURE
North	Spring	10
North	Summer	23
North	Autumn	12
North	Winter	2

Table 76: SOUTH

REGION	SEASON	TEMPERATURE
South	Spring	18
South	Summer	34
South	Autumn	23
South	Winter	12

2. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click on the existing project and choose in the context-sensitive menu.
The *New* wizard appears.
3. Choose , and then click *Next*.
The *New Flowgraph Model* wizard appears.

4. In the text field *File Name* enter avg_temp as name of the new flowgraph and select *Finish*.
The system automatically adds the file extension .hdbflowgraph. The AFM opens and in the *Editing Area* the empty flowgraph container is displayed.
5. Select the flowgraph container and enter the schema of your user to the *Target Schema* field in the *Properties* view.
6. Add the table NORTH from the *Node Palette* to the flowgraph. For this, drag the Data Source entry from the *General* tab of the *Node Palette* (located on the right side of the AFM) to the flowgraph (choose any free space inside the canvas of the flowgraph container). Choose the table NORTH from the schema of your user in the dialog that appears.
The node NORTH is added to the flowgraph.
7. Add the table SOUTH from the catalog to the flowgraph. For this, navigate in the catalog to the directory *Tables* in your schema (either in the *Project Explorer* view or in the *Systems* view). Drag the table SOUTH from the catalog to the flowgraph (place it below the NORTH node). Choose *Data Source* in the dialog that appears.
The node SOUTH is added to the flowgraph.
8. Add a Union node to the flowgraph. For this, drag the Union entry from the *General* tab of the *Node Palette* to the flowgraph (place it right of the other two nodes).
The node UNION is added to the flowgraph.
9. Create a connection between the DATA anchor of the NORTH node and the INPUT1 anchor of the UNION node. Click the *Connect* button  in the context button pad of the DATA anchor and drag a connection to the INPUT1 anchor.
A connection between the NORTH node and the UNION node is created.
10. Create a second connection between the DATA_2 anchor of the SOUTH node and the INPUT2 anchor of the UNION node.
A connection between the SOUTH node and the UNION node is created.
11. Create a connection between the OUTPUT anchor of the UNION node and the output anchor region of the flowgraph container (the light-blue area at its right boundary).
The output anchor OUTPUT_2 is added to the output anchor region of the flowgraph container and a connection between the UNION node and the new anchor is created.
12. Save the flowgraph. Select  *File*  in the HANA Studio main menu.
13. Activate the flowgraph. For this, right-click the flowgraph object in the *Project Explorer* view and choose  *Team*  from the context-sensitive menu.
A new procedure is generated in the schema of your user.

Caution

If the system user _SYS_REPO does not have SELECT and ALTER privileges then the activation fails.

14. Execute the generated procedure. For this, select the *Execute* button  in the top right corner of the AFM. The *Data Preview* view opens. It contains a tab with the SQL command that calls the generated procedure (with no input and one output) and a tab with the result of the procedure. This result is the union of the tables NORTH and SOUTH.
15. Return to the *AFM* view for the avg_temp flowgraph.
16. Add an Aggregation node from the *GeneralNode Palette* to the flowgraph (place it right of the UNION node).
17. The node AGGREGATION is added to the flowgraph.

18. Connect the OUTPUT anchor of the UNION node with the INPUT anchor of the AGGREGATION node.
compartment of the
The *Mapping Editor* for the connection is shown in the *Properties* view.
19. In the *Target* area of the *Mapping Editor* for the new connection, select the attribute SEASON of the target INPUT. Remove this attribute by clicking the *Remove* button on the right side of the *Mapping Editor*.
The attribute SEASON and the corresponding mapping are deleted.
20. Select the AGGRAGATION node. In the *General* tab of its *Properties* view double-click the action of the attribute TEMPERATURE and change it to the value AVG.
21. Create a connection between the OUTPUT_3 anchor of the AGGREGATION node and the output anchor region of the flowgraph container.
The output anchor OUTPUT_4 is added to the output anchor region of the flowgraph container and a connection between the AGGREGATION node and the new anchor is created.
22. Save and activate the flowgraph. Execute the generated procedure.
The *Data Preview* view opens again. It contains a tab with the SQL command that calls the generated procedure (with no input and two outputs) and two tabs with the results of the procedure. One result is still the union of the tables NORTH and SOUTH. The other result shows in two rows the average temperatures for the regions North and South.
23. Return to the *AFM* view for the avg_temp flowgraph.
24. Delete the OUTPUT_2 anchor of the flowgraph container by choosing *Delete* in its context menu (or the respective button in the context button pad).
25. Save and activate the flowgraph. Execute the generated procedure.
The *Data Preview* view opens again. It contains a tab with the SQL command that calls the generated procedure (with no input and one output) and a second result tab that again shows in two rows the average temperatures for the regions North and South.
26. Return to the *AFM* view for the avg_temp flowgraph.
27. Delete the SOUTH node from the flowgraph.
The SOUTH node and its connection to the UNION node is deleted.
28. Create an additional input anchor for the flowgraph by adding the table type WEATHER from the catalog.
For this, navigate to the directory in the catalog and drag the entry WEATHER to the input anchor region of the flowgraph container.
The input anchor DATA_2 is added to the flowgraph.
29. Create a connection between the new DATA_2 anchor and the INPUT_2 anchor of the UNION node.
A new connection between the DATA_2 anchor and the UNION node is created.
30. Save and activate the flowgraph. Execute the generated procedure.
A dialog appears where you can choose the free input DATA_2. Enter the table SOUTH in your user's schema to the Catalog Object field. The *Data Preview* view opens. Again, it contains a tab with the SQL command that calls the generated procedure (with one input and one output) and a second result tab that shows in two rows the average temperatures for the regions North and South.
31. Close the flowgraph. Select in the HANA Studio main menu.

Results

You have created a stored procedure that has one input table of the table type WEATHER and one output table that is produced by first forming the union of the table NORTH with the input table and then calculating the

average temperature of each season. This procedure can now be used in any application that consumes stored procedures.

Related Information

[Modeling a flowgraph \[page 449\]](#)

[Tutorial: Add an SAP HANA System \[page 49\]](#)

6.7.6 Node palette flowgraphs

A node palette flowgraph represents a node palette or a node palette compartment.

The [Node Palette](#) of the SAP HANA application function modeler is customizable. A custom node palette is represented by a node palette flowgraph. These flowgraphs have the file extension `.hdbflowgraphtemplate` in the [Project Explorer](#) view.

A node palette flowgraph contains Palette Container and template nodes. These represent the compartments or sub-compartments and the node templates of the corresponding node palette. The Palette Container nodes and template nodes have a nested structure. This structure represents the hierarchy of the corresponding node palette. Moreover, all nodes in a node palette flowgraph are aligned on a horizontal line. Their order (from left to right) represents the order of the node palette entries (from top to bottom).

The [Node Palette](#) hierarchy can have up to three levels.

1. The first level contains the compartments (for example, the [General](#) compartment of the application function modeler [Node Palette](#)). Nodes are not permitted on this level.
2. The second level contains nodes (for example, the Filter node) and sub-compartments.
3. The third level contains only nodes.

A node palette flowgraph represents either a complete node palette or a compartment of the node palette. In the first case, the nesting depth of the node palette flowgraph is at least two and at most three, in the second case, the nesting depth is at most two.

Each flowgraph can be assigned its own custom node palette. This is specified either on creation of the flowgraph or in the [Annotations](#) tab of the [Properties](#) view of the flowgraph container.

Related Information

[Flowgraphs \[page 447\]](#)

[Creating a flowgraph \[page 451\]](#)

[Editing the flowgraph container \[page 453\]](#)

6.7.6.1 Exporting the Node Palette

Export the *Node Palette* as a node template flowgraph.

Procedure

1. Right-click the *Node Palette* and choose *Export entire palette* from the context-sensitive menu. The *Save As* wizard appears.
2. Navigate to the directory of your project and save the node template flowgraph file with the extension `.hdbflowgraphtemplate` in this project.
Refresh the *Project Explorer* view, and then the node template flowgraph is available in your project.

i Note

The standard location of HANA projects on your local system is the directory `hana_work` in the home directory of your local user. There you find a sub-directory corresponding to the system shared with your project. The directory of the project is then located in the sub-directory `__empty__`.

6.7.6.2 Customizing the Node Palette

Customize the node palette of a flowgraph by adding a reference to a node palette flowgraph to the annotations of its flowgraph container.

Context

A flowgraph can be assigned a custom node palette. This can be done in three ways.

- Add additional compartments to the existing AFM node palette.
- Add additional compartments to an empty node palette.
- Add additional compartments to a custom node palette.

i Note

The recommended way to customize the node palette of a flowgraph is via the *New Flowgraph Wizard* during the creation of the flowgraph. The following procedure of directly editing the annotations of the flowgraph container is only advised if you actually need to change the node palette of an existing flowgraph.

Procedure

1. Open the *Annotations* tab in the *Properties* view of the flowgraph container of a flowgraph.
2. If the annotation does not exist, add the annotation with the key `sap.afm.palette`.
3. (Optional) Insert the name of a node palette flowgraph (with the extension `.hdbflowgraphtemplate`) to the *Value* of this annotation. This replaces the default AFM node palette with the custom node palette defined by the specified node palette flowgraph.
4. If the nested annotation with the key `isDefaultUsed` does not exist, add it as a child to the annotation `sap.afm.palette`.
The *Value* of this annotation determined if the default AFM node palette is shown.
5. If the nested annotation with the key `additions` does not exist, add it as a child to the annotation `sap.afm.palette`.
6. (Optional) Insert a comma-separated list of names of node palette flowgraphs (with the extension `.hdbflowgraphtemplate`) to the *Value* of this annotation. This adds the compartments defined by the specified node palette flowgraph to the node palette of the flowgraph.

Related Information

[Creating a flowgraph \[page 451\]](#)

6.7.6.3 Editing a node palette flowgraph

Edit a node palette flowgraph to model a custom node palette.

Prerequisites

You have exported the *Node Palette* of the SAP HANA application function modeler to a node palette flowgraph `Template.hdbflowgraphtemplate`.

In addition, you have created a new (standard) flowgraph `Custom.hdbflowgraph` with the advanced option of choosing the node palette flowgraph `Template.hdbflowgraphtemplate` as the Custom Node Palette.

Context

A node palette flowgraph represents a custom node palette for the application function modeler. Node palette flowgraphs can be edited with the application function modeler like standard flowgraphs. The behavior of the application function modeler when editing node palette flowgraphs differs in two aspects from the editing of standard flowgraphs.

1. All nodes in the node palette flowgraph are automatically aligned on a horizontal line. By this, the order of the nodes (left to right) represents the order of the custom node palette entries (top to bottom).
2. The node palette flowgraph contains nested Palette Container nodes. These nodes represent the hierarchical structure of the custom node palette. These nodes look and behave similar to the flowgraph container.

In the following step by step tutorial, we use the application function modeler to customize the node palette of the Custom flowgraph by editing the Template node palette flowgraph. We cover only those aspects of modeling node palette flowgraphs that differ from modeling standard flowgraphs.

Procedure

1. Open the Custom flowgraph with the application function modeler.
The application function modeler displays the empty Custom flowgraph with a custom node palette defined by the Template node palette flowgraph. At this point, this is still the default application function modeler node palette.
2. Open the Template node palette flowgraph with the application function modeler.
The Template node palette flowgraph is displayed in a separate tab. The flowgraph container contains Palette Container nodes representing the top compartments of the node palette for the Custom flowgraph.

i Note

A node palette flowgraph contains no connections. Therefore the flowgraph container has no anchor regions. Creating connections is disabled when editing node palette flowgraphs.

3. Right-click the GENERAL node and choose *Collapse/Expand* in the context-sensitive menu.
The GENERAL node expands. It contains the template nodes of the General compartment of the application function modeler node palette.
4. Drag the JOIN node to a position between the SORT node and the UNION node.
The auto-layout function of the application function modeler rearranges the nodes such that the JOIN node and the SORT node have effectively swapped positions.
5. Switch to the editing tab of the Custom flowgraph. Refresh the custom *Node Palette* by right-clicking the *Node Palette* and choosing *Refresh* in the context-sensitive menu.
The Join node template and the Sort node template have swapped places in the General compartment of the *Node Palette*.
6. Switch to the editing tab of the Template node palette flowgraph. Add a Palette Container node to the GENERAL node by dragging the corresponding node template from the *General* compartment of the *Node Palette* to the canvas of the GENERAL node.
A nested Palette Container node named COMPARTMENT is added to the GENERAL node.
7. Add an object from the *Project Explorer* view to the canvas of the COMPARTMENT node.
8. Switch to the editing tab of the Custom flowgraph. Refresh the custom *Node Palette*.

The sub-compartment *Palette Container* is added to the *General* compartment of the custom *Node Palette*. It contains the node template for the object from the *Project Explorer* view added to the *COMPARTMENT* node in the previous step.

9. Switch to the editing tab of the Template node palette flowgraph. Add a Filter node from the *Node Palette* to the *COMPARTMENT* node. Edit the Display Name and the Description in the *General* tab of the *Properties* view of the Filter node. In addition, edit the signatures of the input and the output of the Filter node and define a filter expression.
10. Switch to the editing tab of the Custom flowgraph. Refresh the custom *Node Palette*.
A new node template with the chosen display name and description (tool-tip) was added to the *Palette Container* sub-compartment.
11. Add node template of the new filter node from the custom *Node Palette* to the Custom flowgraph.
The added Filter node has received the modified input and output signatures and the filter expression of the Filter node in the Template node palette flowgraph.
12. Switch to the editing tab of the Template node palette flowgraph. Move the *COMPARTMENT* node from the canvas of the *GENERAL* node to the canvas of the flowgraph container.
13. Switch to the editing tab of the Custom flowgraph. Refresh the custom *Node Palette*.
The previous *Palette Container* sub-compartment in the *General* compartment is now a new top level compartment of the *Node Palette*.

Related Information

[Modeling a flowgraph \[page 449\]](#)

7 Defining Web-based Data Access

SAP HANA extended application services (SAP HANA XS) provide applications and application developers with access to the SAP HANA database using a consumption model that is exposed via HTTP.

In addition to providing application-specific consumption models, SAP HANA XS also host system services that are part of the SAP HANA database, for example: search services and a built-in Web server that provides access to static content stored in the SAP HANA repository.

The consumption model provided by SAP HANA XS focuses on server-side applications written in JavaScript and making use of a powerful set of specially developed API functions. However, you can use other methods to provide access to the data you want to expose in SAP HANA. For example, you can set up an ODATA service.

7.1 Data Access with OData in SAP HANA XS

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), the persistence model (for example, tables, views, and stored procedures) is mapped to the consumption model that is exposed to clients - the applications you write to extract data from the SAP HANA database.

You can map the persistence and consumption models with the Open Data Protocol (OData), a resource-based Web protocol for querying and updating data. An OData application running in SAP HANA XS is used to provide the consumption model for client applications exchanging OData queries with the SAP HANA database.

i Note

SAP HANA XS currently supports OData version 2.0, which you can use to send OData queries (for example, using the HTTP GET method). Language encoding is restricted to UTF-8.

You can use OData to enable clients to consume authorized data stored in the SAP HANA database. OData defines operations on resources using RESTful HTTP commands (for example, GET, PUT, POST, and DELETE) and specifies the URI syntax for identifying the resources. Data is transferred over HTTP using either the Atom (XML) or the JSON (JavaScript) format.

i Note

For modification operations, for example, CREATE, UPDATE, and DELETE, SAP HANA XS supports only the JSON format ("content-type: application/json").

Applications running in SAP HANA XS enable accurate control of the flow of data between the presentational layer, for example, in the Browser, and the data-processing layer in SAP HANA itself, where the calculations are performed, for example, in SQL or SQLScript. If you develop and deploy an OData service running in SAP HANA XS, you can take advantage of the embedded access to SAP HANA that SAP HANA XS provides; the embedded access greatly improves end-to-end performance.

7.1.1 OData in SAP HANA XS

OData is a resource-based web protocol for querying and updating data. OData defines operations on resources using HTTP commands (for example, GET, PUT, POST, and DELETE) and specifies the uniform resource indicator (URI) syntax to use to identify the resources.

Data is transferred over HTTP using the Atom or JSON format:

i Note

OData makes it easier for SAP, for partners, and for customers to build standards-based applications for many different devices and on various platforms, for example, applications that are based on a lightweight consumption of SAP and non-SAP business application data.

The main aim of OData is to define an abstract data model and a protocol which, combined, enable any client to access data exposed by any data source. Clients might include Web browsers, mobile devices, business-intelligence tools, and custom applications (for example, written in programming languages such as PHP or Java); data sources can include databases, content-management systems, the Cloud, or custom applications (for example, written in Java).

The OData approach to data exchange involves the following elements:

- **OData data model**

Provides a generic way to organize and describe data. OData uses the Entity 1 Data Model (EDM).

- **OData protocol**

Enables a client to query an OData service. The OData protocol is a set of interactions, which includes the usual REST-based create, read, update, and delete operations along with an OData-defined query language. The OData service sends data in either of the following ways:

- XML-based format defined by Atom/AtomPub
- JavaScript Object Notation (JSON)

- **OData client libraries**

Enables access to data via the OData protocol. Since most OData clients are applications, pre-built libraries for making OData requests and getting results reduces and simplifies work for the developers who create those applications.

A broad selection of OData client libraries are already widely available, for example: Android, Java, JavaScript, PHP, Ruby, and the best known mobile platforms.

- **OData services**

Exposes an end point that allows access to data in the SAP HANA database. The OData service implements the OData protocol (using the OData Data Services runtime) and uses the Data Access layer to map data between its underlying form (database tables, spreadsheet lists, and so on) and a format that the requesting client can understand.

7.1.2 Define the Data an OData Service Exposes

An OData service exposes data stored in database tables or views as OData collections for analysis and display by client applications. However, first of all, you need to ensure that the tables and views to expose as an OData collection actually exist.

Context

To define the data to expose using an OData service, you must perform at least the following tasks:

Procedure

1. Create a database schema.
2. Create a simple database table to expose with an OData service.
3. Create a simple database view to expose with an OData service.

This step is optional; you can expose tables directly. In addition, you can create a modeling view, for example, analytic, attribute, or calculation.

4. Grant select privileges to the tables and views to be exposed with the OData service.

After activation in the repository, schema and tables objects are only visible in the catalog to the _SYS_REPO user. To enable other users, for example the schema owner, to view the newly created schema in the SAP HANA studio's *Modeler* perspective, you must grant the user the required SELECT privilege.

```
call
  _SYS_REPO.GRANT_SCHEMA_PRIVILEGE_ON_ACTIVATED_CONTENT('select','<SCHEMANAME>',
  '<username>');
```

7.1.3 OData Service Definitions

The OData service definition is the mechanism you use to define what data to expose with OData, how, and to whom. Data exposed as an OData collection is available for analysis and display by client applications, for example, a browser that uses functions provided by an OData client library running on the client system.

To expose information by means of OData to applications using SAP HANA XS, you must define database views that provide the data with the required granularity. Then you create an OData service definition, which is a file you use to specify which database views or tables are exposed as OData collections.

i Note

SAP HANA XS supports OData version 2.0, which you can use to send OData queries (for example, using the HTTP GET method). Language encoding is restricted to UTF-8.

An OData service for SAP HANA XS is defined in a text file with the file suffix `.xsodata`, for example, `OdataSrvDef.xsodata`. The file must contain at least the entry `service { }`, which would generate a completely operational OData service with an empty service catalog and an empty metadata file. However, usually you use the service definition to expose objects in the database catalog, for example: tables, SQL views, or calculation rules.

In the OData service-definition file, you can use the following ways to name the SAP HANA objects you want to expose by OData:

Note

The syntax to use in the OData service-definition file to reference objects depends on the object type, for example, repository (design-time) or database catalog (runtime).

- **Repository objects**

Expose an object using the object's repository (design-time) name in the OData service-definition file. This method of exposing database objects using OData enables the OData service to be automatically updated if the underlying repository object changes. Note that a design-time name can be used to reference analytic and calculation views; it cannot be used to reference SQL views. The following example shows how to include a reference to a table in an OData service definition using the table's *design-time* name.

```
service {
    "acme.com.odata::myTable" as "myTable";
}
```

Note

Calculation views are only accessible from within `xsodata` files by referring to the design-time name. However, it is recommended to use design-time names whenever possible for calculation views or common tables. With design-time names, the cross references are recreated during activation (for example, for where-used), which means changes are visible automatically.

- **Database objects**

Expose an object using the object's database catalog (runtime) name. The support for database objects is mainly intended for existing or replicated objects that do not have a repository design-time representation. The following example shows how to include a reference to a table in an OData service definition using the table's *runtime* name.

```
service {
    "mySchema"."myTable" as "MyTable";
}
```

Note

It is strongly recommended not to use catalog (runtime) names in an OData service-definition. The use of catalog object names is only enabled in a service-definition because some objects do not have a design-time name. If at all possible, use the design-time name to reference objects in an OData service-definition file.

By default, all entity sets and associations in an OData service are writeable, that is they can be modified with a CREATE, UPDATE, or DELETE requests. However, you can prevent the execution of a modification request by setting the appropriate keyword (`create`, `update`, or `delete`) with the `forbidden` option in the OData service definition. The following example of an OData service definition for SAP HANA XS shows how to prevent any

modification to the table `myTable` that is exposed by the OData service. Any attempt to make a modification to the indicated table using a CREATE, UPDATE, or DELETE request results in the HTTP response status 403 FORBIDDEN.

```
service {
    "sap.test::myTable"
        create forbidden
        update forbidden
        delete forbidden;
}
```

For CREATE requests, for example, to add a new entry to either a table or an SQL view exposed by an OData service, you must specify an explicit key (not a generated key); the key must be included in the URL as part of the CREATE request. For UPDATE and DELETE requests, you do not need to specify the key explicitly (and if you do, it will be ignored); the key is already known, since it is essential to specify which entry in the table or SQL view must be modified with the UPDATE or DELETE request.

i Note

Without any support for IN/OUT table parameters in SQLScript, it is not possible to use a sequence to create an entry in a table or view exposed by an OData service. However, you can use XS JavaScript exits to update a table with a generated value.

Related Information

[Tutorial: Creating a Modification Exit with XS JavaScript \[page 526\]](#)

7.1.3.1 OData Service-Definition Type Mapping

During the activation of the OData service definition, SQL types defined in the service definition are mapped to EDM types according to a mapping table.

For example, the SQL type "Time" is mapped to the EDM type "EDM.Time"; the SQL type "Decimal" is mapped to the EDM type "EDM.Decimal"; the SQL types "Real" and "Float" are mapped to the EDM type "EDM.Single".

i Note

The OData implementation in SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) does not support all SQL types.

In the following example, the SQL types of columns in a table are mapped to the EDM types in the properties of an entity type.

```
{name = "ID"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;}, {name = "RefereeID";
sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = true;}
```

```
<Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/> <Property  
Name="RefereeID" Type="Edm.String" Nullable="true"/>
```

Related Information

[OData Service Definition: SQL-EDM Type Mapping \(XS Advanced\) \[page 531\]](#)
[OData Service Definitions \[page 497\]](#)

7.1.3.2 OData Service-Definition Features

The OData service definition provides a list of keywords that you use in the OData service-definition file to enable important features. For example, the following list illustrates the most-commonly used features used in an OData service-definition and, where appropriate, indicates the keyword to use to enable the feature:

- **Aggregation**

The results of aggregations on columns change dynamically, depending on the grouping conditions. As a result, aggregation cannot be done in SQL views; it needs to be specified in the OData service definition itself. Depending on the type of object you want to expose with OData, the columns to aggregate and the function used must be specified explicitly (**explicit aggregation**) or derived from metadata in the database (**derived aggregation**). Note that aggregated columns cannot be used in combination with the `$filter` query parameter, and aggregation is only possible with generated keys.

- **Association**

Define associations between entities to express relationships between entities. With associations it is possible to reflect foreign key constraints on database tables, hierarchies and other relations between database objects.

- **Key Specification**

The OData specification requires an `EntityType` to denote a set of properties forming a unique key. In SAP HANA, only tables can have a unique key, the primary key. All other (mostly view) objects require you to specify a key for the entity. The OData service definition language (OSDL) enables you to do this by denoting a set of existing columns or by generating a **local key**. Bear in mind that local keys are transient; they exist only for the duration of the current session and cannot be dereferenced.

i Note

OSDL is the language used to define a service definition; the language includes a list of keywords that you use in the OData service-definition file to enable the required features.

- **Parameter Entity Sets**

You can use a special parameter entity set to enter input parameters for SAP HANA calculation views and analytic views. During activation of the entity set, the specified parameters are retrieved from the metadata of the calculation (or analytical) view and exposed as a new `EntitySet` with the name suffix `"Parameters"`, for example `"CalcViewParameters"`.

- **Projection**

If the object you want to expose with an OData service has more columns than you actually want to expose, you can use SQL views to restrict the number of selected columns in the `SELECT`. However, for

those cases where SQL views are not appropriate, you can use the **with** or **without** keywords in the OData service definition to **include** or **exclude** a list of columns.

Related Information

[OData Service-Definition Examples \[page 506\]](#)

7.1.4 Create an OData Service Definition

The OData service definition is a configuration file you use to specify which data (for example, views or tables) is exposed as an OData collection for analysis and display by client applications.

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites apply when you create an OData service definition:

- SAP HANA studio (and client) is installed and configured
- An SAP HANA database user is available with repository privileges (for example, to add packages)
- An SAP HANA development system is added to (and available in) SAP HANA studio, for example, in either the *Systems* view or the *Repositories* view
- A working development environment is available including: a repository workspace, a package structure for your OData application, and a shared project to enable you to synchronize changes to the OData project files in the local file system with the repository
- You have defined the data to expose with the OData application, for example, at least the following:
 - A database schema
 - A database table

Context

An OData service for SAP HANA XS is defined in a text file with the file suffix `.xsodata`, for example, `OdataSrvDef.xsodata`. The file resides in the package hierarchy of the OData application and must contain at least the entry service `{}`, which would generate an operational OData service with an empty service catalog and an empty metadata file.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

Procedure

1. In the shared project you are using for your OData application, use the *Project Explorer* view to locate the package where you want to create the new OData service definition.

Note

The file containing the OData service definition must be placed in the root package of the OData application for which the service is intended.

2. Create the file that will contain your OData service definition.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new OData service definition file and choose  *New*  *Other*  *SAP HANA*  *Application Development*  *XS OData Service* in the context-sensitive popup menu.

3. Enter or select the parent folder, where the new OData service definition is to be located.
4. Enter a name for the new OData service definition.
5. Select a template to use. Templates contain sample source code to help you.
6. Choose *Finish*.

Note

If you are using the SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file creation wizard adds the required file extension `.xsodata` automatically and opens the new file in the appropriate editor.

7. Define the OData service.

The OData service definition uses the OData Service Definition Language (OSDL), which includes a list of keywords that you specify in the OData service-definition file to enable important features.

The following example shows a simple OData service definition exposing a simple table:

```
service namespace "my.namespace" {
    "sample.odata::table" as "MyTable";
}
```

This service definition exposes a table defined in the file `sample.odata::table.hdbtable` and creates an EntitySet for this entity named `MyTable`. The specification of an alias is optional. If omitted, the default name of the EntitySet is the name of the repository object file, in this example, `table`.

8. Save and activate the OData service definition in the SAP HANA repository.

Tip

To run an OData service, right-click the OData service file in the *Project Explorer* view and choose  *Run As*  *XS Service* in the context-sensitive menu.

Related Information

[OData Service Definitions \[page 497\]](#)

7.1.5 Tutorial: Use the SAP HANA OData Interface

The package you put together to test the SAP HANA OData interface includes all the artifacts you need to use SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) to expose an OData collection for analysis and display by client applications.

Prerequisites

Since the artifacts required to get a simple OData application up and running are stored in the repository, it is assumed that you have already performed the following tasks:

- Create a development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- Create a project in the workspace
- Share the new project

Context

To create a simple OData application, perform the following steps:

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

Procedure

1. Create a root package for your OData application, for example, `helloodata` and save and activate it in the repository.
 - a. Click the *Content* directory with the alternate mouse button and choose *New* *Package*.
 - b. Enter the required information for the package in the dialog box and choose *OK*.

i Note

The namespace `sap` is restricted. Place the new package in your own namespace, which you can create alongside the `sap` namespace.

2. Create a schema, for example, `HELLO_ODATA.hdbschema`.

The schema is required for the table that contains the data to be exposed by your OData service-definition. The schema is defined in a flat file with the file extension `.hdbschema` that you save in the repository and which you must activate.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

Enter the following code in the `HELLO_ODATA.hdbschema` file:

```
schema_name="HELLO_ODATA";
```

3. Create the database table that contains the data to be exposed by your OData service definition, for example, `otable.hdbtable`.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new OData service definition file and choose **New > Other > SAP HANA > Database Development > Database Table** in the context-sensitive popup menu.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

Enter the following code in the `otable.hdbtable` file:

ℹ Note

If the editor underlines the keywords `nullable` and `DefaultValue` in red, you can safely ignore this.

```
table.schemaName = "HELLO_ODATA";
table.tableType = COLUMNSTORE;
table.columns = [
    {name = "Col1"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = false; length = 20; comment =
 = "dummy comment";},
    {name = "Col2"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},
    {name = "Col3"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; nullable = true; length = 20;
defaultValue = "DefaultValue";},
    {name = "Col4"; sqlType = DECIMAL; nullable = false; precision = 12;
scale = 3;}];
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["Col1", "Col2"];
```

4. Grant SELECT privileges to the owner of the new schema.

After activation in the repository, the schema object is only visible in the catalog to the `_SYS_REPO` user. To enable other users, for example the schema owner, to view the newly created schema in the SAP HANA studio's *Modeler* perspective, you must grant the user the required SELECT privilege.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio *Systems* view, right-click the SAP HANA system hosting the repository where the schema was activated and choose *SQL Console* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. In the *SQL Console*, execute the statement illustrated in the following example, where `<SCHEMANAME>` is the name of the newly activated schema, and `<username>` is the database user ID of the schema owner:

```
call
  _SYS_REPO.GRANT_SCHEMA_PRIVILEGE_ON_ACTIVATED_CONTENT('select', '<SCHEMANAME
>', '<username>');
```

5. Create an application descriptor for your new OData application in your root OData package `helloodata`.

The application descriptor (`.xsapp`) is the core file that you use to define an application's availability within SAP HANA application. The `.xsapp` file sets the point in the application-package structure from which content will be served to the requesting clients.

Note

The application-descriptor file has no content and no name; it only has the extension `.xsapp`. File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new application descriptor and choose      in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Save and activate the application-descriptor file in the repository.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose   from the context-sensitive popup menu.

6. Create an application-access file for your new OData application and place it in your root OData package `helloodata`.

The application-access file enables you to specify who or what is authorized to access the content exposed by the application.

Note

The application-access file has no name; it only has the extension `.xsaccess`. File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new application descriptor and choose      in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter the following content in the `.xsaccess` file for your new OData application:

```
{  
    "exposed" : true,  
    "prevent_xsrf" : true  
}
```

Note

It is highly recommended to always use the `prevent_xsrf` keyword to help protect your application against attacks that use cross-site request forgery.

- c. Save and activate the application-access file in the repository.
7. Create an OData service-definition file and place it in your root OData package helloodata.

The Odata service-definition file has the file extension .xsodata, for example, hello.xsodata and for the purposes of this tutorial should be located in the root package of the OData application:

➔ **Tip**

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the file in the appropriate editor.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new application descriptor and choose ► *New* ► *Other* ► *SAP HANA* ► *Application Development* ► *XS OData File* in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter the following content in the hello.xsodata OData service-definition file:

```
service {  
    "helloodata::otable";  
}
```

- c. Save and activate the OData service-definition file in the repository.
8. Test the new OData service.

Open a browser and enter the following URL.

ⓘ **Note**

If you are using Internet Explorer, press **F12** and set *compatibility mode = IE10* and *document mode = Standards*.

`http://<hana.server.name>:80<HANA_instance_number>/helloodata/hello.xsodata/
otable`

➔ **Tip**

You can also run the service directly from the *Project Explorer* view where you activated it; right-click the object in the Project Explorer view and chose *Run As...* in the context-sensitive popup menu.

7.1.6 OData Service-Definition Examples

The OData service definition describes how data exposed in an end point can be accessed by clients using the OData protocol.

Each of the examples listed below is explained in a separate section. The examples show how to use the OData Service Definition Language (OSDL) in the OData service-definition file to generate an operational OData service that enables clients to use SAP HANA XS to access the OData end point you set up.

- Empty Service
- Namespace Definition
- Object Exposure

- Property Projection
- Key Specification
- Associations
- Aggregation
- Parameter Entity Sets
- ETag Support
- Nullable Properties

7.1.6.1 OData Empty Service

An OData service for SAP HANA XS is defined by a text file containing at least the following line:

Service definition sample.odata:empty.xsodata

```
service {}
```

A service file with the minimal content generates an empty, completely operational OData service with an empty service catalog and an empty metadata file:

i Note

- Examples and graphics are provided for illustration purposes only; some URLs may differ from the ones shown.

`http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata`

```
{
  "d" : {
    "EntitySets" : []
  }
}
```

`http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/$metadata`

```
<edmx:Edmx Version="1.0"
xmlns:edmx="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/06/edmx">
<edmx:DataServices m:DataServiceVersion="2.0"
xmlns:m="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/metadata">
  <Schema Namespace="sample.odata.empty"
  xmlns:d="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices"
  xmlns:m="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/metadata"
  xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/05/edm">
    <EntityContainer Name="empty" m:IsDefaultEntityContainer="true"/>
  </Schema>
</edmx:DataServices>
</edmx:Edmx>
```

An empty service metadata document consists of one Schema containing an empty EntityContainer. The name of the EntityContainer is the name of the .xsodata file, in this example "empty".

7.1.6.2 OData Namespace Definition

Every .xsodata file must define its own namespace by using the `namespace` keyword:

Service definition `sample.odata:namespace.xsodata`

```
service namespace "my.namespace" {}
```

The resulting service metadata document has the specified schema namespace:

i Note

Examples and graphics are provided for illustration purposes only; some URLs may differ from the ones shown.

```
http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/$metadata

<edmx:Edmx Version="1.0"
xmlns:edmx="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/06/edmx">
<edmx:DataServices m:DataServiceVersion="2.0"
x-ns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/metadata">
<Schema Namespace="my.namespace"
  xmlns:d="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices"
  xmlns:m="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/metadata"
  xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/05/edm">
    <EntityContainer Name="namespace" m:IsDefaultEntityContainer="true"/>
  </Schema>
</edmx:DataServices>
</edmx:Edmx>
```

7.1.6.3 OData Object Exposure

In the examples provided to illustrate object exposure, the following definition of a table applies:

Table definition `sample.odata:table.hdbtable`

```
COLUMN TABLE "sample.odata::table" (
  "ID" INTEGER,
  "Text" NVARCHAR(1000),
  "Time" TIMESTAMP,
  PRIMARY KEY ("ID")
);
```

Database Objects

Similar to the exposure of an object by using the repository design-time name is the exposure by the database name:

Service definition sample.odata:db.xsodata

```
service {
    "sample.odata::table" as "MyTable";
}
```

The service exposes the same table by using the database catalog name of the object and the name of the schema where the table is created in.

7.1.6.4 OData Property Projection

If the object you want to expose with an OData service has more columns than you actually want to expose, you can use SQL views to restrict the number of selected columns in the SELECT.

Nevertheless, SQL views are sometimes not appropriate, for example with calculation views, and for these cases we provide the possibility to restrict the properties in the OData service definition in two ways. By providing an including or an excluding list of columns.

Including Properties

You can specify the columns of an object that have to be exposed in the OData service by using the with keyword. Key fields of tables must not be omitted.

Service definition sample.odata:with.xsodata

```
service {
    "sample.odata::table" as "MyTable" with ("ID", "Text");
}
```

The resulting EntityType then contains only the properties derived from the specified columns:

i Note

Examples and graphics are provided for illustration purposes only; some URLs may differ from the ones shown.

```
http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/$metadata

<EntityType Name="MyTableType">
  <Key>
    <PropertyRef Name="ID"/>
  </Key>
  <Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>
  <Property Name="Text" Type="Edm.String" Nullable="true" MaxLength="1000"/>
</EntityType>
```

Excluding Properties

The opposite of the `with` keyword is the `without` keyword, which enables you to specify which columns you do NOT want to expose in the OData service:

Service definition `sample.odata:without.xsodata`

```
service {
    "sample.odata::table" as "MyTable" without ("Text","Time");
}
```

The generated `EntityType` then does NOT contain the properties derived from the specified columns:

`http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/$metadata`

```
<EntityType Name="MyTableType">
  <Key>
    <PropertyRef Name="ID"/>
  </Key>
  <Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>
</EntityType>
```

7.1.6.5 OData Key Specification

The OData specification requires an `EntityType` to denote a set properties forming a unique key. In HANA only tables may have a unique key, the primary key. For all other (mostly view) objects you need to specify a key for the entity.

In OSDL, you can specify a key for an entity/object by denoting a set of existing columns or by generating a key.

i Note

Key attributes are not evaluated.

For the examples illustrating key specification, we use the following SQL view, which selects all data from the specified table.

View definition `sample.odata:view.hdbview`

```
{
  VIEW "sample.odata::view" as select * from "sample.odata::table"
}
```

Existing Key Properties

If the object has set of columns that may form a unique key, you can specify them as key for the entity. These key properties are always selected from the database, no matter if they are omitted in the `$select` query

option. Therefore explicit keys are not suitable for calculation views and analytic views as the selection has an impact on the result.

Service definition sample.odata:explicitkeys.xsodata/\$metadata

```
service {
    "sample.odata::view" as "MyView" key ("ID", "Text");
}
```

The metadata document for the exposure of the view above is almost equal to the metadata document for repository objects. Only the key is different and consists now of two columns:

i Note

Examples and graphics are provided for illustration purposes only; some URLs may differ from the ones shown.

```
http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/$metadata

<edmx:Edmx Version="1.0" xmlns:edmx="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/06/edmx">
  <edmx:DataServices m:DataServiceVersion="2.0"
    xmlns:m="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/metadata">
    <Schema Namespace="sample.odata.explicitkeys"
      xmlns:d="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices"
      xmlns:m="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/metadata"
      xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/05/edm">
      <EntityType Name="MyViewType">
        <Key>
          <PropertyRef Name="ID"/>
          <PropertyRef Name="Text"/>
        </Key>
        <Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>
        <Property Name="Text" Type="Edm.String" Nullable="true" MaxLength="1000"/>
        <Property Name="Time" Type="Edm.DateTime" Nullable="true"/>
      </EntityType>
      <EntityContainer Name="explicitkeys" m:IsDefaultEntityContainer="true">
        <EntitySet Name="MyView"
          EntityType="sample.odata.explicitkeys.MyViewType"/>
      </EntityContainer>
    </Schema>
  </edmx:DataServices>
</edmx:Edmx>
```

⚠ Caution

The OData infrastructure cannot check whether your specified keys are unique, so be careful when choosing keys.

Generated Local Key

For objects that do not have a unique key in their results, for example, calculation views or aggregated tables, you can generate a locally valid key. This key value numbers the results starting with 1 and is not meant for dereferencing the entity; you cannot use this key to retrieve the entity. The key is valid only for the duration of the current session and is used only to satisfy OData's need for a unique ID in the results. The property type of a generated local key is Edm.String and cannot be changed.

Service definition sample.odata:generatedkeys.xsodata

```
service {
    "sample.odata::view" as "MyView" key generate local "GenID";
}
```

http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/\$metadata

```
<EntityType Name="MyViewType">
  <Key>
    <PropertyRef Name="GenID"/>
  </Key>
  <Property Name="GenID" Type="Edm.String" Nullable="false" MaxLength="2147483647"/>
  <Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>
  <Property Name="Text" Type="Edm.String" Nullable="true" MaxLength="1000"/>
  <Property Name="Time" Type="Edm.DateTime" Nullable="true"/>
</EntityType>
<EntityContainer Name="generatedkeys" m:IsDefaultEntityContainer="true">
  <EntitySet Name="MyView" EntityType="sample.odata.generatedkeys.MyViewType"/>
</EntityContainer>
```

As a consequence of the transient nature of generated local keys, it is not possible to define navigation properties on these entities or use them in filter or order by conditions.

7.1.6.6 OData Associations

You can define associations between entities to express relationships between entities. With associations it is possible to reflect foreign key constraints on database tables, hierarchies and other relations between database objects. OSDL supports simple associations, where the information about the relationship is stored in one of the participating entities, and complex associations, where the relationship information is stored in a separate association table.

Associations themselves are freestanding. On top of them you can specify which of the entities participating in the relationship can navigate over the association to the other entity by creating NavigationProperties.

For the examples used to illustrate OData associations, we use the tables customer and order:

Table definition: sample.odata:customer.hdbtable

```
COLUMN TABLE "sample.odata::customer" (
  "ID" INTEGER NOT NULL,
  "OrderID" INTEGER,
  PRIMARY KEY ("ID")
```

```
) ;
```

Table definition: sample.odata:order.hdbtable

```
COLUMN TABLE "sample.odata::order" (
    "ID" INTEGER NOT NULL,
    "CustomerID" INTEGER,
    PRIMARY KEY ("ID")
);
```

There is one relationship `order.CustomerID` to `customer.ID`.

Simple Associations

The definition of an association requires you to specify a name, which references two exposed entities and whose columns keep the relationship information. To distinguish the ends of the association, you must use the keywords `principal` and `dependent`. In addition, it is necessary to denote the multiplicity for each end of the association.

Service definition: sample.odata:assocsimple.xsodata

```
service {
    "sample.odata::customer" as "Customers";
    "sample.odata::order" as "Orders";
    association "Customer Orders" with referential constraint principal
    "Customers"("ID") multiplicity "1" dependent "Orders"("CustomerID") multiplicity
    "*";
}
```

The association in the example above with the name `Customer_Orders` defines a relationship between the table `customer`, identified by its EntitySet name `Customers`, on the `principal` end, and the table `order`, identified by its entity set name `Orders`, on the `dependent` end. Involved columns of both tables are denoted in braces (`{}`) after the name of the corresponding entity set. The `multiplicity` keyword on each end of the association specifies their cardinality - in this example, one-to-many.

The `with referential constraint` syntax ensures that the referential constraint check is enforced at design time, for example, when you activate the service definition in the SAP HANA repository. The referential constraint information appears in the metadata document.

i Note

SAP strongly recommends that you use the `with referential constraint` syntax.

The number of columns involved in the relationship must be equal for both ends of the association, and their order in the list is important. The order specifies which column in one table is compared to which column in the other table. In this simple example, the column `customer.ID` is compared to `order.CustomerID` in the generated table join.

As a result of the generation of the service definition above, an `AssociationSet` named `Customer_Orders` and an `Association` with name `Customer_OrdersType` are generated:

```
http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/$metadata
```

```

<EntityType Name="CustomersType">
  <Key>
    <PropertyRef Name="ID"/>
  </Key>
  <Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>
  <Property Name="RecruitID" Type="Edm.String" Nullable="true" MaxLength="1"/>
</EntityType>
<EntityType Name="OrdersType">
  <Key>
    <PropertyRef Name="ID"/>
  </Key>
  <Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>
  <Property Name="CustomerID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>
</EntityType>
<Association Name="Customer_OrdersType">
  <End Type="sample.odata.assocsimple.CustomersType" Role="CustomersPrincipal" Multiplicity="1"/>
  <End Type="sample.odata.assocsimple.OrdersType" Role="OrdersDependent" Multiplicity="*"/>
  <ReferentialConstraint>
    <Principal Role="CustomersPrincipal">
      <PropertyRef Name="ID"/>
    </Principal>
    <Dependent Role="OrdersDependent">
      <PropertyRef Name="CustomerID"/>
    </Dependent>
  </ReferentialConstraint>
</Association>
<EntityContainer Name="assocsimple" m:IsDefaultEntityContainer="true">
  <EntitySet Name="Customers" EntityType="sample.odata.assocsimple.CustomersType"/>
  <EntitySet Name="Orders" EntityType="sample.odata.assocsimple.OrdersType"/>
  <AssociationSet Name="Customer_Orders"
    Association="sample.odata.assocsimple.Customer_OrdersType">
    <End Role="CustomersPrincipal" EntitySet="Customers"/>
    <End Role="OrdersDependent" EntitySet="Orders"/>
  </AssociationSet>
</EntityContainer>

```

The second association is similar to the first one and is shown in the following listing:

```

association "Customer Recruit" with referential constraint principal
"Customers"("ID") multiplicity "1" dependent "Customers"("RecruitID")
multiplicity "*";

```

Complex Associations

For the following example of a complex association, an additional table named `knows` is introduced that contains a relationship between customers.

Table definition: `sample.odata:knows.hdbtable`

```

COLUMN TABLE "sample.odata::knows" (
  "KnowingCustomerID" INTEGER NOT NULL,
  "KnowCustomerID" INTEGER NOT NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY ("KnowingCustomerID", "KnowCustomerID")
);

```

Relationships that are stored in association tables such as `knows` can be similarly defined as simple associations. Use the keyword `over` to specify the additional table and any required columns.

Service definition: `sample.odata:assoccomplex.xsodata`

```
service {
    "sample.odata::customer" as "Customers";
    "sample.odata::order" as "Orders";
    association "Customer_Orders"
        principal "Customers"("ID") multiplicity "*"
        dependent "Customers"("ID") multiplicity "*"
        over "sample.odata::knows" principal ("KnowingCustomerID") dependent
        ("KnownCustomerID");
}
```

With the keywords `principal` and `dependent` after `over` you can specify which columns from the association table are joined with the `principal` respectively `dependent` columns of the related entities. The number of columns must be equal in pairs, and their order in the list is important.

The generated `Association` in the metadata document is similar to the one created for a simple association except that the `ReferentialConstraint` is missing:

`http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/$metadata`

```
<Association Name="Customer_OrdersType">
    <End Type="sample.odata.assoccomplex.CustomerType" Role="CustomersPrincipal" Multiplicity="*"/>
    <End Type="sample.odata.assoccomplex.CustomerType" Role="CustomersDependent" Multiplicity="*"/>
</Association>
<EntityContainer Name="assoccomplex" m:IsDefaultEntityContainer="true">
    <EntityType Name="Customers" EntityType="sample.odata.assoccomplex.CustomerType"/>
    <EntityType Name="Orders" EntityType="sample.odata.assoccomplex.OrderType"/>
    <AssociationSet Name="Customer_Orders"
        Association="sample.odata.assoccomplex.Customer_OrdersType">
        <End Role="CustomersPrincipal" EntitySet="Customers"/>
        <End Role="CustomersDependent" EntitySet="Customers"/>
    </AssociationSet>
</EntityContainer>
```

Navigation Properties

By only defining an association, it is not possible to navigate from one entity to another. Associations need to be bound to entities by a `NavigationProperty`. You can create them by using the keyword `navigates`:

Service definition: `sample.odata:assocnav.xsodata`

```
service {
    "sample.odata::customer" as "Customers" navigates ("Customer_Orders" as
    "HisOrders");
    "sample.odata::order" as "Orders";
    association "Customer_Orders" principal "Customers"("ID") multiplicity "1"
    dependent "Orders"("CustomerID") multiplicity "*";
}
```

The example above says that it is possible to navigate from `Customers` over the association `Customer_Order` via the `NavigationProperty` named `"HisOrders"`.

The right association end is determined automatically by the entity set name. But if both ends are bound to the same entity, it is necessary to specify the starting end for the navigation. This is done by specifying either `from principal` or `from dependent` which refer to the `principal` and `dependent` ends in the association.

Service definition: `sample.odata:assocnavself.xsodata`

```
service {
    "sample.odata::customer" as "Customers"
        navigates ("Customer_Orders" as "HisOrders", "Customer_Recruit" as
    "Recruit" from principal);
    "sample.odata::order" as "Orders";
        association "Customer_Orders" principal "Customers"("ID") multiplicity "1"
dependent "Orders"("CustomerID") multiplicity "*";
        association "Customer_Recruit" principal "Customers"("ID") multiplicity
"1" dependent "Customers"("RecruitID") multiplicity "*";
}
```

In both cases a `NavigationProperty` is added to the `EntityType`.

`http://<myHANAServer>:<port>/odata/services/<myService>.xsodata/$metadata`

```
<EntityType Name="CustomersType">
<Key>
    <PropertyRef Name="ID"/>
</Key>
<Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>
<Property Name="RecruitID" Type="Edm.String" Nullable="true" MaxLength="1"/>
<NavigationProperty Name="HisOrders"
Relationship="sample.odata.assocnavself.Customer_OrdersType" FromRole="CustomersPrincipal"
ToRole="OrdersDependent"/>
<NavigationProperty Name="Recruit"
Relationship="sample.odata.assocnavself.Customer_RecruitType" FromRole="CustomersPrincipal"
ToRole="CustomersDependent"/>
</EntityType>
```

7.1.6.7 OData Aggregation

The results of aggregations on columns change dynamically depending on the grouping conditions. This means that aggregation cannot be performed in SQL views; it needs to be specified in the OData service definition itself. Depending on the type of object to expose, you need to explicitly specify the columns to aggregate and the function to use or derived them from metadata in the database.

In general, aggregations do not have consequences for the metadata document. It just effects the semantics of the concerning properties during runtime. The grouping condition for the aggregation contain all selected non-aggregated properties. Furthermore, aggregated columns cannot be used in `$filter`, and aggregation is only possible with generated keys.

Derived Aggregation

The simplest way to define aggregations on columns in an object is to derive this information from metadata in the database. The only objects with this information are calculation views and analytic views. For all other

object types, for example, tables and SQL views, the activation will not work. To cause the service to use derived information, you must specify the keywords *aggregates always*, as illustrated in the following example:

```
service {
    "sample.odata::calc" as "CalcView"
        keys generate local "ID"
        aggregates always;
}
```

Explicit Aggregation

The example for the explicit aggregation is based on the following table definition:
sample.odata:revenues.hdbtable

```
COLUMN TABLE "sample.odata::revenues" (
    "Month" INTEGER NOT NULL,
    "Year" INTEGER NOT NULL,
    "Amount" INTEGER,
    PRIMARY KEY ("Month", "Year")
);
```

You can aggregate the columns of objects (without metadata) that are necessary for the derivation of aggregation by explicitly denoting the column names and the functions to use, as illustrated in the following example of a service definition: sample.odata:aggrexpl_xsodata

```
service {
    "sample.odata::revenues" as "Revenues"
        keys generate local "ID"
        aggregates always (SUM of "Amount");
}
```

The results of the entity set `Revenues` always contain the aggregated value of the column `Amount`. To extract the aggregated revenue amount per year, add `$select=Year,Amount` to your requested URI.

7.1.6.8 OData Parameter Entity Sets

SAP HANA calculation views can interpret input parameters. For OData, these parameters can be entered by using a special parameter *entity set*.

Parameter entity sets can be generated for calculation views by adding *parameters via entity* to the entity, as illustrated in the following service-definition example:

```
service {
    "sample.odata::calc" as "CalcView"
        keys generate local "ID"
        parameters via entity;
}
```

During loading of the service, parameters specified in `sample.odata/calc.calculationview` are retrieved from the metadata of the calculation view and exposed as a new EntitySet named after the entity set name and the suffix `Parameters`, for example, `CalcViewParameters`. A NavigationProperty named `Results` is generated to retrieve the results from the parameterized call.

The name of the generated parameter entity set and the navigation property can be customized, as illustrated in the following service-definition example:

```
service {
    "sample.odata::calc" as "CalcView"
        keys generate local "ID"
        parameters via entity "CVParams" results property "Execute";
}
```

With the definition above, the name of the parameter entity set is `CVParams`, and the name of the `NavigationProperty` for the results is `Execute`.

Navigating to Entities via Parameters

In an OData service definition, you can enable navigation between an entity and a parameterized entity. This feature is particularly useful if you need to have access to individual entries in a parameterized entity set, for example, a calculation view with parameters. If you need to access individual entries in an entity set that has parameters, you must expose the parameters as keys. If you do not need to have access to individual entries in an entity set, you can use the `key generate local` option to generate a pseudo key.

To enable navigation between an entity and a parameterized entity, you must perform the following steps:

1. Specify the parameters as part of the key of the target entity
2. Define the association between the entities

Enabling navigation between an entity and a parameterized entity is only possible if the parameters are part of the entity-type key in the OData service definition file. To make the parameters part of the key of the target entity, use the `via key` syntax, as illustrated in the following example:

```
service {
    "sap.test::calcview" key ("theKeyColumns") parameters via key and entity;
```

You also have to define an **association** between the source and target entities, for example, with additional entries introduced by the `via parameters` keyword, as illustrated in the following example:

```
service {
    "sap.test::table" as "Tab" navigates ("avp" as "ViewNav");
    "sap.test::calcview" as "View" key ("theKeyColumns") parameters via key and entity;

    association via parameters "avp"
        principal "Tab"("paramValue") multiplicity "*"
        dependent "View"("parameter") multiplicity "*";
}
```

Note

The order of the property list of the dependent end is crucial.

The parameters you define in the dependent end of the association **must** be the first properties in the list. In addition, the parameters specified **must** be given in the same order as they are specified in the view, as illustrated in the following example:

```
association via parameters "avp"
  principal "Tab"("col1", "col2", "col3") multiplicity "*"
    dependent "View"("parameter1", "parameter2", "colA") multiplicity "*";
```

In the example immediately above, the principal “Tab” has three columns that contain the information that is required to navigate to the dependent “View” in the association.

- “col1”
The value of “col1” should be set for “parameter1”
- “col2”
The value of “col2” should be set for “parameter2”
- “col3”
The parameter “col3” contains additional information that is not passed as an input parameter, but as part of a WHERE condition.

The generated SQL statement would look like the following:

```
select ... from "sap.test::calcview"(placeholder."$$parameter1$$=>?,
placeholder."$$parameter2$$=>?)
      where "colA"=?
```

i Note

This navigation property cannot be used in combination with the OData query options \$expand, \$filter and \$orderby.

7.1.6.9 OData ETag Support

This feature allows a service to define the fields that are to be included in the concurrency check.

You can now use entity tags (ETags) for optimistic concurrency control. If you choose to use this feature, then you must enable it per entity in the .xsodata file. Enabling this feature per entity allows for the concurrency control to be applied to multiple fields. The following code example provides information about how to do this.

Sample Code

```
service
{ entity "sap.test.odata.db.views::Etag" as "EtagAll"
  key ("KEY_00") concurrencytoken;
  entity "sap.test.odata.db.views::Etag" as "EtagNvarchar"
  key ("KEY_00") concurrencytoken ("NVARCHAR_01", "INTEGER_03");
}
```

If you specify `concurrencytoken` only, then all properties, except the key properties, are used to calculate the ETag value. If you provide specific properties, then only those properties are used for the calculation.

Note

You **cannot** specify `concurrencytoken` on aggregated properties that use the `AVG` (average) aggregation method.

7.1.6.10 OData Nullable Properties

You can create a service to enable nullable properties in OData.

During the 'Create' phase, the XSODATA layer generates all entity properties automatically. Since the properties are not nullable, consumers of the code are forced to pass dummy values into them. However, OData supports `$filter` and `$orderby` conditions on the `null` value. This means that it is now possible to treat `null` as a value, if you enable it. You can enable this behavior for the entire service only, not per entity.

The following code example provides information about how you can do this.

Sample Code

```
service {  
    ...  
}  
settings {  
    support null;  
}
```

If you enable this support, then `$filter` requests, such as `$filter=NVARCHAR_01 eq null`, are possible. Otherwise `null` is rejected with an exception. Of course, if you do not enable the support, then the default behavior applies. All `null` values are ignored in comparisons and the respective rows are removed from the result; this is common database behavior.

7.1.6.11 OData Configurable Cache Settings

You can create a service to configure the cache settings for the `$metadata` request to optimize performance.

When calling OData services, the services make repeated requests for the `$metadata` document. Since changes to the underlying entity definitions occurs rarely, SAP has enabled the option to configure caching for these `$metadata` documents. By configuring the cache, you can avoid many redundant queries to process the metadata.

The following code example provides information about how you can do this.

Sample Code

```
service {  
    ...  
}  
settings {  
    metadata cache-control "no-store";  
}
```

```
    content cache-control "max-age=3600,must-revalidate";
}
```

7.1.6.12 Custom Exits for OData Write Requests

SAP HANA XS enables you to execute custom code at defined points of an OData write request.

If you provide a custom exit for an OData write request, the code has to be provided in form of an SQLScript procedure with signatures that follow specific conventions. There following type of write exits are supported for OData write requests in SAP HANA XS:

- Validation Exits

These exits are for validation of input data and data consistency checks. They can be registered for create, update, and delete events and executed before or after the change operation, or before or after the commit operation. You can specify a maximum of four validation exits per change operation; the exit is registered for the corresponding event with the respective keyword: “before”, “after”, “precommit” or “postcommit”.

- Modification Exits

You can define custom logic to create, update, or delete an entry in an entity set. If a modification exit is specified, it is executed instead of the generic actions provided by the OData infrastructure. You use the *using* keyword to register the exit.

If registered, the scripts for the exits are executed in the order shown in the following table:

Table 77: Execution Order of Exit Validation/Modification Scripts

OData Insert Type	Script Execution Order
Single Insert	before, using, after, precommit, postcommit
Batch Insert	before(1), using(1), after(1), before(2), using(2), after(2), ..., precommit(1), precommit(2), postcommit(1), postcommit(2)

The signature of a registered script has to follow specific rules, depending on whether it is registered for *entity* or *link* write operations and depending on the operation itself. The signature must also have table-typed parameters for both input and output:

- Entity Write Operations
- Link Write Operations

For **entity** write operations, the methods registered for the CREATE operation are passed a table containing the new entry that must be inserted into the target table; the UPDATE operation receives the entity both before and after the modification; the DELETE operation receives the entry that must be deleted. The table type of the parameters (specified with the *EntityType* keyword in the table below) corresponds to the types of the exposed entity.

Table 78: Entity Write Operations

Script Type	Create	Update	Delete
before, after, precommit, using	IN new EntityType, OUT error ErrorType	IN new EntityType, IN old EntityType, OUT error ErrorType	IN old EntityType, OUT error ErrorType

Script Type	Create	Update	Delete
postcommit	IN new EntityType	IN new EntityType, IN old EntityType	IN old EntityType

For **link** write operations, all exits that are executed before the commit operation take two table-typed input parameters and one table-typed output parameter. The first parameter must correspond to the structure of the entity type at the **principal** end of the association; the second parameter must correspond to the **dependent** entity type.

Table 79: Link Write Operations

Script Type	Create, Update, Delete
before, after, precommit, using	IN principal PrincipalEntityType, IN dependent DependentEntityType, OUT error ErrorType
postcommit	IN principal PrincipalEntityType, IN dependent DependentEntityType

i Note

Parameter types (**IN**, **OUT**) are checked during activation; the data types of table type columns are **not** checked.

The **OUT** parameter enables you to return error information. The first row in the OUT table is then serialized as `inner_error` in the error message. If no error occurs, the OUT table must remain empty. The structure of the table type `ErrorType` is not restricted. Any columns with special names `HTTP_STATUS_CODE` and `ERROR_MESSAGE` are mapped to common information in the OData error response. Content of columns with other names are serialized into the `inner_error` part of the error message that allows the return of custom error information.

Table 80: Error Message Content

Column Name	Type	Value Range	Error Response Information
HTTP_STATUS_CODE	INTEGER	400-417 (default: 400)	The HTTP response status code
ERROR_MESSAGE	NVARCHAR		The error message (<message>)

i Note

If the SQLScript procedure throws an exception or writes an error messages to the OUT parameter table, the OData write operation is aborted. If more than one error message is added, only the content of the first row is returned in the resulting error message. Any scripts registered for the `postcommit` event must not have an `OUT` parameter as the write operation cannot be aborted at such a late stage, even in the event of an error.

The following example illustrates a typical error-type table type, which is defined in a design-time file that must have the `.hbtabletype` file suffix, for example `error.hbtabletype`:

```
"sample.odata::error" AS TABLE (
    "HTTP_STATUS_CODE" INTEGER,
    "ERROR_MESSAGE" NVARCHAR(100),
```

```
    "DETAIL" NVARCHAR(100)
)
```

The following example shows how information is extracted from the error table if an error occurs during the execution of a create procedure for an OData write operation:

```
create procedure "sample.odata::createmethod" (IN new "sample.odata::table", OUT
error "sample.odata::error")
language sqlscript
sql security invoker as
  id INT;
begin
  select ID into id from :new;
  if :id < 1000 then
    error = select 400 as http_status_code,
    'invalid ID' error_message,
    'value must be >= 1000' detail from dummy;
  else
    insert into "sample.odata::table" values (:id);
  end if;
end;
```

7.1.6.13 Tutorial: Creating a Validation Exit with SQLScript

Use SQLScript to create a custom validation exit which runs server-side verification and data-consistency checks for an OData **update** operation.

Prerequisites

To perform this task, you need the following objects:

- A table to expose, for example, `sample.odata::table.hdbtable`
- An error type, for example, `sample.odata::error.hdbtabletype`

Context

In this tutorial, you see how to register an SQL script for an OData update operation; the script verifies, before the execution of the update operation, that the updated value is larger than the previous one. In the example shown in this tutorial, you define the table to be updated and a table type for the error output parameter of the exit procedure.

Procedure

1. Create a table definition file using `.hdbtable` syntax.

The table to expose is defined in `sample.odata::table.hdbtable`, which should look like the following example:

```
COLUMN TABLE "table" (
    "ID" INTEGER NOT NULL,
    PRIMARY KEY ("ID")
);
```

2. Create a table type for the error output parameter of the exit procedure.

The error type file `sample.odata::error.hdbtabletype` should look like the following example:

```
"sample.odata::error" AS TABLE (
    "HTTP_STATUS_CODE" INTEGER,
    "ERROR_MESSAGE" NVARCHAR(100),
    "DETAIL" NVARCHAR(100)
)
```

3. Create a procedure that runs before the UPDATE event.

The procedure script for the `before UPDATE` event must have two table input parameters and one output parameter, for example:

- IN new "sample.odata::table"
- IN old "sample.odata::table"
- OUT error "sample.odata::error"

The procedure `sample.odata::beforeupdate.hdbprocedure` would look like the following example:

```
procedure "sample.odata::beforeupdate"
    (IN new "sample.odata::table", IN old "sample.odata::table", OUT error
    "sample.odata::error")
language sqlscript
sql security invoker as
    idnew INT;
    idold INT;
begin
    select ID into idnew from :new;
    select ID into idold from :old;
if :idnew <= :idold then
    error = select 400 as http_status_code,
        'invalid ID' error_message,
        'the new value must be larger than the previous' detail from dummy;
end if;
end;
```

4. Register the procedure to be executed at the `before` event.

You use the `update events (before "...")` keywords to register the procedure, as illustrated in the following example of an OData service file:

```
service {
    "sample.odata::table"
        update events (before "sample.odata::beforeupdate");
}
```

7.1.6.14 Tutorial: Creating a Modification Exit with SQLScript

Register an SQL script as a modification exit for an OData `create` operation for an entity.

Prerequisites

To perform this task, you need the following objects:

- A table to expose for the OData create operation, for example, `sample.odata::table.hdbtable`
- An error type, for example, `sample.odata::error.hdbstructure`

i Note

These objects are used as **types** in the procedure.

Context

SAP HANA XS enables you to register custom code that handles the OData write operation for non-trivial cases. In this tutorial, you see how to register a modification exit for an OData CREATE operation for an entity. The procedure you register verifies the data to insert, refuses the insertion request if the specified ID is less than 1000, and in the event of an error, inserts a row with error information into the output table.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

Procedure

1. Create a table definition file using `.hdbtable` syntax.

The table you create in this step is used in the procedure you create later in the tutorial. The table to expose is defined in `sample.odata::table.hdbtable`, which should look like the following example:

```
table.schemaName = "ODATASAMPLES";
table.columns = [{name = "ID"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;}];
table.primaryKey.pkcolumns = ["ID"];
```

2. Create a table type for the error output parameter of the exit procedure.

The error type you create in this step is used in the procedure you create later in the tutorial. The error type file `sample.odata::error.hdbstructure` should look like the following example:

```
table.schemaName = "ODATASAMPLES";
```

```

    table.columns = [
        {name = "HTTP_STATUS_CODE"; sqlType = INTEGER;},
        {name = "ERROR_MESSAGE"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; length = 100;},
        {name = "DETAIL"; sqlType = NVARCHAR; length = 100;}
    ];

```

3. Create a procedure that runs before the UPDATE event.

The table and error type objects you created in the previous steps are used as **types** in the procedure created here. The procedure also performs a verification on the data, rejects the insertion in case of an ID below 1000, and inserts a row with error information into the output table.

The procedure `sample.odata:createmethod.hdbprocedure` should look like the following example:

```

procedure "ODATA_TEST"."sample.odata::createmethod"
    (IN new "sample.odata::table", OUT error "sample.odata::error")
language sqlscript
sql security invoker as
    id INT;
begin
    select ID into id from :new;
    if :id < 1000 then
        error = select 400 as http_status_code,
                    'invalid ID' error_message,
                    'value must be >= 1000' detail from dummy;
    else
        insert into "sample.odata::table" values (:id);
    end if;
end;

```

4. Register the procedure to be executed at the CREATE event.

You use the `create using` keywords to register the procedure, as illustrated in the following OData service file:

```

service {
    "sample.odata::table"
        create using "sample.odata::createmethod";
}

```

7.1.6.15 Tutorial: Creating a Modification Exit with XS JavaScript

You can use server-side JavaScript to write a script which you register as a modification exit for an OData **update** operation for an entity.

Prerequisites

To perform this task, bear in mind the following prerequisites:

- A table to expose for the OData create operation, for example, `sample.odata::table.hdbtable`

Context

SAP HANA XS enables you to register custom code that handles the OData write operation. In this tutorial, you see how to use server-side JavaScript (XSJS) to write a script which you register as a modification exit for OData UPDATE operations for an entity. The script you register verifies the data to insert, and throws a defined error string in the event of an error, for example, Could not update table; check access permissions.

i Note

Unlike SQLScript, it is not possible to use an XSJS script to return an error structure.

To register an XS JavaScript function as an OData modification exit, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Create a table definition file, for example, using the .hdbtable syntax.

The table you create in this step is used in the XS JavaScript function you create later in the tutorial. The table to expose is defined in sample.odata:table.hdbtable, which should look like the following example:

```
COLUMN TABLE "table" (
    "ID" INTEGER NOT NULL,
    PRIMARY KEY ("ID")
);
```

2. Create the XS JavaScript function that you want to register for OData modification events.

i Note

The XS JavaScript function that you want to register for OData modification events must be created in the form of an XSJS library, for example, with the file extension .xsjslib; the XS JavaScript function cannot be an .xsjs file.

The function you register has one parameter, which can have the properties listed in the following table:

Table 81:

Property	Type	Description
connection	Connection	The SQL connection used in the OData request
beforeTableName	String	The name of a temporary table with the single entry before the operation (UPDATE and DELETE events only)
afterTableName	String	The name of a temporary table with the single entry after the operation (CREATE and UPDATE events only)

The XS JavaScript function jsexit.xsjslib could look like the following example:

```
function update_instead(param) {
```

```

$.trace.debug("entered function");
let before = param.beforeTableName;
let after = param.afterTableName;
let pStmt = param.connection.prepareStatement('select * from "' + after
+'"');
// ...
if (ok) {
    // update
} else {
    throw "an error occurred; check access privileges"
}
}

```

- Bind the XS JavaScript function to the entity specified in the OData service definition.

To bind the XS JavaScript function to a specified entity, use the syntax:

`<Package.Path>:<file>.<suffix>::<XSJS_FunctionName>` as illustrated in the following example:

```

service {
    "sample.odata::table" as "Table" update using
    "sap.test:jsexit.xsjslib::update_instead";
}

```

7.1.7 OData Service Definition Language Syntax (XS Advanced)

The OData Service Definition Language (OSDL) provides a set of keywords that enable you to set up an ODATA service definition file that specifies what data to expose, in what way, and to whom.

The following list shows the syntax of the OData Service Definition Language (OSDL) in an EBNF-like format; conditions that apply for usage are listed after the table.

definition	<code>:=service [annotations]</code>
service	<code>:= 'service' [namespace] body</code>
namespace	<code>:= 'namespace' quotedstring</code>
quotedstring	<code>:= quote string quote</code>
string	<code>:= UTF8</code>
quote	<code>:= '''</code>
body	<code>:= '{' content '}'</code>
content	<code>:= entry [content]</code>
entry	<code>:= (entity association) ;</code>
entity	<code>:= object [entityset] [with] [keys] [navigates]</code>
[aggregates] [parameters] [modification]	
object	<code>:= ['entity'] (repoobject catalogobject)</code>
repoobject	<code>:= quote repopackage '/' reponame '.' repoextension quote</code>
repopackage	<code>:= string</code>
reponame	<code>:= string</code>
repoextension	<code>:= string</code>
catalogobject	<code>:= catalogobjectschema '.' catalogobjectname</code>
catalogobjectschema	<code>:= quotedstring</code>
catalogobjectname	<code>:= quotedstring</code>
entityset	<code>:= 'as' entitysetname</code>
entitysetname	<code>:= quotedstring</code>
with	<code>:= ('with' 'without') propertylist</code>
propertylist	<code>:= (' columnlist ')</code>
columnlist	<code>:= columnname [',', columnlist]</code>
columnname	<code>:= quotedstring</code>
keys	<code>:= 'keys' (keylist keygenerated)</code>
keylist	<code>:= propertylist</code>
keygenerated	<code>:= 'generate' (keygenlocal)</code>

```

keygenlocal          :='local' columnname
navigates           :='navigates' '(' navlist ')'
navlist              :=naventry [',', navlist]
naventry             :=assocname 'as' navpropname [fromend]
assocname            :=quotedstring
navpropname          :=quotedstring
fromend              :='from' ( 'principal' | 'dependent' )
aggregates           :='aggregates' 'always' [aggregatestuple]
aggregatestuple     :=(' aggregateslist ')
aggregateslist      :=aggregate [',', aggregateslist]
aggregate            :=aggregatefunction 'of' columnname
aggregatefunction   :=( 'SUM' | 'AVG' | 'MIN' | 'MAX' )
parameters            :=parameters' 'via' [parameterskeyand] 'entity'
[parameterentitysetname] [parametersresultsprop]
parameterskeyand    :='key' 'and'
parameterentitysetname :=quotedstring
parametersresultsprop :='results' 'property' quotedstring
modification         :=[create] [update] [delete]
create               :='create' modificationspec
update               :='update' modificationspec
delete               :='delete' modificationspec
modificationspec    :=( modificationaction [events] | events | 'forbidden' )
modificationaction  :='using' action
action               :=quotedstring
events               :='events' '(' eventlist ')'
eventlist             :=eventtype action [',', eventlist]
eventtype             :=( 'before' | 'after' | 'precommit' | 'postcommit' )
association           :=associationdef [assocrefconstraint] principalend
dependentend        [( assocable | storage | modification )]
associationdef       :='association' assocname
assocrefconstraint   :='with' 'referential' 'constraint'
principalend         :='principal' end
dependentend         :='dependent' end
end                 :=endref multiplicity
endref               :=endtype [joinpropertieslist]
endtype              :=entitysetname
joinpropertieslist   :=(' joinproperties ')
joinproperties        :=columnlist
multiplicity          :='multiplicity' quote multiplicityvalue quote
multiplicityvalue    :=( '1' | '0..1' | '1..*' | '*' )
assocable             :='over' repobj overprincipalend overdependentend
[modification]
overprincipalend     :='principal' overend
overdependentend     :='dependent' overend
overend               :=propertylist
storage              :=( nostorage | storageend [modification] )
nostorage             :='no' 'storage'
storageend            :='storage' 'on' ( 'principal' | 'dependent' )
annotations           :='annotations' annotationsbody
annotationsbody      :='{ annotationscontent }'
annotationscontent   :=annotationconfig [annotationscontent]
annotationconfig     :='enable' annotation
annotation            :='OData4SAP'

```

Note

Support for OData annotations is currently not available in SAP HANA XS Advanced.

Conditions

The following conditions apply when using the listed keywords:

1. If the `namespace` is not specified, the schema namespace in the EDMX metadata document will be the repository package of the service definition file concatenated with the repository object name. E.g. if the repository design time name of the `.xsodata` file is `sap.hana.xs.doc/hello.xsodata` the namespace will implicitly be `sap.hana.xs.doc.hello`.
2. `keyslist` must not be specified for objects of type 'table'. They must only be applied to objects referring a view type. `keygenerated` in turn, can be applied to table objects.
3. If the `entityset` is not specified in an entity, the EntitySet for this object is named after the repository object name or the `catalogobjectname`. For example, if object is "sap.hana.xs.doc/odata_docu", then the `entitysetname` is implicitly set to `odata_docu`, which then can also be referenced in associations.
4. The `fromend` in a naventry must be specified if the `endtype` is the same for both the `principalend` and the `dependentend` of an association.
5. The number of `joinproperties` in the `principalend` must be the same as in the `dependentend`.
6. Ordering in the `joinproperties` of ends is relevant. The first `columnname` in the `joinproperties` of the `principalend` is compared with the first `columnname` of the `dependentend`, the second with the second, and so on.
7. The `overprincipalend` corresponds to the `principalend`. The number of properties in the `joinproperties` and the `overproperties` must be the same and their ordering is relevant. The same statement is true for the dependent end.
8. `aggregates` can only be applied in combination with `keygenerated`.
9. If `aggregatestuple` is omitted, the aggregation functions are derived from the database. This is only possible for calculation views and analytic views.
10. Specifying `parameters` is only possible for calculation views and analytic views.
11. The default `parameterentitysetname` is the `entitysetname` of the entity concatenated with the suffix "Parameters".
12. If the `parametersresultsprop` is omitted, the navigation property from the parameter entity set to the entity is called "Results".
13. Support for OData annotations is currently under development. For more information about the SAP-specific metadata annotations that become available with the `enable OData4SAP` statement in an `.xsodata` file, see the Related Links below. Note that not all annotations allowed by OData are supported by SAP HANA XS.

Related Information

[SAP Annotations for OData](#) 

[Open Data Protocol](#) 

7.1.8 OData Service Definition: SQL-EDM Type Mapping (XS Advanced)

During the activation of the OData service definition, the SAP HANA SQL types are mapped to the required OData EDM types according to the rules specified in a mapping table.

The following mapping table lists how SAP HANA SQL types are mapped to OData EDM types during the activation of an OData service definition.

i Note

The OData implementation in SAP HANA XS supports only those SQL types listed in the following table.

Table 82: SAP HANA SQL to OData EDM Type Mapping

SAP HANA SQL Type	OData EDM Type
Time	Edm.Time
Date	Edm.DateTime
SecondDate	Edm.DateTime
LongDate	Edm.DateTime
Timestamp	Edm.DateTime
TinyInt	Edm.Byte
SmallInt	Edm.Int16
Integer	Edm.Int32
BigInt	Edm.Int64
SmallDecimal	Edm.Decimal
Decimal	Edm.Decimal
Real	Edm.Single
Float	Edm.Single
Double	Edm.Double
Varchar	Edm.String
NVarchar	Edm.String
Char	Edm.String
NChar	Edm.String
Binary	Edm.Binary
Varbinary	Edm.Binary

Example SQL Type Mapping

The following examples shows how SAP HANA SQL types (name, integer, Varchar) of columns in a table are mapped to the OData EDM types in the properties of an entity type.

SAP HANA SQL:

```
{name = "ID"; sqlType = INTEGER; nullable = false;},  
{name = "RefereeID"; sqlType = VARCHAR; nullable = true;}
```

The following example illustrates how the SAP HANA SQL types illustrated in the previous example are mapped to EDM types:

```
<Property Name="ID" Type="Edm.Int32" Nullable="false"/>  
<Property Name="RefereeID" Type="Edm.String" Nullable="true"/>
```

7.1.9 OData Security Considerations

Enabling access to data by means of OData can create some security-related issues that you need to consider and address, for example, the data you want to expose, who can start the OData service, and so on.

If you want to use OData to expose data to users and clients in SAP HANA application services, you need to bear in mind the security considerations described in the following list:

- **Data Access**
Restrict user select authorization for tables/views exposed by the OData service
- **OData Service**
Restrict authorization rights to start the OData service
- **OData Statistical content**
Restrict access to the URL/Path used to expose OData content in the Web browser

7.1.10 OData Batch Requests (XS Advanced)

The OData standard allows the collection of multiple individual HTTP requests into one single batched HTTP request.

Clients using a defined OData service to consume exposed data can collect multiple, individual HTTP requests, for example, retrieve, create, update and delete (GET, POST, PUT, DELETE), in a single “batch” and send the batched request to the OData service as a single HTTP request. You can compile the batch request manually (by creating the individual requests in the batch document by hand) or automatically, for example, with an AJAX call that adds requests to a queue and loops through the queues to build the batch request. In both cases, the OData standard specifies the syntax required for the header and body elements of a valid batch request document.

SAP HANA XS supports the OData \$batch feature out-of-the-box; there is nothing to configure in SAP HANA XS to use \$batch to perform operations in SAP HANA using an OData service. To understand how the \$batch feature works, you need to look at the following phases of the operation:

- Batch Request
- Batch Response

A batch request is split into two parts: the request header and the request body. The body of a batch request consists of a list of operations in a specific order where each operation either retrieves data (for example,

using the HTTP GET command) or requests a change. A change request involves one or more insert, update or delete operations using the POST, PUT, or DELETE commands.

i Note

A change request must not contain either a **retrieve** request or any nested change requests.

The batch request must contain a Content-Type header specifying the value "multipart/mixed" and a boundary ID `boundary=batch_#`; the batch boundary ID is then used to indicate the start of each batch request, as illustrated in the following example.

```
POST /service/$batch HTTP/1.1
Host: host
Content-Type: multipart/mixed;boundary=batch_8219-6895          // Define batch ID
--batch_8219-6895
  Content-Type: multipart/mixed; boundary=changeset_a4e3-a738 // Define
  changeset ID
  --changeset_a4e3-a738                                         // Changeset 1
start
  Content-Type: application/http
  Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
  [PUT...]

  --changeset_a4e3-a738                                         // Changeset 2
start
  Content-Type: application/http
  Content-Transfer-Encoding: binary
  [POST...]
  --changeset_a4e3-a738--                                       // Changeset (all)
end
--batch_8219-6895                                               // Batch part 2
start
  Content-Type: application/http
  Content-Transfer-Encoding:binary
  [GET...]
--batch_8219-6895--                                             // Batch (all) end
```

Within the batch request, changeset is defined by another boundary ID (for example, `boundary=changeset_123`), which is then used to indicate the start and end of the change requests. The batch request must be closed, too.

i Note

In the following example of a simple OData batch request, some content has been removed to emphasize the structure and layout.

```
POST http://localhost:8002/sap/sample/odata/syntax.xsodata/$batch HTTP/1.1
Host: localhost:8002
Connection: keep-alive
Content-Length: 471
User-Agent: Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT 6.1; WOW64) AppleWebKit/537.36 (KHTML, like
Gecko) Chrome/30.0.1599.101 Safari/537.36
Cache-Control: no-cache
Content-Type: multipart/mixed; boundary=batch_123
Accept: */*
Accept-Encoding: identity
Accept-Language: en-US,en;q=0.8
x-sap-request-language: en-US
--batch_123
Content-Type:multipart/mixed;boundary=changeset_456
Content-Transfer-Encoding:binary
```

```
--changeset_456
Content-Type:application/http
Content-Transfer-Encoding:binary
POST BatchSample HTTP/1.1
Content-Type:application/json
Content-Length:11
{"ID" : 14}
--changeset_456
Content-Type:application/http
Content-Transfer-Encoding:binary
POST BatchSample HTTP/1.1
Content-Type:application/json
Content-Length:11
Accept: application/json
{"ID" : 15}
--changeset_456--
--batch_123--
```

The batch response includes a response for each of the retrieve or change operations included in the corresponding batch request. The order of the responses in the response body must match the order of requests in the batch request. In the context of the batch response, the following is true:

- The response to a retrieve request is always formatted in the same way regardless of whether it is sent individually or as part of batch.
- The body of the collected response to a set of change-requests is one of the following:
 - A response for **all** the successfully processed change requests within the change set, in the correct order and formatted exactly as it would have appeared outside of a batch
 - A single response indicating the failure of the entire change set

The following example shows the form and syntax of the OData batch response to the request illustrated above.

```
HTTP/1.1 202 Accepted
content-type: multipart/mixed; boundary=0CDF14D90919CC8B4A32BD0E0B330DA10
content-length: 2029
content-language: en-US
cache-control: no-cache
expires: Thu, 01 Jan 1970 00:00:00 GMT
--0CDF14D90919CC8B4A32BD0E0B330DA10
Content-Type: multipart/form-data; boundary=0CDF14D90919CC8B4A32BD0E0B330DA11
Content-Length: 1843
--0CDF14D90919CC8B4A32BD0E0B330DA11
Content-Type: application/http
Content-Length: 1118
content-transfer-encoding: binary
HTTP/1.1 201 Created
Content-Type: application/atom+xml; charset=utf-8
location: http://localhost:8002/sap/sample/odata/syntax.xsodata/BatchSample(14) /
Content-Length: 943
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" standalone="yes"?><entry xml:base="http://
localhost:8002/sap/sample/odata/syntax.xsodata/" xmlns:d="http://
schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices" xmlns:m="http://
schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/metadata" xmlns="http://
www.w3.org/2005/Atom"><id>http://localhost:8002/sap/sample/odata/syntax.xsodata/
BatchSample(14)</id><title type="text"></title><author><name /></author><link
rel="edit" title="BatchSample" href="BatchSample(14)" /><link rel="http://
schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/related/Ref" type="application/
atom+xml;type=entry" title="Ref" href="BatchSample(14)/Ref"></link><category
term="sap.sample.odata.syntax.BatchSampleType" scheme="http://
schemas.microsoft.com/ado/2007/08/dataservices/scheme" /><content
type="application/xml"><m:properties><d:ID m:type="Edm.Int32">14</d:ID><d:SELFID
m:type="Edm.Int32" m:null="true"></d:SELFID></m:properties></content></entry>
--0CDF14D90919CC8B4A32BD0E0B330DA11
Content-Type: application/http
```

```

Content-Length: 427
content-transfer-encoding: binary
HTTP/1.1 201 Created
Content-Type: application/json
location: http://localhost:8002/sap/sample/odata/syntax.xsodata/BatchSample(15)
Content-Length: 271
{"d":{"__metadata": {"uri":"http://localhost:8002/sap/sample/odata/
syntax.xsodata/
BatchSample(15)"}, "type":"sap.sample.odata.syntax.BatchSampleType"}, "ID":
15, "SELFID":null, "Ref":{"__deferred":{"uri":"http://localhost:8002/sap/sample/
odata/syntax.xsodata/BatchSample(15)/Ref"}}}
--0CDF14D90919CC8B4A32BD0E0B330DA11--
--0CDF14D90919CC8B4A32BD0E0B330DA10--

```

OData Batch Requests in SAPUI5 Applications

If you are developing a UI client using SAPUI5, you can make use of the ODataModel tools to ensure that the data requests generated by the various UI controls bound to an OData service are collected and sent in batches. The SAPUI5 ODataModel toolset includes a large selection of tools you can use to configure the use of the OData batch feature, for example:

- `setUseBatch`
Enable or disable batch processing for all requests (read and change)
- `addBatchChangeOperations`
Appends the change operations to the end of the batch stack, which is sent with the `submitBatch` function
- `addBatchReadOperations`
Appends the read operations to the end of the batch stack, which is sent with the `submitBatch` function
- `submitBatch`
Submits the collected changes in the batch which were collected via `addBatchReadOperations` or `addBatchChangeOperations`.

Related Information

[Open Data Protocol](#)

[SAPUI5 ODataModel Reference](#)

7.2 Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) , the persistence model (for example, tables, views and stored procedures) is mapped to the consumption model that is exposed to clients - the applications you write to extract data from the SAP HANA database.

You can map the persistence and consumption models with XML for Analysis (XMLA). With XMLA, you write multi-dimensional-expressions (MDX) queries wrapped in an XMLA document. An XML for Analysis (XMLA)

application running in SAP HANA application services (SAP HANA XS) is used to provide the consumption model for client applications exchanging MDX queries (wrapped in XMLA documents) with the SAP HANA database.

XMLA uses Web-based services to enable platform-independent access to XMLA-compliant data sources for Online Analytical Processing (OLAP). XMLA enables the exchange of analytical data between a client application and a multi-dimensional data provider working over the Web, using a Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP)-based XML communication application-programming interface (API).

Applications running in SAP HANA XS enable you to control the flow of data between the presentational layer, for example, in the Web browser, and the data-processing layer in SAP HANA itself, where the calculations are performed, for example in SQL or SQLScript. If you develop and deploy an XMLA service running in SAP HANA XS, you can take advantage of the access to SAP HANA that SAP HANA XS provides to improve end-to-end performance.

Related Information

[Defining Web-based Data Access \[page 495\]](#)

7.2.1 XML for Analysis (XMLA)

XML for Analysis (XMLA) uses Web-based services to enable platform-independent access to XMLA-compliant data sources for Online Analytical Processing (OLAP).

XMLA enables the exchange of analytical data between a client application and a multi-dimensional data provider working over the Web, using a Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP)-based XML communication application-programming interface (API).

Implementing XMLA in SAP HANA enables third-party reporting tools that are connected to the SAP HANA database to communicate directly with the MDX interface. The XMLA API provides universal data access to a particular source over the Internet, without the client having to set up a special component. XML for Analysis is optimized for the Internet in the following ways:

- **Query performance**

Time spent on queries to the server is kept to a minimum

- **Query type**

Client queries are stateless by default; after the client has received the requested data, the client is disconnected from the Web server.

In this way, tolerance to errors and the scalability of a source (the maximum permitted number of users) is maximized.

XMLA Methods

The specification defined in XML for Analysis Version 1.1 from Microsoft forms the basis for the implementation of XML for Analysis in SAP HANA.

The following list describes the methods that determine the specification for a stateless data request and provides a brief explanation of the method's scope:

- **Discover**

Use this method to query metadata and master data; the result of the `discover` method is a rowset. You can specify options, for example, to define the query type, any data-filtering restrictions, and any required XMLA properties for data formatting.

- **Execute**

Use this method to execute MDX commands and receive the corresponding result set; the result of the `Execute` command could be a multi-dimensional dataset or a tabular rowset. You can set options to specify any required XMLA properties, for example, to define the format of the returned result set or any local properties to use to determine how to format the returned data.

Related Information

[Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS \[page 535\]](#)

7.2.2 XMLA Service Definition

The XMLA service definition is a file you use to specify which data is exposed as XMLA collections. Exposed data is available for analysis and display by client applications, for example, a browser that uses functions provided either by the XMLA service running in SAP HANA XS or by an XMLA client library running on the client system.

To expose information via XMLA to applications using SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), you define database views that provide the data with the required granularity and you use the XMLA service definition to control access to the exposed data.

i Note

SAP HANA XS supports XMLA version 1.1, which you can use to send MDX queries.

An XMLA service for SAP HANA XS is defined in a text file with the file suffix `.xsxmla`, for example, `XMLASrvDef.xsxmla`. The file **must** contain only the entry `{*}`, which would generate a completely operational XMLA service.

XMLA Service-Definition Keywords

Currently, the XMLA service-definition file enables you to specify only that all authorized data is exposed to XMLA requests, as illustrated in the following example:

```
Service {*} 
```

7.2.3 XMLA Security Considerations

Enabling access to data by means of XMLA opens up some security considerations that you need to address, for example, the data you want to expose, who can start the XMLA service, and so on.

If you want to use XMLA to expose data to users and clients in SAP HANA XS, you need to bear in mind the security considerations described in the following list:

- **Data Access**

Restrict user select authorization for data exposed by the XMLA service

- **XMLA Statistical content**

Restrict access to the URL/Path used to expose XMLA content in the Web browser, for example, using the application-access file (`.xsaccess`)

7.2.4 Multidimensional Expressions (MDX)

Multidimensional Expressions (MDX) is a language for querying multidimensional data that is stored in OLAP cubes.

MDX uses a multidimensional data model to enable navigation in multiple dimensions, levels, and up and down a hierarchy. With MDX, you can access pre-computed aggregates at specified positions (levels or members) in a hierarchy.

i Note

MDX is an open standard. However, SAP has developed extensions to MDX to enable faster and more efficient access to multidimensional data; for example, to serve specific SAP HANA application requirements and to optimize the result set for SAP HANA clients.

MDX is implicitly a hierarchy-based paradigm. All members of all dimensions must belong to a hierarchy. Even if you do not explicitly create hierarchies in your SAP HANA data model, the SAP HANA modeler implicitly generates default hierarchies for each dimension. All identifiers that are used to uniquely identify hierarchies, levels and members in MDX statements (and metadata requests) embed the hierarchy name within the identifier.

In SAP HANA, the standard use of MDX is to access SAP HANA models (for example, analytical and attribute views) that have been designed, validated and activated in the modeler in the SAP HANA studio. The studio provides a graphical design environment that enables detailed control over all aspects of the model and its language-context-sensitive runtime representation to users.

MDX in SAP HANA uses a runtime cube model, which usually consists of an analytical (or calculation) view that represents data in which dimensions are modeled as attribute views. You can use the analytical view to specify whether a given attribute is intended for display purposes only or for aggregation. The attributes of attribute views are linked to private attributes in an analytic view in order to connect the entities. One benefit of MDX in SAP HANA is the native support of hierarchies defined for attribute views.

i Note

MDX in SAP HANA includes native support of hierarchies defined for attribute views. SAP HANA supports level-based and parent-child hierarchies and both types of hierarchies are accessible with MDX.

SAP HANA supports the use of variables in MDX queries; the variables are an SAP-specific enhancement to standard MDX syntax. You can specify values for all mandatory variables that are defined in SAP HANA studio to various modeling entities. The following example illustrates how to declare SAP HANA variables and their values:

```
MDX
Select
From [SALES_DATA_VAR]
Where [Measures].[M2_1_M3_CONV]
SAP VARIABLES [VAR_VAT] including 10,
               [VAR_K2] including 112,
               [VAR_TARGET_CURRENCY] including 'EUR',
```

7.2.5 MDX Functions

MDX in SAP HANA supports a variety of standard MDX functions.

The following MDX functions are supported:

- Aggregate
- Ancestor
- Ancestors
- Ascendants
- Avg
- BottomCount
- Children
- ClosingPeriod
- Count
- Cousin
- Crossjoin
- CurrentMember
- DefaultMember
- Descendants
- Dimension
- Dimensions
- Distinct
- DistinctCount
- DrillDownLevel
- DrillDownLevelBottom
- DrillDownLevelTop
- DrillDownMember
- DrillDownMemberBottom
- DrillDownMemberTop
- DrillUpLevel
- DrillUpmember
- Except
- Filter

FirstChild
FirstSibling
Generate
Head
Hierarchize
Hierarchy
Instr
Intersect
IsAncestor
IsGeneration
IsLeaf
IsSibling
Item
IIF
Lag
LastChild
LastPeriods
LastSibling
Lead
Leaves
Left
Level
Levels
Max
Member_caption
Members
MembersAscendantsDescendants
Mid
Min
MTD
Name
NextMember
NOT
OpeningPeriod
OR
Ordinal
ParallelPeriod
Parent
PeriodsToDate
PrevMember
Properties
QTD
Range
Right
Siblings

StrToMember
StrToSet
StrToTuple
StrToValue
Subset
Sum
Tail
TopCount
Union
UniqueName
WTD
YTD

For more information about these functions, see Microsoft's Multidimensional Expressions (MDX) Reference.

Related Information

<https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms145506.aspx> ↗

7.2.6 MDX Extensions

SAP HANA supports several extensions to the MDX language, including additional predefined functions and support for variables.

Related Information

[Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS \[page 535\]](#)

[Sibling_Ordinal Intrinsic Property \[page 541\]](#)

[MembersAscendantsDescendants Function \[page 542\]](#)

[Variables in MDX \[page 543\]](#)

7.2.6.1 Sibling_Ordinal Intrinsic Property

The object `Member` includes a property called `Sibling_Ordinal`, that is equal to the 0-based position of the member within its siblings.

Example

WITH

```

MEMBER [Measures].[Termination Rate] AS
    [Measures].[NET_SALES] / [Measures].[BILLED_QUANTITY]
SELECT
{
    [Measures].[NET_SALES],
    [Measures].[BILLED_QUANTITY],
    [Measures].[Termination Rate]
} ON COLUMNS,
Descendants
(
    [DISTRIBUTION_CHANNEL].[DISTRIBUTION_CHANNEL].[All].[{all}],
    1,
    SELF_AND_BEFORE
)
DIMENSION PROPERTIES SIBLING_ORDINAL ON ROWS
FROM SALES_DATA

```

Related Information

[MDX Extensions \[page 541\]](#)

[MembersAscendantsDescendants Function \[page 542\]](#)

[Variables in MDX \[page 543\]](#)

7.2.6.2 MembersAscendantsDescendants Function

SAP HANA includes the `MembersAscendantsDescendants` function that enables you to get, for example, all ascendants and descendants of a specific member.

This function improves on the standard MDX functions `Ascendants` and `Descendants`.

The function can be called as follows:

```
MembersAscendantsDescendants (<set>, <flag>)
```

- **`set`:** A set of members from a single hierarchy
- **`flag`:** Indicates which related members to return, and can be one of the following:
 - `MEMBERS_AND_ASCENDANTS_AND_DESCENDANTS`
 - `MEMBERS_AND_ASCENDANTS`
 - `MEMBERS_AND_DESCENDANTS`
 - `ASCENDANTS_AND_DESCENDANTS`
 - `ONLY_ASCENDANTS`
 - `ONLY_DESCENDANTS`

Example

```

SELECT
{ [Measures].[SALES] }
ON COLUMNS,
NON EMPTY

```

```
{ Hierarchize( MembersAscendantsDescendants([SALES_DATA_TIME].[TimeHier].  
[QUARTER].[3]:[SALES_DATA_TIME].[TimeHier].[QUARTER].[4],  
MEMBERS_AND_ASCENDANTS_AND_DESCENDANTS )) }  
ON ROWS  
FROM [SALES_DATA]
```

Example

```
SELECT  
{ [Measures].[SALES] }  
ON COLUMNS,  
NON EMPTY  
{ Hierarchize( MembersAscendantsDescendants([SALES_DATA_TIME].[TimeHier].  
[QUARTER].[3]:[SALES_DATA_TIME].[TimeHier].[QUARTER].[4], ONLY_ASCENDANTS )) }  
ON ROWS  
FROM [SALES_DATA]
```

Related Information

[Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS \[page 535\]](#)

[MDX Extensions \[page 541\]](#)

7.2.6.3 Variables in MDX

An MDX SELECT statement in SAP HANA enables you to send values for variables defined within modeling views.

Analytic and calculation views can contain variables that can be bound to specific attributes. When calling the view, you can send values for those variables. These variables can be used, for example, to filter the results.

SAP HANA supports an extension to MDX whereby you can pass values for variables defined in views by adding an SAP Variables clause in your SELECT statement. Here is the syntax for a SELECT statement:

```
<select_statement>:  
[WITH <formula_specification> ]  
SELECT [<axis_specification>[,<axis_specification>...]]  
    FROM <cube_specification>  
    [WHERE <slicer_specification>  
  
SAP VARIABLES: <sap_variable> [[,] <sap_variable>...]]  
<sap_variable>: <variable_name> <sign> [<option>] <variable_value>  
<sign>: INCLUDING | EXCLUDING  
<option>: = | > | >= | < | <= | <>  
<variable_value>:  
    <unique_member_name>  
    | <unsigned_numeric_literal>  
    | <string_value_expression>  
    | <member> : <member>  
    | <character_string_literal> : <character_string_literal>  
    | <unsigned_numeric_literal> : <unsigned_numeric_literal>
```

Example

The following statement specifies a single value for variables VAR_VAT, VAR_K2, and VAR_TARGET_CURRENCY.

```
SELECT
  FROM [SALES_DATA_VAR]
 WHERE [Measures].[M2_1_M3_CONV]
 SAP VARIABLES [VAR_VAT] including 10,
             [VAR_K2]   including 112,
             [VAR_TARGET_CURRENCY] including 'EUR'
```

Example

The following specifies an interval for variable VAR_K2.

```
SELECT NON EMPTY
  {
    [K2].[K2].Members
  } ON ROWS
  FROM [SALES_DATA_VAR_SIMPLE]
 WHERE [Measures].[M3_CONV]
 SAP VARIABLES [VAR_K2] including [K2].[K2].[122]:[K2].[K2].[221]
```

Metadata on Variables in Views

SAP HANA includes the following set of tables that contain information about the variables defined for views:

- BIMC_VARIABLE
- BIMC_VARIABLE_ASSIGNMENT
- BIMC_VARIABLE_VALUE

The tables enable, for example, an application to retrieve the variables defined for a view and create a user interface so the user can enter values.

Related Information

[Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS \[page 535\]](#)

[MDX Extensions \[page 541\]](#)

7.2.7 Define the Data an XMLA Service Exposes

Define the tables and views to expose as an XMLA service.

Prerequisites

If you already have a data model containing tables or views that can be exposed, you do not need to create additional elements. You can use the tables and views that are already available.

Context

An XMLA service exposes data stored in database tables for analysis and display by client applications. However, first of all, you need to ensure that the tables and views to expose as an XMLA service actually exist and are accessible.

To define the data to expose using an XMLA service, you must perform at least the following tasks:

Procedure

1. Create a simple database schema.
2. Create a simple database table to expose with an XMLA service.
3. If required, create a simple database view to expose with an XMLA service.
4. Grant select privileges to the tables and views to be exposed with the XMLA service.

Related Information

[Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS \[page 535\]](#)

7.2.8 Create an XMLA Service Definition

The XMLA service definition is a file you use to specify which data is exposed as XMLA/MDX collections for analysis and display by client applications.

Context

An XMLA service for SAP HANA XS is defined in a text file with the file suffix .xsxmla, for example, XMLASrvDef.xsxmla. The file resides in the package hierarchy of the XMLA application and must contain the entry service {*}, which generates an operational XMLA service.

Prerequisites for the creation of an XMLA service definition:

- SAP HANA studio and client is installed and configured
- An SAP HANA database user is available with repository privileges (for example, to add packages)
- An SAP HANA development system is added to (and available in) SAP HANA studio, for example, in either the *Systems* view or the *Repositories* view
- A working development environment is available that includes: a repository workspace, a package structure for your XMLA application, and a shared project to enable you to synchronize changes to the XMLA project files in the local file system with the repository
- Data is available to expose using the XMLA interface.

Procedure

1. In the shared project you are using for your XMLA application, use the *Project Explorer* view to locate the package where you want to create the new XMLA service definition.

Note

The file containing the XMLA service definition must be placed in the root package of the XMLA application for which the service is intended.

2. Create the file that will contain your XMLA service definition.

In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new XMLA service-definition file and choose  in the context-sensitive popup menu displayed.

3. Create the XMLA service definition.

The XMLA service definition is a configuration file that you use to specify which data is to be exposed as an XMLA collection.

The following code is an example of a valid XMLA service definition, which exposes all authorized data to XMLA requests:

```
service{*}
```

4. Place the valid XMLA service definition in the root package of the XMLA application.

5. Save the XMLA service definition.

i Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose *Team* *Commit* from the context-sensitive popup menu.

6. Activate the XMLA service definition in the repository.
 - Locate and right-click the new service-definition file in the *Project Explorer* view.
 - In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose *Team* *Activate*.

7.2.9 Tutorial: Use the SAP HANA XMLA Interface

You can use the XML for Analysis (XMLA) interface included in SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) to provide a service that enables XMLA-capable clients to query multidimensional cubes in SAP HANA.

Prerequisites

Since the artifacts required to get a simple XMLA service up and running are stored in the repository, make sure that you read through and comply with the following prerequisites:

- You have a development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- You have created a dedicated project in the repository workspace
- You have shared the new project
- A multidimensional data cube is available in SAP HANA, for example, in the form of a calculation view, an analytic view, or an attribute view
- An XMLA client is available

Context

To send an XMLA query to SAP using the XMLA interface provided by SAP HANA XS, perform the following steps:

Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA Studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

Procedure

1. Create a root package for your XMLA interface test, for example, `helloxmla` and save and activate it in the repository.

i Note

The namespace `sap` is restricted. Place the new package in your own namespace, which you can create alongside the `sap` namespace.

2. Create an application descriptor for your new XMLA test in your root XMLA package `helloxmla`.

The application descriptor (`.xsapp`) is the core file that you use to define an application's availability within SAP HANA. The `.xsapp` file sets the point in the application-package structure from which content will be served to the requesting clients.

i Note

The application-descriptor file has no content and no name; it only has the extension `.xsapp`.

3. Save, commit, and activate the application-descriptor file in the repository.

i Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose from the context-sensitive popup menu.

4. Create an application-access file for your new XMLA test and place it in your root XMLA package `helloxmla`.

The application-access file enables you to specify who or what is authorized to access the content exposed by the application.

i Note

The application-access file has no name; it only has the extension `.xsaccess`.

Ensure the application content is exposed to HTTP requests by entering the following command in the `.xsaccess` file for your new XMLA test:

```
{  
    "exposed" : true,  
    "prevent_xsrf" : true  
}
```

These entries ensure that application data can be exposed to client requests and that protection against cross-site, request-forgery attacks is enabled.

5. Save, commit, and activate the application-access file in the repository.

6. Create an XMLA service-definition file and place it in your root XMLA package `helloxmla`.

The XMLA service-definition file has the file extension `.xsxmla`, for example, `hello.xsxmla` and must be located in the root package of the XMLA application:

Enter the following content in the `hello.xsxm1a` XMLA service-definition file:

```
service {*
```

7. Save, commit, and activate the XMLA service-definition file in the repository.
8. Test the connection to the SAP HANA XS Web server.

`http://<hana.server.name>:80<HANA_instance_number>/helloxmla/hello.xsxm1a`

i Note

You have successfully completed this step if you see a 404 Error page; the page indicates that the SAP HANA XS Web server has responded.

9. Connect your XMLA client application to the inbuilt XMLA interface in SAP HANA XS.

To connect an XMLA-capable client (for example, Microsoft Excel) with the XMLA interface in SAP HANA XS, you will need a product (for example, a plug-in for Microsoft Excel) that can transfer the XMLA message that the SAP HANA XS XMLA interface can understand.

10. Configure your client to send an XMLA query to SAP HANA.

7.3 Using the SAP HANA REST API

The SAP HANA REST Application Programming Interface (REST API) is based on and extends the Orion server and client APIs.

SAP HANA REST API supports the Orion protocol 1.0 which allows development tools to access the SAP HANA Repository in a convenient and standards-compliant way. This not only makes access to the Repository easier for SAP HANA tools, but it also enables the use of Orion-based external tools with the SAP HANA Repository. For SAP tools, the Orion server protocol has been extended with the following SAP HANA-specific features

- Activate design-time artifacts in the Repository
- Perform change-tracking operations (assuming change-tracking is enabled in the target SAP HANA system)
- Searching the database catalog

Table 83: SAP HANA REST Application Programming Interfaces

API	Description
File	Enables access to services that you to browse and manipulate files and directories via HTTP
Workspace	Enables you to create and manipulate workspaces and projects via HTTP
Transfer	Enables you to import and export packages and files
Metadata	Enables access to services that support search and auto-completion scenarios, for example, to retrieve metadata from runtime, design-time, and other metadata locations
Change Tracking	Enables the use of specific lifecycle-management features included with the SAP HANA Repository via HTTP
Info	Enables access to information about the current version of the SAP HANA REST API

The SAP HANA REST API uses an additional parameter called `SapBackPack` to send request parameters that are specific to SAP HANA; the `SapBackPack` parameter is added to the HTTP header. The value of the

SapBackPack parameter is a JSON object with the attributes and values of the additional SAP-specific parameters. For example, when you create or update the content of a design-time artifact, you can use the SapBackPack value { "Activate": true } to request that the new version of the file is immediately activated in the SAP HANA Repository. If you only want to create an inactive version of a design-time artifact, you can use the “workspace” attribute to specify the name of the the Repository workspace where the inactive version is to be stored.

Related Information

[SAP HANA REST Info API \[page 550\]](#)
[SAP HANA REST File API \[page 551\]](#)
[SAP HANA REST Change-Tracking API \[page 556\]](#)
[SAP HANA REST Metadata API \[page 557\]](#)
[SAP HANA REST Transfer API \[page 558\]](#)
[SAP HANA REST Workspace API \[page 560\]](#)
[SAP HANA REST API Reference](#)

7.3.1 SAP HANA REST Info API

The SAP HANA REST API includes an Info API that can be used to display information about the current version of the REST API.

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/info  
Orion-Version: 1.0
```

The information displayed by the Info API includes a description of the current version of the delivery unit and the number of commands (API entry points) that are currently supported by the REST API.

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK  
{  
  "DeliveryUnit": {  
    "name": "HANA_DT_BASE",  
    "version": "1",  
    "responsible": "x##007, x##077",  
    "vendor": "sap.com",  
    "version_sp": "0",  
    "version_patch": "8",  
    "ppmsID": "",  
    "caption": "",  
    "lastUpdate": 1386163749544,  
    "sp_PPMS_ID": "",  
    "ach": ""  
  },  
  "Commands": [  
    "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file",  
    "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/workspace",  
    "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/xfer/import",  
    "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/metadata",  
    "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/change",  
    "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/info"  
  ]
```

}

Related Information

[Using the SAP HANA REST API \[page 549\]](#)

[SAP HANA REST API Reference](#)

7.3.2 SAP HANA REST File API

The SAP HANA REST API includes a File API which uses the basic HTTP methods `GET`, `PUT`, and `POST` to send requests. JSON is used as the default representation format.

The File API enables you to perform the following actions:

Table 84:

Action	Description
Actions on files [page 551]	Get, set, or change file content and metadata
Actions on directories [page 552]	Get and change directory metadata and list directory contents
Create files and directories [page 553]	Create files and directories with or without content
Copy and move files [page 554]	Copy, move, or delete files and directories
Mass transfer actions [page 554]	Get multiple files (or file metadata) from a list, repository package, or a workspace
Change tracking [page 555]	Activate selectively the latest approved versions of repository objects

Actions on Files

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfile.txt
Orion-Version: 1.0
If-Match: "358768768767"
SapBackPack: {"'Workspace': 'ABC', 'Version': 12}"
```

The REST File API enables you to retrieve the content of a specific file, for example, `myfile.txt`.

i Note

In the request illustrated in the example above, the parameters `Version`, `If-Match`, and `SapBackPack` are optional

The response to the retrieval request is displayed in the following example:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: text/plain
Content-Length: 22
This is the content
```

The REST File API enables you to retrieve the metadata associated with a specific file, for example, myfile.txt.

Note

In the request illustrated in the example below, the parameters Version, If-Match, and SapBackPack are optional

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfile.txt?parts=meta
Orion-Version: 1.0
SapBackPack: {"History": "false", "Version": 12}
If-Match: "35987989879"
```

The response to the retrieval request for metadata is displayed in the following example:

```
{
  "Name": "myfile.txt",
  "Location": "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfile.txt",
  "RunLocation": "/MyProj/myfile.txt",
  "ETag": "35987989879",
  "Directory": false,
  "LocalTimeStamp": 01234345009837,
  "Attributes": {
    "ReadOnly": false,
    "Executable": false,
    "SapBackPack": {"Activated": true}
  },
  "SapBackPack": {
    "Version": 60,
    "ActivatedAt": 1397644007537,
    "ActivatedBy": "User"
  }
}
```

Actions on Directories

You can use the REST File API to retrieve and change directory (repository package) metadata as well as list the contents of a directory. The following example shows how to list the contents of a singel directory, for example, myfolder.

Tip

To list all files from a directory recursively, use depth=infinity or -1. For security reasons the depth is limited to 1000.

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfolder?depth=1
```

The following example shows the response to the directory listing request:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: application/json
Content-Length: 132
{
  "Name": "myfolder",
  "Location": "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfolder",
  "ContentLocation": "/MyProj/myfolder",
  "LocalTimeStamp": 01234345009837,
  "Directory": true
  "Attributes": {
    "ReadOnly": false,
    "Executable": false
  },
  "Children": [
  {
    "Name": "myfile.txt",
    "Location": "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfolder/myfile.txt",
    "RunLocation": "/MyProj/myfolder/myfile.txt",
    "Directory": false
  } ] }
```

File and Directory Creation

You can use the REST File API to create files and directories (repository packages) with or without content. The following example shows how to create a new directory, for example, `myfolder`.

i Note

If a parent directory (in which the new directory is created) is already assigned to a delivery unit, the created directory will be assigned automatically to the same delivery unit.

```
POST /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/
Content-Type: application/json
X-CSRF-Token: "65ABA3082325A3408FBE71C87929102B"
Slug: myfolder
{
  "Name": "myfolder",
  "Directory": "true"
}
```

The following example shows the response to the directory creation request:

```
HTTP/1.1 201 OK
{
  "Name": "myfolder",
  "Location": "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfolder",
  "ContentLocation": "/MyProj/myfolder",
  "ETag": "35fd43td3",
  "LocalTimeStamp": 01234345009837,
  "Directory": true
  "Attributes": {
    "ReadOnly": false,
    "Executable": false
  }
}
```

Copying and Moving Files

You can use the REST File API to copy, move, or delete files and directories (repository packages). You can also use the File API to delete the workspace that contains files and directories used for development work. The following example shows how to delete a directory, for example, `myfolder`.

```
DELETE /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfile.txt
Orion-Version = 1.0
X-CSRF-Token: "65ABA3082325A3408FBE71C87929102B"
If-Match: "35" (optional)
```

The following example shows how to delete a workspace.

i Note

You need to include the parameters `ProcessWorkspace=true` and `Workspace` in the `SapBackPack` parameter.

```
DELETE /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfile.txt
Orion-Version = 1.0
X-CSRF-Token: "65ABA3082325A3408FBE71C87929102B"
SapBackPack: "{ 'Workspace': 'ABC', 'ProcessWorkspace': true }"
```

Both requests should receive the following response:

```
HTTP/1.1 204 OK
```

Mass File Transfer

Mass transfer with the REST File API enables you to apply `GET` and `PUT` operations to multiple files in a single HTTP request.

i Note

The mass-transfer feature is not a part of the Orion specification; it was developed to optimize the performance of `GET` and `PUT` requests when dealing with a large number of files.

There are different ways of specifying the file paths. One way is to point the request's URL to the root of the file repository, as illustrated in the request example below. In this case, you must specify the complete path from the root of the repository for each file. Another possibility is to point the request's URL to a specified sub-package in the Repository, which is then considered to be the root package for the files to be retrieved in the request. To request a file's meta-data, use the parameter `parts=meta`; the response contains a list of file metadata formatted as a JSON string. If the request does not contain the parameter `parts=meta`, a multipart response is returned.

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file?parts=meta
Orion-Version = 1.0
SapBackPack: '{ "MassTransfer":true, "MassTransferData": [
{ "Pkg":"MyProj/myfolder", "Name":"destination1.txt", "Dir":false}, ... ] }'
```

The response expected should look like the following example:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: application/json
[
{
  "Name": "destination1.txt",
  "Location": "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfolder/destination1.txt",
  "RunLocation": "/MyProj/myfolder/destination1.txt",
  "ETag": "351234567",
  "LocalTimeStamp": 01234345009837,
  "Directory": false,
  "Attributes": { "ReadOnly": false, "Executable": true, "SapBackPack" : { 'Activated' : true} }
},
{
  "Name": "destination2.txt",
  "Location": "/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/MyProj/myfolder/destination2.txt",
  "RunLocation": "/MyProj/myfolder/destination2.txt",
  "ETag": 251237891,
  "LocalTimeStamp": 01234345009837,
  "Directory": false,
  "Attributes": { "ReadOnly": false, "Executable": true, "SapBackPack" : { 'Activated' : true} }
}
]
```

Change Tracking

You can use the REST File API to perform change-tracking operations. Change tracking enables you to activate selectively the latest approved versions of objects.

i Note

This feature of the REST File API assumes that the change-tracking feature is enabled in the SAP HANA repository.

```
PUT /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/PATH?parts=meta
Orion-Version = 1.0
X-CSRF-Token: securityToken
SapBackPack: '{"MassTransfer":true, "Activate":true, "ChangeId": "ABC//11111",
"ChangeIdList": [{"Path": "PATH/file1.txt", "ChangeId" = "ABC//12345"}, {"Path": "PATH/file2.txt", "ChangeId" = "ABC//12345"}]}'
```

If an object (or a set of objects) is activated using the default change-tracking handling (for example, without setting `SapBackPack.ChangeTrackingMode` or by setting `SapBackPack.ChangeTrackingMode` explicitly to 0), a dynamic change list is created, and the file(s) are activated in the SAP HANA Repository using the generated change list.

In the explicit handling of change tracking the user is allowed to activate files that are already assigned to a change list. Files can also be activated using an explicitly provided change list ID. In the change-tracking request above, the files `PATH/file1.txt` and `PATH/file2.txt` are assigned to the change list `ABC//12345`. All other files will be activated using the change list `ABC//11111`.

The response to the change-tracking request would look like the following example:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
```

```
Content-Type: application/json  
...
```

Related Information

[Using the SAP HANA REST API \[page 549\]](#)
[SAP HANA REST API Reference](#)

7.3.3 SAP HANA REST Change-Tracking API

The SAP HANA REST API includes a Change Tracking API which enables you to make use of specific lifecycle-management features that are included with the SAP HANA Repository via HTTP.

Change Tracking is integrated with the SAP HANA XS Repository transport tool set; with change tracking enabled, you can ensure that an export operation (to build a delivery unit) includes only the latest approved versions of repository objects.

i Note

To use the Change-Tracking API, change tracking must be enabled in the SAP HANA system whose repository you are accessing.

To obtain the current status of change tracking in the system, for example, enabled or disabled, you can send a GET request to the **change** entry point of the REST API.

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/change
```

If the change tracking feature is **enabled** in the target system, the resulting response is **true**. If change tracking is **disabled** in the target system or not supported by the system, the response to the GET status request is **false**.

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
{
  "ChangeTrackingStatus": true
}
```

You can also use the REST Change-Tracking API to manage change lists and track changes made to repository objects. For example, to display all change lists, for which a specified user ("XYZ") is a contributor:

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/change
SapBackPack: {'User': 'XYZ', 'Status': 1}
```

The response would look like the following example:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
[
  {
    "changeID": "ABC//1234",
    "status": 1,
    "description": "",
```

```
        "createdOn": "2014-04-09T13:26:58.868Z",
        "createdBy": "XYZ"
    },
{
    "changeID": "ABC//1235",
    "status": 1,
    "description": "",
    "createdOn": "2014-04-09T14:08:53.024Z",
    "createdBy": "XYZ"
}
]
```

To display the change status of a single file `SomeFile.txt`, use the following command:

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/change/MyProj/SomeFile.txt
```

The response would look like the following example, which shows the change ID and the user responsible for the change:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
{
    "ChangeId": "ABC//1234",
    "User": "XYZ"
}
```

Related Information

[Using the SAP HANA REST API \[page 549\]](#)

[SAP HANA REST API Reference](#)

7.3.4 SAP HANA REST Metadata API

The SAP HANA REST API includes a Metadata API which provides services to support search and autocomplete scenarios

The REST-based Metadata API enables you to retrieve metadata from runtime and design-time objects as well as other metadata locations. The typical location of runtime metadata is the SAP HANA database catalog. It is possible to retrieve metadata for tables, views, procedures, functions, sequences, and schemas. The design-time location for metadata is the SAP HANA Repository. Also accessible is the metadata location used by Core Data Services (CDS).

The following services are provided with the Metadata API in the default location `/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/metadata`; the services are called by setting the HTTP parameter `Service-Name` to the appropriate value:

- `checkMetadataExistence`
Checks for the existence of a provided set of entities and returns an array of entries which indicates if a specified entity exists or not.
- `checkMetadataExistence URI`
Checks for the existence of a specific resource (entity) uniquely expressed as an HTTP universal resource indicator (URI). `checkMetadataExistence URI` returns an array of entries which indicates if a given entity exists or not.

- `getMetadataSuggestion`

i Note

This part of the interface only supports HTTP GET requests.

The following example shows how to use `checkMetadataExistence` URI to check for the existence of a specific URI resource.

```
var strPayloadFromJava = "{}";
var strHeaderServiceName = "checkMetadataExistence";
var strSapBackPack = strPayloadFromJava;
var strAccessPath = cMetaDataAdapterP + '/VIEW/RT/TABLES';
var request = new $.net.http.Request($.net.http.GET, strAccessPath);
request.headers.set('SapBackPack', strSapBackPack);
request.headers.set('Service-Name', strHeaderServiceName);
var response = client.request(request, destination).getResponse();
```

`checkMetadataExistence` URI returns an array of entries which indicates if a given entity exists or not.

```
List<metadata>
  localName
  isExist
  List<exist> [6]
    namespace
    separator [7]
    baseLocalName
    baseType
    type
    mode [8]
    desc
```

Related Information

[Using the SAP HANA REST API \[page 549\]](#)

[SAP HANA REST API Reference](#)

7.3.5 SAP HANA REST Transfer API

The SAP HANA REST Transfer API is used to import and export packages and files.

You can use the Transfer API to perform both import and export operations:

- [Import \[page 559\]](#)
Upload files to the SAP HANA Repository, for example, using POST, PUT, or FTP
- [Export \[page 559\]](#)
Download files from the SAP HANA Repository to a client

Importing Files

The following example shows how to use the Transfer API to start an operation to upload files to the SAP HANA Repository. The request URL uses the `POST` command to perform the action and must indicate the target location of the uploaded file when the upload operation is complete. The request must also indicate the total size of the file the server should expect to receive during the upload operation.

```
POST /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/xfer/import/MyProj/SomeFile.jpg
Orion-Version: 1.0
X-CSRF-Token: "65ABA3082325A3408FBE71C87929102B"
Slug: MyFile.jpg
X-Xfer-Content-Length: 901024
X-Xfer-Options: raw
```

The response to the request would look as follows:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Location: /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/xfer/import/fks3kjd7hf
ContentLocation: /xfer/fks3kjd7hf
```

After initiating the transfer, uploads are performed as many times as required using `PUT` actions.

```
PUT /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/xfer/import/fks3kjd7hf
Orion-Version: 1.0
X-CSRF-Token: "65ABA3082325A3408FBE71C87929102B"
Content-Length: 32768
Content-Type: image/jpeg
Content-Range: bytes 0-32767/901024
```

For each successful upload operation, you should see the following response:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 success
Range: bytes 0-32767
```

Exporting Files

You can use the REST Transfer API to export (download) files and packages to a designated client in a zip archive, as illustrated in the following example:

```
GET /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/xfer/export/MyProj/SomeFolder.zip
Orion-Version: 1.0
```

For each successful download operation, you should see the following response:

```
HTTP/1.1 201 OK
Content-Type: application/zip
File contents.
```

Related Information

[Using the SAP HANA REST API \[page 549\]](#)

7.3.6 SAP HANA REST Workspace API

The Workspace API enables you to create and manipulate Repository workspaces and projects via HTTP.

With the Workspace API, you can perform the following types of operation on workspaces and projects:

- Workspaces
 - List available workspaces, create or delete a workspace, and display or change workspace metadata
- Projects
 - Add projects to a workspace, move (or rename) a project, remove a project from a workspace

Workspace Actions

You can use the REST Workspace API to create a new workspace called “My Dev Workspace”, as illustrated in the following example:

```
POST sap/hana/xs/dt/base/workspace
EclipseWeb-Version: 1.0
X-CSRF-Token: "65ABA3082325A3408FBE71C87929102B"
Slug: My Dev Workspace
```

The response to the workspace-creation request should look like the following example:

```
HTTP/1.1 201 Created
Location: [http://example.com/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/
content/workspace/SAM_My_Dev_workspace_0]
ETag: "1"
Content-Type: application/json
{
  "Id": "SAM_My_Dev_workspace_0",
  "Name": "My Dev Workspace",
  "Location": "http://example.com/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/
content/workspace/SAM_My_Dev_workspace_0",
  "Projects": [],
  "Children": []
}
```

Projects

You can also use the REST Workspace API to create a new SAP HANA XS project (“My Project”) and add it an existing workspace (“My Dev Workspace”), as illustrated in the following example. The Workspace API creates the new project as an SAP HANA XS subpackage in the specified workspace package. The new project is assigned to the list of projects in the specified workspace’s metadata.

Note

The new project is **not** an SAP HANA XS application package.

```
POST /sap/hana/xs/dt/base/workspace/SAM_My_Dev_workspace_0
X-CSRF-Token: "65ABA3082325A3408FBE71C87929102B"
EclipseWeb-Version: 1.0
Slug: "My Project"
```

The response to the project-creation request should look like the following example:

```
{
  "Id": "SAM_My_Dev_Workspace_0_My_Project_0",
  "Location": "http://localhost:8080/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/
content/workspace/SAM_My_Dev_Workspace_0/My Project",
  "ContentLocation": "http://localhost:8080/sap/hana/xs/dt/base/file/sap/
hana/xs/dt/base/content/workspace/SAM_My_Dev_Workspace_0/My Project",
  "Name": "My Project"
}
```

Related Information

[Using the SAP HANA REST API \[page 549\]](#)

[SAP HANA REST API Reference](#)

8 Writing Server-Side JavaScript Code

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) provide applications and application developers with access to the SAP HANA database using a consumption model that is exposed via HTTP.

In addition to providing application-specific consumption models, SAP HANA XS also host system services that are part of the SAP HANA database, for example: search services and a built-in Web server that provides access to static content stored in the SAP HANA repository.

The consumption model provided by SAP HANA XS focuses on server-side applications written in JavaScript. Applications written in server-side JavaScript can make use of a powerful set of specially developed API functions, for example, to enable access to the current request session or the database. This section describes how to write server-side JavaScript code that enables you to expose data, for example, using a Web Browser or any other HTTP client.

8.1 Data Access with JavaScript in SAP HANA XS

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services, the persistence model (for example, tables, views and stored procedures) is mapped to the consumption model that is exposed via HTTP to clients - the applications you write to extract data from SAP HANA.

You can map the persistence and consumption models in the following way:

- **Application-specific code**

Write code that runs in SAP HANA application services. Application-specific code (for example, server-side JavaScript) is used in SAP HANA application services to provide the consumption model for client applications.

Applications running in SAP HANA XS enable you to accurately control the flow of data between the presentational layer, for example, in the Browser, and the data-processing layer in SAP HANA itself, where the calculations are performed, for example in SQL or SQLScript. If you develop and deploy a server-side JavaScript application running in SAP HANA XS, you can take advantage of the embedded access to SAP HANA that SAP HANA XS provides; the embedded access greatly improves end-to-end performance.

8.2 Using Server-Side JavaScript in SAP HANA XS

SAP HANA application services (XS server) supports server-side application programming in JavaScript. The server-side application you develop can use a collection of JavaScript APIs to expose authorized data to client requests, for example, to be consumed by a client GUI such as a Web browser or any other HTTP client.

The functions provided by the JavaScript APIs enable server-side JavaScript applications not only to expose data but to update, insert, and delete data, too. You can use the JavaScript APIs to perform the following actions:

- Interact with the SAP HANA XS runtime environment
- Directly access SAP HANA database capabilities
- Interact with services on defined HTTP destinations.

JavaScript programs are stored in the repository along with all the other development resources. When the programs are activated, the code is stored in the repository as a runtime object.

➔ Tip

To enable the Web Browser to display more helpful information if your JavaScript code causes an HTTP 500 exception on the SAP HANA XS Web server, ask someone with administrator privileges to start the SAP HANA studio's *Administration Console* perspective and add the parameter `developer_mode` to the   section of the *Configuration* tab and set it to true.

Related Information

[Write XS Server-Side JavaScript \[page 563\]](#)
[JavaScript Security Considerations \[page 566\]](#)

8.2.1 Tutorial: Write Server-Side JavaScript Application Code

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) supports server-side application programming in JavaScript. The server-side application you develop uses JavaScript APIs to expose authorized data to client requests, for example, for consumption by a client GUI such as a Web browser, SAPUI5 applications, or mobile clients.

Prerequisites

- Access to a running SAP HANA system.
- Access to SAP HANA studio
- Access to an SAP HANA Repository workspace

- Access to a shared project in the SAP HANA Repository where you can create the artifacts required for this tutorial.

Context

Since JavaScript programs are stored in the SAP HANA Repository, the steps in this task description assume that you have already created a workspace and a project (of type *XS Project*), and that you have shared the project with other members of the development team. To write a server-side JavaScript application, you must perform the following high-level steps.

➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

Procedure

1. Create a root package for your application, for example, `helloxsjs`.
2. Create an application descriptor for your application and place it in the root package you created in the previous step.

The application descriptor is the core file that you use to describe an application's availability within SAP HANA XS. The application-descriptor file has no contents and no name; it only has the file extension `.xsapp`.

i Note

For backward compatibility, content is allowed in the `.xsapp` file but ignored.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new application descriptor and choose in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Save the application-descriptor file.

i Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose from the context-sensitive popup menu.

- c. Activate the application-descriptor file in the repository.

Locate and right-click the new application-descriptor file in the *Project Explorer* view. In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose .

3. Create an application-access file and place it in the package to which you want to grant access.
The application-access file does not have a name; it only has the file extension `.xsaccess`. The contents of the `.xsaccess` file must be formatted according to JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) rules and associated with the package the file belongs to. The rules defined in the `.xsaccess` file apply to the package it resides in as well as any subpackages lower in the package hierarchy.
 - a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new application-access file and choose **New > Other > SAP HANA > Application Development > XS Application Access File** in the context-sensitive popup menu.
 - b. Enter the following content in the `.xsaccess` file for your new XSJS application:

```
{  
  "exposed" : true,  
  "authentication" : { "method": "Form" },  
  "prevent_xsrf" : true,  
}
```

i Note

These settings allows data to be exposed, require logon authentication to access the exposed data, and help protect against cross-site request-forgery (XSRF) attacks.

- c. Save and activate the application-access file in the repository.
4. Create the server-side JavaScript (XSJS) files that contain the application logic.
Server-side JavaScript files have the file suffix `.xsjs`, for example, `hello.xsjs` and contain the code that is executed when SAP HANA XS handles a URL request.
 - a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new XSJS file and choose **New > Other > SAP HANA > Application Development > XS JavaScript File** in the context-sensitive popup menu.
 - b. Using the wizard, enter the following content in the `.xsjs` file for your new XSJS application:

```
$.response.contentType = "text/plain";  
$.response.setBody( "Hello, World!" );
```

- c. Save and activate the XSJS file in the repository.
5. Check the layout workspace.
Your application package structure should have a structure that looks like the following example:

```
.\  
  \helloxsjs  
    \  
      .xsapp  
      .xsaccess  
      .xsprivileges // optional  
      hello.xsjs
```

6. Save and activate the changes and additions you made.
7. View the results in a Web browser.

The SAP HANA XS Web server enables you to view the results immediately after activation in the repository, for example: `http://<SAPHANA_hostname>:80<DB_Instance_Number>/helloxsjs/hello.xsjs`

8.2.1.1 JavaScript Editor

You can write server-side JavaScript using the SAP HANA studio JavaScript editor, which provides syntax validation, code highlighting and code completion.

The SAP HANA studio's JavaScript editor includes the JSLint open-source library, which helps to validate JavaScript code. The editor highlights any code that does not conform to the JSLint standards.

To configure the JSLint library and determine which validations are performed, go to: ► [Window](#) ► [Preferences](#) ► [SAP HANA](#) ► [Application Development](#) ► [JSLint](#). In the preferences window, each JSLint setting is followed by the corresponding JSLint command name, which you can use to lookup more information on the JSLint Web site.

➔ Tip

To disable all JSLint validations for files in a specific project, right-click the project and choose [Disable JSLint](#).

Related Information

<http://www.jslint.com/lint.html> ↗

8.2.1.2 Server-Side JavaScript Security Considerations

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) external attacks such as cross-site scripting and forgery, and insufficient authentication.

The following list illustrates the areas where special attention is required to avoid security-related problems when writing server-side JavaScript. Each of the problems highlighted in the list is described in detail in its own dedicated section:

- SSL/HTTPS
Enable secure HTTP (HTTPS) for inbound communication required by an SAP HANA application.
- Injection flaws
In the context of SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) injection flaws concern SQL injection that modifies the URL to expand the scope of the original request.
- Cross-site scripting (XSS)
Web-based vulnerability that involves an attacker injecting JavaScript into a link with the intention of running the injected code on the target computer.
- Broken authentication and session management
Leaks or flaws in the authentication or session management functions allow attackers to impersonate users and gain access to unauthorized systems and data.
- Insecure direct object references
An application lacks the proper authentication mechanism for target objects.

- Cross-site request forgery (XSRF)
Exploits the trust boundaries that exist between different Web sites running in the same web browser session.
- Incorrect security configuration
Attacks against the security configuration in place, for example, authentication mechanisms and authorization processes.
- Insecure cryptographic storage
Sensitive information such as logon credentials is not securely stored, for example, with encryption tools.
- Missing restrictions on URL Access
Sensitive information such as logon credentials is exposed.
- Insufficient transport layer protection
Network traffic can be monitored, and attackers can steal sensitive information such as logon credentials or credit-card data.
- Invalid redirects and forwards
Web applications redirect users to other pages or use internal forwards in a similar manner.
- XML processing issues
Potential security issues related to processing XML as input or to generating XML as output

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

[SSL/HTTPS \[page 568\]](#)

[Injection flaws \[page 568\]](#)

[Cross-site scripting \(XSS\) \[page 570\]](#)

[Broken authentication and session management \[page 570\]](#)

[Insecure direct object references \[page 571\]](#)

[Cross-site request forgery \(XSRF\) \[page 572\]](#)

[Incorrect security configuration \[page 574\]](#)

[Insecure cryptographic storage \[page 574\]](#)

[Missing restrictions on URL Access \[page 575\]](#)

[Insufficient transport layer protection \[page 576\]](#)

[XML processing issues \[page 577\]](#)

8.2.1.2.1 Server-Side JavaScript: SSL/HTTPS

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) external attacks such as cross-site scripting and forgery, and insufficient authentication. You can set up SAP HANA to use secure HTTP (HTTPS).

SSL/HTTPS Problem

Incoming requests for data from client applications use secure HTTP (HTTPS), but the SAP HANA system is not configured to accept the HTTPS requests.

SSL/HTTPS Recommendation

Ensure the SAP Web Dispatcher is configured to accept incoming HTTPS requests. For more information, see the *SAP HANA Security Guide*.

i Note

The HTTPS requests are forwarded internally from the SAP Web Dispatcher to SAP HANA XS as HTTP (clear text).

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.2 Server-Side JavaScript: Injection Flaws

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) injection flaws. Typically, injection flaws concern SQL injection and involve modifying the URL to expand the scope of the original request.

The XS JavaScript API provides a number of different ways to interact with the SAP HANA database by using SQL commands. By default, these APIs allow you to read data, but they can also be used to update or delete data, and even to grant (or revoke) access rights at runtime. As a general rule, it is recommended to write a query which is either a call to an SQLScript procedure or a prepared statement where all parameters specified in the procedure or statement are escaped by using either `setString` or `setInt`, as illustrated in the examples provided in this section. Avoid using dynamic SQL commands with parameters that are not escaped.

Injection Flaws Problem

In the context of SAP HANA XS, injection flaws mostly concern SQL injection, which can occur in the SAP HANA XS JavaScript API or SQL script itself (both standard and dynamic). For example, the URL `http://xsengine/customer.xsjs?id=3` runs the code in the JavaScript file `customer.xsjs` shown below:

```
var conn = $.db.getConnection();
var pstmt = conn.prepareStatement( " SELECT * FROM accounts WHERE custID='"
+ $.request.parameters.get("id"));
var rs = pstmt.executeQuery();
```

By modifying the URL, for example, to `http://xsengine/customer.xsjs?id=3 'OR 1=1'`, an attacker can view not just one account but **all** the accounts in the database.

i Note

SAP HANA XS applications rely on the authorization provided by the underlying SAP HANA database.

Users accessing an SAP HANA XS based application require the appropriate privileges on the database objects to execute database queries. The SAP HANA authorization system will enforce the appropriate authorizations. This means that in those cases, even if the user can manipulate a query, he will not gain more access than is assigned to him through roles or privileges. Definer mode SQL script procedures are an exception to this rule that you need to take into consideration.

Injection Flaws Recommendation

To prevent injection flaws in the JavaScript API, use prepared statements to create a query and place-holders to fill with results of function calls to the prepared-statement object; to prevent injection flaws in standard SQL Script, use stored procedures that run in **caller** mode; in caller mode, the stored procedures are executed with the credentials of the logged-on HANA user. Avoid using dynamic SQL if possible. For example, to guard against the SQL-injection attack illustrated in the problem example, you could use the following code:

```
var conn = $.db.getConnection();
var pstmt = conn.prepareStatement( " SELECT * FROM accounts WHERE custID=?");
pstmt.setInt(1, $.request.parameters.get("id"), 10);
var rs = pstmt.executeQuery();
```

Prepared statements enable you to create the actual query you want to run and then create several placeholders for the query parameters. The placeholders are replaced with the proper function calls to the prepared statement object. The calls are specific for each type in such a way that the SAP HANA XS JavaScript API is able to properly escape the input data. For example, to escape a string, you can use the `setString` function.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

8.2.1.2.3 Server-Side JavaScript: Cross-Site Scripting

If you use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) cross-site scripting (XSS) attacks. Cross-site scripting is a Web-based vulnerability that involves an attacker injecting JavaScript into a link with the intention of running the injected code on the target computer.

Cross-Site Scripting Problem

The vulnerability to cross-site scripting attacks comes in the following forms:

- Reflected (non-persistent)
Code affects individual users in their local Web browser
- Stored (persistent)
Code is stored on a server and affects all users who visit the served page

A successful cross-site scripting attack could result in a user obtaining elevated privileges or access to information that should not be exposed.

Cross-Site Scripting Recommendation

Since there are currently no libraries provided by the standard SAP HANA XS JavaScript API to provide proper escaping, the best solution for generating HTML on SAP HANA XS is to use the ESAPI JavaScript libraries as a starting point. In addition, we recommend not to write custom interfaces but to rely on well-tested technologies supplied by SAP, for example, OData or JSON together with SAPUI5 libraries.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.4 Server-Side JavaScript: Broken Authentication

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) attack against authentication infrastructure. Leaks or flaws in the authentication or

session management functions allow attackers to impersonate users and gain access to unauthorized systems and data.

Authentication Problem

Leaks or flaws in the authentication or session management functions allow attackers to impersonate users; the attackers can be external as well as users with their own accounts to obtain the privileges of those users they impersonate.

Authentication Recommendation

Use the built-in SAP HANA XS authentication mechanism and session management (cookies). For example, use the "authentication" keyword to enable an authentication method and set it according to the authentication method you want implement, for example: SAP logon ticket, form-based, or basic (user name and password) in the application's `.xsaccess` file, which ensures that all objects in the application path are available only to authenticated users.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.5 Server-Side JavaScript: Insecure Object Reference

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) attacks using insecure references to objects.

Object Reference Problem

An SAP HANA XS application is vulnerable to insecure direct object reference if the application lacks the proper authentication mechanism for target objects.

Object Reference Recommendation

Make sure that only authenticated users are allowed to access a particular object. In the context of SAP HANA XS, use the "authentication" keyword to enable an authentication method and set it according to the

authentication method you implement, for example: SAP logon ticket, form-based, or basic (user name and password) in the application's `.xsaccess` file, which ensures that all objects in the application path are available only to authenticated users.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.6 Server-Side JavaScript: Cross-Site Request Forgery

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) cross-site request forgery (XSRF). Cross-site scripting is a web-based vulnerability that exploits the trust boundaries that exist between different websites running in the same web browser session.

Cross-Site Request-Forgery Problem

Since there are no clear trust boundaries between different Web sites running in the same Web-browser session, an attacker can trick users (for example, by luring them to a popular Web site that is under the attacker's control) into clicking a specific hyperlink. The hyperlink displays a Web site that performs actions on the visitor's behalf, for example, in a hidden iframe. If the targeted end user is logged in and browsing using an account with elevated privileges, the XSRF attack can compromise the entire Web application.

Cross-Site Request-Forgery Recommendation

SAP HANA XS provides a way to include a random token in the `POST` submission which is validated on the server-side. Only if this token is non-predictable for attackers can one prevent cross-site, request-forgery attacks. The easiest way to prevent cross-site, request-forgery attacks is by using the standard SAP HANA XS cookie. This cookie is randomly and securely generated and provides a good random token which is unpredictable by an attacker (`$.session.getSecurityToken()`).

To protect SAP HANA XS applications from cross-site request-forgery (XSRF) attacks, make sure you always set the `prevent_xsrf` keyword in the application-access (`.xsaccess`) file to `true`, as illustrated in the following example:

```
{  
    "prevent_xsrf" : true  
}
```

The `prevent_xsrf` keyword prevents the XSRF attacks by ensuring that checks are performed to establish that a valid security token is available for given Browser session. The existence of a valid security token determines

if an application responds to the client's request to display content. A security token is considered to be valid if it matches the token that SAP HANA XS generates in the backend for the corresponding session.

i Note

The default setting is false, which means there is no automatic prevention of XSS attacks. If no value is assigned to the `prevent_xsrf` keyword, the default setting (false) applies.

The following client-side JavaScript code snippet shows how to use the HTTP request header to fetch, check, and apply the XSS security token required to protect against XSS attacks.

```
<html>
<head>
    <title>Example</title>
    <script id="sap-ui-bootstrap" type="text/javascript"
        src="/sap/ui/5.1/resources/sap-ui-core.js"
        data-sap-ui-language="en"
        data-sap-ui-theme="sap_goldreflection"
        data-sap-ui-libs="sap.ui.core,sap.ui.common,sap.ui.ux3,sap.ui.table">
    </script>
    <script type="text/javascript" src="/sap/ui/5.1/resources/jquery-sap.js"></script>
    <script>
        function doSomething() {
            $.ajax({
                url: "logic.xsjs",
                type: "GET",
                beforeSend: function(xhr) {
                    xhr.setRequestHeader("X-CSRF-Token", "Fetch");
                },
                success: function(data, textStatus, XMLHttpRequest) {
                    var token = XMLHttpRequest.getResponseHeader('X-CSRF-Token');
                    var data = "somePayLoad";
                    $.ajax({
                        url: "logic.xsjs",
                        type: "POST",
                        data: data,
                        beforeSend: function(xhr) {
                            xhr.setRequestHeader("X-CSRF-Token", token);
                        },
                        success: function() {
                            alert("works");
                        },
                        error: function() {
                            alert("works not");
                        }
                    });
                }
            });
        }
    </script>
</head>
<body>
    <div>
        <a href="#" onClick="doSomething();">Do something</a>
    </div>
</body>
</html>
```

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.7 Server-Side JavaScript: Security Misconfiguration

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) attacks against the security configuration in place, for example, authentication mechanisms and authorization processes.

Insecure Configuration Problem

No or an inadequate authentication mechanism has been implemented.

Insecure Configuration Recommendation

Applications should have proper authentication in place, for example, by using SAP HANA built-in authentication mechanisms and, in addition, the SAP HANA XS cookie and session handling features. Application developers must also consider and control which paths are exposed by HTTP to the outside world and which of these paths require authentication.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.8 Server-Side JavaScript: Insecure Storage

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) attacks against the insecure or lack of encryption of data assets.

Storage-Encryption Problem

Sensitive information such as logon credentials is exposed.

Storage-Encryption Recommendation

To prevent unauthorized access, for example, in the event of a system break-in, data such as user logon credentials must be stored in an encrypted state.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.9 Server-Side JavaScript: Missing URL Restrictions

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) unauthorized access to URLs.

URL Access Problem

Unauthenticated users have access to URLs that expose confidential (unauthorized) data.

URL Access Recommendation

Make sure you have addressed the issues described in "Broken Authentication and Session Management" and "Insecure Direct Object References". In addition, check if a user is allowed to access a specific URL before actually executing the code behind that requested URL. Consider putting an authentication check in place for each JavaScript file before continuing to send any data back to the client's Web browser.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.10 Server-Side JavaScript: Transport Layer Protection

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) insufficient protection of the transport layer.

Transport Layer Protection Problem

Without transport-layer protection, the user's network traffic can be monitored, and attackers can steal sensitive information such as logon credentials or credit-card data.

Transport Layer Protection Recommendation

Turn on transport-layer protection in SAP HANA XS; the procedure is described in the SAP HANA security guide.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.11 Server-Side JavaScript: Invalid Redirection

If you use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) redirection and internal fowarding from the requested Web page.

Invalid Redirection Problem

Web applications frequently redirect users to other pages or use internal forwards in a similar manner. Sometimes the target page is specified in an invalid (not permitted) parameter. This enables an attacker to choose a destination page leading to the possibility of phishing attacks or the spamming of search engines.

Invalid Redirection Recommendation

To prevent invalidated redirects or forwards, application developers should validate the requested destination before forwarding, for example, by checking if the destination is present in a white list. If the destination URL specified in the redirection request is not present in the white list, the redirection is refused.

➔ Tip

Avoid using redirection if you cannot control the final destination.

Alternatively, you can refuse to allow any direct user input; instead, the input can be used to determine the final destination for the redirection, as illustrated in the following example:

```
var destination = $.request.parameters.get("dest");
switch (destination) {
  case "1": $.response.headers.set("location", "http://
FirstWhitelistedURL.com"); break;
  case "2": $.response.headers.set("location", "http://
SecondWhitelistedURL.com"); break;
  default: $.response.headers.set("location", "http://
DefaultWhitelistedURL.com");
}
```

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.2.1.2.12 Server-Side JavaScript: XML Processing Issues

If you choose to use server-side JavaScript to write your application code, you need to bear in mind the potential for (and risk of) attacks aimed at the process used to parse XML input and generate the XML output.

XML Processing Problem

There are several potential security issues related to processing XML as input or to generating XML as output. In addition, problems with related technologies (for example, XSL Transformations or XSLT) can enable the inclusion of other (unwanted) files.

XML Processing Recommendation

Turn on transport-layer protection in SAP HANA XS; the procedure is described in the SAP HANA security guide.

Bear in mind the following rules and suggestions when processing or generating XML output:

- When processing XML that originates from an untrusted source, disable DTD processing and entity expansion unless strictly required. This helps prevent Billion Laugh Attacks (Cross-Site Request Forgery), which can bring down the processing code and, depending on the configuration of the machine, an entire server.
- To prevent the inclusion (insertion) of unwanted and unauthorized files, restrict the ability to open files or URLs even in requests included in XML input that comes from a trusted source. In this way, you prevent the disclosure of internal file paths and internal machines.
- Ensure proper limits are in place on the maximum amount of memory that the XML processing engine can use, the amount of nested entities that the XML code can have, and the maximum length of entity names, attribute names, and so on. This practice helps prevent the triggering of potential issues.

Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

8.3 Using Server-Side JavaScript Libraries

The elements defined in normal server-side JavaScript programs cannot be accessed from other JavaScript programs. To enable the reuse of program elements, SAP HANA Extended Application Services support server-side JavaScript libraries.

Server-side JavaScript libraries are a special type of JavaScript program that can be imported and called in other JavaScript programs. You can use JavaScript libraries to perform simple, repetitive tasks, for example, to handle forms and form date, to manipulate date and time strings, to parse URLs, and so on.

i Note

JavaScript libraries are internally developed extensions for SAP HANA.

The following example shows how to import a JavaScript mathematics library using the import function:

```
// import math lib
$.import("sap.myapp.lib","math");
// use math lib
var max_res = $.sap.myapp.lib.math.max(3, 7);
```

The import function requires the following parameters:

- **Package name**

Full name of the package containing the library object you want to import, for example, `sap.myapp.lib`

- **Library name**

Name of the library object you want to import, for example, `math`

Note

Restrictions apply to the characters you can use in the names of JavaScript libraries and application packages. Permitted characters are: upper- and lower-case letters (Aa-Zz), digits 0-9, and the dollar sign (\$).

The standard JavaScript limitations apply to the characters you can use in either the name of the XSJS library you create or the name of the package where the library is deployed. For example, you cannot use the hyphen (-) in the name of an XSJS library or, if you are referencing the library, the name of a package in the application package path. To prevent problems with activation of the object in the SAP HANA repository, you must follow the standard rules for accessing JavaScript property objects by name. The following example, shows how to use square brackets and quotes (["<STRING>"]) to access an object whose name uses non-permitted characters such as a hyphen (-):

```
// import math lib
$.import("sap.myapp.lib.XS-QGP-SPS7", "math");
// use math lib
var max_res = $.sap.myapp.lib["XS-QGP-SPS7"].math.max(3, 7);
```

Related Information

[Import Server-Side JavaScript Libraries \[page 579\]](#)

[Write Server-Side JavaScript Libraries \[page 581\]](#)

8.3.1 Import Server-Side JavaScript Libraries

Server-side JavaScript libraries are a special type of JavaScript program that can be imported and called in other JavaScript programs. You can use JavaScript libraries to perform simple, repetitive tasks, for example: handle forms and form date, manipulate date and time strings, parse URLs, and so on.

Context

JavaScript libraries are internally developed extensions for SAP HANA. The libraries exist in the context of a package, which is referenced when you import the library. The following example of a JavaScript library displays the word "Hello" along with a name and an exclamation mark as a suffix.

```
var greetingPrefix = "Hello, ";
var greetingSuffix = "!";
function greet (name) {
    return greetingPrefix + name + greetingSuffix;
}
```

Note

This procedure uses the illustrated example JavaScript library to explain what happens when you import a JavaScript library, for example, which objects are created, when, and where. If you have your own library to import, substitute the library names and paths shown in the steps below as required.

To import a JavaScript library for use in your server-side JavaScript application, perform the following tasks

Procedure

1. Import the JavaScript library into a JavaScript application.

Open the server-side JavaScript file into which you want to import the JavaScript library.

Use the `$.import` function, as follows:

```
$.import("<path.to.your.library.filename>", "greetLib");
var greeting = $.<path.to.your.library.filename>.greet("World");
$.response.setBody(greeting);
```

2. Save and activate the changes to the JavaScript file.

Although the operation is simple, bear in mind the following points:

- Additional objects in the package hierarchy

The import operation generates a hierarchy of objects below `$` that resemble the library's location in the repository, for example, for the library `path/to/your/library/greetLib.xsjslib`, you would see the following additional object:

```
$.path.to.your.library.greetLib
```

- Additional properties for the newly generated library object:

```
$.path.to.your.library.greetLib.greet()
$.path.to.your.library.greetLib.greetingSuffix
$.path.to.your.library.greetLib.greetingPrefix
```

- Pre-import checks:

- It is not possible to import the referenced library if the import operation would override any predefined runtime objects.

- Do not import the referenced library if it is already present in the package.

- Library context

Imported libraries exist in the context defined by their repository location.

8.3.2 Write Server-Side JavaScript Libraries

Server-side JavaScript libraries are a special type of JavaScript program that can be imported and called in other JavaScript programs. You can use JavaScript libraries to perform simple, repetitive tasks, for example, to handle forms and form date, to manipulate date and time strings, to parse URLs, and so on.

Context

JavaScript libraries are internally developed extensions for SAP HANA. However, you can write your own libraries, too. JavaScript libraries exist in the context of a package, which is referenced when you import the library. To write a JavaScript library to use in your server-side JavaScript application, perform the following steps:

Procedure

1. Create the file that contains the JavaScript library you want to add to the package and make available for import.

In SAP HANA XS, server-side JavaScript libraries have the file extension `.xsjslib`, for example `greetLib.xsjslib`.

- a. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new XSJS file and choose in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Type a name for the new XS JavaScript library file, for example `greetLib` and choose *Finish*.
If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file creation wizard adds a separator (.) and the required file extension automatically, for example, `.xsjslib`.
- c. Enter the following content in the `greetLib.xsjslib` XSJS library file for your new XSJS application. The following example creates a simple library that displays the word "Hello" along with a supplied name and adds an exclamation point (!) as a suffix.

```
var greetingPrefix = "Hello, ";
var greetingSuffix = "!";
function greet (name) {
    return greetingPrefix + name + greetingSuffix;
}
```

2. Save the new JavaScript library.

It is important to remember where the JavaScript library is located; you have to reference the package path when you import the library.

3. Activate your new library in the repository so that it is available for import by other JavaScript applications.

8.4 Using the Server-Side JavaScript APIs

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) provides a set of server-side JavaScript application programming interfaces (API) that enable you to configure your applications to interact with SAP HANA.

The SAP HANA XS JavaScript Reference lists all the functions that are available for use when programming interaction between your application and SAP HANA. For example, you can use the database API to invoke SQL statements from inside your application, or access details of the current HTTP request for SAP HANA data with the request-processing API. SAP HANA XS includes the following set of server-side JavaScript APIs:

Table 85: XS JavaScript Application Programming Interfaces

API	Description
Database	Enables access to the SAP HANA by means of SQL statements. For example, you can open a connection to commit or rollback changes in SAP HANA, to prepare stored procedures (or SQL statements) for execution or to return details of a result set or a result set's metadata.
Outbound connectivity	Enables outbound access to a defined HTTP destination that provides services which an application can use. For example, you can read the connection details for an HTTP destination, request data, and set details of the response body. You can also set up an SMTP connection for use by outgoing multipart e-mails.
Request processing	Enables access to the context of the current HTTP request, for example, for read requests and write responses. You can use the functions provided by this API to manipulate the content of the request and the response.
Session	Enables access to the SAP HANA XS session, for example, to determine the language used in the session or if a user has the privileges required to run an application.
Job Schedule	Enables access to the job-scheduling interface which allows you to define and trigger recurring tasks that run in the background. The XS jobs API allows you to add and remove schedules from jobs.
Security	Enables access to the <code>\$.security.crypto</code> namespace and the classes <code>AntiVirus</code> and <code>Store</code> , which provide tools that allow you to configure a secure store, set up anti-virus scans, and generate hashes..
Trace	Enables access to the various trace levels you can use to generate and log information about application activity. You can view trace files in the diagnosis Files tab of the SAP HANA studio's Administration perspective.
Utilities	Enables access to utilities that you can use to parse XML and manipulate Zip archives, for example, to zip and unzip files, add and remove entries from Zip archives, and encrypt Zip archives with password protection.
XS Data Services	Provides access to a library of JavaScript utilities, which can be used to enable server-side JavaScript applications to consume data models that are defined using Core Data Services.
XS Procedures	Provides access to a library of JavaScript utilities, which can be used to enable server-side JavaScript applications to call SAP HANA stored procedures as if the procedures were JavaScript functions.

Database API

The SAP HANA XS Database API (`$.hdb`) provides tools that enable simple and convenient access to the database.

Caution

The `$.hdb` namespace is intended as a replacement for the older `$.db` namespace. Since different database connections are used for the `$.hdb` and `$.db` APIs, avoid using both APIs in a single http-request, for example, to update the same tables as this can lead to problems, including deadlocks.

You can use the Database API for the following operations

- `$.hdb.Connection`
Establish a connection to the SAP HANA database
- `$.hdb.ProcedureResult`
Represents the result of a stored procedure call to the SAP HANA database
- `$.hdb.ResultSet`
Represents the result of a database query

The following example shows how to use the database API to connect to the SAP HANA database, commit some changes, and end the current transaction.

Note

By default, auto-commit mode is disabled, which means that all database changes must be explicitly committed.

```
var connection = $.hdb.getConnection();
connection.executeUpdate('UPDATE "DB_EXAMPLE"."ICECREAM" SET QUANTITY=? WHERE
FLAVOR=?', 9, 'CHOCOLATE');
connection.commit();
```

The following example of usage of the SAP HANA XS database API shows how to establish a connection with SAP HANA and return a result set from the specified procedure call. The example code assumes that a procedure exists with the following signature:

```
PROCEDURE 'DB_EXAMPLE'.icecream.shop::sell(
    IN flavor VARCHAR,
    IN quantity INTEGER,
    IN payment DECIMAL,
    OUT change DECIMAL)
```

Note that the result can be accessed as if it were a JSON object with a structure similar to the following example: `{change: 1.50, $resultSets: [....]}`.

Tip

`$resultSets` is not enumerable; it does not show up in a `for-each` loop.

```
var fnSell = connection.loadProcedure('DB_EXAMPLE', 'icecream.shop::sell');
var result = fnSell('CHOCOLATE', 3, 30.0);
// value of output parameter 'change'
var change = result['change'];
// array of $.hdb.ResultSet returned by the stored procedure
var resultSets = result['$resultSets'];
// iterate over all output parameters.
var params;
for (var outputParam in result) {
    params += outputParam + ' ';
}
```

Outbound API

The Outbound API (`$.net`) provides tools that you can use to perform the following actions:

- `$.net.SMTPConnection`
For sending `$.net.Mail` objects by means of an SMTP connection
- `$.net.Mail`
For constructing and sending multipart e-mails
- `$.net.http`
HTTP(s) client (and request) classes for outbound connectivity and an HTTP(s) destination class that hold metadata, for example: host, port, useSSL.

The following example shows how to use the `$.net.SMTPConnection` class to send e-mail objects (`$.net.Mail`) by means of an SMTP connection object:

```
subscribers = ["kofi@sap.com", "kwaku@sap.com"];
smtpConnection = new SMTPConnection();
var mail = new $.net.Mail({ sender: "manager@sap.com",
  subject: "Promotion Notice",
  subjectEncoding: "UTF-8",
  parts: [new $.net.Mail.Part({
    type: $.net.Mail.Part.TYPE_TEXT,
    contentType: "text/html",
    encoding: "UTF-8"
  })]
});
for (var i = 0; i < subscribers.length; ++i) {
  mail.to = subscribers[i];
  mail.parts[0].text = "Dear " + subscribers[i].split("@")[0] + ", \
    you have been promoted. Congratulations!";
  smtpConnection.send(mail);
}
smtpConnection.close();
```

The following example shows how to use the `$.net.Mail` class to create an e-mail from an XS JavaScript object and send it to the named recipients:

i Note

If mandatory information is missing or an error occurs during the `mail.send()` call fails and returns an error.

```
var mail = new $.net.Mail({
  sender: {address: "sender@sap.com"},
  to: [{name: "John Doe", address: "john.doe@sap.com", nameEncoding: "US-ASCII"}, \
    {name: "Jane Doe", address: "jane.doe@sap.com"}],
  cc: ["cc1@sap.com", {address: "cc2@sap.com"}],
  bcc: [{name: "Jonnie Doe", address: "jonnie.doe@sap.com"}],
  subject: "subject",
  subjectEncoding: "UTF-8",
  parts: [ new $.net.Mail.Part({
    type: $.net.Mail.Part.TYPE_TEXT,
    text: "The body of the mail.",
    contentType: "text/plain",
  })]
});
```

```

        encoding: "UTF-8",
    })]
});
var returnValue = mail.send();
var response = "MessageId = " + returnValue.messageId + ", final reply = " +
returnValue.finalReply;
$.response.status = $.net.http.OK;
$.response.contentType = "text/html";
$.response.setBody(response);

```

The following example of server-side JavaScript shows how to use the outbound API to get (read) an HTTP destination. You can also set the contents of the response, for example, to include details of the header, body, and any cookies. For HTTPS connections you need to maintain a certificate (CA or explicit server certificate) in a Trust Store; you use the certificate to check the connection against.

```

var dest = $.net.http.readDestination("inject", "ipsec");
var client = new $.net.http.Client();
var req = new $.web.WebRequest($.net.http.GET, "");
client.request(req, dest);
var response = client.getResponse();
var co = [], he = [];
for(var c in response.cookies) {
    co.push(response.cookies[c]);
}
for(var c in response.headers) {
    he.push(response.headers[c]);
}
var body = undefined;
if(response.body)
    var body = response.body.asString();
$.response.contentType = "application/json";

```

➔ Tip

You define the HTTP destination in a text file using keyword=value pairs. You must activate the HTTP destination in the SAP HANA repository. After activation, you can view details of the HTTP destination in the SAP HANA XS Administration tool.

Request-Processing API

The Request-Processing API (\$.web) provides access to the body of HTTP request and response entities. For example, you can use the following classes:

- **\$.web.Body**
Represents the body of an HTTP request entity and provides access to the data included in the body of the HTTP request entity
- **\$.web.EntityList**
Represents a list of request or response entities; the EntityList holds WebEntityRequest or WebEntityResponse objects.
- **\$.web.TupelList**
Represents a list of name-value pairs. The TupelList is a container that provides tuples for cookies, headers, and parameters. A “tuple” is a JavaScript object with the properties “name” and “value”.
- **\$.web.WebRequest**
Enables access to the client HTTP request currently being processed

- `$.web.WebResponse`
Enables access to the client HTTP response currently being processed for the corresponding request object ()
- `$.web.WebEntityRequest`
Represents an HTTP request entity and provides access to the entity's metadata and (body) content.
- `$.web.WebEntityResponse`
Represents the HTTP response currently being populated

The following example shows how to use the request-processing API to display the message "Hello World" in a browser.

```
$.response.contentType = "text/plain";
$.response.setBody( "Hello, World !" );
```

In the following example, you can see how to use the request-processing API to get the value of parameters describing the name and vendor ID of a delivery unit (DU) and return the result set in JSON-compliant form.

```
var duName = $.request.parameters.get("du_name");
var duVendor = $.request.parameters.get("du_vendor");
result = {
    content_id : contentId.toString()
};
$.response.status = $.net.http.OK;
$.response.contentType = 'application/json';
$.response.setBody(JSON.stringify(result));
```

In the following example of use of the request-processing API, we show how to access to the request's meta data (and body) and, in addition, how to set and send the response.

```
if ($.request.method === $.net.http.GET) {
    // get query parameter named id
    var qpId = $.request.parameters.get("id");

    // handle request for the given id parameter...
    var result = handleRequest(qpId);

    // send response
    $.response.contentType = "plain/text";
    $.response.setBody("result: " + result);
    $.response.status = $.net.http.OK;
} else {
    // unsupported method
    $.response.status = $.net.http.INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR;
}
```

Session API

Enables access to the SAP HANA XS session, for example, to determine the language used in the session or check if a user has the privileges required to run an application.

You can use the XS JavaScript `$.session` API to request and check information about the currently open sessions. For example, you can find out the name of a user who is currently logged on to the database or get the session-specific security token. The `$.session` API also enables you to check if a user has sufficient privileges to call an application. The following example checks if the user has the `execute` privilege that is

required to run an application. If the check reveals that the user does not have the required privilege, an error message is generated indicating the name of the missing privilege.

```
if (!$.session.hasAppPrivilege("sap.xse.test::Execute")) {  
    $.response.setBody("Privilege sap.xse.test::Execute is missing");  
    $.response.status = $.net.http.INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR;  
}
```

Job Schedule API

In SAP HANA XS, a scheduled job is created by means of an `.xsjob` file, a design-time file you commit to (and activate in) the SAP HANA repository. The `.xsjob` file can be used to define recurring tasks that run in the background; the Job Schedule API allows developers to add and remove schedules from such jobs.

The Job Schedule API provides the following tools:

- `Job`
`$.jobs.Job` represents a scheduled XS job
- `JobLog`
`$.jobs.JobLog` provide access to the log entries of a scheduled job
- `JobSchedules`
`$.jobs.JobSchedules` enables control of an XS job's schedules.

i Note

It is not possible to call the `$.request` and `$.response` objects as part of an XS job.

The XS jobs API `$.jobs.Job` enables you to add schedules to (and remove schedules from) jobs defined in an `.xsjob` file.

The following example of server-side JavaScript shows how to use the Job Schedule API to add a schedule to a existing job and delete a schedule from an existing job.

```
var myjob = new $.jobs.Job({uri:"myJob.xsjob", sqlcc:"sqlcc/otheruser.xssqlcc"});  
// add schedule to a job  
var id = myjob.schedules.add({  
    description: "Added at runtime, run every 10 minutes",  
    xscron: "* * * * */10 0",  
    parameter: {  
        a: "c"  
    }  
});  
// delete a schedule from a job  
myjob.schedules.delete({id: id});
```

If the XS job file referred to in the URI is not in the same package as the XS JavaScript or SQLScript function being called, you must add the full package path to the XS job file specified in the URI illustrated in line 1 of the example above, for example, `</path/to/package.>MyXSjob.xsjob`.

i Note

The path specified in `</path/to/package.>` can be either absolute or relative.

In addition, the SQL connection defined in `sqlcc/otheruser.xssqlcc` is used to modify the job; it is not used to execute the job specified in `myJob.xsjob`.

To understand the cron-like syntax required by the `xscron` job scheduler, use the following examples:

- `2013 * * fri 12 0 0`
Run the job every Friday in 2013 at 12:00.
- `* * 3:-2 * 12:14 0 0`
Run every hour between 12:00 and 14:00 every day between the third and second-to-last day of the month.
- `* * * -1.sun 9 0 0`
Run the job on the last Sunday of every month at 09:00.

Security API

The SAP HANA XS JavaScript security API `$.security` includes the `$.security.crypto` namespace and the following classes:

- `$.security.AntiVirus`
Scan data with a **supported** external anti-virus engine
- `$.security.Store`
Store data securely in name-value form

The `$.security.crypto` namespace includes methods (for example, `md5()`, `sha1()`, and `sha256()`) that enable you to compute an MD5 or SHA1/256 hash (or HMAC-MD5, HMAC-SHA1, and HMAC-SHA256).

The `AntiVirus` class includes a method `scan()` that enables you to set up a scan instance using one of the supported anti-virus engines. The `Store` class enables you to set up a secure store for an SAP HANA XS application; the secure store can be used to store sensitive information either at the application level (`store()`) or per user (`storeForUser()`).

The following code example shows how to use the SAP HANA XS virus-scan interface (VSI) to scan a specific object type: a Microsoft Word document.

i Note

For more information about which antivirus engines SAP HANA supports, see [SAP Note 786179](#).

```
var data = //Some data to be checked
var av = new $.security.AntiVirus();
//AV scan data as Word document
av.scan(data, "myDocument.docx");
```

The following code example shows how to set up a simple scan for data uploads using the SAP HANA XS virus-scan interface.

```
//scan a buffer with own "upload" profile
var av = new $.security.AntiVirus("upload");
av.scan(buffer);
```

The SAP HANA XS `$.security.Store` API can be used to store data safely and securely in name-value form. The security API enables you to define a secure store (in a design-time artifact) for each application and refer to this design time object in the application coding.

Note

The design-time secure store is a file with the file extension “`.xssecurestore`”, for example, `localStore.xssecurestore`; the secure-store file must include only the following mandatory content:
`{ }`.

SAP HANA XS looks after the encryption and decryption of data and also ensures the persistency of the data. For the stored data, you can choose between the following visibility options:

- Application-wide data visibility
Use `store(<parameters>)` to ensure that all users of the corresponding application have access to one secure store where they can share the same data and can decrypt or encrypt data, for example, passwords for a remote system.
- Application-wide data visibility but with user-specific stores separation
Use `storeForUser(<parameters>)` to ensure that **each** user of the corresponding application has a separate container to securely store personal, encrypted data, for example, credit card numbers or personal-information-number (PIN) codes; the encrypted data can only be decrypted by the owner of the secure store; the user who encrypted it.

```
function store() {
    var config = {
        name: "foo",
        value: "bar"
    };
    var aStore = new $.security.Store("localStore.xssecurestore");
    aStore.store(config);
}
function read() {
    var config = {
        name: "foo"
    };
    try {
        var store = new $.security.Store("localStore.xssecurestore");
        var value = store.read(config);
    }
    catch(ex) {
        //do some error handling
    }
}
```

Trace API

Enables access to the various trace levels you can use to generate and log information about application activity. The specified error message is written to the appropriate trace file.

```
$.trace.error("This is an error message")
```

You can set the following trace levels:

- `$.trace.debug(message)`

Writes the string defined in `(message)` to the application trace with **debug** level

- `$.trace.error(message)`
Writes the string defined in `(message)` to the application trace with **error** level
- `$.trace.fatal(message)`
Writes the string defined in `(message)` to the application trace with **fatal** level
- `$.trace.info(message)`
Writes the string defined in `(message)` to the application trace with **info** level
- `$.trace.warning(message)`
Writes the string defined in `(message)` to the application trace with **warning** level

i Note

If tracing is enable, messages generated by the `$.trace` API are logged in the SAP HANA trace file `xsengine_<host>_<Instance>_<#>.trc` on the SAP HANA server, for example, in `<installation_path>/<SID>/HDB<nn>/<hostname>/trace`. Trace messages with severity status “warning”, “error” and “fatal” are also written to a similarly named alert file, for example, `xsengine_alert_<host>.trc`.

Utilities API

The SAP HANA XS JavaScript Utilities API includes the `$.util` namespace, which contains the following classes

- `$.util.SAXParser`
Tools for parsing XML content (for example, strings, array buffers, and the content of Web response body objects)
- `$.util.Zip`
Compression tools for building, modifying, extracting, and encrypting archives

With the XS JavaScript Utilities API `$.util.SAXParser` class, you can create a new parser object and parse the XML content of an `XMLString`, an `XMLArrayBuffer`, or a `$.web.Body` object. The following example shows how to use the XML parsing capabiliites of the `$.util.SAXParser` class:

i Note

You can **stop**, **reset**, and **resume** a parsing operation. If the content to be parsed does not contain XML, the parser throws an error.

```
var parser = new $.util.SAXParser();
var xml = "<?xml version=\"1.0\" encoding=\"UTF-8\" standalone=\"yes\"?>\n<!-- this is a note -->\n<note noteName='NoteName'>\n    <to>To</to>\n    <from>From</from>\n    <heading>Note heading</heading>\n    <body>Note body</body>\n</note>";
var startElementHandlerConcat = "";
var endElementHandlerConcat = "";
var characterDataHandlerConcat = "";
```

```

parser.startElementHandler = function(name, atts) {
    startElementHandlerConcat += name;
    if (name === "note") {
        startElementHandlerConcat += " noteName = '" + atts.noteName + "'";
    }
    startElementHandlerConcat += "\n";
};

parser.endElementHandler = function(name) {
    endElementHandlerConcat += name + "\n";
};

parser.characterDataHandler = function(s) {
    characterDataHandlerConcat += s;
};

parser.parse(xml);
...

```

The following code snippet shows how to use the `$.util.SAXParser` tools to parse the content of a `$.web.Body` object.

```

var body = $.request.body
var parser = new $.util.SAXParser()
//... set handlers
parser.parse(body);

```

The following encodings are supported:

- UTF-8 (**default**)
- UTF-16
- US-ASCII

The SAP HANA XS JavaScript Utilities API also includes the `$.util.zip` tool, which enables you to perform a series of actions on Zip archives, for example:

- Compress files into (zip) and extract files from (unzip) a Zip archive
- Add new entries to, update existing entries in, and remove entries from a Zip archive
- Encrypt Zip archives with password protection

The following code illustrates a simple usage of the Zip tool:

```

var zip = new $.util.Zip("myPassword");
zip["entry.txt"] = "Two fish are in a tank. One turns to the other and asks 'How
do you drive this thing?'";
$.response.status = $.net.http.OK;
$.response.contentType = "application/zip";
$.response.headers.set("Content-Disposition", "attachment; filename =
Encrypted.zip");
$.response.setBody(zip.asArrayBuffer());

```

The following code snippets show how to use the `$.util.zip` tools to work with Zip file content, for example, by adding, updating, extracting, and deleting entries. When modeling folder hierarchies, the Zip object behaves like an associative array; the entry names are the `keys` (the full paths to the indicated files). In the following example, we add an entry to a Zip file:

i Note

`"zip["entry1"]"` is equivalent to `"zip.entry1"`.

```

var zip = new $.util.Zip();
zip["entry1"] = "old entry";

```

In the following example, we **update** an entry in a Zip file:

```
var zip = new $.util.Zip();
zip["entry1"] = "new entry";
```

In the following example, we **extract** an entry from a Zip file: if the entry does not exist, this returns undefined.

```
var zip = new $.util.Zip();
var content = zip["entry1"];
```

In the following example, we **delete** an entry from a Zip file: if the entry does not exist, nothing happens.

```
var zip = new $.util.Zip();
delete zip["entry1"];
```

i Note

There is a restriction on the amount of uncompressed data that can be extracted from a Zip archive using the XS JS utilities API.

When using the XS JS utilities API to extract data from a Zip archive, the maximum amount of uncompressed data allowed during the extraction process is defined with the parameter `max_uncompressed_size_in_bytes`, which you can set in the `zip` section of the `xsengine.ini` configuration file for a given SAP HANA system. If the `zip` section does not already exist, you must create it and add the parameter to it, for example, using the [SAP HANA Administration Console](#) in SAP HANA studio. If the parameter `max_uncompressed_size_in_bytes` is **not** set, a default value is assumed. The default value is the value assigned to the property `max_runtime_bytes` in section `jsvm` section of the `xsengine.ini` file.

You can deactivate the global check on the amount of uncompressed data. If the global system parameter `max_uncompressed_size_in_bytes` is set to **-1**, no check is performed on the amount of uncompressed data generated by an extraction process using the Utilities API, unless there is a specific user limitation in the XS JavaScript code, for example, with the `maxUncompressedSizeInBytes` parameter.

With the `$.util.Zip` class or the `$.util.compression` namespace, you can use the property `maxUncompressedSizeInBytes` to override the global setting and reduce the amount of uncompressed data allowed.

i Note

Note that the parameter `max_uncompressed_size_in_bytes` cannot be used to increase the amount of uncompressed data allowed beyond the value specified in the global setting.

XS Data Services API

SAP HANA XS Data Services (XSDS) is a collection of tools that includes a native client for Core Data Services (CDS) and a query builder for SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) JavaScript. The XSDS API provides a high-level abstraction of the database API (`$.db`, `$.hdb`) and gives access to SAP HANA artifacts such as CDS entities or stored procedures. XSDS enables server-side JavaScript applications to consume data models that are defined using Core Data Services more efficiently.

The following example shows how to import a CDS entity and how to update a given entity instance in XSDS **managed** mode.

```
// import CDS client library
var XSDS = $.import("sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils", "xsds");
// import CDS entity
var MyEntity = XSDS.$importEntity("cds.namespace", "cds_context.cds_entity");
// retrieve entity instance
var instance = MyEntity.$get({ id: 69 });
// update instance
instance.stringProp = "new value";
instance.intProp++;
instance.assocProp.dateProp = new Date();
// persist changes
instance.$save();
```

The following example shows how to query the database using CDS model data in XSDS unmanaged mode.

```
// import CDS client library
var XSDS = $.import("sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils", "xsds");
// import CDS entity
var MyEntity = XSDS.$importEntity("cds.namespace", "cds_context.cds_entity");
// build query
var query = MyEntity.$query();
var projection = query.$project({
    stringProp: true,
    aliasProp: "aliasName",
    assocProp: { dateProp: true }
});
var filter = query.$where({ stringProp: { $like: "A%" } });
// retrieve result
var result = projection.$execute();
// process result
for (var i = 0; i < result.length; i++) {
    var diff = result[i].assocProp.dateProp - Date.now();
    // ...
}
```

XS Procedures API

SAP HANA XS Procedures is a library of JavaScript tools which enable you to call SAP HANA stored procedures from server-side JavaScript (XS JS) as if the stored procedures were native JavaScript functions. The following example shows how to consume a stored procedure using the XS Procedures API.

```
// import XS Procedures library
var XSPROC = $.import("sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils", "procedures");
// set a schema where temporary tables can be created for passing table-valued
parameters to the procedure
XSPROC.setTempSchema($.session.getUsername().toUpperCase());
// load the procedure
var proc = XSPROC.procedure("schema", "namespace", "procedureName");
// call the procedure
var result = proc(1, [{col1: 0, col2:1}, {col1: 1, col2:2}]);
// result is a JavaScript object
```

Related Information

[SAP HANA XS JavaScript API Reference](#)
[Maintaining HTTP Destinations \[page 128\]](#)
[XS Job File Keyword Options \[page 626\]](#)
[SAP Note 786179](#)

8.4.1 Tutorial: Use the XSJS Outbound API

The application package you put together in this tutorial includes all the artifacts you need to enable your server-side JavaScript application to use the Outbound Connectivity API to request and obtain data via HTTP from a service running on a remote host.

Prerequisites

Since the artifacts required to get the JavaScript application up and running are stored in the repository, it is assumed that you have already performed the following tasks:

- Create a development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- Create a project in the workspace
- Share the new project
- The [HTTPDestViewer](#) SAP HANA user role

Context

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) includes a server-side JavaScript API that enables outbound access to a defined HTTP destination. The HTTP destination provides services which an application can use, for example, to read live data. In this tutorial, you create a JavaScript application that queries financial services to display the latest stock values. The financial services are available on a remote server, whose details are specified in an HTTP destination configuration.

Procedure

1. Create a package for the SAP HANA XS application that will use the HTTP destination you define in this tutorial.
For example, create a package called `testApp`. Make sure you can write to the schema where you create the new application.
 - a. Start the SAP HANA studio and open the [SAP HANA Development](#) perspective.

- b. In the *SAP HANA Systems* view, right-click the node in the package hierarchy where you want to create the new package and, in the pop-up menu that displays, choose *Packages...*
 - c. In the *New Package* dialog that displays, enter the details of the new package (`testApp`) that you want to add and click *OK*.
2. Define the details of the HTTP destination.

You define the details of an HTTP destination in a configuration file that requires a specific syntax. The configuration file containing the details of the HTTP destination must have the file extension `.xshttpdest`.

Caution

Place the HTTP destination configuration in the same package as the application that uses it. An application cannot reference an HTTP destination configuration that is located in another application package.

- a. Create a plain-text file called `yahoo.xshttpdest` and open it in a text editor.

You can use the file-creation wizard in the *Project Explorer* view to create this file, for example,  *New*  *Other* .

- b. Enter the following code in the new file `yahoo.xshttpdest`.

```
host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";
port = 80;
description = "my stock-price checker";
useSSL = false;
pathPrefix = "/d/quotes.csv?f=a";
authType = none;
useProxy = false;
proxyHost = "";
proxyPort = 0;
timeout = 0;
```

- c. Save and activate the file.

Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository.

3. View the activated HTTP destination.

You can use the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* to check the contents of an HTTP destination configuration.

Note

To make changes to the HTTP Destination configuration, you must use a text editor, save the changes and reactivate the file.

- a. Open a Web browser.
- b. Start the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

The *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/admin/`.

Note

Access to details of HTTP destinations in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* requires the credentials of an authenticated database user and one of the following SAP HANA roles:

- *HTTPDestViewer*
- *HTTPDestAdministrator*

- c. In the *XS Artifact Administration* screen, expand the nodes in the *Application Objects* tree to locate the application `testApp`.
 - d. Choose `yahoo.xshttpdest` to display details of the HTTP destination .
 - e. Check the details displayed and modify if required.
4. Create a server-side JavaScript application that uses the HTTP destination you have defined.

The XSJS file must have the file extension `.xsjs`, for example, `sapStock.xsjs`.

Caution

You must place the XSJS application and the HTTP destination configuration it references in the same application package. An application cannot use an HTTP destination configuration that is located in another application package.

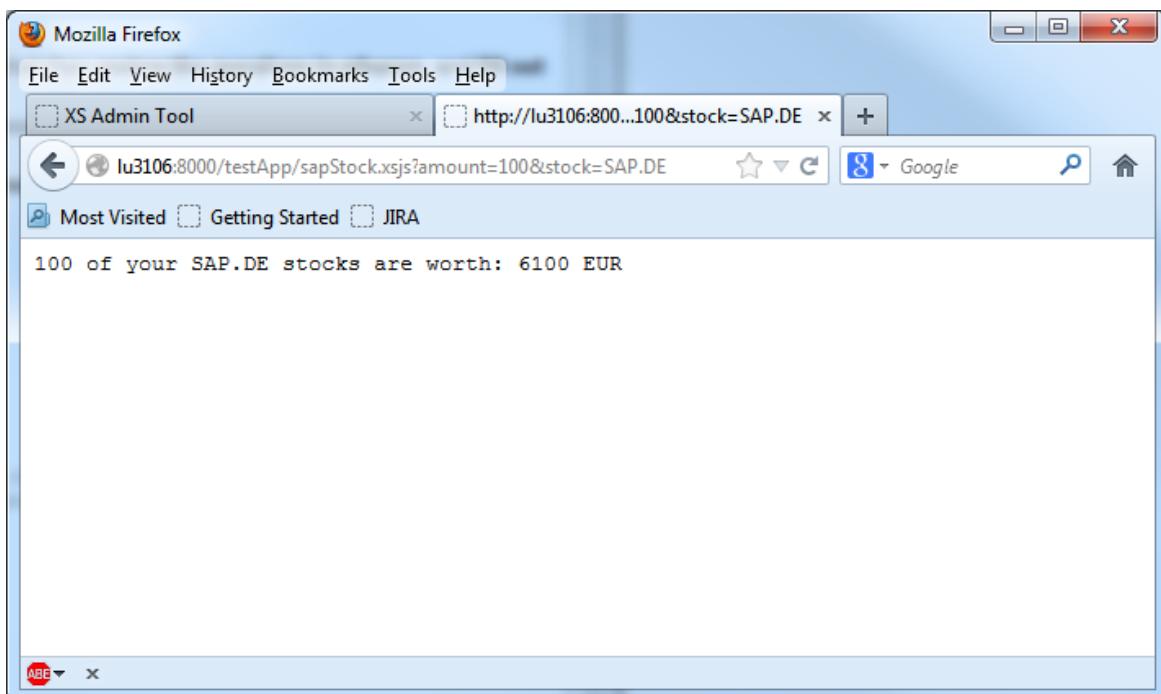
- a. Create a plain-text file called `sapStock.xsjs` and open it in a text editor.
- b. Enter the following code in the new file `sapStock.xsjs`.

In this example, you define the following:

- A variable (`<stock>`) that defines the name of the stock, whose value you want to check, for example SAP.DE
- A variable (`<amount>`) that defines the number of stocks you want to check, for example, 100
- A variable (`<dest>`) that retrieves metadata defined for the specified HTTP(S) destination, for example: host, port, useSSL...
- A variable (`<client>`) that creates the client for the outbound connection
- A variable (`<req>`) that enables you to add details to the request URL
- A variable (`<res>`) that calculates the value of the stock/amount
- The format and content of the response body displayed in the browser

```
var stock = $.request.parameters.get("stock");
var amount = $.request.parameters.get("amount");
var dest = $.net.http.readDestination("testApp", "yahoo");
var client = new $.net.http.Client();
var req = new $.web.WebRequest($.net.http.GET, "&s=" + stock);
client.request(req, dest);
var response = client.getResponse();
var co = [], he = [];
for(var c in response.cookies) {
    co.push(response.cookies[c]);
}
for(var c in response.headers) {
    he.push(response.headers[c]);
}
var body = undefined;
if(response.body)
    var body = response.bodyasString();
$.response.contentType = "application/json";
var res = parseInt(response.bodyasString()) * amount;
$.response.setBody(amount + " of your " + stock + " are worth: " + res);
```

- c. Save and activate the file.
5. Call the service provided by the application sapStock.xsjs.
- a. Open a Web browser.
 - b. Enter the URL that calls your sapStock.xsjs application.
- ```
http://<XS_Webserver>:80<SAPHANA_InstanceNr>/testApp/sapStock.xsjs?
amount=100&stock=SAP.DE
```
- o <XS\_Webserver>  
Name of the system hosting the Web server for the SAP HANA XS instance where your sapStock.xsjs application is located.
  - o <SAPHANA\_InstanceNr>  
Number of the SAP HANA instance where the SAP HANA XS Web server is running, for example, 00



6. Change the details specified in the URL used to run the application.

You can enter different values for the parameters `&amount` and `&stock` in the URL:

- o **amount=250**  
Change the number of stocks to check from 100 to 250
- o **&stock=SAP.DE**  
Change the name of stock to check from **SAP.DE** to **MCRO.L**

## Related Information

[Maintaining HTTP Destinations \[page 128\]](#)

[SAP HANA XS JavaScript API Reference](#)

## 8.4.2 Tutorial: Call an XS Procedure with Table-Value Arguments

You can use the XS Procedures library to call stored procedures as if they were JavaScript functions.

### Prerequisites

- The delivery unit `HANA_XS_DBUTILS` contains the XS procedures library. The content is available in the package `sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils`.
  - Create a new (or use an existing) development workspace in the SAP HANA repository.
  - Create a new (or use an existing) shared project in the workspace.
  - Create a new (or use an existing) stored procedure.
- This tutorial refers to the stored procedure `get_product_sales_price`, which is included in the demonstration content provided with the SAP HANA Interactive Education (SHINE) delivery unit (DU). The SHINE DU is available for download in the SAP Software Download Center.

#### i Note

Access to the SAP Software Download Center is only available to SAP customers and requires logon credentials.

### Context

You can call stored procedures by using the contents of the XS Procedures library as if they were JavaScript functions. For example, the library allows you to pass arguments as a JavaScript object to a stored procedure that expects table arguments; XS Procedures manages the creation and use of the temporary tables needed to pass arguments to a table-valued procedure. You can use the functions provided with the XS procedures library to enable programmatic access to stored procedures in the SAP HANA database from an XS JavaScript service; the access is provided by binding the stored procedure to a JavaScript function. The result of the call to the bound function is a JavaScript object, whose properties are the outbound parameters of the procedure.

### Procedure

1. Import the XS procedures library.

In your server-side (XS) JavaScript code, ensure that the XS procedures are made available.

```
var XSProc = $.import("sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils", "procedures");
```

2. Specify a schema where temporary tables can be created and filled with the values that are passed as arguments to the stored procedure.

XS procedures use temporary tables to pass table-valued parameters. As a user of XS procedures you must specify the name of a schema where these temporary tables reside, for example, a user's own schema.

### Note

The application code using XS procedures must ensure that the necessary privileges have been granted to enable the creation and update of (and selection from) temporary tables in the specified schema.

```
XSPROC.setTempSchema($.session.getUsername().toUpperCase());
```

- Bind the stored procedure to a JavaScript function.

This step creates one or more JavaScript functions which can later be used to call the stored procedure. You can also define functions which map your call arguments to the parameters of the stored procedure.

```
var createPurchaseOrder = XSPROC.procedure("SAP_HANA_DEMO",
 "sap.hana.democontent.epm.Procedures", "poCreate", {connection: conn});
```

### Note

XS procedures uses the connection {connection: conn} passed in a configuration object as a parameter. If no connection object is passed, the XS procedure library opens a separate connection for the call and closes the connection after the call completes.

- Call the procedure.

Use the imported procedure like a normal JavaScript function using JavaScript object argument lists.

```
var result = createPurchaseOrder([
 "PURCHASEORDERID": '0300009001',
 "HISTORY.CREATEDBY": '0000000044',
 "HISTORY.CREATEDAT": new Date(),
 "HISTORY.CHANGEDBY": '0000000044',
 "HISTORY.CHANGEDAT": new Date()
});
```

Table-valued input arguments are passed to the stored procedure using a Javascript array that corresponds to the rows of the table containing the values to pass. The row objects should contain the properties of the name of the columns. Skipped columns are filled with NULL; properties without a same-named column are ignored.

### Example

```
var XSPROC = $.import("sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils", "procedures");
XSPROC.setTempSchema($.session.getUsername().toUpperCase());
var conn = $.db.getConnection();
var createPurchaseOrder = XSPROC.procedure(
 "SAP_HANA_DEMO", "sap.hana.democontent.epm.Procedures",
 "poCreate", {connection: conn}
);
var result = createPurchaseOrder([
 "PURCHASEORDERID": '0300009001',
 "HISTORY.CREATEDBY": '0000000044',
 "HISTORY.CREATEDAT": new Date(),
 "HISTORY.CHANGEDBY": '0000000044',
 "HISTORY.CHANGEDAT": new Date()
});
if (result && result.ERROR.length > 0) {
```

```

 $.response.setBody(result.ERROR.length + " errors occurred.");
 } else {
 $.response.setBody("no error occurred");
 }

```

## Related Information

[http://help.sap.com/hana/SAP\\_HANA\\_XS\\_DBUTILS\\_JavaScript\\_API\\_Reference\\_en/index.html](http://help.sap.com/hana/SAP_HANA_XS_DBUTILS_JavaScript_API_Reference_en/index.html)

### 8.4.2.1 Accessing Stored Procedures from XS JavaScript

Call stored SAP HANA procedures from XS server-side JavaScript (XSJS) and process the results of the calls in JavaScript.

XS procedures provide a convenient way to call stored procedures in SAP HANA from XS server-side Javascript (XSJS) and process the results of the calls in JavaScript. The XS procedures library extends the features already available with the SAP HANA XS JavaScript database API. Using XS procedures, SAP HANA stored procedures can be considered as simple XS JavaScript functions for anyone developing XS JavaScript services.

For example, where an SAP HANA stored procedure uses a table as input parameter and a table as output, XS Procedures use JavaScript objects (or an array of objects) which can be passed to the procedure. Similarly, the result of the procedure call is provided as an array of JavaScript objects. You declare a stored procedure as an XS JavaScript function and then call the stored procedure as if it were a JavaScript function delivering a JavaScript object.

To use a stored procedure as an XS JavaScript function, the following steps are required:

Table 86:

| Step | Action                                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Import the XS Procedures library                                          | Provide access to the XS procedures                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2    | Specify a schema for temporary tables                                     | Temporary tables are used to store the JavaScript arguments provided for the function.                                                                                                               |
| 3    | Import the procedure                                                      | Create the XS JavaScript functions, which can later be used to call the stored SAP HANA procedure. You can define functions which map your call arguments to the parameters of the stored procedure. |
| 4    | Call the procedure                                                        | Use the imported procedure in the same way as any normal JavaScript function, for example, using JavaScript object argument lists.                                                                   |
|      | <a href="#">Use Arguments that Reference an Existing Table [page 601]</a> | (Optional) Write the results or a procedure call into a physical table and pass the table as an argument rather than a JavaScript object                                                             |

| Step | Action                                                | Description                                                            |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      | <a href="#">Use Table-Valued Arguments [page 601]</a> | (Optional) Call a procedure with arguments stored as values in a table |

## Calling Procedures with Arguments that Reference an Existing Table

If you want to pass a table as an argument rather than a JavaScript object, you must specify the name of the table (as a string) in the call statement as well as the name of the schema where the table is located. The following example shows how to reference the table `rating_table`.

```
getRating('schema.rating_table', 3);
```

The SAP HANA database enables you to materialize the results of a procedure call; that is, to write the results into a physical table using the `WITH OVERVIEW` expression. In the `WITH OVERVIEW` expression, you pass a string value to the output parameter position that contains the result you want to materialize. The value returned is not the rating itself, but a reference to the table into which the results have been written. The results of the procedure call can now be retrieved from the specified table, in this example, `OUTPUT_TABLE`.

```
var resCall = getRating(rating, 3, "schema.output_table");
// {"RESULT": [{"variable":"RESULT","table":"\"SCHEMA\".\\"OUTPUT_TABLE\\\""}]}
```

The `WITH OVERVIEW` expression also allows you to write the results of a procedure into a global temporary table; that is, a table that is truncated at session close. To use XS Procedures to write the results of a procedure into a global temporary table, you do not specify a name for the result table; you include an empty string (''), as illustrated in the following example:

```
var conn = $.db.getConnection();
resCall = getRating(rating, 3, '', conn);
// {"RESULT": [{"variable":"RESULT","table":"\"SCHEMA\".\\"RESULT_5270ECB8F7061B7EE1000000A379516\\\""}]}
```

The returned reference points to a global temporary table which can be queried for the procedure results with the same connection.

### **i** Note

To ensure access to the global temporary table, it is necessary to specify the connection object `conn`.

## Using Table-Valued Arguments

XS Procedures enables you to call procedures with arguments stored as values in a table, as illustrated in the following example. Table-valued input arguments are passed using a JavaScript array that corresponds to the rows of the table to pass. These row objects must contain properties that correspond to the name of the

columns. Skipped columns are filled with NULL, and properties that do not correspond to an identically named column are ignored.

```
var XSProc = $.import("sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils", "procedures");
XSProc.setTempSchema($.session.getUsername().toUpperCase());
var conn = $.db.getConnection();
var createPurchaseOrder = XSProc.procedure("SAP_HANA_DEMO",
 "sap.hana.democontent.epm.Procedures::poCreate", {
 connection: conn
 });
var result = createPurchaseOrder([
 {
 "PURCHASEORDERID": '0300009001',
 "HISTORY.CREATEDBY": '0000000044',
 "HISTORY.CREATEDAT": new Date(),
 "HISTORY.CHANGEDBY": '0000000044',
 "HISTORY.CHANGEDAT": new Date()
 }]);
if (result && result.ERROR.length > 0) {
 $.response.setBody(result.ERROR.length + " errors occurred.");
} else {
 $.response.setBody("no error occurred");
}
```

## Related Information

[SAP HANA XS JavaScript API Reference](#)

## 8.4.3 Tutorial: Query a CDS Entity using XS Data Services

You can use the SAP HANA XS Data Services (XSDS) library to query CDS entities as if they were JavaScript objects.

## Prerequisites

- A new (or an existing) development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- A new (or an existing) shared project in the workspace
- This tutorial refers to CDS models that are included in the demonstration content provided with the SAP HANA Interactive Education (SHINE) delivery unit (DU). The SHINE DU is available for download in the SAP Software Download Center.

### Note

Access to the SAP Software Download Center is only available to SAP customers and requires logon credentials.

## Context

XS Data Service queries are used to build incrementally advanced queries against data models that are defined with Core Data Service. Query results are arrays of nested JSON objects that correspond to instances of CDS entities and their associations.

## Procedure

1. Import the XS DS library and reference it through a variable.

```
var XSDS = $.import("sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils", "xsds");
```

2. Import the CDS entities you want to query.

As a first step to working with CDS entities in SAP HANA XS JavaScript, you must import the CDS entities. The following example shows how to import to the entities as defined in the SHINE demonstration content:

```
var soItem = XSDS.$importEntity("sap.hana.democontent.epm.data",
"EPM.SO.Item");
var soHeader = XSDS.$importEntity("sap.hana.democontent.epm.data",
"EPM.SO.Header", {
 items: {
 $association: {
 $entity: soItem,
 $viaBacklink: "SALESORDERID"
 }
 }
});
```

In addition to the basic CDS definition, the code in the example above shows how to extend the definition of `soHeader` by an explicit association called `items`. This is done by using the keyword `$association` together with the referenced entity (`soItem`) and the type of the association. In this case, `$viaBacklink` is used as type, that is; the items of `soHeader` stored in `soItem` have a foreign key `SALESORDERID` referencing the key of the `soHeader` table.

3. Add a query.

A general query related to an entity is built by calling the `$query()` method of the entity constructor.

```
var qOrders = soHeader.$query();
```

4. Refine the query if required.

You can refine the query object as necessary to suit your use case. For example, you can specify that the query returns only the first three (3) entries.

```
qOrders = qOrders.$limit(3);
```

5. Execute the query.

Use the `$execute` method to run the query.

```
var result = qOrders.$execute();
```

`result` contains an array of unmanaged values, each of which represents a row of the `Post` entity.

### Note

In the refinements to the query, you must call `$execute` to send the query to the database.

- Specify the fields the query should return.

Use the `$project()` method to create a query which specifies the fields the query should return. For example, you can return the IDs of the sales orders together with the net amount of the header and the net amount of all items.

```
var qOrderAndItemTitles = qOrders.$project({
 SALESORDERID: true,
 NETAMOUNT: "TotalNet",
 items: {
 NETAMOUNT: true
 }
});
```

The list of projected fields is a JavaScript object, where desired fields are marked by either `true` or a String literal such as `"TotalNet"` denoting an alias name. The query illustrated in the example above would return the following result.

```
[{
 "SALESORDERID": "0500000236",
 "TotalNet": 273.9,
 "items": {
 "NETAMOUNT": 29.9
 }
}, {
 "SALESORDERID": "0500000236",
 "TotalNet": 273.9,
 "items": {
 "NETAMOUNT": 102
 }
}, {
 "SALESORDERID": "0500000236",
 "TotalNet": 273.9,
 "items": {
 "NETAMOUNT": 55
 }
}]
```

The actual database query automatically `JOINS` all required tables based on the associations involved. In the example above, the generated SQL looks like the following:

### Note

In the following code example, the names of table are abbreviated to help readability.

```
SELECT "t0"."SALESORDERID" AS
 "t0.SALESORDERID",
 "t0"."NETAMOUNT" AS "t0.NETAMOUNT",
 "t0.items"."NETAMOUNT" AS "t0.items.NETAMOUNT"
FROM "Header" "t0"
LEFT OUTER JOIN "Item" "t0.items"
 ON "t0"."SALESORDERID"="t0.items"."SALESORDERID"
LIMIT 10
```

- Use conditions to restrict the result set.

You can use the `$where()` method to set conditions that restrict the result set returned by the query. The following example shows how to select all items with a net amount equal to a half (or more) of their order's net amount.

```
var qSelectedOrders =
 qOrderAndItemTitles.$where(soHeader.items.NETAMOUNT.
 $div(soHeader.NETAMOUNT).$gt(0.5))
```

References to fields and associations such as `items` are available as properties of the entity constructor function, for example, `soHeader.items`. As in the case with projections, XSDS generates all required JOINs for associations referenced by the conditions automatically, even if they are not part of the current projection. To build more complex expressions in `$where`, see the *SAP HANA XS Data Services JavaScript API Reference*.

#### 8. Refine the query conditions to a specific matching pattern.

With the `$matching()` method you can specify conditional expressions using the JSON-like syntax of the `$find()` and `$findAll()` methods. The following code example shows how to further refine the selection returned by the result set, for example, to accept only those items with a EUR currency and quantity greater than 2.

```
qSelectedOrders = qSelectedOrders.$matching({
 items: {
 CURRENCY: 'EUR',
 QUANTITY: {
 $gt: 2
 }
 }
});
```

#### ➔ Tip

Unlike `$findAll()`, `$matching()` returns an unmanaged plain value and ignores all unpersistent changes to any entity instances.

#### 9. Add arbitrary values to the result set.

You can add arbitrary calculated values to the result set by using the `$addFields()` method. The following example shows how to query the days passed since the delivery of the sales item.

```
qSelectedOrders = qSelectedOrders.$addFields({
 "DaysAgo": soHeader.items.DELIVERYDATE.$prefixOp("DAYS_BETWEEN", new
Date())
});
```

#### i Note

This query refers to the SQL function `DAYS_BETWEEN`, which is not a pre-defined function in XSDS. Instead, you can use the generic operator `$prefixOp`, which can be used for any SQL function `f`, for example, with the syntax `f(arg1, ... argN)`.

#### 10. Use aggregations with calculated fields.

Aggregations are a special case of calculated fields that combine the `$addFields()` operator with an additional `$aggregate()` method. The following example shows to retrieve the average quantity of the first 100 sales order IDs together with their product ID.

```
var qAverageQuantity = soItem.$query().$limit(100).$aggregate({
```

```
 SALESORDERID: true,
 PRODUCTID: true
}).$addFields({
 averageQuantity: soItem.QUANTITY.$avg()
});
```

### → Tip

In SQL terms, the `$aggregate()` operator creates a GROUP BY expression for the specified paths and automatically projects the result.

If you need to use a more restrictive projection, you can replace `true` with `false` in the `$aggregate` call, as illustrated in the following example, which removes the sales order IDs for the result set.

```
var qAverageQuantity = soItem.$query().$limit(100).$aggregate({
 SALESORDERID: false,
 PRODUCTID: true
}).$addFields({
 averageQuantity: soItem.QUANTITY.$avg()
});
```

#### 11. Specify the order of the result set.

To specify the order in the result set, you can use the `$order()` method, including a number of order criteria as arguments. Each order criteria contains a property “`by`” with an expression that defines the desired order. Optionally each criterion can contain a flag `$desc` to require a descending order and a `$nullsLast` flag. The following example uses two criteria to display the result set first in descending order by the net amount in the header and then ascending order by the item net amount.

```
qSelectedOrders = qSelectedOrders.$order({$by: soHeader.NETAMOUNT,
$desc:true},
 {$by: soHeader.items.NETAMOUNT});
```

#### 12. Remove duplicates entries from the result set.

The `$distinct` operator removes duplicates from the result set. The following example shows how to display the set of all the currencies used in the sales orders.

```
var qAllCurrencies = soHeader.$query().$project({CURRENCY: true}).$distinct();
```

## Related Information

[SAP HANA XS JavaScript API Reference](#)

[SAP HANA XS DB Utilities JavaScript API Reference](#)

[Creating the Persistence Model in Core Data Services \[page 170\]](#)

## 8.4.4 Tutorial: Update a CDS Entity Using XS Data Services

You can use the XS Data Services (XSDS) library to update CDS entities as if they were JavaScript objects.

### Prerequisites

- A new (or an existing) development workspace in the SAP HANA repository
- A new (or an existing) shared project in the workspace
- This tutorial refers to CDS models that are included in the demonstration content provided with the SAP HANA Interactive Education (SHINE) delivery unit (DU). The SHINE DU is available for download in the SAP Software Download Center.

**i Note**

Access to the SAP Software Download Center is only available to SAP customers and requires logon credentials.

### Context

For read-write scenarios, SAP HANA XS Data Services (XSDS) offer a managed mode with automatic entity management and additional consistency guarantees. Managed mode shares CDS imports and transaction handling with unmanaged mode but uses a different set of methods provided by the entity constructors.

### Procedure

1. Import the XSDS library and the CDS entities into your application.

In your entity import, specify a SAP HANA sequence that is used to generate the required keys.

```
// import XSDS client library
var XSDS = $.import("sap.hana.xs.libs.dbutils", "xsd");
// import CDS entity as XSDS entity
var SOItem = XSDS.$importEntity("sap.hana.democontent.epm.data",
"EPM.SO.Item");
var SOHeader = XSDS.$importEntity("sap.hana.democontent.epm.data",
"EPM.SO.Header", {
 SALESORDERID: { $key: "\"SAP_HANA_DEMO\"".
"\sap.hana.democontent.epm.data::salesOrderId\"" },
 items: {
 $association: {
 $entity: SOItem,
 $viaBacklink: "SALESORDERID"
 }
 }
});
```

2. Retrieve an existing entity instance in managed mode.

The `$importEntity()` function returns a constructor for the entity imported. To retrieve an existing entity instance in managed mode, run a query using the entity's key (for example, using `$get`), or retrieve multiple instances that satisfy a given condition.

```
var order = SOHeader.$get({ SALESORDERID:
 "0500000236" }); // by key
var orders = SOHeader.$findAll({ LIFECYCLESTATUS: "N", TAXAMOUNT: { $gt:
 17000 } }); // by filter
```

3. Use or modify entity instances as required.

Instances of CDS entities are regular JavaScript objects which you can use and modify as required.

```
order.CURRENCY = "USD";
order.HISTORY.CHANGEDAT = new Date();
```

4. Ensure all changes are made persistent in the database.

Calling `$save()` flushes in-memory changes of the instance and all its reachable associated instances to the database. Only entity instances that have been changed will be updated in the database.

```
order.$save();
```

5. Use the entity constructor to create a new CDS instance.

The key is generated automatically by the SAP HANA sequence supplied during the import of the XSDS library and the CDS entities into your application.

```
var newOrder = new SoHeader ({
 TAXAMOUNT: 69.04,
 NETAMOUNT: 190.9,
 GROSSAMOUNT: 325.94,
 CURRENCY: "EUR",
 PARTNERID: "0100000044",
 DELIVERYSTATUS: "I",
 BILLINGSTATUS: "I",
 LIFECYCLESTATUS: "N",
 HISTORY: {
 CHANGEDAT: Date.now(),
 CHANGEDBY: "0000000033",
 CREATEDAT: Date.now(),
 CREATEDBY: "0000000033"
 },
 items: []
});
newOrder.$save();
```

6. Discard any unwanted instances of a CDS entity.

Retrieved CDS entities are stored in the entity manager cache and subject to general JavaScript garbage-collection rules. Use the `$discard()` function to permanently delete an entity instance from the database.

```
order.$discard();
```

7. Control how associations in a CDS document are followed.

By default, all associations are resolved, that is; association properties store a reference to their associated entity instance. For heavily connected data, this may lead to very large data structures in memory. A “lazy” association will delay the retrieval of the associated instances until the property is actually accessed. The first time the lazy association is accessed, the associated entity is queried from the entity cache or the database. After a lazy association has been resolved, it becomes a normal property of its parent entity instance.

To control how associations are being followed, declare “lazy” associations during the import operation, as shown in the following example:

```
var SOHeader = XSDS.$importEntity("sap.hana.democontent.epm.data",
"EPM.SO.Header", {
 SALESORDERID: { $key: "\"SAP_HANA_DEMO\".
 \"sap.hana.democontent.epm.data::salesOrderId\"" },
 items: {
 $association: {
 $entity: SOItem,
 $viaBacklink: "SALESORDERID",
 $lazy: true
 }
 }
});
```

The retrieval of “Lazy” associations is handled transparently by XSDS.

```
var order = SOHeader.$get({ SALESORDERID: "0500000236" }); // retrieve
single SO header
if (order.DELIVERYSTATUS != "D")
 return; // return without loading SO items from database
for (var item in order.items) { ... }; // now retrieve items for processing
```

#### 8. Manually control transactions for your application where necessary.

Every SAP HANA XS application using XSDS is associated with one database connection and one transaction. This is also true if the application uses multiple imports of the XSDS library; XS libraries are single instances by default. Entities retrieved from the database are stored in the entity manager cache, and any updates need to be saved explicitly to the database. By default, database saves will automatically commit the changes to the database. However, you can manually control transactions for your application by disabling auto-commit and calling `$commit` and `$rollback` explicitly, as illustrated in the following example.

```
// disable auto-commit
XSDS.Transaction.$setAutoCommit(false);
var order = SOHeader.$get({ SALESORDERID: "0500000236" });
order.CURRENCY = "JPY";
order.$save(); // persist update
XSDS.Transaction.$commit(); // commit change
order.CURRENCY = "EUR";
order.$save(); // persist update
order.HISTORY.CHANGEDAT = new Date();
order.$save(); // persist update
XSDS.Transaction.$rollback(); // database rollback
// order #0500000236 now has currency JPY again
```

## Related Information

[SAP HANA XS JavaScript API Reference](#)

[SAP HANA XS DB Utilities JavaScript API Reference](#)

[Creating the Persistence Model in Core Data Services \[page 170\]](#)

## 8.5 Creating Custom XS SQL Connections

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), you use the SQL-connection configuration file to configure a connection to the database; the connection enables the execution of SQL statements from inside a server-side JavaScript application with credentials that are different to the credentials of the requesting user.

In cases where it is necessary to execute SQL statements from inside your server-side JavaScript application with credentials that are different to the credentials of the requesting user, SAP HANA XS enables you to define and use a specific configuration for individual SQL connections. Each connection configuration has a unique name, for example, `Registration` or `AdminConn`, which is generated from the name of the corresponding connection-configuration file (`Registration.xssqlcc` or `AdminConn.xssqlcc`) on activation in the repository. The administrator can assign specific, individual database users to this configuration, and you can use the configuration name to reference the unique SQL connection configuration from inside your JavaScript application code.

The following code example shows how to use the XS SQL connection `AdminConn.xssqlcc`.

```
function test() {
 var body;
 var conn;
 $.response.status = $.net.http.OK;
 try {
 conn = $db.getConnection("sap.hana.sqlcon::AdminConn");
 var pStmt = conn.prepareStatement("select CURRENT_USER from dummy");
 var rs = pStmt.executeQuery();
 if (rs.next()) {
 body = rs.getString(1);
 }
 rs.close();
 pStmt.close();
 } catch (e) {
 body = "Error: exception caught";
 $.response.status = $.net.http.BAD_REQUEST;
 }
 if (conn) {
 conn.close();
 }
 $.response.setBody(body);
}
test();
```

To use the SQL connection from your application during runtime, you must bind the SQL connection configuration to a registered database user and assign the user the appropriate permissions, for example, by assigning a pre-defined role to the user. To maintain this user mapping, SAP HANA XS provides the Web-based [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#). When the run-time status of the XSSQLCC artifact is set to [\*active\*](#), SAP HANA generates a new auto user (with the name `XSSQLCC_AUTO_USER_[...]`). The new user is granted the permissions specified in a role, which can be assigned using the parameter `role_for_auto_user` - either in the design-time artifact or the run-time configuration.

### Note

Access to the tools provided by the [XS Administration Tool](#) requires the privileges granted by one or more specific user roles.

To use the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#) to view or maintain an XS SQL connection configuration, you need the privileges granted by the following SAP HANA XS roles:

- [`sap.hana\_xs.admin.roles::SQLCCViewer`](#)  
Required to display the available SQL Connections and the current user mapping
- [`sap.hana\_xs.admin.roles::SQLCCAdministrator`](#)  
Required to modify details of the user mapping; the [`SQLCCAdministrator`](#) role includes the role [`SQLCCViewer`](#).

## Troubleshooting Tips

If you are having problems implementing the XS SQL connection feature using an `.xssqlcc` configuration, check the following points:

- User permissions  
Make sure that you grant the necessary user the activated role (for example, [`sap.hana\_xs.admin.roles::SQLCCAdministrator`](#)). You can use the developer tools to grant roles (or privileges), as follows:
  - SAP HANA studio  
In the [Systems](#) view of the [Administration Console](#) perspective, choose [Security](#) [Users](#)
  - SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench  
In the [Security](#) tool, expand the [Users](#) node, choose the target (or add a new) user, and use the [Granted roles](#) tab.
  - XS Administration Tools  
In the [SQL Connection Details](#) tab of the XSSQLCC artifact's run time configuration. To edit user/role details here, you will need the role [`SQLCCAdministrator`](#) and, in addition, the appropriate administrator permissions required to set up (and assign roles to) a database user.
- File location  
Make sure that the SQL-role configuration file (`.xssqlcc`) you create is located in the same package as the application that references it.
- Logon dependencies  
If your application is using form-based logon (configured in the application's `.xsaccess` file), make sure the `libxsauthenticator` library is present and specified in the list of trusted libraries displayed in the SAP HANA studio's [Administration Console](#) perspective ( [Administration](#) [Configuration Tab](#) [`xsengine.ini`](#) [`application\_container`](#) [`application\_list`](#) ). If the `libxsauthenticator` library is not in the list of authorized libraries, an SAP HANA system administrator must add it.

### Note

If you have to authorize `libxsauthenticator`, you might also need to refresh the Web page in your browser the next time you want to access `.xssqlcc` to display the logon dialog again.

## 8.5.1 Create an XS SQL Connection Configuration

The `.xssqlcc` file enables you to establish a database connection that you can use to execute SQL statements from inside your server-side JavaScript application with credentials that are different to the credentials of the requesting user.

### Prerequisites

- Access to an SAP HANA system
- Access to a development workspace and a shared project.
- The application package structure in which to save the artifacts you create and maintain in this task
- The SQL connection configuration file (`.xssqlcc`) you create must be located in the same package as the application that uses it.
- You have the privileges granted in the following SAP HANA user roles:
  - `sap.hana_xs.admin.roles::SQLCCViewer`
  - `sap.hana_xs.admin.roles::SQLCCAAdministrator`

#### i Note

This tutorial combines tasks that are typically performed by two different roles: the application developer and the database administrator. The developer would not normally require the privileges of the SAP HANA administrator or those granted by the `SQLCCAAdministrator` user role.

### Context

In this tutorial, you learn how to configure an SQL connection that enables you to execute SQL statements from inside your server-side JavaScript application with credentials that are different to the credentials of the user requesting the XSJS service.

To configure and use an XS SQL configuration connection file, perform the following steps:

### Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA studio.
  - a. Open the `SAP HANA Development` perspective.
  - b. Open the `Project Explorer` view.
2. Create the application descriptors for the new application.
  - a. In the SAP HANA studio's `Project Explorer` view, right-click the folder `acme.com.xs.testApp1` where you want to create the new `(.xsapp)` file.
  - b. In the context-sensitive popup menu, choose  `New > Other...`.

- c. In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose ► SAP HANA ► Application Development ► XS Application Descriptor File ▶

The file-creation wizard adds the required file extension .xsapp automatically.

- d. Choose *Finish*.

➔ Tip

Files with names that begin with the period (.), for example, .xsapp or .xsaccess, are sometimes not visible in the *Project Explorer*. To enable the display of all files in the *Project Explorer* view, use the ► *Customize View* ► Available Customization ▶ option and clear all check boxes.

- e. Activate the application descriptor file.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new (.xsapp) file and choose ► Team ► *Activate* ▶ from the context-sensitive popup menu.

3. Create the application access file for the new application.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio, open the SAP HANA Development perspective.
- b. In the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the folder where you want to create the new (.xsaccess) file.
- c. In the context-sensitive popup menu, choose ► New ► Other... ▶.
- d. In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose ► SAP HANA ► Application Development ► XS Application Access File ▶

The file-creation wizard adds the required file extension .xsaccess automatically and enables direct editing of the file.

i Note

The default name for the core application-access file is .xsaccess and cannot be changed.

- e. Choose *Finish*.
- f. Check the contents of the .xsaccess file.

```
{
 "exposed" : true,
 "authentication" : { "method" : "Form" },
 "prevent_xsrf" : true
}
```

The entries in the .xsaccess file ensure the following:

- o Application data can be exposed to client requests
- o Username and password credentials are required for logon authentication
- o Protection against cross-site, request-forgery attacks is enabled

- g. Activate the application access file.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new (.xsaccess) file and choose ► Team ► *Activate* ▶ from the context-sensitive popup menu.

4. Create the XS SQL connection configuration file.

Browse to the folder in your project workspace where you want to create the new SQL connection configuration file and perform the following steps:

## Note

The SQL connection configuration file (`.xssqlcc`) you create must be located in the same package as the application that references it.

- a. Right-click the folder where you want to save the XS SQL connection configuration file and choose     in the context-sensitive popup menu.
- b. Enter the name of the SQL connection configuration file in the *File Name* box, for example, `AdminConn`.

## Tip

The file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically (for example, `AdminConn.xssqlcc`) and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

- c. Choose *Finish* to save the changes and commit the new XS SQL connection configuration file in the repository.
5. Configure the details of the SQL connection that the XS JavaScript service will use.

- a. Define the required connection details.

```
{
 "description" : "Admin SQL connection"
 "role_for_auto_user" : "com.acme.roles::JobAdministrator"
}
```

## Tip

Replace the package path (`com.acme.roles`) and role name (`JobAdministrator`) with the suitable ones for your case.

- b. Activate the XS SQL connection configuration file.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new (`.xssqlcc`) file and choose   from the context-sensitive popup menu.

## Note

Activating the SQL connection configuration file `AdminConn.xssqlcc` creates a catalog object with the name `sap.hana.xs.testApp1::AdminConn`, which can be referenced in a XS JavaScript application.

6. Write an XS JavaScript application that calls the XS SQL connection configuration.

To create a preconfigured SQL connection using the configuration object `AdminConn`, for example, from inside your JavaScript application code, you must reference the object using the object name with the full package path, as illustrated in the following code example.

```
function test() {
 var body;
 var conn;
 $.response.status = $.net.http.OK;
 try {
 conn = $.db.getConnection("sap.hana.xs.testApp1::AdminConn");
 }
```

```

var pStmt = conn.prepareStatement("select CURRENT_USER from dummy");
var rs = pStmt.executeQuery();
if (rs.next()) {
 body = rs.getString(1);
}
rs.close();
pStmt.close();
} catch (e) {
 body = "Error: exception caught";
 $.response.status = $.net.http.BAD_REQUEST;
}
if (conn) {
 conn.close();
}
$.response.setBody(body);
}
test();

```

- Save the changes to the artifacts you have created.

**i Note**

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. You do not need to explicitly commit it again.

- Activate the changes in the repository.
  - In the *Project Explorer* view, locate and right-click the package containing the new XS SQL and XS JavaScript artifacts.
  - In the context-sensitive pop-up menu, choose *Team* > *Activate*.
- Bind the SQL connection configuration to a user.

You use the Web-based *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* to configure the runtime elements of the XS SQL connection.

- Start the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

The *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/sap/hana/xs/admin/`.

**i Note**

Access to details of HTTP destinations in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* requires the credentials of an authenticated database user and one of the following SAP HANA roles:

- `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::SQLCCViewer`
- `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::SQLCAdministrator`

- In the *XS Applications* tab, expand the nodes in the application tree to locate the application `testApp`.
- Choose `AdminConn` to display details of the XS SQL configuration connection.

- Set the run-time status of the XS SQL connection configuration.

You must change the status runtime status of the XS SQL connection configuration to *Active*. This run-time status can only be changed by an administrator. When the run-time status of the XSSQL connection configuration is set to *active*, SAP HANA automatically generates a new user (`xssqlcc_auto_user_[...]`) for the XSSQL connection configuration object and assigns the role defined in `role_for_auto_user` to the new auto-generated user.

## Related Information

[The SQL Connection Configuration File \[page 616\]](#)

[SQL Connection Configuration Syntax \[page 617\]](#)

### 8.5.1.1 The SQL Connection Configuration File

The SQL-connection configuration file specifies the details of a connection to the database that enables the execution of SQL statements from inside a server-side (XS) JavaScript application with credentials that are different to the credentials of the requesting user.

If you want to create an SQL connection configuration, you must create the configuration as a flat file and save the file with the suffix `.xssqlcc`, for example, `MYSQLconnection.xssqlcc`.

#### Tip

If you are using the SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA Repository, the file creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and enables direct editing of the file.

The new configuration file must be located in the same package as the application that references it.

#### Note

An SQL connection configuration can only be accessed from an SAP HANA XS JavaScript application (`.xsjs`) file that is in the same package as the SQL connection configuration itself. Neither subpackages nor sibling packages are allowed to access an SQL connection configuration.

The following example shows the composition and structure of a configuration file `AdminConn.xssqlcc` for an SAP HANA XS SQL connection called `AdminConn`. On activation of the SQL connection configuration file `AdminConn.xssqlcc` (for example, in the package `sap.hana.sqlcon`), an SQL connection configuration with the name `sap.hana.sqlcon::AdminConn` is created, which can be referenced in your JavaScript application. In the `xssqlcc` artifact, you can set the following values:

- `description`  
A short description of the scope of the xs sql connection configuration
- `role_for_auto_user`  
The name of the role to be assigned to the auto user (if required) that the XSSQL connection uses, and the absolute path to the package where the role definition is located in the SAP HANA repository.

```
sap.hana.sqlcon::AdminConn.xssqlcc
```

```
{
 "description" : "Admin SQL connection"
 "role_for_auto_user" : "com.acme.roles::JobAdministrator"
}
```

The run-time status of an XSSQL connection configuration is *inactive* by default; the run-time status can only be activated by an SAP HANA user with administrator privileges, for example, using the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tools](#). When the run-time status of the XSSQLCC artifact is set to *active*, SAP HANA generates

a new auto user (with the name `xssqlcc_AUTO_USER_[...]`) and assigns the role defined in `role_for_auto_user` to the new auto-generated user.

➔ Tip

In the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tools*, it is possible to view and edit both the user's parameters and the role's definition.

To create a preconfigured SQL connection using the configuration object `AdminConn`, for example, from inside your JavaScript application code, you reference the object using the object name and full package path, as illustrated in the following code example.

```
{
 conn = $.db.getConnection("sap.hana.sqlcon::AdminConn");
}
```

## Related Information

[SQL Connection Configuration Syntax \[page 617\]](#)

[Create an XS SQL Connection Configuration \[page 612\]](#)

### 8.5.1.2 SQL Connection Configuration Syntax

The XS SQL connection-configuration file `.xssqlcc` uses pairs of keywords and values to define the SQL connection.

❖ Example

[The XS SQL Connection Configuration \(.xssqlcc\) File](#)

❖ Code Syntax

```
{
 "description" : "Admin SQL connection"
 "role_for_auto_user" : "com.acme.roles::JobAdministrator"
}
```

#### description

A short description of the selected SQL connection configuration.

### Sample Code

```
"description" : "Admin SQL connection"
```

## **role\_for\_auto\_user**

The name of (and package path to) the role assigned to be assigned to the new user that is automatically generated on activation of the XSSQL connection-configuration artifact.

### Sample Code

```
"role_for_auto_user" : "com.acme.roles::JobAdministrator"
```

Activating the design-time XSSQL connection configuration generates a run-time object whose status is “inactive” by default; the run-time status must be set to *active* by an SAP HANA user with administrator privileges, for example, using the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tools*. When the run-time status of the XSSQLCC artifact is set to *active*, SAP HANA generates a new auto user (with the name `XSSQLCC_AUTO_USER_[...]`) and assigns the role defined in `role_for_auto_user` to the new auto-generated user.

## Related Information

[The SQL Connection Configuration File \[page 616\]](#)

[Create an XS SQL Connection Configuration \[page 612\]](#)

## 8.6 Setting the Connection Language in SAP HANA XS

HTTP requests can define the language used for communication in the HTTP header `Accept-Language`. This header contains a prioritized list of languages (defined in the Browser) that a user is willing to accept. SAP HANA XS uses the language with the highest priority to set the language for the requested connection. The language setting is passed to the database as the language to be used for the database connection, too.

In server-side JavaScript, the `session` object's `language` property enables you to define the language an application should use for a requested connection. For example, your client JavaScript code could include the following string:

```
var application_language = $.session.language = 'de';
```

## Note

Use the language-code format specified in BCP 47 to set the session language, for example: "en-US" (US English), "de-AT" (Austrian German), "fr-CA" (Canadian French).

As a client-side framework running in the JavaScript sandbox, the SAP UI5 library is not aware of the `Accept-Language` header in the HTTP request. Since the current language setting for SAPUI5 is almost never the same as the language specified in the SAP HANA XS server-side framework, SAPUI5 clients could have problems relating to text displayed in the wrong language or numbers and dates formatted incorrectly.

The application developer can inform the SAP UI5 client about the current server-side language setting, for example, by adding an entry to the `<script>` tag in the SAPUI5 HTML page, as illustrated in the following examples:

- Script tag parameter:

```
<script id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
 type="text/javascript"
 src="/sap/ui/5.1/resources/sap-ui-core.js"
 data-sap-ui-theme="sap_goldreflection"
 data-sap-ui-libs="sap.ui.commons"
 data-sap-ui-language="de">
</script>
```

- Global `sap-ui-config` object:

```
<script>
 window["sap-ui-config"] = {
 "language": "de"
 }
</script>
[...]
<script id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
[...]
</script>
```

The `sap-ui-config` object must be created and filled before the `sap-ui-bootstrap` script.

It is important to understand that the session starts when a user logs on, and the specified language is associated with the session. Although the user can start any number of applications in the session, for example, in multiple Browser tabs, it is not possible to set a different language for individual applications called in the session,

## Setting the Session Language on the Server side

The script tag for the SAPUI5 startup can be generated on the server side, for example, using the `$.session.language` property to set the `data-sap-ui-language` parameter. Applications that have the SAPUI5 `<script>` tag in a static HTML page can use this approach, as illustrated in the following example:

```
<script id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
 type="text/javascript"
 src="/sap/ui/5.1/resources/sap-ui-core.js"
 data-sap-ui-theme="sap_goldreflection"
 data-sap-ui-libs="sap.ui.commons"
 data-sap-ui-language="$UI5_LANGUAGE$">
```

```
</script>
```

The called XSJS page can be instructed to replace the `$UI5_LANGUAGE$` parameter, for example, with the value stored in `$.session.language` when loading the static HTML page.

## Setting the Session Language with an AJAX Call

You can include an HTTP call in the static HTML page to fetch the correct language from the server using some server-side JavaScript code, as illustrated in the following example:

```
<script>
 var xmlhttp = new XMLHttpRequest();
 xmlhttp.open("GET", "getAcceptLanguage.xsjs", false);
 xmlhttp.send(null);
 window["sap-ui-config"] = {
 "language" : xmlhttp.getResponseHeader("Content-Language")
 }
</script>
<script id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
...
</script>
```

This approach requires an XSJS artifact (for example, `getAcceptLanguage.xsjs`) that responds to the AJAX call with the requested language setting, as illustrated in the following example:

```
$.response.contentType = "text/plain";
$.response.headers.set("Content-Language", $.session.language);
$.response.setBody("");
```

## 8.7 Scheduling XS Jobs

Scheduled jobs define recurring tasks that run in the background. The JavaScript API `$.jobs` allows developers to add and remove schedules from such jobs.

If you want to define a recurring task, one that runs at a scheduled interval, you can specify details of the job in a `.xsjob` file. The time schedule is configured using cron-like syntax. You can use the job defined in an `.xsjob` file to run an XS Javascript or SQLScript at regular intervals. To create and enable a recurring task using the `xsjob` feature, you perform the following high-level tasks:

### i Note

The tasks required to set up a scheduled job in SAP HANA XS are performed by two distinct user roles: the application developer and the SAP HANA administrator. In addition, to maintain details of an XS job in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*, the administrator user requires the privileges assigned by the user role `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::JobAdministrator`.

Table 87: Setting up Scheduled Jobs in SAP HANA XS.

| Step | Task                                                                               | User Role              | Tool             |
|------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| 1    | Create the function or script you want to run at regular intervals                 | Application developer  | Text editor      |
| 2    | Create the job file <code>.xsjob</code> that defines details of the recurring task | Application developer  | Text editor      |
| 3    | Maintain the corresponding runtime configuration for the <code>xsjob</code>        | SAP HANA administrator | XS Job Dashboard |
| 4    | Enable the job-scheduling feature in SAP HANA XS                                   | SAP HANA administrator | XS Job Dashboard |
| 5    | Check the job logs to ensure the job is running according to schedule.             | SAP HANA administrator | XS Job Dashboard |

## Related Information

[The XSJob File \[page 625\]](#)

[Tutorial: Schedule an XS Job \[page 621\]](#)

[XS Job File Keyword Options \[page 626\]](#)

### 8.7.1 Tutorial: Schedule an XS Job

The `xsjob` file enables you to run a service (for example, an XS JavaScript or an SQLScript) at a scheduled interval.

#### Prerequisites

- You have access to an SAP HANA system
- You have the privileges granted in the SAP HANA user role `sap.hana_xs.admin.roles::JobAdministrator`
- You have the privileges granted in the SAP HANA user role `sap.hana_xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator`

#### i Note

This tutorial combines tasks that are typically performed by two different roles: the application developer and the database administrator. The developer would not normally require the privileges granted to the `JobAdministrator` user role, the `sap.hana_xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator` user role, or the SAP HANA administrator.

## Context

In this tutorial, you learn how to schedule a job that triggers an XS JavaScript application that reads the latest value of a share price from a public financial service available on the Internet. You also see how to check that the XS job is working and running on schedule.

To schedule an XS job to trigger an XS JavaScript to run at a specified interval, perform the following steps:

## Procedure

1. Create the application package structure that contains the artifacts you create and maintain in this tutorial.

Create a root package called `yahoo`. You use the new `yahoo` package to contain the files and artifacts required to complete this tutorial.

```
/yahoo/
 .xsapp // application descriptor
 yahoo.xsjob // job schedule definition
 yahoo.xshttpdest // HTTP destination details
 yahoo.xsjs // Script to run on schedule
```

2. Write the XS JavaScript code that you want to run at the interval defined in an XS job schedule.

The following XS JavaScript connects to a public financial service on the Internet to check and download the latest prices for stocks and shares.

Create an XS JavaScript file called `yahoo.xsjs` and add the code shown in the following example:

```
function readStock(input) {
 var stock = input.stock;

 var dest = $.net.http.readDestination("yahoo", "yahoo");
 var client = new $.net.http.Client();
 var req = new $.web.WebRequest($.net.http.GET, "/d/quotes.csv?f=a&s=" +
stock);
 client.request(req, dest);
 var response = client.getResponse();
 var stockValue;
 if(response.body)
 stockValue = parseInt(response.bodyasString(), 10);
 var sql = "INSERT INTO stock_values VALUES (NOW(), ?)";
 var conn = $.db.getConnection();
 var pstmt = conn.prepareStatement(sql);
 pstmt.setDouble(1, stockValue);
 pstmt.execute();
 conn.commit();
 conn.close();
}
```

Save and activate the changes in the SAP HANA Repository.

### Note

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose   from the context-sensitive popup menu.

3. Create an HTTP destination file using the wizard to provide access to the external service (via an outbound connection).

Since the financial service used in this tutorial is hosted on an external server, you must create an HTTP destination file, which provides details of the server, for example, the server name and the port to use for HTTP access.

### Note

To maintain the runtime configuration details using the Web-based [XS Administration Tool](#) you need the privileges granted in the SAP HANA user role `sap.hana_xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator`.

Create a file called `yahoo.xshttpdest` and add the following content:

```
host = "download.finance.yahoo.com";
port = 80;
```

Save and activate the changes in the SAP HANA Repository.

4. Create the XS job file using the wizard to define the details of the schedule at which the job runs.

The XS job file uses a cron-like syntax to define the schedule at which the XS JavaScript must run. This job file triggers the script `yahoo.xsjs` on the 59th second of every minute and provides the name "SAP.DE" as the parameter for the stock value to check.

Create a file called `yahoo.xsjob` and add the following code:

```
{
 "description": "Read stock value",
 "action": "yahoo:yahoo.xsjs::readStock",
 "schedules": [
 {
 "description": "Read current stock value",
 "xsCron": "* * * * * 59",
 "parameter": {
 "stock": "SAP.DE"
 }
 }
]
}
```

Save and activate the changes in the SAP HANA Repository.

5. Maintain the XS job's runtime configuration.

You maintain details of an XS Job's runtime configuration in the [XS Job Dashboard](#).

- a. Start the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#).

The [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#) is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/admin/`.

- b. Maintain the details of the XS job.

### Note

To maintain details of an XS job using the Web-based [XS Administration Tool](#) you need the privileges granted in the SAP HANA user role `sap.hana_xs.admin.roles::JobAdministrator`.

You need to specify the following details:

- o [User](#)

The user account in which the job runs, for example, **SYSTEM**

- *Password*  
The password required for user, whose account is used to run the job.
  - *Locale*  
The language encoding required for the locale in which the job runs, for example, `en_US`
  - *Start/Stop time*  
An optional value to set the period of time during which the job runs. Enter the values using the syntax used for the SAP HANA data type `LocalDate` and `LocalTime`, for example, `2014-11-05 00:30:00` (thirty minutes past midnight on the 5th of November 2014).
  - *Active*  
Enable or disable the job schedule
- c. Save the job.  
Choose [Save Job](#) to save and activate the changes to the job schedule.
6. Enable the job-scheduling feature in SAP HANA XS.

This step requires the permissions granted to the SAP HANA administrator.

#### Note

It is not possible to enable the scheduler for more than one host in a distributed SAP HANA XS landscape.

- a. In the [XS Job Dashboard](#) set the *Scheduler Enabled* toggle button to `YES`.

Toggling the setting for the *Scheduler Enabled* button in the [XS Job Dashboard](#) changes the value set for the SAP HANA configuration variable `xsengine.ini > scheduler > enabled`, which is set in the [Configuration](#) tab of the SAP HANA studio's [Administration](#) perspective.

7. Check the job logs to ensure the XS job is active and running according to the defined schedule.

You can view the `xsjob` logs in the [XS Job Dashboard](#) tab of the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#).

#### Note

To maintain details of an XS job using the Web-based [XS Administration Tool](#) you need the privileges granted in the SAP HANA user role `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::JobAdministrator`.

If the job does not run at the expected schedule, the information displayed in the `xsjob` logs includes details of the error that caused the job to fail.

## Related Information

[The XS Job File \[page 625\]](#)

[XS Job-File Keyword Options \[page 626\]](#)

## 8.7.1.1 The XS Job File

The `.xsjob` file defines the details of a task that you want to run (for example, an XS JavaScript or an SQLScript) at a scheduled interval.

The XS job file uses a cron-like syntax to define the schedule at which the service defined in an XS JavaScript or SQLScript must run, as you can see in the following example, which runs the specified job (the stock-price checking service `yahoo.xsjs`) on the 59th second minute of every minute.

```
{
 "description": "Read stock value",
 "action": "yahoo:yahoo.xsjs::readStock",
 "schedules": [
 {
 "description": "Read current stock value",
 "xscron": "* * * * * 59",
 "parameter": {
 "stock": "SAP.DE"
 }
 }
]
}
```

When defining the job schedule in the `xsjob` file, pay particular attention to the entries for the following keywords:

- `action`

Text string used to specify the path to the function to be called as part of the job.

```
"action": "<package_path>:<XSJS_Service>.xsjs:<FunctionName>",


```

### i Note

You can also call SQLScripts using the `action` keyword.

- `description`

Text string used to provide context when the XSjob file is displayed in the *SAP HANA XS Administration* tool.

- `xscron`

The schedule for the specified task (defined in the “`action`” keyword); the schedule is defined using cron-like syntax.

- `parameter`

A value to be used during the action operation. In this example, the parameter is the name of the stock `SAP.DE` provided as an input for the parameter (`stock`) defined in the `readStock` function triggered by the `xsjob` action. You can add as many parameters as you like as long as they are mapped to a parameter in the function itself.

The following examples illustrate how to define an `xscron` entry including how to use expressions in the various `xscron` entries (day, month, hour, minutes,...):

- `2013 * * fri 12 0 0`  
Every Friday of 2013 at 12:00 hours

- `* * 3:-2 * 12:14 0 0`  
Every hour between 12:00 and 14:00 hours on every day of the month between the third day of the month and the second-last day.

## Tip

In the day field, third from the left, you can use a negative value to count days backwards from the end of the month. For example, \* \* -3 \* 9 0 means: three days from the end of every month at 09:00.

- \* \* \* \* \*/5 \*

Every five minutes (\*/5) and at any point (\*) within the specified minute.

## Note

Using the asterisk (\*) as a wild card in the seconds field can lead to some unexpected consequences, if the scheduled job takes less than 59 seconds to complete; namely, the scheduled job restarts on completion. If the scheduled job is very short (for example, 10 seconds long), it restarts repeatedly until the specified minute ends.

To prevent short-running jobs from restarting on completion, schedule the job to start at a specific second in the minute. For example, \* \* \* \* \* \*/5 20 indicates that the scheduled job should run every five minutes and, in addition, at the 20th second in the specified minute.

- \* \* \* -1.sun 9 0 0

Every last Sunday of a month at 09:00 hours

## Related Information

[XS Job File Keywords \[page 626\]](#)

[Tutorial: Schedule an XS Job \[page 621\]](#)

## 8.7.1.2 XS Job File Keyword Options

The XS job file `.xsjob` uses a number of keywords to define the job that must be run at a scheduled interval.

### Example

#### The XS Job (`.xsjob`) File

```
{
 "description": "Read stock value",
 "action": "yahoo:yahoo.xsjs::readStock",
 "schedules": [
 {
 "description": "Read current stock value",
 "signature_version": 1,
 "xscron": "* * * * * 59",
 "parameter": {
 "stock": "SAP.DE"
 }
 }
]
}
```

## description

```
{
 "description": "Read stock value",
}
```

The `description` keyword enables you define a text string used to provide context when the XS job is displayed for maintenance in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*. The text string is used to populate the *Description* field in the *SCHEDULED JOB* tab.

## action

```
{
 "action": "myapps.finance.yahoo:yahoo.xsjs::readStock",
}
```

The `action` keyword enables you to define the function to run as part of the XS job, for example, an XS JavaScript or an SQLScript. The following syntax is required: “`action`” :

“`<package.path>:<XSJS_Service>.xsjs::<functionName>`”.

### i Note

If you want to use the action to call an SQLScript, replace the name of the XSJS service in the example, with the corresponding SQLScript name.

## schedules

```
{
 "schedules": [
 {
 "description": "Read current stock value",
 "xscron": "* * * * * 59",
 "parameter": {
 "stock": "SAP.DE"
 }
 }
]
}
```

The `schedules` keyword enables you define the details of the XS job you want to run. Use the following additional keywords to provide the required information:

- `description` (optional)  
Short text string to provide context
- `xscron`  
Uses cron-like syntax to define the schedule at which the job runs

- `parameter` (optional)  
Defines any values to be used as input parameters by the (XSJS or SQLScript) function called as part of the job

## signature\_version

```
{
 "signature_version": 1,
}
```

The `signature_version` keyword enables you manage the version “signature” of an XS job. You change the XS job version if, for example, the parameter signature of the job action changes; that is, an XS job accepts more (or less) parameters, or the types of parameters differ compared with a previous version of an XS job. On activation in the SAP HANA Repository, the signature of an XS job is compared to the previous one and, if the job’s signature has changed, any job schedules created at runtime will be deactivated.

### i Note

The default value for `signature_version` is 0 (zero).

Deactivation of any associated runtime job schedules prevents the schedules from silently failing (no information provided) and enables you to adjust the parameters and reactivate the job schedules as required, for example, using the enhanced XS JS API for schedules. Schedules defined in a design-time XS Job artifact are replaced with the schedules defined in the new version of the XS job artifact.

### ➔ Tip

Minor numbers (for example, 1.2) are not allowed; the job scheduler interprets “1.2” as “12”.

## xscron

```
{
 "schedules": [
 {
 "description": "Read current stock value",
 "xscron": "* * * * * 59",
 "parameter": {
 "stock": "SAP.DE"
 }
 }
]
}
```

The `xscron` keyword is used in combination with the `schedules` keyword. The `xscron` keyword enables you to define the schedule at which the job runs. As the name suggests, the `xscron` keyword requires a cron-like syntax.

The following table explains the order of the fields (\*) used in the “xscron” entry of the `.xsjob` file and lists the permitted value in each field.

Table 88: xs cron Syntax in the XS Job File

| xs cron Field (* from left to right) | Meaning and Permitted Value |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Year                                 | 4-digit, for example, 2013  |
| Month                                | 1 to 12                     |
| Day                                  | -31 to 31                   |
| DayofWeek                            | mon,tue,wed,thu,fri,sat,sun |
| Hour                                 | 0 to 23                     |
| Minute                               | 0 to 59                     |
| Second                               | 0 to 59                     |

### i Note

Using the asterisk (\*) as a wild card in the seconds field can lead to some unexpected consequences, if the scheduled job takes less than 59 seconds to complete; namely, the scheduled job restarts on completion. If the scheduled job is very short (for example, 10 seconds long), it restarts repeatedly until the specified minute ends.

To prevent short-running jobs from restarting on completion, schedule the job to start at a specific second in the minute. For example, \* \* \* \* \* \*/5 20 indicates that the scheduled job should run every five minutes and, in addition, at the 20th second in the specified minute. The job starts at precisely 20 seconds into the specified minute and runs only once.

The following table illustrates the syntax allowed to define expressions in the “xs cron” entry of the .xsjob file.

Table 89:

| Expression | Where used... | Value                                                 |
|------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| *          | Anywhere      | Any value                                             |
| */a        | Anywhere      | Any a-th value                                        |
| a:b        | Anywhere      | Values in range a to b                                |
| a:b/c      | Anywhere      | Every c-th value between a and b                      |
| a.y        | DayOfWeek     | On the a-th occurrence of the weekday y (a = -5 to 5) |
| a,b,c      | Anywhere      | a or b or c                                           |

## parameter

```
{
 "schedules": [
 {
 "description": "Read current stock value",
 "xs cron": "* * * * * 59",
 "parameter": {
 "stock": "SAP.DE",
 "interval": "10"
 }
 }
]
}
```

```
 "share": "BMW.DE"
 }
]
}
```

The optional *parameter* keyword is used in combination with the *schedules* keyword. The *parameter* keyword defines values to be used as input parameters by the XSJS function called as part of the job. You can list as many parameters as you like, separated by a comma (,) and using the JSON-compliant syntax quotations ("").

## 8.7.2 Add or Delete a Job Schedule during Runtime

The `$.jobs` application programming interface (API) enables you to manipulate the schedules for an XS job at runtime.

### Context

You can use the `$.jobs.JobSchedules` API to add a schedule to (or delete a schedule from) a job defined in an `.xsjob` file at runtime.

**i** Note

Schedules added at runtime are deleted when the `.xsjob` file is redeployed.

### Procedure

1. Create an XS job file using the `.xsjob` syntax.

**i** Note

If you have already created this XS job file, for example, in another tutorial, you can skip this step.

Create a file called `yahoo.xsjob` and add the following code:

```
{
 "description": "Read stock value",
 "action": "yahoo:yahoo.xsjs::readStock",
 "schedules": [
 {
 "description": "Read current stock value",
 "xscron": "* * * * * 59",
 "parameter": {
 "stock": "SAP.DE"
 }
 }
]
}
```

Save and activate the changes in the SAP HANA Repository.

**i Note**

Saving a file in a shared project automatically commits the saved version of the file to the repository. To explicitly commit a file to the repository, right-click the file (or the project containing the file) and choose **Team** **Commit** from the context-sensitive popup menu.

2. Create the XS JavaScript (.xsjs) file you want to use to define the automatic scheduling of a job at runtime.

Name the file `schedule.xsjs`.

3. Use the `$.jobs` JavaScript API to add or delete a schedule to a job at runtime.

The following example `schedule.xsjs` adds a new schedule at runtime for the XS job defined in `yahoo.xsjob`, but uses the `parameter` keyword to change the name of the stock price to be checked.

```
var myjob = new $.jobs.Job({uri:"yahoo.xsjob"});
var id = myjob.schedules.add({
 description: "Query another stock",
 xscron: "* * * * * /10",
 parameter: {
 stock: "APC.DE"
 }
});
// delete a job schedule
// myjob.schedules.delete({id: id});
```

4. Save and activate the changes in the SAP HANA Repository.

5. Call the XS JavaScript service `schedule.xsjs` to add the new job schedule at runtime.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA XS JavaScript Reference](#)

[XS Job File Keyword Options \[page 626\]](#)

## 8.8 Tracing Server-Side JavaScript

The SAP HANA XS server-side JavaScript API provides tracing functions that enable your application to write predefined messages in the form of application-specific trace output in the `xsengine` trace files (`xsengine*.trc`) according to the trace level you specify, for example, “info”(information) or “error”.

If you use the server-side JavaScript API to enable your application to write trace output, you can choose from the following trace levels:

- `debug`
- `info`
- `warning`
- `error`

- fatal

For example, to enable debug-level tracing for your JavaScript application, include the following code:

```
$trace.debug("request path: " + $.request.path);
```

**i Note**

You can view the `xsengine*.trc` trace files in the *Diagnosis Files* tab page in the *Administration* perspective of the SAP HANA studio.

## 8.8.1 Trace Server-Side JavaScript Applications

The server-side JavaScript API for SAP HANA XS enables you to activate the writing of messages into a trace file; the following trace levels are available: debug, error, fatal, info, and warning.

### Context

By default, applications write messages of severity level error to the `xsengine*.trc` trace files; you can increase the trace level manually, for example, to fatal. In SAP HANA XS, the following steps are required to enable trace output for your server-side JavaScript application:

### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio.
2. In the *Systems* view, double-click the SAP HANA instance to open the *Administration* view for the repository where your server-side JavaScript source files are located.
3. Choose the *Trace Configuration* view.
4. In the *Database Trace* screen area, choose *Edit Configuration*.

The *Edit Configuration* icon is only visible if you have the required privileges on the selected SAP HANA system.

### Note

If the *Database Trace* screen area is not displayed, check that you are using a version of SAP HANA studio that is compatible (the same as) with the SAP HANA server where you want to set up tracing.

5. Select the *Show All Components* checkbox.
6. Enter the partial or full name of your application into the search box.
7. Find the trace matching your application name and choose the trace level you want to use to generate output.

The application name is the location (package) of the .xsapp file associated with the application you are tracing. The trace topic is named `ssa:<package.path> <appName>`.

### Note

To set the trace level, click the cell in the *System Trace Level* column that corresponds with the application you want to trace and choose the desired trace level from the drop-down list.

8. Choose *Finish* to activate the trace level changes.

## 8.8.2 View XS JavaScript Application Trace Files

The server-side JavaScript API for SAP HANA XS enables you to instruct your JavaScript applications to write application-specific trace messages in the `xsengine*.trc` trace files. You can view the trace files in the *Diagnosis Files* tab page of the [Administration](#) perspective in the SAP HANA studio.

### Context

The trace levels “debug”, “error”, “fatal”, “info”, and “warning” are available. To view trace output for your server-side JavaScript application, perform the following steps:

### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA studio.
2. In the [Systems](#) view, double-click the SAP HANA instance to open the [Administration](#) view for the repository where your server-side JavaScript source files are located.
3. Choose the *Diagnosis Files* tab page.
4. In the *Filter* box, enter a string to filter the list of search files displayed, for example, `xsengine*.trc`.  
The timestamp displayed in the *Modified* column does not always reflect the precise time at which the trace file was written or most recently modified.
5. Locate the trace file for your SAP HANA XS application and doubleclick the entry to display the contents of the selected trace-file in a separate tab page.

## 8.9 Debugging Server-Side JavaScript

SAP HANA XS provides a set of dedicated tools to enable you to debug the XS JavaScript code that you write. To trigger debugging, you need an XS JavaScript configuration.

### Overview

To prepare the system for debugging, you need to perform the following high-level steps:

- Ensure all prerequisites listed below are met.
- Create a debug configuration or choose an existing debug configuration to use.
- Set breakpoints in the file you want to debug.
- Execute XS JavaScript debugging.

To trigger debugging, you need to choose an XS JavaScript configuration; each configuration type represents a different starting point for debugging an XS JavaScript file. To debug XS JavaScript, you must choose one of the following types of configuration:

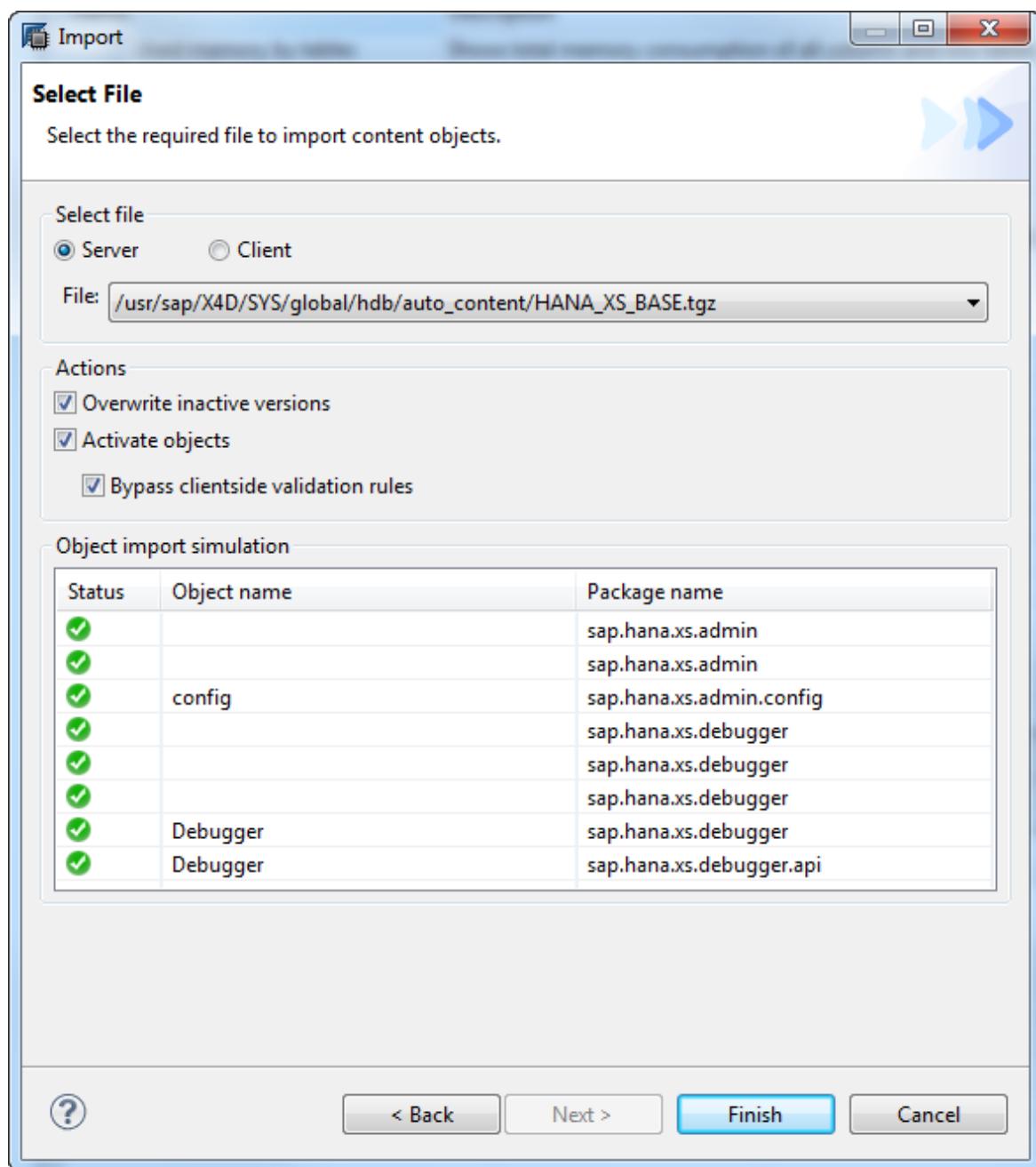
- [XS JavaScript](#)

- Use to debug a stand-alone XS JavaScript service.
- [XS JavaScript: Manual Session](#)  
Use to debug an XS JavaScript initiated from any remote client using that specific XS session.
- [XS JavaScript: HTML-based](#)  
Use to debug an XS JavaScript initiated from HTML.
- [XS JavaScript: XS OData-based](#)  
Use to debug an XS JavaScript initiated from an XS OData breakout.

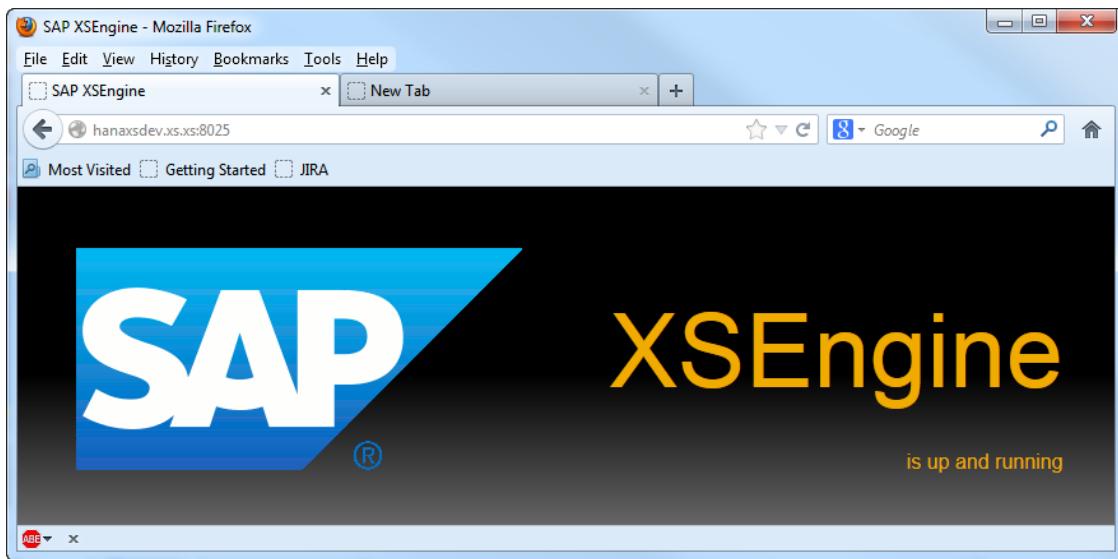
### Note

Before you start debugging server-side JavaScript on SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), first check that you have fulfilled the following prerequisites:

- Ensure the delivery unit for SAP HANA XS debugging tools is imported  
To import the `HANA_XS_BASE.tgz` delivery unit (DU) that contains the XS JavaScript debugging tools, in SAP HANA Studio, choose the option   .



- Enable debugging on the system level:
  1. Ensure the SAP HANA XS Web server is running, and that you have HTTP access to the following URL:  
`http:<SAPHANA_HOSTNAME>:<PortNumber>:/`



2. Start SAP HANA Studio and open the *Administration* perspective.
3. In the *Configuration* tab, add a section called `xsengine.ini > debugger` (if it does not exist) and add (or set) the following parameter: `enabled=true`

|                                    |                   |        |
|------------------------------------|-------------------|--------|
| <code>xsengine.ini</code>          |                   | ◆      |
| <code>application_container</code> |                   | ◆      |
| <code>communication</code>         |                   | ◆      |
| <code>debugger</code>              |                   | ◆      |
| <code>enabled</code>               | <code>true</code> | ● true |

- Assign the debugging role to your user  
SAP HANA XS provides a dedicated debugger user role; the role must be assigned to any user who wants to start a debugging session for server-side JavaScript in SAP HANA XS.

| Granted Roles                  |  | System Privileges | Object Privileges | Analytic Privileges | Package Privileges | Application Privilege |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
|                                |  |                   |                   |                     |                    |                       |
| Role                           |  | Grantor           |                   |                     |                    |                       |
| PUBLIC                         |  | SYS               |                   |                     |                    |                       |
| sap.hana_xs.debugger::Debugger |  | _SYS_REPO         |                   |                     |                    |                       |
| TEAM_XS                        |  | SYSTEM            |                   |                     |                    |                       |

- Assign the debugging role to another user (optional)  
You can grant a user global access to any of your debug sessions or grant access to a debug session that is flagged with a specified token. You can also restrict access to a debug session to a specified period of time.

#### Note

By default, other users do not have the permissions required to access your XS JavaScript debugging sessions. However, SAP HANA XS enables you to grant access to your debug sessions to other users, and vice versa.

1. Start SAP HANA Studio and open the *Administration* perspective.

2. In the *Systems* view, expand the *Security* node and double-click the user to whom you want to assign the debugger role.
3. In the *Granted Roles* view, choose the [+] icon and, in the *Select Role* dialog, enter **debugger** to search for the debugger role and choose *OK*.

#### i Note

Debugging can also be done in other settings, for example, when a server is cloud-based or when it is a secured server.

- Debugging with HANA Cloud Platform (HCP) (optional)  
Debugging using HCP requires prerequisites to be fulfilled. For more information, see *Getting Started* in the SAP HANA Cloud Documentation.
- Debugging using a secure server (optional)  
Debugging using a secure server requires specific prerequisites to be fulfilled. For more information, see *Configure SSL for SAP HANA Studio Connections* in the SAP HANA Security Guide.

## Related Information

[Debug Session Access \[page 643\]](#)

[The XSJS Debugger Role \[page 642\]](#)

### 8.9.1 Create a Debug Configuration

## Context

To create an XS JavaScript debug configuration, do the following:

## Procedure

1. Open the *Debug* perspective.
2. Choose  and select *Debug Configurations*.
3. Choose the debug configuration type you want to debug.

It can be one of the following:

- *XS JavaScript*: Use to debug a standalone XS JavaScript service.
- *XS JavaScript: Manual Session* : Use to debug an XS JavaScript initiated from any remote client using that specific XS session.

- *XS JavaScript: HTML-based*: Use to debug an XS JavaScript initiated from HTML.
- *XS JavaScript: XS OData-based*: Use to debug an XS JavaScript initiated from an XS OData breakout.

#### Note

You can use an existing configuration, change it or create a new debug configuration by selecting the file type to use for debugging, and clicking on the *New* button.

4. In the *General* tab, enter a name for the new debug configuration.
5. The external browser is your default debug mode. You can also choose to debug using the internal SAP HANA Studio.
6. To build the URL, select the file and resource path or add parameters where relevant. Parameters can be entered using raw text or a table format.
  - When creating a manual session debug configuration, you only need to select the system to debug.
  - If a system is logged off, it will not show in the system dropdown list.
7. You can include stored procedures in your debug configuration which will enable SQL script to be debugged along with XS JavaScript. If your XS JavaScript code triggers stored procedures, you can set breakpoints and debug them using the same debug configuration. You do not need to create a separate, dedicated debug configuration for the stored procedures.
8. For configurations with an *Input Parameters* tab, select the method, and enter the header and body information as relevant. Body details can be entered as raw text or in the x-www-form-urlencoded format.
9. Choose *Apply*.
10. Choose *Close* to save the configuration for later use or *Debug* to start debugging.

## 8.9.2 Execute XS JavaScript Debugging

SAP HANA studio enables you to debug XS JavaScript files, including setting breakpoints and inspecting variables.

### Context

To enable the display of more helpful and verbose information for HTTP 500 exceptions on the SAP HANA XS Web server, add the parameter `developer_mode` to the `xsengine.ini` `httpserver` section and set it to `true`. `xsengine.ini` is in the *Configuration* tab of the *Administration* perspective in SAP HANA studio.

### Prerequisites

- Ensure that debugging is enabled on the SAP HANA server.
- You have the debugger role assigned to your user.
- User authentication is enabled. This is required to open the debugging session.

To start debugging, do the following:

## Procedure

1. In a Web browser, run the XS JavaScript source file that you want to debug.
2. Create or choose a debug configuration for debug sessions for a specific SAP HANA installation.
  - a. Open the *Debug* view.
  - b. Choose a debug configuration.

You can also create a new configuration by doing one of the following:

- o From the menu bar, click **Run** **Debug Configuration** **Run** **Debug Configurations**.
  - o Select the file to be debugged and right-click, choose **Debug As** **Debug Configurations**.
- c. Choose *Apply*.
  - d. Choose *Close*.

3. Set Breakpoints

Set breakpoints in the JavaScript code by double-clicking the left vertical ruler.

```
MyFirstSourceFile.xjs
$.response.contentType = "text/html";
var output = "Hello, World !

";

var conn = $.db.getConnection();
var pstmt = conn.prepareStatement("select * from DUMMY");
var rs = pstmt.executeQuery();

if (!rs.next()) {
 $.response.setBody("Failed to retrieve data");
 $.response.status = $.net.http.INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR;
} else {
 output = output + "This is the response from my SQL: " + rs.getString(1);
}
rs.close();
pstmt.close();
conn.close();
```

4. Run the new debug configuration for your server by choosing and selecting your debug configuration.

You can also run the debug configuration by doing one of the following:

- o From the menu bar, click **Run** **Debug Configurations**, then choose the debug configuration you want to use.
- o Select the file to be debugged and right-click on it, and then choose *Debug As*.
- o From *Debug Configurations*, click the debug configuration you want to use.
- o For an HTML file, select the file to be debugged and right-click on it, then choose **Debug As** **HTML**.

### Note

When using the external debug mode, you can only have one open XS debug session per system. This is relevant for the following debug configurations:

- XS JavaScript
- XS JavaScript: HTML-based
- XS JavaScript: XS OData-based

## Related Information

[Create a Debug Configuration \[page 638\]](#)

### 8.9.2.1 The Debug Perspective

SAP HANA studio includes a dedicated debug perspective, which provides the tools needed by a developer who wants to debug server-side JavaScript code.

Application developers can use the SAP HANA studio's *Debug* perspective to perform standard debugging tasks, for example: starting and resuming code execution, stepping through code execution, adding breakpoints to the code. Developers can also inspect variables and check the validity of expressions. The following views are available as part of the standard *Debug* perspective:

- ***Debug***  
Displays the stack frame for the suspended or terminated threads for each target you are debugging. Each thread in your program appears as a node in the tree. You can also see which process is associated with each target.
- ***Breakpoints***  
Displays a list of the breakpoints set in the source file you are currently debugging
- ***Variables***  
Displays a list of the variables used in the source file you are currently debugging
- ***Expressions***,  
Displays global variables, such as `$.request` and other SAP HANA XS JavaScript API objects
- ***Outline***  
Displays a structural view of the source file you are currently debugging. You can double-click an element to expand and collapse the contents.
- ***Source-code editor***  
SAP HANA studio uses the file extension (for example, `.js` or `.xsjs`) of the source file you want to debug and opens the selected file in the appropriate editor. For example, files with the `.js` or `.xsjs` file extension are displayed in the built-in JavaScript editor.

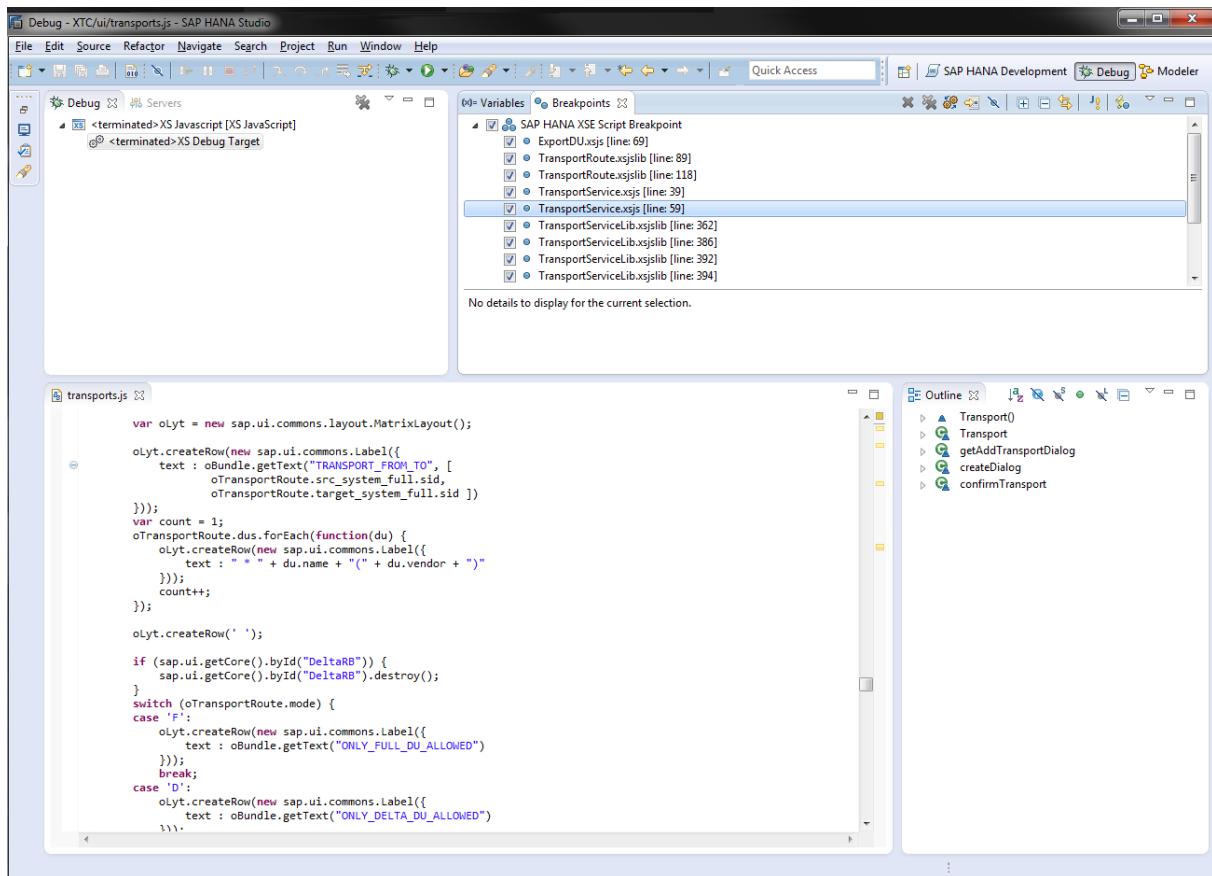
#### i Note

##### Unified Debugger

In the unified debugger, if you choose to include the SQL script layer in the debugging session, you will see the targets of both the XS JavaScript and SQL script in the debug view.

If a breakpoint is set in the XS JavaScript or in an SQL script procedure, you will see the breakpoints in the breakpoint view. The debugger will stop at the breakpoints in the relevant XS JavaScript or in the SQL script as usual. SQL script debugging behavior is the same in the SQL script debugger as it is in the unified

debugger, with the exception of the call stack behavior. For more information about debugging SQL script procedures, see *Debugging Procedures*.



## Related Information

[Debugging Procedures \[page 434\]](#)

### 8.9.2.2 The XSJS Debugger Role

The JavaScript debugger included with SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) requires user authentication to start a debug session. SAP HANA XS includes a dedicated debugger **role**, which defines the permissions needed by a developer who wants to debug server-side JavaScript code.

Debugging application code is an essential part of the application-development process. SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) includes a debug perspective, a debug view, and a dedicated debugger **role** that must be assigned to any developer who wants to debug XS JavaScript. The debugging role is named `sap.hana.xs.debugger::Debugger` and can be assigned to a user (or a role) either with the standard role-assignment feature included in SAP HANA studio (the *Application Privileges* tab in the *Security* area of the *Systems* view) or in a design-time, role-configuration file (`.hdbrole`).

Since a developer primarily needs to debug his own HTTP calls, the following limitations apply to a debug session:

- Only authenticated users can start a debug session, for example, by providing a user name and password when logging in to a debug session
- A user can debug his own sessions.
- A user can debug any session to which access has been explicitly granted, for example, by the owner of the session.

**i Note**

It is also possible to use SSL for debugging. If SSL is configured, the server redirects the Web-socket connect call to the corresponding SSL (secure HTTP) URL, for example, if sent by plain HTTP.

SAP HANA studio includes a graphical user interface (GUI) which you can use to grant access to debug sessions at both the session level and the user level.

## Related Information

[Custom Development Role \[page 738\]](#)

### 8.9.2.3 Debug Session Access

You can grant other developers access to the debug sessions you use for debugging server-side JavaScript on SAP HANA XS.

By default, other users are not allowed to access your XSJS debugging sessions. However, SAP HANA XS provides a tool that enables you to grant access to your debugging sessions to other users, too.

**i Note**

You can grant a user global access to any of your sessions or grant access to a session that is flagged with a specified token. You can also restrict access to a debug session to a specified period of time.

The *XS Debugging* tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL:

<SAPHANAWebServer>80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/debugger/.

When you are grant access to your debugging session, the following options are available:

- *User Name*  
The name of the database user who requires access to your debug session
- *Privilege Expires*  
The point in time that marks the end of the period for which access to one or more debug sessions is allowed.
- *grant debug permission for all sessions*  
You can grant a user **global** access to **any** of your debug sessions.

### **Restriction**

The user you grant access to must already be registered and authenticated in the SAP HANA database.

- *grant debug permission for this session only*

You can grant access to a debug session that is flagged with a specific token:

### **Restriction**

Unauthenticated users must use the token-based option.

The following rules apply to access to debug sessions flagged with a token:

- The session used for granting access to the debug sessions is flagged automatically.
- The session token is distributed by means of a session cookie; the cookie is inherited by any session created with the current browser session.

- **Session Name**

A freely definable name that can be used to distinguish your debug session in the context of multiple sessions.

## Related Information

[The XSJS Debugger Role \[page 642\]](#)

[Debugging Server-Side JavaScript \[page 634\]](#)

## 8.9.3 Troubleshoot Server-Side JavaScript Debugging

When debugging your JavaScript code, you sometimes need to solve problems, not only with the code itself, but the configuration of the sessions and the tools you use to perform the debugging.

## Prerequisites

- Start a Web-browser session with the SAP HANA server **before** starting a debug session.  
Make sure you open a session with the SAP HANA server by calling an XS JavaScript file from your Web browser **before** starting the debug operation.
- Select the session ID.  
Before starting to debug, select the session whose ID is specified in the `xsSessionId` cookie in your open Web-browser session.

## Context

If you are having problems using the embedded debugging tools to debug your server-side XSJS (JavaScript) code, check the following solutions:

- **Breakpoints**

The execution of your XS JavaScript code is not stopping at a breakpoint.

- **Network connections**

Your SAP HANA server is behind a proxy or a firewall.

## Procedure

1. Restart the SAP HANA studio with the `-clean` option.

 Sample Code

```
hdbstudio.exe -clean
```

To determine if a clean restart of SAP HANA studio is required, check if the *Breakpoints* view in SAP HANA studio's *Debug* perspective displays the breakpoints as type SAP HANA XSE Script, as follows:

2. In the *Breakpoints* view, choose the *View Menu*.  
a. Choose  *Group By* 

2. Remove breakpoints.

Try removing all the existing breakpoints from the debug session and recreating them.

3. Create a new workspace.

If a restart of SAP HANA studio with the `-clean` option does not solve the problem of unrecognized breakpoints, it might be necessary to create a new Eclipse (not repository) Workspace.

4. Set the *Active Provider* feature to **manual**.

If your SAP HANA server is behind a proxy or firewall, check that your *Network Connections* are configured for using a proxy, as follows:

 Note

It is not recommended to run a debugging session without using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol. The debugging session uses standard HTTP(S). The session either leverages an existing session or requests basic (HTTP) authentication on the connection request. The debugging session upgrades the HTTP connection to a WebSocket.

- a. In SAP HANA studio, choose    .
  - b. Set the *Active Provider* to *Manual*.  
The default setting is *Native*  
c. Update the schemas.  
d. Add the relevant proxy host and port.
5. Configure the *Debug Configuration Connection* properties.

- a. Select and right-click your SAP HANA system.
- b. Choose  *Properties*  *XS Properties*.
- c. Check that your system's SAP HANA XS properties match the *Debug Configuration Connection* properties.

## Related Information

[Execute XS JavaScript Debugging \[page 639\]](#)

## 8.10 Testing XS JavaScript Applications

SAP HANA provides a test framework called XSUnit that enables you to set up automatic tests for SAP HANA XS applications.

The test framework SAP HANA XSUnit (XSUnit) is a custom version of the open-source JavaScript test framework, Jasmine, adapted for use with SAP HANA XS. You can use the XSUnit test framework to automate the tests that you want to run for SAP HANA XS applications, for example, to test the following elements:

- Server side JavaScript code
- SQLScript code (stored procedures and views)
- Modeled calculation views

To use the tools and features provided with the XSUnit test framework, you must perform the following high-level steps:

1. Set up the client-side environment:
  - Install the latest version of SAP HANA studio (**optional**).
  - Ensure that the `hdbclient` tool is installed and running.
2. Set up the server-side environment.

The XSUnit test framework is included in the delivery unit `HANA_TEST_TOOLS`, which you must install manually, for example, using the SAP HANA studio or the *SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management* tool. After the installation completes, the tools are available in the package `sap.hana.testtools`.

### Note

Importing a delivery unit into an SAP HANA system requires the `REPO.IMPORT` privilege, which is normally granted only to the system administrator.

3. Maintain SAP HANA user privileges.  
The system administrator must grant test users the privileges required to use the test tools. The privileges are defined in roles, which the SAP HANA administrator can assign to all developers by default.
4. Maintain the test schema (**optional**).  
If you write XSUnit tests that are designed to test database content, you require a test schema in which you create test tables during your test execution and fill the tables with test data. To avoid conflicts when different users run the same test at the same time, it is recommended that individual developers place test tables in their corresponding user schema.

### **i** Note

You must ensure that `_SYS_REPO` has select permission to schema where the tables are located (for example, either your user schema or the test schema).

```
grant select on schema MY_TEST_SCHEMA to _SYS_REPO with grant option;
```

## Related Information

[Automated Tests with XSUnit in SAP HANA \[page 647\]](#)

[XSUnit Test Examples \[page 655\]](#)

[SAP HANA XSUnit JavaScript API Reference](#)

### 8.10.1 Automated Tests with XSUnit in SAP HANA

XSUnit is an integrated test environment that enables you to set up automatic tests for SAP HANA XS applications.

People developing applications in the context of the SAP HANA database need to understand how to implement a test-automation strategy. Especially for new applications which are designed to work exclusively with SAP HANA, it is a good idea to consider the adoption of best practices and tools.

If you want to develop content that is designed to run specifically in SAP HANA, it is strongly recommended to use the XSUnit test framework that is integrated in SAP HANA XS; this is the only way to transport your test code with your SAP HANA content. The XSUnit tools are based on a Java Script unit test framework that uses Jasmine as the underlying test library.

## Test Isolation and Simulation

To write self-contained unit tests that are executable in any system, you have to test the various SAP HANA objects in isolation. For example, an SAP HANA view typically has dependencies to other views or to database tables; these dependencies pass data to the view that is being tested and must not be controlled or overwritten by the test. For this reason, you need to be able to simulate dependencies on the tested view. XSUnit includes a test-isolation tool that provides this functionality; it allows you to copy a table for testing purposes.

### **i** Note

Although you cannot copy a view for testing purposes, you can create a table that acts like a view.

All (or specific) dependencies on any tables or views are replaced by references to temporary tables, which can be created, controlled, and populated with values provided by the automated test.

## Test Data

Preparing and organizing test data is an important part of the process of testing SAP HANA content such as views and procedures; specific data constellations are required that have to be stable in order to produce reliable regression tests. In addition, test-isolation tools help reduce the scope of a test by enabling you to test a view without worrying about dependent tables and views. Limiting the scope of a test also helps to reduces the amount of data which needs to be prepared for the test.

## Related Information

[XSUnit Test Examples \[page 655\]](#)

[Test an SAP HANA XS Application with XSUnit \[page 648\]](#)

## 8.10.2 Application Development Testing Roles

Dedicated roles enable developers to access and use the tools provided with the SAP HANA XS test framework (XSUnit).

To grant access to the SAP HANA XS test framework that enables developers to set up automatic testing for SAP HANA applications, the SAP HANA system administrator must ensure that the appropriate roles are assigned. The following table lists the roles that are available; one (or more) of the listed roles must be assigned to the application developers who want to use the XSUnit testing tools.

Table 90: Default Developer Testing Roles

| Role Name                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sap.hana.testtools.common::TestExecute | Enables you to view the persisted test results produced by the XSUnit test framework and to execute the examples included in the demonstration package ( <code>sap.hana.testtools.demo</code> ). |
| sap.hana.xs.debugger::Debugger         | Enables you to debug your server side JavaScript (test-)code                                                                                                                                     |
| sap.hana.xs.ide.roles::Developer       | Enables you to view source files in the SAP HANA Web-based Work Bench (Web IDE)                                                                                                                  |

## 8.10.3 Test an SAP HANA XS Application with XSUnit

Use the XSUnit tools to set up automated testing of your applications in SAP HANA XS.

## Prerequisites

The following prerequisites apply if you are using SAP HANA studio to set up and run tests with XSUnit:

- SAP HANA studio

You will need access to a shared development project in the SAP HANA system where you plan to run the tests.

## Context

If you want to develop content that is designed to run specifically with SAP HANA, you can use the XSUnit tools that are integrated in SAP HANA XS. The XS Unit tools are based on a Java Script unit test framework that uses Jasmine as the underlying test library.

## Procedure

1. Create an Eclipse project.

If you want to create your first unit test, you need an XS Project that will contain the test code. You can either create a new shared XS Project or, if a shared project already exists, you can checkout and import the existing project from the SAP HANA Repository. Within that project you can structure your tests in folders.

To create a shared Eclipse project, start SAP HANA studio and, in the *SAP HANA Development* perspective, perform the following steps:

- a. In the *Systems* view, add the SAP HANA system you want to work and test on.
- b. In the *Repositories* view, add a repository workspace for your *SAP HANA* system
- c. Create and share a project of type *XS Project*.

### → Tip

You can also checkout and import an existing project from the SAP HANA Repository.

2. Create an XSUnit test.

XSUnit test files are XSlibrary files (files with the .xsjslib suffix).

- a. Create an XSlibrary file, for example, called <MyFirstTest>.xsjslib.

You can use the file-creation Wizard in SAP HANA studio, for example, ► *File* ► *New* ► *Other* ► *SAP HANA Development* ► *XS JavaScript Library File* ▶

- b. Add the following content to the new XSlibrary test file <MyFirstTest>.xsjslib.

```
/*global jasmine, describe, beforeOnce, beforeEach, it, xit, expect*/
describe("My First Test Suite using Jasmine", function() {
 it('should show an assertion that passes', function() {
 expect(1).toBe(1);
 });
 it("should show an negative assertion", function() {
 expect(true).not.toBe(false);
 });
 it("should throw an expected error", function() {
 expect(function() {
 throw new Error("expected error");
 }).toThrowError("expected error");
 });
});
```

```
});
//xit = this test case is excluded
xit("should show an assertion that fails", function() {
 expect(1).toBe(2);
});
});
```

The JSLint tool that SAP HANA studio uses to check your XSJS code tells you that functions (for example, `describe`, `it`, `expect`) do not exist. This is not true; the functions do exist but they are defined in another library. To ensure that JSLint considers functions to be globally available, add the following comment as the first line of the XSUnit test file: `/*global jasmine, describe, beforeOnce, beforeEach, it, xit, expect*/`

### Note

You can extend the list of globally available functions to include any additional functions that you use in your test.

- c. Save the test file.
- d. Activate the test file.

In the SAP HANA studio's *SAP HANA Development* perspective, open the *Project Explorer* view, right-click the test file, and choose   .

3. Execute the XSUnit test.

How you execute an XSUnit test depends on the development tool suite you are using, for example, SAP HANA studio.

You execute an XSUnit test by entering the following URL in a Web Browser:

```
http://<hostname>:<port>/sap/hana/testtools/unit/jasminexs/TestRunner.xsjs?
package=<packageName>
```

Where `<hostname>` is the name of the SAP HANA system where you are running your application test, and `<port>` is the port number that the SAP HANA instance is available on.

The `TestRunner` tool recursively searches the package `<packageName>` for any files with the suffix `.xsjslib` whose names match the pattern `*Test`.

### Note

If you want to search for a string other than `*Test`, you must pass a custom pattern to `TestRunner` using the parameter `pattern`.

## Related Information

[XSUnit Test Run Options \[page 653\]](#)

## 8.10.3.1 XSUnit's Enhanced Jasmine Syntax

The XSUnit test framework is a custom version of the JavaScript test framework Jasmine adapted to suit SAP HANA XS.

A test specifications begin with a call to the global Jasmine function `describe`. The `describe` functions define suites that enable you to group together related test suites and specifications. Test-suite specifications are defined by calling the global Jasmine function `it`. You can group several test suites in one test file. The following code snippet shows one test suite (introduced by the function “`describe`”) and two test specifications, indicated by the function “`it`”.

```
/*jslint undef:true */
describe('testSuiteDescription', function() {
 beforeOnce(function() {
 // beforeOnce function is called once for all specifications
 });
 beforeEach(function() {
 // beforeEach function is called before each specification
 });
 it('testSpecDescription', function() {
 expect(1).toEqual(1);
 });
 it('anotherTestSpecDescription', function() {
 expect(1).not.toEqual(0);
 });
});
```

To enable a test suite to remove any duplicate setup and teardown code, Jasmine provides the global functions `beforeEach` and `afterEach`. As the name implies the `beforeEach` function is executed **before** each specification in the enclosing suite and all sub-suites; the `afterEach` function is called after each specification. Similarly, the special methods `beforeOnce` and `afterOnce` are called once per test suite.

- `beforeOnce`  
Executed once **before** all specifications of the test suite
- `afterOnce`  
Executed once **after** all specifications of the test suite

## Database Connection Setup

The XSUnit framework provides a managed database connection called `jasmine.dbConnection`, which is globally available. You can use it in the following scenarios:

- Directly (in the function “`it`”)
- In the functions “`beforeEach`” and “`afterEach`”
- In other functions defined in your test libraries
- In imported libraries (if you have moved test code to external libraries)

One obvious advantage of this is that you no longer have to pass the database connection as a parameter or define it as a global variable. The `jasmine.dbConnection` is opened automatically and rolled back (and closed). However, if you want to persist your data, you have to `commit()` `jasmine.dbConnection` manually.

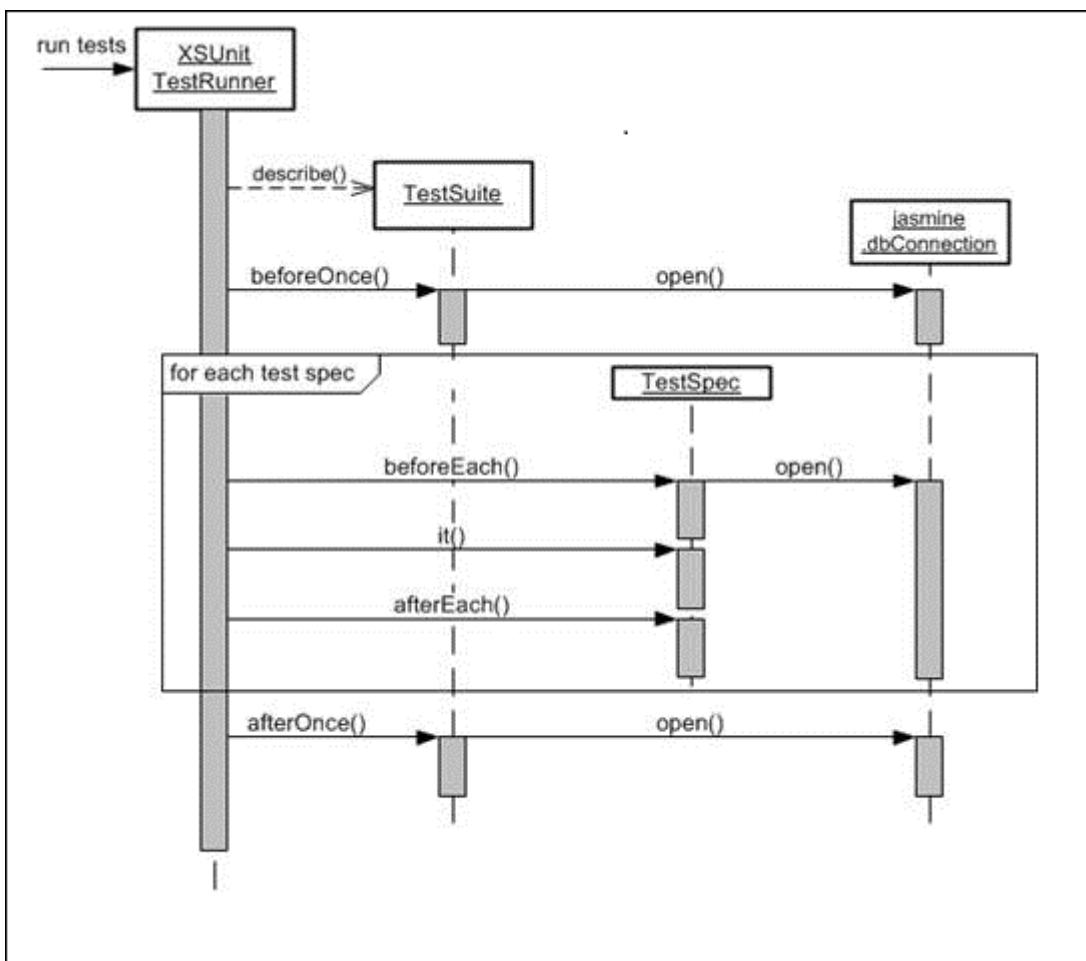


Figure 9: XSUnit TestRunner Tool Flow Chart

### 8.10.3.2 XSUnit Test Tools Syntax

Example syntax for the functions, assertions, and parameters required by the SAP HANA XSUnit test tools.

The following code example lists the most commonly used functions and assertions used in the XSUnit syntax. For more information about the assertions used, for example, `toBe`, `toBeTruthy`, or `toBeFalsy`, see [Assertions](#).

```

/*global jasmine, describe, beforeOnce, beforeEach, it, xit, expect*/
describe("My First Test Suite using Jasmine", function() {
 beforeOnce(function() {
 // beforeOnce is called only one time for all specs
 });
 beforeEach(function() {
 // beforeEach is called before each specs
 });
 // it = test case specification it("should show an assertion that passes",
 function() {
 var array = [{foo: 'bar', baz: 'quux'}, {bar: 'foo', quux: 'baz'}];
 expect(1).toBeTruthy();
 expect(12).toBe(jasmine.any(Number));
 expect(array).toContain(jasmine.objectContaining({foo: 'bar'}));
 });
 it("should show an negative assertion", function() {
 expect(true).not.toBe(false);
 });
});

```

```

 });
 it("should throw an expected error", function() {
 expect(function() {
 throw new Error("expected error");
 }).toThrowError("expected error");
 });
 // xit = this test case is excluded
 xit("should show an assertion that fails", function() {
 expect(1).toBe(2);
 });
});

```

## XSUnit Assertions and Parameters

The following code example lists the most commonly used assertions, shows the required syntax, and the expected parameters.

```

expect(actual).toBe(expected);
expect(actual).toBeFalsy();
expect(actual).toBeTruthy();
expect(actual).toEqual(expected);
expect(actualArray).toContain(expectedItem);
expect(actual).toBeNull();
expect(actualNumber).toBeCloseTo(expectedNumber, precision);
expect(actual).toBeDefined();
expect(actual).toBeUndefined();
expect(actualString).toMatch(regExpression);
expect(actualFunction).toThrowError(expectedErrorMessage);
expect(actualFunction).toThrowError(expectedErrorType, expectedErrorMessage);
expect(actualTableDataSet).toMatchData(expected, keyFields);
expect(actual).toBeLessThan(expected);
expect(actual).toBeGreaterThanOrEqual(expected);

```

### 8.10.3.3 XSUnit Test Run Options

The XSUnit tool suite includes a generic tool that you can use to run tests.

You can start the XSUnit test-running tool (`TestRunner.xsjs`) by entering the following URL in a Web Browser:

`http://<hostname>:80<HANAinstancenumber>/sap/hana/testtools/unit/jasmine/xs/TestRunner.xsjs?<parameters>`

The following table lists the parameters that you can use to control the behavior of test-runner tool. If you execute the test runner without specifying the `pattern` parameter, only the tests in `*Test.xsjslib` files are discovered (and run) within the package hierarchy.

#### i Note

You can specify multiple parameters by separating each `parameter=value` pair with the ampersand character (&), for example: `coverage=true&exclude=sap.hana.tests`

Table 91: TestRunner.xsjs Parameters

| Name     | Mandatory | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| package  | yes       | <p>Package that acts as starting point for discovering the tests. If not otherwise specified by parameter "pattern" all .xsjslib files in this package and its sub-packages conforming to the naming pattern "*Test" will be assumed to contain tests and will be executed.</p> <pre>package=sap.hana.testtools.demo</pre>                                                                                                                                                                               |
| pattern  | no        | <p>Naming pattern that identifies the .xsjslib files that contain the tests. If not specified, the pattern "*Test" is applied. You can use question mark (?) and asterisk (*) as wildcards to match a single or multiple arbitrary characters, respectively. To match all "Suite.xsjslib" files, use the following code:</p> <pre>pattern=Suite</pre>                                                                                                                                                    |
| format   | no        | <p>Specifies the output format the test runner uses to report test results. By default, the results will be reported as HTML document. This parameter has no effect if a custom reporter is provided via parameter "reporter". To display outputs results using the JSON format, use the following code:</p> <pre>format=json</pre>                                                                                                                                                                      |
| reporter | no        | <p>Complete path to module that provides an implementation of the Jasmine reporter interface. With this parameter a custom reporter can be passed to publish the test results in an application specific format. To specify the reporter interface, use the following code:</p> <pre>reporter=sap.hana.testtools.unit.jasminexs.reporter.db .dbReporter</pre> <div style="background-color: #ffffcc; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p><code>format=db</code> produces the same result</p> </div> |
| tags     | no        | <p>Comma-separated list of tags which is used to define the tests to be executed.</p> <pre>tags=integration,long_running</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| profile  | no        | <p>Name of a "profile" defined in the test which filters the tests to be executed on the basis of tags.</p> <pre>profile=end2end</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| coverage | no        | <p>Activate code coverage measurement for all server-side (XS) JavaScript code that is executed by the tests or which is in the scope of a specified package.</p> <pre>coverage=true</pre> <pre>coverage=sap.hana.testtools.mockstar</pre> <pre>coverage=true&amp;exclude=sap.hana.testtools.mockstar.tests</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## 8.10.3.4 XSUnit Test Examples

XSUnit includes a selection of test packages that demonstrate the scope of tests you can perform on an SAP HANA XS application.

The following table lists the test packages included in the XSUnit test framework. The table also indicates the name of the test file and provides a quick overview of the scope of the test.

### i Note

If you want to have a look at the code in the tests, checkout the package `sap.hana.testtools.demo` as an XS project to your local workspace.

Table 92: ExampleTest Units

| Package Name                           | Test Name (.xsjslib)   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| tests.getting_started                  | myFirstTest            | Shows the usage of some basic Jasmine matchers as well as the usage of custom matchers <code>toEqualObject</code> and <code>toMatchData</code> that are supported by the extended Jasmine version.                  |
| tests.attribute_view_1                 | AT_PRODUCTS_Test       | Shows how to configure mockstar in order to replace a CDS entity with a test table. Be aware that this test does not make sense, as this attribute test tests nothing at all - no logic, no joins,...               |
| tests.graphic_calcview_1               | CA_ORDERS_Test         | Tests a copy of the graphical calculation view where the direct dependent tables are replaced by test tables.                                                                                                       |
| tests.graphic_calcview_3               | CA_OPEN_AMOUNT_Test    | Tests the integration with the analytic view but replaces the dependencies to the tables with test tables. This example test shows how to upload data from a comma-separated-values (CSV) file into the test tables |
| tests.hdbprocedure_with_cds            | CreateProductTest      | Tests a non-read-only HDBProcedure with table in/out parameters while replacing the underlying Core Data Services (CDS) entities with test tables.                                                                  |
| tests.hdbprocedure_with_hdbview        | GetInvoicesTest        | Tests an HDBProcedure with scalar in and view out parameters while replacing a dependent hdbview with a test table.                                                                                                 |
| tests.hdbprocedure_with_hierarchy-view | HierarchyProcedureTest | Tests an HDBProcedure that includes a hierarchy view while replacing all underlying CDS entities with test tables.                                                                                                  |
| tests.hdbprocedure_with_hdbprocedure   | CreateProductTest      | Tests an HDBProcedure while replacing a dependent hdbprocedure with an hdbprocedure that was created for testing.                                                                                                   |

| Package Name              | Test Name (.xsjslib)                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| tests.http_service        | whoAmIServiceTestE2E                     | Tests an http service and checks if it returns the expected value. This test is not automatically executed since the SAP HANA instance needs to be maintained by the system administrator. |
| tests.procedure_1         | PR_OPEN_AMOUNT_Test                      | Tests a copy of the stored procedure where the directly dependent tables are replaced with test tables.                                                                                    |
| tests.scripted_calcview_1 | CA_ABC_PRODUCTS_Test                     | Tests a copy of the scripted calculation view where the directly dependent analytic view is replaced with a test table.                                                                    |
| tests.scripted_calcview_2 | CA_OPEN_AMOUNT_SCRIPTED_W PROCEDURE_Test | Tests the integration with the called stored procedures but replaces the dependencies to the tables with test tables.                                                                      |
| apps.rating.tests         | validatorTest                            | Tests a simple server-side (XS) JavaScript.                                                                                                                                                |
|                           | dataAccessorTest                         | Tests the database layer of server-side (XS) JavaScript using Jasmine spyOn () for testing in isolation.                                                                                   |
|                           | oDataTestE2E                             | Checks the accessibility of an OData service and tests an OData service without dependencies using mockstar.                                                                               |
|                           | ratingServicesTestE2E                    | Tests an XS JavaScript service (end-to-end scenario test).                                                                                                                                 |
| tests                     | myMockstarEnvironment                    | Shows how to enhance the mockstarEnvironment library to add further reuse functions or change the behaviour slightly to suit the context.                                                  |

### 8.10.3.5 The Mockstar Test Environment

Mockstar is a tool that is designed to enable you to isolate SAP HANA content in tests run by an automated test suite.

To write self-contained unit tests that are executable in any system, it is essential to be able to test the selected SAP HANA objects in isolation. For a typical **unit** test using the XSUnit tools, you need to be able to change any direct dependencies between the tested objects and other views or tables with references to simple tables. For **integration** tests, rather than change the direct dependencies to a view or a table, you might need to change dependencies between the dependent views (deeper in the dependency hierarchy).

Mockstar is a tool that is specifically designed to enable you to isolate test objects, for example, a view or procedure. Mockstar allows you to create a copy of the tested view or procedure and substitute the dependency to another view or table with a table that is stored in a test schema. It is strongly recommended to use a dedicated schema for the tests; in this test schema, you have write permissions and, as a result, full control over the data in the tables and views.

The Mockstar test-isolation tool provides the following features:

- Creates a copy of the SAP HANA object to test (for example, a view or database table); the copied object retains the same business logic as the original one object, but replaces some or all dependencies.
- Replaces the (static) dependencies to tables or views with temporary tables
- Supports deep dependency substitution  
Mockstar can determine dependencies deep within a hierarchy of dependencies and copy only the necessary parts of the hierarchy.

Mockstar tools are included in the delivery unit [HANA\\_TEST\\_TOOLS](#), which you must install manually, for example, using the SAP HANA studio or the [SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#) tool. After the installation completes, the Mockstar tools are available in the package `sap.hana.testtools.mockstar`.

**i Note**

Importing a delivery unit into an SAP HANA system requires the `REPO.IMPORT` privilege, which is normally granted only to the system administrator.

### 8.10.3.6 Mockstar Environment Example Syntax

A basic example of the syntax required to set up the Mockstar test environment.

The following example shows a simple setup using standard locations.

**i Note**

The names of schemas, tables, and views used in the following code example are intended to be for illustration purposes only.

```
var mockstarEnvironment = $.import('sap.hana.testtools.mockstar',
'mockstarEnvironment');
describe('testSuiteDescription', function() {
 var testEnvironment = null;
 beforeOnce(function() {
 var definition = {
 schema : 'SCHEMA',
 model : {
 schema : '_SYS_BIC',
 name : 'modelName' //e.g. package/MODEL
 },
 substituteTables : {
 "table" : { name : 'package::TABLE' }
 },
 substituteViews : {
 "view" : {
 schema : '_SYS_BIC',
 name : 'package/VIEW'
 }
 }
 };
 testEnvironment = mockstarEnvironment.defineAndCreate(definition);
 });
});
```

## 8.10.3.7 XSUnit Troubleshooting Solutions

Use trace files and other tools to fix problems with test operations.

The Mockstar test-isolation tools write helpful information in the SAP HANA trace files. You can adapt the trace level, for example, to debug to ensure the right amount and type of information is written during the test run. Note that you need the corresponding administration role to be able to change the trace-level settings in SAP HANA. The trace files are written in the trace component `xsa:sap.hana.testtools` (truncated to “`xsa:sap.hana.tes`” in the trace files).

### → Tip

As an alternative to reading the trace files directly, you can also use the SQL console to select data from the table `M_MERGED_TRACES`.

This section contains information about the problems that developers frequently encounter during test runs:

- [SAP HANA Test Tools Version \[page 658\]](#)
- [The Library is Not Part of an Application \[page 658\]](#)
- [Error for Cloned OData Service \[page 659\]](#)
- [Duplicate Entries When Inserting Test Data \[page 659\]](#)
- [Test Table Already Exists \[page 659\]](#)
- [Test Model Activation Fails \[page 660\]](#)
- [No Entries Returned From Copied Test Model \[page 660\]](#)
- [No Test Data Inserted into Test Table \[page 660\]](#)
- [TestRunner Tool Times Out \[page 661\]](#)
- [Test Model Creation is Aborted \[page 662\]](#)
- [Database Connections in XSUnit Test \[page 662\]](#)

## SAP HANA Test Tools Version

Which version of the SAP HANA test tools suite is installed?

1. Start SAP HANA studio
2. Open the *SAP HANA Modeler* perspective.
3. In the *Quick Launch* window, choose *Delivery Units...*
4. Choose *HANA\_TEST\_TOOLS*.

## Import Error: The Library is Not Part of an Application

If the test runner tool shows the following error:

```
import: the library is not part of an application
```

The JavaScript library you want to test can only be loaded when there is an application descriptor (`.xsapp` file) defined within the package hierarchy. The application descriptor is the core file that you use to describe an

application's framework within SAP HANA XS. If your tests are not part of your application package hierarchy, it is recommended you to create an .xsapp file in the context of the XS Project that contains the tests.

## Error for Cloned OData Service

The following error message is displayed when testing access to an OData service in SAP HANA XS:

```
404 - Not found: Error for cloned OData Service (.xsodata)
```

Try the following solutions:

1. Try to access the generated service directly in a separate Web browser.
2. Check whether the file (.xsodata service definition) exists, has been activated in the SAP HANA repository, and is in the expected target folder.
3. Ensure that the target folder or one of its parent folders contains the following activated artifacts:
  - .xsapp file  
Application descriptor file required by an SAP HANA XS application
  - .xsaccess file  
Application access file which enables access to an SAP HANA XS application

## Duplicate Entries When Inserting Test Data

If you encounter problems concerning duplicate entries when running tests, try the following solutions:

1. When inserting records into a productive table, ensure that no `jasmine.dbConnection.commit()` call occurs during test execution.
2. When inserting records into a test table, ensure that the table entries are deleted (dropped) before they are (re)created.

```
var tableUtils = new TableUtils(jasmine.dbConnection);
tableUtils.clearTableInUserSchema(invoicesTestTable);
```

## Test Table Already Exists

You encounter an error message that explains that a test table cannot be created during the test because the table already exists. You must ensure that the specified table is deleted before the test tries to create it during the test run.

```
var sqlExecutor = new SqlExecutor(jasmine.dbConnection);
var createTableString = 'CREATE COLUMN TABLE ' + <table name> + '...');
sqlExecutor.execSingleIgnoreFailing('drop table ' + <table name>);
sqlExecutor.execSingle(createTableString);
```

You can also use the functions provided by the table utilites library, which enables you to ensure that the table is dropped at the right time:

```
var tableUtils = new TableUtils(jasmine.dbConnection);
testTable = tableUtils.copyIntoUserSchema(originSchema, originTable);
```

## Test Model Activation Fails

Your test produces an error relating to a failed activation:

```
Error: Repository: Activation failed for at least one object [...]
identifier is too long:[...]
Maximum length is 127: ...
```

the name of the model is too long (including the package name). You can reduce the name by setting the `TruncOptions` option as shown in the following code snippet:

```
var mockstar = $.sap.hana.testtools.mockstar;
testView = mockstar.apiFacade.createTestModel(originalModel,
 targetPackage, dependencySubstitutions, mockstar.TruncOptions.FULL);
```

### Tip

It's a good idea to analyze the created model before it is activated.

To generate a detailed and structured error log, in the SAP HANA *Systems* view in the SAP HANA studio and locate the test package and activate it manually.

## No Entries Returned From Copied Test Model

1. Open the generated test model.

The generated model is located in a package with the name

`tmp.unittest.<userName>.<originalPackage>`. If you have configured the `createTestModel()` function with the parameter `mockstar.TruncOptions.FULL`, the package name is `tmp.unittest.<userName>`.

2. Ensure that the dependencies have been replaced as expected.

To see if the tables are filled correctly by the test, see [No Test Data Inserted into Test Table \[page 660\]](#).

3. Check the test view itself.

If the tested view returns no data, but data are expected, check if the data are removed by a filter during extraction from the underlying data source.

## No Test Data Inserted into Test Table

To test whether a test inserts data as expected into the created test table, implement a `jasmine.dbConnection.commit( )` connection to ensure that the data created during the test is stored

persistently. Without the `jasmine.dbConnection.commit()`, the test data is not persistent; the test deletes all test data when the database session is closed. Start the test again using the TestRunner tool. When the test completes, the test table should contain test data.

## TestRunner Tool Times Out

The default timeout setting for the TestRunner tool is ten (10) minutes. If your test run for longer than ten minutes and cause a timeout, try splitting the test into smaller and shorter elements. If this is no possible, try running the test in three phases:

1. Prepare the test run.

```
/sap/hana/testtools/unit/jasminexs/PrepareTestRun.xsjs
```

This generates a new test-run ID; no test runs are executed.

- Response:  
Returns the new test-run ID. If you request the answer in HTML format and provide all required parameters for the TestRunner tool, you receive the appropriate links you can use in the following steps (run the test and fetch the results).
- Parameters:  
`format` (optional; default = "html")  
Set this parameter to receive the test-run ID in the desired format. You can use any of the formats supported by the TestRunner `format` parameter.

2. Run the tests.

```
/sap/hana/testtools/unit/jasminexs/TestRunner.xsjs
```

This step is almost identical to the usual test execution with the addition of parameter `runitid`.

- Response:  
If the tests finish within the configured time frame, you receive the test results as expected. If the test are too long,a timeout occurs.
- Parameters:  
`runitid`. Required for this kind of (manual) execution: This is the test-run ID generated in the previous step.

3. Fetch the test results (optional: only required if the test run causes a timeout).

```
/sap/hana/testtools/unit/jasminexs/GetTestResults.xsjs
```

Fetches the test results for a given test-run ID. You an run this service multiple times for each test.

- Response:  
Returns the test results in the requested format. If the tests are not yet finished, you receive a status message (either "PREPARED" or "STARTED"). If the run ID provided does not exist, an error message is displayed.
- Parameters:  
`runitid`. Required for this kind of (manual) execution.  
`format` (optional; default = "html")

## Test Model Creation is Aborted

This error sometimes occurs if you try to create a copy of the original view and replace some dependencies with test tables. The reason for the error is one of the following:

- You did not provide any dependency substitutions. For example, you passed an empty array as the third parameter of `mockstar.createTestModel()`.
- The view that you want to test does not depend on any of the original views specified in the dependency substitutions.
- For active schema mapping, you have written the dependencies with the **physical** schema whereas the view refers to the **authoring** schema. Provide the schema in the same way as it is written in the view (or stored procedure).

## Database Connections in XSUnit Test

The XSUnit test framework provides a new “managed” database connection called `jasmine.dbConnection`, which is automatically opened and rolled back (and closed) after each test completes. You can use it in `beforeEach` or `afterEach` functions, in other functions defined in your test libraries, or even in imported libraries, in the event that you have moved test code into external libraries.

## Related Information

[Managed Database Connection Setup \[page 651\]](#)

### 8.10.4 Testing JavaScript with XSUnit

Test an XS JavaScript using XSUnit test tools.

As the XSUnit test tools are based on a custom version of the JavaScript test framework Jasmine, you can use XSUnit to test JavaScript. XSUnit provides tools that enable you to create and install a test “double” for one or more object methods. In the Jasmine framework, a test double is known as a “spy”. A spy can be used not only to stub any function but also to track calls to it and all arguments, too.

**i** Note

XSUnit includes special *matchers* that enable interaction with Jasmine spies.

The XSUnit test tools delivery unit (DU) includes a small XS JavaScript demo “Ratings” application which comprises an SAPUI5 client frontend on top of OData and XS JavaScript services; the Ratings application enables you to experiment with different test techniques. You can try out the application at the following URL:

```
http://<SAPHANA_host>:80<instancenumber>/sap/hana/testtools/demo/apps/rating/
WebContent/
```

## Related Information

[XSUnit's Jasmine Spy Syntax \[page 663\]](#)  
[Testing HTTP Services with XSUnit \[page 664\]](#)

### 8.10.4.1 XSUnit's Jasmine Spy Syntax

A command "cheat sheet" for the Jasmine Spy syntax.

The following code example provides a quick overview of commonly used commands that enable the use of Jasmine Spies. You can see how to perform the following actions:

- [Install a method double \[page 663\]](#)
- [Install an object double \[page 663\]](#)
- [Check a function call \(and values\) \[page 664\]](#)

#### Installing a Method Double

The following code example shows how install a method double (simple example).

```
spyOn(object, "method");
expect(object.method).toHaveBeenCalled();
```

The following code example shows how install a method double (variant).

```
var spyMethod = spyOn(object, "method");
expect(spyMethod).toHaveBeenCalled();
```

The following code example shows how install a method double (custom action for double).

```
spyOn(object, "method"); // delegates nowhere
spyOn(object, "method").and.returnValue(3); // returns constant value
spyOn(object, "method").and.callThrough(); // delegates to original function
spyOn(object, "method").and.callFake(fakeFunction); // delegates to other
function
```

#### Installing an Object Double

The following code example shows how install an object double.

```
var spyObject = jasmine.createSpyObj("spy name", ["method1", "method2",
"method3"]);
spyObject.method1.and.returnValue(3);
expect(spyObject.method1).toHaveBeenCalled();
```

## Checking Function Calls (and Values)

The following code example shows how to check whether the function has been called as expected, and if so, if the right values were used.

```
expect(spyObject.method).toHaveBeenCalled();
expect(spyObject.method).toHaveBeenCalledWith(expArgValue1, expArgValue2);
expect(spyObject.method.calls.allArgs()).toContain([expArgValue1,
expArgValue2]);
expect(spyObject.method.calls.mostRecent().args).toEqual([expArgVal1,
expArgVal2]);
expect(spyObject.method.calls.count()).toBe(2);
spyObject.method.calls.reset(); // reset all calls
```

### 8.10.4.2 Testing HTTP Services with XSUnit

XS JavaScript files that can be accessed by performing an HTTP call against the service defined in the XS JavaScript file.

You can use the `TestRunner` tool to call an XS JavaScript service. The `TestRunner` service is part of the test-tools package `sap.hana.testtools.unit.jasminexs` and has one mandatory parameter, namely `package`. Since `TestRunner` is an HTTP GET service, you can execute the service in the browser using the following URL:

```
http://<hostname>:80<instancenumber>/sap/hana/testtools/unit/jasminexs/
TestRunner.xsjs?package=<mypackage>
```

Since it is not possible to import XS Javascript files (`.xsjs`) files into a JavaScript library (`.xsjslib`), the functions you implement inside the XS JavaScript file cannot be tested within an XSUnit test. As a consequence, it is recommended to include only minimal logic within the XSJS files and delegate tasks to the functions implemented in corresponding JavaScript libraries; these libraries can be tested in isolation using XSUnit tools (for example, Mockstar).

#### i Note

XSUnit enables you to perform an HTTP call to your XSJS services via HTTP. However, this is an end-to-end system test with no possibility to use test doubles during the test. These tests are not suitable for testing a JavaScript function.

Since you cannot insert test data into the test table during the test, the tests have no control over the data. This restriction reduces the scope of the tests you can perform for HTTP calls, for example, you can test the following scenarios:

- Service must return an error if mandatory parameters are missing
- Service must return an error if the chosen HTTP type is correct
- Service must return an error if the wrong input is provided
- End-to-end HTTP scenarios (CREATE, READ, UPDATE, and DELETE)

```
describe("example for http tests", function() {
 it("should receive answer from service", function() {
 var requestBody = '{"param1":42,"param2":"xyz"}';
```

```

 var headers = {
 "Content-Type" : "application/json"
 };
 var response = jasmine.callHTTPService("/path/to/your/app/Service.xsjs",
$.net.http.POST, requestBody, headers);
 expect(response.status).toBe($.net.http.OK);
 var body = response.body ? response.body.asString() : "";
 expect(body).toMatch(/regular expression that checks correct response/);
 });
});

```

## SAP HANA Database Logon for XSUnit

To ensure access to SAP HANA, you need to adapt the default HTTP destination file (`:localhost.xshttpdest`) provided with the XSUnit test tools. The default HTTP destination configuration file is located in `sap.hana.testtools.unit.jasminexs.lib:localhost.xshttpdest` to fit to your HANA instance. To access an HTTP destination configuration, you need the permissions granted in the user role `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator`.

### Caution

To change the HTTP destination, create an HTTP **extension** of your own; do not make any changes to the file `localhost.xshttpdest`. Changes to `localhost.xshttpdest` are overwritten by updates to the XSUnit test tools on your system.

## Related Information

[Maintaining HTTP Destinations \[page 128\]](#)

### 8.10.4.3 Testing JavaScript Functions with XSUnit

Use XSUnit tools to test JavaScript code that depends on functions in your code, for example: dependencies on functions, libraries, or to database tables.

In JavaScript it is possible to overwrite anything that is visible in a context, for example: public data, public functions, or even the whole class. With XSUnit, you can make use of a simulation framework that is included with Jasmine. The simulation framework provides a mechanism that enables you to create and install a test double (so-called Jasmine "Spy"), which can help you to reduce some of the basic code and keep the code more concise. Jasmine Spies should be created in the test setup, before you define any expectations. The Spies can then be checked, using the standard Jasmine expectation syntax. You can check if a Spy is called (or not) and find out what (if any) parameters were used in the call. Spies are removed at the end of every test specification.

### Note

Each dependency increases the complexity of testing involved for a function or a component.

The Average Component Dependency (ACD) is the number of dependencies to other components, averaged over all components; it indicates whether your system is loosely coupled. If you prefer to implement JavaScript in an object-oriented way, you can apply dependency management aspects by following object-oriented design principles (OOD).

The information in this topic covers the following test scenarios:

- [Dependencies on Function Libraries \[page 666\]](#)
- [Dependency on Database Table \[page 667\]](#)

## Dependencies on Function Libraries

The following code snippet defines a controller that you want to test; the controller depends on a `Date` object. The accompanying code snippet shows how you can test this code.

```
var Controller = null;
(function() {
 //constructor function
 Controller = function(dataModel) {
 this.model = dataModel;
 };
 function updateModelWithTimestamp(newData) {
 this.model.updateData(newData, this.getCurrentDate());
 }
 Controller.prototype.updateModel = function(newData) {
 //bind 'this' to the private function
 updateModelWithTimestamp.call(this, newData);
 };
 Controller.prototype.getCurrentDate = function() {
 return new Date(Date.now());
 };
}());
function DataModel() {
 var modifiedAt = null;
 var modifiedBy = null;
 var data = null;
 this.updateData = function(newData, modifiedAtDate) {
 data = newData;
 modifiedAt = modifiedAtDate;
 modifiedBy = $.session.getUsername();
 };
 this.getModificationDate = function() {
 return modifiedAt;
 };
}
```

The following code snippets shows an example of the test code you could run; the code uses a Jasmine Spy ensures the dependencies on the `Date` object are replaced and tested as expected.

```
var Controller = $.import("sap.hana.testtools.demo.objects.xs_javascript",
"javascriptOO").Controller;
var DataModel= $.import("sap.hana.testtools.demo.objects.xs_javascript",
"javascriptOO").DataModel;
describe('Controller', function() {
 var controller = null;
 var model = null;
 var anyDate = new Date(2013, 8, 27, 11, 0, 0, 0);

 beforeEach(function() {
 model = new DataModel();
```

```

 controller = new Controller(model);
 });
 it('should set current date when data is modified (replace Date.now() using
jasmine spies)', function() {
 spyOn(Date, 'now').and.returnValue(anyDate.getTime());
 oController.updateModel({data : [1,2,3]});
 expect(model.getModificationDate()).toEqual(anyDate);
})
);

```

## Dependency on Database Table

It is important to try to avoid mixing business logic that is implemented in JavaScript with the data base interaction. We recommend moving the database persistency logic into a dedicated persistency class, so that just the business logic remains for testing. The goal of the test is to be able to test both normal and special cases without interacting with the data base at all.

To unit test the persistency class, you can parameterize the schema and use a schema for testing, for example, the user schema where you have all authorizations required to create, modify, and drop objects, and cannot mess things up with the test. Last of all, you can offer a small set of integration tests, that just ensure that the productive classes, the `AnyService` class, and the `Persistency` class, integrate well.

### **i** Note

For sake of conciseness, resource closing and error handling is missing from the following code example.

```

function Persistency(dbConnection, schema) {
 var dbSchema = schema !== undefined ? schema : 'SAP_HANA_TEST_DEMO';
 this.existsEntry = function(key) {
 var pstmt = dbConnection.prepareStatement('SELECT key FROM "' +
dbSchema + '".Table" WHERE KEY=?');
 pstmt.setString(1, key);
 if (pstmt.executeQuery().next()) {
 return true;
 };
 return false;
 };
 this.insertEntry = function(newEntry) {
 var pstmt = dbConnection.prepareStatement('INSERT INTO "' + dbSchema +
'"."Table" VALUES (?,?)');
 pstmt.setString(1, newEntry.Id);
 pstmt.setString(2, newEntry.Value);
 pstmt.execute();
 };
}
function AnyService(persistency) {
 this.execute = function(input) {
 //validate input
 if (!persistency.existsEntry(input.Id)) {
 //calculate newEntry
 persistency.insertEntry(newEntry);
 }
 };
}

```

The following code snippets shows an example of the test code you could run to test the dependencies.

```
var Persistency = $.import("package.of.persistency", "persistency").Persistency;
```

```

describe('Persistency test', function() {
 var SqlExecutor = $.import('sap.hana.testtools.unit.util',
 'sqlExecutor').SqlExecutor;
 var TableUtils = $.import('sap.hana.testtools.unit.util',
 'tableUtils').TableUtils;
 var originTable = 'TableName';
 var testTable = null;
 var originSchema = 'SAP_HANA_TEST_DEMO';
 var userSchema = $.session.getUsername().toUpperCase();
 beforeOnce(function(){
 var tableUtils = new TableUtils(jasmine.dbConnection);
 testTable = tableUtils.copyIntoUserSchema(originSchema, originTable);
 });
 it('should insert one entry into table', function() {
 var persistency = new Persistency(jasmine.dbConnection, userSchema);
 persistency.insertEntry({ Id : '0815', Value : 1});
 expect(persistency.existsEntry('0815'));
 expect(selectAllFromTable().getRowCount()).toBe(1);
 });
 function selectAllFromTable() {
 var sqlExecutor = new SqlExecutor(jasmine.dbConnection);
 return sqlExecutor.execQuery('select * from ' + testTable);
 }
});

```

## Testing a Self-Contained JavaScript Function

The following code snippet show how to use XSUnit to test a self-contained JavaScript function (`mathlib`); a self-contained function has no dependencies to other JavaScript functions, database tables or session parameters.

```

var mathlib = $.import("package.of.your.library", "math");
describe('The math XS JavaScript library', function() {
 it('should calculate "7" as maximum value of "3, 7"', function() {
 var maxValue = mathlib.max(3, 7);
 expect(maxValue).toBe(7);
 });
 it('should calculate "-10" as maximum value of "-10, -20"', function() {
 var maxValue = mathlib.max(-10, -20);
 expect(maxValue).toBe(-10);
 });
});

```

# 9 Building UIs

## 9.1 Building User Interfaces with SAPUI5 for SAP HANA

*UI development toolkit for HTML5* (SAPUI5) is a user interface technology that is used to build and adapt client applications based on SAP HANA. You can install SAPUI5 in the SAP HANA studio to build user interfaces delivered by SAP HANA's Web server.

The SAPUI5 runtime is a client-side HTML5 rendering library with a rich set of standard and extension controls. It provides a lightweight programming model for desktop as well as mobile applications. Based on JavaScript, it supports Rich Internet Applications (RIA) such as client-side features. SAPUI5 complies with OpenAjax and can be used with standard JavaScript libraries.

### SAPUI5 Demo Kit

The SAPUI5 Demo Kit contains:

- A **Developer Guide** which contains information about the programming languages used, open source technology, development tools, and APIs
- An **Explored app**, which provides a detailed view of almost every control including detailed information about the properties, aggregations, events, and methods. The SAPUI5 Developer Guide also provides running samples including a code view, from which you can easily copy the required code snippets
- An **API reference** with JavaScript documentation for the Framework and Control API
- **Demo Apps** with includes and showcases real samples
- **Icons** with an overview of all icons included with SAPUI5.

### Related Information

[SAPUI5 Demo Kit \(version 1.32.7\)](#)

## 9.2 Consuming Data and Services with SAPUI5 for SAP HANA

SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS) can be used to expose the database data model, with its tables, views and database procedures, to UI clients.

You can expose an SAP HANA model using OData services or by writing native server-side JavaScript code that runs in the SAP HANA context. You can also use SAP HANA XS to build dynamic HTML5 client applications, for example, using SAPUI5 for SAP HANA.

The server-centric approach to native application development envisaged for SAP HANA assumes the following high-level scenario:

- View  
UI rendering occurs completely in the client (SAPUI5, browser, mobile applications)
- Controller  
Server-side procedural (control-flow) logic is defined in server-side (XS) JavaScript, SQLScript or an OData service
- Model  
All application artifacts are stored in the SAP HANA repository

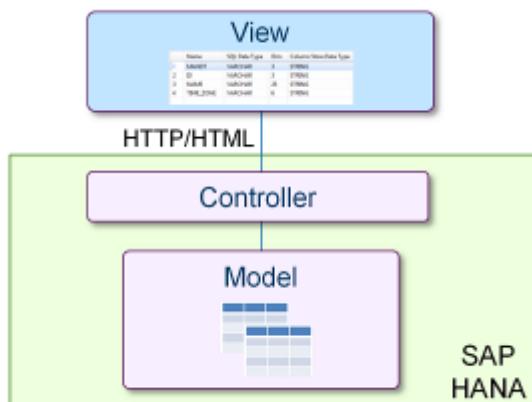


Figure 10: SAP HANA Application Development with SAP HANA XS

Each of the levels illustrated in the graphic (view, control, model) is manifested in a particular technology and dedicated languages. After you have defined the data model with design-time artifacts and the equivalent runtime objects, you develop the control-flow logic to expose the data, for example, using server-side JavaScript or an OData service. With the data model and control-flow logic in place, you can build the presentation logic to view the exposed data in a UI client application using SAPUI5 for SAP HANA. For example, you can use an SAPUI5 client to request and display data exposed by an OData service; the UI could include buttons that trigger operations performed by SAP HANA XS JavaScript service; and the data displayed is retrieved from data end points defined in your data mode (SQLScript, CDS, or hdbtable).

### Related Information

[SAPUI5 Demo Kit \(version 1.28\)](#)

## 9.3 SAPUI5 for SAP HANA Development Tutorials

Tutorials are designed to extend task-based information to show you how to use real code and examples to build native SAP HANA applications. The tutorials provided here include examples of how to build simple SAPUI5 applications.

The tutorials provided here show you how to create your own simple SAPUI5-based applications. Some of the tutorials make use of sample data, design-time development objects, and functions provided by the SAP HANA Interactive Education (SHINE) demo application, for example: database tables, data views, server-side JavaScript (XSJS) and OData services, and user-interface elements.

### i Note

If the SHINE DU (`HCODEMOCONTENT`) is not already installed on your SAP HANA system, you can download the DU from the SAP Software Download Center in the SAP Support Portal at <http://service.sap.com/swdc>. On the [SAP HANA PLATFORM EDIT. 1.0](#) Web page, locate the download package ► [SAP HANA DEMO MODELL 1.0](#) ► # OS independent ► [SAP HANA database](#) ▶.

The tutorials provided here cover the following areas:

- SAPUI5 clients
  - Hello world  
Build a simple "Hello World" application using SAPUI5 tools; the exercise shows how the development process works and which components are required.
- Consuming Server-side JavaScript (XSJS) services with SAPUI5  
Build an SAPUI5 application that calls an XSJS service in response to user interaction with the user interface, for example, clicking a button to perform an action. In this case, the XSJS service called by the UI request performs an action and returns a response, which is displayed in the SAPUI5 client.
- Consuming OData services with SAPUI5  
Build an SAPUI5 application that calls an OData service in response to user interaction with the user interface, for example, clicking a graph or report chart. In this case, the OData service called by the UI request performs an action (collects data) and returns a response, which is displayed in the SAPUI5 client.
  - Bind a UI element in an SAPUI5 application to the data specified in an OData service. For example, you can populate the contents of a table column displayed in an SAPUI5 application by using the data stored in a database table defined in an OData service.
  - Build an SAPUI5 view that provides input fields, which you can use to create a new record or update an existing record in a database table, for example, using the OData create, update, and delete (CRUD) features.
- Localizing UI Strings in SAPUI5  
Create a simple text-bundle file for translation purposes and re-import the translated text into SAP HANA for use with a specific language locale. Textbundles containing text strings that define elements of the user-interface (for example, buttons and menu options).

## Related Information

[SAPUI5 Demo Kit \(version 1.28\)](#)

- 
- [Tutorial: Create a Hello World SAPUI5 Application \[page 672\]](#)  
[Tutorial: Consume an XSJS Service from SAPUI5 \[page 676\]](#)  
[Tutorial: Consume an OData Service from SAPUI5 \[page 682\]](#)  
[Tutorial: Consume an OData Service with the CREATE Option \[page 689\]](#)  
[Tutorial: Create and Translate Text Bundles for SAPUI5 Applications \[page 696\]](#)

## 9.3.1 Tutorial: Create a Hello-World SAP UI5 Application

SAPUI5 provides a client-side HTML5 rendering library with a comprehensive set of standard controls and extensions that you can use to build a UI quickly and easily.

### Prerequisites

To complete this tutorial successfully, bear in mind the following requirements:

- You have installed the SAP HANA studio.
- You have installed the SAPUI5 tools included in the delivery unit (DU) [SAPUI5\\_1](#).

### Context

SAPUI5 application development tools provides wizards to help you to create application projects and views according to the model-controller-view concept. The development tools include features such as editors with JavaScript code-completion, templates and code snippets, and application previews. To create a simple “Hello World” application in SAPUI5, perform the following steps:

### Procedure

1. Create a base structure for your application packages and files.  
Your application files must be placed in a package structure in the SAP HANA Repository, for example /workshop/session/ui/HelloWorld/.
2. Create the application-descriptor files that enable client access to the services and data exposed by the new application.

Each SAP HANA XS application requires two **mandatory** application descriptor files, which are located in the root package of the application they apply to.

#### Note

Application descriptors have a file extension, but no file name, for example, .xsapp or .xsaccess.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the application package where you want to create the new application descriptors and, in the popup menu, choose, ► *New* ► *Other...*
- b. Create the XS application descriptor file (*.xsapp*).

In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose ► *SAP HANA* ► *Application Development* ► *XS Application Access File*.

→ Tip

The application descriptor has no content; its job is to mark the root package of the resources exposed to client requests by the application.

- c. Create the XS application-access file (*.xsaccess*).

In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose ► *SAP HANA* ► *Application Development* ► *XS Application Access File*.

→ Tip

The *.xsaccess* file controls who has access to the application (and how) and what data or services the application can expose.

- d. Select a template to use for the application-access file (for example, *Basic*) and choose *Finish*.  
A basic *.xsaccess* file looks like the following example, which exposes your application data, requires logon credentials for authentication, and helps to prevent cross-site request-forgery (XSRF) attacks:

```
{
 "exposed" : true,
 "authentication" : { "method" : "Form"},
 "prevent_xsrf" : true
}
```

- e. Activate the XS application descriptor files in the SAP HANA Repository.

Right-click the package containing the application descriptor files you have created and, in the context-sensitive menu, choose ► *Team* ► *Activate*.

You now have a basic package structure to hold your application files. The root package for your new application also contains the required application descriptors, which control access to the services and data exposed by the new application.

3. Create an SAPUI5 project.

- a. Start the *New Application Project* wizard.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, choose ► *New* ► *Other...*

- b. Select the application project.

SAP HANA studio provides dedicated wizards to help you set up an application project; here you choose the project ► *SAPUI5 Application Development* ► *Application Project* in the *New Project* wizard.

- c. Define details of the new project.

- o Enter a name for the new SAPUI5 application project, for example, **HelloWorldIdx**.
- o Check the *Use default location* option.

- d. Define details of the new SAPUI5 application view and choose *Finish*.

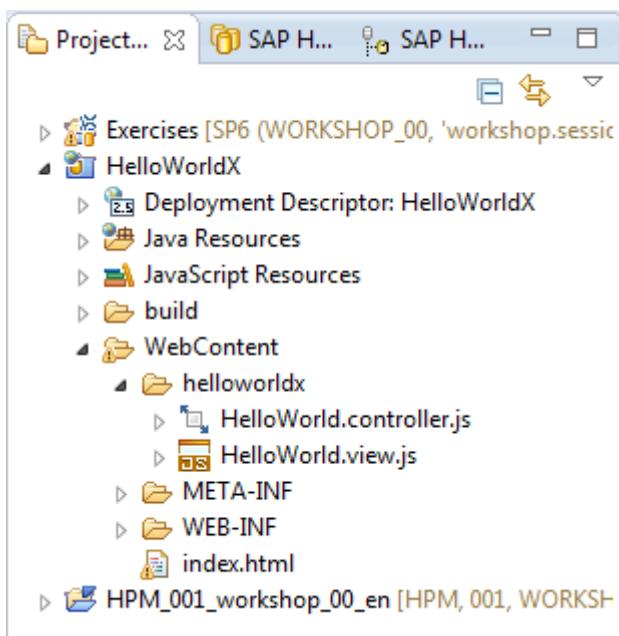
- o Check the folder for the project; it should be `WebContent/helloworldidx`.

- Provide a name for the base HTML page that the SAPUI5 application uses, for example, **HelloWorld**.
- Choose *JavaScript* as the *Development Paradigm*.

### i Note

If prompted, do not switch to the Java EE perspective.

You now have an Eclipse project with a bootstrap HTML (`index.html`) page in the `WebContent` folder and a `HelloWorld` controller and `HelloWorld` view in an sub-package called `helloworldx`.



4. Share the new SAPUI5 project with the SAP HANA Repository.
  - a. Choose the appropriate repository **type**, for example, *SAP HANA Repository*.
  - b. Specify the location in the SAP HANA repository where the new SAP UI5 application project should reside.

In the *Share Project* wizard, choose *Browse...* to select the package in which you want to store the new SAPUI5 application artifacts.

  - c. Check the settings you made for the new SAPUI5 application project.
  - d. Activate the new SAPUI5 application project.

### i Note

Activate at the project level to ensure that all project artifacts are created and stored in the SAP HANA repository.

5. Modify the default settings for the SAPUI5 bootstrap location in the base `index.html`.

The SAPUI5 project wizard inserts a default bootstrap location to the `index.html` file which is incorrect for SAP HANA. You must manually change the bootstrap location in the SAPUI5 application's `index.html` file by adding `/sap/ui/5/1` to the start of the default location `resources/sap-ui-core.js`, as illustrated in the following example:

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML>
```

```

<html>
 <head>
 <meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=edge">
 <script src="/sap/ui5/1/resources/sap-ui-core.js"
 id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
 data-sap-ui-libs="sap.ui.commons"
 data-sap-ui-theme="sap_goldreflection">
 </script>

```

## 6. Add UI elements to the SAPUI5 application interface.

You define UI elements in the `createContent` function section of the `HelloWorld.view.js` file. In this example, you instantiate the `Button` UI element class as `myButton` and then return it at the end of the `createContent` function. The SAPUI5 application renders any UI element (or element group) returned from the `createContent` function function.

```

sap.ui.jsview("helloworldx.HelloWorld", {
 /** Specifies the Controller belonging to this View.
 * In the case that it is not implemented, or that "null" is returned,
 * this View does not have a Controller.
 * @memberOf helloworldx.HelloWorld
 */
 getControllerName : function() {
 return "helloworldx.HelloWorld";
 },
 /** Is initially called once after the Controller has been instantiated.
 * It is the place where the UI is constructed.
 * Since the Controller is given to this method, its event handlers can be
 * attached right away.
 * @memberOf helloworldx.HelloWorld
 */
 createContent : function(oController) {
 var myButton = new sap.ui.commons.Button("btn");
 myButton.setText("helloworld");
 myButton.attachPress(function(){ $("#btn").fadeOut(); });
 return myButton;
 }
});

```

## 7. Save and activate all changes to all SAPUI5 application artifacts.

### Note

Activate at the project level to ensure that the changes made to **all** project artifacts are updated in the SAP HANA repository.

## 8. Test your “Hello World” SAPUI5 application in a Web browser.

The URL for the SAPUI5 application is: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/workshop/session/ui/HelloWorld/WebContent/`.

### Note

The content of the URL is case sensitive. Log on using your SAP HANA user name and password.

You should see the `Hello World` button shown in the following example:



### 9.3.2 Tutorial: Consume an XSJS Service from SAPUI5

An XS server-side JavaScript (XSJS) application can be used to perform an action linked to an element such as a button or a text box in an SAPUI5 application.

#### Prerequisites

To complete this tutorial successfully, bear in mind the following requirements:

- You have installed the SAP HANA studio.
- You have installed the SAPUI5 tools included in the delivery unit (DU) [SAPUI5\\_1](#).
- You have installed the [SHINE](#) (democontent) delivery unit; this DU contains the XSJS service you want to consume with the SAPUI5 application you build in this tutorial.
- You have generated data to populate the tables and views provided by the [SHINE](#) delivery unit and used in this tutorial. You can generate the data with tools included in the [SHINE](#) delivery unit.

#### i Note

You might have to adjust the paths in the code examples provided to suit the folder/package hierarchy in your SAP HANA repository, for example, to point to the underlying content (demonstration tables and services) referenced in the tutorial.

#### Context

You can configure an SAPUI5 application to call an XSJS service in response to user interaction with the UI; the XSJS service performs an action and returns a response. This tutorial demonstrates how to trigger an XSJS service which performs a mathematical multiplication when numbers are typed in text boxes displayed in an SAPUI5 application.

#### Procedure

1. Create an SAPUI5 project.

- a. Start the *New Application Project* wizard.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, choose **New > Other...**

- b. Select the application project.

SAP HANA studio provides dedicated wizards to help you set up an application project; here you choose the project **SAPUI5 Application Development > Application Project** in the *New Project* wizard.

- c. Define details of the new project.

- o Enter a name for the new SAPUI5 application project, for example, **xsjsMultiply**.
- o Check the *Use default location* option.

- d. Define details of the new SAPUI5 application view and choose *Finish*.

- o Provide a name for the base HTML page that the SAPUI5 application uses, for example, **xsjsMultiply**.
- o Choose *JavaScript* as the *Development Paradigm*.

#### Note

If prompted, do not switch to the Java EE perspective.

You now have an Eclipse project for the new SAPUI5 application. The SAPUI5 application project has a bootstrap HTML page in the `WebContent` folder and an `xsjsMultiply` controller (and a view) in the sub-package `xsjsMultiply`.

2. Create the application-descriptor files that enable client access to the services and data exposed by the new application.

Each SAP HANA XS application requires two **mandatory** application descriptor files, which are located in the root package of the application they apply to. If the application-descriptor files already exist (for example, because they are created as part of the new-application Wizard), you can safely skip this step.

#### Note

Application descriptors have a file extension, but no file name, for example, `.xsapp` or `.xsaccess`.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the application package where you want to create the new application descriptors and, in the popup menu, choose, **New > Other...**
- b. Create the XS application descriptor file (`.xsapp`).

In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose **SAP HANA > Application Development > XS Application Access File** .

#### Tip

The application descriptor has no content; its job is to mark the root package of the resources exposed to client requests by the application.

- c. Create the XS application-access file (`.xsaccess`).

In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose **SAP HANA > Application Development > XS Application Access File** .

### → Tip

The `.xsaccess` file controls who has access to the application (and how) and what data or services the application can expose.

- d. Select a template to use for the application-access file (for example, *Basic*) and choose *Finish*.

A basic `.xsaccess` file looks like the following example, which exposes your application data, specifies that logon credentials are required for authentication, and helps to prevent cross-site request-forgery (XSRF) attacks:

```
{
 "exposed" : true,
 "authentication" : { "method" : "Form"},
 "prevent_xsrf" : true
}
```

- e. Activate the XS application descriptor files in the SAP HANA Repository.

Right-click the package containing the application descriptor files you have created and, in the context-sensitive menu, choose ► *Team* ► *Activate* ▾.

You now have a basic package structure to hold your application files. The root package for your new application also contains the required application descriptors, which control access to the services and data exposed by the new application.

3. Share the new SAPUI5 project with the SAP HANA Repository.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new SAPUI5 application project, and choose ► *Team* ► *Share Project...* ▾

- a. Choose the appropriate repository **type**, for example, *SAP HANA Repository*.
- b. Specify the package location in the SAP HANA repository where the new SAP UI5 application project should reside.  
In the *Share Project* wizard, choose *Browse...* to select the package in which you want to store the new SAPUI5 application artifacts. Select the `ui` package in the SAPUI5 folder hierarchy.
- c. Check the settings you made for the new SAPUI5 application project.
- d. Activate the new SAPUI5 application project.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new SAPUI5 application project, and choose ► *Team* ► *Activate* ▾.

### → Tip

Remember to activate at the project level to ensure that all project artifacts are created and stored in the SAP HANA repository.

4. Modify the default settings for the SAPUI5 bootstrap location in the base SAPUI5 `index.html`.

The SAPUI5 project wizard inserts a default bootstrap location into the `index.html` file which is incorrect for SAP HANA. You must manually change the bootstrap location in the SAPUI5 application's `index.html` file by adding `/sap/ui5/1` to the beginning of the default path defined in the `script src=` tag, for example, `script src="/sap/ui5/1/resources/sap-ui-core.js` as illustrated in the following example:

## Note

You must also declare any additional libraries you want the SAPUI5 application to use to render the data it consumes. For this tutorial, add `sap.ui.table` to the list of SAPUI5 libraries, as shown in the following example.

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML>
<html>
 <head>
 <meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=edge">
 <script src="/sap/ui5/1/resources/sap-ui-core.js"
 id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
 data-sap-ui-libs="sap.ui.commons,sap.ui.table"
 data-sap-ui-theme="sap_goldreflection">
 </script>
```

5. Set up the SAPUI5 view displayed in the application user interface.

The SAPUI5 view for this tutorial is specified in the file `xsjsMultiply.view.js`; it displays a simple UI with two text boxes that you can use to specify the numbers to use for the multiplication action.

```
sap.ui.jsvview("xsjsmultiply.xsjsMultiply", {
 getControllerName : function() {
 return "xsjsmultiply.xsjsMultiply";
 },
 createContent : function(oController) {
 var multiplyPanel = new sap.ui.commons.Panel().setText("XS Service
Test - Multiplication");

 var layoutNew = new
sap.ui.commons.layout.MatrixLayout({width:"auto"});
 multiplyPanel.addContent(layoutNew);
 var oVal1 = new sap.ui.commons.TextField("val1",{tooltip: "Value
#1", editable:true});
 var oVal2 = new sap.ui.commons.TextField("val2",{tooltip: "Value
#2", editable:true});
 var oResult = new sap.ui.commons.TextView("result",{tooltip:
"Results"});
 var oEqual = new sap.ui.commons.TextView("equal",{tooltip:
"Equals", text: " = "});
 var oMult = new sap.ui.commons.TextView("mult",{tooltip: "Multiply
by", text: " * "});

 //Attach a controller event handler to Value 1 Input Field
 oVal1.attachEvent("liveChange", function(oEvent){
 oController.onLiveChange(oEvent,oVal2); });
 //Attach a controller event handler to Value 2 Input Field
 oVal2.attachEvent("liveChange", function(oEvent){
 oController.onLiveChange(oEvent,oVal1); });

 layoutNew.createRow(oVal1, oMult, oVal2, oEqual, oResult);
 }
});
```

6. Set up the SAPUI5 controller functions to handle the UI events.

The code described in this step must be added to the SAPUI5 view controller file `xsjsMultiply.controller.js`.

- Add the code that creates an event handler named `onLiveChange`.

The `onLiveChange` function has two parameters: `oEvent` and `oVal`, which are used in the `jQuery.Ajax` call to the XSJS service at the specified URL. This is the event which is triggered every time the value is changed in either of the text boxes displayed in the application UI.

```
onLiveChange: function(oEvent,oVal){
 var aUrl = '/sap/hana/democontent/epm/services/multiply.xsjs?
cmd=multiply'+'&num1='
 +escape(oEvent.getParameters().liveValue)
+'&num2='+escape(oVal.getValue());
 jQuery.ajax({
 url: aUrl,
 method: 'GET',
 dataType: 'json',
 success: this.onCompleteMultiply,
 error: this.onErrorCall});
```

If the AJAX call is successful, call a controller event named `onCompleteMultiply`; if the AJAX call is **not** successful, call a controller event named `onErrorCall`.

- b. Add the code that creates an event handler named `onCompleteMultiply`.

The `onCompleteMultiply` function accepts the response object as an input parameter called `myTxt`. This text box will contain the result of the multiplication in clear text. Use the `sap.ui.core.format.NumberFormat` to format the output as an integer and set the value back into the `oResult` `textView`.

```
onCompleteMultiply: function(myTxt){
 var oResult = sap.ui.getCore().byId("result");
 if(myTxt==undefined){ oResult.setText(0); }
 else{
 jQuery.sap.require("sap.ui.core.format.NumberFormat");
 var oNumberFormat =
sap.ui.core.format.NumberFormat.getIntegerInstance({
 maxFractionDigits: 12,
 minFractionDigits: 0,
 groupingEnabled: true });
 oResult.setText(oNumberFormat.format(myTxt));
 },
```

- c. Add the code that produces an error dialog if the event produces an error.

The `onErrorCall` function displays a message dialog (`sap.ui.commons.MessageBox.show`) in the event of an error during the multiplication action provided by the XSJS service. The information displayed in the error message is contained in `jqXHR.responseText`.

```
onErrorCall: function(jqXHR, textStatus, errorThrown){
 sap.ui.commons.MessageBox.show(jqXHR.responseText,
 "ERROR",
 "Service Call Error");
 return;
}
```

The complete `xsjsMultiply.controller.js` file should look like the following example:

```
sap.ui.controller("xsjsmultiply.xsjsMultiply", {
 onLiveChange: function(oEvent,oVal){
 var aUrl = '/sap/hana/democontent/epm/services/multiply.xsjs?
cmd=multiply'+'&num1='
 +escape(oEvent.getParameters().liveValue)
+'&num2='+escape(oVal.getValue());
 jQuery.ajax({
 url: aUrl,
 method: 'GET',
 dataType: 'json',
 success: this.onCompleteMultiply,
 error: this.onErrorCall});
 },
 onCompleteMultiply: function(myTxt){
 var oResult = sap.ui.getCore().byId("result");
 if(myTxt==undefined){ oResult.setText(0); }
 else{
 jQuery.sap.require("sap.ui.core.format.NumberFormat");
 var oNumberFormat =
sap.ui.core.format.NumberFormat.getIntegerInstance({
 maxFractionDigits: 12,
 minFractionDigits: 0,
 groupingEnabled: true });
 oResult.setText(oNumberFormat.format(myTxt));
 },
 },
 onErrorCall: function(jqXHR, textStatus, errorThrown){
 sap.ui.commons.MessageBox.show(jqXHR.responseText,
 "ERROR",
 "Service Call Error");
 return;
 }
},
{
 title: "Multiplication",
 icon: "sap-icon://calculator",
 type: "sap.m.MessageType.Error",
 content: "An error occurred while performing the multiplication."
});
```

```

 success: this.onCompleteMultiply,
 error: this.onErrorCall });
},
onCompleteMultiply: function(myTxt) {
 var oResult = sap.ui.getCore().byId("result");
 if(myTxt==undefined){ oResult.setText(0); }
 else{
 jQuery.sap.require("sap.ui.core.format.NumberFormat");
 var oNumberFormat =
sap.ui.core.format.NumberFormat.getIntegerInstance({
 maxFractionDigits: 12,
 minFractionDigits: 0,
 groupingEnabled: true });
 oResult.setText(oNumberFormat.format(myTxt));
 },
 onErrorCall: function(jqXHR, textStatus, errorThrown) {
 sap.ui.commons.MessageBox.show(jqXHR.responseText,
 "ERROR",
 "Service Call Error");
 return;
 }
});

```

- Save and activate all changes to all SAPUI5 application artifacts.

**i Note**

Activate at the project level to ensure that the changes made to **all** project artifacts are updated in the SAP HANA repository.

- Test your “xsjsMultiply” SAPUI5 application in a Web browser.

The URL for the SAPUI5 application is: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/workshop/session/ui/xsjsMultiply/WebContent/`.

**i Note**

The content of the URL is case sensitive. If prompted, log on using your SAP HANA user name and password.

### XS Service Test - Multiplication

222 \* 1144.8 = 254,145.59999999998

## 9.3.3 Tutorial: Consume an OData Service from SAPUI5

An OData service can be used to provide the data required for display in an SAPUI5 application.

### Prerequisites

To complete this tutorial successfully, bear in mind the following requirements:

- You have installed the SAP HANA studio.
- You have installed the SAPUI5 tools included in the delivery unit (DU) [SAPUI5\\_1](#).
- You have installed the [SHINE](#) delivery unit (DU); this DU contains the views (`sap.hana.democontent.epm.models::AN_SALES_OVERVIEW_WO_CURR_CONV` and `sap.hana.democontent.epm.models::AT_BUYER`) specified in the OData service (`salesOrders.xsodata`) that you want to consume with the SAPUI5 application you build in this tutorial.
- You have generated data to populate the tables and views provided by the [SHINE](#) DU and used in this tutorial. You can generate the data with tools included in the [SHINE](#) DU.

#### i Note

You might have to adjust the paths in the code examples provided to suit the folder/package hierarchy in your SAP HANA repository, for example, to point to the underlying content (demonstration tables and services) referenced in the tutorial.

### Context

You can bind a UI element in an SAPUI5 application to the data specified in an OData service. For example, you can populate the contents of a table column displayed in an SAPUI5 application with the data stored in a database table defined in an OData service.

### Procedure

1. Create an SAPUI5 project.

- a. Start the [New Application Project](#) wizard.

In the SAP HANA studio's [Project Explorer](#) view, choose [New](#) [Other...](#)

- b. Select the application project.

SAP HANA studio provides dedicated wizards to help you set up an application project; here you choose the project [SAPUI5 Application Development](#) [Application Project](#) in the [New Project](#) wizard.

- c. Define details of the new project.

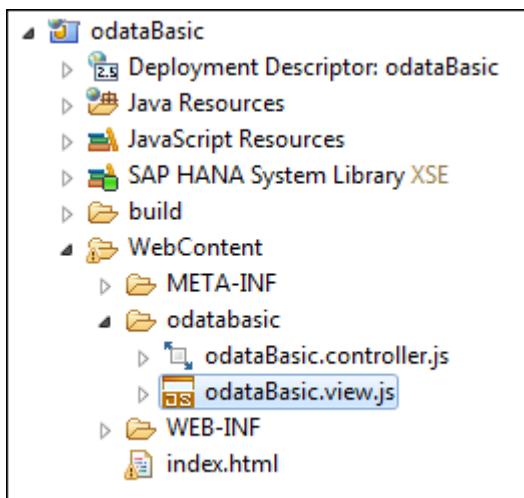
- Enter a name for the new SAPUI5 application project, for example, `odataBasic`.

- Check the *Use default location* option.
- d. Define details of the new SAPUI5 application view and choose *Finish*.
- Check the folder for the project; it should be `WebContent/odatabasic`.
  - Provide a name for the base HTML page that the SAPUI5 application uses, for example, `odataBasic`.
  - Choose *JavaScript* as the *Development Paradigm*.

#### Note

If prompted, do not switch to the Java EE perspective.

You now have an Eclipse project for the new SAPUI5 application. The SAPUI5 application project has a bootstrap HTML page (`index.html`) in the `WebContent` folder and an `odataBasic` controller (and view) in the sub-package `odatabasic` as illustrated in the following example:



2. Create the application-descriptor files that enable client access to the services and data exposed by the new application.

Each SAP HANA XS application requires two **mandatory** application descriptor files, which are located in the root package of the application they apply to. If the application-descriptor files already exist (for example, because they are created as part of the new-application Wizard), you can safely skip this step.

#### Note

Application descriptors have a file extension, but no file name, for example, `.xsapp` or `.xsaccess`.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the application package where you want to create the new application descriptors and, in the popup menu, choose, 
- b. Create the XS application descriptor file (`.xsapp`).

In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose .

#### Tip

The application descriptor has no content; its job is to mark the root package of the resources exposed to client requests by the application.

- c. Create the XS application-access file (`.xsaccess`).

In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose ► SAP HANA ► Application Development ► XS Application Access File ▶.

➔ Tip

The `.xsaccess` file controls who has access to the application (and how) and what data or services the application can expose.

- d. Select a template to use for the application-access file (for example, *Basic*) and choose *Finish*.

A basic `.xsaccess` file looks like the following example, which exposes your application data, specifies that logon credentials are required for authentication, and helps to prevent cross-site request-forgery (XSRF) attacks:

```
{
 "exposed" : true,
 "authentication" : { "method" : "Form"},
 "prevent_xsrf" : true
}
```

- e. Activate the XS application descriptor files in the SAP HANA Repository.

Right-click the package containing the application descriptor files you have created and, in the context-sensitive menu, choose ► Team ► Activate ▶.

You now have a basic package structure to hold your application files. The root package for your new application also contains the required application descriptors, which control access to the services and data exposed by the new application.

3. Share the new SAPUI5 project with the SAP HANA Repository.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new SAPUI5 application project, and choose ► Team ► Share Project... ▶

- a. Choose the appropriate repository **type**, for example, *SAP HANA Repository*.
- b. Specify the package location in the SAP HANA repository where the new SAP UI5 application project should reside.

In the *Share Project* wizard, choose *Browse...* to select the package in which you want to store the new SAPUI5 application artifacts. Select the `ui` package in the SAPUI5 folder hierarchy.

- c. Check the settings you made for the new SAPUI5 application project.
- d. Activate the new SAPUI5 application project.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new SAPUI5 application project, and choose ► Team ► Activate ▶.

➔ Tip

Remember to activate at the project level to ensure that all project artifacts are created and stored in the SAP HANA repository.

4. Modify the default settings for the SAPUI5 bootstrap location in the base SAPUI5 `index.html`.

The SAPUI5 project wizard inserts a default bootstrap location into the `index.html` file which is incorrect for SAP HANA. You must manually change the bootstrap location in the SAPUI5 application's `index.html` file by adding `/sap/ui5/1` to the beginning of the default path defined in the `script src=`

tag, for example, `script src="/sap/ui5/1/resources/sap-ui-core.js` as illustrated in the following example:

### i Note

You must also declare any additional libraries you want the SAPUI5 application to use to render the data it consumes. For this tutorial, add `sap.ui.table` to the list of SAPUI5 libraries, as shown in the following example.

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML>
<html>
 <head>
 <meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=edge">
 <script src="/sap/ui5/1/resources/sap-ui-core.js"
 id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
 data-sap-ui-libs="sap.ui.commons,sap.ui.table"
 data-sap-ui-theme="sap_goldreflection">
 </script>
```

5. Connect the SAPUI5 table element to the OData service.

The code described in this step must be added to the SAPUI5 view controller file `odataBasic.view.js`.

- Add the code to create an object named `oModel` of type `sap.ui.model.odata.ODataModel`, as illustrated in the following code example:

```
var oModel = new sap.ui.model.odata.ODataModel("/sap/hana/democontent/epm/
 services/salesOrders.xsodata/", true);
```

- Add the code to set the model named `oModel` to the UI table control named `oTable`.

The code you add creates a sorting mechanism (of type `sap.ui.model.Sorter`) which uses the column `SALESORDERID`. Bind the table to the entity `SalesOrderHeader` in the OData service definition and add the sorter object to the binding.

```
this.oSHTable.setModel(oModel);
 var sort1 = new sap.ui.model.Sorter("SALESORDERID", true);

 this.oSHTable.bindRows({
 path: "/SalesOrderHeader",
 parameters: {expand: "Buyer",
 select:
 "SALESORDERID,CURRENCY,GROSSAMOUNT,PARTNERID.PARTNERID,Buyer/COMPANYNAME"},
 sorter: sort1
 });
```

These two steps connect the SAPUI5 table element to the OData service `salesOrders.xsodata`. The result in the `odataBasic.view.js` file should look like the code illustrated in the following example:

```
sap.ui.jsview("odatabasic.odataBasic", {
 /** Specifies the Controller belonging to this View.
 * In the case that it is not implemented, or that "null" is returned,
 * this View does not have a Controller.
 * @memberOf databasic.odataBasic
 */
 getControllerName : function() {
 return "odatabasic.odataBasic";
 },
 /** Is initially called once after the Controller has been instantiated.
 * It is the place where the UI is constructed.
 * Since the Controller is given to this method, its event handlers can be
 * attached right away.
 * @memberOf databasic.odataBasic
 }
```

```

 */
 createContent : function(oController) {
 var oLayout = new sap.ui.commons.layout.MatrixLayout({width:"100%"});

 var oModel = new sap.ui.model.odata.ODataModel("/sap/hana/democontent/epm/services/salesOrders.xsodata/", true);

 var oControl;
 this.oSHTable = new sap.ui.table.Table("soTable",{
 visibleRowCount: 10,
 });
 this.oSHTable.setTitle("SALES_ORDER_HEADERS");

 //Table Column Definitions
 oControl = new sap.ui.commons.TextView().bindProperty("text","SALESORDERID");
 this.oSHTable.addColumn(new sap.ui.table.Column({label:new sap.ui.commons.Label({text: "SALES_ORDER_ID"}), template: oControl, sortProperty: "SALESORDERID", filterProperty: "SALESORDERID", filterOperator: sap.ui.model.FilterOperator.EQ, flexible: true }));

 oControl = new sap.ui.commons.TextView().bindProperty("text","PARTNERID.PARTNERID");
 this.oSHTable.addColumn(new sap.ui.table.Column({label:new sap.ui.commons.Label({text: "PARTNER_ID"}), template: oControl, sortProperty: "PARTNERID", filterProperty: "PARTNERID" }));

 oControl = new sap.ui.commons.TextView().bindProperty("text","Buyer/COMPANYNAME");
 this.oSHTable.addColumn(new sap.ui.table.Column({label:new sap.ui.commons.Label({text: "COMPANY"}), template: oControl, sortProperty: "Buyer/CompanyName", filterProperty: "Buyer/CompanyName", filterOperator: sap.ui.model.FilterOperator.Contains }));

 oControl = new sap.ui.commons.TextView().bindText("GROSSAMOUNT",oController.numericFormatter);
 oControl.setTextAlign("End");
 this.oSHTable.addColumn(new sap.ui.table.Column({label:new sap.ui.commons.Label({text: "GROSS_AMOUNT"}), template: oControl, sortProperty: "GROSSAMOUNT", filterProperty: "GROSSAMOUNT", hAlign: sap.ui.commons.layout.HAlign.End}));
 oControl = new sap.ui.commons.TextView().bindProperty("text","CURRENCY");
 this.oSHTable.addColumn(new sap.ui.table.Column({label:new sap.ui.commons.Label({text: "CURRENCY"}), template: oControl, sortProperty: "CURRENCY", filterProperty: "CURRENCY"}));
 this.oSHTable.setModel(oModel);
 var sort1 = new sap.ui.model.Sorter("SALESORDERID", true);

 this.oSHTable.bindRows({
 path: "/SalesOrderHeader",
 parameters: {expand: "Buyer", select: "SALESORDERID,CURRENCY,GROSSAMOUNT,PARTNERID.PARTNERID,Buyer/COMPANYNAME"}, sorter: sort1
 });

 this.oSHTable.setTitle("Sales Orders");
 oLayout.createRow(this.oSHTable);
 }
 }
}

```

```

 return oLayout;
 }
});
```

- Save and activate all changes to all SAPUI5 application artifacts.

**i Note**

Activate at the project level to ensure that the changes made to **all** project artifacts are updated in the SAP HANA repository.

- Test your “odataBasic” SAPUI5 application in a Web browser.

The URL for the SAPUI5 application is: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/workshop/session/ui/odataBasic/WebContent/`.

**i Note**

The content of the URL is case sensitive. Log on using your SAP HANA user name and password.

### Sales Orders

SALES_ORDER_ID	PARTNER_ID	COMPANY	GROSS_AMOUNT	CURRENCY
0500001028	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001027	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001026	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001025	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001024	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001023	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001022	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001021	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001020	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR
0500001019	0100000044	Sorali	325.94	EUR

- Optional:** Use the metadata that OData exposes to build the table columns dynamically.

You do not have to hard code the column definitions in the `*.view.js` file. To use Odata metdata to build the columns dynamically, replace the list of hard-coded table-column definitions in the `odataBasic.view.js` with the code that builds the table columns dynamically, as illustrated in the following example.

```

sap.ui.jsvview("odatabasic.odataBasic", {
 /**
 * Specifies the Controller belonging to this View.
 * In the case that it is not implemented, or that "null" is returned,
 * this View does not have a Controller.
 * @memberOf databasic.odataBasic
 */
 getControllerName : function() {
 return "odatabasic.odataBasic";
 },
 /**
 * Is initially called once after the Controller has been instantiated.
 * It is the place where the UI is constructed.
 * Since the Controller is given to this method, its event handlers can be
 * attached right away.
 * @memberOf databasic.odataBasic
 */
 createContent : function(oController) {
```

```

var oLayout = new sap.ui.commons.layout.MatrixLayout({width:"100%"});

var oModel = new sap.ui.model.odata.ODataModel("/sap/hana/
democontent/epm/services/salesOrders.xsodata/", true);

var oControl;
this.oSHTable = new sap.ui.table.Table("soTable", {
 visibleRowCount: 10,
});
this.oSHTable.setTitle("SALES_ORDER_HEADERS");

//Table Column Definitions
var oMeta = oModel.getServiceMetadata();
var oControl;

for (var i = 0; i < oMeta.dataServices.schema[0].entityType[0].property.length; i++) {
 var property = oMeta.dataServices.schema[0].entityType[0].property[i];

 oControl = new sap.ui.commons.TextField().bindProperty("value",property.name);
 oTable.addColumn(new sap.ui.table.Column({label:new sap.ui.commons.Label({text:
property.name}), template: oControl, sortProperty: property.name, filterProperty: property.name,
filterOperator: sap.ui.model.FilterOperator.EQ, flexible: true, width: "125px " }));
}

this.oSHTable.setModel(oModel);
var sort1 = new sap.ui.model.Sorter("SALESORDERID", true);

this.oSHTable.bindRows({
 path: "/SalesOrderHeader",
 parameters: {expand: "Buyer",
 select:
"SALESORDERID,CURRENCY,GROSSAMOUNT,PARTNERID,Buyer/COMPANYNAME" },
 sorter: sort1
});

this.oSHTable.setTitle("Sales Orders");
oLayout.createRow(this.oSHTable);

return oLayout;
}
);

```

The code you insert performs the following actions:

- Uses the function `getServiceMetadata()` to connect to the OData metadata object
- Inspects the OData metadata and extracts the columns of the service defined in the property `dataServices.schema[0].entityType[0].property`
- Loops over this collection of OData metadata and creates a column for each `property.name` in the service dynamically.

Sales Orders								
	SALESORDERID	History.CREATEDBY	History.CREATEDAT	History.CHANGEDBY	History.CHANGEDAT	NOTEID	PARTNERID	CURRENCY
	0500001028	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001027	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001026	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001025	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001024	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001023	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001022	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001021	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001020	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	
	0500001019	0000000033	Wed Sep 11 02:00:00 U	0000000033	Wed Sep 25 02:00:00 L	0100000044	EUR	

## 9.3.4 Tutorial: Consume an OData Service with the CREATE Option

An OData service can be used to provide the data required for display in an SAPUI5 application.

### Prerequisites

To complete this tutorial successfully, bear in mind the following requirements:

- You have installed the SAP HANA studio.
- You have installed the SAPUI5 tools included in the delivery unit (DU) [SAPUI5\\_1](#).
- You have installed the [SHINE](#) delivery unit (DU); this DU contains the tables and OData services that you want to consume with the SAPUI5 application you build in this tutorial.
- You have generated data to populate the tables and views provided by the [SHINE](#) delivery unit and used in this tutorial. You can generate the data with tools included in the [SHINE](#) delivery unit.

#### i Note

You might have to adjust the paths in the code examples provided to suit the folder/package hierarchy in your SAP HANA repository, for example, to point to the underlying content (demonstration tables and services) referenced in the tutorial.

### Context

You can bind a UI element in an SAPUI5 application to the data specified in an OData service. For example, you can populate the contents of table columns displayed in an SAPUI5 application with the data stored in a database table defined in an OData service. In this tutorial, you learn how to build an SAPUI5 view that provides input fields, which you can use to create a new record or update an existing record in a database table, for example, using the OData create, update, and delete (CRUD) features.

### Procedure

1. Create an SAPUI5 project.
  - a. Start the [New Application Project](#) wizard.  
In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, choose **New** **Other...**
  - b. Select the application project.  
SAP HANA studio provides dedicated wizards to help you set up an application project; choose the project **SAPUI5 Application Development** **Application Project** in the [New Project](#) wizard.
  - c. Define details of the new project.
    - Enter a name for the new SAPUI5 application project, for example, **userCRUD**.

- Check the *Use default location* option.
- d. Define details of the new SAPUI5 application view and choose *Finish*.
  - Provide a name for the base HTML page that the SAPUI5 application uses, for example, `userCRUD`.
  - Choose *JavaScript* as the *Development Paradigm*.

#### Note

If prompted, do not switch to the Java EE perspective.

You now have an Eclipse project for the new SAPUI5 application. The SAPUI5 application project has a bootstrap HTML page (`index.html`) in the `WebContent` folder and an `odataBasic` controller (and view) in the sub-package `odatacrudx`.

2. Create the application-descriptor files that enable client access to the services and data exposed by the new application.

Each SAP HANA XS application requires two **mandatory** application descriptor files, which are located in the root package of the application they apply to. If the application-descriptor files already exist (for example, because they are created as part of the new-application Wizard), you can safely skip this step.

#### Note

Application descriptors have a file extension, but no file name, for example, `.xsapp` or `.xsaccess`.

- a. In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the application package where you want to create the new application descriptors and, in the popup menu, choose,  *New*  *Other...* 
- b. Create the XS application descriptor file (`.xsapp`).

In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose   *SAP HANA*  *Application Development*  *XS Application Access File* .

#### Tip

The application descriptor has no content; its job is to mark the root package of the resources exposed to client requests by the application.

- c. Create the XS application-access file (`.xsaccess`).

In the *Select a Wizard* dialog, choose   *SAP HANA*  *Application Development*  *XS Application Access File* .

#### Tip

The `.xsaccess` file controls who has access to the application (and how) and what data or services the application can expose.

- d. Select a template to use for the application-access file (for example, *Basic*) and choose *Finish*.

A basic `.xsaccess` file looks like the following example, which exposes your application data, specifies that logon credentials are required for authentication, and helps to prevent cross-site request-forgery (XSRF) attacks:

```
{
 "exposed" : true,
```

```
 "authentication" : { "method" : "Form" },
 "prevent_xsrf" : true
 }
```

- e. Activate the XS application descriptor files in the SAP HANA Repository.

Right-click the package containing the application descriptor files you have created and, in the context-sensitive menu, choose ► **Team** ► **Activate** ▾.

You now have a basic package structure to hold your application files. The root package for your new application also contains the required application descriptors, which control access to the services and data exposed by the new application.

3. Share the new SAPUI5 project with the SAP HANA repository.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new SAPUI5 application project, and choose ► **Team** ► **Share Project...** ▾

- a. Choose the appropriate repository **type**, for example, *SAP HANA Repository*.
- b. Specify the package location in the SAP HANA repository where the new SAP UI5 application project should reside.  
In the *Share Project* wizard, choose *Browse...* to select the package in which you want to store the new SAPUI5 application artifacts. Select the `ui` package in the SAPUI5 folder hierarchy.
- c. Check the settings you made for the new SAPUI5 application project.
- d. Activate the new SAPUI5 application project.

In the SAP HANA studio's *Project Explorer* view, right-click the new SAPUI5 application project, and choose ► **Team** ► **Activate** ▾.

### → Tip

Remember to activate at the project level to ensure that all project artifacts are created and stored in the SAP HANA repository.

4. Modify the default settings for the SAPUI5 bootstrap location in the base SAPUI5 `index.html`.

The SAPUI5 project wizard inserts a default bootstrap location into the `index.html` file which is incorrect for SAP HANA. You must manually change the bootstrap location in the SAPUI5 application's `index.html` file by adding `/sap/ui5/1` to the beginning of the default path defined in the `script src=` tag, for example, `script src="/sap/ui5/1/resources/sap-ui-core.js` as illustrated in the following example:

### ! Note

You must also declare any additional libraries you want the SAPUI5 application to use to render the data it consumes. For this tutorial, add `sap.ui.table` to the list of SAPUI5 libraries, as shown in the following example.

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML>
<html><head><meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=edge">
 <script src="/sap/ui5/1/resources/sap-ui-core.js"
 id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
 data-sap-ui-libs="sap.ui.commons, sap.ui.table,
sap.ui.ux3, sap.viz"
 data-sap-ui-theme="sap_goldreflection">
 </script>
 <!-- add sap.ui.table, sap.ui.ux3 and/or other libraries to
'data-sap-ui-libs' if required -->
 <script>
```

```

 var version = sap.ui.version;
 var versionMinor = version.substring(2,4);
 if(versionMinor>=14) {
 sap.ui.getCore().applyTheme("sap_bluecrystal")
 }
 sap.ui.localResources("usercrud");
 var view = sap.ui.view({id:"idUserCRUD1",
viewName:"usercrud.userCRUD", type:sap.ui.core.mvc.ViewType.JS});
 view.placeAt("content");
 </script>
</head>
<body class="sapUiBody" role="application">
 <div id="content"></div>
</body>
</html>

```

5. Set up the SAPUI5 user interface and bind it to an OData service.

The code you need to add to the `userCRUD.view.js` performs the following actions:

- Adds three text-entry boxes (`sap.ui.commons.TextField`) to the SAPUI5 application interface (*First Name*, *Last Name*, and *Email*)
- Adds a *Create Record* button (`sap.ui.commons.Button`) to the SAPUI5 application interface
- Binds the SAPUI5 view to the OData service `user.xsodata`

```

sap.ui.jsview("usercrud.userCRUD", {
 getControllerName : function() {
 return "usercrud.userCRUD";
 },
 createContent : function(oController) {
 var oLayout = new sap.ui.commons.layout.MatrixLayout();
 this.oModel = new sap.ui.model.odata.ODataModel("/sap/hana/
democontent/epm/services/user.xsodata/", true);

 var updatePanel = new sap.ui.commons.Panel("updPanel").setText('New
User Record Details');
 var layoutNew = new
sap.ui.commons.layout.MatrixLayout({width:"auto"});

 var oVal1 = new sap.ui.commons.TextField("fName", {tooltip: "First
Name", width: "200px", editable:true});
 var oVal2 = new sap.ui.commons.TextField("lName", {tooltip: "Last
Name", width: "200px", editable:true});
 var oVal3 = new sap.ui.commons.TextField("email", {tooltip: "Email",
width: "200px", editable:true});
 var oExcButton = new sap.ui.commons.Button({
 text : "Create Record",
 press : oController.callUserService });
 layoutNew.createRow(new sap.ui.commons.Label({text: "First Name:
"}), oVal1); //oExcButton);
 layoutNew.createRow(new sap.ui.commons.Label({text: "Last Name:
"}), oVal2); //oExcButton);
 layoutNew.createRow(new sap.ui.commons.Label({text: "Email:
"}), oVal3, oExcButton);
 updatePanel.addContent(layoutNew);
 oLayout.createRow(updatePanel);

 oTable = new sap.ui.table.Table("userTbl", {tableId: "tableID",
visibleRowCount: 10});
 oTable.setTitle("Users");

 //Table Column Definitions
 var oMeta = this.oModel.getServiceMetadata();
 }
}

```

```

 var oControl;

 for (var i = 0; i <
oMeta.dataServices.schema[0].entityType[0].property.length; i++) {
 var property =
oMeta.dataServices.schema[0].entityType[0].property[i];

 oControl = new sap.ui.commons.TextField({change:
oController.updateService }).bindProperty("value",property.name);
 if(property.name === 'PERS_NO'){
 oControl.setEditable(false);
 }
 oTable.addColumn(new sap.ui.table.Column({label:new
sap.ui.commons.Label({text: property.name}), template: oControl,
sortProperty: property.name, filterProperty: property.name, filterOperator:
sap.ui.model.FilterOperator.EQ, flexible: true, width: "125px" }));
 }

 oTable.setModel(this.oModel);
 oTable.bindRows("/Users");
 oTable.setTitle("Users");
 oTable.setEditable(true);

 oLayout.createRow(oTable);
 return oLayout;
 }
});

```

The `userCRUD.view.js` file should display the UI view illustrated in the following example:

The screenshot shows a SAPUI5 application interface. At the top, there is a dialog box titled "New User Record Details". It contains three input fields: "First Name" (with placeholder "First Name:"), "Last Name" (with placeholder "Last Name:"), and "Email" (with placeholder "Email:"). To the right of the "Email" field is a "Create Record" button. Below the dialog is a table titled "Users". The table has a header row with columns: "PERS\_NO", "FIRSTNAME", "LASTNAME", and "E\_MAIL". There are two data rows: one for "John Smith" with email "john.smith@sap.com" and another for "James Doe" with email "james.doe@sap.com".

PERS_NO	FIRSTNAME	LASTNAME	E_MAIL
1000000238	John	Smith	john.smith@sap.com
1000000239	James	Doe	james.doe@sap.com

- Set up the UI elements that the SAPUI5 application uses to handle create and update events.

The functions that handle the create and update events are defined in the `SAPUI5 controller.js` file.

- Add a declaration for the `oModel` and set it to `null`.

This code ensures that the model instance is passed from the SAPUI5 view to the SAPUI5 controller.

```

sap.ui.controller("usercrud.userCRUD", {
 oModel : null,
})

```

- Add the event handlers required to **create** and **update** a database record with OData CRUD operations.

The event handlers are empty at this point but, when finished, ensures that the functions `callUserService` (which creates new records in a table) and `updateService` (which updates records in a table) are available.

```
callUserService : function() {
 },
updateService: function(Event) {
}
```

- c. Set up the `callUserService` function to handle create events.

The code required for this implementation of the `callUserService` function is illustrated in the following example:

```
callUserService : function() {
 var oModel = sap.ui.getCore().byId("userTbl").getModel();
 var oEntry = {};
 oEntry.PERS_NO = "0000000000";
 oEntry.FIRSTNAME = sap.ui.getCore().byId("fName").getValue();
 oEntry.LASTNAME = sap.ui.getCore().byId("lName").getValue();
 oEntry.E_MAIL = sap.ui.getCore().byId("email").getValue();
 oModel.setHeaders({"content-type" : "application/
json; charset=utf-8"});
 oModel.create('/Users', oEntry, null, function() {
 alert("Create successful");
 }, function() {
 alert("Create failed");
 });
},
```

In this example, the `callUserService` function performs the following actions:

- Provides access to the model object by means of the controller with a call to `var oModel = sap.ui.getCore().byId("userTbl").getModel();`.
- Creates a JSON object with the service fields: `PERS_NO`, `FIRSTNAME`, `LASTNAME`, and `E_MAIL`. `PERS_NO` can have a fixed value `0000000000`. The other fields should be read from the screen with `sap.ui.getCore().byId("<insert field id>").getValue();`
- Sets a custom header of “`content-type`” with the value “`application/json; charset=utf-8`” in the model. This enables a call to the `oModel.create` function for the entity `/Users`.

- d. Set up the `updateService` function to handle update events.

The code required for this implementation of the `updateService` function is illustrated in the following example:

```
updateService: function(Event) {
 var oModel = sap.ui.getCore().byId("userTbl").getModel();
 var index = Event.getSource().oParent.getIndex();
 var oEntry = {};
 oEntry.PERS_NO = sap.ui.getCore().byId("__field0-col0-
row"+index).getValue();
 switch (Event.mParameters.id){
 case "__field1-col1-row"+index:
 oEntry.FIRSTNAME = Event.mParameters.newValue; break;
 case "__field2-col2-row"+index:
 oEntry.LASTNAME = Event.mParameters.newValue; break;
 case "__field3-col3-row"+index:
 oEntry.E_MAIL = Event.mParameters.newValue;
 }
 var oParams = {};
```

```

 oParams.fnSuccess = function(){ alert("Update successful"); };
 oParams.fnError = function(){alert("Update failed");};
 oParams.bMerge = true;
 oModel.setHeaders({"content-type" : "application/
json; charset=utf-8"});
 oModel.update("/Users('" +oEntry.PERS_NO+"')", oEntry, oParams);

 }
);

```

The updateService performs the following actions:

- Accesses the model to read the index of the table for the changed record using `Event.getSource().oParent.getIndex()`.
- Creates a JSON object with the service fields `PERS_NO` and whichever field was modified or updated. You can access the fields in the table using the event parameter ID “`__field<index>-col<index>-row”+index`, where `index` is the table index you read earlier, for example, `__field1-col1-row”+index`.
- Sets a custom header of “`content-type`” with the value “`application/json; charset=utf-8`” in the model. Then you can call the `oModel.update` function for the entity `/Users`.

## 7. Save and activate all changes to all SAPUI5 application artifacts.

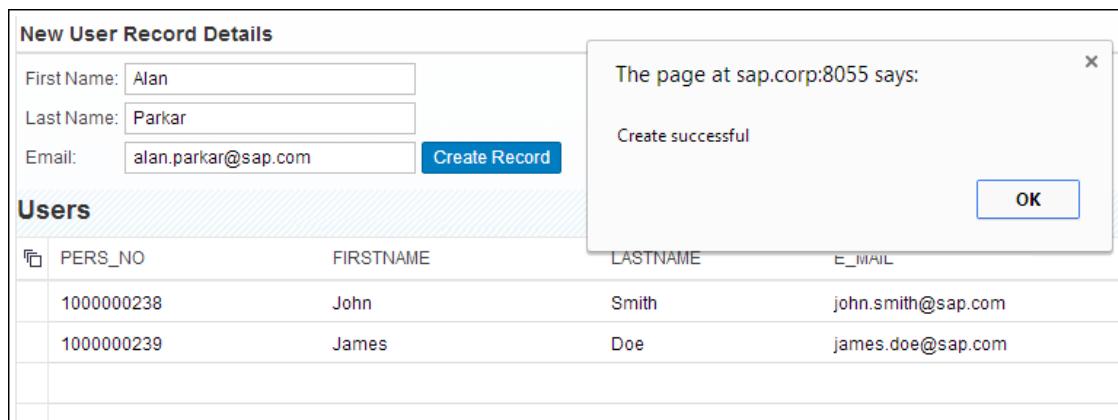
### Note

Activate at the project level to ensure that the changes made to **all** project artifacts are updated in the SAP HANA repository.

## 8. Test your “userCRUD” SAPUI5 application in a Web browser.

The URL for the SAPUI5 application is: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/democontent/epm/ui/userCRUD/index.html`. You should test both the **create** and the **update** operations.

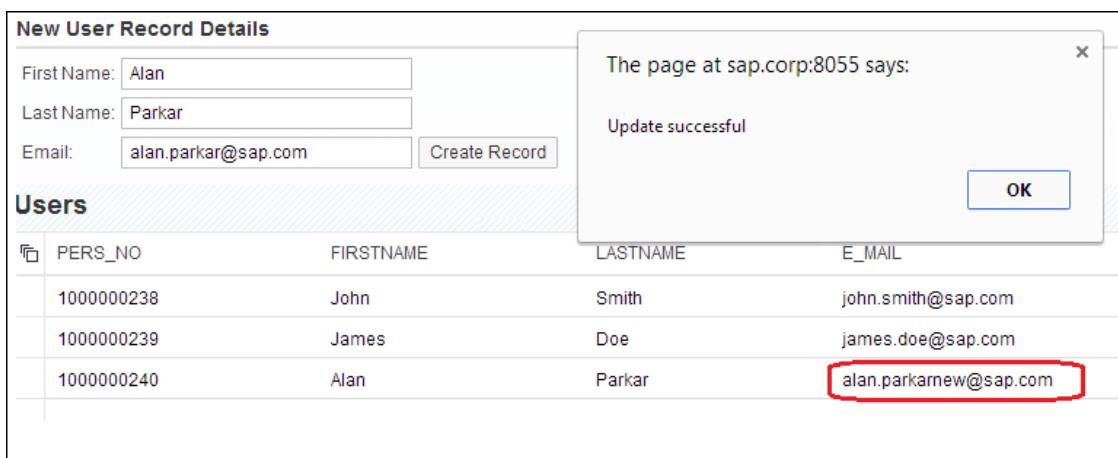
- a. Create a new record in the table referenced in the OData service.



The screenshot shows a SAPUI5 application interface. On the left, there is a modal dialog titled "New User Record Details" with three input fields: "First Name" (Alan), "Last Name" (Parkar), and "Email" (alan.parkar@sap.com). A "Create Record" button is located at the bottom right of the dialog. To the right of the dialog, a table titled "Users" is displayed with four columns: PERS\_NO, FIRSTNAME, LASTNAME, and E\_MAIL. The table contains two rows of data: one for John Smith (PERS\_NO: 1000000238) and another for James Doe (PERS\_NO: 1000000239). A success message "Create successful" is shown in a tooltip-like overlay above the table. The tooltip also contains the text "The page at sap.corp:8055 says:" and an "OK" button.

PERS_NO	FIRSTNAME	LASTNAME	E_MAIL
1000000238	John	Smith	john.smith@sap.com
1000000239	James	Doe	james.doe@sap.com

- b. Update an existing record in the table referenced in the OData service.



## 9.3.5 Tutorial: Create and Translate Text Bundles for SAPUI5 Applications

Text bundles are used in the context of internationalization (i18n) to store text strings that are displayed in the user interface, for example, dialog titles, button texts, and error messages.

### Prerequisites

To complete this tutorial successfully, bear in mind the following requirements:

- You have installed the SAP HANA studio.
- You have installed the SAPUI5 tools included in the delivery unit (DU) [SAPUI5\\_1](#).
- You have installed the [democontent](#) delivery unit; this DU contains the tables and OData services that you want to consume with the SAPUI5 application you build in this tutorial.
- You have generated data to populate the tables and views provided by the [democontent](#) delivery unit and used in this tutorial. You can generate the data with tools included in the [democontent](#) delivery unit.

#### i Note

You might have to adjust the paths in the code examples provided to suit the folder/package hierarchy in your SAP HANA repository, for example, to point to the underlying content (demonstration services and tables) referenced in this tutorial.

### Context

For applications running in production environments, you need to maintain text strings independently so the strings can easily be translated. For UI5 development in SAP HANA you create a so-called “text bundle” named `<FileName>.hdbtextbundle` which contains the text strings. If you need to provide text strings in an

alternative language, you can use the Repository Translation Tool (rtt) to export the `hdbtextbundle` to a translation system. The translated text can then be imported back into the system for use in language-specific application sessions.

### i Note

In the SAP HANA repository, there is only a single `hdbtextbundle` file. However, if available, multiple language versions of the strings are stored in the SAP HANA database, and the appropriate string is selected and used automatically depending on the languages settings in the application.

## Procedure

1. In an existing SAPUI5 application folder structure, create a dedicated folder (package) for the internationalization elements, for example, the text bundles.

Name the new folder `i18n`.

### i Note

For Translation purposes you must specify the *Translation Domain* and the *Text collection* in the *Translation* section of the package creation dialog.

2. Create a container for the text bundle.

The file containing the text bundle must have the file extension `.hdbtextbundle`, for example, `ErrorMessages.hdbtextbundle`

Create a file with the name `messagebundle.hdbtextbundle`.

3. Add content to the message bundle.

Add the text in the following code example to the `messagebundle.hdbtextbundle` file:

```
TRANSLATE
helloworld=Hello World
```

4. Save the `messagebundle.hdbtextbundle` file and activate it in the SAP HANA repository.
5. Add a reference to the `hdbtextbundle` in the core HTML file for the SAP UI5 "Hello World" application you are developing.

Open the file `<...>/WebContent/index.html` in the SAP UI5 "Hello World" project and add the following text (in **bold** font type in the example) to the Language Resource Loader section:

```
<!DOCTYPE HTML>
<html>
 <head>
 <meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=edge">
 <script src="/sap/ui/5.1/resources/sap-ui-core.js"
 id="sap-ui-bootstrap"
 data-sap-ui-libs="sap.ui.commons"
 data-sap-ui-theme="sap_goldreflection">
 </script>
 <!-- add sap.ui.table,sap.ui.ux3 and/or other libraries to 'data-sap-
ui-libs' if required -->
 <script>
 /***** Language Resource Loader *****/
 jQuery.sap.require("jquery.sap.resources");
 var sLocale =
```

```

sap.ui.getCore().getConfiguration().getLanguage();
var oBundle =
 jQuery.sap.resources({url : "./i18n/messagebundle.hdbtextbundle",
locale: sLocale});

sap.ui.localResources("helloworldx");
var view = sap.ui.view({id:"idHelloWorld1",
viewName:"helloworldx.HelloWorld", type:sap.ui.core.mvc.ViewType.JS});
view.placeAt("content");
</script>
</head>
<body class="sapUiBody" role="application">
 <div id="content"></div>
</body>
</html>

```

6. Save the `index.html` file and activate it in the Repository.
7. Add a reference to the `hdbtextbundle` in the core JavaScript file for the SAP UI5 "Hello World" application you are developing.

In this step, you tell the `setText` function of the `Hello World` button in the UI to use the information in the specified text bundle to display the required text.

Open the file `<...>/ui/HelloWorldX/helloworldx/HelloWorld.view.js` in the SAP UI5 "Hello World" project and add the following text `myButton.setText(oBundle.getText("helloworld"));` to the `createContent` section:

### Note

The additional text is indicated in **bold** font type in the example.

```

sap.ui.jsview("helloworldx.HelloWorld", {
 /** Specifies the Controller belonging to this View.
 * In the case that it is not implemented, or that "null" is returned,
 * this View does not have a Controller.
 * @memberOf helloworldx.HelloWorld
 */
 getControllerName : function() {
 return "helloworldx.HelloWorld";
 },
 /** Is initially called once after the Controller has been instantiated.
 * It is the place where the UI is constructed.
 * Since the Controller is given to this method, its event handlers can be
 * attached right away.
 * @memberOf helloworldx.HelloWorld
 */
 createContent : function(oController) {
 var myButton = new sap.ui.commons.Button("btn");
 myButton.setText(oBundle.getText("helloworld"));
 myButton.attachPress(function(){ $("#btn").fadeOut(); });
 return myButton;
 }
});

```

8. Save the changes to the `HelloWorld.view.js` file and activate the file in the SAP HANA repository.
9. Test the changes in a Web browser.

`http://<hostname>:<port>/<...>/ui/HelloWorld/WebContent/.`

## **i** Note

The URL path and resource names are case sensitive. If prompted, enter your SAP HANA user name and password.

The text string “Hello World” should appear in the Web browser.

### 10. Export the text bundle for translation.

You use the repository translation tool (`rtt`) included with the SAP HANA client to produce an XML document with the XLIFF format required for upload to an SAP translation system.

## **i** Note

One XML document is used for each language pair in the translation process, for example, English to German.

Open a command shell on the machine running the SAP HANA studio/client, and type the following command:

```
rtt -export -p <package containing hdbtextbundle>
```

The XML document generated by the export process specifies the source language (English) and the source text to translate.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xliff xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:xliff:document:1.2" version="1.2">
 <file datatype="plaintext" original="bla.test.hdbtextbundle" source-
language="en">
 <header>
 <sxmd:metadata xmlns:sxmd="urn:x-sap:mlt:xliff12:metadata:1.0"
xmlns="urn:x-sap:mlt:tsmetadata:1.0">
 <object-name>1.bla.test.hdbtextbundle</object-name>
 <collection>coll</collection>
 <domain>1A</domain>
 <developer>SYSTEM</developer>
 <description>n/a</description>
 <origin>bla.test.hdbtextbundle</origin>
 </sxmd:metadata>
 </header>
 <body>
 <group resname="c.test.hdbtextbundle" restype="x-objectContentTexts">
 <trans-unit xmlns:sap="urn:x-sap:sls-mlt" id="TEST" maxwidth="20"
sap:sc="XTIT" size-unit="char">
 <source>hello world</source>
 </trans-unit>
 </group>
 </body>
 </file>
</xliff>
```

### 11. Add the translated version of the text string to the XLF document.

Typically, the XML document containing the translated text strings is generated by a translation system. However, for the purposes of this tutorial, you can manually add the required information to the `hdbtextbundle.xlf` file:

- Language information

The translated language is defined in the XML metadata using the `target-language="de-DE"` option, for example, `<file [...] target-language="de-DE"> tag`.

- The translated text:  
The translated text is specified in the body of the XML document using the `<target>` tag, as illustrated in the following example:
- The hdbtextbundle file name  
The name of the XLIFF hdbtextbundle file with language-specific content must include the following characters in the file suffix: a dash ("‐"), the appropriate ISO 639 language key (for example, "de"), an underscore ("\_"), and an ISO 3166 country code (for example, "DE").
  - Target language=German  
`messagebundle.hdbtextbundle-de_DE.xlf`
  - Target language=Chinese  
`messagebundle.hdbtextbundle-zh_ZH.xlf`

The XML document you use to import translated version of text strings specifies both the original source language (English) and the target (translated) text, which in this example is German (DE).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xliff xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:xliff:document:1.2" version="1.2">
 <file datatype="plaintext" date="2013-09-05T13:57:13Z"
original="bla.test.hdbtextbundle" source-language="en" target-language="de-DE">
 <header>
 <sxmd:metadata xmlns:sxmd="urn:x-sap:mlt:xliff12:metadata:1.0"
xmlns="urn:x-sap:mlt:tsmetadata:1.0">
 <object-name>1.bla.test.hdbtextbundle</object-name>
 <collection>coll</collection>
 <domain>1A</domain>
 <developer>SYSTEM</developer>
 <description>n/a</description>
 <origin>bla.test.hdbtextbundle</origin>
 </sxmd:metadata>
 </header>
 <body>
 <group resname="c.test.hdbtextbundle" restype="x-objectContentTexts">
 <trans-unit xmlns:sap="urn:x-sap:sls-mlt" id="TEST" maxwidth="20"
sap:sc="XTIT" size-unit="char">
 <source>hello world</source>
 <target>Hallo Welt</target>
 </trans-unit>
 </group>
 </body>
 </file>
</xliff>
```

12. Import the XLF file containing the text strings for the source and target languages into the SAP HANA repository.

You use the repository translation tool (`rtt`) included with the SAP HANA client to import the .XLF file.

Open a command shell on the machine running the SAP HANA studio/client, and type the following command:

```
rtt -import -p <package containing hdbtextbundle>
```

13. Activate the package containing the XLF file with the translated text strings.

The import operation inserts the translated strings into the appropriate table in the SAP HANA database. You can check which language versions of which text strings are stored in the SAP HANA repository by looking in the table `_SYS.REPO.ACTIVE_CONTENT_TEXT_CONTENT`, for example, with the following SQL command:

```
SELECT TOP 1000 * "_SYS.REPO"."ACTIVE_CONTENT_TEXT_CONTENT" WHERE PACKAGE_ID
= <path>.ui.HelloWorld.i18n
```

PACKAGE_ID	OBJECT_NAME	OBJECT_SUFFIX	TEXT_ID	LANG	CONTENT
1	cd164.admin.solutions.ui.HelloWorldX.i18n	messagebundle	hdbtextbundle	helloworld	Hello World
2	cd164.admin.solutions.ui.HelloWorldX.i18n	messagebundle	hdbtextbundle	de	Hallo Welt

14. Change the language setting of your Web browser to German.

You can set the language of the Web browser session either by adding the string `sap-ui-language=de` or changing the language setting in the Web Browser itself.

The request still points at the original text bundle `messagebundle.hdbtextbundle`, but the button in the simple SAPUI5 application now displays the text `Hallo Welt`.

## 9.4 Using UI Integration Services

SAP HANA UI Integration Services is a set of Eclipse-based tools that enable you to integrate standalone SAP HANA client applications into Web user interfaces to support end-to-end business scenarios.

These Web user interfaces are referred to as SAP Fiori launchpad sites.

### Prerequisites

- SAP HANA studio is installed on your local system. The SAP HANA studio version must match the current SAP HANA version.
- A supported browser is installed on your local system. At design time, the following browsers are supported on desktop:
  - Windows: Internet Explorer 9 or higher
  - Linux: latest version of Firefox

#### Note

For end users at runtime, the following browsers are supported:

- On desktop:
  - Windows: Internet Explorer 9 or higher, latest versions of Chrome, Firefox
  - Linux: latest version of Firefox
  - Mac: latest versions of Safari, Chrome and Firefox
- On mobile devices: Safari on iOS

- You are assigned the `sap.hana.uis.db::SITE_DESIGNER` role. End users are assigned the `sap.hana.uis.db::SITE_USER` role, and are assigned privileges for the relevant sites.

#### Note

Make sure you have the appropriate repository package privileges to read, edit and activate files in the package of your project.

- You have set up an SAP HANA application project.

## Related Information

[Creating Content for Application Sites \[page 702\]](#)

[SAP Fiori Launchpad Sites \[page 714\]](#)

[Setting Up Roles and Privileges \[page 723\]](#)

[Using SAP HANA Projects \[page 77\]](#)

### 9.4.1 Creating Content for Application Sites

You can create content for launchpad application sites.

Launchpad sites use tiles, which serve as entry points to SAP Fiori applications running on SAP HANA.

Tiles are used to launch apps from launchpad sites.

Tile catalogs are collections of logically related tiles, which are created and configured by administrators. Site designers choose tiles from available catalogs and add them to the launchpad application sites.

## Related Information

[Create a Tile Catalog \[page 702\]](#)

[Configuring Tiles \[page 704\]](#)

[SAP Fiori Launchpad Sites \[page 714\]](#)

#### 9.4.1.1 Create a Tile Catalog

In the SAP HANA studio, you can create tile catalogs from which site designers and users choose tiles for application sites.

## Procedure

1. In *Project Explorer*, in the project's context menu, choose **New** **Other...**.
2. In the *New* dialog box, choose **SAP HANA** **Application Development** **UIS Catalog**, and choose **Next**.
3. In the *New Catalog* dialog box, choose the parent folder, and enter the file name and the name of the catalog.

- 
4. Choose *Finish*.

The newly created catalog is added to the project.

## Related Information

[Edit a Tile Catalog \[page 703\]](#)

### 9.4.1.2 Edit a Tile Catalog

You can edit tile catalogs in the browser-based design environment embedded in the SAP HANA studio.

## Context

When planning tile catalogs, consider that access to a catalog is assigned to a role and applies to all the tiles within the catalog. Therefore, do not place tiles that require different permission levels in the same catalog, for example, tiles for managers and for employees.

## Procedure

1. To open a catalog for editing in the embedded browser, in *Project Explorer*, double-click the catalog's .xswidget file.

You can perform the following tasks:

Table 93:

Task	Instructions
Edit the catalog's title	Click  (Edit title). In the dialog box that opens, edit the title and choose <i>Save</i> .
Add a tile	Click  (Add tile). In the page that opens, click a tile template that you want to add to the catalog.
Delete a tile	Drag a tile to the trash can image in the lower-left corner of the page.

Task	Instructions
Configure a tile	<p>Tiles are added to catalogs as generic templates. To make a tile usable, you need to configure it.</p> <p>Double-click a tile to open the configuration page and edit its properties as required.</p>

2. When you have finished editing, save the catalog by choosing **File** **Save** from the main menu.
3. To make the catalog available to users, activate it by choosing **Team** **Activate** from the context menu of the catalog's .xswidget file.
4. If the site in which you want to use this catalog is open for editing, close and reopen the site to refresh the catalog.

## Next Steps

- Configure each tile that you have added to the catalog.
- When you have completed editing the catalog, make it available to users by assigning the application privileges for this catalog to the relevant roles or users.

## Related Information

[Configuring Tiles \[page 704\]](#)

### 9.4.1.3 Configuring Tiles

Tiles are added to catalogs as generic templates. To make a tile usable, you need to configure it to point to a specific application.

## Procedure

1. Double-click a tile to open its configuration page.
2. Configure the properties of the tile, following the instructions for the specific tile type:

Table 94:

Tile Type	Instructions
Static, dynamic and custom app launchers	<a href="#">App Launcher Tiles [page 705]</a>
Navigation target and target mapping	<a href="#">Navigation Target and Target Mapping [page 708]</a>

Tile Type	Instructions
News	<a href="#">News Tile [page 712]</a>

- Choose **Save**, and choose **OK** in the confirmation dialog.

## Results

The configured tile appears in the catalog.

## Related Information

[Edit a Tile Catalog \[page 703\]](#)

### 9.4.1.3.1 App Launcher Tiles

App launcher tiles are used to launch applications. This topic describes how to configure properties of the app launcher tiles.

App launcher tiles come in three flavors: static, dynamic, and custom. All tile flavors are used to launch applications. In addition, dynamic tiles can display data that is updated at regular intervals, for example, KPIs. This data is retrieved from the back-end system using oData services. Custom tiles can display any content defined by a custom SAPUI5 application.

You need to configure the app launcher tile properties, which are divided into the following sections:

## General

Table 95:

Property	Description
<i>Title</i>	Name of the tile.
<i>Subtitle</i>	Text displayed below the title.
<i>Keywords</i>	Keywords used to tag a tile so that users can find it more easily using the search function in the tile catalog at runtime.
<i>Icon</i>	Open the dropdown list to select an SAPUI5 icon. After you have selected an icon, the property is set to the icon's URL, preceded by sap-icon://. For example, <b>sap-icon://Fiori2/F0072</b> .
<i>Information</i>	Text displayed at the bottom of the tile.

Property	Description
<i>Number Unit</i> (for dynamic tiles only)	Unit displayed below the number. For example, <b>USD</b> .

## Configuration (for custom tiles only)

Table 96:

Property	Description
<i>Module Type</i>	In the dropdown box, select the type of the SAPUI5 application module: <i>UIComponent</i> or one of the view types, such as <i>XML View</i> .
<i>Module Name</i>	Name of the module. For example, <b>test.ui5</b> .
<i>Module Name Prefix</i>	Name prefix to map to the server location of the module. For example, <b>test</b> .
<i>Module Path</i>	Relative path to the module on the server. For example, <b>/content/ui5</b> .
<i>Custom Properties</i>	Custom properties as key-value pairs.

## Dynamic Data (for dynamic tiles only)

Table 97:

Property	Description
<i>Service URL</i>	<p>URL of an OData service from which data should be read. The response is expected in JSON format.</p> <p>When the service is called, the values that are provided by the service override the values that are configured manually in the tile.</p> <p>Note that the service is executed at runtime only. At design time, sample data is displayed.</p> <p><b>➔ Tip</b></p> <p>If you want to read only a number of entities dynamically from an OData service, and read all other content for the app launcher statically from the configuration, you can use the <code>\$count</code> parameter in the service URL.</p> <p>For more information on the OData service API for dynamic app launcher tiles, see Related Information.</p>

Property	Description
<i>Refresh Interval</i>	<p>Number of seconds after which dynamic content is reloaded from the data source and the display is refreshed.</p> <p>Note the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Default value and minimum value is 10 seconds.</li> <li>• If the entered value is between 1 and 9 inclusive, it is automatically modified to 10.</li> <li>• If the entered value is 0, the dynamic tile is updated only once upon loading.</li> <li>• If the entered value is 10 or greater, it is used as is.</li> </ul>

## Navigation

Table 98:

Property	Description
<i>Use Semantic Object Navigation</i>	<p>Deselect this checkbox if you want to define the navigation target using a simple URL rather than a semantic object, and leave all properties empty, except for <i>Target URL</i>.</p> <p>Otherwise, configure intent-based navigation. For more information, see Related Information.</p>
<i>Target URL</i>	Navigation target URL, including the protocol. For example, <a href="http://help.sap.com">http://help.sap.com</a> .

## Related Information

[Intent-Based Navigation \[page 707\]](#)

[Navigation Target and Target Mapping \[page 708\]](#)

[Intent-Based Navigation in App Launcher Tiles \[page 710\]](#)

[OData Structure for Dynamic App Launchers \[page 711\]](#)

### 9.4.1.3.1.1 Intent-Based Navigation

The intent-based navigation mechanism in Fiori Launchpad allows users to launch applications in different views or modes depending on the runtime parameters.

This is achieved by defining application navigation targets using abstract intents, which at runtime are resolved into actual URLs by the Fiori Launchpad target resolution service.

Intent-based navigation is helpful in the following use cases:

- Enabling the user to make a selection from multiple navigation targets.
- When extending and customizing Fiori scenarios, you need to be able to change a target without modifying the application code.
- Enabling communication between Fiori apps that have different life cycles and might not be available in the same productive environment.

## Syntax

An intent is a combination of the following elements:

Table 99:

<b>Semantic object</b>	Represents a business entity, such as a customer, a sales order, or a product. Enables you to refer to such entities in an abstract implementation-independent way.
<b>Action</b>	Defines an operation, such as display or approve purchase order. This operation is intended to be performed on a semantic object, such as a purchase order or a product.
<b>Parameters</b>	Optional. Parameters that define an instance of the semantic object, for example, employee ID.

Intents have the following syntax: #<semantic object>-<action>?<semantic object parameter>=<value1>.

For example, the intent #SalesOrder-displayFactSheet?SalesOrder=27 specifies a fact sheet for sales order number 27. At runtime, this intent is resolved into the actual URL <https://<server>:<port>/sap/hana/uis/clients/ushell-app/shells/fiori/FioriLaunchpad.html#SalesOrder-displayFactSheet?SalesOrder=27>.

## Workflow

To configure intent-based navigation for an application, the administrator should perform the following tasks:

1. In a navigation target tile, configure the actual application navigation URL.
2. Configure a target mapping tile to map an intent (a combination of a semantic object and an action) to the same navigation target.
3. Configure the navigation in an app launcher tile to the same intent.

## Related Information

[Navigation Target and Target Mapping \[page 708\]](#)

[Intent-Based Navigation in App Launcher Tiles \[page 710\]](#)

### 9.4.1.3.1.2 Navigation Target and Target Mapping

Navigation target and target mapping are auxiliary tiles used for configuring intent-based navigation in app launcher tiles.

These tiles are maintained in tile catalogs, but cannot be added to Fiori Launchpad sites.

In a navigation target tile, you configure the actual application navigation target, whereas in a target mapping tile you map an intent to this navigation target. At runtime, this mapping is resolved to the actual target URL.

The following sections describe the properties that you need to configure in each of the tiles.

## General

General properties of both tiles.

Table 100:

Property	Applies to	Description
<i>Title</i>	Navigation Target	Title of the tile
<i>Description</i>	Navigation Target	Description displayed below the title
<i>Information</i>	Target Mapping	Optional additional information

## Target

Properties that define the application navigation target. Values of the properties that apply to both tiles need to be identical.

Table 101:

Property	Applies to	Description
<i>Namespace Level 1</i>	Both	Comprises the application namespace in combination with <i>Namespace Level 2</i> , for example, <b>test</b>
<i>Namespace Level 2</i>	Both	Comprises the application namespace in combination with <i>Namespace Level 1</i> , for example, <b>Comp</b>
<i>Application Alias</i>	Both	Alias of the application, for example, <b>compAlias</b>
<i>Application ID</i>	Target Mapping	Leave empty
<i>URI</i>	Navigation Target	URI of the navigation target, for example, <b>/content/ui5/TestComponent</b>
<i>Type</i>	Navigation Target	Type of the navigation target: <b>URL</b>
<i>View Name</i>	Navigation Target	Name of the SAPUI5 component to display this target; enter in the format <b>SAPUI5.Component=&lt;name&gt;</b>
<i>Application Parameters</i>	Navigation Target	Optional. An &-separated list of parameters to pass to the target application.

## Intent

Properties of the intent that you map to the navigation target.

Table 102:

Property	Description
<i>Semantic Object</i>	Semantic object on which to perform an action. Enter the technical name of the semantic object, for example, <b>SalesOrder</b> .
<i>Action</i>	Action to perform on the semantic object when the user clicks on the tile, for example, <b>display</b> .

## Related Information

[Intent-Based Navigation \[page 707\]](#)

[Intent-Based Navigation in App Launcher Tiles \[page 710\]](#)

### 9.4.1.3.1.3 Intent-Based Navigation in App Launcher Tiles

You can enable intent-based navigation in app launcher tiles by configuring the navigation properties.

In the [Navigation](#) section of an app launcher tile configuration page, set the properties described in the table below.

#### i Note

The property values should be equal to the corresponding values in the target mapping and navigation target tiles that are configured for this app launcher tile.

Table 103:

Property	Description
<i>Use Semantic Object Navigation</i>	Select this checkbox and configure the following properties as described below.
<i>Semantic Object</i>	Semantic object on which to perform an action. Enter the technical name of the semantic object, for example, <b>SalesOrder</b> .
<i>Action</i>	Action to perform on the semantic object when the user clicks on the tile, for example <b>display</b> .
<i>Parameters</i>	Key-value pairs defining parameters for the semantic object, for example <b>orderID=4711</b> . If you enter multiple parameters, separate them with an ampersand ( <b>&amp;</b> ), for example <b>orderID=10000&amp;custID=c82200</b> .
<i>Target URL</i>	Not required if you chose to use semantic object navigation.

## Related Information

[App Launcher Tiles \[page 705\]](#)

[Navigation Target and Target Mapping \[page 708\]](#)

[Intent-Based Navigation \[page 707\]](#)

### 9.4.1.3.1.4 OData Structure for Dynamic App Launchers

You can use OData services to retrieve data to display on a dynamic app launcher tile.

In order to feed an app launcher with dynamic content, you have to create an OData service that returns the configuration properties as in the following example structure:

```
{
 "d": {
 "icon": "sap-icon://travel-expense",
 "info": "Quarter Ends!",
 "infoState": "Critical",
 "number": 43.333,
 "numberDigits": 1
 "numberFactor": "k",
 "numberState": "Positive",
 "numberUnit": "EUR",
 "stateArrow": "Up",
 "subtitle": "Quarterly overview",
 "title": "Travel Expenses",
 }
}
```

Table 104: Properties

Property	Description
icon	Enter an sap-icon:// URL, for example <b>sap-icon://cart</b> .  You can look up the names of the available icons in the app launcher tile configuration.
info	Text to be displayed at the bottom of the tile.
infoState	The color of the tile is adapted according to the value of this property. The precise color depends on the theme that you have selected in UI theme designer.  Allowed values: <b>Negative</b> , <b>Neutral</b> , <b>Positive</b> , <b>Critical</b>
number	Number to be displayed in the top right corner of the tile.
numberDigits	Number of digits to be displayed following the decimal separator (decimal point or decimal comma, depending on the language settings).

Property	Description
numberFactor	A factor for scaling numbers, for example, for displaying large numbers like 1.000.000 (-> number = 1 and numberFactor="M") or for percentages (number = 22.2 and numberFactor = "%"). The scaling is not done by the front end but has to be provided by the app developer.
numberState	The color of the number is adapted according to the value of this property. The precise color depends on the theme that you have selected in UI theme designer. Allowed values: <b>Negative</b> , <b>Neutral</b> , <b>Positive</b> , <b>Critical</b>
numberUnit	Unit to be displayed below the number, for example, <b>USD</b> .
stateArrow	Displays an arrow indicating a trend. Allowed values: <b>None</b> , <b>Up</b> , <b>Down</b>
subtitle	Subtitle to be displayed below the tile title.
targetParams	List of key-value-pairs separated by ampersands. When the application is launched (by clicking on it), these parameters are passed to the application as business parameters (if semantic object-based navigation is used) or as URL parameters (if URL-based navigation is used). If any parameters have been entered in the <i>Parameters</i> field in the tile configuration, the parameters passed by the OData service are appended to the list of parameters to be passed to the application.
title	Title to be displayed in the tile.

If the service returns an entity collection (rather than a single entity), all values from the `number` elements are accumulated.

### 9.4.1.3.2 News Tile

News tiles can be configured to display news feeds.

In the configuration page of a News tile, set the following parameters:

Configuration Parameters	Description
<i>Tile Default Image</i>	A URL that sets the default image for the News tile.

Configuration Parameters	Description
	<p>You can set this parameter to select an alternate default image to display on the News tile. By default, the News application provides 12 default images and cycles through these default images in sequence.</p>
<i>Always Use Default Image</i>	<p>When this checkbox is selected, the News tile ignores any image that accompanies an RSS feed article. Depending on the checkbox selection, the following order of precedence is used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When not selected:           <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Image from the RSS Article (if present)</li> <li>2. Image from the RSS Channel (if present)</li> <li>3. Image from Tile Default Image (if set)</li> <li>4. Image from one of the twelve (12) default images</li> </ol> </li> <li>• When selected:           <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Image from Tile Default Image (if set)</li> <li>2. Image from one of the twelve (12) default images</li> </ol> </li> </ul>
<i>Article Cycle Interval (secs)</i>	<p>An integer (the minimum and default value is 5).</p> <p>This parameter controls the rate at which the articles cycle through the News tile.</p>
<i>Article Refresh Interval</i>	<p>Select a value from the dropdown box. The default value is 15 minutes.</p> <p>This parameter controls the rate at which the News tile requests new articles from the value defined in the <i>Article Feeds</i> parameter.</p>
<i>Article Feeds</i>	<p>You can configure up to 10 RSS feeds. The News tile monitors the RSS feeds and retrieves new articles based on the value defined in the <i>Article Refresh Interval</i> parameter.</p> <div style="background-color: #f9e79f; padding: 5px;"><b>i Note</b></div> <p>If the URL references an external feed, the feed must be CORS-compliant. If the URL references an internal feed, the feed must originate from the same server and port as the launchpad.</p>
<i>Feed #1 – Feed #10</i>	The URL of the RSS feed.
<i>Inclusion Filters</i>	You can configure up to 5 inclusion filters. The News tile filters the feeds and includes any articles that contain the same text in the title of the article.
<i>Filter #1 – Filter #5</i>	Filter text that is compared to the title of the article. If the text is found, the article is included in the list of articles.
<i>Exclusion Filters</i>	You can configure up to 5 exclusion filters. The News tile filters the feeds and excludes any articles that contain the same text in the title of the article.
<i>Filter #1 – Filter #5</i>	Filter text that is compared to the title of the article. If the text is found, the article is excluded from the list of articles.

### Note

Consider the following limitations for the News tile parameters:

- Feed URLs are limited to the following sources:
  - Internal sources (same URL and port as the Suite Page Builder application)
  - Any external CORS-compliant source
- URL format should follow the `http://[server]:[port]/[path]` pattern.  
URLs that use `feed://` as the transport are not supported.
- UI5 URL validation requires the tilde '~' character to be replaced by the sequence &#126.  
For example, in the path `...filterID=content~tag`, the tilde should be replaced by `...filterID=content&#126tag`.
- Bookmarking and direct navigation to the list of feed articles is not supported.

## 9.4.2 SAP Fiori Launchpad Sites

A SAP Fiori launchpad site serves as an entry point to SAP Fiori applications, which are developed and run on the SAP HANA platform.

SAP Fiori launchpad provides the apps with services such as navigation, embedded support, and application configuration.

The following section provides information about creating, designing, and administering SAP Fiori launchpad sites.

### Related Information

[Creating a Launchpad Site \[page 715\]](#)

[Designing a Launchpad Site \[page 715\]](#)

[Creating Content for Application Sites \[page 702\]](#)

[Configuring Access to Launchpad Content \[page 720\]](#)

[SAP Fiori Launchpad in User Interface Add-On](#)

## 9.4.2.1 Creating a Launchpad Site

You create a SAP Fiori launchpad site in the SAP HANA studio.

### Procedure

1. In the project's context menu in *Project Explorer*, choose ► *New* ► *Other* ▾.
2. In the *New* dialog box, choose ► *SAP HANA* ► *Application Development* ► *UIS Application Site* ▾, and then choose *Next*.
3. In the *New Application Site* dialog box, select a parent folder, and enter the site properties: *File Name*, and optionally *Title* and *Description*.
4. Choose the site type, *Fiori Launchpad*.
5. Choose *Finish*.

The newly created site opens for design in the embedded browser window.

### Related Information

[Designing a Launchpad Site \[page 715\]](#)

## 9.4.2.2 Designing a Launchpad Site

You can visually design and manage SAP Fiori launchpad sites in the browser-based design environment that is embedded in SAP HANA studio.

### Procedure

1. To open a launchpad site for editing in the embedded browser, in *Project Explorer*, double-click the site's `.xsappsite` file.

#### i Note

If you open the site from its context menu, make sure that you choose the default *SAP HANA Application Site Editor*. Choosing another editor is not recommended.

You can perform the following tasks:

Table 105:

Task	Instructions
Create and edit groups of tiles	<a href="#">Create and Edit Groups [page 716]</a>
Manage tiles in groups	<a href="#">Add and Organize Tiles in Groups [page 717]</a>
Select a theme for the site	<a href="#">Select a Site Theme [page 718]</a>
Access the runtime version of the site	Click  (Options), and choose <i>Runtime Version</i> from the dropdown menu
Assign site content to roles	<a href="#">Configuring Access to Launchpad Content [page 720]</a>
Enable end users to personalize the site	Select or deselect the <i>Enable personalization</i> checkbox
At runtime, display the groups and tiles in this site and in catalogs in the user's language	Select or deselect the <i>Display in User's Language</i> checkbox

2. To save your changes, from the main menu, choose .
3. To make the site available to end users, activate it by choosing from the context menu of the site's .xsappsite file.

### 9.4.2.2.1 Create and Edit Groups

In a Fiori Launchpad site, you can create and edit groups of tiles.

#### Context

In a Fiori Launchpad site, the list of groups appear in the *Groups* panel, whereas the tiles included in the currently selected group appear in the content area of the page.

Site designers can create groups as predefined content for end users. End users can personalize their sites by modifying existing groups and creating their own groups.

#### Note

When planning groups, consider that access to a group is assigned to a role and applies to all the tiles within the group. Therefore, do not place tiles that require different permission levels in the same group, for example, tiles for managers and for employees.

#### Procedure

1. To create a group, click the (Add group) icon at the bottom of the *Groups* panel.

2. In the *Create Group* dialog box that opens, enter the group's properties and choose **Save**. The new group is added to the *Groups* panel.

You can perform the following tasks:

Table 106:

Task	Instructions
Edit the group's title	Click  (Edit title). In the dialog box that opens, edit the title and choose <b>Save</b> .
Add, delete or move tiles in the group	<a href="#">Add and Organize Tiles in Groups [page 717]</a>
Delete the group	Drag the group to the trash can image in the lower-left corner of the panel.

## Related Information

[Add and Organize Tiles in Groups \[page 717\]](#)

### 9.4.2.2.2 Add and Organize Tiles in Groups

In a Fiori Launchpad site, you can add and organize tiles in a group.

## Context

To add a tile to a group, perform the following steps:

## Procedure

1. Open a group and click  (Add tile) in the content area. The *Add Tile to Group <Name of Selected Group>* page opens.
2. Open the catalog dropdown list. The *Catalogs* dialog box opens.
3. Clear the default selection, type the required catalog name or part of it, and choose one of the displayed suggestions. The chosen catalog is displayed below the dropdown list.
4. Click the  (Add tile) icon of the tile that you want to add. The icon changes to  (Tile added), indicating that the tile has been added to the group.
5. Repeat steps 3-4 to add more tiles from the same or other catalogs.

6. Click  (Back) to return to the group.

You can perform the following tasks:

Table 107:

Task	Instructions
Move a tile in the group	Drag a tile to a required position within the group.
Delete a tile from the group	Drag a tile to the trash can image in the lower-right corner of the page.

## Related Information

[Create and Edit Groups \[page 716\]](#)

### 9.4.2.2.3 Select a Site Theme

You can select a theme for a Fiori Launchpad site.

#### Prerequisites

Site themes are available in your SAP HANA system. For information about creating and importing custom themes, see Related Information.

#### Procedure

1. Click  (Options) and choose *Select Theme*. The *Select Theme* dialog box opens.
2. Select a theme from the list of available themes and choose *OK*.

#### Results

After activation of the site, the selected theme is applied to the runtime version of the site.

## Related Information

[Create and Import Custom Themes \[page 719\]](#)

### 9.4.2.2.3.1 Create and Import Custom Themes

You can create custom themes using the UI theme designer and import these themes into your SAP HANA system.

## Context

UI theme designer is a browser-based tool that allows you to develop custom themes by modifying theme templates provided by SAP. For information about this tool, see *UI Theme Designer* under Related Information.

## Procedure

1. In the UI theme designer tool, create and export a custom SAPUI5 theme that you want to use for your sites.  
A .zip file containing the exported theme is saved on your local machine.
2. Import the exported theme into your project in SAP HANA Studio:
  - a. Copy the contents of the .zip file into your project.
  - b. To register the theme in the THEME database table using the table import mechanism, create the following files in your project:

- myTheme.hdbti

```
import = [
{
 hdbtable = "sap.hana.uis.db::THEMES";
 file = "<package of your project>:myTheme.csv";
 delimField = ";";
 header = true; // Mandatory for preventing upgrade errors if the
 structure of .hdbtable changes
 keys = ["ID" : "<unique ID from myTheme.csv>"];
}
];
```

- myTheme.csv

```
// Mandatory header
ID;NAME;ROOT_PATH
// <unique ID>;<name of the theme>;<location of the theme on the SAP
HANA server>
// For example: 1;new_sap_bluecrystal;/tests/themes/myTheme/UI5/
```

For information about table import, see *Data Provisioning Using Table Import* under Related Information.

3. Activate the .hdbti and .csv files by choosing   from each file's context menu.
4. Repeat the above steps for any other custom theme that you want to use.

 **Caution**

A mismatch between the SAPUI5 versions of the UI theme designer and your SAP HANA system might cause unexpected behavior of custom themes.

## Related Information

[UI Theme Designer](#)

[Data Provisioning Using Table Import \[page 287\]](#)

### 9.4.2.3 Configuring Access to Launchpad Content

Configure role-based access to content in SAP Fiori launchpad sites.

#### Prerequisites

End users are assigned to SAP HANA roles, as well as to the predefined `sap.hana.uis.db::SITE_USER` role. For more information about managing and authorizing users, see *User Provisioning* in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*.

#### Context

To enable user access to the content in a launchpad site, you need to assign user roles to content items, such as tile catalogs and groups of tiles.

 **Note**

The predefined designer `sap.hana.uis.db::SITE_DESIGNER` role has access to all content, so there is no need to assign content items to this role.

#### Procedure

1. To open the site for editing in the embedded browser, in *Project Explorer*, double-click the site's `.xsappsite` file.

2. Click  (Options), and choose *Role Assignment* from the dropdown menu.
- The *Role Assignment* page opens. The side panel displays a list of roles defined in your SAP HANA system, and the content area displays assignments of the currently selected role, organized by tabs.
3. In the side panel, select a role to which you want to assign content, and click the relevant content type (*Catalogs* or *Groups*).
4. Perform the following tasks:

Table 108:

Task	Instructions
Search for roles	Enter text in the search box of the side panel, and click  (Search). The role list is filtered by the search text.
Search for content items	Enter text in the search box of the content area, and click  (Search). The list of content items is filtered by the search text.
Assign content items to the role	 Click  (Assign) to open the assignment dialog box. If needed, search for, and then select one or more content items that you want to assign to the role, and click <i>OK</i> . Selected items are added to the list.
Unassign content items from the role	Select one or more content items that you want to unassign and click  (Unassign). Selected items are removed from the list.

## Related Information

[Setting Up Roles and Privileges \[page 723\]](#)

### 9.4.3 Creating a Standard Site

#### Context

##### Note

Standard sites and related features are deprecated as of SAP HANA SPS 09, and are replaced by SAP Fiori launchpad sites.

## 9.4.4 Configuring the SAP HANA Home Page

You can configure a supplied Fiori Launchpad site or any other application site to serve as the home page for an SAP HANA system.

### Context

The supplied Fiori Launchpad site displays a collection of tiles that provide access to various SAP HANA resources and documentation. To configure this or any other site as the home page, you need to configure it as the root page of a HANA system.

### Procedure

1. In the *Systems* view of the SAP HANA studio, double-click a system instance.
2. In the system administration page that opens, select the *Configuration* tab.
3. Expand the   nodes.
4. If the *root\_page* parameter under *httpserver* does not exist, from the context menu of *httpserver*, choose *Add Parameter*:
  - a. In the *Add Parameter Wizard*, in the *Scope Selection* step, make sure that *System* is selected, and choose *Next*.
  - b. In the *Key Value Pairs* step, in the *Key* field, enter *root\_page*.
  - c. In the *Value* field, enter the following URL for a Fiori Launchpad site that you created */sap/hana/uis/clients/ushell-app/shells/fiori/FioriLaunchpad.html?siteId=<site ID>*.
  - d. Choose *Finish*.
5. If the *root\_page* parameter already exists, from its context menu, choose *Change*:
  - a. In the *Change Configuration Wizard*, in the *New Value* field, enter the URL as described in the previous step.
  - b. Choose *Save*.

### Results

After logging on to an SAP HANA system machine at `http://<host>:<port>`, the configured home page opens.

# 10 Setting Up Roles and Privileges

Every user who wants to work directly with the SAP HANA database must have a database user with the necessary privileges. Although privileges can be granted to users directly, roles are the standard way to authorize users. A role is a collection of privileges.

## Overview of Roles and Privileges

After users have successfully logged on to SAP HANA, they can do only those things they are authorized to do. This is determined by the privileges that they have been granted. Several privilege types exist in the SAP HANA database, for example system privileges, object privileges, and application privileges.

Privileges can be granted to users directly or indirectly through roles. Roles are the standard mechanism of granting privileges as they allow you to implement complex, reusable authorization concepts that can be modeled on business roles. It is possible to create roles as pure runtime objects that follow classic SQL principles (catalog roles) or as design-time objects in the repository of the SAP HANA database (repository roles). In general, repository roles are recommended as they offer more flexibility. For example, they can be transported between systems. For more information, see *Catalog Roles and Repository Roles Compared* in the *SAP HANA Security Guide*.

### Note

Part of the logon process is user authentication. SAP HANA supports several authentication mechanisms, including user name/password authentication and external authentication services such as SAML and Kerberos. For more information, see *SAP HANA Authentication and Single Sign-On* in the *SAP HANA Security Guide*.

## Application Authorization

Application developers define application descriptors to specify how users accessing their applications are authenticated and what authorization is required. For more information, see *Creating the Application Descriptors*.

## User Management

User administrators are responsible for creating database users and granting them the required roles and privileges. For more information about creating and authorizing users, as well as other user provisioning tasks, see *User Provisioning* in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*.

## Related Information

[Creating the Application Descriptors \[page 96\]](#)

[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

## 10.1 Create a Design-Time Role

You use the role editor of the SAP HANA studio to create a role in the SAP HANA repository.

### Prerequisites

- A shared project exists with a suitable package for storing roles.
- You have the system, object, and privileges required for creating and activating objects in the repository. For more information, see *Roles and Permissions*.

#### Caution

Theoretically, a user with authorization to create and activate repository objects can change a role that he has been granted. Once the role is activated, the user has the new privileges that he or she just added. Therefore, it is important that roles in production systems are imported from a test or development system and that changes to imported objects are not allowed. This danger is however not specific to roles but also applies to other repository objects, for example, modeled views.

- You have granted privileges on any catalog-only objects that you plan to grant in the new role to the technical user \_SYS\_REPO. For more information, see *Roles as Repository Objects*.

### Context

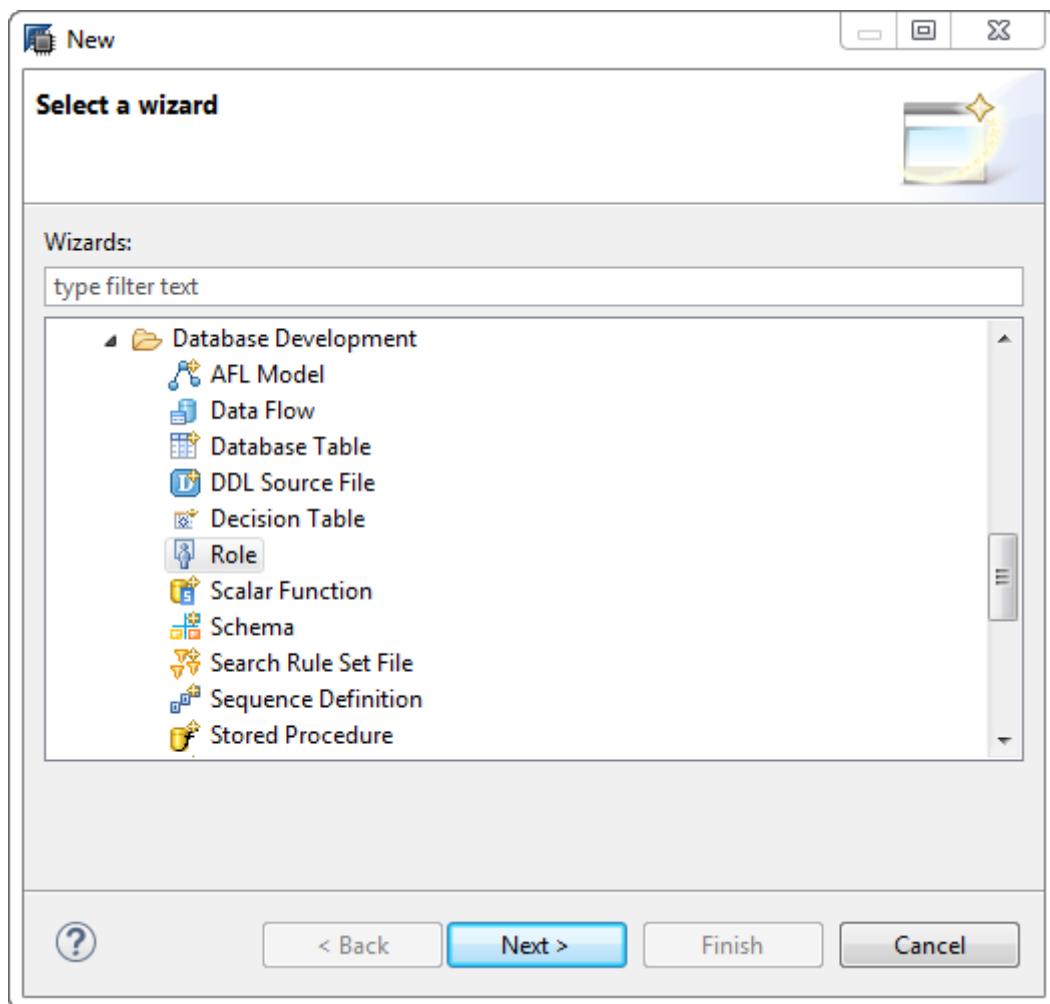
The design-time definition of a role is specified in a text file with the extension `.hdbrole`. In the SAP HANA studio, you create and define a role in a role-specific text editor using the role domain-specific language (DSL) (see *Role Domain-Specific Language Syntax*).

### Procedure

1. Create the role:
  - a. From the main menu in the SAP HANA studio, choose      

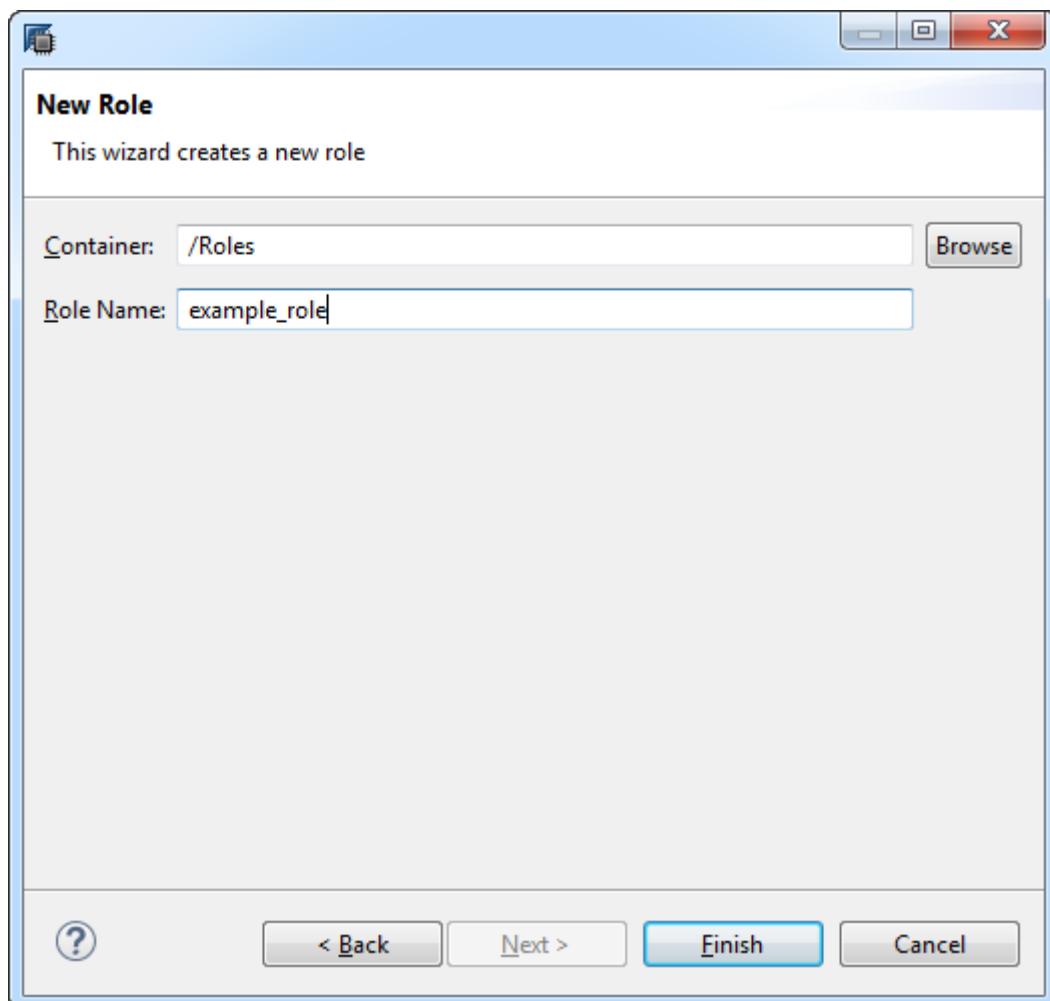
The *New Role* dialog box appears.

Figure 11: Create New Role



- b. In the *Container* field, enter the path to the package where you want to create the role and in the *Role name* field, enter the name of the new role.

Figure 12: Package and Role Name



c. Choose *Finish*.

The new role appears in the *Project Explorer* view and opens in the role text editor as follows:

```
role Roles::example_role
{}
```

The role is now ready to be defined.

2. Specify the role(s) that you want to grant to the new role.

You can specify both catalog roles and repository roles.

```
Roles::example_role
 extends role sap.example::role1
 extends catalog role "CATROLE2"
{}
```

3. Grant the required privileges.

## Note

Unlike when you create a role using SQL, it is not possible to grant `ALL PRIVILEGES` when you create a role in the repository. You must grant every privilege individually.

- System privileges:

```
{
 // multiple privileges in one line are OK
 system privilege: BACKUP ADMIN, USER ADMIN;
 // you can also split lists into multiple entries
 system privilege: LICENSE ADMIN;
}
```

- Object privileges on design-time objects, that is tables, views, procedures, and sequences:

```
{
 sql object sap.example:MY_VIEW.attributeview: DROP;
 // object privileges can be split across lines
 sql object sap.example:MY_PROCEDURE.hdbprocedure: DROP;
 // a single privilege can be given on multiple objects in a single line
 sql object sap.example:MY_VIEW.attributeview,
 sap.example:MY_OTHER_VIEW.analyticview,
 sap.example:MY_THIRD_VIEW.analyticview: SELECT;
}
```

## Tip

Many object types can be created in the SAP HANA repository. To verify that you have the correct extension, refer to the object file in the relevant package in the *Project Explorer* view.

- Object privileges on catalog objects:

```
{
 // catalog objects must always be qualified with the schema name
 catalog sql object "MY_SCHEMA"."MY_TABLE": SELECT;
}
```

## Note

You must always qualify catalog objects with the schema name. You must also reference catalog objects within double quotes, unlike design-time objects.

## Caution

Do not grant object privileges on a catalog object if it was created in design time. If you do, the next time the design-time object is activated (which results in the creation of a new version of the catalog object), the privilege on the original catalog object will be removed from the role. Always grant privileges on design-time objects.

- Privileges on design-time schemas:

```
{
 catalog schema "MY_SCHEMA": SELECT;
 schema sap.example:MY_OTHER_SCHEMA.hdbschema: SELECT;
}
```

### **i** Note

You must still use the deprecated extension .schema if you are referring to a repository schema that uses this extension.

- Privileges on catalog schemas:

```
{
 catalog schema "MY_SCHEMA": SELECT;
}
```

- Package privileges:

```
{
 package sap.example: REPO.READ;
}
```

- Analytic privileges:

```
{
 analytic privilege: sap.example:sp1.analyticprivilege,
 sap.example:AP2.analyticprivilege;
 catalog analytic privilege: "sp3";
}
```

- Catalog analytic privileges:

```
{
 catalog analytic privilege: "sp3";
}
```

- Application privileges:

```
{
 application privilege: sap.example::Execute;
}
```

### **i** Note

Application privileges are implemented using the application-privileges file (.xsprivileges).

4. Save the role by choosing **File** **Save**.

The role is saved as an .hdbrole file. After it has been saved, the file is committed to the repository.

5. Activate the role by right-clicking it in the **Project Explorer** view and choosing **Team** **Activate**.

### **⚠** Caution

Any changes made to a previously activated version of the role in runtime will be reverted on activation. This is to ensure that the design-time version of a role in the repository and its activated runtime version contain the same privileges. It is therefore important that the activated runtime version of a role is not changed in runtime.

## Results

The activated role is now visible in the [Systems](#) view under [Security](#) [Roles](#) following the naming convention `<package>::<role_name>` and can be granted to users as part of user provisioning. For more information, see *Grant Privileges to Users in the SAP HANA Studio*.

### Example

#### Complete Role Definition Example

```
role Roles::example_role

 extends role sap.example::role1
 extends catalog role "CATROLE1", "CATROLE2"
{
 // system privileges
 system privilege: BACKUP ADMIN, USER ADMIN;
 // schema privileges
 catalog schema "SYSTEM": SELECT;
 schema sap.example:app1.hdbschema: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE;
 // sql object privileges
 // privileges on the same object may be split up in several lines
 catalog sql object "SYSTEM"."TABLE2": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "SYSTEM"."TABLE2": INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE;
 // or a list of objects may get a list of privileges (object = table,
 view, procedure, sequence)
 // SELECT, DROP for all objects in list
 sql object sap.example:VIEW1.attributeview,
sap.example:PROC1.hdbprocedure, sap.example:SEQ1.sequence: SELECT, DROP;
 // additional INSERT, UPDATE for TABLE1
 sql object sap.example:MY_VIEW.attributeview: DROP;
 // analytic privileges
 analytic privilege: sap.example:sp1.analyticprivilege,
sap.example:AP2.analyticprivilege;
 catalog analytic privilege: "sp3";
 // design time privileges
 package sap.example: REPO.EDIT_NATIVE_OBJECTS;
 package sap.example, sap.co: REPO.READ;
 application privilege: sap.example::Execute, sap.example::Save;
}
```

## Related Information

[Role Domain-Specific Language Syntax \[page 733\]](#)

[Roles as Repository Objects \[page 731\]](#)

[Role Domain-Specific Language Syntax \[page 733\]](#)

[System Privileges \[page 743\]](#)

[Object Privileges \[page 749\]](#)

[Analytic Privileges \[page 754\]](#)

[Package Privileges \[page 757\]](#)

[Application Privileges \[page 759\]](#)

## 10.1.1 Roles

A role is a collection of privileges that can be granted to either a database user or another role in runtime.

A role typically contains the privileges required for a particular function or task, for example:

- Business end users reading reports using client tools such as Microsoft Excel
- Modelers creating models and reports
- Database administrators operating and maintaining the database and its users

Privileges can be granted directly to users of the SAP HANA database. However, roles are the standard mechanism of granting privileges as they allow you to implement complex, reusable authorization concepts that can be modeled on business roles.

### Creation of Roles

Roles in the SAP HANA database can exist as runtime objects only (catalog roles), or as design-time objects that become catalog objects on deployment (database artifact with file suffix .hdbrole).

In an SAP HANA XS classic environment, database roles are created in the built-in repository of the SAP HANA database using either the SAP HANA Web Workbench or the SAP HANA studio. These are also referred to as repository roles. In an SAP HANA XS advanced environment, design-time roles are created using the SAP Web IDE and deployed using SAP HANA deployment infrastructure (SAP HANA DI).

#### i Note

Due to the container-based model of HDI, where each container corresponds to a database schema, roles are schema specific.

In SAP HANA XS advanced applications, database roles control access to database objects only (for example, tables, views, and procedures). Application roles and role collections are used to control and define access to applications. For more information about the authorization concept of XS advanced, see the *Authorization in SAP HANA XS Advanced* in the SAP HANA Security Guide.

### Role Structure

A role can contain any number of the following privileges:

- **System privileges** for general system authorization, in particular administration activities
- **Object privileges** (for example, SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE) on database objects (for example, schemas, tables, views, procedures, and sequences)
- **Analytic privileges** on SAP HANA information models
- **Package privileges** on repository packages (for example, REPO.READ, REPO.EDIT\_NATIVE\_OBJECTS, REPO.ACTIVATE\_NATIVE\_OBJECTS)
- **Application privileges** for enabling access to SAP HANA-based applications developed in an SAP HANA XS classic environment

A role can also contain other roles.

## Roles Best Practices

For best performance of role operations, in particular, granting and revoking, keep the following basic rules in mind:

- Create roles with the smallest possible set of privileges for the smallest possible group of users who can share a role (principle of least privilege)
- Avoid granting object privileges at the schema level to a role if only a few objects in the schema are relevant for intended users.
- Avoid creating and maintaining all roles as a single user. Use several role administrator users instead.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

### 10.1.1.1 Roles as Repository Objects

Roles created in the repository differ from roles created directly as runtime objects using SQL in several ways.

- [What authorization does a user need to grant privileges to a role? \[page 731\]](#)
- [What about the WITH ADMIN OPTION and WITH GRANT OPTION parameters? \[page 732\]](#)
- [How are repository roles granted and revoked? \[page 733\]](#)
- [How are repository roles dropped? \[page 733\]](#)
- [Can changes to repository roles be audited? \[page 733\]](#)

#### What authorization does a user need to grant privileges to a role?

According to the authorization concept of the SAP HANA database, a user can only grant a privilege to a user directly or indirectly in a role if the following prerequisites are met:

- The user has the privilege him- or herself
- The user is authorized to grant the privilege to others (WITH ADMIN OPTION or WITH GRANT OPTION)

A user is also authorized to grant object privileges on objects that he or she owns.

The technical user \_SYS\_REPO is the owner of all objects in the repository, as well as the runtime objects that are created on activation. This means that when you create a role as a repository object, you can grant the following privileges:

- Privileges that have been granted to the technical user \_SYS\_REPO and that \_SYS\_REPO can grant further

This is automatically the case for system privileges, package privileges, analytic privileges, and application privileges. Therefore, all system privileges, package privileges, analytic privileges, and application privileges can always be granted in design-time roles.

- Privileges on objects that \_SYS\_REPO owns  
\_SYS\_REPO owns all activated objects. Object privileges on non-activated runtime objects must be explicitly granted to \_SYS\_REPO. It is recommended that you use a technical user to do this to ensure that privileges are not dropped when the granting user is dropped (for example, because the person leaves the company).

The following table summarizes the situation described above:

Table 109:

Privilege	Action Necessary to Grant in Repository Role
System privilege	None
Package privilege	None
Analytic privilege	None
Application privilege	None
SQL object on activated object (for example, attribute view, analytic view)	None
SQL object privilege on runtime object (for example, replicated table)	Grant privilege to user _SYS_REPO with WITH GRANT OPTION

#### i Note

Technically speaking, only the user \_SYS\_REPO needs the privileges being granted in a role, not the database user who creates the role. However, users creating roles in the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench must at least be able to **select** the privileges they want to grant to the role. For this, they need either the system privilege CATALOG READ or the actual privilege to be granted.

## What about the WITH ADMIN OPTION and WITH GRANT OPTION parameters?

When you create a role using SQL (that is, as a runtime object), you can grant privileges with the additional parameters WITH ADMIN OPTION or WITH GRANT OPTION. This allows a user who is granted the role to grant the privileges contained within the role to other users and roles. However, if you are implementing your authorization concept with privileges encapsulated within roles created in design time, then you do not **want** users to grant privileges using SQL statements. For this reason, it is not possible to pass the parameters WITH ADMIN OPTION or WITH GRANT OPTION with privileges when you model roles as repository objects.

Similarly, when you grant an activated role to a user, it is not possible to allow the user to grant the role further (WITH ADMIN OPTION is not available).

## How are repository roles granted and revoked?

It is not possible to grant and revoke activated design-time roles using the GRANT and REVOKE SQL statements. Instead, roles are granted and revoked through the execution of the procedures GRANT\_ACTIVATED\_ROLE and REVOKE\_ACTIVATED\_ROLE. Therefore, to be able to grant or revoke a role, a user must have the object privilege EXECUTE on these procedures.

## How are repository roles dropped?

It is not possible to drop the runtime version of a role created in the repository using the SQL statement DROP ROLE. To drop a repository role, you must delete it in the repository and activate the change. The activation process deletes the runtime version of the role.

## Can changes to repository roles be audited?

The auditing feature of the SAP HANA database allows you to monitor and record selected actions performed in your database system. One action that is typically audited is changes to user authorization. If you are using roles created in the repository to grant privileges to users, then you audit the creation of runtime roles through activation with the audit action ACTIVATE REPOSITORY CONTENT.

### 10.1.1.2 Role Domain-Specific Language Syntax

The design-time definition of a role is specified in a text file with the extension .hdbrole. Roles are defined using a domain-specific language (DSL).

#### Example

```
role Roles::example_role
 extends role sap.example::role1
 extends catalog role "CATROLE1", "CATROLE2"
{
 system privilege: BACKUP ADMIN, USER ADMIN;

 catalog sql object"SYSTEM"."TABLE2": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "SYSTEM"."TABLE2": INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE;
 sql object sap.example:VIEW1.attributeview,
sap.example:PROC1.hdbprocedure, sap.example:SEQ1.sequence: SELECT, DROP;
 sql object sap.example:MY_VIEW.attributeview: DROP;
 catalog schema "SYSTEM": SELECT;
 schema [page 736] sap.example:app1.hdbschema: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE;

 analytic privilege: sap.example:sp1.analyticprivilege,
sap.example:AP2.analyticprivilege;
 catalog analytic privilege: "sp3";

 package sap.example: REPO.EDIT_NATIVE_OBJECTS;
```

```
 package sap.example, sap.co: REPO.READ;
 application privilege: sap.example::Execute, sap.example::Save;
}
```

A role definition specifies the following information:

- The package in which the role is created
- The role name
- Other roles granted to the role
- The privileges granted to the role

The package and role name are specified as follows:

```
role <package_name>::<role_name>
```

The keywords listed below are used to specify which roles and privileges are granted to the role.

### i Note

The following general conventions apply when modeling a role definition using the role DSL:

- Comments start with a double-slash (//) or double-dash (--) and run to the end of the line.
- When specifying a reference to a design-time object, you must always specify the package name as follows:
  - <package>::<object> if you are referencing a design-time role
  - <package>:<object>.<extension> if you are referencing any other design-time object
- When specifying multiple privileges on the same object or the same privilege on multiple objects, you can do so individually line by line, or you can group them on a single line. Separate multiple objects and/or multiple privileges using a comma.

## extends role

```
extends role <package>.<package>::<role>
```

The keyword `extends role` allows you to include another design-time role in the role. If role A extends role B, role B is granted to role A. This means that effectively A has all privileges that B has.

## extends catalog role

```
extends catalog role "<role>"
```

The keyword `extends catalog role` allows you to include a catalog role in the role. If role A extends role B, role B is granted to role A. This means that effectively A has all privileges that B has.

## system privilege

```
{
 system privilege: BACKUP ADMIN, USER ADMIN;
 system privilege: LICENSE ADMIN;
}
```

The `system privilege` keyword allows you to grant a system privilege to the role.

For more information about all available system privileges, see *System Privileges (Reference)*.

## sql object

```
{
 sql object sap.example:MY_VIEW.attributeview: DROP;
 sql object sap.example:MY_PROCEDURE.hdbprocedure: DROP;
 sql object sap.example:MY_VIEW.attributeview,
sap.example:MY_OTHER_VIEW.analyticview, sap.example:MY_THIRD_VIEW.analyticview:
SELECT;
}
```

The `sql object` keyword allows you to grant an object privilege on a design-time object (table, view, procedure, sequence) to the role.

### ➔ Tip

Many object types can be created in the repository. To verify the correct extension, refer to the object file in the relevant package in the *Project Explorer* view (SAP HANA studio) or the file explorer (SAP HANA Web-based Developer Workbench).

For more information about all available object privileges and to which object types they apply, see *Object Privileges (Reference)*.

## catalog sql object

```
{
 catalog sql object "MY_SCHEMA"."MY_TABLE": SELECT;
}
```

The `catalog sql object` keyword allows you to grant an object privilege on a catalog object (table, view, procedure, sequence) to the role.

### i Note

Catalog objects must always be qualified with the schema name. Catalog objects must also be referenced within double quotes, unlike design-time objects.

## ⚠ Caution

Do not grant object privileges on a catalog object if it was created in design time. If you do, the next time the design-time object is activated (which results in the creation of a new version of the catalog object), the privilege on the original catalog object will be removed from the role. Therefore, grant privileges on design-time objects.

For more information about all available object privileges and to which object types they apply, see *Object Privileges (Reference)*.

## catalog schema

```
{
 catalog schema "MY_SCHEMA": SELECT;
}
```

The `catalog schema` keyword allows you to grant a catalog schema to the role.

For more information about the object privileges that apply to schemas, see *Object Privileges (Reference)*.

## schema

```
{
 schema sap.example:MY_OTHER_SCHEMA.hdbschema: SELECT;
}
```

The `schema` keyword allows you to grant a design-time schema to the role.

### i Note

You must still use the deprecated extension `.schema` if you are referring to a repository schema that uses this extension.

For more information about the object privileges that apply to schemas, see *Object Privileges (Reference)*.

## package

```
{
 package sap.example: REPO.READ;
}
```

The `package` keyword allows you to grant a repository package to the role.

For more information about all available package privileges, see *Package Privileges*.

## analytic privilege

```
{
 analytic privilege: sap.example:sp1.analyticprivilege,
 sap.example:AP2.analyticprivilege;
}
```

The `analytic privilege` keyword allows you to grant a design-time analytic privilege to the role.

For more information, see *Analytic Privileges*.

## catalog analytic privilege

```
{
 catalog analytic privilege: "sp3";
}
```

The `catalog analytic privilege` keyword allows you to grant an activated analytic privilege to the role.

For more information, see *Analytic Privileges*.

## application privilege

```
{
 application privilege: sap.example::Execute;
}
```

The `application privilege` keyword allows you to grant an application privilege to the role.

### i Note

Application privileges are implemented using the application-privileges file (`.xsprivileges`).

For more information, see *Application Privileges*.

## Related Information

[System Privileges \(Reference\) \[page 744\]](#)

[Object Privileges \(Reference\) \[page 750\]](#)

[Package Privileges \[page 757\]](#)

[Analytic Privileges \[page 754\]](#)

[Application Privileges \[page 759\]](#)

### 10.1.1.3 Custom Role for Developers

Create a custom role for developers so that you can grant developers all required privileges quickly and efficiently.

A role enables you to assign various types of privileges to a user, for example: SQL privileges, analytic privileges, system privileges, as well as application and package privileges. You can also restrict the type of privilege, for example, to SELECT, INSERT or UPDATE statements (or any combination of desired statements). You can use an existing role as the basis for a new, extended, custom role. The privileges granted by an extended role include all the privileges specified in all the roles that are used as the basis of the extended role plus any additional privileges defined in the new extended role itself.

#### i Note

It is not possible to restrict the privileges granted by the existing role that you are extending. For example, if role A extends role B, role A will always include all the privileges specified in role B.

The following example shows how to create a DEVELOPMENT role as a design-time object. Note that a role-definition file must have the suffix .hdbrole, for example, `MyRoleDefinition.hdbrole`.

#### ➔ Tip

File extensions are important. If you are using SAP HANA studio to create artifacts in the SAP HANA repository, the file-creation wizard adds the required file extension automatically and, if appropriate, enables direct editing of the new file in the corresponding editor.

After activating the design-time role definition, you can grant the resulting runtime role object to application developers, for example, by executing the \_SYS\_REPO procedure GRANT\_ACTIVATED\_ROLE. The call requires the parameters: ROLENAMES (the name of the runtime role object you want to assign) and USERNAME (the name of the user to whom you want to assign the new runtime role).

```
call "_SYS_REPO"."GRANT_ACTIVATED_ROLE"
('acme.com.data::MyUserRole','GranteeUserName');
```

The example role illustrated in this topic defines the following privileges for the SAP HANA application developer:

- Schema privileges:
  - \_SYS\_BIC  
SELECT and EXECUTE for all tables
- Object privileges:
  - Schema \_SYS\_BI
    - SELECT privilege for all BIMC\_\* tables
    - UPDATE, INSERT, and DELETE privilege for M\_\* tables
    - Catalog object REPOSITORY\_REST (SYS)  
EXECUTE privilege
- Analytic privileges:
  - \_SYS\_BI\_CP\_ALL  
SELECT for the data preview on the views
- Design-time privileges:

- Package privileges:
  - For the root package  
REPO.MAINTAIN\_NATIVE\_PACKAGES
  - For packages containing application content  
REPO.EDIT\_NATIVE\_OBJECTS  
REPO.ACTIVATE\_NATIVE\_OBJECTS
- Application privileges:  
Application privileges are used to authorize user (and client) access to an application, for example, to start the application or perform administrative actions in the application. When creating a role for developers, make sure that the developers have (at least) the following application privileges:
  - Execute and Save privileges for the applications the developers are assigned to work on. The application privileges can be defined in a .xsprivileges file, which must reside in application package to which the defined privileges apply.
  - The privileges granted with the debugger role that is included with SAP HANA XS.

### Note

It is also possible to grant application privileges in SAP HANA studio, for example, using the list of privileges displayed in the *Application Privileges* tab in the  *Security*  *[Users | Roles]* runtime area. To grant (or revoke) application privileges, the granting (or revoking) user must also have the object privilege `Execute` for the `GRANT_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE` or `REVOKE_APPLICATION_PRIVILEGE` procedure respectively.

- Additional privileges

User \_SYS\_REPO requires the `SELECT` privilege on `<schema_where_tables_reside>` to enable the activation and data preview of information views.

### Example

#### Application-Development Role-Definition Example

```
role <package_name>::DEVELOPMENT
// extends role com.acme::role1
// extends catalog role "CATROLE1", "CATROLE2"
{
 // system privileges
 // system privilege: BACKUP ADMIN, USER ADMIN;
 // schema privileges
 catalog schema "_SYS_BIC": SELECT, EXECUTE;
 // sql object privileges
 // privileges on the same object may be split up in several lines
 catalog sql object "SYS"."REPOSITORY_REST": EXECUTE;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."BIMC_ALL_CUBES": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."BIMC_CONFIGURATION": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."BIMC_DIMENSIONS": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."BIMC_PROPERTIES": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."BIMC_VARIABLE": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."BIMC_VARIABLE_ASSIGNMENT": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."BIMC_VARIABLE_VALUE": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_CONTENT_MAPPING": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_FISCAL_CALENDAR": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_IMPORT_SERVER_CONFIG": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_REPLICATION_EXCEPTIONS": UPDATE, INSERT,
 DELETE;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_SCHEMA_MAPPING": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_TIME_DIMENSION": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_TIME_DIMENSION_MONTH": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_TIME_DIMENSION_WEEK": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
```

```

catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_TIME_DIMENSION_YEAR": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
catalog sql object "_SYS_BI"."M_USER_PERSONALIZATION": UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE;
// analytic privileges
catalog analytic privilege: "_SYS_BI_CP_ALL";
// design time privileges
package com.acme: REPO.MAINTAIN_NATIVE_PACKAGES;
package com.acme.myapps: REPO.EDIT_NATIVE_OBJECTS;
package com.acme.myapps: REPO.ACTIVATE_NATIVE_OBJECTS;
application privilege: com.acme.myapps.app1::Execute, com.acme.xs.app1::Save;
application privilege: com.acme.myapps.debugger::Execute;
}

```

## Related Information

[Roles as Repository Objects \[page 731\]](#)

[Create a Design-Time Role \[page 724\]](#)

[Privileges \[page 740\]](#)

### 10.1.2 Privileges

Several privilege types are used in SAP HANA (system, object, analytic, package, and application).

Table 110:

Privilege Type	Applicable To	Target User	Description
System privilege	System, database	Administrators, developers	<p>System privileges control general system activities. They are mainly used for administrative purposes, such as creating schemas, creating and changing users and roles, performing data backups, managing licenses, and so on.</p> <p>System privileges are also used to authorize basic repository operations.</p> <p>In a multiple-container system, system privileges granted to users in a particular multitenant database container authorize operations in that database only. The only exception is the system privilege DATABASE ADMIN. This system privilege can only be granted to users of the system database. It authorizes the execution of operations on individual tenant databases. For example, a user with DATABASE ADMIN can create and drop tenant databases, change the database-specific properties in configuration (*.ini) files, and perform database-specific backups.</p>

Privilege Type	Applicable To	Target User	Description
Object privilege	Database objects (schemas, tables, views, procedures and so on)	End users, technical users	<p>Object privileges are used to allow access to and modification of database objects, such as tables and views. Depending on the object type, different actions can be authorized (for example, SELECT, CREATE ANY, ALTER, DROP, and so on).</p> <p>Schema privileges are object privileges that are used to allow access to and modification of schemas and the objects that they contain.</p> <p>Source privileges are object privileges that are used to restrict access to and modification of remote data sources, which are connected through SAP HANA smart data access.</p> <p>In a multiple-container system, object privileges granted to users in a particular database authorize access to and modification of database objects in that database only. That is, unless cross-database access has been enabled for the user. This is made possible through the association of the requesting user with a remote identity on the remote database. For more information, see <i>Cross-Database Authorization in Multitenant Database Containers</i> in the SAP HANA Security Guide.</p>
Analytic privilege	Analytic views	End users	<p>Analytic privileges are used to allow read access to data in SAP HANA information models (that is, analytic views, attribute views, and calculation views) depending on certain values or combinations of values. Analytic privileges are evaluated during query processing.</p> <p>In a multiple-container system, analytic privileges granted to users in a particular database authorize access to information models in that database only.</p>

Privilege Type	Applicable To	Target User	Description
Package privilege	Packages in the classic repository of the SAP HANA database	Application and content developers working in the classic SAP HANA repository	<p>Package privileges are used to allow access to and the ability to work in packages in the classic repository of the SAP HANA database.</p> <p>Packages contain design time versions of various objects, such as analytic views, attribute views, calculation views, and analytic privileges.</p> <p>In a multiple-container system, package privileges granted to users in a particular database authorize access to and the ability to work in packages in the repository of that database only.</p> <div style="background-color: #ffffcc; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>With SAP HANA XS advanced, source code and web content are not versioned and stored in the SAP HANA database, so package privileges are not used in this context. For more information, see <i>Authorization in SAP HANA XS Advanced</i>.</p> </div>
Application privilege	SAP HANA XS classic applications	Application end users, technical users (for SQL connection configurations)	<p>Developers of SAP HANA XS classic applications can create application privileges to authorize user and client access to their application. They apply in addition to other privileges, for example, object privileges on tables.</p> <p>Application privileges can be granted directly to users or roles in runtime in the SAP HANA studio. However, it is recommended that you grant application privileges to roles created in the repository in design time.</p> <div style="background-color: #ffffcc; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>With SAP HANA XS advanced, application privileges are not used. Application-level authorization is implemented using OAuth and authorization scopes and attributes. For more information, see <i>Authorization in SAP HANA XS Advanced</i>.</p> </div>

### i Note

In the SAP HANA studio, an additional privilege type can be granted. Privileges on users are SQL privileges that users can grant on their user. ATTACH DEBUGGER is the only privilege that can be granted on a user.

For example, User A can grant User B the privilege ATTACH DEBUGGER to allow User B debug SQLScript code in User A's session. User A is the only user who can grant this privilege. Note that User B also needs the object privilege DEBUG on the relevant SQLScript procedure.

For more information, see *Debug an External Session* in the SAP HANA Developer Guide .

## Related Information

[Debug an External Session \[page 438\]](#)

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide \(For SAP HANA Web Workbench\)](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide \(For SAP HANA Studio\)](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

### 10.1.2.1 System Privileges

System privileges control general system activities.

System privileges are mainly used to authorize users to perform administrative actions, including:

- Creating and deleting schemas
- Managing users and roles
- Performing data backups
- Monitoring and tracing
- Managing licenses

System privileges are also used to authorize basic repository operations, for example:

- Importing and exporting content
- Maintaining delivery units (DU)

In a system with multitenant database containers, system privileges granted to users in a particular database container authorize operations in that database only. The only exception is the system privilege DATABASE ADMIN. This system privilege can only be granted to users of the system database. It authorizes the execution of operations on individual tenant databases. For example, a user with DATABASE ADMIN can create and drop tenant databases, change the database-specific properties in configuration (\*.ini) files, and perform database-specific or full-system data backups.

For more information about the individual system privileges available, see *System Privileges (Reference)*.

## Related Information

[System Privileges \(Reference\) \[page 744\]](#)

## 10.1.2.1.1 System Privileges (Reference)

System privileges control general system activities.

### General System Privileges

System privileges are used to restrict administrative tasks. The following table describes the supported system privileges in an SAP HANA database.

Table 111:

System Privilege	Description
ADAPTER ADMIN	Controls the execution of the following adapter-related commands: CREATE ADAPTER, DROP ADAPTER and ALTER ADAPTER. It also allows access to ADAPTERS and ADAPTER_LOCATIONS system views.
AGENT ADMIN	Controls the execution of the following agent-related commands: CREATE AGENT, DROP AGENT, and ALTER AGENT. It also allows access to AGENTS and ADAPTER_LOCATIONS system views.
AUDIT ADMIN	Controls the execution of the following auditing-related commands: CREATE AUDIT POLICY, DROP AUDIT POLICY and ALTER AUDIT POLICY and the changes of the auditing configuration. It also allows access to AUDIT_LOG system view.
AUDIT OPERATOR	Authorizes the execution of the following command: ALTER SYSTEM CLEAR AUDIT LOG. It also allows access to AUDIT_LOG system view.
BACKUP ADMIN	Authorizes BACKUP and RECOVERY commands for defining and initiating backup and recovery procedures. It also authorizes changing of system configuration options with respect to backup and recovery.
BACKUP OPERATOR	Authorizes the BACKUP command to initiate a backup.
CATALOG READ	Authorizes users to have unfiltered read-only access to all system views.  Normally, the content of these views is filtered based on the privileges of the accessing user.
CERTIFICATE ADMIN	Authorizes the changing of certificates and certificate collections that are stored in the database.

System Privilege	Description
CREATE R SCRIPT	Authorizes the creation of a procedure using the language R.
CREATE REMOTE SOURCE	Authorizes the creation of remote data sources using the CREATE REMOTE SOURCE command.
CREATE SCENARIO	Controls the creation of calculation scenarios and cubes (calculation database).
CREATE SCHEMA	<p>Authorizes the creation of database schemas using the CREATE SCHEMA command.</p> <p>By default each user owns one schema, with this privilege the user is allowed to create additional schemas.</p>
CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE	<p>Authorizes the creation of Structured Privileges (Analytical Privileges).</p> <p>Only the owner of an Analytical Privilege can further grant or revoke that privilege to other users or roles.</p>
CREDENTIAL ADMIN	Authorizes the credential commands: CREATE/ALTER/DROP CREDENTIAL.
DATA ADMIN	<p>Authorizes reading all data in the system views. It also enables execution of any Data Definition Language (DDL) commands in the SAP HANA database.</p> <p>A user with this privilege cannot select or change data stored tables for which they do not have access privileges, but they can drop tables or modify table definitions.</p>
DATABASE ADMIN	Authorizes all commands related to tenant databases, such as CREATE, DROP, ALTER, RENAME, BACKUP, and RECOVERY.
ENCRYPTION ROOT KEY ADMIN	<p>Authorizes all commands related to management of root keys:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ALTER SYSTEM SET ENCRYPTION ROOT KEYS BACKUP PASSWORD Statement</li> <li>• ALTER SYSTEM LOG ENCRYPTION Statement</li> <li>• ALTER SYSTEM PERSISTENCE ENCRYPTION Statement</li> <li>• ALTER SYSTEM APPLICATION ENCRYPTION Statement</li> <li>• ENCRYPTION_ROOT_KEYS_EXTRACT_KEYS Function</li> </ul>

System Privilege	Description
EXPORT	<p>Authorizes EXPORT to a file.</p> <p>Beside this privilege, the user requires the SELECT privilege on the source tables to be exported.</p>
EXTENDED STORAGE ADMIN	<p>Required to manage SAP HANA dynamic tiering and create extended storage.</p>
IMPORT	<p>Authorizes the import activity in the database using the IMPORT commands.</p> <p>Beside this privilege, the user requires the INSERT privilege on the target tables to be imported.</p>
INIFILE ADMIN	<p>Authorizes changing of system settings.</p>
LDAP ADMIN	<p>Authorizes use of CREATE   ALTER   DROP   VALIDATE LDAP PROVIDER statements.</p>
LICENSE ADMIN	<p>Authorizes the SET SYSTEM LICENSE command to install a new license.</p>
LOG ADMIN	<p>Authorizes the ALTER SYSTEM LOGGING [ON OFF] commands to enable or disable the log flush mechanism.</p>
MONITOR ADMIN	<p>Authorizes the ALTER SYSTEM commands for events.</p>
OPTIMIZER ADMIN	<p>Authorizes the ALTER SYSTEM commands concerning SQL PLAN CACHE and ALTER SYSTEM UPDATE STATISTICS commands, which influence the behavior of the query optimizer.</p>
RESOURCE ADMIN	<p>Authorizes commands concerning system resources, for example ALTER SYSTEM RECLAIM DATAVOLUME and ALTER SYSTEM RESET MONITORING VIEW. It also authorizes many of the commands available in the Management Console.</p>
ROLE ADMIN	<p>Authorizes the creation and deletion of roles using the CREATE ROLE and DROP ROLE commands. It also authorizes the granting and revocation of roles using the GRANT and REVOKE commands.</p> <p>Activated repository roles, meaning roles whose creator is the predefined user _SYS_REPO, can neither be granted to other roles or users nor dropped directly. Not even users with the ROLE ADMIN privilege can do so. Check the documentation concerning activated objects.</p>

System Privilege	Description
SAVEPOINT ADMIN	Authorizes the execution of a save point process using the ALTER SYSTEM SAVEPOINT command.
SCENARIO ADMIN	Authorizes all calculation scenario-related activities (including creation).
SERVICE ADMIN	Authorizes the ALTER SYSTEM [START CANCEL RECONFIGURE] commands.  This privilege is for administering system services of the database
SESSION ADMIN	Authorizes the ALTER SYSTEM commands concerning sessions to stop or disconnect a user session or to change session variables.
SSL ADMIN	Controls the execution of the following commands: SET pse_store_name PURPOSE SSL. It also allows access to the PSES system view.
STRUCTUREDPRIORITY ADMIN	Authorizes the creation, reactivation, and dropping of structured privileges.
TENANT ADMIN	Authorizes the tenant operations performed by the ALTER SYSTEM [RESUME SUSPEND] TENANT commands.
TABLE ADMIN	Authorizes the LOAD/UNLOAD/MERGE of tables and its table placement.
TRACE ADMIN	Authorizes the ALTER SYSTEM [CLEAR REMOVE] TRACES commands for operations on database trace files and authorizes changing trace system settings.
TRUST ADMIN	Authorizes commands to update the trust store.
USER ADMIN	Authorizes the creation and modification of users using the CREATE USER, ALTER USER, and DROP USER commands.
VERSION ADMIN	Authorizes the ALTER SYSTEM RECLAIM VERSION SPACE command of the multi-version concurrency control (MVCC) mechanism.
WORKLOAD ADMIN	Authorizes execution of the workload class and mapping commands: CREATE WORKLOAD CLASS, ALTER WORKLOAD CLASS, DROP WORKLOAD CLASS, CREATE WORKLOAD MAPPING, ALTER WORKLOAD MAPPING, and DROP WORKLOAD MAPPING

System Privilege	Description
WORKLOAD ANALYZE ADMIN	Used by Analyze Workload, Capture Workload, and Replay Workload apps when performing workload analysis.
WORKLOAD CAPTURE ADMIN	Authorizes access to monitoring view M_WORKLOAD_CAPTURES to see the current status of capturing and captured workloads, as well of execution of actions with built-in procedure WORKLOAD_CAPTURE
WORKLOAD REPLAY ADMIN	Authorizes access to monitoring views M_WORKLOAD_REPLAY_PREPROCESSES and M_WORKLOAD_REPLAYS to see current status of preprocessing, preprocessed, replaying, and replayed workloads, as well as execution of actions with the built-in procedure WORKLOAD_REPLAY
<identifier>.<identifier>	Components of the SAP HANA database can create new system privileges. These privileges use the component-name as first identifier of the system privilege and the component-privilege-name as the second identifier.

**i Note**

Additional system privileges (shown as <identifier>.<identifier> above) may exist and be required in conjunction with SAP HANA options and capabilities such as SAP HANA smart data integration. For more information, see *SAP HANA Options and Capabilities* on SAP Help Portal.

## Repository System Privileges

**i Note**

The following privileges authorize actions on individual packages in the SAP HANA repository, used in the SAP HANA Extended Services (SAP HANA XS) classic development model. With SAP HANA XS advanced, source code and web content are no longer versioned and stored in the repository of the SAP HANA database.

Table 112:

System Privilege	Description
REPO.EXPORT	Authorizes the export of delivery units for example
REPO.IMPORT	Authorizes the import of transport archives
REPO.MAINTAIN_DELIVERY_UNITS	Authorizes the maintenance of delivery units (DU, DU vendor and system vendor must be the same)
REPO.WORK_IN_FOREIGN_WORKSPACE	Authorizes work in a foreign inactive workspace

System Privilege	Description
REPO.CONFIGURE	Authorize work with SAP HANA Change Recording, which is part of SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management
REPO.MODIFY_CHANGE	
REPO.MODIFY_OWN_CONTRIBUTION	
REPO.MODIFY_FOREIGN_CONTRIBUTION	

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Options and Capabilities](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

### 10.1.2.2 Object Privileges

Object privileges are SQL privileges that are used to allow access to and modification of database objects.

For each SQL statement type (for example, SELECT, UPDATE, or CALL), a corresponding object privilege exists. If a user wants to execute a particular statement on a simple database object (for example, a table), he or she must have the corresponding object privilege for either the actual object itself, or the schema in which the object is located. This is because the schema is an object type that contains other objects. A user who has object privileges for a schema automatically has the same privileges for all objects currently in the schema and any objects created there in the future.

Object privileges are not only grantable for database catalog objects such as tables, views and procedures. Object privileges can also be granted for non-catalog objects such as development objects in the repository of the SAP HANA database.

Initially, the owner of an object and the owner of the schema in which the object is located are the only users who can access the object and grant object privileges on it to other users.

An object can therefore be accessed only by the following users:

- The owner of the object
- The owner of the schema in which the object is located
- Users to whom the owner of the object has granted privileges
- Users to whom the owner of the parent schema has granted privileges

#### Caution

The database owner concept stipulates that when a database user is deleted, all objects created by that user and privileges granted to others by that user are also deleted. If the owner of a schema is deleted, all objects in the schema are also deleted even if they are owned by a different user. All privileges on these objects are also deleted.

## Authorization Check on Objects with Dependencies

The authorization check for objects defined on other objects (that is, stored procedures and views) is more complex. In order to be able to access an object with dependencies, both of the following conditions must be met:

- The user trying to access the object must have the relevant object privilege on the object as described above.
- The user who created the object must have the required privilege on all underlying objects **and** be authorized to grant this privilege to others.

If this second condition is not met, only the owner of the object can access it. He cannot grant privileges on it to any other user. This cannot be circumvented by granting privileges on the parent schema instead. Even if a user has privileges on the schema, he will still not be able to access the object.

### Note

This applies to procedures created in DEFINER mode only. This means that the authorization check is run against the privileges of the user who created the object, not the user accessing the object. For procedures created in INVOKER mode, the authorization check is run against the privileges of the accessing user. In this case, the user must have privileges not only on the object itself but on all objects that it uses.

### Tip

The SAP HANA studio provides a graphical feature, the authorization dependency viewer, to help troubleshoot authorization errors for object types that typically have complex dependency structures: stored procedures and calculation views.

For more information about resolving authorization errors with the authorization dependency viewer, see *Resolve Errors Using the Authorization Dependency Viewer* in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*.

For more information about the object privileges available in SAP HANA and for which objects they are relevant, see *Object Privileges (Reference)*.

## Related Information

[Object Privileges \(Reference\) \[page 750\]](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

## 10.1.2.2.1 Object Privileges (Reference)

Object privileges are used to allow access to and modification of database objects, such as tables and views.

The following table describes the supported object privileges in a HANA database.

Table 113:

Object Privilege	Command Types	Applies to	Privilege Description
ALL PRIVILEGES	DDL & DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tables</li> <li>Views</li> </ul>	<p>This privilege is a collection of all Data Definition Language(DDL) and Data Manipulation Language(DML) privileges that the grantor currently possesses and is allowed to grant further. The privilege it grants is specific to the particular object being acted upon.</p> <p>This privilege collection is dynamically evaluated for the given grantor and object.</p>
ALTER	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> <li>Tables</li> <li>Views</li> <li>Functions/procedures</li> </ul>	Authorizes the ALTER command for the object.
CREATE ANY	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> <li>Tables</li> <li>Views</li> <li>Sequences</li> <li>Functions/procedures</li> <li>Remote sources</li> <li>Graph workspaces</li> </ul>	Authorizes all CREATE commands for the object.
CREATE VIRTUAL FUNCTION	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remote sources</li> </ul>	Authorizes creation of virtual functions (REFERENCES privilege is also required)
CREATE VIRTUAL PROCEDURE	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remote sources</li> </ul>	Authorizes creation of virtual procedure to create and run procedures on a remote source.
CREATE VIRTUAL PACKAGE	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> </ul>	Authorizes creation of virtual packages that can be run on remote sources.
CREATE VIRTUAL TABLE	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remote sources</li> </ul>	Authorizes the creation of proxy tables pointing to remote tables from the source entry

Object Privilege	Command Types	Applies to	Privilege Description
CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> </ul>	Authorizes the creation of a temporary local table, which can be used as input for procedures, even if the user does not have the CREATE ANY privilege for the schema.
DEBUG	DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> <li>Calculation Views</li> <li>Functions/procedures</li> </ul>	Authorizes debug-functionality for the procedure or calculation view or for the procedures and calculation views of a schema.
DELETE	DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> <li>Tables</li> <li>Views</li> <li>Functions/procedures</li> </ul>	<p>Authorizes the DELETE and TRUNCATE commands for the object.</p> <p>While DELETE applies to views, it only applies to updatable views (that is, views that do not use a join, do not contain a UNION, and do not use aggregation).</p>
DROP	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> <li>Tables</li> <li>Views</li> <li>Sequences</li> <li>Functions/procedures</li> <li>Remote sources</li> <li>Graph workspaces</li> </ul>	Authorizes the DROP commands for the object.
EXECUTE	DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> <li>Functions/procedures</li> </ul>	Authorizes the execution of an SQLScript function or a database procedure using the CALLS or CALL command respectively. It also allows a user to execute a virtual function.
INDEX	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Schemas</li> <li>Tables</li> </ul>	Authorizes the creation, modification, or dropping of indexes for the object.

Object Privilege	Command Types	Applies to	Privilege Description
INSERT	DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schemas</li> <li>• Tables</li> <li>• Views</li> </ul>	<p>Authorizes the INSERT command for the object.</p> <p>The INSERT and UPDATE privilege are both required on the object to allow the REPLACE and UPSERT commands to be used.</p> <p>While INSERT applies to views, it only applies to updatable views (that is, views that do not use a join, do not contain a UNION, and do not use aggregation).</p>
REFERENCES	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schemas</li> <li>• Tables</li> </ul>	<p>Authorizes the usage of all tables in this schema or this table in a foreign key definition, or the usage of a personal security environment (PSE) for a certain purpose. It also allows a user to reference a virtual function package.</p>
SELECT	DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schemas</li> <li>• Tables</li> <li>• Views</li> <li>• Sequences</li> <li>• Graph workspaces</li> </ul>	<p>Authorizes the SELECT command for this object or the usage of a sequence.</p>
SELECT CDS METADATA	DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schemas</li> <li>• Tables</li> </ul>	<p>Authorizes access to CDS metadata from the catalog</p>
SELECT METADATA	DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schemas</li> <li>• Tables</li> </ul>	<p>Authorizes access to the complete metadata of all objects in a schema (including procedure and view definitions), thus showing the existence of objects that may be located in other schemas.</p>
TRIGGER	DDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schemas</li> <li>• Tables</li> </ul>	<p>Authorizes the CREATE TRIGGER/DROP TRIGGER command for the specified table or the tables in the specified schema.</p>

Object Privilege	Command Types	Applies to	Privilege Description
UPDATE	DML	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Schemas</li> <li>• Tables</li> <li>• Views</li> </ul>	<p>Authorizes the UPDATE/LOAD/UNLOAD/LOCK TABLE command for that object.</p> <p>While UPDATE applies to views, it only applies to updatable views (that is, views that do not use a join, do not contain a UNION, and do not use aggregation).</p>
<identifier>.<identifier>	DDL		Components of the SAP HANA database can create new object privileges. These privileges use the component-name as first identifier of the system privilege and the component-privilegename as the second identifier.

#### i Note

Additional object privileges (shown as <identifier>.<identifier> above) may exist and be required in conjunction with SAP HANA options and capabilities such as SAP HANA smart data integration. For more information, see *SAP HANA Options and Capabilities* on SAP Help Portal.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Options and Capabilities](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

### 10.1.2.3 Analytic Privileges

Analytic privileges grant different users access to different portions of data in the same view based on their business role. Within the definition of an analytic privilege, the conditions that control which data users see is either contained in an XML document or defined using SQL.

Standard object privileges (SELECT, ALTER, DROP, and so on) implement coarse-grained authorization at object level only. Users either have access to an object, such as a table, view or procedure, or they don't. While this is often sufficient, there are cases when access to data in an object depends on certain values or

combinations of values. Analytic privileges are used in the SAP HANA database to provide such fine-grained control at row level of which data individual users can see within the same view.

### Example

Sales data for all regions are contained within one analytic view. However, regional sales managers should only see the data for their region. In this case, an analytic privilege could be modeled so that they can all query the view, but only the data that each user is authorized to see is returned.

## Creation of Analytic Privileges

Although analytic privileges can be created directly as catalog objects in runtime, we recommend creating them as design-time objects that become catalog objects on deployment (database artifact with file suffix `.hdbanalyticprivilege`). In an SAP HANA XS classic environment, analytic privileges are created in the built-in repository of the SAP HANA database using either the SAP HANA Web Workbench or the SAP HANA studio. In an SAP HANA XS advanced environment, they are created using the SAP Web IDE and deployed using SAP HANA deployment infrastructure (SAP HANA DI).

### Note

HDI supports only SQL-based analytic privileges (see below). Furthermore, due to the container-based model of HDI, where each container corresponds to a database schema, analytic privileges created in HDI are schema specific.

## XML- Versus SQL-Based Analytic Privileges

Before you implement row-level authorization using analytic privileges, you need to decide which type of analytic privilege is suitable for your scenario. In general, SQL-based analytic privileges allow you to more easily formulate complex filter conditions using sub-queries that might be cumbersome to model using XML-based analytic privileges.

### Recommendation

SAP recommends the use of SQL-based analytic privileges. Using the [SAP HANA Modeler](#) perspective of the SAP HANA studio, you can migrate XML-based analytic privileges to SQL-based analytic privileges. For more information, see the SAP HANA Modeling Guide (For SAP HANA Studio).

The following are the main differences between XML-based and SQL-based analytic privileges:

Table 114:

Feature	SQL-Based Analytic Privileges	XML-Based Analytic Privileges
Control of read-only access to SAP HANA information models: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Attribute views</li><li>• Analytic views</li><li>• Calculation views</li></ul>	Yes	Yes
Control of read-only access to SQL views	Yes	No
Control of read-only access to database tables	No	No
Design-time modeling using the SAP HANA Web-based Workbench or the <a href="#">SAP HANA Modeler</a> perspective of the SAP HANA studio	Yes	Yes
<b>i Note</b> This corresponds to development in an SAP HANA XS classic environment using the SAP HANA repository.		
Design-time modeling using the SAP Web IDE for SAP HANA	Yes	No
<b>i Note</b> This corresponds to development in an SAP HANA XS advanced environment using HDI.		
Transportable	Yes	Yes
HDI support	Yes	No
Complex filtering	Yes	No

## Enabling an Authorization Check Based on Analytic Privileges

All column views modeled and activated in the SAP HANA modeler and the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench automatically enforce an authorization check based on analytic privileges. XML-based analytic privileges are selected by default, but you can switch to SQL-based analytic privileges.

Column views created using SQL must be explicitly registered for such a check by passing the relevant parameter:

- `REGISTERVIEWFORAPCHECK` for a check based on XML-based analytic privileges
- `STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE CHECK` for a check based on SQL-based analytic privileges

SQL views must always be explicitly registered for an authorization check based on analytic privileges by passing the `STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE CHECK` parameter.

### **i** Note

It is not possible to enforce an authorization check on the same view using both XML-based and SQL-based analytic privileges. However, it is possible to build views with different authorization checks on each other.

## Related Information

[Create XML-Based Analytic Privileges \(SAP HANA Studio\) \[page 762\]](#)

[Create SQL-Based Analytic Privileges \(SAP HANA Studio\) \[page 764\]](#)

[SAP HANA Modeling Guide \(For SAP HANA Studio\)](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide \(For SAP HANA Studio\)](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide \(For SAP HANA Web Workbench\)](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide for SAP HANA XS Advanced Model](#)

### 10.1.2.4 Package Privileges

Package privileges authorize actions on individual packages in the SAP HANA repository.

Privileges granted on a repository package are implicitly assigned to the design-time objects in the package, as well as to all sub-packages. Users are only allowed to maintain objects in a repository package if they have the necessary privileges for the package in which they want to perform an operation, for example to read or write to an object in that package. To be able to perform operations in all packages, a user must have privileges on the root package `.REPO_PACKAGE_ROOT`.

If the user authorization check establishes that a user does not have the necessary privileges to perform the requested operation in a specific package, the authorization check is repeated on the parent package and recursively up the package hierarchy to the root level of the repository. If the user does not have the necessary privileges for any of the packages in the hierarchy chain, the authorization check fails and the user is not permitted to perform the requested operation.

In the context of repository package authorizations, there is a distinction between native packages and imported packages.

- Native package

A package that is created in the current system and expected to be edited in the current system. Changes to packages or to objects the packages contain must be performed in the original development system where they were created and transported into subsequent systems. The content of native packages are regularly edited by developers.

- Imported package

A package that is created in a remote system and imported into the current system. Imported packages should not usually be modified, except when replaced by new imports during an update. Otherwise, imported packages or their contents should only be modified in exceptional cases, for example, to carry out emergency repairs.

### **i** Note

The SAP HANA administrator can grant the following package privileges to an SAP HANA user: edit, activate, and maintain.

## Related Information

[Package Privilege Options \[page 92\]](#)

### 10.1.2.4.1 Package Privilege Options

Package privileges authorize actions on individual packages in the SAP HANA repository. In the context of repository package authorizations, there is a distinction between native packages and imported packages.

### **i** Note

To be able perform operations in all packages in the SAP HANA repository, a user must have privileges on the root package `.REPO_PACKAGE_ROOT`.

## Privileges for Native Repository Packages

A native repository package is created in the current SAP HANA system and expected to be edited in the current system. To perform application-development tasks on **native** packages in the SAP HANA repository, developers typically need the privileges listed in the following table:

Table 115:

Package Privilege	Description
REPO.READ	Read access to the selected package and design-time objects (both native and imported)
REPO.EDIT_NATIVE_OBJECTS	Authorization to modify design-time objects in packages originating in the system the user is working in
REPO.ACTIVATE_NATIVE_OBJECTS	Authorization to activate/reactivate design-time objects in packages originating in the system the user is working in
REPO.MAINTAIN_NATIVE_PACKAGES	Authorization to update or delete native packages, or create sub-packages of packages originating in the system in which the user is working

## Privileges for Imported Repository Packages

An imported repository package is created in a remote SAP HANA system and imported into the current system. To perform application-development tasks on **imported** packages in the SAP HANA repository, developers need the privileges listed in the following table:

**i** Note

It is not recommended to work on imported packages. Imported packages should only be modified in exceptional cases, for example, to carry out emergency repairs.

Table 116:

Package Privilege	Description
REPO.READ	Read access to the selected package and design-time objects (both native and imported)
REPO.EDIT_IMPORTED_OBJECTS	Authorization to modify design-time objects in packages originating in a system other than the one in which the user is currently working
REPO.ACTIVATE_IMPORTED_OBJECTS	Authorization to activate (or reactivate) design-time objects in packages originating in a system other than the one in which the user is currently working
REPO.MAINTAIN_IMPORTED_PACKAGES	Authorization to update or delete packages, or create sub-packages of packages, which originated in a system other than the one in which the user is currently working

## Related Information

[Package Privileges \[page 757\]](#)

### 10.1.2.5 Application Privileges

In SAP HANA Extended Application Services (SAP HANA XS), application privileges define the authorization level required for access to an SAP HANA XS application, for example, to start the application or view particular functions and screens.

Application privileges can be assigned to an individual user or to a group of users, for example, in a user **role**. The user role can also be used to assign system, object, package, and analytic privileges, as illustrated in the following graphic. You can use application privileges to provide different levels of access to the same application, for example, to provide advanced maintenance functions for administrators and view-only capabilities to normal users.

Application Privilege	Grantor
acme.com.hana.xs.appl::Display	_SYS_REPO
acme.com.hana.xs.appl::View	_SYS_REPO

Figure 13: Application Privileges for Users and User Roles

If you want to define application-specific privileges, you need to understand and maintain the relevant sections in the following design-time artifacts:

- Application-privileges file (`.xsprivileges`)
- Application-access file (`.xsaccess`)
- Role-definition file (`<RoleName>.hdbrole`)

Application privileges can be assigned to users individually or by means of a user **role**, for example, with the “*application privilege*” keyword in a role-definition file (`<RoleName>.hdbrole`) as illustrated in the following code. You store the roles as design-time artifacts within the application package structure they are intended for, for example, `acme.com.hana.xs.appl.roles`.

```
role acme.com.hana.xs.appl.roles::Display
{
 application privilege: acme.com.hana.xs.appl::Display;
 application privilege: acme.com.hana.xs.appl::View;
 catalog schema "ACME_XS_APP1": SELECT;
 package acme.com.hana.xs.app1: REPO.READ;
 package ".REPO_PACKAGE_ROOT" : REPO.READ;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_REPO"."PRODUCTS": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_REPO"."PRODUCT_INSTANCES": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_REPO"."DELIVERY_UNITS": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "_SYS_REPO"."PACKAGE_CATALOG": SELECT;
 catalog sql object "ACME_XS_APPL"."acme.com.hana.xs.appl.db::SYSTEM_STATE":
SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE;
}
```

The application privileges referenced in the role definition (for example, `Display` and `View`) are actually defined in an application-specific `.xsprivileges` file, as illustrated in the following example, which also contains entries for additional privileges that are not explained here.

### i Note

The `.xsprivileges` file must reside in the package of the application to which the privileges apply.

The package where the `.xsprivileges` resides defines the scope of the application privileges; the privileges specified in the `.xsprivileges` file can only be used in the package where the `.xsprivileges` resides (or any sub-packages). This is checked during activation of the `.xsaccess` file and at runtime in the by the XS JavaScript API `$.session.(has|assert)AppPrivilege()`.

```
{
 "privileges" : [
```

```

 { "name" : "View", "description" : "View Product Details" },
 { "name" : "Configure", "description" : "Configure Product Details" },
 { "name" : "Display", "description" : "View Transport Details" },
 { "name" : "Administrator", "description" : "Configure/Run Everything" },
 { "name" : "ExecuteTransport", "description" : "Run Transports" },
 { "name" : "Transport", "description" : "Transports" }
]
}

```

The privileges are **authorized** for use with an application by inserting the *authorization* keyword into the corresponding `.xsaccess` file, as illustrated in the following example. Like the `.xspprivileges` file, the `.xsaccess` file must reside either in the root package of the application to which the privilege authorizations apply or the specific subpackage which requires the specified authorizations.

#### Note

If a privilege is inserted into the `.xsaccess` file as an authorization requirement, a user must have this privilege to access the application package where the `.xsaccess` file resides. If there is more than one privilege, the user must have at least one of these privileges to access the content of the package.

```

{
 "prevent_xsrf": true,
 "exposed": true,
 "authentication": {
 "method": "Form"
 },
 "authorization": [
 "acme.com.hana.xs.appl::Display",
 "acme.com.hana.xs.appl::Transport"
]
}

```

## Related Information

[Custom Role for Developers \[page 738\]](#)

[Creating the Application Descriptors \[page 96\]](#)

## 10.2 Creating Analytic Privileges

You can create analytic privileges based on either an XML document (the "classic" variation) or an SQL definition.

## Related Information

[Analytic Privileges \[page 754\]](#)

[Create Classical XML-based Analytic Privileges \[page 762\]](#)

## 10.2.1 Create Classical XML-based Analytic Privileges

Create analytic privileges for information views and assign them to different users to provide selective access that are based on certain combinations of data.

### Prerequisites

If you want to use a classical XML-based analytic privilege to apply data access restrictions on information views, set the *Apply Privileges* property for the information view to *Classical Analytic Privileges*.

1. Open the information view in the view editor.
2. Select the *Semantics* node.
3. Choose the *View Properties* tab.
4. In the *Apply Privileges* dropdown list, select *Classical Analytic Privileges*.

### Context

Analytic privileges help restrict data access to information views based on attributes or procedures. You can create and apply analytic privileges for a selected group of models or apply them to all models across packages.

After you create analytic privileges, assign it to users. This restricts users to access data only for certain combinations of dimension attributes.

### Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. In the *SAP HANA Systems* view, expand the content node.
3. In the navigator pane, select a package where you want to create the new analytic privilege.
4. In the context menu of the package, select ► *New* ► *Analytic Privilege* ▶.
5. Provide a name and description.
6. In the *Type* dropdown list, select *Classical Analytic Privilege*.
7. Choose *Finish*.
8. Define validity for the analytic privilege.

In the *Privilege Validity* section, specify the time period for which the analytic privilege is valid.

- a. Choose *Add*.

- b. Select a required operator.
  - c. Provide the validity period based on the selected operator.
9. Define scope of the analytic privilege.

In the *Secured Models* section, select the models for which the analytic privileges restrictions are applicable.

- a. Choose *Add*.
  - b. If you want to create an analytic privilege and apply the data access restrictions for selected list of models, in the *Select Information Models* dialog, select the models for which you want apply the analytic privilege restrictions.
  - c. Choose *OK*.
  - d. If you want to create an analytic privilege and apply the data access restrictions for all models, then in the *General* section, select the *Apply to all information models* checkbox.
10. Select attributes.

Use attributes from the secured models to define data access restrictions.

- a. In the *Associated Attributes Restrictions* section, choose *Add*.
- b. In the *Select Objects* dialog, select the attributes.

**i Note**

Select a model if you want to use all attributes from the model to define restrictions.

- c. Choose *OK*.

11. Define attribute restrictions

Modeler uses the restrictions defined on the attributes to restrict data access. Each attribute restriction is associated with only one attribute, but can contain multiple value filters. You can create more than one attribute restrictions.

- a. In the *Assign Restrictions* section, choose *Add*.
- b. In the *Type* dropdown list, select a restriction type.
- c. Select the required operator and provide a value using the value help.
- d. For catalog procedure or repository procedure, you can also provide values using the syntax <schema name>::<procedure name> or <package name>::<procedure name> respectively.

12. Define Attribute Restrictions Using Hierarchy Node Column

If you have enabled SQL access for calculation views, modeler generates a node column. You can use the node column to filter and perform SQL group by operation. For analytic privileges, you can maintain a filter expression using this node column.

- a. Select the *Hierarchy* tab.
- b. In the *Hierarchy* dropdown list, select a parent-child hierarchy.
- c. In the *Value* field, select a node value.

For example, if the node column is SalesRepHierarchyNode for a parent-child hierarchy, then you can create a hierarchical analytic privilege for a calculation view that filters the subtree of the node at runtime. "SalesRepHierarchyNode" = MAJESTIX

### **i** Note

You can create hierarchical analytic privileges only if all secured models are shared dimensions used in star join calculation views and if the view property of the calculation views are enabled for SQL access.

13. Activate analytic privileges.

- a. If you want to activate the analytic privilege, then in the toolbar choose *Save and Activate*.
- b. If you want to activate the analytic privilege along with all objects, then in the toolbar choose *Save and Activate All*.

### **i** Note

Activate the analytic privilege only if you have defined at least one restriction on attributes in the *Associated Attributes Restrictions* section.

14. Assign privileges to a user.

If you want to assign privileges to an authorization role, then in your SAP HANA studio, execute the following steps:

- a. In the *SAP HANA Systems* view, go to ► *Security* ▶ *Authorizations* ▶ *Users* ▶.
- b. Select a user.
- c. In the context menu, choose *Open*.
- d. In the *Analytic Privileges* tab page, add the privilege.
- e. In the editor toolbar, choose *Deploy*.

## Related Information

[Structure of Analytic Privileges \[page 768\]](#)

[Example: Create an XML-Based Analytic Privilege with Dynamic Value Filter \[page 774\]](#)

## 10.2.2 Create SQL Analytic Privileges

SQL based analytic privileges provides you the flexibility to create analytic privileges within the familiar SQL environment. You can create and apply SQL analytic privileges for a selected group of models or apply them to all models across packages.

## Prerequisites

If you want to use a SQL analytic privilege to apply data access restrictions on information views, set the *Apply Privileges* property for the information view to *SQL Analytic Privileges*.

1. Open the information view in the view editor.

2. Select the *Semantics* node.
3. Choose the *View Properties* tab.
4. In the *Apply Privileges* dropdown list, select *SQL Analytic Privileges*.

## Context

SAP HANA modeler support types SQL analytic privileges, the static SQL analytic privileges with predefined static filter conditions, and dynamic SQL analytic privileges with filter conditions determined dynamically at runtime using a database procedure.

## Procedure

1. Launch SAP HANA studio.
2. In the *SAP HANA Systems* view, expand the *Content* node.
3. In the navigator pane, select a package where you want to create the new analytic privilege.
4. In the context menu of the package, select *New* > *Analytic Privilege* .
5. Provide a name and description.
6. In the *Type* dropdown list, select *SQL Analytic Privilege*.
7. Choose *Finish*.
8. In the header region, select *SQL Editor*.

### Note

You can also use the attribute editor to create the analytic privilege using the attribute restrictions and then switch to the SQL editor to deploy the same privilege as SQL analytic privilege.

9. Select information models.

If you want to create an analytic privilege and apply the data access restrictions for selected list of models, in the *Secured Models* section,

- a. Choose *Add*.
- b. In the *Select Information Models* dialog, select the models for which you want apply the analytic privilege restrictions.
- c. Choose *OK*.

10. Defining static SQL analytic privileges.

If you want to define static SQL analytic privileges, then

- a. In the SQL editor, provide the attribute restrictions and its validity.

For example,

```
(("REGION" = 'EAST') OR ("REGION" = 'NORTH')) AND ((CUSTOMER_ID = 'SAP')) AND ((CURRENT_DATE BETWEEN 2015-05-15 00:00:00.000 AND 2015-05-15 23:59:59.999))
```

### Note

If you have enabled SQL access for calculation views (of type dimensions used in a star join calculation view), modeler generates a node column. For analytic privileges, you can maintain a filter expression using this node column.. For example, if SalesRepHierarchyNode is the node column that modeler generates for a parent-child hierarchy, then "SalesRepHierarchyNode" = "MAJESTIX" is a possible filter expression.

#### 11. Defining dynamic SQL analytic privileges.

Dynamic SQL analytic privileges determine the filter condition string at runtime. If you want to define dynamic SQL analytic privileges,

- a. In the SQL editor, specify the procedure within the CONDITION PROVIDER clause.

For example, CONDITION PROVIDER schema\_name.procedure\_name.

#### 12. Activate analytic privileges.

- a. If you want to activate the analytic privilege, then in the toolbar choose [Save and Activate](#).
- b. If you want to activate the analytic privilege along with all objects, then in the toolbar choose [Save and Activate All](#).

### Note

Activate the analytic privilege only if you have defined at least one restriction on attributes in the [Associated Attributes Restrictions](#) section.

#### 13. Assign privileges to a user.

If you want to assign privileges to an authorization role, then in your SAP HANA studio, execute the following steps:

- a. In the [SAP HANA Systems](#) view, go to  [Security](#)  [Authorizations](#)  [Users](#).
- b. Select a user.
- c. In the context menu, choose [Open](#).
- d. In the [Analytic Privileges](#) tab page, add the privilege.
- e. In the editor toolbar, choose [Deploy](#).

## 10.2.3 Analytic Privileges

Analytic privileges grant different users access to different portions of data in the same view based on their business role. Within the definition of an analytic privilege, the conditions that control which data users see is either contained in an XML document or defined using SQL.

Standard object privileges (SELECT, ALTER, DROP, and so on) implement coarse-grained authorization at object level only. Users either have access to an object, such as a table, view or procedure, or they don't. While this is often sufficient, there are cases when access to data in an object depends on certain values or combinations of values. Analytic privileges are used in the SAP HANA database to provide such fine-grained control at row level of which data individual users can see within the same view.

## Example

Sales data for all regions are contained within one analytic view. However, regional sales managers should only see the data for their region. In this case, an analytic privilege could be modeled so that they can all query the view, but only the data that each user is authorized to see is returned.

## XML- Versus SQL-Based Analytic Privileges

Before you implement row-level authorization using analytic privileges, you need to decide which type of analytic privilege is suitable for your scenario. In general, SQL-based analytic privileges allow you to more easily formulate complex filter conditions that might be cumbersome to model using XML-based analytic privileges.

The following are the main differences between XML-based and SQL-based analytic privileges:

Table 117:

Feature	SQL-Based Analytic Privileges	XML-Based Analytic Privileges
Control of read-only access to SAP HANA information models: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Attribute views</li><li>Analytic views</li><li>Calculation views</li></ul>	Yes	Yes
Control of read-only access to SQL views	Yes	No
Control of read-only access to database tables	No	No
Design-time modeling in the <i>Editor</i> tool of the SAP HANA Web Workbench	Yes	Yes
Design-time modeling in the <i>SAP HANA Modeler</i> perspective of the SAP HANA studio	Yes	Yes
Transportable	Yes	Yes
Complex filtering	Yes	No

## Enabling an Authorization Check Based on Analytic Privileges

All column views modeled and activated in the SAP HANA modeler and the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench automatically enforce an authorization check based on analytic privileges. XML-based analytic privileges are selected by default, but you can switch to SQL-based analytic privileges.

Column views created using SQL must be explicitly registered for such a check by passing the relevant parameter:

- `REGISTERVIEWFORAPCHECK` for a check based on XML-based analytic privileges
- `STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE CHECK` for a check based on SQL-based analytic privileges

SQL views must always be explicitly registered for an authorization check based analytic privileges by passing the STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE CHECK parameter.

**i** Note

It is not possible to enforce an authorization check on the same view using both XML-based and SQL-based analytic privileges. However, it is possible to build views with different authorization checks on each other.

### 10.2.3.1 Structure of XML-Based Analytic Privileges

An analytic privilege consists of a set of restrictions against which user access to a particular attribute view, analytic view, or calculation view is verified. In an XML-based analytic privilege, these restrictions are specified in an XML document that conforms to a defined XML schema definition (XSD).

Each restriction in an XML-based analytic privilege controls the authorization check on the restricted view using a set of value filters. A value filter defines a check condition that verifies whether or not the values of the view (or view columns) qualify for user access.

The following restriction types can be used to restrict data access:

- View
- Activity
- Validity
- Attribute

The following operators can be used to define value filters in the restrictions.

**i** Note

The activity and validity restrictions support only a subset of these operators.

- IN <list of scalar values>
- CP <pattern with \*>
- EQ (=), LE (<=), LT (<), GT (>), GE (>=) <scalar value>
- BT <scalar value as lower limit><scalar value as upper limit>
- IS\_NULL
- NOT\_NULL

All of the above operators, except IS\_NULL and NOT\_NULL, accept empty strings (" ") as filter operands. IS\_NULL and NOT\_NULL do not allow any input value.

The following are examples of how empty strings can be used with the filter operators:

- For the IN operator: IN ("", "A", "B") to filter on these exact values
- As a lower limit in comparison operators, such as:
  - BT ("", "XYZ"), which is equivalent to NOT\_NULL AND LE "XYZ""GT "", which is equivalent to NOT\_NULL
  - LE "", which is equivalent to EQ ""
  - LT "", which will always return false
  - CP "", which is equivalent to EQ ""

The filter conditions CP "\*" will also return rows with empty-string as values in the corresponding attribute.

## View Restriction

This restriction specifies to which column view(s) the analytic privilege applies. It can be a single view, a list of views, or all views. An analytic privilege must have exactly one cube restriction.

### Example

```
IN ("Cube1", "Cube2")
```

### Note

When an analytic view is created in the SAP HANA modeler, automatically-generated views are included automatically in the cube restriction.

### Note

The SAP HANA modeler uses a special syntax to specify the cube names in the view restriction:

```
_SYS_BIC:<package_hierarchy>/<view_name>
```

For example:

```
<cubes>
 <cube name="_SYS_BIC:test.sales/AN_SALES" />
 <cube name="_SYS_BIC:test.sales/AN_SALES/olap" />
</cubes>
```

## Activity Restriction

This restriction specifies the activities that the user is allowed to perform on the restricted view(s), for example, read data. An analytic privilege must have exactly one activity restriction.

### Example

```
EQ "read", or EQ "edit"
```

### Note

Currently, all analytic privileges created in the SAP HANA modeler are automatically configured to restrict access to READ activity only. This corresponds to SQL SELECT queries. This is due to the fact that the attribute, analytic, and calculation views are read-only views. This restriction is therefore not configurable.

## Validity Restriction

This restriction specifies the validity period of the analytic privilege. An analytic privilege must have exactly one validity restriction.

### Example

GT 2010/10/01 01:01:00.000

## Attribute Restriction

This restriction specifies the value range that the user is permitted to access. Attribute restrictions are applied to the actual attributes of a view. Each attribute restriction is relevant for one attribute, which can contain multiple value filters. Each value filter represents a logical filter condition.

### Note

The SAP HANA modeler uses different ways to specify attribute names in the attribute restriction depending on the type of view providing the attribute. In particular, attributes from attribute views are specified using the syntax "`<package_hierarchy>/<view_name>$<attribute_name>`", while local attributes of analytic views and calculation views are specified using their attribute name only. For example:

```
<dimensionAttribute name="test.sales/AT_PRODUCT$PRODUCT_NAME">
<restrictions>
 <valueFilter operator="IN">
 <value value="Car" />
 <value value="Bike" />
 </valueFilter>
</restrictions>
</dimensionAttribute>
```

Value filters for attribute restrictions can be static or dynamic.

- A **static** value filter consists of an operator and either a list of values as the filter operands or a single value as the filter operand. All data types are supported except those for LOB data types (CLOB, BLOB, and NCLOB).

For example, a value filter (EQ 2006) can be defined for an attribute YEAR in a dimension restriction to filter accessible data using the condition YEAR=2006 for potential users.

### Note

Only attributes, not aggregatable facts (for example, measures or key figures) can be used in dimension restrictions for analytic views.

- A **dynamic** value filter consists of an operator and a stored procedure call that determines the operand value at runtime.

For example, a value filter (`IN (GET_MATERIAL_NUMBER_FOR_CURRENT_USER())`) is defined for the attribute MATERIAL\_NUMBER. This filter indicates that a user with this analytic privilege is only allowed to access material data with the numbers returned by the procedure

`GET_MATERIAL_NUMBER_FOR_CURRENT_USER`.

It is possible to combine static and dynamic value filters as shown in the following example.

### Example

```
<dimensionAttribute name=" test.sales/AT_PRODUCT$PRODUCT_NAME ">
 <restrictions>
 <valueFilter operator="CP"> <value value="ELECTRO*"/> </valueFilter>
 <valueFilter operator="IN"> <procedureCall schema="PROCEDURE_OWNER"
procedure="DETERMINE_AUTHORIZED_PRODUCT_FOR_USER" /> </valueFilter>
 </restrictions>
</dimensionAttribute>
<dimensionAttribute name=" test.sales/AT_TIME$YEAR ">
 <restrictions>
 <valueFilter operator="EQ"> <value value="2012"/> </valueFilter>
 <valueFilter operator="IN"> <procedureCall schema="PROCEDURE_OWNER"
procedure="DETERMINE_AUTHORIZED_YEAR_FOR_USER" /> </valueFilter>
 </restrictions>
```

An analytic privilege can have multiple attribute restrictions, but it must have at least one attribute restriction. An attribute restriction must have at least one value filter. Therefore, if you want to permit access to the whole content of a restricted view, then the attribute restriction must specify all attributes.

Similarly, if you want to permit access to the whole content of the view with the corresponding attribute, then the value filter must specify all values.

The SAP HANA modeler automatically implements these two cases if you do not select either an attribute restriction or a value filter.

### Example

Specification of all attributes:

```
<dimensionAttributes>
 <allDimensionAttributes/ >
</dimensionAttributes>
```

### Example

Specification of all values of an attribute:

```
<dimensionAttributes>
 <dimensionAttribute name="PRODUCT">
 <all />
 </dimensionAttribute>
</dimensionAttributes>
```

## Logical Combination of Restrictions and Filter Conditions

The result of user queries on restricted views is filtered according to the conditions specified by the analytic privileges granted to the user as follows:

- Multiple analytic privileges are combined with the logical operator OR.

- Within one analytic privilege, all attribute restrictions are combined with the logical operator AND.
- Within one attribute restriction, all value filters on the attribute are combined with the logical operator OR.

### Example

You create two analytic privileges AP1 and AP2. AP1 has the following attribute restrictions:

- Restriction R11 restricting the attribute Year with the value filters (EQ 2006) and (BT 2008, 2010)
- Restriction R12 restricting the attribute Country with the value filter (IN ("USA", "Germany"))

Given that multiple value filters are combined with the logical operator OR and multiple attribute restrictions are combined with the logical operator AND, AP1 generates the condition:

```
((Year = 2006) OR (Year BT 2008 and 2010)) AND (Country IN ("USA", "Germany"))
```

AP2 has the following restriction:

Restriction R21 restricting the attribute Country with the value filter (EQ "France")

AP2 generates the condition:

```
(Country = "France")
```

Any query of a user who has been granted both AP1 and AP2 will therefore be appended with the following WHERE clause:

```
((Year = 2006) OR (Year BT 2008 and 2010)) AND (Country IN ("USA", "Germany"))
OR (Country = "France")
```

## 10.2.3.1.1 Dynamic Value Filters in the Attribute Restriction of XML-Based Analytic Privileges

The attribute restriction of an XML-based analytic privilege specifies the value range that the user is permitted to access using value filters. In addition to static scalar values, stored procedures can be used to define filters.

By using storing procedures to define filters, you can have user-specific filter conditions be determined dynamically in runtime, for example, by querying specified tables or views. As a result, the same analytic privilege can be applied to many users, while the filter values for authorization can be updated and changed independently in the relevant database tables. In addition, application developers have full control not only to design and manage such filter conditions, but also to design the logic for obtaining the relevant filter values for the individual user at runtime.

Procedures used to define filter conditions must have the following properties:

- They must have the security mode DEFINER.
- They must be read-only procedures.
- A procedure with a predefined signature must be used. The following conditions apply:
  - No input parameter
  - Only 1 output parameter as table type with one single column for the IN operator
  - Only 1 output parameter of a scalar type for all unary operators, such as EQUAL
  - Only 2 output parameters of a scalar type for the binary operator BETWEEN

- Only the following data types are supported as the scalar types and the data type of the column in the table type:
  - Date/Time types DATE, TIME, SECONDDATE, and TIMESTAMP
  - Numeric types TINYINT, SMALLINT, INTEGER, BIGINT, DECIMAL, REAL, and DOUBLE
  - Character string types VARCHAR and NVARCHAR
  - Binary type VARBINARY

## NULL as Operand for Filter Operators

In static value filters, it is not possible to specify NULL as the operand of the operator. The operators IS\_NULL or NOT\_NULL must be used instead. In dynamic value filters where a procedure is used to determine a filter condition, NULL or valid values may be returned. The following behavior applies in the evaluation of such cases during the authorization check of a user query:

Filter conditions of operators with NULL as the operand are disregarded, in particular the following:

- EQ NULL, GT NULL, LT NULL, LE NULL, and CP NULL
- BT NULL and NULL

If no valid filter conditions remain (that is, they have all been disregarded because they contain the NULL operand), the user query is rejected with a "Not authorized" error.

### Example

Dynamic analytic privilege 1 generates the filter condition (Year >= NULL) and dynamic analytic privilege 2 generates the condition (Country EQ NULL). The query of a user assigned these analytic privileges (combined with the logical operator OR) will return a "Not authorized" error.

### Example

Dynamic analytic privilege 1 generates the filter condition (Year >= NULL) and dynamic analytic privilege 2 generates the condition (Country EQ NULL AND Currency = "USD"). The query of a user assigned these analytic privileges (combined with the logical operator OR) will be filtered with the filter Currency = 'USD'.

In addition, a user query is not authorized in the following cases even if further applicable analytic privileges have been granted to the user.

- The BT operator has as input operands a valid scalar value and NULL, for example, BT 2002 and NULL or BT NULL and 2002
- The IN operator has as input operand NULL among the value list, for example, IN (12, 13, NULL)

## Permitting Access to All Values

If you want to allow the user to see all the values of a particular attribute, instead of filtering for certain values, the procedure must return "\*" and "" (empty string) as the operand for the CP and GT operators respectively. These are the only operators that support the specification of all values.

## Implementation Considerations

When the procedure is executed as part of the authorization check in runtime, note the following:

- The user who must be authorized is the database user who executes the query accessing a secured view. This is the session user. The database table or view used in the procedure must therefore contain a column to store the user name of the session user. The procedure can then filter by this column using the SQL function SESSION\_USER. This table or view should only be accessible to the procedure owner.

### Caution

Do not map the executing user to the application user. The application user is unreliable because it is controlled by the client application. For example, it may set the application user to a technical user or it may not set it at all. In addition, the trustworthiness of the client application cannot be guaranteed.

- The user executing the procedure is the \_SYS\_REPO user. In the case of procedures activated in the SAP HANA modeler, \_SYS\_REPO is the owner of the procedures. For procedures created in SQL, the EXECUTE privilege on the procedure must be granted to the \_SYS\_REPO user.
- If the procedure fails to execute, the user's query stops processing and a "Not authorized" error is returned. The root cause can be investigated in the error trace file of the indexserver,  
`indexserver_alert_<host>.trc`.

When designing and implementing procedures as filter for dynamic analytic privileges, bear the following in mind:

- To avoid a recursive analytic privilege check, the procedures should only select from database tables or views that are not subject to an authorization check based on analytic privileges. In particular, views activated in the SAP HANA modeler are to be avoided completely as they are automatically registered for the analytic privilege check.
- The execution of procedures in analytic privileges slows down query processing compared to analytic privileges containing only static filters. Therefore, procedures used in analytic privileges must be designed carefully.

### 10.2.3.1.2 Example: Create an XML-Based Analytic Privilege with Dynamic Value Filter

Use the CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE statement to create an XML-based analytic privilege that contains a dynamic procedure-based value filter and a fixed value filter in the attribute restriction.

#### Context

##### Note

The analytic privilege in this example is created using the CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE statement. Under normal circumstances, you create XML-based analytic privileges using the SAP HANA modeler or the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench. Analytic privileges created using CREATE STRUCTURED

PRIVILEGE are not owned by the user \_SYS\_REPO. They can be granted and revoked only by the actual database user who creates them.

Assume you want to restrict access to product data in secured views as follows:

- Users should only see products beginning with ELECTRO, or
- Users should only see products for which they are specifically authorized. This information is contained in the database table PRODUCT\_AUTHORIZATION\_TABLE in the schema AUTHORIZATION.

To be able to implement the second filter condition, you need to create a procedure that will determine which products a user is authorized to see by querying the table PRODUCT\_AUTHORIZATION\_TABLE.

## Procedure

1. Create the table type for the output parameter of the procedure:

```
CREATE TYPE "AUTHORIZATION"."PRODUCT_OUTPUT" AS TABLE ("PRODUCT" int);
```

2. Create the table that the procedure will use to check authorization:

```
CREATE TABLE "AUTHORIZATION"."PRODUCT_AUTHORIZATION_TABLE" ("USER_NAME" NVARCHAR(128), "PRODUCT" int);
```

3. Create the procedure that will determine which products the database user executing the query is authorized to see based on information contained in the product authorization table:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE "AUTHORIZATION"."DETERMINEAUTHORIZED_PRODUCT_FOR_USER" (OUT VAL "AUTHORIZATION"."PRODUCT_OUTPUT")
LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT SQL SECURITY DEFINER READS SQL DATA AS
BEGIN
 VAL = SELECT PRODUCT FROM "AUTHORIZATION"."PRODUCT_AUTHORIZATION_TABLE"
 WHERE USER_NAME = SESSION_USER;
END;
```

### Note

The session user is the database user who is executing the query to access a secured view. This is therefore the user whose privileges must be checked. For this reason, the table or view used in the procedure should contain a column to store the user name so that the procedure can filter on this column using the SQL function SESSION\_USER.

### Caution

Do not map the executing user to the application user. The application user is unreliable because it is controlled by the client application. For example, it may set the application user to a technical user or it may not set it at all. In addition, the trustworthiness of the client application cannot be guaranteed.

4. Create the analytic privilege:

```
CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE '<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<analyticPrivilegeSchema version="1">
 <analyticPrivilege name="AP2">
 <cubes>
 <allCubes />
 </analyticPrivilege>
</analyticPrivilegeSchema>'
```

```

</cubes>
<validity>
 <anyTime/>
</validity>
<activities>
 <activity activity="read" />
</activities>
<dimensionAttributes>
 <dimensionAttribute name="PRODUCT">
 <restrictions>
 <valueFilter operator="CP"> <value value="ELECTRO*" /> </valueFilter>
 <valueFilter operator="IN"> <procedureCall schema="AUTHORIZATION">
 procedure="DETERMINE_AUTHORIZED_PRODUCT_FOR_USER" /> </valueFilter>
 </restrictions>
 </dimensionAttribute>
</dimensionAttributes>
</analyticPrivilege>
</analyticPrivilegeSchema>';

```

## Results

Now when a database user requests access to a secured view containing product information, the data returned will be filtered according to the following condition:

```
(product LIKE "ELECTRO*" OR product IN
(AUTHORIZATION.DETERMINE_AUTHORIZED_PRODUCT_FOR_USER()))
```

### 10.2.3.2 Structure of SQL-Based Analytic Privileges

An analytic privilege consists of a set of restrictions against which user access to a particular attribute view, analytic view, calculation view, or SQL view is verified. In an SQL-based analytic privilege, these restrictions are specified as filter conditions that are fully SQL based.

SQL-based analytic privileges are created in the *Editor* tool of the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench (▶ **New** ▶ **Analytic Privilege** ▶ **Type: SQL** ▷) on the basis of the CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE statement:

```
CREATE STRUCTURED PRVILEGE <privilege_name> FOR <action> ON <view_name>
<filter_condition>
```

The FOR clause is used to restrict the type of access (only the SELECT action is supported). The ON clause is used to restrict access to one or more views with the same filter attributes.

The <filter condition> parameter is used to restrict the data visible to individual users. The following methods of specifying filter conditions are possible:

- Fixed filter (WHERE) clause
- Dynamically generated filter (CONDITION PROVIDER) clause

## Fixed Filter Clauses

A **fixed filter clause** consists of an WHERE clause that is specified in the definition of the analytic privilege itself.

You can express fixed filter conditions freely using SQL, including subqueries.

By incorporating built-in SQL functions into the subqueries, in particular SESSION\_USER, you can define an even more flexible filter condition.

### Example

```
country IN (SELECT a.country FROM authorizationtable a WHERE SESSION_USER= a.user_name)
```

### Note

A **calculation view** cannot be secured using an SQL-based analytic privilege that contains a complex filter condition if the view is defined on top of analytic and/or attributes views that themselves are secured with an SQL-based analytic privilege with a complex filter condition.

### Remember

If you use a subquery, you (the creating user) must have the required privileges on the database objects (tables and views) involved in the subquery.

Comparative conditions can be nested and combined using AND and OR (with corresponding brackets).

For examples, see *Examples: Securing Views Using SQL-Based Analytic Privileges*.

## Dynamically Generated Filter Clauses

With a dynamically generated filter clause, the WHERE clause that specifies the filter condition is generated every time the analytic privilege is evaluated. This is useful in an environment in which the filter clause changes very dynamically. The filter condition is determined by a procedure specified in the CONDITION PROVIDER clause, for example:

### Sample Code

```
CREATE STRUCTURED PRVILEGE dynamic_ap FOR SELECT ON schema1.v1 CONDITION PROVIDER
schema2.procedure1;
```

Procedures in the CONDITION PROVIDER clause must have the following properties:

- They must have the security mode DEFINER.
- They must be read-only procedures.
- They must have a predefined signature. Here, the following conditions apply:
  - No input parameter
  - Only one output parameter for the filter condition string

- The procedure may only return conditions expressed with the following operators:
  - =, <=, <, >, >=
  - LIKE
  - BETWEEN
  - IN
- A complex filter condition, that is a subquery, may not be returned.
- The procedure must be executable by \_SYS\_REPO, that is, either \_SYS\_REPO must be the owner of the procedure or the owner of the procedure has all privileges on the underlying tables/views with GRANT OPTION and has granted the EXECUTE privilege on the procedure to the \_SYS\_REPO user.

If errors occur in procedure execution, the user receives a Not authorized error, even if he has the analytic privileges that would grant access.

For examples, see *Examples: Securing Views Using SQL-Based Analytic Privileges*.

## Related Information

[Examples: Securing Views Using SQL-Based Analytic Privileges \[page 778\]](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

### 10.2.3.2.1 Examples: Securing Views Using SQL-Based Analytic Privileges

Use the CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE statement to create SQL-based analytic privileges for different scenarios.

## Context

The examples provided here take you through the following scenarios:

- [Example 1: Securing a column view using an SQL-based analytic privilege with a fixed filter clause \[page 779\]](#)
- [Example 2: Securing an SQL view using an SQL-based analytic privilege with a complex filter clause \(subquery\) \[page 780\]](#)
- [Example 3: Securing a column view using an SQL-based analytic privilege with a dynamically generated filter clause \[page 782\]](#)

#### i Note

The analytic privileges in these example are created using the CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE statement. Under normal circumstances, you create SQL-based analytic privileges using the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench. Analytic privileges created using CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE

are not owned by the user \_SYS\_REPO. They can be granted and revoked only by the actual database user who creates them.

## Example 1: Secure a Column View Using an SQL-Based Analytic Privilege with a Fixed Filter Clause

### Prerequisites

The database user TABLEOWNER has set up a calculation scenario based on the table SALES\_TABLE, which contains the data to be protected.

### Context

All sales data is contained in a single view. You want to restrict user access so that sales managers can see only information about the product "car" in the sales region UK and Germany. You want to do this by creating an analytic privilege with a fixed filter clause.

A fixed filter clause consists of an SQL WHERE clause that is specified in the definition of the analytic privilege itself.

### Procedure

1. Create the view containing the sales data:

```
CREATE COLUMN VIEW "TABLEOWNER"."VIEW_SALES" TYPE CALCULATION WITH PARAMETERS
('PARENTCALCINDEXSCHEMA'='TABLEOWNER',
 'PARENTCALCINDEX'='CALCSCEN_SALES',
 'PARENTCALCNODE'='SALES_TABLE',
 'REGISTERVIEWFORAPCHECK'='0') STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE CHECK
;
```

#### Note

You can see above that the authorization check using XML-based analytic privileges is disabled with 'REGISTERVIEWFORAPCHECK'='0', while the authorization check using SQL-based analytic privileges is enabled with STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE CHECK. Both checks cannot be enabled at the same time.

2. Create the analytic privilege:

```
CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE AP_SALES_1 FOR SELECT
 ON TABLEOWNER.VIEW_SALES
 WHERE REGION IN ('DE', 'UK')
 OR PRODUCT = 'CAR'
;
```

### ➔ Remember

When specifying filters, remember the following:

- You can specify only the SELECT action in the FOR clause.
- You can specify one or more views with the same filter attributes in the ON clause
- You can specify comparative conditions between attributes and constant values using only the following operators:
  - =, <=, <, >, >=
  - LIKE
  - BETWEEN
  - IN
- You can create complex filter conditions by including SQL statements as subqueries inside the WHERE clause. Example 2 illustrates how you do this. But remember: A **calculation view** cannot be secured using an SQL-based analytic privilege that contains a complex filter condition if the view is defined on top of analytic and/or attributes views that themselves are secured with an SQL-based analytic privilege with a complex filter condition.  
Also remember that if you use a subquery, you must have the required privileges on the database objects (tables and views) involved in the subquery.

3. Grant the SELECT privilege on the view TABLEOWNER.VIEW\_SALES to the relevant users/roles:

```
GRANT SELECT on TABLEOWNER.VIEW_SALES to <SALES_MANAGERS>;
```

### ➔ Remember

Only the view owner or a user who has the SELECT privilege WITH GRANT OPTION on the view can perform the grant.

4. Grant the analytic privilege to the relevant users/roles:

```
GRANT STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE AP_SALES_1 TO <SALES_MANAGERS>;
```

### ➔ Remember

Only the owner of the analytic privilege can grant it.

## Example 2: Secure an SQL View Using an SQL-Based Analytic Privilege with a Complex Filter Clause (Subquery)

### Prerequisites

The database user TABLEOWNER has created a table TABLEOWNER.SALES, which contains the data to be protected.

## Context

All sales data is contained in a single view. You want to restrict access of user MILLER so that he can see only product information from the year 2008. You want to do this by creating an analytic privilege with a complex filter clause.

With a complex filter clause, the SQL WHERE clause that specifies the filter condition includes an SQL statement, or a subquery. This allows you to create complex filter conditions to control which data individual users see.

## Procedure

1. Create the view containing the sales data which needs to be secured:

```
CREATE VIEW "VIEWOWNER"."ROW_VIEW_SALES_ON_SALES" AS SELECT
 * FROM "TABLEOWNER"."SALES" WITH STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE CHECK
;
```

➔ Remember

The user creating the view must have the SELECT privilege WITH GRANT OPTION on the table TABLEOWNER.SALES.

2. Create the table containing user-specific authorization data:

```
CREATE COLUMN TABLE "VIEWOWNER"."AUTHORIZATION_VALUES" ("VALUE" VARCHAR(256),
 "USER_NAME" VARCHAR(20));
```

3. Insert authorization information for user MILLER:

```
INSERT INTO "VIEWOWNER"."AUTHORIZATION_VALUES" VALUES ('2008', 'MILLER');
```

4. Create the analytic privilege using a subquery as the condition provider:

```
CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE AP_ROW_VIEW_SALES_ON_SALES FOR SELECT
 ON "VIEWOWNER"."ROW_VIEW_SALES_ON_SALES"
 WHERE (CURRENT_DATE BETWEEN 2015-01-01 AND 2015-01-11) AND YEAR IN (SELECT
 VALUE FROM VIEWOWNER.AUTHORIZATION_VALUES WHERE USER_NAME = SESSION_USER)
;
```

➔ Remember

- Subqueries allow you to create complex filter conditions, but remember: A **calculation view** cannot be secured using an SQL-based analytic privilege that contains a complex filter condition if the view is defined on top of analytic and/or attributes views that themselves are secured with an SQL-based analytic privilege with a complex filter condition.
- The user creating the analytic privilege must have the SELECT privilege on the objects involved in the subquery, in this case table VIEWOWNER.AUTHORIZATION\_VALUES.
- The session user is the database user who is executing the query to access a secured view. This is therefore the user whose privileges must be checked. For this reason, the table containing the authorization information needs a column to store the user name so that the subquery can filter on this column using the SQL function SESSION\_USER.

### Caution

Do not map the executing user to the application user. The application user is unreliable because it is controlled by the client application. For example, it may set the application user to a technical user or it may not set it at all. In addition, the trustworthiness of the client application cannot be guaranteed.

5. Grant the SELECT privilege on the view VIEWOWNER.ROW\_VIEW\_SALES\_ON\_SALES to user MILLER.

```
GRANT SELECT ON "VIEWOWNER"."ROW_VIEW_SALES_ON_SALES" TO MILLER;
```

### ➔ Remember

Only the view owner or a user who has the SELECT privilege WITH GRANT OPTION on the view can perform the grant.

6. Grant the analytic privilege to user MILLER.

```
GRANT STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE AP_ROW_SALES_ON_SALES TO MILLER;
```

### ➔ Remember

Only the owner of the analytic privilege can grant it.

## Example 3: Secure a Column View Using an SQL-Based Analytic Privilege with a Dynamically Generated Filter Clause

### Prerequisites

The database user TABLEOWNER has set up a calculation scenario based on the table SALES\_TABLE, which contains the data to be protected.

### Context

All sales data is contained in a single view. You want to restrict access of user ADAMS so that he can see only information about cars bought by customer Company A or bikes sold in 2006. You want to do this by creating an analytic privilege with a dynamically generated filter clause.

With a dynamically generated filter clause, the SQL WHERE clause that specifies the filter condition is generated every time the analytic privilege is evaluated. This is useful in an environment in which the filter clause changes very dynamically.

## Procedure

1. Create the view containing the sales data:

```
CREATE COLUMN VIEW "TABLEOWNER"."VIEW_SALES" TYPE CALCULATION WITH PARAMETERS
('PARENTCALCINDEXSCHEMA'='TABLEOWNER',
 'PARENTCALCINDEX'='CALCSCEN_SALES',
 'PARENTCALCNODE'='SALES_TABLE',
 'REGISTERVIEWFORAPCHECK'='0') STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE CHECK
;
```

2. Create a table containing user-specific filter strings:

```
CREATE COLUMN TABLE "AUTHORIZATION"."AUTHORIZATION_FILTERS" ("FILTER"
VARCHAR(256),
"USER_NAME" VARCHAR(20))
;
```

3. Create an authorization filter for user ADAMS:

```
INSERT
INTO "AUTHORIZATION"."AUTHORIZATION_FILTERS" VALUES ('(CUSTOMER='Company A'
AND PRODUCT='Car') OR (YEAR='2006' AND PRODUCT='Bike'))',
'ADAMS')
;
```

### ➔ Remember

Filters containing comparative conditions must be defined as specified in example 1.

4. Create the database procedure that provides the filter clause for the analytic privilege and grant it to user \_SYS\_REPO:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE "PROCOWNER"."GET_FILTER_FOR_USER" (OUT OUT_FILTER
VARCHAR(256))
LANGUAGE SQLSCRIPT SQL SECURITY DEFINER READS SQL DATA AS
 v_Filter VARCHAR(256);
 CURSOR v_Cursor FOR SELECT "FILTER" FROM
"PROCOWNER"."AUTHORIZATION_FILTERS" WHERE "USER_NAME" = SESSION_USER;
BEGIN
 OPEN v_Cursor;
 FETCH v_Cursor INTO v_Filter;
 OUT_FILTER := v_Filter;
 CLOSE v_Cursor;
END;
GRANT EXECUTE ON "PROCOWNER"."GET_FILTER_FOR_USER" TO _SYS_REPO;
```

### ➔ Remember

When using procedures as the condition provider in an SQL-based analytic privilege, remember the following:

- Procedures must have the following properties:
  - They must have the security mode DEFINER.
  - They must be read-only procedures.
  - A procedure with a predefined signature must be used. The following conditions apply:
    - No input parameter
    - Only 1 output parameter of VARCHAR(256) or NVARCHAR(256) type for the filter condition string

- The procedure may **not** return a complex filter condition, that is a subquery.
- The procedure must be executable by \_SYS\_REPO, that is, either \_SYS\_REPO must be the owner of the procedure or the owner of the procedure has all privileges on the underlying tables/views with GRANT OPTION and has granted the EXECUTE privilege on the procedure to the \_SYS\_REPO user.
- The session user is the database user who is executing the query to access a secured view. This is therefore the user whose privileges must be checked. For this reason, the table or view used in the procedure should contain a column to store the user name so that the procedure can filter on this column using the SQL function SESSION\_USER.
- If errors occur in procedure execution, the user receives a `Not authorized` error, even if he has the analytic privileges that would grant access.

5. Create the analytic privilege using the procedure as condition provider:

```
CREATE STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE AP_SALES_2 FOR SELECT ON
"TABLEOWNER"."VIEW_SALES" CONDITION PROVIDER
"AUTHORIZATION"."GET_FILTER_FOR_USER";
```

On evaluation of the analytic privilege for user ADAMS, the WHERE clause (`CUSTOMER='Company A'` AND `PRODUCT='Car'`) OR (`YEAR='2006'` AND `PRODUCT='Bike'`), as provided by the procedure `GET_FILTER_FOR_USER`, will be used.

6. Grant the SELECT privilege on the view TABLEOWNER.VIEW\_SALES to user ADAMS:

```
GRANT SELECT on TABLEOWNER.VIEW_SALES to ADAMS;
```

➔ Remember

Only the view owner or a user who has the SELECT privilege WITH GRANT OPTION on the view can perform the grant.

7. Grant the analytic privilege to user ADAMS:

```
GRANT STRUCTURED PRIVILEGE AP_SALES_2 TO ADAMS;
```

➔ Remember

Only the owner of the analytic privilege can grant it.

### 10.2.3.3 Runtime Authorization Check of Analytic Privileges

When a user requests access to data stored in an attribute, analytic, calculation, or SQL views, an authorization check based on analytic privileges is performed and the data returned to the user is filtered accordingly. The `EFFECTIVE_STRUCTURED_PRIVILEGES` system view can help you to troubleshoot authorization problems.

Access to a view and the way in which results are filtered depend on whether the view is independent or associated with other views (dependent views).

## Independent Views

The authorization check for a view that is not defined on another column view is as follows:

1. The user's authorization to access the view is checked.

A user can access the view if **both** of the following prerequisites are met:

- The user has been granted the SELECT privilege on the view or the schema in which it is located.

### **i** Note

The user does not require SELECT on the underlying base tables or views of the view.

- The user has been granted an analytic privilege that is applicable to the view.

Applicable analytic privileges are those that meet **all** of the following criteria:

Table 118:

XML-Based Analytic Privilege	SQL-Based Analytic Privilege
A view restriction that includes the accessed view	An ON clause that includes the accessed view
A validity restriction that applies now	If the filter condition specifies a validity period (for example, WHERE (CURRENT_TIME BETWEEN ... AND ....) AND <actual filter>) , it must apply now
An action in the activity restriction that covers the action requested by the query	An action in the FOR clause that covers the action requested by the query
<b>i</b> Note  All analytic privileges created and activated in the SAP HANA modeler and SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench fulfill this condition. The only action supported is read access (SELECT).	<b>i</b> Note  All analytic privileges created and activated in the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench fulfill this condition. The only action supported is read access (SELECT).
An attribute restriction that includes some of the view's attributes	A filter condition that applies to the view
	<b>i</b> Note  When the analytic privilege is created, the filter is checked immediately to ensure that it applies to the view. If it doesn't, creation will fail. However, if the view definition subsequently changes, or if a dynamically generated filter condition returns a filter string that is not executable with the view, the authorization check will fail and access is rejected.

If the user has the SELECT privilege on the view but no applicable analytic privileges, the user's request is rejected with a `Not authorized` error. The same is true if the user has an applicable analytic privilege but doesn't have the SELECT privilege on the view.

2. The value filters specified in the dimension restrictions (XML-based) or filter condition (SQL-based) are evaluated and the appropriate data is returned to the user. Multiple analytic privileges are combined with the logical operator OR.

For more information about how multiple attribute restrictions and/or multiple value filters in XML-based analytic privileges are combined, see *XML-Based Analytic Privileges*.

## Dependent Views

The authorization check for a view that is defined on other column views is more complex. Note the following behavior:

- **Calculation and SQL views**

Calculation views and SQL views can be defined by selecting data from other column views, specifically attribute views, analytic views, and other calculation views. This can lead to a complex view hierarchy that requires careful design of row-level authorization.

If a user requests access to a calculation view that is dependent on another view, the behavior of the authorization check and result filtering is performed as follows:

A user can access a calculation or SQL view based on other view(s) if **both** of the following prerequisites are met:

- The user has been granted the SELECT privilege on the view or the schema that contains the view.
- The user has been granted analytic privileges that apply to the view itself **and** all the other column views in the hierarchy that are registered for a structured privilege check.

Result filtering on the view is then performed as follows:

- Individual views in the hierarchy are filtered according to their respective analytic privileges, which use the logical OR combination.
- The filtered result of the calculation view is derived from the filtered result of its underlying views. This corresponds to a logic AND combination of the filters generated by the analytic privileges for the individual views.

- **Analytic views**

If an analytic view designed in the SAP HANA modeler contains one of the elements listed below, it will automatically be activated with a calculation view on top. The name of this calculation view is the name of the analytic view with the suffix /o1ap.

- Currency or unit conversions
- Calculated attributes
- Calculated measures that use attributes, calculated attributes, or input parameters in their formulas

This represents a view hierarchy for which the prerequisites described above for calculation views also apply.

An analytic view can also be defined on attribute views, but this does **not** represent a view dependency or hierarchy with respect to authorization check and result filtering. If you reference an attribute view in an analytic view, analytic privileges defined on the attribute view are not applied.

## Troubleshooting Failed Authorization

Using the EFFECTIVE\_STRUCTURED\_PRIVILEGES system view, you can quickly see:

- Which analytic privileges apply to a particular view, including the dynamic filter conditions that apply (if relevant)
- Which filter is being applied to which view in the view hierarchy (for views with dependencies)

- Whether or not a particular user is authorized to access the view

Query EFFECTIVE\_STRUCTURED\_PRIVILEGES as follows:

```
SELECT * from "PUBLIC"."EFFECTIVE_STRUCTURED_PRIVILEGES" where ROOT_SCHEMA_NAME
= '<schema>' AND ROOT_OBJECT_NAME = '<OBJECT>' AND USER_NAME = '<USER>'
```

## Related Information

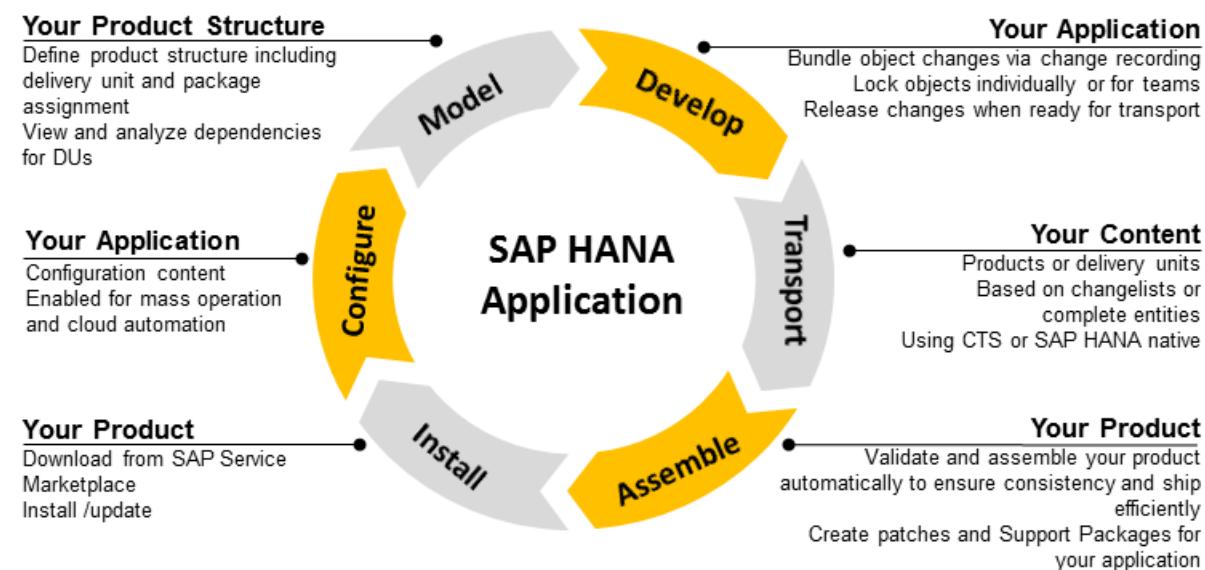
[Structure of XML-Based Analytic Privileges \[page 768\]](#)

[SAP HANA SQL and System Views Reference](#)

# 11 SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management

SAP HANA application lifecycle management supports you in all phases of an SAP HANA application lifecycle, from modeling your product structure, through application development, transport, assemble, and install.

The following graphic illustrates the phases in a product lifecycle of an SAP HANA application:



## Phases of SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management

- **Model**  
You define your product structure to provide a framework for efficient software development. This includes creating delivery units and assigning packages to delivery units. The delivery units are then bundled in products.
- **Develop**  
You perform software development in repository packages. SAP HANA application lifecycle management supports you with change tracking functions.
- **Transport**  
You can transport your developed content in different ways according to your needs. You can choose between transporting products or delivery units, based on changelists or complete entities. The transport type can be native SAP HANA transport or transport using Change and Transport System (CTS). You can also export delivery units, and import them into another system.
- **Assemble**

The developed software plus the metadata defined when modeling your product structure as well as possible translation delivery units are the basis for assembling your add-on product. You can also build Support Packages and patches for your product.

- **Install**

You can install SAP HANA products that you downloaded from SAP Support Portal or that you assembled yourself.

- **Configure**

If the SAP HANA product delivers configuration content, you can use the process engine of SAP HANA application lifecycle management to automate configuration tasks.

All phases of SAP HANA application lifecycle management are documented in the *SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management Guide*. The tasks related to the **Install** and **Configure** phases of SAP HANA application lifecycle management are relevant for system administrators and are therefore also documented in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*. The tasks related to software development are documented in the *SAP HANA Developer Guide (For SAP HANA Studio)*.

## Availability of SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management

SAP HANA application lifecycle management is installed with SAP HANA as automated content. You can access the SAP HANA application lifecycle management functions in different ways:

- Using the **XS user interface SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management** which is available in the following places:
  - On the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`.
  - Using a link in SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench.  
For example, to open the home screen, choose **Lifecycle Management** in the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench Editor tool.
  - Using the context menu in SAP HANA studio.  
For example, to open the home screen from, choose **Lifecycle Management** **Application Lifecycle Management** **Home Screen** from the context menu for a particular system in the *SAP HANA Administration Console* perspective in SAP HANA studio.
  - Using the tile catalog in SAP HANA cockpit.  
There are tiles available both in the *SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management* and in the *SAP HANA Application Installation and Update* groups in SAP HANA cockpit that you can customize according to your needs.
- Using the **command line tool hdbalm**.  
The file is shipped with the SAP HANA client installation. If you leave the default installation options unchanged `hdbalm` is located in the `..\sap\hdbclient` directory.

You cannot perform all application lifecycle management tasks with one tool. For example, assembling products and software components can only be done using the `hdbalm` tool, whereas the full set of transport functions is available only in the XS user interface. Whenever a function is available in the XS user interface it is documented there. When used in SAP HANA studio, the functions are the same as in the XS user interface. Therefore, these options are not separately documented.

### Note

For information about the SAP HANA platform lifecycle management tools, see the *SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide* and *SAP HANA Platform Lifecycle Management* in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*.

## Related Information

[Using hdbalm \[page 837\]](#)

[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide For SAP HANA Studio](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide for SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench](#)

[SAP HANA Server Installation and Update Guide](#)

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

## 11.1 Preparing to Use SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management

Before you can use SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must assign predefined roles to users who need to perform application lifecycle management tasks and set the content vendor ID for the SAP HANA system.

### Prerequisites

To use the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management tool, you must ensure that the following prerequisites are met:

- An SAP HANA system is available.
- SAP HANA XS is up and running on the SAP HANA system.
- You have system privileges on the SAP HANA system (for example, to add users).

For the prerequisites required to use `hdbalm`, see the *Prerequisites* section in the *Using hdbalm* topic. The link to the topic is in the *More Information* section.

### Context

With SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, your authorization level determines which tasks you are able to perform. Authorization levels are granted by assigning the appropriate role, for example,

`sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator`. If you do not have the required level of access, in the Web-based tool, certain buttons are disabled, and certain options are hidden. In `hdbalm`, you receive an error message informing you that authorization is missing.

## Procedure

1. Assign the necessary roles to the users who perform application lifecycle management tasks for example, SAP HANA application lifecycle management administrator tasks.

**i Note**

This step must be performed in the SAP HANA studio or SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench by a user with administrator privileges.

Access to features and options in the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is based on user privileges, which are assigned in user roles, for example, administrator or transport manager.

2. Set the Vendor ID.

The vendor ID sets the namespace in SAP HANA where your application development takes place, for example, “sap.com” or “com.mycompany”.

**i Note**

The namespace `sap` is restricted; you must not develop your own applications in this namespace. Place your packages in your own namespace.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

[Using `hdbalm` \[page 837\]](#)

### 11.1.1 Assign User Roles

Access to features and functionality in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is based on roles and privileges; the role you have determines the tasks you can perform.

## Prerequisites

To assign privileges to users of the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have administrator/system privileges on the SAP HANA system (for example, you can add/maintain database users).

## Context

In the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, the availability of features, screens, tabs, and UI controls (for example, *Add*, *Edit*, *Save*, or *Delete* buttons) is based on user privileges. For the sake of convenience, the specific privileges required to use the features provided with a particular tool have been collected into a selection of specific roles, which you assign to the user who needs to use a particular tool.

**i Note**

To start the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must have been assigned one of the dedicated ALM roles, for example, `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Display`.

To assign the required privileges to people who want to use the features provided by the SAP HANA ALM tool, perform the following steps:

## Procedure

Create a new user or assign the required application lifecycle management role to an existing user who needs to perform a specific task.

For more information on the how to assign roles to users, see *Provisioning Users in the SAP HANA Administration Guide*. For more information on the available application lifecycle management roles, see *SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management Roles*. The links can be found in the *Related Information* section.

The user can now use SAP HANA application lifecycle management to perform the required task.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management Roles \[page 792\]](#)

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

### 11.1.1.1 SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management Roles

To grant users the privileges they require to perform tasks with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must assign them one or more dedicated application lifecycle management roles.

The following table lists the roles that must be assigned to users who want to perform lifecycle-management-related tasks using SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management tool. The roles are hierarchical and

interlinked. For example, by default, the *Administrator* role grants the privileges included in all other roles; the *ExecuteTransport* role grants the privileges assigned in the *Transport* and *Display* roles.

### Note

Some lifecycle-management tasks require interaction with external tools, and this requires additional privileges, which you can grant by assigning the appropriate roles. For example, to register an HTTP destination as part of the setup of a transport route, you need to supply logon credentials for an existing technical user on the source system - the system defined in the HTTP destination configuration. To maintain logon credentials, you can use the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*, which requires privileges assigned in the `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator` role. To display all available roles, start the SAP HANA studio, and in the *SAP HANA Systems* view, expand the node ► *Security* ► *Roles* ▾.

Table 119: SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management Roles

Role Name	Description
<code>sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator</code>	Full read/write access to all the features in the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management tool, including the access privileges granted to all other user roles available in the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, for example, <i>Display</i> , <i>ExecuteTransport</i> , and <i>Transport</i> .
<code>sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Developer</code>	Required if change recording is activated: Enables the user to work on a changelist to which he is assigned and to approve own contributions to the changelist. This role includes the privileges of the <i>Display</i> role.
<code>sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::DevelopmentExpert</code>	Required if change recording is activated: Enables the user to perform all actions involved in change recording (for example, create, assign objects to, release, delete, assign other users to a changelist, approve own or foreign contributions). This role includes the privileges of the <i>Display</i> and the <i>Developer</i> roles.
<code>sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Display</code>	View-only access; some features and options are hidden. A user with this role can view all information available but cannot make any changes or trigger any transport operations.
<code>sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::ExecuteTransport</code>	Users with this role can view all information as well as trigger predefined transport operations. However, users with this role cannot register or maintain systems, create transport routes, or edit details of a product, a delivery unit, or a package.
<code>sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Transport</code>	For technical users only. Do not assign this role to normal users; the required privileges are part of the <i>ExecuteTransport</i> role. The <i>Transport</i> role grants the privileges required for export or import actions during a transport operation. The credentials and privileges of a technical user with the <i>Transport</i> role cannot be used for interactive logons, for example, to start the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.
<code>sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::SLP_display</code>	For technical users used for HTTP-based deployment when using <i>CTS Transport</i> . Users with this role can perform all supported read requests for SL protocol services.

Role Name	Description
sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::SLP_CTS_deploy_admin	For technical users used for HTTP-based deployment when using <i>CTS Transport</i> . Users with this role can perform all supported requests for CTS Deploy SL protocol service.
sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::SLP_CTS_ping_admin	For technical users used for HTTP-based deployment when using <i>CTS Transport</i> . Users with this role can perform all supported requests for CTS Ping SL protocol service.

Table 120: Additional Roles

Role Name	Description
sap.hana.ide.roles::EditorDeveloper	<p>Inspect, create, change, delete and activate SAP HANA repository objects</p> <p>This role is required when you select the <i>Packages</i> tile to maintain SAP HANA Repository Packages in SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench.</p> <p>To create new packages, additional privileges may be required. For more information, see <i>Define Repository Package Privileges</i> in the <i>SAP HANA Developer Guide for Web-based Development Workbench</i>.</p>
sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator	<p>Full access to HTTP destination configurations (display and edit)</p> <p>This role is required when you register a system for a transport route.</p>
sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator	<p>Full access to the configuration settings for SAP HANA XS application security and the related user-authentication providers</p> <p>This role is required when you register a system for a transport route.</p>

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide for Web-based Development Workbench](#)

[Register a System for a Transport Route \[page 799\]](#)

## 11.1.2 Maintain the Delivery-Unit Vendor ID

In SAP HANA, the *vendor ID* is used primarily to define the identity of the company developing a software component that it plans to ship for use with SAP HANA, for example, "sap.com". To create a delivery unit, it is a prerequisite to maintain a vendor ID in your system.

### Prerequisites

To set the vendor ID, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been assigned the SAP HANA XS `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.

### Context

Before creating your own first delivery unit, you must set the identity of the vendor in the development system's configuration. To maintain details of the delivery-unit vendor ID, perform the following steps:

### Procedure

1. Start the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

**i Note**

To start the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must use the logon credentials of an existing database user, who has the appropriate user role assigned.

2. Choose the **SETTINGS** tab.
3. Maintain details of the vendor ID.

In the **SETTINGS** tab, perform the following steps:

- a. Choose *Change Vendor*.
- b. In the *Set Vendor* dialog, enter the name of the new vendor, for example, `mycompany.com`.
- c. Choose **OK** to save the changes.

The new vendor ID appears in the **Vendor** box.

**i Note**

The vendor ID is required to create a delivery unit.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

## 11.2 Setting Up the Transport

You can choose to perform transports in native SAP HANA mode using transport routes or using the Change and Transport System (CTS).

### Prerequisites

To set up the transport you want to use for the entire SAP HANA system, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You must have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` role.
- You must have the privileges granted by the following SAP HANA XS roles:
  - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator`
  - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator`
- You have decided which transport scenario you want to use for this system, [Native SAP HANA transport](#) or [CTS Transport](#). For more information on the scenarios, see *Transport Scenarios in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management*. The link to the topic is in the *Related Information* section.

### Context

Use the following steps to set up your transports using either a native SAP HANA system to transport to a single system or using CTS to transport through a transport landscape defined in CTS.

#### **i** Note

Bear in mind that exports for native SAP HANA are executed on the target system while exports using CTS are started on the source system.

#### **i** Note

If you want to transport SAP HANA content for SAP HANA applications that are closely connected with ABAP applications in terms of content (ABAP for SAP HANA applications), you can also use SAP HANA Transport for ABAP (HTA) as transport tool.

For more information, search for *SAP HANA Transport for ABAP* or *Transport Scenarios for SAP HANA Content* documentation in the SAP NetWeaver documentation on SAP Help Portal at <https://help.sap.com>.

You usually perform these steps once after you have set up the system.

## Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *SETTINGS* tab.
3. In the *Transport* section, make the selection that suits your needs.
  - Ensure that *Enable Native SAP HANA Transport* is selected, if you want to use this option. This is the default setting.
  - Select *Enable CTS Transport*, if you want to use this option.  
In the *Switch Transport Mode* popup, choose *Yes* to confirm your choice.

## Results

If you have selected *CTS Transport*, then the *TRANSPORT* tab changes to *CTS EXPORT*.

If you have changed from *CTS Transport* to *Native SAP HANA Transport*, then the *CTS EXPORT* tab changes to *TRANSPORT*.

To transport objects using *CTS Transport* or *Native SAP HANA Transport*, you must make further settings. Follow the instructions for the transport type that you want to use.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Setting Up and Using Native SAP HANA Transport \[page 798\]](#)

[Setting Up and Using CTS Transport \[page 805\]](#)

## 11.2.1 Setting Up and Using Native SAP HANA Transport

You use the [Native SAP HANA Transport](#) option to transport native SAP HANA objects.

### Prerequisites

- You have enabled your system for [Native SAP HANA Transport](#).
- You have planned your transport scenario. This includes deciding which systems are required for transports, and if you want to use change recording in the development system. For more information, see [Transport Scenarios in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#). If you have enabled change recording, see also [Setup of the Transport Landscape](#).

### Context

If you transport native SAP HANA objects only and you do not have any ABAP transports or other non-SAP HANA transport activites, then you should use the native SAP HANA transport.

You perform native SAP HANA transports on the **target system**, pulling the content from the source system into the target system.

To use native SAP HANA transport, you must perform the following tasks.

### Procedure

1. Register your SAP HANA source systems.

On the SAP HANA target system, you must make the source system for transports known to the target system. This includes entering the host and the XS engine port of the source system and maintaining the transport destination in the [SAP HANA XS Administration Tool](#).

2. Create transport routes.

A transport route defines the connection details, content and mode for the transport between SAP HANA source and target systems.

3. Execute the transport on the specified transport routes.

Execute a transport operation that exports delivery units or a product from the source SAP HANA system (defined in an HTTP destination) and imports them into the local (target) SAP HANA system.

You can trigger a transport with the privileges assigned in the `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::ExecuteTransport` role, you do not need to have the [Lifecycle Management Administrator](#) role assigned.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Setting Up the Transport \[page 796\]](#)

[Register a System for a Transport Route \[page 799\]](#)

[Create a Transport Route \[page 801\]](#)

[Start the Transport \[page 803\]](#)

### 11.2.1.1 Register a System for a Transport Route

In the context of a SAP HANA transport route, the system you register is an HTTP destination representing the source system where the object you want to transport is located, for example a delivery unit (DU).

#### Prerequisites

To register a system for a transport route, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You are logged on to the SAP HANA system that is the **target** of the transport route.
- A technical user must already exist on the source (HTTP destination) system you register in this step. The technical user for SAP HANA application lifecycle management transport must not be an SAP HANA restricted user and it requires the SAP HANA XS `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Transport user` role.
- You must have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` role.
- You must have the privileges granted by the following SAP HANA XS roles:
  - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator`
  - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator`

#### Context

To create and register an HTTP destination as part of the setup of a transport route, you must have the privileges required to create an HTTP destination configuration and, in addition, maintain the logon credentials of an existing technical user on the destination system.

#### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *TRANSPORT* tab.
3. Choose the *System* tab.
4. Register a new system.

Choose *Register* to start the registration process and enter the system details in the *Register System* dialog.

- **Host**

The name of the source SAP HANA system, where the delivery units you want to transport are located.

If you want to use a tenant database on a multiple-container system, make sure that you specify the host of the tenant database here. You do this by adding the system ID (SID) of the tenant database as an alias to the host name of the SAP HANA system. Use the following format:

```
<Host name of SAP HANA system>-<SID of tenant database>
```

For more information about where to get the SID of the tenant database, see *Configure HTTP Access to Multitenant Database Containers* in the SAP HANA Administration Guide. A link to the guide is in the *Related Information* section.

### Example

- **Host:** lo1234-DB1.mycompany.com or
  - **Host:** lo1234-DB1
- 
- **XS Engine HTTP(S) Port**
- The port number of the XS Engine associated with the SAP HANA instance running on the host specified in *Host*.

Choose *Next* to continue registering the system.

The *Configure Destination* panel appears.

5. Maintain the HTTP destination.

Choose *Maintain Destination* to display details of the HTTP destination you want to maintain in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.

### Note

You must have the SAP HANA XS *HTTPDestAdministrator* role to complete this step.

6. Maintain details of the required technical user.

The technical user is required for the execution of the transport on the destination system.

- a. In the *Authentication* panel of the *HTTP Destination* screen (in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*), select the method used to authenticate the user on the destination system, or tenant database, for example, *Basic*.

If you want to use single sign-on, see *Maintaining Single Sign-On for SAP HANA XS Applications* in the SAP HANA Administration Guide for more information. The link to the guide is in the *Related Information* section.

- b. Enter the name of the technical user described in the *Prerequisites* section. No check is made at this point to ensure the validity of the user name (or the corresponding password) on the destination system.
- c. Enter a password for the technical user.

7. Choose *Save* to make the changes to the HTTP destination configuration and close the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.
8. Choose *Finish* to create the new HTTP destination.

**Note**

Before the changes are saved, a check is made to ensure a logon is possible on the destination system with the user name and password provided. If the check fails, then a message appears with details.

## Results

You have registered an HTTP destination for communication with the source system, or with a tenant database on this system.

If you use a tenant database, the *SID* column displays the system in the following format: <Name of tenant database>@<Name of SAP HANA system>.

You can now create transport routes for the registered system.

You can modify registered systems by choosing *Edit* for a selected system.

You can delete registered systems by choosing *Remove* for a selected system. If you want to do this, you must make sure that all transport routes which use this system are removed beforehand.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)  
[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

### 11.2.1.2 Create a Transport Route

A transport route defines the configuration details which specify the source and target systems for a transport operation.

## Prerequisites

To create a transport route for SAP HANA objects, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You are logged on to the target SAP HANA system.
- You have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` role.

- You have registered the source system for the transport route that you want to configure on the target system.

## Context

A transport route specifies the source and target systems for a transport operation as well as additional details about the objects to transport and the transport mode, for example, transport based on changelists or transport based on complete delivery units. You can use the transport route to transfer a delivery unit between a source system (defined in an HTTP destination on the target system) and a target system, which is the local SAP HANA system that you are logged onto as the application lifecycle administrator.

To create a transport route, perform the following steps:

## Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Display the *TRANSPORT* tab.

Choose the *Transports* tab.

3. Create a new transport route.

Choose *Create* and use the *Create Transport Route* dialog to enter details of the new SAP HANA transport route. If change recording is active in the system, some options are different.

- **Name**

Enter a name for the transport route.

- **Source System**

Use the drop-down list to select the System ID (SID) of the SAP HANA source system on which the delivery unit to transport is located. All systems that you have registered before as source systems are available in the list.

After you have selected the source system the delivery units or the product instance changes to reflect the content of the selected source system. The transport mode may also change between *Complete Delivery Units* and *Selected Changelists* or *All Changelists*.

- **Content**

Choose the content that you want to transport. If you select the *Delivery Units* option, delivery units are transported. If you select the *Product Instance* option, product instances are transported.

Depending on which option you select, the system displays a list of delivery units or product instances that exist on the source system.

You can select one or more (with the `CTRL` key) delivery units to include in the transport, but you can select only one product instance.

- If change recording is **not active** in the selected **source** system, the *Complete Delivery Units Mode* is preselected. You cannot make any changes. The system always transports complete delivery units of the selected delivery units or product instance.

- If change recording is **active** in the selected source system, you have the following options for the *Mode*:

- ***Selected Changelists***

This transports all objects that are part of released changelists of the selected delivery units or the product instance that were not yet transported to the target system. When you start the transport, a dialog box with a list of changelists appears where you can select the changelists that you want to transport.

- ***All Changelists***

This transports all changelists that are in status released for the selected delivery units or the product instance. This transport mode corresponds to a transport of the complete delivery unit or product instance.

For more information on the transport modes available with change recording, see *Transport Modes in Change Recording*. The link to the topic is in the *Related Information* section.

- Enter a meaningful comment in the *Comment* field to enable others to differentiate between the transport routes. This is especially important if you work with a multitude of transport routes.

4. Save the details of the new transport route.

Choose **OK** to finish creating the new transport route.

## Results

You have created a new transport route. You can now start the transport on this transport route.

You can modify transport routes by choosing **Edit** for a selected transport route.

You can delete transport routes by choosing **Remove** for a selected transport route.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Register a System for a Transport Route \[page 799\]](#)

### 11.2.1.3 Start the Transport

A transport operation enables you to move a delivery unit (DU) or a product between a source system (defined in an HTTP destination) and a target system, which is the local SAP HANA system that you are logged onto as the application lifecycle administrator.

## Prerequisites

To execute a transport using a defined SAP HANA transport route, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You can log on to the target system defined in the SAP HANA transport route.
- A technical user with valid logon credentials exists on the source system specified in the SAP HANA transport route.
- You have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::ExecuteTransport` role.

## Context

To transport a DU or a product between a source system and a target system, perform the following steps:

## Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management on the SAP HANA target system.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *TRANSPORT* tab.
3. Choose the *Transports* tab.
4. Select the transport route on which you want to execute the transport.
5. Choose *Start Transport*.

SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management displays the details of the transport you want to start in the *Start the Transport* dialog.

Choose *OK* to start the transport.

### Note

If change recording is active in the selected source system and if transport mode *Selected Changelists* is set in the transport route, the *Transport of Changelists* dialog box appears. Select the changelists that you want to transport and choose *Next*.

If changelists exist in the same package that were released earlier than the ones that you want to attach to the transport request, the predecessor changelists are also included in the transport request. You must always transport the predecessors with the selected changelists. For more information, see *Predecessor Changelists in SAP HANA Change Recording*. If you do not want to transport predecessor changelists, you must modify your selection.

To see the objects of a changelist, ensure that the *Show Objects* field is selected and select the *Change ID* in the list.

The list of objects appears in *Objects in the selected Changelist(s)* section of the screen.

6. Choose *Next*.
7. Verify the DU/product name and the changelists and then choose *Transport and Close*.

## Results

If no errors occurred, the **Transport completed successfully** message appears at the bottom of your screen. Check the transport logs by selecting the status message in the *Last Transport* column.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Create a Transport Route \[page 801\]](#)

### 11.2.2 Setting Up and Using CTS Transport

You use the [CTS Transport](#) option to transport SAP HANA objects in transport landscapes where CTS is already in place.

## Prerequisites

- You have enabled [CTS Transport](#) in your SAP HANA source system.
- You have planned your transport scenario. This includes deciding which systems are required for transports, and if you want to use change recording in the development system. For more information, see *Transport Scenarios in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management*. If you have enabled change recording, see also *Setup of the Transport Landscape*.
- You have performed all configuration steps that are necessary on the AS ABAP to be able to perform SAP HANA transports. For more information, search for *Transporting Non-ABAP Objects in Change and Transport System* in the SAP NetWeaver documentation on SAP Help Portal, or see the guide *How To ... Configure SAP HANA for CTS*. The link to the guide is in the *Related Information* section.

## Context

In the following cases we recommend that you use CTS transport:

- If you already use CTS for transports of ABAP or other non-ABAP objects to manage transports of SAP HANA objects using the CTS infrastructure.
- If you use a change control solution (Change Request Management or Quality Gate Management in SAP Solution Manager) to manage your transports.

You perform CTS transport activities on the **source system**, transporting the content from the source system to the target system.

To use CTS transport, you must perform the following tasks.

## Procedure

1. Make the configuration settings for CTS transport in your SAP HANA source system.

On the SAP HANA source system, you configure an HTTP destination to the CTS communication system and the representation of the source system in the CTS communication system.

2. To transport your development artifacts using CTS, you have the following options:

- a. Export delivery units with CTS

You can execute a CTS transport for complete delivery units that are assigned to CTS if change recording is not active in the SAP HANA system, or you can execute a transport of all released changelists of specific delivery units, if change recording is active.

- b. Export changelists with CTS

You can execute a CTS transport for selected changelists of DUs that are assigned to CTS, if change recording is active in the SAP HANA system.

For more information on the transport of changelists, see *Transport Modes in Change Recording*.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Setting Up the Transport \[page 796\]](#)

[Configure SAP HANA Systems for CTS Transport \[page 806\]](#)

[Export Delivery Units for CTS Transport \[page 810\]](#)

[Export Changelists for CTS Transport \[page 812\]](#)

[How To ... Configure SAP HANA for CTS](#) 

### 11.2.2.1 Configure SAP HANA Systems for CTS Transport

To use CTS transport, you need to configure both the SAP HANA system and the CTS communication system (AS ABAP). This chapter covers only the steps that you need to perform in the SAP HANA system.

## Prerequisites

To configure the SAP HANA source system for CTS transport, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You are logged on to the SAP HANA source system.

#### Note

If you use multitenant database containers, make sure you are logged on to the correct source tenant database. For more information, see the guide *How-To Configure SAP HANA for CTS*. The link to the guide is in the *Related Information* section.

- You must have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` role.
- You must have the privileges granted by the following SAP HANA XS roles:
  - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator`
  - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator`
- You have enabled CTS transport in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

## Context

Configuration is required on the SAP HANA source system only. If you use multitenant database containers, configuration is performed on the source tenant database. You have to configure the SID under which this system is known in CTS (CTS upload system ID) and you have to configure an HTTP destination to your CTS communication system to enable communication between the SAP HANA system and the CTS communication system.

The information about the target system for the transport is defined in the CTS communication system (AS ABAP).

## Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management on the SAP HANA source system.  
SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAIstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`.
2. Choose the *SETTINGS* tab.
3. Configure the CTS system.
  - a. In the *Transport* section, choose *Configure CTS System*.
  - b. In the *CTS Upload System* dialog, under SID, you must enter the system ID of the SAP HANA source system in CTS. This is the representation of the source system in the CTS communication system. The SID of the SAP HANA system to which you are currently logged on is entered automatically. This is usually correct.
  - c. Optional: Enter a comment.
  - d. The number of the export file format is pre-selected. It corresponds to the export file format used in the current SAP HANA server. If you want to import the exported file in older SAP HANA server versions, select a lower file format from the list. For a mapping between the file format and the SAP HANA server version, see SAP Note 1984354. The link to the SAP Note can be found in the *Related Information* section.
4. Configure the HTTP destination to the CTS communication system.
  - a. Choose *Configure CTS Destination*.  
The *HTTP Destination* maintenance in the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool* opens. If it opens in display mode, switch to change mode if you need to change data.
  - b. Check that the data for the CTS communication system is displayed here.
  - c. In the *Path Prefix* field, enter the relative path to the appropriate Export Web Service as configured on the CTS communication system. For more information on the CTS Export Web Service, refer to the

guide *How-To Configure SAP HANA for CTS*. The link to the guide can be found in the *Related Information* section.

- d. Enter the data in the *Authentication* section as required by the security policy in your company.

➔ **Tip**

We recommend that you use *SAP Assertion Ticket*. For more information about how to set up your system to use assertion tickets, see *Authentication Assertion Tickets* in the *SAP NetWeaver Security Guide*.

If you want to use single sign-on, see *Maintaining Single Sign-On for SAP HANA XS Applications* in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide* for more information. The link to the guide is in the *Related Information* section.

- e. Choose *Save* to make the changes to the HTTP destination configuration and close the *SAP HANA XS Administration Tool*.
5. Choose *Save* to conclude configuring the CTS system.

**i Note**

Before the changes are saved, a check is made to ensure a logon is possible on the destination system with the authentication data provided. If the check fails, then a message appears in the dialog and you cannot save the data.

## Results

You have made the relevant configuration settings in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management for CTS transport.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

[Setting Up the Transport \[page 796\]](#)

[How-To Configure SAP HANA for CTS guide](#)

[SAP Note 1984354](#)

## 11.2.2.2 Change CTS Configuration

If you need to make changes to the CTS configuration (CTS upload system or CTS communication system), you need to consider some important points.

### Prerequisites

To change the configuration on the SAP HANA source system for CTS transport, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You are logged on to the SAP HANA source system.

#### i Note

If you use multitenant database containers, make sure you are logged on to the correct source tenant database. For more information, see the guide *How-To Configure SAP HANA for CTS*. The link to the guide is in the *Related Information* section.

- You must have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` role.
- You must have the privileges granted by the following SAP HANA XS roles:
  - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::HTTPDestAdministrator`
  - `sap.hana.xs.admin.roles::RuntimeConfAdministrator`
- You have configured CTS transport in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

### Context

In general, we recommend that you do not change the CTS configuration. However, there are situations where it might be required. Only change the configuration if you are an expert user.

Making changes to the CTS configuration can cause inconsistencies in your system landscape, because changes to the configuration will not lead to a re-export of already exported changelists or delivery units. If you have also made changes to the transport landscape, you may have to manually re-export the complete delivery units to guarantee consistency, before performing new exports. To perform a re-export of DUs, choose *CTS EXPORT* *Delivery Units* *Attach to transport request* for the selected DUs.

If you only change the name of the upload system or the communication system, but the system and the transport routes remain unchanged, you can continue to perform the transport of selected changelists.

### Procedure

1. To change the configuration of the CTS upload system, you can choose *Configure CTS System* and change details in the dialog, such as the *SID*, or details of the HTTP destination.

2. If you want to change the CTS communication system, you must first delete the CTS configuration. When you have deleted the information, you can configure a new CTS communication system.

Concerning changes to the CTS communication system, read the recommendations described in SAP Note 1715802.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Configure SAP HANA Systems for CTS Transport \[page 806\]](#)

[SAP Note 1715802](#)

### 11.2.2.3 Export Delivery Units for CTS Transport

The export of delivery units (DUs) using CTS involves assigning them to CTS and exporting them.

#### Prerequisites

- To execute a transport using CTS, you must ensure that you have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::ExecuteTransport` role.
- The SAP HANA system must be enabled and configured for CTS transport.

#### Context

To export DUs with CTS, perform the following steps:

#### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *CTS EXPORT* tab.
  3. Choose the *Delivery Units* tab if it is not open by default.
  4. Choose *Assign Delivery Units*, if the DUs you want to transport are not assigned to CTS yet.
- In the list of DUs displayed in the *Assign Delivery Units* dialog, select the *Assigned to CTS* checkbox to the right of the DUs you want to export, then choose *Save*. Only DUs that are assigned to CTS can be exported with CTS.

5. Select the DUs that you want to transport from the list and then choose *Attach to transport request*.

In the *Start CTS Export* dialog, you usually see a *Transport Request ID*, its description, and owner.

6. Verify the information and the transport request.

#### Note

It depends on the configuration of your source system in CTS, whether a transport request is available for selection or not (TMS Parameter `WBO_GET_REQ_STRATEGY`).

To display more details, or to change properties, choose *Go to Transport Organizer UI*. Transport Organizer Web UI is used to manage transport requests. This includes creating transport requests, editing, and releasing them as well as changing details.

For more information, see the *How To... Configure SAP HANA for CTS* guide or *Managing Transports of Non-ABAP Objects* in the *CTS Plug-In* documentation. The links can be found in the *Related Information* section.

7. To start the export, choose *Export and Close* in the *Start CTS Export* dialog.

## Results

The DUs are exported. If change recording is active in the system, the export is executed for all active objects that are part of released changelists of the DU(s). After the export, check the log. To do this, choose *Logs*.

Depending on the configuration of your source system in CTS, you must release the transport request in the CTS communication system so that it can be imported in the target system, or it is automatically released (TMS Parameter `WBO_REL_REQ_STRATEGY`). To do this, choose *Open Transport Organizer* or use the link in the export log. For more information, see the *How To... Configure SAP HANA for CTS* guide.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Setting Up the Transport \[page 796\]](#)

[Configure SAP HANA Systems for CTS Transport \[page 806\]](#)

[How To... Configure SAP HANA for CTS](#)

[Managing Transports of Non-ABAP Objects](#)

## 11.2.2.4 Export Changelists for CTS Transport

The export of changelists using CTS involves assigning the corresponding delivery units (DUs) to CTS, and exporting selected changelists of the DUs.

### Prerequisites

- To execute an export of changelists for CTS transport, you must ensure that you have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::ExecuteTransport` role.
- The SAP HANA system must be enabled and configured for CTS Transport.
- Change recording must be activated in the SAP HANA system and released changelists must exist.

### Context

To export changelists, perform the following steps:

### Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *CTS EXPORT* tab.
3. Choose the *Released Changelists* tab.
4. If you have not yet assigned DUs to CTS, choose *Assign Delivery Units* and assign the DUs to CTS for which you want to export changelists.
5. Choose *Attach to Transport Request*.
6. Select the released changelists (assigned to CTS DUs) to export and choose *Next*.

The system executes a predecessor check. If changelists exist in the same package that were released earlier than the ones that you want to attach to the transport request the predecessor changelists are also included in the transport request. You must always transport the predecessors with the selected changelists. For more information, see *Predecessor Changelists in SAP HANA Change Recording*.

#### Note

If you do not want to export predecessor changelists, you must modify your selection.

A list of objects for each changelist appears in *Objects in the Changelog* section on the screen.

7. Choose *Next*.

- Verify the information and the transport request..

**i Note**

It depends on the configuration of your source system in CTS, whether a transport request is available for selection or not (TMS Parameter `WBO_GET_REQ_STRATEGY`).

To display more details, or to change properties, choose [Go to Transport Organizer UI](#). Transport Organizer Web UI is used to manage transport requests. This includes creating transport requests, editing, and releasing them as well as changing details.

For more information, see the [How To... Configure SAP HANA for CTS](#) guide or [Managing Transports of Non-ABAP Objects](#) in the [CTS Plug-In](#) documentation. The links can be found in the *Related Information* section.

- To start the export, choose [Export and Close](#) in the [Start CTS Export](#) dialog.

## Results

The selected changelists are exported. After the export, check the export log. To do this, choose [Logs](#).

Depending on your CTS configuration, you must release the transport request in the CTS communication system so that it can be imported in the target system, or it is automatically released (TMS Parameter `WBO_REL_REQ_STRATEGY`). To do this, choose [Open Transport Organizer](#) or use the link in the export log. For more information, see the [How To... Configure SAP HANA for CTS](#) guide.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[How To... Configure SAP HANA for CTS](#)

[Managing Transports of Non-ABAP Objects](#)

## 11.3 Maintaining Delivery Units

A delivery unit (DU) is a collection of packages that are to be transported together. You assign all the packages belonging to your application to the same DU to ensure that they are transported consistently together within your system landscape. Each DU has a unique identity.

### Prerequisites

To maintain delivery units with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been assigned the SAP HANA `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- A vendor ID (repository namespace) is already defined.

### Context

The identity of a delivery unit consists of two parts: a vendor name and a delivery-unit name. The combined ID ensures that delivery units from different vendors are easy to distinguish and follows a pattern that SAP uses for all kinds of software components.

To create and manage delivery units you first need to maintain the identity of the vendor, with whom the delivery units are associated, and in whose namespace the packages that make up the delivery unit are stored. As part of the vendor ID maintenance process, you must perform the following tasks:

### Procedure

1. Understand delivery units.

You must be familiar with the conventions that exist for delivery-unit names and understand the phases of the delivery-unit lifecycle.

2. Maintain details of the vendor ID associated with a delivery unit.

Delivery units are located in the namespace associated with the vendor who creates them and who manages the delivery-unit's lifecycle.

3. Create a delivery unit.

Create a transportable “container” to hold the repository packages in application.

4. Assign packages to a delivery unit.

Add to a delivery unit the repository packages that make up your application.

5. Export a delivery unit.

You can export the contents of a delivery unit from the SAP HANA Repository to a compressed Zip archive, which you can download to a client file system.

---

## 6. Import a delivery unit.

You can import the contents of a delivery unit into the SAP HANA Repository, for example, from a compressed Zip archive, which you upload from a client file system.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Maintain the Delivery-Unit Vendor ID \[page 74\]](#)

[Create a Delivery Unit \[page 75\]](#)

[Export a Delivery Unit \[page 818\]](#)

[Import a Delivery Unit \[page 820\]](#)

### 11.3.1 Create a Delivery Unit

A delivery unit (DU) is a group of transportable packages that contain objects used for content delivery. You can use the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management to create a DU for your application content or your software component.

#### Prerequisites

To create a delivery unit with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been granted the SAP HANA `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- The vendor ID is defined for the DU; the vendor ID defines the repository namespace in which the new DU resides.

#### Context

You use a DU to transport the design-time objects that are stored in the SAP HANA repository between two systems, for example, from a development system to a consolidation system. To create a new delivery unit using the SAP HANA application lifecycle management, perform the following steps.

## Procedure

1. Open SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *PRODUCTS* tab.

3. Choose the *Delivery Units* tab.

4. Choose *Create*.

The *New Delivery Unit* dialog box appears.

5. Enter details for the new DU.

When entering details, note the following points:

- *Name*

The field is mandatory and you must follow strict naming conventions, for example, use capital letters.

- *Vendor*

This field is mandatory. However, you cannot enter a vendor here; the box is populated by the value you enter when defining the vendor in the *SETTINGS* tab.

- *Version*

Version numbers must take the form “#.#.#”, for example, **1.0.5**, where:

- **1** = the DU version number
- **0** = the support package version (if required)
- **5** = the patch version (if required)

**i Note**

The numbers you enter here refer to the application component that you are developing; the numbers do not refer to the patch or service-pack level deployed on the SAP HANA server.

6. Choose *Create*.

The new delivery unit is added to the SAP HANA repository in the namespace specified by the vendor ID and the application path.

7. Check the status bar at the bottom of the browser window for error messages. Choose the message link to display the message text.

## Results

You have created a delivery unit.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management \[page 788\]](#)

[SAP HANA Change Recording \[page 825\]](#)

## 11.3.2 Assign Packages to a Delivery Unit

By default, a new delivery unit (DU) is empty; you must assign packages to it manually.

### Prerequisites

To assign packages to a DU with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been granted the SAP HANA user role `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator`.

### Context

A DU contains one or more packages. You must assign the packages to the DU manually. You can also remove (unassign) packages from a DU and edit the details of a package. A package can only be assigned to one DU. To assign packages to a DU, perform the following steps:

### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *PRODUCTS* tab.
3. Choose the *Delivery Units* tab.
4. Select the DU to which you want to assign some packages.

The *Assigned Packages* panel displays the current contents of the selected DU.

#### Tip

To remove (unassign) a package from a DU, select the package and choose *Unassign*.

5. Assign new packages to the DU.

Choose *Assign* and select the name of the package you want to assign to the DU.

#### Note

Ensure that the *Select sub-packages* field is selected.

6. Choose *Check for Unassigned* to ensure that you have selected all packages and sub-packages that you want to assign to the DU.

If you have missed a sub-package, select it from this dialog box and choose *Assign*.

7. Check the status bar at the bottom of the browser window for error messages. Choose the message link to display the message text.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Create a Delivery Unit \[page 75\]](#)

[Maintaining Repository Packages \[page 85\]](#)

### 11.3.3 Export a Delivery Unit

You can export a delivery unit (DU), for example, to a file, for your application content or your software components using the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

#### Prerequisites

To export a delivery unit with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system
- You have been granted one of the following SAP HANA user roles:
  - `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator`
  - `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::ExecuteTransport`

#### Context

A DU is a group of transportable objects used for content delivery. You can use a DU to transport the design-time objects that are stored in the SAP HANA repository between two systems, for example, from a development system to a consolidation system.

##### **i** Note

If a system is configured to work with change recording, all activated objects must be approved before their release. Only released objects are exported from that system.

If a system is not configured to work with change recording, all active objects in a delivery unit are exported.

To export a DU (for example, from the SAP HANA repository to a file) using the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, perform the following steps.

## Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *PRODUCTS* tab.
3. Choose the *Delivery Units* tab.
4. Select the DU you want to export.

In the *Delivery Units* list, locate and select the DU you want to export to a file.



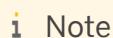
You can check the details and contents of the selected DU in the *Details* and *Assigned Packages* panels respectively.

5. Export the selected DU.

To start the export, choose *Export*.

The *Export Delivery Unit to File* screen appears where you can select the file format for export. By default the newest file format is selected. If you want to import the DU into older SAP HANA servers, you can select an older file format. For more information on export file formats, you can choose the *?* icon on the screen and see SAP Note 1984354. The link to the SAP Note can be found in the *Related Information* section.

If you choose *Export*, a dialog appears that enables you to specify the location where you want to save the exported DU, for example, on a local file system.



Depending on the browser settings, the import might start automatically or the file location might not be requested. For example, you have created a default location for all download operations.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP Note 1984354](#)

[SAP HANA Change Recording \[page 825\]](#)

## 11.3.4 Import a Delivery Unit

You can import a delivery unit (DU), for example, from a file, for your application content or your software components using the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

### Prerequisites

To import a delivery unit with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system
- You have been granted the SAP HANA `sap.hana_xs_lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- The package name of the DU does **not** exist in the system.

#### i Note

Package names are case-insensitive. If you have a package name with only upper-case and lower-case differences, the import fails because the system sees this as a duplicate. To import the DU, either delete the package from the system and then import the DU or rename the new package.

### Context

A DU is a group of transportable objects used for content delivery. You can use a DU to transport the design-time objects that are stored in the SAP HANA repository between two systems, for example, from a development system to a consolidation system.

To import a delivery unit (for example, from a file to the SAP HANA repository) using the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, perform the following steps.

### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *PRODUCTS* tab.
3. Choose the *Delivery Units* tab.
4. Choose *Import*.
5. Select the DU you want to import.

Choose *Browse* to display a file explorer, which you can use to locate the DU you want to import, and choose *Open*.

### ➔ Tip

Exported DUs have the file extension .tgz, for example, MyDU.tgz.

The *Confirm Import of Delivery Unit* screen appears containing the list of objects included in that DU.

6. Confirm that this is the DU that you want to import.

Choose *Import* to import the selected delivery unit.

### i Note

The import operation overwrites any identical objects in the target system with the content of the imported DU.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP HANA Change Recording \[page 825\]](#)

## 11.4 Maintaining Products

A product contains one or more delivery units. A delivery unit (DU) is a collection of packages that logically belong together. You assign delivery units to a product to ensure that they are transported consistently together within your system landscape.

### Prerequisites

To maintain products with the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been granted the SAP HANA `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- A vendor ID is already defined.
- You have created at least one DU.

### Context

To create and manage products, you first need to maintain the DUs which you assign to the product. A DU requires a vendor ID, the name of the vendor with whom the DUs are associated and in whose namespace in

the SAP HANA repository the packages that make up the DU are stored. As part of the product maintenance process, you must perform the following tasks:

## Procedure

1. Create a product.
2. Assign delivery units to a product.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Create a Product \[page 822\]](#)

[Assign a Delivery Unit to a Product \[page 824\]](#)

[Maintaining Delivery Units \[page 72\]](#)

[Maintain the Delivery-Unit Vendor ID \[page 74\]](#)

### 11.4.1 Create a Product

Use the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management to create a product and its components.

## Prerequisites

To perform this task, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been assigned the SAP HANA XS `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- The vendor ID is already defined for the delivery units you assign to the product.

## Context

A product contains one or more delivery units, packages, and can contain applications associated with the packages. To use the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management to create a new product, perform the following steps:

## Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAIstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *PRODUCTS* tab.

3. Choose the *Products* tab.

4. Choose *Create*.

The *New Product* dialog box appears.

5. Define the details of the new product.

- a. Specify a *name* for the new product.

The *Vendor* box is populated with the value defined in the *SETTINGS* tab; you cannot enter or change the value here.

- b. Optional: Enter a *Version*, and a *Description* for the product.

- c. Optional: Create a default instance (with the instance ID *1*) for the product by selecting the corresponding check box and entering a name for the instance.

Each product version requires at least one product instance. The product instance indicates the entity that is to be installed. If you do not create the product instance now, you must do it later when you assign delivery units to the product. You can then enter an instance ID from **1** to **999**, and a name for the instance.

6. Create the new product.

Choose *Create* to add the new product to the list of products displayed in the *Products* tab.

The new product is empty at this stage; you must assign one or more delivery units to it.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Assign a Delivery Unit to a Product \[page 824\]](#)

## 11.4.2 Assign a Delivery Unit to a Product

A product can contain one or more product instances which can contain one or more delivery units. You must assign the delivery units (DU) manually to the product instances of the product.

### Prerequisites

To assign DUs to a product, you must ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system.
- You have been assigned the SAP HANA XS `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- The vendor ID is already defined for the DUs you assign to the product.

### Context

To use the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management to assign an existing delivery unit to a product , perform the following steps.

### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`

2. Choose the *PRODUCTS* tab.
3. Choose the *Products* tab.
4. Select the product to which you want to assign a DU or DUs.  
In the list of products displayed on the left-hand side of the *Products* tab, select the product to which you want to assign a DU.
5. If no product instance exists for the product, first create a product instance.
  - a. In the *Instances and Assigned Delivery Units* panel, choose *Instance* .
  - b. Enter a number between **0** and **999** as *ID*.
  - c. Optional: Enter a description.
6. If a product instance exists for the product, assign a DU to the selected product instance.
  - a. Choose *Assign Delivery Unit* to display a list of available DUs.
  - b. In the *Assign Delivery Units* dialog locate the DUs you want to assign to the selected product instance and choose *Assign*.  
The assigned DUs are immediately removed from the *Assign Delivery Units* list and added to the *Assigned Delivery Units* list for the selected product instance.
  - c. Close the dialog after having assigned all relevant DUs.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[Create a Product \[page 822\]](#)

[Maintaining Delivery Units \[page 72\]](#)

## 11.5 SAP HANA Change Recording

Change recording in SAP HANA is the infrastructure to keep track of changes during SAP HANA development.

It provides the following functions:

- **Automatic Recording and Grouping of Object Changes**

When change recording is enabled, you are prompted to assign your changes to a changelist when you activate a repository object in your development environment. You can group the objects that you want to transport together in one changelist.

We recommend that you assign objects of only one DU to the same changelist. If you use native SAP HANA transport, you should configure the transport route accordingly for the same DU, and if you use CTS transport, you should assign this DU to CTS and trigger the transport of changelists for this DU. This way, you make sure that all objects that belong to packages of this DU and that are part of a changelist are transported together.

- **Decoupling of Activation and Transport**

When change recording is not enabled, a transport of a delivery unit contains all active objects that are contained in the packages of the delivery unit. You can only transport the entire delivery unit, no matter whether the objects are ready for transport or not. Change recording allows you to make changes to individual objects of a delivery unit and transport only these in changelists whenever they are ready for transport. Only released changelists can be transported. The objects are transported in the state in which they were at the point in time when the changelist was released.

- **Different Transport Modes**

The changelist-based transport can be set up in two modes: Either all changelists that were ever released in one or more delivery units or a product, or selected changelists in one or more delivery units or a product can be transported.

 **Note**

Transport of products is only supported using native SAP HANA transport.

If you use native SAP HANA transport, you configure the transport mode when you register the system for a transport route. If you use CTS transport, you select whether you want to attach [Released changelists](#) or [Delivery Units](#) to a transport request when you perform an export for CTS in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

- **Predecessor Calculation of Changes**

If a changelist contains objects from the same package that depend on objects in other changelists that are released but not yet transported, the system detects these and includes them in the transport as well.

- **Team Development**

Multiple team members can work on the same development objects (and use the same changelist). The changelist can only be released when all team members have indicated that the objects are ready for

transport by approving their contribution to the changelist. The objects that are part of the changelist are locked for developers who do not contribute to the changelist.

## Integration

The functions of change recording are integrated in the XS user interface SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management. In your development environment (SAP HANA studio, or SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench), you can start this UI using the context menus. For example, in the *Developer Perspective* of SAP HANA studio in the *Repositories* view, you choose *Change Management*, and in the *Project Explorer* view, you choose ► *Team* ► *HALM Change Management* ». In the *Editor* of SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench, choose ► *Navigation Links* ► *Lifecycle Management* ».

There is an eclipse-based change view available as part of SAP HANA studio. However, to benefit from all functions, we recommend that you use the XS UI using the context menu.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)  
[Enable SAP HANA Change Recording \[page 826\]](#)

### 11.5.1 Enable SAP HANA Change Recording

You enable change recording in your development system to manage changes to repository objects.

## Prerequisites

- An SAP HANA system is available.
- You have been granted the `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role.
- You have informed yourself about the implications of enabling change recording. For more information, see *Technical Details of Initial Change Recording Setup*. The link to this topic is in the *Related Information* section.

## Context

The system administrator should enable change recording. If a system is configured to work with change recording, the activation of a repository object prompts developers to assign the object to a changelist. A changelist thus contains a list of one or more changed objects. This allows you to work on a development

object or artifact and release the changelist only when the object is ready to be transported to the test system. This provides more precise control over which objects are transported from the development system. An object's changelist must be released in order to be included in the export in which the delivery unit containing the object is transported. Releasing a changelist does not trigger any automatic semantic checks but is a manual confirmation by you that the objects are consistent and ready for transport.

## Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`.

2. Choose the *SETTINGS* tab.
3. Select the *Enable Change Recording* checkbox.

**i** Note

When you enable change recording for your development system, the system initially records all active objects in the system. This process may take some time. During the process, the UI does not respond and there is no progress indicator telling you that the base changelist is being created. For more information, see *Technical Details of Initial Change Recording Setup*.

## Results

Change recording is enabled.

**i** Note

If you want to disable change recording, first verify that there are no open changelists in the system. You can disable change recording by repeating these steps and deselecting the *Enable Change Recording* checkbox.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

## 11.5.2 Create Changelists

You can create a changelist in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management for your user, and add contributors to it.

### Prerequisites

- Change recording is enabled in your development system.
- You have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::DevelopmentExpert` role.

### Context

You usually create a changelist while you are editing an object in the SAP HANA development environment. When you activate changes to an SAP HANA repository object, you are prompted to assign the changes to a changelist. If no changelist is available, you can create a new one.

Alternatively, you can create a changelist in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management. This is useful, for example, if you are a project manager and you want to create a changelist for multiple users who work closely together. You can add a description to the changelist, for example, to further specify for which developments the changelist is to be used.

### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAIstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`.

2. Choose the **CHANGES** tab.
3. Choose **Create**.
4. Optional: Add a description for the changelist that you want to create and choose **Create**.

The changelist is created in the status **Open** with you as a contributor. A unique changelist ID is created. The changelist is added to the list of changelists on the left hand side of the screen. On the right hand side of the screen, the details of the changelist are displayed. This includes an **Contributions** area as well as an **Objects** area. Both areas are initially empty.

5. Optional: You can add more users as contributors to the changelist. To do this, choose **Add** in the **Contributions** area and select the users that are supposed to work on the changelist.

You can add a comment to the contribution. When prompted for a changelist in the development environment, this changelist is offered for selection to the contributors. The changelist can only be released if all contributors have approved their contributions.

- 
6. Optional: You can change the changelist description. To save the changed description, choose [Save](#).

## Results

You have created a changelist. If required, you have added contributors to the changelist.

All contributors to the changelist can now assign their changes to the changelist.

You can also remove contributors from the changelist, as long as it is an empty contribution.

You can delete a changelist, as long as it is open and no objects are assigned to it.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)  
[Assign Objects to Changelists \[page 829\]](#)

### 11.5.3 Assign Objects to Changelists

You can assign an object to a changelist if change recording is configured and enabled in your development environment.

## Prerequisites

- Change recording is enabled in your development system.
- You have the following system privileges on the SAP HANA system:
  - If you assign objects in your development environment: REPO.MODIFY\_CHANGE, REPO.MODIFY\_OWN\_CONTRIBUTION.
  - If you want to move objects in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management from one changelist to another: sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::DevelopmentExpert

## Context

You have the following options to assign objects to changelists:

- You can assign objects while you are performing software development in your SAP HANA development environment. Change recording is integrated in SAP HANA studio and Web-based Development Workbench. If change recording is enabled, the system prompts you to assign the object to a changelist when you activate the object.

### **i** Note

If the change recording is disabled from the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management system, the information will not be reflected in the activation process until the SAP HANA Studio is restarted.

- You can move objects from one open changelist to another open changelist in SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

### **i** Note

The following is an example of assigning objects in SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench.

## Assign objects in SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench

### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench Editor tool.

The Editor tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/ide/editor`

2. When you create or activate changes to an existing object, a dialog window opens where you can select or create a changelist to which you can assign the object.
  - a. If you are already contributor to changelists, these changelists are displayed in the table. You can select the relevant changelist for the object and choose *Assign*.
  - b. To create a new changelist, choose *New Changelist* .... Enter a description for the changelist, and choose *Create*. You can assign the object to the new changelist.

## Move objects from one changelist to another

### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`.

From the SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench Editor tool, you can choose  [Navigation Links](#)  [Lifecycle Management](#) to open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

2. Choose the *CHANGES* tab.
3. Select a changelist that contains objects that you want to move to another changelist.
4. In the *Objects* area, select the objects that you want to assign to another changelist, and choose *Move*.
5. Select the target changelist and choose *Move*.

---

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

### 11.5.4 Approve Contributions to Changelists

By approving your contribution to the changelist, you mark that your work on the changelist is finished. The changelist can only be released after all contributors have approved their contribution.

#### Prerequisites

- Change recording is enabled in your development system.
- You have made a contribution to the changelist.
- You have the privileges granted by one of the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management roles:
  - To approve your own contribution: `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Developer role`
  - To approve contributions of others: `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::DevelopmentExpert role`

#### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`.

2. Choose the *CHANGES* tab.
  - a. To approve your own contribution: Choose *Approve My Contribution*.
  - b. To approve contributions of others: In the *Contributions* area, select the user whose contribution you want to approve and choose *Approve*.
3. You can enter a comment that is saved for your contribution. Choose OK.

The status of the contribution changes from *open* to *approved*.

#### Results

The contribution to the changelist was approved.

As long as the changelist is open, you can edit the comment of the contribution.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

### 11.5.5 Release Changelists

After all contributions of changelists are approved, you can release the changelist.

#### Prerequisites

- Change recording is enabled in your development system.
- You have the privileges granted by the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::DevelopmentExpert` role.
- The contribution status must be *approved* for all contributors of a changelist before you can release the changelist, and the changelist status must be *Open*.

#### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/sap/hana/xs/lm`.

2. Choose the *CHANGES* tab.
3. From the list of open changelists, select the changelist that you want to release.
4. If all contributors have approved their contributions, you can choose *Release*.

If the *Release* button is greyed out make sure that all contributions are approved and that the changelist is in status *Open*. The status of the changelist changes from *Open* to *Released*.

#### Results

The changelist is released and it is ready to be transported.

If you have left the default filter settings unchanged, the released changelist disappears from the list of open changelists.

To display it, change the filter settings so that released changelists also appear in the list. If you select the released changelist, details are displayed, including the release date and time and the user who released it.

## Related Information

SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management  
Filter and Search for Changelists [page 833]

### 11.5.6 Filter and Search for Changelists

The filter function allows you to filter the changelists according to different filter criteria and display all changelists that meet the criteria. If the list of displayed changelists is very long, you can search the list for specific changelists.

#### Prerequisites

- Change recording is enabled in your development system.
- You have the privileges granted by one of the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management roles:
  - sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Developer
  - sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::DevelopmentExpert

### Filter Changelists

#### Procedure

1. Open the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

The SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/sap/hana/xs/lm`.

2. Choose the *CHANGES* tab.

By default, changelists are displayed that correspond to the following criteria:

- Status *Open*.
- Local changelists
- Log-on user is contributor of the changelist

The filter criteria are displayed next to the *Set Filter* link.

3. To change the filter criteria, choose *Set Filter*.
4. In the *Filter* dialog box, filter options are available, such as contributor, creator, release interval, contribution status, or changelist status. To remove the filter for a specific filter criterion, select the blank field from the dropdown list of the filter criterion. If you deselect the *Only Local Changelists* option, changelists that were imported into the current system are displayed in addition to changelists that were created locally in the system. You can only deselect this option if you also change the default value for *changelist status*.

If you remove the filter for the changelist status, it is possible that changelists in status *Suspended* are displayed. A changelist gets the status *Suspended* if change recording is disabled while the changelist is in status *Open*. If change recording is later re-enabled, previously open changelists can no longer be used. However, to provide a history of changelists, they are documented in the system with the status *Suspended*.

You have the following options:

- To display the changelists according to the specified filter criteria without closing the dialog box, choose *Apply*.
- To close the dialog box and display the changelists according to the specified filter criteria, choose *Apply and Close*.
- To reset the filter criteria to the default values, choose *Reset*.
- To close the dialog box without applying the selected filter criteria, choose *Close*.

The changelists that meet your filter criteria are displayed in the list.

When you restart SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management, the default filter settings are re-set.

## Search for Changelists

### Procedure

1. Enter the character string for which you want to search in the search field.

Use a sequence of characters that really exists. You cannot use wildcards. All the changelists that correspond to your string and that match the currently selected filter are displayed in a dropdown list.

2. If the changelist you were searching is in the dropdown list, select it there.

The details of the changelist are displayed.

### Related Information

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

## 11.6 Assembling Add-On Products and Software Components

To ship SAP HANA add-on product archives or software components archives, you must bring the developed software into a format that can later be installed in another system. To do this, you use the `hdbalm assemble` command.

### Prerequisites

- You have modeled and developed your SAP HANA content along the guidelines laid out in the *SAP HANA Developer Guide*.
- You have access to `hdbalm` and you have the permissions required to use `hdbalm`. For more information, see the link to *Using hdbalm* in the *Related Information* section.

### Context

Add-on product archives are `*.zip` files that contain one or more software component archives plus the metadata files `stack.xml` and `pd.xml` required for installation.

Software component archives are `*.zip` files (in previous versions, also `*.sar` files exist as software component archives) that contain one delivery unit archive file each plus (optionally) corresponding translation DUs and the metadata file `SL_MANIFEST.XML` required for installation. Support Packages or patches to add-on products are usually shipped as single software component archives.

For more information on the archive types, see *SAP HANA Content* in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*. The link to the guide is in the *Related Information* section.

You can build `*.zip` archives for add-on products and software components using the `hdbalm assemble` command. These can later be installed using SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management.

When assembling your developments into installable archives, the required metadata files are added to the archives which contain relevant installation information, such as required database versions, or other dependencies. In addition, you can add language DUs to the archives.

For more information on the `assemble` command, see the *Related Information* section.

### Procedure

1. Start a command line client and navigate to the directory where `hdbalm` is located.  
You can also add this directory to your path.
2. Start the assembly of your product or software components.

- a. Use the `assemble` command with the options that you require.

For information on the available options, you can use the `hdbalm help assemble` command. You can also read the `hdbalm assemble` Command documentation. The link is in the *Related Information* section.

To assemble an add-on product, you can specify one product name or multiple software component names.

## Results

If no errors occur, the assembled product archive file or software component archive files can be found in the local directory or in the directory that you specified.

If errors occur during the assembly, an error message indicates the reason for the error and the system provides a log file with more detailed information.

## Related Information

[hdbalm assemble Command \[page 850\]](#)

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide for SAP HANA Web-based Development Workbench](#)

[SAP HANA Developer Guide for SAP HANA Studio](#)

## 11.7 Installing and Updating SAP HANA Products and Software Components

SAP HANA application lifecycle management provides functions for installing and updating SAP HANA products that you have downloaded from the SAP Support Portal, or that you have assembled yourself.

## Context

SAP HANA products consist of software components which are deployed to the SAP HANA repository. You have the following options to install and update SAP HANA products and software components:

- Using a **SAP Fiori application** integrated in the **SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management XS application**. This application can be started in the following ways:
  - Start the SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/lm`. Afterwards, choose the `INSTALLATION` tab or tile.

- Start SAP HANA cockpit at the following URL: `http://<host_FQDN>:<port>/sap/hana/admin/cockpit`. Afterwards, choose the *Install Products and Software Components* tile in the *SAP HANA Application Installation and Update* group.  
For more information about how to start SAP HANA cockpit, see *Open SAP HANA Cockpit* in this *SAP HANA Administration Guide*. The link is in the *Related Information* section.  
For more information about using SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management to install and update SAP HANA products and software components, see *Installing and Updating SAP HANA Products* and *Installing and Updating SAP HANA Software Components*.
- Using the `hdbalm` **commandline tool**.  
To start `hdbalm`, start a command line client and navigate to the directory where `hdbalm` is located. You can also add this directory to your path.  
For more information about using `hdbalm` to install and update SAP HANA products and software components, see *Using hdbalm and hdbalm install Command* in the *SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management Guide*.

## Related Information

[Using hdbalm \[page 837\]](#)

[hdbalm install Command \[page 845\]](#)

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management Guide](#)

## 11.8 Using `hdbalm`

SAP HANA provides the `hdbalm` command line tool to perform application lifecycle-management tasks.

### Prerequisites

- You have performed the SAP HANA client installation.  
If you have left the default installation options unchanged `hdbalm` is located in the `c:\Program Files\sap\hdbcclient` directory on Microsoft Windows and `/usr/sap/hdbcclient` directory on Linux.  
For more information, see the *SAP HANA Client Installation and Update Guide*.
- You have the permissions required to run `hdbalm`: You have an SAP HANA database user with the SAP HANA `sap.hana.xs.lm.roles::Administrator` user role assigned to it.  
Note that you cannot use a newly created user that still has the initial password, since `hdbalm` will not ask you to change it. Change the password for this user in SAP HANA studio, for example, before using `hdbalm`.

## Context

The command line tool `hdbalm` is part of the SAP HANA client installation (Microsoft Windows 64-bit and Linux 64-bit). You use `hdbalm` to **assemble** SAP HANA products and software components. You can also use `hdbalm` to execute other application lifecycle management functions, if you prefer to use a command line tool over the SAP HANA XS user interface, or if you want to automate specific tasks.

### **i** Note

You can also use all commands of `hdbalm` for tenant databases on multiple-container systems if you have specified the correct host and port of the tenant database. For more information, see *hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables*.

## Procedure

1. Start a command line client and navigate to the directory in which `hdbalm` is located (or add this directory to your path).
2. Optional: Set environment variables.
3. Enter the required `hdbalm` command with the required options, command options, or parameters.

## Results

`hdbalm` executes the command. If errors occur, error messages indicate the reason for the errors. For the `install`, `import`, and `assemble` commands, the system provides log files with more detailed information.

## Related Information

[Assembling Add-On Products and Software Components \[page 835\]](#)

[Installing and Updating SAP HANA Products and Software Components \[page 836\]](#)

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

[hdbalm install Command \[page 845\]](#)

[hdbalm assemble Command \[page 850\]](#)

[hdbalm import Command \[page 851\]](#)

[hdbalm transport Command \[page 852\]](#)

[hdbalm log Command \[page 853\]](#)

[hdbalm product Command \[page 853\]](#)

[hdbalm du Command \[page 855\]](#)

[hdbalm dependencies Command \[page 857\]](#)

[hdbalm package Command \[page 858\]](#)

[hdbalm admin Command \[page 859\]](#)  
[Enable SSL for hdbalm \[page 843\]](#)  
[Proxy Support for hdbalm \[page 844\]](#)  
[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)  
[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)  
[SAP HANA Client Installation and Update Guide](#)

## 11.8.1 hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables

With `hdbalm` you can use a selection of commands and their options to perform application lifecycle-management tasks in SAP HANA.

The following example depicts the syntax for `hdbalm`:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] <command> [<command-specific options>]
```

The general options are specified before the command and the command-specific options are specified after the command. Each command offers its own specific options.

### i Note

Enter `hdbalm` to display general information about the commands, options, and environment variables.

Enter `hdbalm help <command>` to display more information about a specific command and its options.

If you normally work in one environment, then you can set environment variables for your user, password, SAP HANA Extended Services (XS) engine host (including tenant database), and SAP HANA XS engine port. This way, you need not specify these details every time you use a command.

### Example

#### Examples for Setting Environment Variables

On Microsoft Windows, you can set the environment variable for the user as in the following example:

```
set HDBALM_USER=<user name>
```

On Unix (bourne shell), you can set the environment variable for the user as in the following example:

```
export HDBALM_USER=<user name>
```

The following tables describe the various commands, options, and environment variables available for `hdbalm`.

## hdbalm Commands

The following table contains the `hdbalm` commands and explains their functions.

Table 121:

Command	Description
help	Provides information about available commands, general options, and environment variables  The <code>help</code> command also provides more information for every command using <b>hdbalm help &lt;command&gt;</b> .
install	Provides functions for installing and updating product archives and software component archives (.zip files) that were downloaded from the SAP Support Portal
assemble	Provides funtions for assembling SAP HANA add-on products and software components
import	Provides functions for importing delivery unit archives (.tgz files)
transport	Provides functions for managing transports, such as starting transports or displaying transport routes
log	Provides functions for displaying log files
product	Provides functions for managing SAP HANA products, such as creating a product or assigning delivery units to a product
du	Provides functions for managing delivery units, such as creating a delivery unit
dependencies	Provides functions for displaying delivery unit dependencies in the system
package	Provides functions for managing packages, such as creating packages and assigning packages to a delivery unit
admin	Provides administrative application lifecycle-management functions, such as enabling change recording

## General hdbalm Options

The following options are supported by all `hdbalm` commands.

Table 122:

Option	Description
<code>-u &lt;user&gt;, --user=&lt;user&gt;</code>	User name

Option	Description
<code>-h &lt;host&gt;, --host=&lt;host&gt;</code>	<p>SAP HANA Extended Services (XS) engine host</p> <p> <b>Example</b></p> <pre>lo1234.mycompany.com</pre>
	<p>If you want to use the command for a tenant database on a multiple-container system, then you specify the host of the tenant database. You do this by adding the system ID (SID) of the tenant database as an alias to the host name of the SAP HANA system. Use the following format: <code>&lt;Host name of SAP HANA system&gt;-&lt;SID of tenant database&gt;</code></p> <p> <b>Example</b></p> <pre>lo1234-DB1.mycompany.com or lo1234-DB1</pre> <p>For more information about where to find the SID of the tenant database, see <i>Configure HTTP Access to Multitenant Database Containers</i> in the <i>SAP HANA Administration Guide</i>. A link to this guide is provided in the <i>Related Information</i> section.</p>
<code>-p &lt;port&gt;, --port=&lt;port&gt;</code>	<p>SAP HANA Extended Services (XS) engine port</p> <p>The default XS engine port is <code>80+&lt;instance number&gt;</code>.</p> <p>If you set this option for a tenant database on a multiple-container system, make sure that you specify the correct port of the tenant database.</p>
<code>-v, --verbose</code>	Writes debug messages to standard error
<code>-s, --https</code>	Sends request using https
<code>-c &lt;certificate&gt;, --certs=&lt;certificate&gt;</code>	Certificate file when using https
<code>-y, --yes</code>	<p>Runs command in non-interactive mode (does not prompt for confirmation)</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>This option is useful for automated mode.</p>
<code>-j, --json</code>	<p>Prints result in json notation if successful</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>This option is not available for all commands.</p>

## Environment Variables

You can set the following environment variables:

Table 123:

Environment Variable	Description
HDBALM_USER	User name
HDBALM_PASSWD	Password
HDBALM_HOST	XS engine host   <b>Example</b> lo1234.mycompany.com  If you want to set the environment variable for a tenant database on a multiple-container system, specify the host as described above for option <code>-h &lt;host&gt;</code> , <code>--host=&lt;host&gt;</code> .
HDBALM_PORT	XS engine port  The default XS engine port is <code>80+&lt;instance number&gt;</code> .  If you set the environment variable for a tenant database on a multiple-container system, make sure that you specify the correct port of the tenant database.
http_proxy	HTTP proxy  For more information, see <i>Proxy Support for hdbalm</i> .
https_proxy	HTTPS proxy  For more information, see <i>Proxy Support for hdbalm</i> .
no_proxy	Use this environment variable if you want to specify hosts and domains for which no proxy is to be used. You can enter a comma-separated list of hosts and domains.  For more information, see <i>Proxy Support for hdbalm</i> .

### i Note

The options `-u`, `-h`, and `-p` take precedence over environment variables. The program requests a password for the user if no password is set as an environment variable.

## Related Information

[Proxy Support for hdbalm \[page 844\]](#)

[SAP HANA Administration Guide](#)

## 11.8.2 Enable SSL for hdbalm

You can secure the communication between `hdbalm` and the SAP HANA system using the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol and certificates.

### Context

`hdbalm` is written in the programming language Python, and it comes with a preconfigured Python interpreter so that `hdbalm` can be used immediately. However, the Python interpreter shipped by SAP does not support secure HTTPS connections.

To enable SSL, you must use an alternative Python version that includes SSL libraries.

#### i Note

For general information on how to use SSL and certificates to secure the SAP HANA server, see *Securing Data Communication* in the *SAP HANA Security Guide*. The link to the guide is in the *Related Information* section.

### Procedure

1. On Linux, Python is usually installed as part of the operating system, or it can be installed using the package management provided by the system. For Microsoft Windows, you can download a suitable Python version from the Python web site. The link is in the *Related Information* section. Supported Python versions are 2.6 and 2.7. SAP recommends that you use the current version.
2. To make sure that `hdbalm` uses the correct Python version, set the environment variable `PYTHON_HOME` to the location of the correct Python installation.

On Windows, you can set the environment variable as shown in the following example:

```
set PYTHON_HOME="c:\Program Files\Python27"
```

#### i Note

Make sure you set the value for this environment variable in quotation marks.

On Unix (bourne shell), you can set the environment variable as shown in the following example:

```
export PYTHON_HOME=/usr/python27
```

3. To enable secure communication in `hdbalm`, set the `hdbalm` option `-s` or `--https` and provide a valid certificate using the `-c <certificate>` or `--certs=<certificate>` options. The certificate is used to validate the identity of the SAP HANA server. The certificate needs to be stored in a file in X.509 PEM format.

### Note

If you use these options without switching the Python version, you receive an error message.

### Note

If you use proxies for communication, the proxy settings might also be relevant when you enable SSL. For more information, see *Proxy Support for hdbalm*.

## Related Information

<http://www.python.org/download> ↗

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

[SAP HANA Security Guide](#)

[Proxy Support for hdbalm \[page 844\]](#)

### 11.8.3 Proxy Support for hdbalm

`hdbalm` supports proxies both for HTTP and HTTPS communication.

If you can only access the SAP HANA system using a proxy, you can set the following environment variables so that `hdbalm` can connect to the SAP HANA system:

- `http_proxy`  
You can set an HTTP proxy.
- `https_proxy`  
You can set an HTTPS proxy.
- `no_proxy`  
You can define that no proxy should be used for specific hosts and domains. You can specify a comma-separated list of hosts and domains for which no proxy is to be used.

Usually on Linux, the environment variables are already configured by your system administration. If not, you can set them as in the following example:

#### Example

```
export http_proxy=http://<host>:<port>/
export https_proxy=http://<host>:<port>/
export no_proxy=<.mycompany.com>
```

On Microsoft Windows, you can set them as described in the following example:

#### Example

```
set http_proxy=http://<host>:<port>/
```

```
set https_proxy=http://<host>:<port>/
set no_proxy=<.mycompany.com>
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

### 11.8.4 hdbalm install Command

Use this command and its corresponding options to install and update SAP HANA products (product archives and software component archives).

The `install` command is available both for installing product and software component archives (\*.zip files) and for updating these. The `install` command detects whether the archive is an add-on product archive or a software component archive. It also detects whether the add-on product or software component is installed already and subsequently executes either an installation or update operation.

The following options are available to install or update **products**:

- You can specify an archive file.
- You can specify a directory location that contains unpacked archive files (usually shipped on DVDs).
- You can specify single instances by specifying a comma-separated list of instances.

The following options are available to install or update **software components**:

- You can specify one or more archive files.
- You can specify one or more directory locations that contain unpacked archive files.

The following code sample depicts the standard syntax in `hdbalm`.

```
hdbalm [<general options>] install [<command option>]* [<archive>|<directory>]*
```

#### i Note

Command options are command-specific. For more information about the `install` command, enter `hdbalm help <command>` in `hdbalm`. Some command options depend on the archive type. For example, you can only use the `--instances` option for product archives.

The following table describes the command options available for the `install` command. For general options and environment variables that you can use with this command, see *hdbalm Commands, Options, and Environment Variables*. For examples of how to use the `install` command, see *Examples: hdbalm install Command* in the *SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management Guide*. Links to this guide and these topics are included in the *Related Information* section.

## Command Options

Table 124:

Option	Description
-d, --display	Displays the contents of the archive No changes are applied to the system.
-l <file name>, --log=<file name>	Sets an alternate location for the log file.

Option	Description
<pre>-o &lt;installation option&gt;,--option=&lt;installation option&gt;</pre>	<p>Provides installation options which can be used to override the default behavior if a version of the product or the software component is already installed</p> <p>Multiple options can be specified by repeating the <code>-o</code> option. The following installation options are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ALLOW_DU_DOWNGRADE</b> Allows downgrades of software components. By default, the system does not install a software component if this leads to a downgrade of the software component. It is possible, however, to override this behavior, for example, if the newer version has errors and you want to revert to the previous version. This option may also be required if the versioning sequence was changed between Support Packages, for example, if SP09 has version 100.0.0 and SP10 has version 1.001.0.</li> </ul> <div style="background-color: #f2e0b7; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>⚠ Caution</b></p> <p>Use this option carefully.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ALLOW_DU_SAME_VERSION</b> Reinstalls the same version of a software component By default, the system does not install a software component if the same version is already installed. It is possible to override this behavior in the following situations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ If a previous installation operation failed, for example, because of activation errors</li> <li>◦ If you run continuous integration scenarios in which the same version of a software component is installed regularly</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>ALLOW_DU_VERSION_UPDATE</b> Allows version updates of software components <code>hdbalm</code> attempts to keep the system in a consistent state. In some cases, for example, if a software component is part of several products, a version update of a software component could render one product inoperable. If <code>hdbalm</code> detects an inconsistency, it aborts the operation. You can use this option to turn off this behavior.</li> <li>• <b>ALLOW_KEEP_DU_NEWER_VERSION</b> Allows to keep the version of the software component if it is installed already in a newer version This option is useful if a software component is part of several products. If the product to be installed contains the software component in a version which is lower than the one already installed, you can choose to retain the newer version. In this case, the installation of the software component is skipped.</li> <li>• <b>USE_TWO_COMMIT_ACTIVATION</b> By default, the installation is canceled if any activation errors occur and the complete installation is rolled back.</li> </ul>

Option	Description
	<p>Installation is also rolled back if you modified objects in your system and a modified object cannot be activated because it references an object that is part of the installation archive. This can occur, for example, if a procedure or view references a table in the archive.</p> <p>If an installation fails because an object outside of the archive cannot be activated due to references to an object in the archive, you can repeat the installation with this activation option. In this case, the object remains broken in the system after the installation, but the installation itself finishes successfully. You must correct the errors manually after the installation.</p> <p>You can check the transport log after performing the installation without this option to find out whether the activation errors were caused by objects in the archive or outside of the archive. After repeating the installation with this option, check the transport log to find out which objects must be repaired afterwards.</p> <p><b>→ Recommendation</b></p> <p>Do <b>not</b> use this option for installations into production systems.</p>
--instances	<p><b>i Note</b></p> <p>This option is available only for the installation and update of product archives.</p> <p>By default all relevant instances are installed. A comma-separated list of instances can be specified here to install only particular product instances.</p>

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

[Installing and Updating SAP HANA Products and Software Components \[page 836\]](#)

[Examples: hdbalm install Command \[page 848\]](#)

[SAP HANA Application Lifecycle Management](#)

### 11.8.4.1 Examples: hdbalm install Command

The examples show how you can use the `hdbalm install` command.

In the following examples, no environment variables are set. The general options `-u <user>`, `-h <host>`, and `-p <port>` are included in the command. When the user is included as a general `hdbalm` option in the command, you are prompted for a password after starting the command.

- The following example installs or updates the product contained in the file `SAP_APO_ANALYTICS_1.0.zip` on the XS engine host `lo1234.mycompany.com` and port 8000.

**i Note**

The default XS engine port is `80+<instance number>`.

The installation or update is performed using the `SYSTEM` user. You are prompted for a password after starting the command.

```
hdbalm -u SYSTEM -h lo1234.mycompany.com -p 8000 install
SAP_APO_ANALYTICS_1.0.zip
```

- The following example installs or updates the product contained in the file `SAP_APO_ANALYTICS_1.0.zip` on the tenant database with the SID `DB1` of the XS engine host `lo1234.mycompany.com` and port 8000. The installation or update is performed using the `SYSTEM` user. You are prompted for a password after starting the command.

```
hdbalm -u SYSTEM -h lo1234-DB1.mycompany.com -p 8000 install
SAP_APO_ANALYTICS_1.0.zip
```

In the following examples, the environment variables `HDBALM_USER`, `HDBALM_PASSWD`, `HDBALM_HOST`, and `HDBALM_PORT` are set. This way, you do not have to include this information as general options in the command.

- The following example installs or updates the product located in the directory `c:\products\SAP_APO_ANALYTICS` and writes the log file to the file `%TEMP%\install.log`:

```
hdbalm install -l %TEMP%\install.log c:\products\SAP_APO_ANALYTICS
```

- The following example installs or updates instances 1 and 2 of the product contained in the file `my_product.zip`. Any additional instances that might be part of this product archive are not installed:

```
hdbalm install --instances 1,2 my_product.zip
```

- The following command installs or updates the software components SCV1 and SCV2:

```
hdbalm install scv1.zip scv2.zip
```

- The following command installs the software components SCV1 and SCV2. The new version is installed even if either of the two components are installed already and the new version has a higher version or higher SP version than the installed software component:

```
hdbalm install --option=ALLOW_DU_VERSION_UPDATE scv1.zip scv2.zip
```

- The following command looks for software component files in the `c:\patches` directory and installs or updates the software components in the SAP HANA system:

```
hdbalm install c:\patches
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm install Command \[page 845\]](#)

## 11.8.5 hdbalm assemble Command

Use this command to assemble SAP HANA add-on products and software components.

Use the following syntax for the `assemble` command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] assemble [<command options>] [<name>, <vendor>] +
```

**i Note**

If the vendor is unique in the system, you can omit it.

### Command Options

The following command options exist:

Table 125:

Command Option	Description
<code>-d &lt;directory&gt;, --directory=&lt;directory&gt;</code>	Specifies an alternate location for the assembled add-on product archives or software component archives
<code>-l &lt;file name&gt;, --log=&lt;file name&gt;</code>	Sets an alternate location for the log file
<code>--languages &lt;languages&gt;</code>	Comma-separated list of language codes that are exported for the software components
<code>--ignore_language_errors</code>	Ignores errors if languages are inconsistently configured for a delivery unit  No language delivery unit is exported.
<code>--overwrite</code>	Overwrites archives if they exist in the file system
<code>--timestamp</code>	Adds a timestamp to the archive file name to distinguish between different assembly builds
<code>--products_only</code>	Assembles only product archives  This can be required if a product and a delivery unit have the same name in the system.
<code>--scvs_only</code>	Assembles only software components  This can be required if a product and a software component have the same name in the system.

Command Option	Description
--export_version	An export format can be specified to make the format compatible with older SAP HANA versions. By default, the current file format is used. This can be required if you want to install the assembled product or software component in an older SAP HANA version. For a mapping between file format and SAP HANA version, see SAP Note 1984354.

### Example

The following example assembles the product SAP APO ANALYTICS of the vendor sap.com and writes the product archive to the local directory:

```
hdbalm assemble "SAP APO ANALYTICS", sap.com
```

## Related Information

[SAP Note 1984354](#)

[Assembling Add-On Products and Software Components \[page 835\]](#)

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

## 11.8.6 hdbalm import Command

Use this command to import SAP HANA delivery units (.tgz files).

Use the following syntax for the `import` command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] import [<command option>]* [<du tgz>|<directory>]*
```

## Command Options

The following command options exist:

Table 126:

Command Option	Description
-d, --display	Displays the archive contents No changes are applied to the system.
-l <file name>, --log=<file name>	Sets an alternate location for the log file

### Example

The following example imports delivery units `mydu1` and `mydu2`:

```
hdbalm import mydu1.tgz mydu2.tgz
```

This command looks for delivery units in the `c:\delivery_units` directory and imports them:

```
hdbalm import c:\delivery_units
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

## 11.8.7 hdbalm transport Command

Use this command to execute transport-related SAP HANA application lifecycle-management activities, such as displaying transport routes and starting the transport for a specific transport route.

Use the following syntax for the `transport` command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] transport <transport command>
```

## Transport commands

The following `transport` commands exist:

Table 127:

Transport Command	Description
<code>list</code>	Lists available transport routes.
<code>start</code>	Starts a transport operation.

### Example

The following example shows how to start a transport operation on the specified transport route:

```
hdbalm transport start <route id>
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

### 11.8.8 hdbalm log Command

Use this command to display logs for other commands.

Use the following syntax for the `log` command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] log <log command> [<parameter>]*
```

## Log Commands

The following `log` commands exist:

Table 128:

Log Command	Description
list	Lists available log entries.
get	Displays the log for another command.

#### Example

The following example shows how to display the log for a particular process ID.

```
hdbalm log get <ID>
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

### 11.8.9 hdbalm product Command

Use this command to manage SAP HANA add-on products.

Use the following syntax for the `product` command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] product <product commands> [<command option>]* [<parameter>]*
```

## Product Commands

The following product commands exist:

Table 129:

Product Command	Description
list	Lists all products installed in the system.
get	Displays metadata for the product.
create	<p>Creates a product in the system (metadata only). The vendor is set to the vendor name configured in the system.</p> <p>The supported command options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>-v &lt;version&gt;, --version=&lt;version&gt;</code></li><li>• <code>-d &lt;description&gt;, --description=&lt;description&gt;</code></li></ul>
delete	Deletes the product (metadata only). No delivery units are removed from the system.
createInstance	<p>Creates a product instance for the specified product.</p> <p>There is one supported command option:</p> <pre>d &lt;description&gt;, --description=&lt;description&gt;</pre>
deleteInstance	Deletes a product instance for the specified product. All assigned delivery units are unassigned.
assign	Assigns a delivery unit to a product instance.
unassign	Unassigns a delivery unit from a product instance.

## Examples

The following example shows how to display metadata for the product.

```
hdbalm product get <product name> <vendor name>
```

The following example shows how to create a product in the system (metadata only). The vendor is set to the vendor name configured in the system.

```
hdbalm product create [<command option>]* <product name>
```

The following example shows how to delete the product (metadata only). It does not remove deliver units.

```
hdbalm product delete <product name> <vendor name>
```

The following example shows how to create a product instance for the specified product.

```
hdbalm product createInstance [<command option>] <product name> <vendor name> <instance id>
```

The following example shows how to delete a product instance for the specified product and ensures that all its assigned delivery units are unassigned.

```
hdbalm product deleteInstance <product name> <vendor name> <instance id>
```

The following example shows how to assign a delivery unit to a product instance.

```
hdbalm product assign <du name> <du vendor> <product name> <product vendor> <instance id>
```

The following example shows how to unassign a delivery unit from a product instance.

```
unassign product <du name> <du vendor> <product name> <product vendor> <instance id>
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

## 11.8.10 hdbalm du Command

Use this command to manage SAP HANA delivery units.

Use the following syntax for the `du` command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] du <du command> [<command option>]* [<parameter>]*
```

## DU Commands

The following `du` commands exist:

Table 130:

DU Command	Description
list	Lists all delivery units deployed in the system.
get	Displays metadata for the delivery unit.

DU Command	Description
create	<p>Creates a new delivery unit (metadata only).</p> <p>The supported command options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>-v &lt;version&gt;, --version=&lt;version&gt;</code></li> <li>• <code>-r &lt;responsible&gt;, --responsible=&lt;responsible&gt;</code></li> <li>• <code>-d &lt;description&gt;, --description=&lt;description&gt;</code></li> </ul> <p>The version syntax must use this format: <b>a, a.b, or a.b.c</b>, where <b>a</b> is the version number, <b>b</b> the version SP, and <b>c</b> the patch number.</p>
delete	Deletes a delivery unit (metadata only). No objects are removed from the system.
undeploy	Undeploys a delivery unit. The delivery unit metadata and all objects are removed from the system.
	<p><b>⚠ Caution</b></p> <p>Use this command option with caution.</p>
make_local	This is a developer feature that sets the source system of a delivery unit to the local system. This is not supported for delivery units shipped by SAP.
languages	Retrieves the original language for a delivery unit and all translations available in the system.
set_original_language	<p>Sets the original language attribute for all packages that belong to the specified delivery unit.</p> <p>The language is either a two-character ISO 639-1 language code or a two-character ISO 639-1 language code followed by an underscore followed by a two-character ISO 3166-1 country code.</p>

## Examples

The following example shows how to display metadata for the delivery unit.

```
hdbalm du get <du name> <du vendor>
```

The following example shows how to create a new delivery unit (metadata only).

```
hdbalm du create [<command option>]* <du name>
```

The following example shows how to delete a delivery unit (metadata only). This command does not remove objects from the system.

```
hdbalm du delete <du name> <du vendor>
```

The following example shows how to undeploy a delivery unit. This command removes delivery unit metadata and all objects from the system.

### Caution

Use this command option with caution.

```
hdbalm du undeploy <du name> <du vendor>
```

The following example shows how to retrieve the original language for a delivery unit and all translations available in the system.

```
hdbalm du languages <du name> <du vendor>
```

The following example shows how to set the original language attribute for all packages that belong to the specified delivery unit.

```
hdbalm du set_original_language <du name> <du vendor> <language>
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

## 11.8.11 hdbalm dependencies Command

Use this command to display and analyze dependencies of SAP HANA delivery units.

Use the following syntax for the dependencies command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] dependencies [<command option>]* [<source du>]
[<source du vendor>] [<target du>] [<target du vendor>]
```

## Command options

The following command options exist:

Table 131:

Command Option	Description
<code>-f, --full</code>	Shows the full dependency view and analysis.
<code>-r, --references</code>	Shows object references between delivery units. This command requires the name and vendor of the source and the target delivery units.
<code>-n, --nirvana</code>	Shows nirvana references for a delivery unit. This option displays object references for objects that are part of a delivery unit to objects which are not part of a delivery unit. If a delivery unit contains objects with these references, it cannot be imported into another system.

### i Note

If you do not specify any command options, a list of delivery unit dependencies is displayed. Each line of the output lists a delivery unit followed by a colon and a comma-separated list of referenced delivery units.

### Example

To display the dependencies of the delivery unit `HANA_XS_LM`, you use the following command:

```
hdbalm dependencies HANA_XS_LM sap.com
```

The delivery unit `HANA_XS_LM` has references to the delivery units `SAPUI5_1` and `HANA_XS_BASE`. The output appears as follows:

```
HANA_XS_LM(sap.com) : SAPUI5_1(sap.com), HANA_XS_BASE(sap.com)
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

## 11.8.12 hdbalm package Command

Use this command to manage SAP HANA packages.

Use the following syntax for the `package` command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] package <package command> [<parameter>]*
```

## Package Commands

The following package commands exist:

Table 132:

Command Option	Description
create	Creates a new package.
delete	Deletes a package. The package must not contain any sub-packages or objects.
assign	Assigns a package to a delivery unit.

### Example

The following example shows the syntax for assigning a package to a delivery unit.

```
package assign <du name> <du vendor> <package name>
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

### 11.8.13 hdbalm admin Command

Use this command to execute administrative commands in SAP HANA application lifecycle management.

Use the following syntax for the `admin` command:

```
hdbalm [<general options>] admin <admin command> [<parameter>]*
```

## Admin Commands

The following `admin` commands exist:

Table 133:

Admin Command	Description
getvendor	Returns the vendor name of the system.
setvendor	Sets the vendor to the new vendor name.

Admin Command	Description
enablechangemanagement	<p>Enables change recording.</p> <p><b>⚠ Caution</b></p> <p>Enabling change recording makes all existing active objects part of a released changelist. In addition, all object in subsequent activations are assigned to changelists that are released afterwards. Only these changelists can be transported from the system.</p>
disablechangemanagement	<p>Disables change recording.</p> <p><b>⚠ Caution</b></p> <p>Disabling change recording switches off change tracking in the system. This makes all existing objects transportable, including those active objects that were already part of open changelists.</p>

### Example

The following example shows the syntax for setting a new vendor.

```
hdbalm admin setvendor <new vendor>
```

## Related Information

[hdbalm Commands, Options, and Variables \[page 839\]](#)

## 11.9 SAP HANA Repository Translation Tool

The Repository Translation Tool (RTT) is a Java-based command line tool shipped with the SAP HANA client that enables you to transport language files in a standard format between the SAP HANA repository and a file system or between the SAP HANA repository and a dedicated SAP translation system.

During the translation process, the inactive (design-time) content of tables in the SAP HANA repository must be uploaded to the translation system using the repository translation tool (RTT). After translation is completed, you use the repository translation tool to re-import the translated texts into the SAP HANA repository.

Use the following RTT commands to implement the translation process:

Table 134:

Command	Abbreviation	Definition
download (SAP Internal Only)	d	Downloads the translated texts from the SAP translation system to a file system.
export		Exports the texts in the original language (written by the developer) from the SAP HANA repository text tables to a file system.
export/upload (SAP Internal Only)	e	Exports and uploads the texts in the original language (written by the developer) from the SAP HANA repository text tables to a file system.
import		Imports the translated texts from a file system to the SAP HANA repository text tables.
download/import (SAP Internal Only)	i	Downloads and imports the translated texts from a file system to the SAP HANA repository text tables.
upload (SAP Internal Only)	u	Uploads the texts from the file system to the SAP translation system where the translators can translate the texts from the original language into the required target languages.

If you are using the SAP translation system, you can combine operations in one command, as follows:

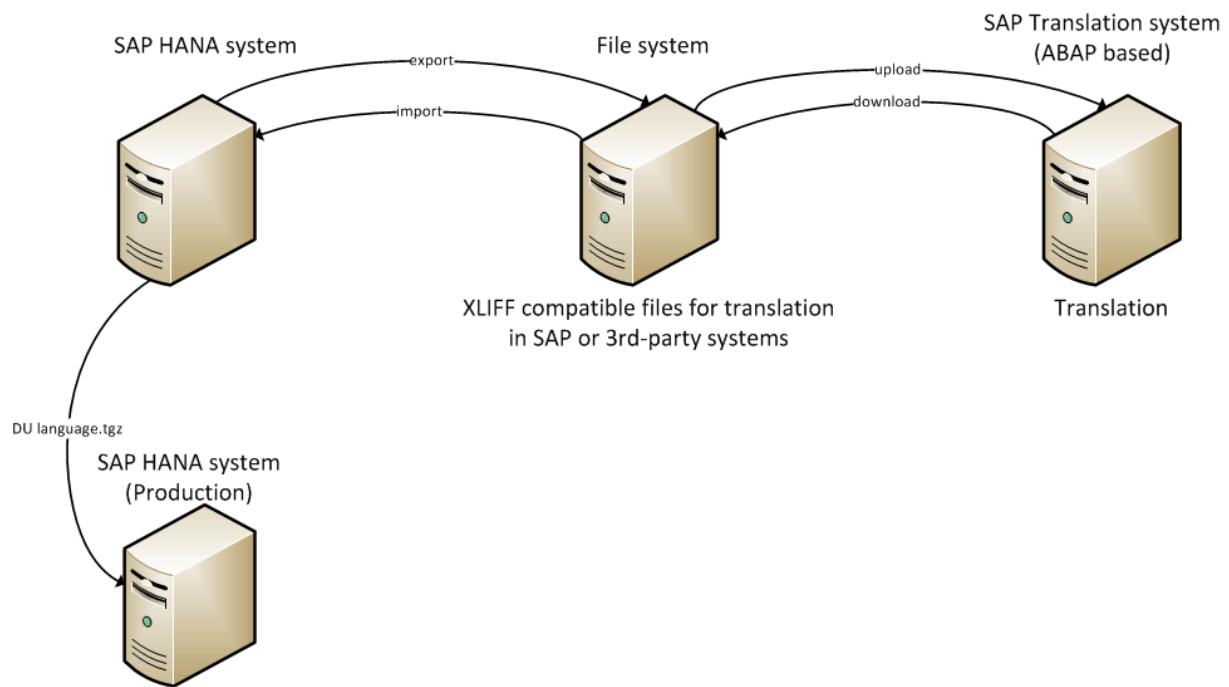
- **export/upload**  
(SAP Internal Only): Exports the texts in the original language and uploads the texts to the SAP translation system.
- **download/import**  
(SAP Internal Only): Downloads the translated texts from the SAP translation system and imports the translated texts to the SAP HANA repository text tables.

The following graphic depicts the translation tool process using the commands provided by the RTT.

**i Note**

This tool is designed for use with one SAP HANA system and one translation system.

## Repository Translation Tool Process



### Related Information

[SAP HANA Repository Translation Tool \(RTT\) Parameters \[page 862\]](#)

[Create Text-Strings Packages for Translation \[page 865\]](#)

[Export Text-Strings Files for Translation \[page 866\]](#)

[Import Translated Text-Strings Files \[page 866\]](#)

### 11.9.1 SAP HANA Repository Translation Tool (RTT) Parameters

The SAP HANA Repository Translation Tool (RTT) is a Java-based command line tool that exports language files in a standard format for translation for customer or partner use.

The following parameters can be used with the commands.

Table 135:

Parameter	Abbreviation	Definition
config	c	Configuration file (default: C:\Users\<your_user_ID>\workspace-java-indigo\rtt.properties)
dbPasswd		Database password (overrides config file) (default: no password)
dbReadFromStdin		Read database password from stdin (overrides config file and --dbpasswd) (default: false)
deliveryUnit	d du	Delivery units (format: <vendor>.<deliveryunit>) (default: no delivery units)
force		Force import of translated texts (skip source text matching) (default: false)
languageChange		Allow original language change (default: false)
locale	l	Locales to download/import (default: all locales)
noDelete		Do not delete XLIFF files before export/download (default: false)
noExcludePrivate		Do not exclude objects marked as private ("fncViewLayer" tag set to "Private") (default: false)
package	p	Packages to export/upload/download/import (default: no packages)
r3ReadFromStdin		Read R/3 translation system password from stdin (overrides config file and --r3passwd) (default: false)
r3Passwd		Database password (overrides config file) (default: no password)
severity		Log severity level (all, debug, error, fatal, info, none, path or warning) (default: WARNING)
skipReview		Specifies that the review step is to be skipped. (default: false) <div style="background-color: #ffffcc; padding: 10px;"> <b>i Note</b>            Setting the parameter to true will overwrite already reviewed texts.         </div>
verbose	v	Verbose mode (show messages with severity INFO) (default: false)
veryVerbose	vv	Very verbose mode (show all messages with severity DEBUG) (default: false)
xliffDir	x	XLIFF file directory (default: "rtt_exports" or "rtt_imports" in "C:\Users\<your_user_ID>\AppData\Local\Temp\")

Here are some examples of RTT syntax:

- Export the texts from those packages matching "pack\*" from the database using the default configuration file ("rtt.properties"):
 

```
rtt --export -p pack*
```
- Import the translated texts into the database using the default configuration file ("rtt.properties"):
 

```
rtt --import -p pack*
```
- Export the texts from the database into the directory "exports":
 

```
rtt --export -p pack* -x exports
```

- Import the translated texts from the directory "imports":  
rtt --import -p pack\* -x imports

## 11.9.2 Configure the Repository Translation Tool

The repository translation tool (RTT) reads a configuration file (`rtt.properties`) to determine the settings for file transfer.

### Context

You need to maintain your information in the `rtt.properties` file in order to use the RTT. The `rtt.properties` file enables you to specify the settings required to transfer text-resource files (in the required XLIFF format) between the system hosting the SAP HANA repository and the system hosting the translation database and tools. You can use `rtt.properties` file to set system-related access details, for example, system user-logon IDs, and the translation-area number (TAN) for the translation system.

### Procedure

- Locate the `hdbcclient` directory on your server's hard drive.
- Open the `rtt.properties` file and add all required information by replacing the placeholders.

```
db settings (SAP HANA repository)
db.hostname=<db hostname, e.g. myhost.name.com>
db.instance=<db instance, e.g. 00>
db.user=<db username>
db.passwd=<db password>
translation system settings
jco.client.tan=<translation area number e.g. 027001>
jco.client.client=<translation system client, e.g. 000>
jco.client.user=<translation system user>
jco.client.passwd=<translation system password>
jco.client.mshost=<translation system host>
jco.client.r3name=<translation system SID>
```

#### Note

The RTT properties file is intended to help automate the connection between SAP HANA and the translation system, which are installed and licensed separately. The connection details for a specific translation system will need to be obtained from the system's administrator.

The translation area number required in `jco.client.tan` represents a technical area in a specific language and is typically of the form "027001"; the "translation-system user" specified in `jco.client.user` is used to establish a connection to the translation system and must have the permissions required to log on (and upload content) to the translation system. The name of the R3 system defined in `jco.client.r3name` is the typical three-character-long system ID, for example, "B1Y".

3. Save your work.

**i** Note

The `rtt.properties` file is not encrypted, which means that information you include in the configuration potentially is exposed.

### 11.9.3 Create Text-Strings Packages for Translation

You must create packages to transport text strings for translation.

#### Context

All text strings must be stored in a `.hdbtextbundle` file. The `.hdbtextbundle` file can be retrieved using a JavaScript API. The following example demonstrates how you can externalize the texts in a `.hdbtextbundle` file.

```
TRANSLATE
XBUT,20
BUTTON_SAVE=Save
XBUT,20
BUTTON_CANCEL=Don't save
XMSG,40
MSG_SUCCESS=File has been saved.
```

In this example, `# TRANSLATE` defines that the texts can be translated (exported), and `# XBUT,20` defines the text type with a 20-character length maximum.

#### Procedure

1. In the SAP HANA studio, select the system from which you want to transport text files for translation.
2. Click the *Content* file with the alternate mouse button and choose  *New* > *Package*.
3. In the *New Package* dialog box, enter all relevant information and then choose *Translation*.
4. Select a *Terminology Domain*, enter a *Text Collection* name, and choose *OK*.
5. Choose *Save and Activate*.

#### Related Information

[Tutorial: Create and Translate Text Bundles for SAPUI5 Applications \[page 696\]](#)

## 11.9.4 Export Text-Strings Files for Translation

You want to export text-strings files to a file system for translation.

### Prerequisites

You have updated the `rtt.properties` file with all appropriate information.

### Context

When you have created your text-strings files and assigned them to packages, you can begin exporting them to a file system for translation.

### Procedure

1. Start a command line application and navigate to the directory in which the `<rtt.properties>` file is stored.
2. Type `rtt -e -p <name of the package> -v <other parameters>` and press `Enter`.

### Results

The `Upload finished` message appears. The file has been exported to the file server and is ready to be sent for translation.

## 11.9.5 Import Translated Text-Strings Files

You want to import translated text-strings files from a file system.

### Context

When your text strings are translated, you can import them back into your system.

## Procedure

1. Start a command line application and navigate to the directory in which the `<rtt.properties>` file is stored.
2. Type `rtt -i -p <name of the package> -v <other parameters>` and press `Enter`.

## Results

The `Download finished` message appears. The file has been imported from the file server.

## 11.10 Maintaining Translation Text Strings

Maintain the translated text strings used in an application's user interface, error messages, and documentation.

For the purposes of localisation (L10N), you can provide the text strings displayed in an application's user interface in multiple languages, for example, English, French, or Chinese. You can also provide notifications and error messages in the same, local languages. To manage and maintain these translated text strings, SAP HANA provides an online translation tool (OTT). The translation of the text strings themselves can be performed manually or with suggestions provided by an external service, for example, SAP Translation Hub. Access to external translation services is not covered by the SAP HANA license and usually requires a user account.

Setting up and maintaining the online translation tools for SAP HANA includes the following high-level tasks:

- Enabling the translation tool
- Accessing packages in the SAP HANA repository
- Maintaining text strings in the source and target languages
  - ACTIVE\_CONTENT\_TEXT
  - ACTIVE\_CONTEXT\_TEXT\_CONTENT
  - ACTIVE\_OBJECT\_TEXT
  - ACTIVE\_OBJECT\_TEXT\_CONTENT
- Enabling access to a remote text-translation service (**optional**)

### **Restriction**

Access to external translation services is not granted in the SAP HANA license. To use external translation services such as the *SAP Translation Hub*, an additional license is required. In addition, the *SAP Translation Hub* is currently available only for Beta testing.

- Maintaining HTTP destinations for any remote systems that provide services used by the *Online Translation Tool* (**optional**)  
Remote translation services such as *SAP Translation Hub* can provide access to a database of translated text strings, which are used to provide suggestions in the target language. To access such a remote

service, you must maintain an HTTP destination (or extend an existing destination) that provides details of the host system where the translation service is running as well as a valid user account and logon authentication. You must also ensure that a trust relationship exists between the translation server and SAP HANA, for example, by importing the translation server's client certificate into the SAP HANA trust store.

The SAP HANA *Online Translation Tool* is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL:

`http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAINSTANCE>/sap/hana/xs/translationTool/`

➔ Tip

The privileges required to use the SAP HANA *Online Translation Tool* (OTT) are granted in the role `sap.hana.xs.translationTool.roles::translator`.

## Related Information

[Create and Edit Text Translations \[page 868\]](#)

[Export and Import Translated Text \[page 873\]](#)

[SAP Translation Hub Cloud Service \(beta\)](#)

### 11.10.1 Create and Edit Text Translations

Maintain translations for text strings displayed in an SAP HANA application's user interface.

## Prerequisites

To maintain translated text for an application in SAP HANA XS, the following prerequisites apply:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system
- You have the privileges required to access the repository packages containing the text strings to be localised/translated
- You have been granted the privileges assigned in the following SAP HANA user roles:
  - `sap.hana.xs.translationTool.roles::translator`
- If you want to make use of optional external translation services, you must maintain access to the translation server system.

⚠ Restriction

Access to external translation services is not granted in the SAP HANA license. To use external translation services such as the *SAP Translation Hub*, an additional license is required. The *SAP Translation Hub* is currently available only for BETA testing.

Details of the remote systems where the translation service is running (for example, SAP Translation Hub) are defined in HTTP destination configuration files along with details of any corresponding user account and authentication certificates.

## Context

An application's user interface and notifications can be translated from the original source language (for example, English) into one or more local (target) languages, for example, French, Spanish, or Japanese. You can either translate the texts manually or with the help of an (optional) external translation service. To provide translations of the UI text strings for your SAP HANA application, perform the following steps:

## Procedure

1. Start the *SAP HANA Online Translation Tool*.

The *SAP HANA Online Translation Tool* tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/translationTool`.

**i Note**

In the default configuration, the URL redirects the request to a logon screen, which requires the credentials of an authenticated SAP HANA database user to complete the logon process. The user who logs on must also have the privileges required to perform the tasks associated with the maintenance of translation texts.

2. Select the delivery unit that contains the application with the text strings you want to translate.

Use the *Delivery Unit* drop-down list to select a delivery unit.

**➔ Tip**

The name of the vendor associated with the selected delivery unit is displayed automatically in the *Vendor* field, for example, `acme.com`; the vendor name cannot be changed here.

3. Select the package that contains the text strings you want to translate.

Use the *Package* drop-down list to select a package. If the selected package contains text elements, they are displayed alphabetically in a list.

**➔ Tip**

The original source language associated with the contents of the selected package is displayed automatically.

4. Enable access to a text-translation service, for example, *SAP Translation Hub*. (**optional**).

### **Restriction**

Access to external translation services is not granted in the SAP HANA license. To use external translation services, an additional license is required.

If you want to make user of the services provided by a translation server, you need to maintain an HTTP destination **extension** that provide details of the host system where the translation service is running; access to the translation service usually requires a user account and logon authentication. You must also ensure that a trust relationship exists between the translation server and SAP HANA, for example, by importing the translation server's client certificate into the SAP HANA trust store that you are using to handle authentication for this HTTP destination.

The HTTP destination configuration

`sap.hana.xs.translationTool.server:translationService.xshttpdest` defines details of the server hosting the SAP Translation Hub service. Although you cannot edit this destination configuration, note that you can use an HTTP destination **extension** to change the details, for example, to point to an alternative host name.

#### 5. Add a translation for a text element.

For a given text element in the *Text ID* list, you can provide a suitable translation in one or more languages, for example: French ([fr](#)), Spanish ([es](#)), and Japanese ([ja](#)).

- Expand the desired UI text element.

In the *Text ID* list, locate and expand the element for which you want to provide a translation.

- Add a translation.

Choose [Add Translation](#).

- Select the desired language for the translation from the *Target Language* drop-down list.
- In the *Target Language Text* box, type the translation for the selected text element.

### **Tip**

If the *SAP Translation Hub* option is enabled, language-specific suggestions for possible translation matches are provided as you type. If you see a suggestion that is suitable, use the mouse to select the suggested text.

- Add another translation.

Choose [Add Translation](#)

- Edit an existing translation

Choose the [Edit](#) icon next to the translation you want to modify and make the required changes.

#### 6. Save your additions and changes.

Choose [Save](#) to store the added translations or any modifications in the appropriate tables in the SAP HANA database.

## Related Information

[Online Translation Tool Details \[page 871\]](#)

## 11.10.1.1 Online Translation Tool Details

Display details of the source text for an application's user interface elements and, if available, any available translations.

The *Online Translation Tool* tool enables you to view details of the text elements contained in the individual packages of an SAP HANA application. The following table indicates which information can be viewed.

**i Note**

The privileges required to use the SAP HANA *Online Translation Tool* (OTT) are granted in the role `sap.hana.xs.ott.roles::translator`.

Table 136: Translation Text Details

UI Element	Description	Example
<i>Delivery Unit</i>	Name of the SAP HANA delivery unit (DU) that contains the default text strings for which a translation is required along with the name of the vendor associated with the selected delivery unit	ACME_XS_BASE - acme.com
<i>Package</i>	The name of (and path to) the package containing the text strings for which a translation is required	acme.com.app.ui.login
<i>Source language</i>	Short name of the source language for the text strings contained in the selected package, for example: en (English), fr (French), ja, (Japanese)	en
<i>Target Language</i>	Long or short name of the target language for the text strings contained in the selected package, for example: Bulgarian (bg), French (fr), Japanese (ja)	Chinese (zh)
<i>Domains</i>	The SAP product-specific translation domain to which the selected DU/package belongs, for example, <i>Financial Accounting</i> or <i>Customer Relationship Management</i> . Domains are used in the translation process to determine the correct terminology for a text string that has to be translated; the same text might require a different translation depending on the domain (or application) in which it is used. Suggestions from a remote translation service such as the SAP Translation Hub are restricted to the currently selected domain.	"Basis", or "Accounting - General"

UI Element	Description	Example
<i>Enable Translation Hub</i>	<p>Enable automatic suggestions (in the <i>Target language text</i> box) for translation texts using a remote service such as SAP Translation Hub; the suggestions are provided by a remote translation database.</p> <div style="background-color: #FFFACD; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>⚠ Restriction</b></p> <p>Access to external translation services is not granted in the SAP HANA license. To use external translation services such as the <i>SAP Translation Hub</i>, an additional license is required. The <i>SAP Translation Hub</i> is currently available only for BETA testing.</p> <p>Access to the remote translation service usually requires a user account and logon authentication. You also need to maintain an HTTP destination (or extend an existing one) for the translation server system and ensure the server system is trusted by SAP HANA, for example, by importing the translation server's client certificate into the SAP HANA trust store.</p> </div>	Yes/No
<i>Text ID</i>	The name/ID of the UI element for which a text string is required. This could be a tab title, a box name, a notification, or an error message.	LOGON_LABEL
<i>Default Text</i>	The text string associated with the text ID	HANA Logon
<i>Target Language Text</i>	Proposed/accepted translation (in the target language) of the text string displayed (in the source language) in the <i>Default Text</i> field. Activate the <i>Enable Translation Hub</i> option to enable auto-suggestions in the target language.	-
<i>Source Object</i>	The name of the design-time artifact that contains the UI text strings.	logonForm.hdbtextbundle

## Related Information

[Create and Edit Text Translations \[page 868\]](#)

[Export and Import Translated Text \[page 873\]](#)

## 11.10.2 Export and Import Translated Text

Transport text translations between systems using the industry-standard, XML-based `xliff` format.

### Prerequisites

To export and import translated text for an application in SAP HANA XS, the following prerequisites apply:

- You have access to an SAP HANA system
- You have access to the repository packages containing the text strings to be localised/translated
- You have been granted the privileges assigned in the following SAP HANA user roles:
  - `sap.hana_xs.translationTool.roles::translator`

### Context

An application's user interface and notifications can be translated from the original source language (for example, English) into one or more target local languages, for example, French, Spanish, or Japanese. To provide translations of the UI text strings for your SAP HANA application, perform the following steps:

### Procedure

1. Start the *SAP HANA Online Translation Tool*.

The *SAP HANA Online Translation Tool* tool is available on the SAP HANA XS Web server at the following URL: `http://<WebServerHost>:80<SAPHANAinstance>/sap/hana/xs/translationTool`.

#### Note

In the default configuration, the URL redirects the request to a logon screen, which requires the credentials of an authenticated SAP HANA database user to complete the logon process. The user who logs on must also have the privileges required to perform the tasks associated with the maintenance of translation texts.

2. Select the delivery unit that contains the application with the text strings you want to translate.

Use the *Delivery Unit* drop-down list to select a delivery unit.

#### Tip

The name of the vendor associated with the selected delivery unit is displayed automatically in the *Vendor* field, for example, `acme.com`. You cannot change this here.

3. Select the package that contains the text strings you want to translate.

Use the *Packagedrop-down list* to select a package. If the selected package contains text elements, they are displayed automatically in an alphabetically ordered list.

➔ **Tip**

The original source language associated with the contents of the selected package is displayed automatically.

4. Export the UI text elements from the local source system.

You can export the translation texts to an archive on a local file system using the industry-standard, XML-based `xliff` format.

5. Import the UI text elements to the remote target system.

You can import the translation texts into SAP HANA from an archive whose content are stored using the industry-standard, XML-based `xliff` format.

6. Confirm that the import operation was successful.

Check the status of the following tables in the SAP HANA database:

- ACTIVE\_CONTENT\_TEXT
- ACTIVE\_CONTEXT\_TEXT\_CONTENT
- ACTIVE\_OBJECT\_TEXT
- ACTIVE\_OBJECT\_TEXT\_CONTENT

## Related Information

[Online Translation Tool Details \[page 871\]](#)

[Create and Edit Text Translations \[page 868\]](#)

# 12 SAP HANA Database Client Interfaces

SAP HANA provides a selection of client interfaces for connecting applications to retrieve and update data.

For example, a spreadsheet application can use ODBO to consume analytic views and enable users to create pivot tables, or a Web application can use OData interfaces to access data and display it. SAP HANA also includes a data provider that enables you to connect Microsoft .NET applications to the database.

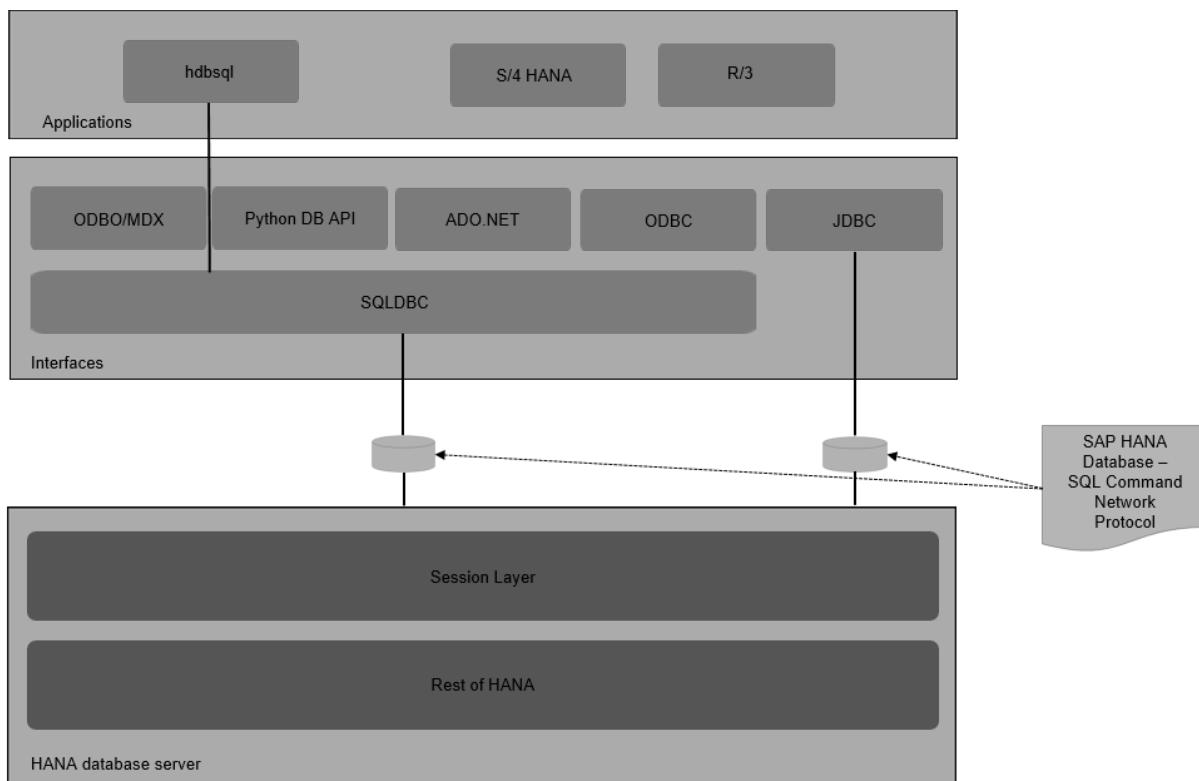
SAP HANA exposes data with the client interfaces and web-based interfaces.

- Client interfaces are available as long as the SAP HANA client is installed.
  - JDBC
  - ODBC (SQLDBC)
  - SQLDBC
  - ODBO/MDX (SQLDBC)
  - Python DB API (SQLDBC)
  - ADO.NET (SQLDBC)
- Web-based interfaces must be defined by the application developer, who determines what data to expose and to whom.
  - OData
  - XMLA
  - Server-Side JavaScript

Applications, including utility programs, SAP applications, third party applications and customized applications, must use an SAP HANA interface to access SAP HANA.

SQLDBC is the basis for most interfaces; however, it is not generally used directly by applications. For more information about SQLDBC, see the SAP MaxDB documentation.

The following diagram displays all supported SAP HANA interfaces and common SAP applications and utility programs.



If you are developing in a multiple-database environment, then you can enable client connections to a specific database by using the database name; for example, TDB1. In a multiple-database system, the individual database instances are isolated. SYSTEMDB stores information about the host name and port number for other databases. The client connection uses the DATABASENAME parameter to specify the database instance to connect to. After receiving the response message from SYSTEMDB, the client disconnects from SYSTEMDB and reconnects to the database specified by DATABASENAME.

For example, in a multiple-database environment, an ODBC connection string to the database TDB1 would look similar to the following code:

```
servernode=localhost:30013;uid=SYSTEM;pwd=manager;DATABASENAME=TDB1
```

### ⚠ Caution

If tracing is enabled for client interfaces, then sensitive information included in SQL statements (for example, names, passwords, or credit card information) is logged in the SAP HANA trace files as plain text.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Database - Client Installation and Update Guide](#)

## 12.1 Setting Session-Specific Client Information

The client information is a list of session variables (defined in property-value pairs) that an application can set in the SAP HANA client interface.

The SAP HANA client interface stores the values specified in the M\_SESSION\_CONTEXT system table. Apart from storing the client information in the appropriate place in the database, the methods described here do not alter the behavior of the connection in any way. The values supplied to these methods are used for internal checks, diagnostics, and debugging purposes only.

When connecting to your database via JDBC or ODBC, set session variables by using the sessionVariable: connection option. Each session variable must be specified as an independent key-value pair. For example:

```
jdbc:sap://ykfl00540545a:30115/?
autocommit=false&sessionVariable:APPLICATION=myapp&sessionVariable:APPLICATIONUSER
R=user1&sessionVariable:myvar=myval&distribution=connection
```

For the purposes of workload classes the following keys are supported.

Table 137: Supported Key-Value Pairs

Key	Workload Class	Default	Value
APPLICATION	Application Name	System.getProperty( "sun.java.command" )	NVARCHAR string with a maximum character length of 256
APPLICATIONUSER	Application User Name	System.getProperty( "user.name" )	NVARCHAR string with a maximum character length of 256
CLIENT	Client		3 characters
USER	User Name		NVARCHAR string with a maximum character length of 256 (the database user name)

### i Note

For information about workload management classes, see "Managing Workload" in the *SAP HANA Administration Guide*.

The information described here refers to the following client interfaces:

- [ODBC](#)
- [JDBC](#)
- [Python DB API](#)
- [node.js API](#)

## ODBC

Use connection attributes to access client information with the ODBC application programming interface (API):

```
SQL_SQLDBC_SET_CLIENTINFO_KEY = 11003
SQL_SQLDBC_SET_CLIENTINFO_VALUE = 11004
SQL_SQLDBC_GET_CLIENTINFO_VALUE = 11005
```

The attributes are defined in `Interfaces/ODBC/impl/sqldbc_sdbodbc.h`, as illustrated in the following example:

```
// setting key HOMER and value mafimi
char key[] = "HOMER";
rc = SQLSetConnectAttr(hdbc, SQL_SQLDBC_SET_CLIENTINFO_KEY, value, SQL_NTS);
char value[] = "mafimi";
rc = SQLSetConnectAttr(hdbc, SQL_SQLDBC_SET_CLIENTINFO_VALUE, value, SQL_NTS);
// retrieving the current value
// if the buffer is too short: rc is SQL_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO and sqlstate 01004:
// String data, right truncated
char buf[64];
SQLINTEGER bufLen = 0;
rc = SQLGetConnectAttr(hdbc, SQL_SQLDBC_GET_CLIENTINFO_VALUE, buf, sizeof(buf),
&bufLen);
```

## JDBC

The JDBC 4.0 API provides the following methods on `java.sql.Connection` to get or set the client information for a session.

- `setClientInfo`

```
void setClientInfo(String name,
 String value)
throws SQLClientInfoException
void setClientInfo(Properties properties)
throws SQLClientInfoException
```

- `getClientInfo`

```
String getClientInfo(String name)
throws SQLException
Properties getClientInfo()
throws SQLException
```

When you retrieve a client information property name with the command `getClientInfo()`, the names are case-sensitive.

For details on the API, refer to the JDBC specification.

```
//set client info property
this.connection.setClientInfo("APPLICATION", "Simpson");
this.connection.setClientInfo("APPLICATIONVERSION", "0.100");
//unset client info property
this.connection.setClientInfo("APPLICATION", null);
//get client info property
Properties ci = this.connection.getClientInfo();
```

```

Enumeration e = ci.keys();
while (e.hasMoreElements()) {
 String key = (String) e.nextElement();
 String val = (String) ci.get(key);
 System.out.println("key="+key+" Value="+val);
}

```

## Python DB API

The Python DB API (`hdbccli.dbapi`) is a Python extension module that allows access to NewDB via SQLDBC and, with a few exceptions, conforms to the Python Database API Specification v2.0.

- `getclientinfo`

Get client information with a key.

```

conn = dbapi.connect(address=<host>, port=<port>, user=<user>,
password=<password>)
key = conn.getclientinfo("MYKEY")

```

- If the key for `getclientinfo` is “key=None”, then **all** defined key-value pairs are returned.
- The `dbapi.Connection.getclientinfo` command is similar to the command `java.sql.Connection.getClientInfo()` that is included in the JDBC 4.0 API.

- `setclientinfo`

Set client information with a key and a corresponding value.

```

conn = dbapi.connect(address=<host>, port=<port>, user=<user>,
password=<password>)
conn.setclientinfo("MYKEY", 1000)

```

- If the key for `setclientinfo` is “value=None”, then the key is removed from the client-information dictionary.
- The `dbapi.Connection.setClientInfo` command is similar to the command `java.sql.Connection.setClientInfo()` that is included in the JDBC 4.0 API.

- Example

```

cconn = dbapi.connect(address=<host>, port=<port>, user=<user>,
password=<password>)
cur = conn.cursor()
conn.setclientinfo("SCRIPT", file_)
cur.execute("create column table table_to_check_clientinfo (z int primary
key)")
ci = conn.getclientinfo("SCRIPT")

```

## Node.js API

The Node.js driver allows you to connect to and perform queries on the database by using JavaScript on Joyent's Node.js software platform. Drivers are available for various versions of Node.js.

The connection class provides the `setClientInfo` and `getClientInfo` methods for setting and accessing connection properties.

- Example

```
var hana = require('hana.node');
var conn = hana.createConnection();
conn.connect('serverNode=myserver:30015;uid=system;pwd=manager');
conn.setClientInfo('LOCALE', 'en-CA');
var locale = conn.getClientInfo('LOCALE');
conn.close();
```

## Related Information

[Managing Workload \(SAP HANA Administration Guide\)](#)

## 12.2 Connect to SAP HANA via ODBC

SAP HANA provides a driver for connecting applications to the database with ODBC.

### Context

Use the 32-bit ODBC driver for 32-bit applications, and the 64-bit driver for 64-bit applications.

### Procedure

1. Install the ODBC driver. The driver is installed as part of the SAP HANA client installation.
2. Write code to create a connection to the database. You can use one of the following methods:

**Connection String** Use a connection string in the form:  
**(SQLDriverConnect)**

```
DRIVER={<driver>};UID=<username>;PWD=<password>;
SERVERNODE=<server>:<port>;DATABASENAME=<dbname>
```

<driver> should be one of the following:

- HDBODBC (64-bit applications)
- HDBODBC32 (32-bit applications)

<port> takes the form 3<instance number>15; for example, 30015 (if the instance is 00).

The following example shows a connection string that establishes a connection to an SAP HANA database:

```
DRIVER={HDBODBC};UID=myUser;PWD=myPassword;SERVERNODE=myServer:
30015
```

<dbname> is the name of a specific database (for example, TDB1) in a multi-database environment, which you can specify using the DATABASENAME option:

```
DRIVER={HDBODBC};UID=myUser;PWD=myPassword;SERVERNODE=myServer:
30015;DATABASENAME=TDB1
```

#### odbc.ini file

Calls the ODBC connection API and connect to the target database using the parameters defined in a given ODBC .ini file. The option databasename= enables you to connect to a specific database in a multiple-database environment.

```
[HANADB1]
servernode = localhost:30013
driver = /usr/sap/YLI/HDB00/exe/libodbcHDB.so
description = HDB
databasename =tdb1
```

#### ODBC Data Source (SQLConnect)

Create a data source by running the odbcad32.exe tool. You can run this tool on command line or via the  [Control Panel](#)  [Administrative Tools](#)  [Data Sources \(ODBC\)](#).

The application is located in the system32 directory. To create a data source for the 32-bit driver on a 64-bit Microsoft Windows machine, run the tool from the SysWOW64 directory.

On the [DSN](#) tab, choose [Add](#), select the SAP HANA driver, and select [Finish](#). A dialog is displayed that enables you to specify the name and details of the data source that you want to add:

- [Data Source Name](#)
- [Description](#)
- [Sever and Port](#)

You can either enter a key created using the SAP HANA user store (which defines the server, port, user name and password), or you can enter a server and port (for example, myServer:30015). If you enter a server and port, then the application must supply the user name and password when connecting.

You cannot enter a user name and password when adding a new data source. The user credentials are required at connection time.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Database - Client Installation and Update Guide](#)

[Use the User Store \(hdbuserstore\) \[page 882\]](#)

## 12.2.1 Use the User Store (hdbuserstore)

The SAP HANA user store enables you to store information that is used for connecting to an SAP HANA system.

### Context

To avoid having to enter connection-related information manually each time you want to establish a connection to an SAP HANA database, store the connection information in the user store. As part of the configuration, you assign a key, and use this key when making connections.

Storing the connection information makes it easier to move between systems (for example, when executing SQL from the command line), and also keeps connection information, including user names and passwords, in a secure place.

The SAP HANA user store is part of the client installation.

### Procedure

1. In a command line, run the following:

```
hdbuserstore.exe set <key> <server>:<port> <user> <password>
```

The server, port, user name, and password are now stored in the user store. The key is a string you use to refer to this set of connection information.

2. Use the key to reference a connection to a particular system. Always precede the key with an @, for example, @mykey.

Use the key in the following ways:

- In the connection string, use the key for the SERVERNODE parameter, and do not include a user name and password, for example:

```
SERVERNODE={@mykey};DRIVER={hdbodbc};
```

- To create an ODBC data source, enter the key (for example, @mykey) for the server and port.
- To test your connection (by running `odbcreg -t hdbodbc`), use the key (for example, @mykey) for the server and port. If the connection is successful, then you get something like the following example:

```
odbcreg -t hdbodbc
MDAC version: 6.1.7601.17514
ODBC Driver test for 'hdbodbc'.
retcode: 0
outString<38>: SERVERNODE={@soloff};DRIVER={hdbodbc};
Driver version SAP HDB 1.50 <2012-10-22>.
Select now<29>: 2012-11-13 10:29:14.240000000 <29>
```

The response includes a sample connection string using the key.

## Related Information

[Test the ODBC Installation \[page 883\]](#)

### 12.2.2 Test the ODBC Installation

Test the installation of the ODBC driver and your ability to connect by using the `odbcreg` tool, which is part of the ODBC installation.

#### Procedure

1. Open a command window.
2. Start the `odbcreg` tool by enter a command in the form: `odbcreg -t hdbodbc` (for the 64-bit driver) or `odbcreg32 -t hdbodbc32` (for the 32-bit driver).

If the driver is installed properly, then you see the ODBC connection screen.

You can also run the command `odbcreg -g` or `odbcreg32 -g` to get a list of installed drivers. The SAP HANA driver is called `HDBODBC`.

To connect to SAP HANA using the native SAP HANA ODBC driver, provide the following information:

- *Server and Port*  
Enter the server name and the corresponding port number for the ODBC connection. For example, `myServer:30015`.
  - *User and Password*  
Enter the user credentials required to connect to SAP HANA using the ODBC interface.
  - *Connect using SSL*  
Enable if you want to ensure that the ODBC connection to SAP HANA is established using the Secure Sockets Layer.
3. Test the connection by entering connection information (system, port, user name, and password) and selecting *OK*. The tool closes and the results of the test are printed in the command window.

#### Results

You can also run `odbcreg -g` to get a list of installed ODBC drivers and verify that the SAP HANA driver (either `HDBODBC` or `HDBODBC32`) is installed.

## Related Information

[Connect to SAP HANA via ODBC \[page 880\]](#)

## 12.3 Connect to SAP HANA via JDBC

SAP HANA provides a driver that enables Java applications to connect to the SAP HANA database with the JDBC application programming interface (API).

### Procedure

1. Install the JDBC driver.

The driver (`ngdbc.jar`) is installed as part of the SAP HANA client installation and is located at:

- `C:\Program Files\sap\hdbcclient\` on Microsoft Windows platforms
- `/usr/sap/hdbcclient/` on Linux and UNIX platforms

2. Add `ngdbc.jar` to your classpath.

3. If you are on a version of Java earlier than Java 6, then load the JDBC driver class, which is called `com.sap.db.jdbc.Driver`.

4. Write Java code to create a connection to the database and execute SQL commands. Use a connection string in the form of `jdbc:sap://<server>:<port>[/?<options>]`. For example:

```
jdbc:sap://myServer:30015/?autocommit=false
```

The port should be `3<instance number>15`; for example, 30015, if the instance is 00.

Specify one or more failover servers by adding additional hosts, as in the following example:

```
jdbc:sap://myServer:30015;failover1:30015;failover2:30015/?autocommit=false
```

To connect to a specific database in a multiple-database environment, for example, `tdb1`, use the `databaseName` parameter, as illustrated in the following code:

```
jdbc:sap://localhost:30013/?databaseName=tdb1&user=SYSTEM&password=manager
```

#### Example

The following is an example of connecting to an SAP HANA server called `myhdb`, which was installed as instance 07, with user name `myname` and password `mysecret`. Make sure to change these for your system, and add the JDBC driver (`ngdbc.jar`) to your classpath.

```
import java.sql.*;
public class jdemo {
 public static void main(String[] argv) {
 Connection connection = null;
 try {
 connection = DriverManager.getConnection(
 "jdbc:sap://myhdb:30715/?"
 "autocommit=false", myname, mysecret);
 } catch (SQLException e) {
```

```

 System.err.println("Connection Failed. User/Passwd Error?");
 return;
 }
 if (connection != null) {
 try {
 System.out.println("Connection to HANA successful!");
 Statement stmt = connection.createStatement();
 ResultSet resultSet = stmt.executeQuery("Select 'hello world' from
dummy");
 resultSet.next();
 String hello = resultSet.getString(1);
 System.out.println(hello);
 } catch (SQLException e) {
 System.err.println("Query failed!");
 }
 }
}

```

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Database - Client Installation and Update Guide](#)

### 12.3.1 Trace a JDBC Connection

Activate the JDBC trace to find errors while your application is connected to a database via JDBC.

## Prerequisites

You must be logged on as the operating system user who started (or will start) the JDBC application.

### i Note

- You always activate the JDBC trace for all JDBC applications that the current operating system user has started.
- Configuration changes have an effect on all JDBC applications that the current operating system user has started.

## Context

When the JDBC trace is activated, the JDBC driver logs on the client the following information:

- JDBC API calls called by the JDBC application

- JDBC API call parameters
- Executed SQL statements and their results

The location of the trace file is determined by the trace options.

### 12.3.1.1 Trace a JDBC Connection in the GUI

Start tracing by running the tracing configuration tool that includes a graphical user interface (GUI).

#### Context

Tracing via the GUI enables you to start and configure tracing without stopping and restarting your application that is connected via JDBC.

#### Procedure

1. On the client, run the following command: `java -jar <installation_path>\ngdbc.jar`.
2. Select *Trace enabled*.
3. Select and modify the tracing options.
4. Select *OK*.

### 12.3.1.2 Trace a JDBC Connection on the Command Line

Start tracing by running the tracing configuration tool and sending commands via the command line.

#### Context

Tracing via the command line enables you to start and configure tracing without stopping and restarting your application that is connected via JDBC.

#### Procedure

1. Display the current configuration by running the command: `java -jar <installation_path>\ngdbc.jar SHOW`.

2. Select trace options by running the command: `java -jar <installation_path>\ngdbc.jar <option>`.
3. Start tracing by running the command: `java -jar <installation_path>\ngdbc.jar TRACE ON`.

### 12.3.1.3 Trace a JDBC Connection using a Connection String

Start tracing by adding an option in the connection string when creating a JDBC connection.

#### Context

Tracing via the connection string requires you to stop and restart your application that is making the JDBC connection. Also, with the connection string, you cannot turn off tracing or set any options except setting the trace filename.

#### Procedure

Add the `trace` option to the connection when creating a JDBC connection.

Here is an example connection string that starts tracing:

```
jdbc:sap://localhost:30015/?autocommit=false&trace=traceFile.txt
```

#### Next Steps

Determine the trace options by locating the trace file.

### 12.3.1.4 Trace Options

Options when enabling JDBC tracing.

The first column shows the field name in the GUI-based tracing configuration tool, and the second column shows the command to enter when using the command-line tool.

Table 138: Trace Options

Option	Command-Line Option	Description
Trace enabled	TRACE ON   OFF	Starts and stops tracing

Option	Command-Line Option	Description
Trace file folder	No command-line option. The folder can be specified with the FILENAME option.	Sets the directory where the system writes the trace files.  When no folder is specified, the files are saved in the working directory of the application.
Trace file name	TRACE FILENAME [<path>]<file_name>	Sets the name of the trace file.  The system assigns each trace file an additional unique ID, so the file name is:  <file_name>_<id>.prt  The default file name is jdbctrace.
Limit file size	TRACE SIZE <size> [KB   MB   GB]  To remove the size limit, use the following option:  TRACE SIZE UNLIMITED	Limits the size of each trace file.
Stop on error	TRACE STOP ON ERROR <error_code>  To no longer stop on the specified error, use the following option:  TRACE STOP ON ERROR OFF	Stops writing the JDBC trace when the specified error code occurs.

## 12.3.2 Valid Java-to-SQL Conversions

SAP HANA allows each Java object to be converted to specific SQL types using the JDBC method `PreparedStatement.setObject` or `RowSet.setObject`.

Some conversions may fail at runtime if the value passed is invalid.

	TINYINT	SMALLINT	INTEGER	BIGINT	REAL	FLOAT	DOUBLE	DECIMAL	CHAR	VARCHAR	NCHAR	NVARCHAR	BINARY	VARBINARY	DATE	TIME	TIMESTAMP	BLOB	CLOB
String	X	X	X																
java.math.BigDecimal	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
Boolean	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
Byte	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
Short	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
Integer	X																		
Long	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
Float	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
Double																			
byte[]													X	X					
java.sql.Date										X	X	X	X			X	X		
java.sql.Time										X	X	X	X				X		
java.sql.Timestamp										X	X	X	X			X	X	X	
Blob																		X	
Clob																			X

## 12.3.3 JDBC Command-Line Connection Options

A number of parameters enable you to test the connection to a database by running a simple but specific query.

The `ngdbc.jar` file enables you execute simple commands or check if a connection to the SAP HANA database can be established with the JDBC client.

```
java -jar ngdbc.jar -u <user,password>
 [-n <hostname:port>]
 [-i <instance_number>]
 [-d <database_name>]
 [-o <connect option>]
 [-c <sql command>]
```

### Tip

The `-d` option is useful for multiple-database environments where you need to provide the name of a specific database to connect to.

## Connections with an Instance Number and Database Name

The `-i` and `-d` options specify the instance number and database name (for example, `tdb1`) to use for the connection to SAP HANA:

```
java -jar ngdbc.jar -i 00 -n localhost -u SYSTEM,manager -d tdb1
 -c "select database_name from sys.m_database_information"
```

## Connections with SYSTEMDB Port and Database Name

The `-n` option specifies the port number to use for connections to the SAP HANA database; the `-d` option enables you to provide the name of a specific database instance (for example, `tdb1`):

```
java -jar ngdbc.jar -n localhost:30013 -u SYSTEM,manager -d tdb1
 -c "select database_name from sys.m_database_information"
```

## Connections with the SYSTEMDB Port and Database Name as a Property

The `-o` parameter specifies the name of a specific database instance (for example, `tdb1`) as a connection option:

```
java -jar ngdbc.jar -n localhost:30013 -u SYSTEM,manager -o databaseName=tdb1
 -c "select database_name from sys.m_database_information"
```

## 12.3.4 JDBC Connection Options in Java Code

It is possible to establish a connection to the SAP HANA database directly from the Java code you write.

The JDBC database connection URL is extended to include the database name and the instance number as properties. With `ngdbc.jar` set in the environment variable `<CLASSPATH>`, the method to establish a connection to the SAP HANA database is `java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection()` or `com.sap.db.jdbc.Driver.connect()`.

### **java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection(url, user, password)**

Use the `java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection` method to connect to SAP HANA with a URL, a user name, and the corresponding password.

```
import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
java.sql.Connection conn = java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection
 ("jdbc:sap://localhost:30013/?databaseName=tdb1", "SYSTEM", "manager");
```

Use the `databaseName=<DB_Name>` option to extend the URL to specify the name of a particular SAP HANA instance to connect to, for example, in a multiple-database environment.

```
import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
java.sql.Connection conn = java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection
 ("jdbc:sap://localhost/?instanceNumber=00&databaseName=tdb1", "SYSTEM",
"manager");
```

### **java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection(url)**

Use the `java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection` method to connect to SAP HANA with a URL. The URL can be extended to include the connection options; for example: the user name and corresponding password, and the database name.

```
import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
java.sql.Connection conn =
java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection
 ("jdbc:sap://localhost:30013/?databaseName=tdb1&user=SYSTEM&password=manager");
```

### **java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection(url, properties)**

Use the `java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection` method to connect to SAP HANA with a URL, which you then extend using information specified in properties, as illustrated in the following example.

```
import java.sql.Connection;
```

```
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.util.Properties;
java.util.Properties info = new java.util.Properties();
info.put("databaseName", "tdb1");
info.put("user", "SYSTEM");
info.put("password", "manager");
java.sql.Connection conn = java.sql.DriverManager.getConnection
("jdbc:sap://localhost:30013", info);
```

## com.sap.db.jdbc.Driver.connect(user, password, host, propertyString)

Include with the `com.sap.db.jdbc.Driver.connect()` method, additional options in a string of properties enclosed in quotes ""

```
import java.sql.Connection;
import com.sap.db.jdbc.Driver;
java.sql.Connection conn = com.sap.db.jdbc.connect ("SYSTEM", "manager",
"localhost:30013", "tdb1", "");
```

```
import java.sql.Connection;
import com.sap.db.jdbc.Driver;
java.sql.Connection conn = com.sap.db.jdbc.connect ("SYSTEM", "manager",
"localhost", "tdb1", "instanceNumber=00");
```

## 12.4 Connect to SAP HANA via ODBO

SAP HANA provides a driver that enables applications to connect to the SAP HANA database with the ODBO application programming interface (API) and execute MDX statements.

### Procedure

1. Install the ODBO driver. The driver is installed as part of the SAP HANA client installation.
2. Specify in your client the provider name: SAPNewDBMDXProvider
3. Create a connection string in the form of:

```
<host_of_HANA>;User_ID=<your
user>;Password=<your_password>;SFC_USE_ROWCACHE=true;SFC_INSTANCE_NUM=<instance
_number>
```

For example:

```
localhost;User
ID=system;Password=mypassword;SFC_USE_ROWCACHE=true;SFC_INSTANCE_NUM=00
```

If the server instance is 00, then you can omit the `SFC_INSTANCE_NUM` parameter.

`SFC_USE_ROWCACHE` is optional. It enables backward and forward navigation through rowsets.

## Related Information

[SAP HANA Database - Client Installation and Update Guide](#)

### 12.4.1 Connecting with Microsoft Excel

Use Microsoft Excel and its PivotTables to access and analyze SAP HANA data by connecting with ODBO.

## Context

SAP HANA supports Microsoft Excel 2007 and 2010.

## Procedure

1. Start the *Data Connection Wizard*, and select *Other/Advanced* as the type of data source.
2. In the *Data Link Properties* dialog, scroll down the *OLE DB Provider(s)* list and choose *SAP HANA MDX Provider*.
3. In the *Connection* tab of the *Data Link Properties* dialog, enter the connection details.

The following information is required:

- *Host*  
The SAP HANA server name.
- *Instance number*  
The number of the SAP HANA instance to connect to.
- *User* and *Password*  
The user credentials required to connect to SAP HANA.

#### ➔ Tip

Choose *Test Connection* to ensure that the connection details are correct.

4. In the *Data Connection Wizard*, select the database and table or cube with the data you want to connect to.
  - *Select the database that contains the data you want:*  
Use the drop-down list to select the database that contains the data you want to use.
  - *Connect to a specific cube:*  
Enable this check box, if required, and choose the cube from the list displayed.

#### i Note

SAP HANA analytic and calculation views are exposed as cubes.

5. Enter a name and description for the connection file and choose *Finish* to save.

### Caution

Although you can choose to save the password in the connection file, it is recommended that you do **not** since the saved password is not encrypted.

## Results

SAP HANA supports the following Microsoft Excel features:

- Drilling down
- Selection filtering
- Top/bottom filters
- Report filters
- Member properties
- Refresh cube
- Convert PivotTable into formulas
- Server formatting
- Pre-modeled calculated members
- Show/hide fields
- Enhanced value and label filters
- Insert slicer
- Text search in report filter
- PivotTable filter
- Creation of named sets

### 12.4.2 Multidimensional Expressions (MDX)

Multidimensional Expressions (MDX) is a language for querying multidimensional data that is stored in OLAP cubes.

MDX uses a multidimensional data model to enable navigation in multiple dimensions, levels, and up and down a hierarchy. With MDX, you can access pre-computed aggregates at specified positions (levels or members) in a hierarchy.

#### Note

MDX is an open standard. However, SAP has developed extensions to MDX to enable faster and more efficient access to multidimensional data; for example, to serve specific SAP HANA application requirements and to optimize the result set for SAP HANA clients.

MDX is implicitly a hierarchy-based paradigm. All members of all dimensions must belong to a hierarchy. Even if you do not explicitly create hierarchies in your SAP HANA data model, the SAP HANA modeler implicitly generates default hierarchies for each dimension. All identifiers that are used to uniquely identify hierarchies, levels and members in MDX statements (and metadata requests) embed the hierarchy name within the identifier.

In SAP HANA, the standard use of MDX is to access SAP HANA models (for example, analytical and attribute views) that have been designed, validated and activated in the modeler in the SAP HANA studio. The studio provides a graphical design environment that enables detailed control over all aspects of the model and its language-context-sensitive runtime representation to users.

MDX in SAP HANA uses a runtime cube model, which usually consists of an analytical (or calculation) view that represents data in which dimensions are modeled as attribute views. You can use the analytical view to specify whether a given attribute is intended for display purposes only or for aggregation. The attributes of attribute views are linked to private attributes in an analytic view in order to connect the entities. One benefit of MDX in SAP HANA is the native support of hierarchies defined for attribute views.

#### i Note

MDX in SAP HANA includes native support of hierarchies defined for attribute views. SAP HANA supports level-based and parent-child hierarchies and both types of hierarchies are accessible with MDX.

SAP HANA supports the use of variables in MDX queries; the variables are an SAP-specific enhancement to standard MDX syntax. You can specify values for all mandatory variables that are defined in SAP HANA studio to various modeling entities. The following example illustrates how to declare SAP HANA variables and their values:

```
MDX
Select
From [SALES_DATA_VAR]
Where [Measures].[M2_1_M3_CONV]
SAP VARIABLES [VAR_VAT] including 10,
 [VAR_K2] including 112,
 [VAR_TARGET_CURRENCY] including 'EUR',
```

### 12.4.3 MDX Functions

MDX in SAP HANA supports a variety of standard MDX functions.

The following MDX functions are supported:

- Aggregate
- Ancestor
- Ancestors
- Ascendants
- Avg
- BottomCount
- Children
- ClosingPeriod
- Count
- Cousin
- Crossjoin
- CurrentMember
- DefaultMember
- Descendants

---

Dimension  
Dimensions  
Distinct  
DistinctCount  
DrillDownLevel  
DrillDownLevelBottom  
DrillDownLevelTop  
DrillDownMember  
DrillDownMemberBottom  
DrillDownMemberTop  
DrillUpLevel  
DrillUpmember  
Except  
Filter  
FirstChild  
FirstSibling  
Generate  
Head  
Hierarchize  
Hierarchy  
Instr  
Intersect  
IsAncestor  
IsGeneration  
IsLeaf  
IsSibling  
Item  
IIF  
Lag  
LastChild  
LastPeriods  
LastSibling  
Lead  
Leaves  
Left  
Level  
Levels  
Max  
Member\_caption  
Members  
MembersAscendantsDescendants  
Mid  
Min  
MTD  
Name

---

```
NextMember
NOT
OpeningPeriod
OR
Ordinal
ParallelPeriod
Parent
PeriodsToDate
PrevMember
Properties
QTD
Range
Right
Siblings
StrToMember
StrToSet
StrToTuple
StrToValue
Subset
Sum
Tail
TopCount
Union
UniqueName
WTD
YTD
```

For more information about these functions, see Microsoft's Multidimensional Expressions (MDX) Reference.

## Related Information

<https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms145506.aspx> ↗

### 12.4.4 MDX Extensions

SAP HANA supports several extensions to the MDX language, including additional predefined functions and support for variables.

## Related Information

[Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS \[page 535\]](#)

[Sibling\\_Ordinal Intrinsic Property \[page 541\]](#)

[MembersAscendantsDescendants Function \[page 542\]](#)

[Variables in MDX \[page 543\]](#)

### 12.4.4.1 Sibling\_Ordinal Intrinsic Property

The object `Member` includes a property called `Sibling_Ordinal`, that is equal to the 0-based position of the member within its siblings.

#### Example

```
WITH
 MEMBER [Measures].[Termination Rate] AS
 [Measures].[NET_SALES] / [Measures].[BILLED_QUANTITY]
SELECT
{
 [Measures].[NET_SALES],
 [Measures].[BILLED_QUANTITY],
 [Measures].[Termination Rate]
} ON COLUMNS,
Descendants
(
 [DISTRIBUTION_CHANNEL].[DISTRIBUTION_CHANNEL].[All].[(all)],
 1,
 SELF_AND_BEFORE
)
DIMENSION PROPERTIES SIBLING_ORDINAL ON ROWS
FROM SALES_DATA
```

#### Related Information

[MDX Extensions \[page 541\]](#)

[MembersAscendantsDescendants Function \[page 542\]](#)

[Variables in MDX \[page 543\]](#)

### 12.4.4.2 MembersAscendantsDescendants Function

SAP HANA includes the `MembersAscendantsDescendants` function that enables you to get, for example, all ascendants and descendants of a specific member.

This function improves on the standard MDX functions `Ascendants` and `Descendants`.

The function can be called as follows:

```
MembersAscendantsDescendants (<set>, <flag>)
```

- **set**: A set of members from a single hierarchy
- **flag**: Indicates which related members to return, and can be one of the following:
  - MEMBERS\_AND\_ASCENDANTS\_AND\_DESCENDANTS
  - MEMBERS\_AND\_ASCENDANTS
  - MEMBERS\_AND\_DESCENDANTS
  - ASCENDANTS\_AND\_DESCENDANTS
  - ONLY\_ASCENDANTS
  - ONLY\_DESCENDANTS

### Example

```
SELECT
{ [Measures].[SALES] }
ON COLUMNS,
NON EMPTY
{ Hierarchize(MembersAscendantsDescendants([SALES_DATA_TIME].[TimeHier].[QUARTER].[3]:[SALES_DATA_TIME].[TimeHier].[QUARTER].[4],
MEMBERS_AND_ASCENDANTS_AND_DESCENDANTS)) }
ON ROWS
FROM [SALES_DATA]
```

### Example

```
SELECT
{ [Measures].[SALES] }
ON COLUMNS,
NON EMPTY
{ Hierarchize(MembersAscendantsDescendants([SALES_DATA_TIME].[TimeHier].[QUARTER].[3]:[SALES_DATA_TIME].[TimeHier].[QUARTER].[4], ONLY_ASCENDANTS)) }
ON ROWS
FROM [SALES_DATA]
```

## Related Information

[Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS \[page 535\]](#)

[MDX Extensions \[page 541\]](#)

## 12.4.4.3 Variables in MDX

An MDX SELECT statement in SAP HANA enables you to send values for variables defined within modeling views.

Analytic and calculation views can contain variables that can be bound to specific attributes. When calling the view, you can send values for those variables. These variables can be used, for example, to filter the results.

SAP HANA supports an extension to MDX whereby you can pass values for variables defined in views by adding an SAP Variables clause in your SELECT statement. Here is the syntax for a SELECT statement:

```
<select_statement>:
[WITH <formula_specification>]
SELECT [<axis_specification>[,<axis_specification>...]]
 FROM <cube_specification>
 [WHERE <slicer_specification>

SAP VARIABLES: <sap_variable> [[,] <sap_variable>...]]
<sap_variable>: <variable_name> <sign> [<option>] <variable_value>
<sign>: INCLUDING | EXCLUDING
<option>: = | > | >= | < | <= | <>
<variable_value>:
 <unique_member_name>
 | <unsigned_numeric_literal>
 | <string_value_expression>
 | <member> : <member>
 | <character_string_literal> : <character_string_literal>
 | <unsigned_numeric_literal> : <unsigned_numeric_literal>
```

### Example

The following statement specifies a single value for variables VAR\_VAT, VAR\_K2, and VAR\_TARGET\_CURRENCY.

```
SELECT
FROM [SALES_DATA_VAR]
WHERE [Measures].[M2_1_M3_CONV]
SAP VARIABLES [VAR_VAT] including 10,
 [VAR_K2] including 112,
 [VAR_TARGET_CURRENCY] including 'EUR'
```

### Example

The following specifies an interval for variable VAR\_K2.

```
SELECT NON EMPTY
{
 [K2].[K2].Members
} ON ROWS
FROM [SALES_DATA_VAR_SIMPLE]
WHERE [Measures].[M3_CONV]
SAP VARIABLES [VAR_K2] including [K2].[K2].[122]:[K2].[K2].[221]
```

## Metadata on Variables in Views

SAP HANA includes the following set of tables that contain information about the variables defined for views:

- BIMC\_VARIABLE
- BIMC\_VARIABLE\_ASSIGNMENT
- BIMC\_VARIABLE\_VALUE

The tables enable, for example, an application to retrieve the variables defined for a view and create a user interface so the user can enter values.

---

## Related Information

[Data Access with XMLA in SAP HANA XS \[page 535\]](#)

[MDX Extensions \[page 541\]](#)

# Important Disclaimer for Features in SAP HANA Platform, Options and Capabilities

SAP HANA server software and tools can be used for several SAP HANA platform and options scenarios as well as the respective capabilities used in these scenarios. The availability of these is based on the available SAP HANA licenses and the SAP HANA landscape, including the type and version of the back-end systems the SAP HANA administration and development tools are connected to. There are several types of licenses available for SAP HANA. Depending on your SAP HANA installation license type, some of the features and tools described in the SAP HANA platform documentation may only be available in the SAP HANA options and capabilities, which may be released independently of an SAP HANA Platform Support Package Stack (SPS). Although various features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities are cited in the SAP HANA platform documentation, each SAP HANA edition governs the options and capabilities available. Based on this, customers do not necessarily have the right to use features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities. For customers to whom these license restrictions apply, the use of features included in SAP HANA options and capabilities in a production system requires purchasing the corresponding software license(s) from SAP. The documentation for the SAP HANA optional components is available in SAP Help Portal at [http://help.sap.com/hana\\_options](http://help.sap.com/hana_options). If you have additional questions about what your particular license provides, or wish to discuss licensing features available in SAP HANA options, please contact your SAP account team representative.

# Important Disclaimers and Legal Information

## Coding Samples

Any software coding and/or code lines / strings ("Code") included in this documentation are only examples and are not intended to be used in a productive system environment. The Code is only intended to better explain and visualize the syntax and phrasing rules of certain coding. SAP does not warrant the correctness and completeness of the Code given herein, and SAP shall not be liable for errors or damages caused by the usage of the Code, unless damages were caused by SAP intentionally or by SAP's gross negligence.

## Accessibility

The information contained in the SAP documentation represents SAP's current view of accessibility criteria as of the date of publication; it is in no way intended to be a binding guideline on how to ensure accessibility of software products. SAP in particular disclaims any liability in relation to this document. This disclaimer, however, does not apply in cases of willful misconduct or gross negligence of SAP. Furthermore, this document does not result in any direct or indirect contractual obligations of SAP.

## Gender-Neutral Language

As far as possible, SAP documentation is gender neutral. Depending on the context, the reader is addressed directly with "you", or a gender-neutral noun (such as "sales person" or "working days") is used. If when referring to members of both sexes, however, the third-person singular cannot be avoided or a gender-neutral noun does not exist, SAP reserves the right to use the masculine form of the noun and pronoun. This is to ensure that the documentation remains comprehensible.

## Internet Hyperlinks

The SAP documentation may contain hyperlinks to the Internet. These hyperlinks are intended to serve as a hint about where to find related information. SAP does not warrant the availability and correctness of this related information or the ability of this information to serve a particular purpose. SAP shall not be liable for any damages caused by the use of related information unless damages have been caused by SAP's gross negligence or willful misconduct. All links are categorized for transparency (see: <http://help.sap.com/disclaimer>).





**go.sap.com/registration/  
contact.html**

© 2016 SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or for any purpose without the express permission of SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company. The information contained herein may be changed without prior notice.

Some software products marketed by SAP SE and its distributors contain proprietary software components of other software vendors. National product specifications may vary.

These materials are provided by SAP SE or an SAP affiliate company for informational purposes only, without representation or warranty of any kind, and SAP or its affiliated companies shall not be liable for errors or omissions with respect to the materials. The only warranties for SAP or SAP affiliate company products and services are those that are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services, if any. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty.

SAP and other SAP products and services mentioned herein as well as their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of SAP SE (or an SAP affiliate company) in Germany and other countries. All other product and service names mentioned are the trademarks of their respective companies.

Please see <http://www.sap.com/corporate-en/legal/copyright/index.epx> for additional trademark information and notices.